KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

bizhub C360/C280/C220

This service manual is designed for machine with firmware card ver. 88 and onward.

2012.02
KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 2.1

FIELD SERVICE TOTAL CONTENTS

SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS S-1
- IMPORTANT NOTICE S-1
- DESCRIPTION ITEMS FOR DANGER, WARNING AND CAUTION S-1
- SAFETY WARNINGS S-2
- WARNING INDICATIONS ON THE MACHINE S-18

MEASURES TO TAKE IN CASE OF AN ACCIDENT S-20

Composition of the service manual C-1

Notation of the service manual C-2

bizhub C360/C280/C220 Main body

- OUTLINE 1
- MAINTENANCE 15
- ADJUSTMENT/SETTING 167
- TROUBLESHOOTING 537
- APPENDIX 761

i-Option LK-101 v2/102/103 v2/105

- OUTLINE 1
- ADJUSTMENT/SETTING 3

DF-617/SP-501

- OUTLINE 1
- MAINTENANCE 5
- ADJUSTMENT/SETTING 37

PC-107/PC-207

- OUTLINE 1
- MAINTENANCE 3
- ADJUSTMENT/SETTING 19

PC-408

- OUTLINE 1
- MAINTENANCE 3
- ADJUSTMENT/SETTING 29

JS-505

- OUTLINE 1
- MAINTENANCE 3

FS-527

OUTLINE 1
MAINTENANCE 5

PK-517

OUTLINE 1
MAINTENANCE 3
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING 7

SD-509

OUTLINE 1
MAINTENANCE 3
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING 21

JS-603

OUTLINE 1
MAINTENANCE 3

FS-529

OUTLINE 1
MAINTENANCE 3

SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS

Read carefully the safety and important warning items described below to understand them before doing service work.

IMPORTANT NOTICE

Because of possible hazards to an inexperienced person servicing this product as well as the risk of damage to the product, KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. (hereafter called the KMBT) strongly recommends that all servicing be performed only by KMBT-trained service technicians.
Changes may have been made to this product to improve its performance after this Service Manual was printed. Accordingly, KMBT does not warrant, either explicitly or implicitly, that the information contained in this service manual is complete and accurate.
The user of this service manual must assume all risks of personal injury and/or damage to the product while servicing the product for which this service manual is intended.
Therefore, this service manual must be carefully read before doing service work both in the course of technical training and even after that, for performing maintenance and control of the product properly.
Keep this service manual also for future service.

DESCRIPTION ITEMS FOR DANGER, WARNING AND CAUTION

In this Service Manual, each of three expressions "⚠ DANGER", "⚠ WARNING", and "⚠ CAUTION" is defined as follows together with a symbol mark to be used in a limited meaning.
When servicing the product, the relevant works (disassembling, reassembling, adjustment, repair, maintenance, etc.) need to be conducted with utmost care.

⚠ **DANGER: Action having a high possibility of suffering death or serious injury**

⚠ **WARNING: Action having a possibility of suffering death or serious injury**

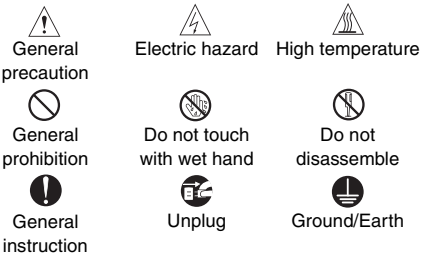
⚠ **CAUTION: Action having a possibility of suffering a slight wound, medium trouble, and property damage**

Symbols used for safety and important warning items are defined as follows:

△ :Precaution when servicing the product.

⃠ :Prohibition when servicing the product.

● :Direction when servicing the product.



SAFETY WARNINGS

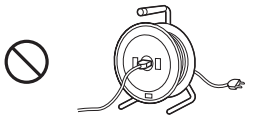
[1] MODIFICATIONS NOT AUTHORIZED BY KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

KONICA MINOLTA brand products are renowned for their high reliability. This reliability is achieved through high-quality design and a solid service network.
Product design is a highly complicated and delicate process where numerous mechanical, physical, and electrical aspects have to be taken into consideration, with the aim of arriving at proper tolerances and safety factors. For this reason, unauthorized modifications involve a high risk of degradation in performance and safety. Such modifications are therefore strictly prohibited. the points listed below are not exhaustive, but they illustrate the reasoning behind this policy.

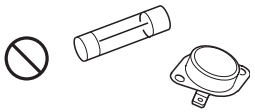
Prohibited Actions

⚠ DANGER

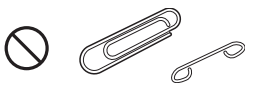
- Using any cables or power cord not specified by KMBT.



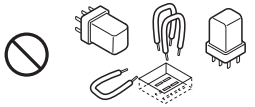
- Using any fuse or thermostat not specified by KMBT. Safety will not be assured, leading to a risk of fire and injury.



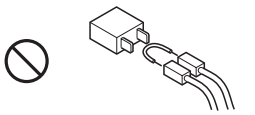
- Disabling fuse functions or bridging fuse terminals with wire, metal clips, solder or similar object.



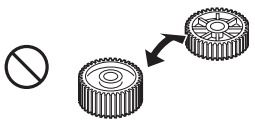
- Disabling relay functions (such as wedging paper between relay contacts).



- Disabling safety functions (interlocks, safety circuits, etc.). Safety will not be assured, leading to a risk of fire and injury.



- Making any modification to the product unless instructed by KMBT.
- Using parts not specified by KMBT.



[2] POWER PLUG SELECTION

In some countries or areas, the power plug provided with the product may not fit wall outlet used in the area. In that case, it is obligation of customer engineer (hereafter called the CE) to attach appropriate power plug or power cord set in order to connect the product to the supply.

Power Cord Set or Power Plug

⚠ WARNING

- Use power supply cord set which meets the following criteria:
  - provided with a plug having configuration intended for the connection to wall outlet appropriate for the product's rated voltage and current, and
  - the plug has pin/terminal(s) for grounding, and
  - provided with three-conductor cable having enough current capacity, and
  - the cord set meets regulatory requirements for the area.

  Use of inadequate cord set leads to fire or electric shock.



- Attach power plug which meets the following criteria:
  - having configuration intended for the connection to wall outlet appropriate for the product's rated voltage and current, and
  - the plug has pin/terminal(s) for grounding, and
  - meets regulatory requirements for the area.

  Use of inadequate cord set leads to the product connecting to inadequate power supply (voltage, current capacity, grounding), and may result in fire or electric shock.

- Conductors in the power cable must be connected to terminals of the plug according to the following order:
  - •Black or Brown:L (line)
  - •White or Light Blue:N (neutral)
  - •Green/Yellow:PE (earth)

  Wrong connection may cancel safeguards within the product, and results in fire or electric shock.

[3] CHECKPOINTS WHEN PERFORMING ON-SITE SERVICE

KONICA MINOLTA brand products are extensively tested before shipping, to ensure that all applicable safety standards are met, in order to protect the customer and customer engineer (hereafter called the CE) from the risk of injury. However, in daily use, any electrical equipment may be subject to parts wear and eventual failure. In order to maintain safety and reliability, the CE must perform regular safety checks.

1. Power Supply

Connection to Power Supply

⚠ WARNING

- Check that mains voltage is as specified.

  Connection to wrong voltage supply may result in fire or electric shock.

- Connect power plug directly into wall outlet having same configuration as the plug.

  Use of an adapter leads to the product connecting to inadequate power supply (voltage, current capacity, grounding), and may result in fire or electric shock.

  If proper wall outlet is not available, advice the customer to contact qualified electrician for the installation.



- Plug the power cord into the dedicated wall outlet with a capacity greater than the maximum power consumption.

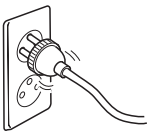
  If excessive current flows in the wall outlet, fire may result.

- If two or more power cords can be plugged into the wall outlet, the total load must not exceed the rating of the wall outlet.

  If excessive current flows in the wall outlet, fire may result.

- Make sure the power cord is plugged in the wall outlet securely.

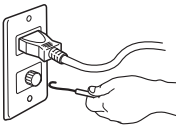
  Contact problems may lead to increased resistance, overheating, and the risk of fire.



- Check whether the product is grounded properly.

  If current leakage occurs in an ungrounded product, you may suffer electric shock while operating the product.

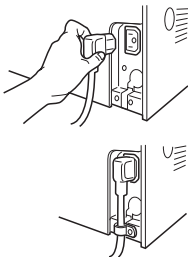
  Connect power plug to grounded wall outlet.



Power Plug and Cord

⚠ WARNING

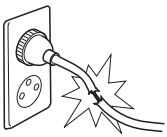
- When using the power cord set (inlet type) that came with this product, make sure the connector is securely inserted in the inlet of the product.
  When securing measure is provided, secure the cord with the fixture properly.
  If the power cord (inlet type) is not connected to the product securely, a contact problem may lead to increased resistance, overheating, and risk of fire.



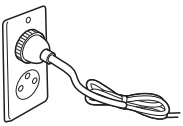
- Check whether the power cord is not stepped on or pinched by a table and so on.
  Overheating may occur there, leading to a risk of fire.



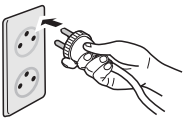
- Check whether the power cord is damaged. Check whether the sheath is damaged.
  If the power plug, cord, or sheath is damaged, replace with a new power cord (with plug and connector on each end) specified by KMBT. Using the damaged power cord may result in fire or electric shock.



- Do not bundle or tie the power cord.
  Overheating may occur there, leading to a risk of fire.

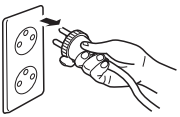


- Check whether dust is collected around the power plug and wall outlet.
  Using the power plug and wall outlet without removing dust may result in fire.



- Do not insert the power plug into the wall outlet with a wet hand.
  The risk of electric shock exists.

- When unplugging the power cord, grasp the plug, not the cable.
  The cable may be broken, leading to a risk of fire and electric shock.

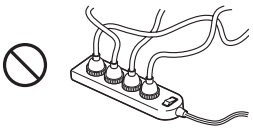


Wiring

⚠ WARNING

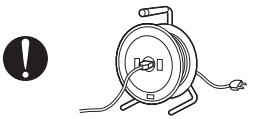
- Never use multi-plug adapters to plug multiple power cords in the same outlet.

  If used, the risk of fire exists.



- When an extension cord is required, use a specified one. Current that can flow in the extension cord is limited, so using a too long extension cord may result in fire.

  Do not use an extension cable reel with the cable taken up. Fire may result.



2. Installation Requirements

Prohibited Installation Places

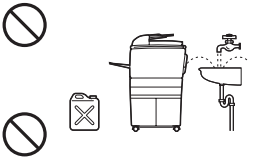
⚠ WARNING

- Do not place the product near flammable materials or volatile materials that may catch fire.

  A risk of fire exists.

- Do not place the product in a place exposed to water such as rain.

  A risk of fire and electric shock exists.

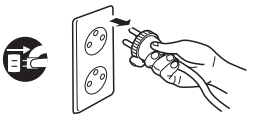


When not Using the Product for a long time

⚠ WARNING

- When the product is not used over an extended period of time (holidays, etc.), switch it off and unplug the power cord.

  Dust collected around the power plug and outlet may cause fire.



Ventilation

⚠ CAUTION

- The product generates ozone gas during operation, but it will not be harmful to the human body.

  If a bad smell of ozone is present in the following cases, ventilate the room.

  a. When the product is used in a poorly ventilated room
  b. When taking a lot of copies
  c. When using multiple products at the same time



Stability

⚠ CAUTION

- Be sure to lock the caster stoppers.

  In the case of an earthquake and so on, the product may slide, leading to a injury.

Inspection before Servicing

⚠ CAUTION

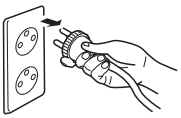
- Before conducting an inspection, read all relevant documentation (service manual, technical notices, etc.) and proceed with the inspection following the prescribed procedure in safety clothes, using only the prescribed tools. Do not make any adjustment not described in the documentation.

  If the prescribed procedure or tool is not used, the product may break and a risk of injury or fire exists.



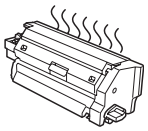
- Before conducting an inspection, be sure to disconnect the power plugs from the product and options.

  When the power plug is inserted in the wall outlet, some units are still powered even if the POWER switch is turned OFF. A risk of electric shock exists.



- The area around the fixing unit is hot.

  You may get burnt.

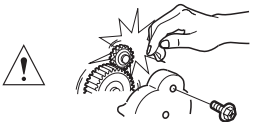


Work Performed with the Product Powered On

⚠ WARNING

- Take every care when making adjustments or performing an operation check with the product powered.

  If you make adjustments or perform an operation check with the external cover detached, you may touch live or high-voltage parts or you may be caught in moving gears or the timing belt, leading to a risk of injury.



- Take every care when servicing with the external cover detached.

  High-voltage exists around the drum unit. A risk of electric shock exists.

Safety Checkpoints

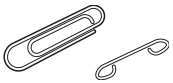
⚠ WARNING

- Check the exterior and frame for edges, burrs, and other damage.

  The user or CE may be injured.

- Do not allow any metal parts such as clips, staples, and screws to fall into the product.

  They can short internal circuits and cause electric shock or fire.



- Check wiring for squeezing and any other damage.

  Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire.

- Carefully remove all toner remnants and dust from electrical parts and electrode units such as a charging corona unit.

  Current can leak, leading to a risk of product trouble or fire.

- Check high-voltage cables and sheaths for any damage.

  Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire.



Safety Checkpoints

⚠ WARNING

- Check electrode units such as a charging corona unit for deterioration and sign of leakage.

  Current can leak, leading to a risk of trouble or fire.

- Before disassembling or adjusting the write unit (P/H unit) incorporating a laser, make sure that the power cord has been disconnected.

  The laser light can enter your eye, leading to a risk of loss of eyesight.

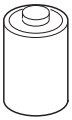


- Do not remove the cover of the write unit. Do not supply power with the write unit shifted from the specified mounting position.

  The laser light can enter your eye, leading to a risk of loss of eyesight.

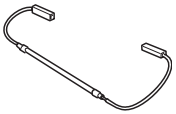
- When replacing a lithium battery, replace it with a new lithium battery specified in the Parts Guide Manual. Dispose of the used lithium battery using the method specified by local authority.

  Improper replacement can cause explosion.



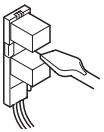
- After replacing a part to which AC voltage is applied (e.g., optical lamp and fixing lamp), be sure to check the installation state.

  A risk of fire exists.



- Check the interlock switch and actuator for loosening and check whether the interlock functions properly.

  If the interlock does not function, you may receive an electric shock or be injured when you insert your hand in the product (e.g., for clearing paper jam).



- Make sure the wiring cannot come into contact with sharp edges, burrs, or other pointed parts.

  Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire.



Safety Checkpoints

⚠ WARNING

- Make sure that all screws, components, wiring, connectors, etc. that were removed for safety check and maintenance have been reinstalled in the original location. (Pay special attention to forgotten connectors, pinched cables, forgotten screws, etc.)

  A risk of product trouble, electric shock, and fire exists.



Handling of Consumables

⚠ WARNING

- Toner and developer are not harmful substances, but care must be taken not to breathe excessive amounts or let the substances come into contact with eyes, etc. It may be stimulative.

  If the substances get in the eye, rinse with plenty of water immediately. When symptoms are noticeable, consult a physician.



- Never throw the used cartridge and toner into fire.

  You may be burned due to dust explosion.

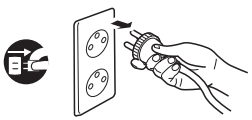


Handling of Service Materials

⚠ CAUTION

- Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.

  Drum cleaner (isopropyl alcohol) and roller cleaner (acetone-based) are highly flammable and must be handled with care. A risk of fire exists.



- Do not replace the cover or turn the product ON before any solvent remnants on the cleaned parts have fully evaporated.

  A risk of fire exists.



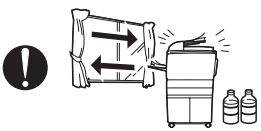
Handling of Service Materials

⚠ CAUTION

- Use only a small amount of cleaner at a time and take care not to spill any liquid. If this happens, immediately wipe it off.
  A risk of fire exists.



- When using any solvent, ventilate the room well.
  Breathing large quantities of organic solvents can lead to discomfort.



[4] Used Batteries Precautions

ALL Areas

CAUTION

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced.
Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Germany

VORSICHT!

Explosionsgefahr bei unsachgemäßem Austausch der Batterie.
Ersatz nur durch denselben oder einen vom Hersteller empfohlenen gleichwertigen Typ.
Entsorgung gebrauchter Batterien nach Angaben des Herstellers.

France

ATTENTION

Il y a danger d'explosion s'il y a remplacement incorrect de la batterie.
Remplacer uniquement avec une batterie du même type ou d'un type équivalent recommandé par le constructeur.
Mettre au rebut les batteries usagées conformément aux instructions du fabricant.

Denmark

ADVARSEL!

Lithiumbatteri - Eksplosionsfare ved fejlagtig håndtering.
Udskiftning må kun ske med batteri af samme fabrikat og type.
Levér det brugte batteri tilbage til leverandøren.

Finland, Sweden

VAROITUS

Paristo voi räjähtää, jos se on virheellisesti asennettu.
Vaihda paristo ainoastaan laitevalmistajan suosittelemaan tyyppiin.
Hävitä käytetty paristo valmistajan ohjeiden mukaisesti.

VARNING

Explosionsfara vid felaktigt batteribyte.
Använd samma batterityp eller en ekvivalent typ som rekommenderas av apparattillverkaren.
Kassera använt batteri enligt fabrikantens instruktion.

Norway

ADVARSEL

Eksplosjonsfare ved feilaktig skifte av batteri.
Benytt samme batteritype eller en tilsvarende type anbefalt av apparatfabrikanten.
Brukte batterier kasseres i henhold til fabrikantens instruksjoner.

[5] Laser Safety

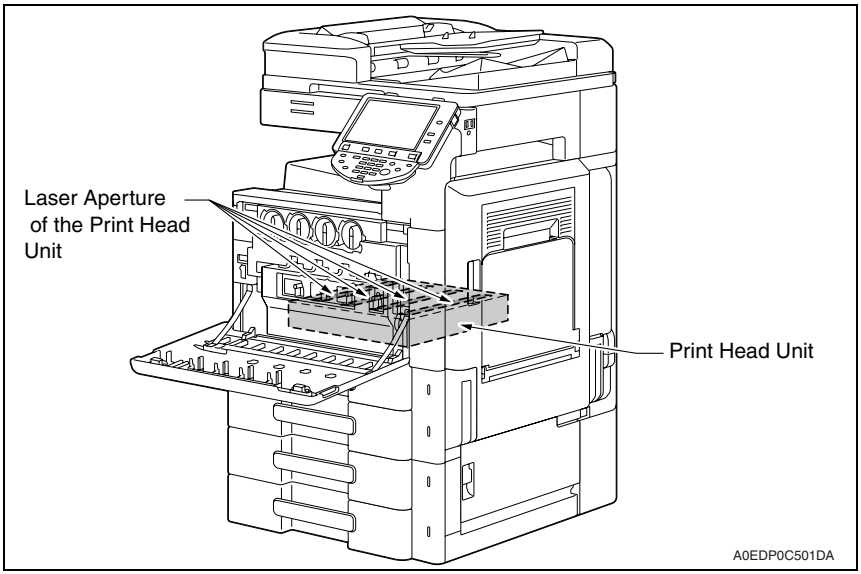
- This is a digital machine certified as a Class 1 laser product. There is no possibility of danger from a laser, provided the machine is serviced according to the instruction in this manual.

5.1 Internal Laser Radiation

semiconductor laser		
Maximum power of the laser diode		15 mW
Maximum average radiation power (*)	bizhub C360/C280	8.0 µW
	bizhub C220	5.3 µW
Wavelength		770-800 nm

*at laser aperture of the Print Head Unit

- This product employs a Class 3B laser diode that emits an invisible laser beam. The laser diode and the scanning polygon mirror are incorporated in the print head unit.
- The print head unit is NOT A FIELD SERVICEABLE ITEM. Therefore, the print head unit should not be opened under any circumstances.



U.S.A., Canada
(CDRH Regulation)

- This machine is certified as a Class 1 Laser product under Radiation Performance Standard according to the Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act of 1990. Compliance is mandatory for Laser products marketed in the United States and is reported to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS). This means that the device does not produce hazardous laser radiation.

- The label shown on page S-16 indicates compliance with the CDRH regulations and must be attached to laser products marketed in the United States.

CAUTION
- **Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.**

semiconductor laser	
Maximum power of the laser diode	15 mW
Wavelength	770-800 nm

All Areas

CAUTION
- **Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.**

semiconductor laser	
Maximum power of the laser diode	15 mW
Wavelength	770-800 nm

Denmark

ADVARSEL
- **Usynlig laserstråling ved åbning, når sikkerhedsafbrydere er ude af funktion. Undgå udsættelse for stråling. Klasse 1 laser produkt der opfylder IEC60825-1 sikkerheds kravene.**

halvlederlaser	
Laserdiodens højeste styrke	15 mW
bølgelængden	770-800 nm

Finland, Sweden

LUOKAN 1 LASERLAITE
KLASS 1 LASER APPARAT

VAROITUS!
- **Laitteen käyttäminen muulla kuin tässä käyttöohjeessa mainitulla tavalla saattaa altistaa käyttäjän turvallisuusluokan 1 ylittävälle näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle.**

puolijohdelaser	
Laserdiodin suurin teho	15 mW
aallonpituus	770-800 nm

VARNING!
- **Om apparaten används på annat sätt än i denna bruksanvisning specificerats, kan användaren utsättas för osynlig laserstrålning, som överskrider gränsen för laserklass 1.**

halvledarlaser	
Den maximala effekten för laserdioden	15 mW
våglängden	770-800 nm

VARO!
- **Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettaessa olet alttiina näkymättomälle lasersäteilylle. Älä katso säteeseen.**

VARNING!
- **Osynlig laserstråining när denna del är öppnad och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej stråien.**

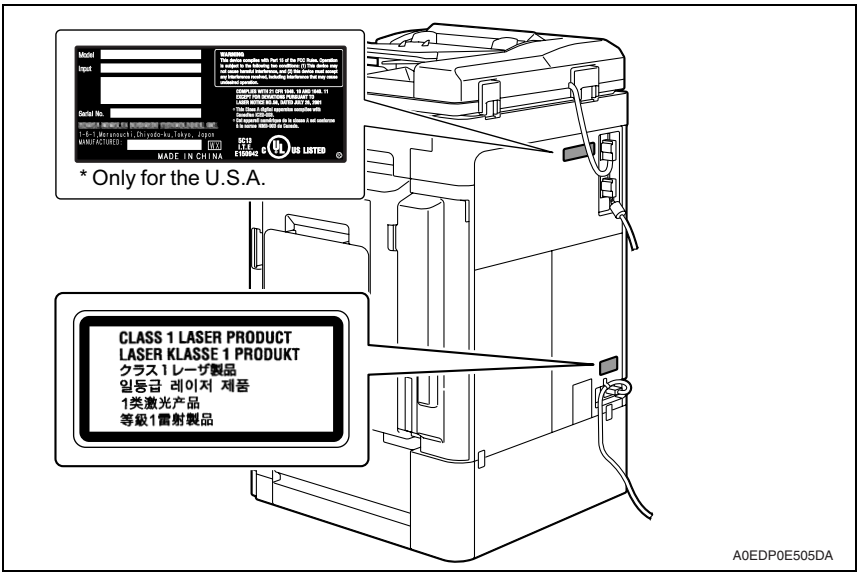
Norway

ADVERSEL
- **Dersom apparatet brukes på annen måte enn spesifisert i denne bruksanvisning, kan brukeren utsettes för unsynlig laserstrålning, som overskrider grensen for laser klass 1.**

halvleder laser	
Maksimal effekt till laserdiode	15 mW
bølgelengde	770-800 nm

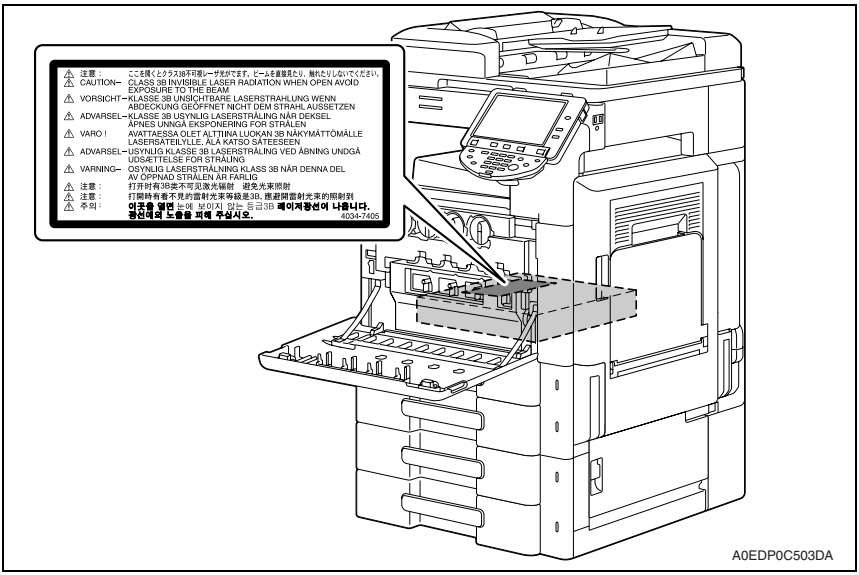
5.2 Laser Safety Label

- A laser safety label is attached to the inside of the machine as shown below.



5.3 Laser Caution Label

- A laser caution label is attached to the outside of the machine as shown below.

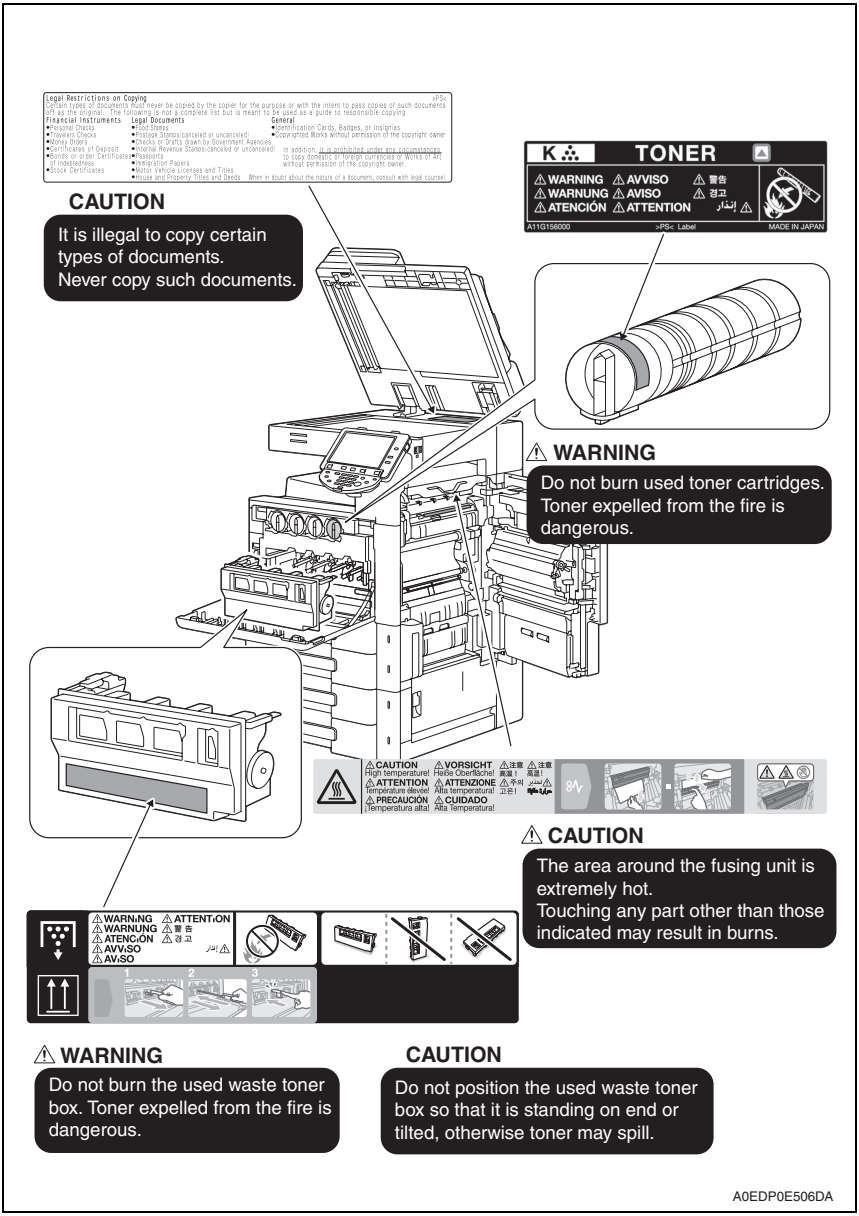


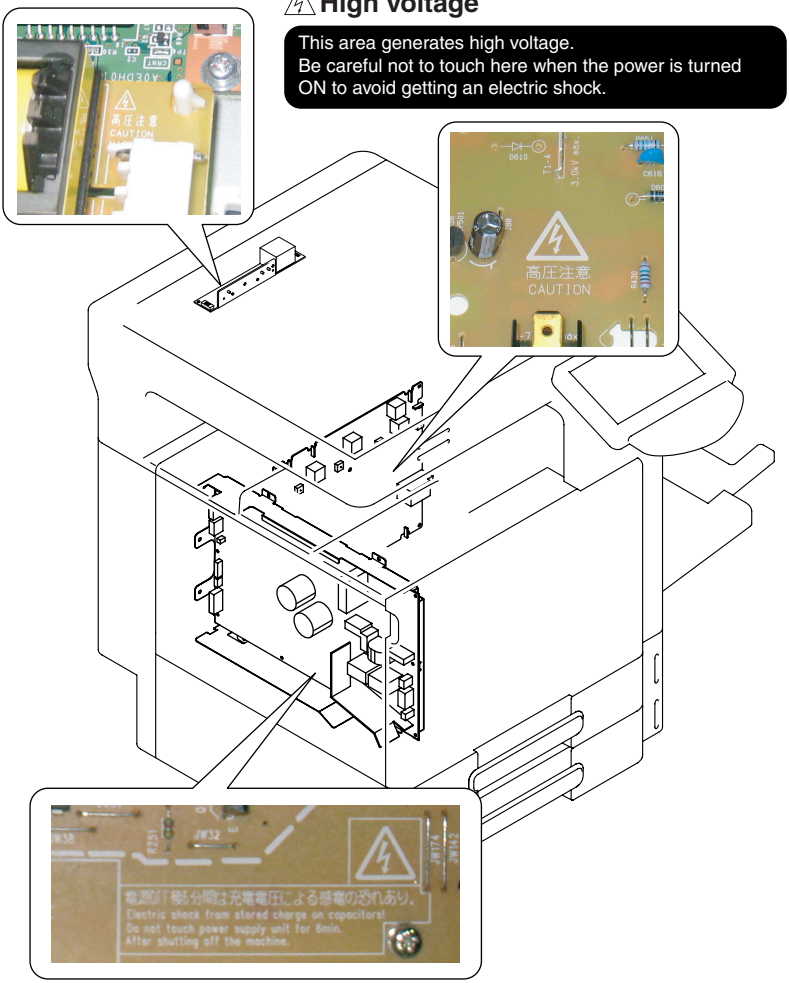
5.4 PRECAUTIONS FOR HANDLING THE LASER EQUIPMENT

- When laser protective goggles are to be used, select ones with a lens conforming to the above specifications.
- When a disassembly job needs to be performed in the laser beam path, such as when working around the printerhead and PC drum, be sure first to turn the printer OFF.
- If the job requires that the printer be left ON, take off your watch and ring and wear laser protective goggles.
- A highly reflective tool can be dangerous if it is brought into the laser beam path. Use utmost care when handling tools on the user's premises.

WARNING INDICATIONS ON THE MACHINE

Caution labels shown are attached in some areas on/in the machine.
When accessing these areas for maintenance, repair, or adjustment, special care should be taken to avoid burns and electric shock.





⚠ CAUTION:

- **You may be burned or injured if you touch any area that you are advised not to touch by any caution label. Do not remove caution labels. If any caution label has come off or soiled and therefore the caution cannot be read, contact our service office.**

MEASURES TO TAKE IN CASE OF AN ACCIDENT

1. If an accident has occurred, the distributor who has been notified first must immediately take emergency measures to provide relief to affected persons and to prevent further damage.
2. If a report of a serious accident has been received from a customer, an on-site evaluation must be carried out quickly and KMBT must be notified.
3. To determine the cause of the accident, conditions and materials must be recorded through direct on-site checks, in accordance with instructions issued by KMBT.
4. For reports and measures concerning serious accidents, follow the regulations specified by every distributor.

Composition of the service manual

This service manual consists of Theory of Operation section and Field Service section to explain the main machine and its corresponding options.

Theory of Operation section gives, as information for the CE to get a full understanding of the product, a rough outline of the object and role of each function, the relationship between the electrical system and the mechanical system, and the timing of operation of each part.

Field Service section gives, as information required by the CE at the site (or at the customer's premise), a rough outline of the service schedule and its details, maintenance steps, the object and role of each adjustment, error codes and supplementary information.

The basic configuration of each section is as follows. However some options may not be applied to the following configuration.

<Theory of Operation section>

OUTLINE:	Explanation of system configuration, product specifications, unit configuration, and paper path
CONFIGURATION/ OPERATION:	Explanation of configuration of each unit, operating system, and control system

<Field Service section>

OUTLINE:	Explanation of system configuration, and product specifications
MAINTENANCE:	Explanation of service schedule, maintenance steps, service tools, removal/reinstallation methods of major parts, and firmware version up method etc.
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING:	Explanation of utility mode, service mode, and mechanical adjustment etc.
TROUBLESHOOTING:	Explanation of lists of jam codes and error codes, and their countermeasures etc.
APPENDIX:	Parts layout drawings, connector layout drawings, timing chart, overall layout drawing are attached.

Notation of the service manual

A. Product name

In this manual, each of the products is described as follows:

(1)	bizhub C360/C280/C220:	Main body
(2)	Microsoft Windows 98:	Windows 98
	Microsoft Windows Me:	Windows Me
	Microsoft Windows NT 4.0:	Windows NT 4.0 or Windows NT
	Microsoft Windows 2000:	Windows 2000
	Microsoft Windows XP:	Windows XP
	Microsoft Windows Vista:	Windows Vista
	When the description is made in combination of the OS's mentioned above:	
		Windows 98/Me
		Windows NT 4.0/2000
		Windows NT/2000/XP/Vista
		Windows 98/Me/ NT/2000/XP/Vista

B. Brand name

The company names and product names mentioned in this manual are the brand name or the registered trademark of each company.

C. Feeding direction

- When the long side of the paper is parallel with the feeding direction, it is called short edge feeding. The feeding direction which is perpendicular to the short edge feeding is called the long edge feeding.
- Short edge feeding will be identified with [S (abbreviation for Short edge feeding)] on the paper size. No specific notation is added for the long edge feeding.
  When the size has only the short edge feeding with no long edge feeding, [S] will not be added to the paper size.

<Sample notation>

Paper size	Feeding direction	Notation
A4	Long edge feeding	A4
	Short edge feeding	A4S
A3	Short edge feeding	A3

KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

bizhub C360/C280/C220

2012.02

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 2.1

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.
Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a specific section revised within text, 2 is shown at the left margin of the corresponding revised section.
  The number inside 2 represents the number of times the revision has been made.

- To indicate clearly a specific page that contains a revision or revisions, the page number appearing at the left or right bottom of the specific page is marked with 2 .
  The number inside 2 represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision
2012/02	2.1	1	Error corrections
2010/01	2.0	2	Description addition of the function version 3 (card ver. 88) firmaware/ Error corrections
2009/07	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition

CONTENTS

bizhub C360/C280/C220 Main body

OUTLINE

1. SYSTEM CONFIGURATION 1
2. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS 3
2.1 Type 3
2.2 Functions 4
2.3 Paper 6
2.4 Materials 7
2.5 Print volume 8
2.6 Machine specifications 9
2.7 Operating environment 9
2.8 Print functions 9
2.9 Scan functions 12

MAINTENANCE

3. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE ITEMS 15
3.1 Concept of periodical maintenance 15
3.1.1 Main body 15
3.1.2 DF-617 16
3.1.3 PC-107/207/408 17
3.1.4 JS-505 17
3.1.5 JS-603/FS-527/SD-509/PK-517 17
3.1.6 FS-529 18
3.2 Periodical replacement parts list 19
3.2.1 Main body 19
3.2.2 Option 20
3.3 Periodical cleaning parts list 21
3.3.1 Main body 21
3.3.2 Option 21
3.4 Concept of parts life 22
3.4.1 Life value of consumables and parts 22
3.4.2 Conditions for life specifications values 24
3.4.3 Control causing inhibited printing for one part when an inhibited-printing event occurs in another part 24

4. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE 25
4.1 Housing section 25
4.1.1 Replacing the ozone filter 25
4.2 Photo conductor section 26
4.2.1 Replacing the drum unit 26
4.3 Charging section 29
4.3.1 Cleaning of the electrostatic charger wire 29
4.4 Developing section 30
4.4.1 Replacing the developing unit 30
4.5 Toner supply section 31
4.5.1 Replacing the toner cartridge 31
4.6 1st transfer section 33
4.6.1 Cleaning of the image transfer entrance guide 33
4.6.2 Cleaning of the IDC registration sensor/MK,YC 33
4.6.3 Replacing the transfer belt unit 34
4.7 2nd transfer/separation section 36
4.7.1 Replacing the transfer roller unit 36
4.8 Toner collection section 37
4.8.1 Replacing the waste toner box 37
4.8.2 Cleaning of the area around the waste toner collecting port 38
4.9 Paper feed section 39
4.9.1 Replacing the tray 1 feed roller/tray 1 pick-up roller 39
4.9.2 Replacing the tray 1 separation roller assy 41
4.9.3 Replacing the tray 2 feed roller/tray 2 pick-up roller 43
4.9.4 Replacing the tray 2 separation roller assy 43
4.9.5 Replacing the manual bypass tray feed roller 43
4.9.6 Replacing the manual bypass tray separation roller assy 45
4.10 Registration section 47
4.10.1 Cleaning of the timing roller 47
4.11 Fusing section 47
4.11.1 Replacing the fusing unit 47
4.12 Duplex section 49
4.12.1 Cleaning of the duplex transport rollers 49
5. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEMS 50
5.1 Disassembly/adjustment prohibited items 50
5.1.1 CCD unit 50
5.1.2 PH unit 50
5.1.3 Fusing unit 50

5.2 Notes when transporting the machine 51
5.2.1 Protective materials 51
5.3 Disassembly/reassembly parts list 52
5.4 Cleaning parts list 54
5.5 Disassembly/reassembly procedure 55
5.5.1 Front door 55
5.5.2 Left cover 55
5.5.3 Exit tray 56
5.5.4 Rear right cover 56
5.5.5 Upper right cover 56
5.5.6 Upper rear cover 57
5.5.7 Lower rear cover/1 57
5.5.8 Lower rear cover/2 57
5.5.9 Scanner rear cover 58
5.5.10 Scanner right cover 58
5.5.11 Scanner right front cover 59
5.5.12 USB interface cover 59
5.5.13 Scanner left front cover 59
5.5.14 Scanner upper front cover 60
5.5.15 Scanner left cover 60
5.5.16 Scanner upper rear cover 60
5.5.17 Scanner front cover 61
5.5.18 Slit glass cover 62
5.5.19 Original glass 62
5.5.20 Control panel assy 63
5.5.21 Tray 1 63
5.5.22 Tray 2 64
5.5.23 Front side relay board cover 65
5.5.24 Front cover 65
5.5.25 Tray 1 paper feed unit 66
5.5.26 Tray 2 paper feed unit 67
5.5.27 PH unit 69
5.5.28 CCD board unit 72
5.5.29 Exposure unit 73
5.5.30 Sub hopper assy 75
5.5.31 Right door assy 76
5.5.32 Manual bypass tray unit 78
5.5.33 Regist unit 81

5.5.34 Conveyance unit 82
5.5.35 Hard disk drive (HDD) 83
5.5.36 How to open PWB box 84
5.5.37 Main drive unit 86
5.5.38 Fusing drive unit 90
5.5.39 Hopper drive unit (C/K, Y/M) 92
5.5.40 Scanner relay board (REYB/SCAN) 93
5.5.41 Inverter board (INVB) 93
5.5.42 Machine condition monitor board (MCMB) 95
5.5.43 Front side relay board (FREYB) 95
5.5.44 DC power supply (DCPU) 96
5.5.45 PH relay board (PHREYB) 97
5.5.46 Printer control board (PRCB) 98
5.5.47 Service EEPROM board (SVERB) 99
5.5.48 MFP board (MFPB) 101
5.5.49 High voltage unit (HV) 104
5.5.50 SODIMM (DIMM) 105
5.5.51 NVRAM board (NRB) 106
5.5.52 Paper feed tray 1 paper FD sensor board (PSDB/1) 106
5.5.53 Paper feed tray 2 paper FD sensor board (PSDB/2) 107
5.5.54 Paper feed tray 1 LED board, Paper feed tray 2 LED board (LEDB1, LEDB2) 108
5.5.55 Scanner motor (M201) 109
5.5.56 Duplex transport motor (M5) 112
5.5.57 Toner supply motor/YM, CK (M8, M9) 114
5.5.58 Transport motor (M1) 115
5.5.59 Color PC motor (M2) 116
5.5.60 Fusing motor (M3) 116
5.5.61 Switchback motor (M4) 117
5.5.62 Fusing pressure roller retraction motor (M11) 117
5.5.63 Toner cartridge motor/YM (M6) 118
5.5.64 Toner cartridge motor/CK (M7) 118
5.5.65 Color dev. unit engaged motor (M10) 120
5.5.66 Paper feed tray 1 lift-up motor (M12) 121
5.5.67 Paper feed tray 2 lift-up motor (M13) 123
5.5.68 Transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor (FM6) 123
5.5.69 Paper feed tray 1 paper feed clutch (CL3) 125
5.5.70 Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport clutch (CL2) 126

5.5.71 Paper feed tray 2 paper feed clutch (CL1) 126
5.5.72 Manual paper feed clutch (CL7) 127
5.5.73 Developing clutch/K (CL6) 128
5.5.74 Registration roller clutch (CL4) 129
5.5.75 IDC registration sensor shutter solenoid (SD2) 130
5.5.76 IDC registration sensor/MK, YC (IDCS/MK, YC) assy 131
5.5.77 PH window cleaning pad 132
5.5.78 Scanner drive cable 133
5.6 Cleaning procedure 139
5.6.1 Transfer belt unit 139
5.6.2 PH window 139
5.6.3 Tray 1 feed roller, tray 1 pick-up roller, tray 1 separation roller 140
5.6.4 Tray 2 feed roller, tray 2 pick-up roller, tray 2 separation roller 141
5.6.5 Tray 2 transport roller 142
5.6.6 Manual bypass tray feed roller 142
5.6.7 Manual bypass tray separation roller 143
5.6.8 Original glass 143
5.6.9 Scanner rails 144
5.6.10 Mirrors (1st/2nd/3rd) 145
5.6.11 Lens 145
5.6.12 CCD sensor 146
6. SERVICE TOOL 147
6.1 Service material list 147
6.2 CE tool list 147
7. FIRMWARE REWRITING 148
7.1 Outline 148
7.2 USB memory 148
7.2.1 Preparation 148
7.2.2 Procedure 149
7.2.3 Action when data transfer fails 152
7.3 Updating the firmware with the Internet ISW 153
7.3.1 Outline 153
7.3.2 Service environment 153
7.3.3 Preparations for firmware rewriting 153
7.3.4 Firmware rewriting from the control panel 156
7.3.5 Firmware rewriting from the CS Remote Care 158
7.3.6 Error code list for the Internet ISW 159

8. COMMERCIALLY AVAILABLE PARTS 162
8.1 Installing the key counter 162
8.1.1 Configuration 162
8.1.2 Procedure 162
8.2 Installing the original size detection 2 sensor (PS205) 165
8.2.1 Procedure 165

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

9. HOW TO USE THE ADJUSTMENT/SETTING SECTION 167
10. UTILITY 168
10.1 List of utility mode 168
10.2 Starting/Exiting 181
10.2.1 Starting procedure 181
10.2.2 Exiting procedure 181
10.3 Touch Panel Adjustment 182
10.4 One-Touch User Box Registration 183
10.4.1 Create One-Touch destination-Address Book (Public)/(Personal) 183
10.4.2 Create One-Touch destination-Group 184
10.4.3 Create One-Touch destination-E-mail Settings 185
10.4.4 Create User Box 185
10.4.5 Create User Box-Public/Personal User Box 185
10.4.6 Create User Box-Bulletin Board User Box 186
10.4.7 Create User Box-Relay User Box 186
10.4.8 Limiting Access to Destinations 187
10.4.9 Limiting Access to Destinations-Apply Levels/Groups to Destinations 187
10.5 User Settings 188
10.5.1 System Settings-Language Selection 188
10.5.2 System Settings-Measurement Unit Settings 188
10.5.3 System Settings-Paper Tray Settings 188
10.5.4 System Settings-Auto Color Level Adjust. 189
10.5.5 System Settings-Power Save Settings 189
10.5.6 System Settings-Output Settings 190
10.5.7 System Settings-AE Level Adjustment 191
10.5.8 System Settings-Auto Paper Select for Small Original 191
10.5.9 System Settings-Blank Page Print Settings 191
10.5.10 System Settings-Page Number Print Position 192
10.5.11 System Settings-Select Keyboard 192
10.5.12 Custom Display Settings-Copier Settings 193

10.5.13 Custom Display Settings-Scan/Fax Settings 194
10.5.14 Custom Display Settings-User Box Settings 195
10.5.15 Custom Display Settings-Copy Screen 196
10.5.16 Custom Display Settings-Fax Active Screen 196
10.5.17 Custom Display Settings-Color Selection Settings 196
10.5.18 Custom Display Settings-Left Panel Display Default 197
10.5.19 Custom Display Settings-Search Option Settings 197
10.5.20 Copier Settings-Auto Booklet ON when Fold & Staple 197
10.5.21 Copier Settings-Auto Zoom for Combine/Booklet 197
10.5.22 Copier Settings-Auto Sort/Group Selection 198
10.5.23 Copier Settings-Default Copy Settings 198
10.5.24 Copier Settings-Default Enlarge Display Settings 199
10.5.25 Copier Settings-When AMS Direction is Incorrect 199
10.5.26 Copier Settings-Separate Scan Output Method 199
10.5.27 Copier Settings-Enlargement Rotation 200
10.5.28 Copier Settings-Auto Zoom (Platen) 200
10.5.29 Copier Settings-Auto Zoom (ADF) 200
10.5.30 Copier Settings-Specify Default Tray when APS Off 200
10.5.31 Copier Settings-Select Tray for Insert Sheet 201
10.5.32 Copier Settings-Half-Fold Specification 201
10.5.33 Copier Settings-Print Jobs During Copy Operation 201
10.5.34 Copier Settings-Automatic Image Rotation 201
10.5.35 Copier Settings-Finishing Program 202
10.5.36 Copier Settings-Card Shot Settings 202
10.5.37 Scan/Fax Settings-JPEG Compression Level 203
10.5.38 Scan/Fax Settings-Black Compression Level 203
10.5.39 Scan/Fax Settings-TWAIN Lock Time 203
10.5.40 Scan/Fax Settings-Default Scan/Fax Settings 203
10.5.41 Scan/Fax Settings-Default Enlarge Display Settings 204
10.5.42 Scan/Fax Settings-Compact PDF/XPS Compression Level 204
10.5.43 Scan/Fax Settings-Color TIFF Type 205
10.5.44 Scan/Fax Settings-OCR Operation Setting 205
10.5.45 Scan/Fax Settings-Graphic Outlining 205
10.5.46 Printer Settings-Basic Settings 205
10.5.47 Printer Settings-Paper Setting 208
10.5.48 Printer Settings-PCL Settings 209
10.5.49 Printer Settings-PS Setting 211

10.5.50 Printer Settings-XPS Settings 212
10.5.51 Printer Settings-Print Reports 213
10.5.52 Printer Settings-TIFF Image Paper Setting 213
10.5.53 Change Password 214
10.5.54 Change E-mail Address 214
10.5.55 Change Icon 214
10.5.56 Register Authentication Settings 215
10.5.57 Registered Application Setting-Default Application Selection 215
10.5.58 Cellular Phone/PDA Setting-Link File Error Notification 215
10.5.59 Cellular Phone/PDA Setting-Proxy Server Use 215
10.5.60 Cellular Phone/PDA Setting-Print Settings 215
10.6 Administrator Settings 216
10.6.1 System Settings-Power Save Settings 216
10.6.2 System Settings-Output Settings 217
10.6.3 System Settings-Date/Time Settings 218
10.6.4 System Settings-Daylight Saving Time 218
10.6.5 System Settings-Weekly Timer Settings 219
10.6.6 System Settings-Restrict User Access 220
10.6.7 System Settings-Expert Adjustment 222
10.6.8 System Settings-List/Counter 249
10.6.9 System Settings-Reset Settings 250
10.6.10 System Settings-User Box Settings 252
10.6.11 System Settings-Standard Size Setting 254
10.6.12 System Settings-Stamp Settings 255
10.6.13 System Settings-Blank Page Print Settings 255
10.6.14 System Settings-Application Key Settings 255
10.6.15 System Settings-Skip Job Operation Settings 256
10.6.16 System Settings-Default Bypass Paper Type Setting 256
10.6.17 System Settings-Page Number Print Position 256
10.6.18 System Settings-Advanced Preview Setting 256
10.6.19 Administrator/Machine Settings-Administrator Registration 256
10.6.20 Administrator/Machine Settings-Input Machine Address 257
10.6.21 One-Touch/User Box Registration-Create One-Touch Destination 257
10.6.22 One-Touch/User Box Registration-Create User Box 259
10.6.23 One-Touch/User Box Registration -One-Touch/User Box Registration List 260
10.6.24 One-Touch/User Box Registration-Maximum Number of User Boxes 261
10.6.25 User Authentication/Account Track-General Settings 261

10.6.26 User Authentication/Account Track-User Authentication Setting 264
10.6.27 User Authentication/Account Track-Account Track Setting 266
10.6.28 User Authentication/Account Track-Print without Authentication 267
10.6.29 User Authentication/Account Track-Print Counter List 267
10.6.30 User Authentication/Account Track-External Server Settings 268
10.6.31 User Authentication/Account Track-Limiting Access to Destinations 268
10.6.32 User Authentication/Account Track-Authentication Device Settings 269
10.6.33 User Authentication/Account Track-Auth/Acct Track Common Setting 270
10.6.34 User Authentication/Account Track-Scan to Home Settings 270
10.6.35 User Authentication/Account Track-Scan to Authorized Folder Settings ... 271
10.6.36 Network Settings-TCP/IP Settings 271
10.6.37 Network Setting-NetWare Settings 277
10.6.38 Network Settings-http Server Settings 280
10.6.39 Network Settings-FTP Settings 282
10.6.40 Network Settings-SMB Setting 283
10.6.41 Network Settings-LDAP Settings 285
10.6.42 Network Settings-E-mail Settings 290
10.6.43 Network Settings-SNMP Setting 297
10.6.44 Network Settings-AppleTalk Settings 301
10.6.45 Network Settings-Bonjour Setting 301
10.6.46 Network Settings-TCP Socket Settings 302
10.6.47 Network Settings-Network Fax Setting 303
10.6.48 Network Settings-WebDAV Settings 304
10.6.49 Network Settings-Web Service Settings 306
10.6.50 Network Settings-SSDP Settings 309
10.6.51 Network Settings-Detail Settings 309
10.6.52 Network Settings-IEEE802.1X Authentication Settings 314
10.6.53 Network Settings-Web Browser Setting 314
10.6.54 Network Settings-Bluetooth Setting 315
10.6.55 Copier Settings-Auto Zoom (Platen) 315
10.6.56 Copier Settings-Auto Zoom (ADF) 315
10.6.57 Copier Settings-Specify Default Tray when APS OFF 315
10.6.58 Copier Settings-Select Tray for Insert Sheet 315
10.6.59 Copier Settings-Print Jobs During Copy Operation 316
10.6.60 Copier Settings-Automatic Image Rotation 316
10.6.61 Copier Settings-Card Shot Settings 316
10.6.62 Printer Settings-USB Timeout 317

10.6.63 Printer Settings-Network Timeout 317
10.6.64 Printer Settings-Print XPS Errors 317
10.6.65 Printer Settings-PSWC Direct Print 317
10.6.66 Printer Settings-Assign Account to Acquire Device Info 318
10.6.67 Fax Settings 318
10.6.68 Fax Settings-Header Information 318
10.6.69 Fax Settings-Header/Footer Position 318
10.6.70 Fax Settings-Line Parameter Setting 319
10.6.71 Fax Settings-TX/RX Settings 320
10.6.72 Fax Settings-Function Settings 323
10.6.73 Fax Settings-PBX Connection Setting 327
10.6.74 Fax Settings-Report Settings 327
10.6.75 Fax Settings-Job Settings List 330
10.6.76 Fax Settings-Multi Lines Settings 331
10.6.77 Fax Settings-Network Fax Settings 332
10.6.78 System Connection-OpenAPI Settings 335
10.6.79 System Connection-Call Remote Center 337
10.6.80 System Connection-Automatic Prefix/Suffix Setting 337
10.6.81 System Connection-Printer Information 337
10.6.82 System Connection-Cellular Phone/PDA Setting 337
10.6.83 Security Settings-Administrator Password 338
10.6.84 Security Settings-User Box Admin. Setting 338
10.6.85 Security Settings-Administrator Security Levels 339
10.6.86 Security Settings-Security Details 339
10.6.87 Security Settings-Enhanced Security Mode 345
10.6.88 Security Settings-HDD Settings 348
10.6.89 Security Settings-Function Management Setting 352
10.6.90 Security Settings-Stamp Settings 353
10.6.91 Security Settings-Image Log Transfer Settings 354
10.6.92 Security Settings-Driver Password Encryption Setting 354
10.6.93 License Settings-Get Request Code 355
10.6.94 License Settings-Install License 355
10.6.95 License Settings-List of Enabled Functions 355
10.6.96 OpenAPI Authentication Management-Restriction Code Setting 356
10.7 Banner Printing 356
10.8 My Panel Settings 356
10.9 Device Information 357
10.10 Meter Count 358

10.10.1 Counter details 358
11. ADJUSTMENT ITEM LIST 362
12. SERVICE MODE 364
12.1 List of service mode 364
12.2 Starting/Exiting 369
12.2.1 Starting procedure 369
12.3 Date/Time Input mode 370
12.4 Machine 371
12.4.1 Fusing Temperature 371
12.4.2 Fusing Transport Speed 372
12.4.3 Org. Size Detecting Sensor Adj. 372
12.4.4 Printer Area-Leading Edge Adjustment 373
12.4.5 Printer Area-Printer Image Centering Side 1 374
12.4.6 Printer Area-Leading Edge Adj. Side 2 (Duplex) 375
12.4.7 Printer Area-Prt. Image Center. Side 2 (Dup) 376
12.4.8 Printer Area-Paper Feed Direction Adj. 377
12.4.9 Tray Printing Position: Tip 378
12.4.10 Scan Area 379
12.4.11 Scan Area-Image Position: Leading Edge 380
12.4.12 Scan Area-Scanner Image Centering 381
12.4.13 Scan Area-Main Scan Zoom Adj. 382
12.4.14 Scan Area-Sub Scan Zoom Adj. 383
12.4.15 Printer Reg. Loop Adj. 384
12.4.16 Color Registration Adjustment-Cyan, Magenta, Yellow 385
12.4.17 Exhaust fan Stop Delay 386
12.4.18 Skew adjustment-Print Head Skew Adj. 386
12.4.19 Skew adjustment-Print Head Skew Reset 387
12.4.20 Manual Bypass Tray Width Adj 388
12.4.21 Lead Edge Erase Adjustment 389
12.4.22 ADF Scan Glass Contamination 389
12.4.23 Non-Image Area Erase Check 390
12.5 Firmware Version 390
12.6 Imaging Process Adjustment 391
12.6.1 Gradation Adjust 391
12.6.2 Max Image Density Adj 392
12.6.3 Image Background Adj 393
12.6.4 Transfer Voltage Fine Adj-Primary transfer adj. 394
12.6.5 Transfer Voltage Fine Adj-Secondary transfer adj. 395

12.6.6 Stabilizer-Stabilization Only ... 395
12.6.7 Stabilizer-Initialize+Image Stabilization ... 396
12.6.8 Thick Paper Density Adjustment ... 396
12.6.9 Paper separation adjustment ... 397
12.6.10 Manual Toner Add ... 397
12.6.11 Monochrome Density Adjustment ... 398
12.6.12 Grad/Dev AC Bias V Selection ... 398
12.7 CS Remote Care ... 399
12.7.1 Outlines ... 399
12.7.2 Setting up the CS Remote Care ... 399
12.7.3 Software SW setting for CS Remote Care ... 404
12.7.4 Setup confirmation ... 412
12.7.5 Calling the maintenance ... 412
12.7.6 Calling the center from the administrator ... 413
12.7.7 Checking the transmission log ... 413
12.7.8 Detail on settings ... 413
12.7.9 List of the CS Remote Care error code ... 422
12.7.10 Troubleshooting for CS Remote Care ... 429
12.7.11 CS Remote Care Operation under Enhanced Security Mode ... 429
12.8 System 1 ... 430
12.8.1 Marketing Area ... 430
12.8.2 Tel/Fax Number ... 431
12.8.3 Serial Number ... 431
12.8.4 Sleep ON/OFF Choice Setting ... 432
12.8.5 Foolscap Size Setting ... 432
12.8.6 Original Size Detection ... 432
12.8.7 Install Date ... 433
12.8.8 Initialization-Clear All Data ... 433
12.8.9 Initialization-Clear Individual Data ... 433
12.8.10 Initialization-System Error Clear ... 435
12.8.11 Problem Unit Isolation Set. ... 435
12.8.12 Post card transfer table ... 436
12.8.13 Change Warm Up time ... 436
12.8.14 Machine State LED Setting ... 438
12.9 System 2 ... 439
12.9.1 HDD ... 439
12.9.2 Image Controller Setting ... 439
12.9.3 Option Board Status ... 440

12.9.4 Consumable Life Reminder 440
12.9.5 Unit Change 441
12.9.6 Software Switch Setting 441
12.9.7 Software Switch Setting-Setting items in the software switch setting 441
12.9.8 CDD Calibration 443
12.9.9 LCT Paper Size Setting 443
12.9.10 Line Mag Setting 443
12.9.11 Data Capture 444
12.9.12 ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Set.
-ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Sensitivity 446
12.9.13 ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Set.
-ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Warn/Level 447
12.9.14 ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Set.
-ADF Scan Glass Contamin. During Scan 447
12.9.15 Stamp 447
12.9.16 Network Fax Settings 448
12.9.17 Image Stabilization Setting 448
12.9.18 User Paper Settings 449
12.9.19 Coverage Rate Screen 450
12.9.20 JAM Code Display Setting 450
12.9.21 BootUp Screen 451
12.9.22 Install Data 452
12.9.23 Bluetooth Settings 452
12.10 Counter 453
12.10.1 Common procedure 453
12.10.2 Life 453
12.10.3 Service Call Counter 455
12.10.4 Section Service Call 455
12.10.5 Warning 455
12.10.6 Maintenance 455
12.10.7 Service Total 456
12.10.8 Counter of Each Mode 456
12.10.9 Service Call History (Data) 457
12.10.10 ADF Paper Pages 457
12.10.11 Paper Jam History 457
12.10.12 Fax Connection Error 457
12.10.13 ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Counter 457
12.10.14 Parts Counter (Fixed) 457

12.10.15 Jam 458
12.10.16 Section JAM 458
12.11 List Output 458
12.11.1 Batch List CSV Output 458
12.11.2 Machine Management List 459
12.11.3 Adjustment List 459
12.11.4 Parameter List 459
12.11.5 Service Parameter 459
12.11.6 Protocol Trace 459
12.11.7 Fax Setting List 459
12.11.8 Fax Analysis List 459
12.12 State Confirmation 460
12.12.1 Sensor Check 460
12.12.2 Sensor check screens 461
12.12.3 Sensor check list 465
12.12.4 Table Number 474
12.12.5 Level History1 474
12.12.6 Level History 2 474
12.12.7 Temp. & Humidity 475
12.12.8 CCD Check 475
12.12.9 Memory/HDD Adj.-Memory Check 476
12.12.10 Memory/HDD Adj.-Compress / Decompression Check 476
12.12.11 Memory/HDD Adj.-Memory Bus Check 477
12.12.12 Memory/HDD Adj.-DSC Bus Check 477
12.12.13 Memory/HDD Adj.-HDD R/W Check 477
12.12.14 Memory/HDD Adj.-HDD Format 478
12.12.15 Memory/HDD State 478
12.12.16 Color Regist 479
12.12.17 Adjustment Data List 479
12.13 Test Mode 479
12.13.1 Procedure for test pattern output 479
12.13.2 Gradation Pattern 480
12.13.3 Halftone Pattern 481
12.13.4 Lattice Pattern 482
12.13.5 Solid Pattern 483
12.13.6 Color Sample 483
12.13.7 8 Color Solid Pattern 484
12.13.8 CMM pattern 484

12.13.9 Paper Passage Test 485
12.13.10 Fax Test 485
12.14 ADF 486
12.14.1 Original Stop Position 486
12.14.2 Registration Loop Adj. 487
12.14.3 Auto Stop Position Adjustment 488
12.14.4 Paper Passage 490
12.14.5 Sensor Check 491
12.14.6 Original Tray Width 493
12.14.7 Read Pos Adj 494
12.14.8 Feed Zoom 496
12.14.9 Scanning Light Adjustment 497
12.14.10 Mixed original Size adjustment 497
12.15 FAX 497
12.16 Finisher 498
12.16.1 FS-FN adjustment - Center Staple Position 498
12.16.2 FS-FN adjustment - Half-Fold Position 499
12.16.3 FS-FN adjustment - Punch Edge Adj 500
12.16.4 FS-FN adjustment - Punch Regist Loop Size 501
12.16.5 FS-FN adjustment - Finisher Components Test Mode 501
12.16.6 FS-FN adjustment - Load Data 503
12.16.7 FS-FN adjustment - Alignment Plate Position 503
12.16.8 FS-FN adjustment - Paper Alignment Guides W. Adj 503
12.16.9 Punch Option Setting 504
12.16.10 Job Separator 504
12.17 Internet ISW 505
12.17.1 Internet ISW Set 505
12.17.2 HTTP Setting 505
12.17.3 HTTP Setting-Data Input Setting 505
12.17.4 HTTP Setting-Connect Proxy 505
12.17.5 HTTP Setting-Proxy Server 506
12.17.6 HTTP Setting-Proxy Authentication 506
12.17.7 HTTP Setting-Connection Time-Out 506
12.17.8 FTP Setting 506
12.17.9 FTP Setting-Data Input Setting 506
12.17.10 FTP Setting-Connect Proxy 507
12.17.11 FTP Setting-Proxy Server 507
12.17.12 FTP Setting-Connection Setting 507

12.17.13 Forwarding Access Setting-User ID 507
12.17.14 Forwarding Access Setting-Password 508
12.17.15 Forwarding Access Setting-URL 508
12.17.16 Forwarding Access Setting-FileName 508
12.17.17 Download 508
13. ENHANCED SECURITY 509
13.1 List of Enhanced Security 509
13.2 Starting/Exiting 509
13.2.1 Starting procedure 509
13.2.2 Exiting procedure 509
13.3 Enhanced Security 510
13.3.1 CE Password 510
13.3.2 Administrator Password 510
13.3.3 Administrator Feature Level 511
13.3.4 CE Authentication 511
13.3.5 DC/DevC Lifestop 512
13.3.6 NVRAM Data Backup 512
13.3.7 Operation Ban release time 512
13.3.8 Administrator unlocking 513
13.3.9 Engine FW DipSW 513
14. BILLING SETTING 516
14.1 List of billing setting 516
14.2 Starting/Exiting 516
14.2.1 Starting procedure 516
14.2.2 Exiting procedure 516
14.3 Billing Setting 517
14.3.1 Counter Setting 517
14.3.2 Management Function Choice 520
14.3.3 Management Function Choice-Key Counter IF Vendor 520
14.3.4 Management Function Choice-Authentication Device 1 521
14.3.5 Management Function Choice-Authentication Device 2 521
14.3.6 Management Function Choice-Key Counter Only 523
14.3.7 Management Function Choice-Management Device 1 524
14.3.8 Management Function Choice-Management Device 2 524
14.3.9 Management Function Choice-Vendor 1 524
14.3.10 Management Function Choice-Vendor 2 525
14.3.11 Coverage Rate Clear 528
14.3.12 OpenAPI Authentication Management-Restriction Code 529

14.3.13 OpenAPI Authentication Management-Region Code 529
15. CONTENTS TO BE CLEARED BY RESET FUNCTION 530
16. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT 531
16.1 Mechanical adjustment of the scanner section 531
16.1.1 Adjustment of the scanner motor belt 531
16.1.2 Positioning of the exposure unit and mirrors unit 532
16.2 Mechanical adjustment of the paper feed section 534
16.2.1 Skew adjustment of the tray 1/2 534
16.2.2 Centering adjustment of the tray 1/2 535
16.2.3 Adjustment of the bypass paper size unit 536

TROUBLESHOOTING

17. JAM DISPLAY 537
17.1 List of JAM code 537
17.1.1 Misfeed display resetting procedure 547
17.2 Sensor layout 548
17.2.1 Main body 548
17.2.2 DF-617 549
17.2.3 PC-107/PC-207 550
17.2.4 PC-408 551
17.2.5 JS-505 552
17.2.6 FS-529 552
17.2.7 FS-527/SD-509/PK-517/JS-603 553
17.3 Solution 554
17.3.1 Initial check items 554
17.3.2 Misfeed at manual bypass feed section 554
17.3.3 Misfeed at tray 1 feed section 555
17.3.4 Misfeed at tray 2 feed section 555
17.3.5 Tray3 feed section/vertical transport section misfeed 556
17.3.6 Tray4 feed section/vertical transport section misfeed 556
17.3.7 LCT paper feed section/vertical transport section misfeed 557
17.3.8 Misfeed at vertical transport section 557
17.3.9 Misfeed at 2nd image transfer section 558
17.3.10 Misfeed at exit section 558
17.3.11 ADF turnover section 559
17.3.12 ADF paper feed section 559
17.3.13 ADF transport section 560
17.3.14 ADF paper exit section 560

17.3.15 ADF image reading section 561
17.3.16 Code: 72-14 561
17.3.17 Code: 72-15 562
17.3.18 Code: 72-16 562
17.3.19 Code: 72-17 563
17.3.20 Code: 72-18 564
17.3.21 Code: 72-19 564
17.3.22 Code: 72-21 564
17.3.23 Code: 72-22 565
17.3.24 Code: 72-26 565
17.3.25 Code: 72-43 566
17.3.26 Code: 72-81 566
17.3.27 Code: 72-85 566
17.3.28 Code: 72-86 567
17.3.29 Code: 72-87 567
17.3.30 Misfeed at duplex pre-registration section 568
17.3.31 Misfeed at duplex transport section 568
18. MALFUNCTION CODE 569
18.1 Display procedure 569
18.2 List 570
18.3 Solution 572
18.3.1 S-1: CCD gain adjustment failure 572
18.3.2 D-1: Split line detect 572
18.3.3 P-5: IDC sensor (front) failure 573
18.3.4 P-28 IDC sensor (rear) failure 573
18.3.5 P-6: Drum/Development unit (C) failure 574
18.3.6 P-7: Drum/Development unit (M) failure 574
18.3.7 P-8: Drum/Development unit (Y) failure 574
18.3.8 P-9: Drum/Development unit (K) failure 574
18.3.9 P-14: Skew correction trouble 575
18.3.10 P-21: Color regist test pattern failure 575
18.3.11 P-22: Color regist adjust failure 576
18.3.12 P-27: Secondary transfer ATVC failure 576
18.3.13 P-30: PC home sensor (color) malfunction 577
18.3.14 P-31: PC home sensor (K) malfunction 577
19. TROUBLE CODE 578
19.1 Display procedure 578
19.2 Trouble resetting procedure 578

19.2.1 Trouble resetting procedure by Trouble Reset key 578
19.3 Trouble isolation function 579
19.4 List 579
19.5 Solution 617
19.5.1 C0001: LCT communication error 617
19.5.2 C0202: Tray 1 feeder up/down abnormality 617
19.5.3 C0204: Tray 2 feeder up/down abnormality 618
19.5.4 C0206: Tray3 lift-up failure 619
19.5.5 C0208: Tray4 lift-up failure 619
19.5.6 C0209: LCT elevator motor failure 620
19.5.7 C0210: LCT lift failure 620
19.5.8 C0211: Manual feed up/down abnormality 621
19.5.9 C0212: LCT lock release failure 621
19.5.10 C0213: LCT shift gate operation failure 622
19.5.11 C0214: LCT shift failure 622
19.5.12 C0215: LCT shift motor failure 623
19.5.13 C1004: FNS communication error 623
19.5.14 C1081: SD communication error 624
19.5.15 C1113: Center-staple lead edge stopper motor malfunction 624
19.5.16 C1114: Center-staple front adjust drive motor malfunction 625
19.5.17 C1115: Center-staple knife drive motor malfunction 625
19.5.18 C1116: Center-staple transfer motor malfunction 626
19.5.19 C1150: Center-staple rear adjust drive motor malfunction 626
19.5.20 C1156: Center-staple paddle roller motor malfunction (trailing edge) 627
19.5.21 C1158: Center-staple paddle roller motor malfunction (leading edge) 627
19.5.22 C1181: Malfunctioning of belt up/down movement 628
19.5.23 C1182: Shift motor drive malfunction 629
19.5.24 C1183: Elevate drive malfunction 630
19.5.25 C1190: Alignment plate motor drive malfunction / Alignment plate R drive malfunction 632
19.5.26 C1191: Alignment plate F drive malfunction 633
19.5.27 C1194: Leading edge stopper motor drive malfunction 633
19.5.28 C11A1: Tray 2 exit roller pressure/ retraction malfunction / Exit roller pressure/ retraction malfunction 634
19.5.29 C11A2: Accommodation roller pressure/ retraction malfunction 635
19.5.30 C11A7: Tray 3 exit roller pressure/ retraction malfunction 636
19.5.31 C11B0: Stapler movement drive malfunction 636
19.5.32 C11B2: Staple drive malfunction 637

19.5.33 C11B5: Saddle stapler drive malfunction 638
19.5.34 C11C0: Punch motor drive malfunction 638
19.5.35 C11E0: Duplex path switching motor drive malfunction / Finisher route change malfunction 639
19.5.36 C11E1: Upper lower path switching motor drive malfunction 640
19.5.37 C11E2: Tray1 path switching motor drive malfunction 640
19.5.38 C1301: Fan motor drive malfunction 641
19.5.39 C1402: FS NVRAM memory error 641
19.5.40 C2152: Transfer belt pressure welding alienation 642
19.5.41 C2164: PC charge malfunction 642
19.5.42 C2253: Color PC drum motor's failure to turn 643
19.5.43 C2254: Color PC drum motor's turning at abnormal timing 643
19.5.44 C225D: Color developing unit de-engagement failure 643
19.5.45 C2355: Transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor's failure to turn 644
19.5.46 C2411: Developing unit (C) new article release 644
19.5.47 C2412: Developing unit (M) new article release 644
19.5.48 C2413: Developing unit (Y) new article release 644
19.5.49 C2414: Developing unit (K) new article release 644
19.5.50 C2551: Abnormally low toner density detected cyan TCR sensor 645
19.5.51 C2553: Abnormally low toner density detected magenta TCR sensor 645
19.5.52 C2555: Abnormally low toner density detected yellow TCR sensor 645
19.5.53 C2557: Abnormally low toner density detected black TCR sensor 645
19.5.54 C2552: Abnormally high toner density detected cyan TCR sensor 646
19.5.55 C2554: Abnormally high toner density detected magenta TCR sensor 646
19.5.56 C2556: Abnormally high toner density detected yellow TCR sensor 646
19.5.57 C2558: Abnormally high toner density detected black TCR sensor 646
19.5.58 C2559: Cyan TCR sensor adjustment failure 647
19.5.59 C255A: Magenta TCR sensor adjustment failure 647
19.5.60 C255B: Yellow TCR sensor adjustment failure 647
19.5.61 C255C: Black TCR sensor adjustment failure 647
19.5.62 C2561: Cyan TCR sensor failure 648
19.5.63 C2562: Magenta TCR sensor failure 648
19.5.64 C2563: Yellow TCR sensor failure 648
19.5.65 C2564: Black TCR sensor failure 648
19.5.66 C2650: Main backup media access error 649
19.5.67 C2A11: Drum unit/C new article release 650
19.5.68 C2A12: Drum unit/M new article release 650
19.5.69 C2A13: Drum unit/Y new article release 650

19.5.70 C2A14: Drum unit/K new article release 650
19.5.71 C3101: Fusing roller separation failure 651
19.5.72 C3201: Fusing motor failure to turn 651
19.5.73 C3202: Fusing motor turning at abnormal timing 651
19.5.74 C3302: Fusing cooling fan motor/2, 3 failure to turn 652
19.5.75 C3421: Fusing heaters trouble (Heating side) 652
19.5.76 C3423: Fusing heaters trouble (Pressurizing side) 652
19.5.77 C3721: Fusing abnormally high temperature detection (Center of the heating side) 653
19.5.78 C3722: Fusing abnormally high temperature detection (Edge of the heating side) 653
19.5.79 C3723: Fusing abnormally high temperature detection (Pressurizing side) 653
19.5.80 C3821: Fusing abnormally low temperature detection (Heating side) 653
19.5.81 C3823: Fusing abnormally low temperature detection (Pressurizing side) 653
19.5.82 C3921: Fusing sensor wire breaks detection (Heating side) 654
19.5.83 C3923: Fusing sensor wire breaks detection (Pressurizing side) 654
19.5.84 C4101: Polygon motor rotation trouble 654
19.5.85 C4501: Laser malfunction 655
19.5.86 C5102: Transport motor's failure to turn 655
19.5.87 C5103: Transport motor's turning at abnormal timing 655
19.5.88 C5351: Power supply cooling fan motor/1's failure to turn 656
19.5.89 C5354: Exhaust fan motor's failure to turn 656
19.5.90 C5355: Cooling fan motor/3's failure to turn 657
19.5.91 C5370: MFP control board cooling fan motor's failure to turn 657
19.5.92 C5372: MFP control board CPU temperature failure 657
19.5.93 C5501: AC signal abnormality 658
19.5.94 C5601: Engine control malfunction 658
19.5.95 C6102: Drive system home sensor malfunction 659
19.5.96 C6103: Slider over running 659
19.5.97 C6704: Image input time out 660
19.5.98 C6751: CCD clamp/gain adjustment failure 660
19.5.99 C6752: ASIC clock input error (front side) 661
19.5.100 C6753: ASIC clock input error (back side) 661
19.5.101 C6901: DSC board mount failure 1 661
19.5.102 C6902: DSC board bus check NG1-1 661
19.5.103 C6903: DSC board bus check NG1-2 661
19.5.104 C6F01: Scanner sequence trouble 1 661

19.5.105 C8101: Before reading pressure welding alienation mechanism trouble 662
19.5.106 C8102: Turn around pressure welding alienation trouble 662
19.5.107 C8103: Lift up mechanism trouble (Upward movement) 663
19.5.108 C8106: Lift up mechanism trouble (Downward movement) 663
19.5.109 C8107: Glass cleaning mechanism trouble 664
19.5.110 C8302: Cooling fan trouble 664
19.5.111 C8401: EEPROM failure 665
19.5.112 C9401: Exposure turning on the lamp trouble detection 665
19.5.113 C9402: Exposure turning on the lamp abnormally detection 665
19.5.114 CA051: Standard controller configuration failure 666
19.5.115 CA052: Controller hardware error 666
19.5.116 CA053: Controller start failure 666
19.5.117 CC001: Vendor connection failure 666
19.5.118 CC151: ROM contents error upon startup (MSC) 666
19.5.119 CC152: ROM contents error upon startup (Scanner) 666
19.5.120 CC153: ROM contents error upon startup (PRT) 666
19.5.121 CC155: Finisher ROM error 667
19.5.122 CC156: ADF ROM error 667
19.5.123 CC159: ROM contents error upon startup (DSC1) 667
19.5.124 CC15A: ROM contents error upon startup (DSC2) 667
19.5.125 CC163: ROM contents error (PRT) 668
19.5.126 CC164: ROM contents error (MSC) 669
19.5.127 CC165: ROM contents error (ADF) 669
19.5.128 CC170: Dynamic link error during starting (AP0) 670
19.5.129 CC171: Dynamic link error during starting (AP1) 670
19.5.130 CC172: Dynamic link error during starting (AP2) 670
19.5.131 CC173: Dynamic link error during starting (AP3) 670
19.5.132 CC174: Dynamic link error during starting (AP4) 670
19.5.133 CC180: Dynamic link error during starting (LDR) 670
19.5.134 CC181: Dynamic link error during starting (IBR) 670
19.5.135 CC182: Dynamic link error during starting (IID) 670
19.5.136 CC183: Dynamic link error during starting (IPF) 670
19.5.137 CC184: Dynamic link error during starting (IMY) 670
19.5.138 CC185: Dynamic link error during starting (SPF) 670
19.5.139 CC186: Dynamic link error during starting (OAP) 670
19.5.140 CC190: Outline font load error 670
19.5.141 CC191: Setting parameter load error 671

19.5.142 CC211: Authentication device general error 671
19.5.143 CC212: User validation error 671
19.5.144 CC213: User registration error/card information setting error 672
19.5.145 CC214: User information deletion error 672
19.5.146 CC216: Acquisition failure of the number of trials/Initialize error of number of authentication 672
19.5.147 CD002: JOB RAM save error 673
19.5.148 CD004: Hard disk access error (connection failure) 673
19.5.149 CD00F: Hard disk data transfer error 673
19.5.150 CD020: Hard disk verify error 673
19.5.151 CD010: Hard disk unformat 673
19.5.152 CD011: Hard disk out of specifications mounted 674
19.5.153 CD041 to CD046: HDD command execution error Address Mark Not Found 674
19.5.154 CD047 to CD04B: HDD SCSI library error 674
19.5.155 CD201: File memory mounting error 675
19.5.156 CD202: Memory capacity discrepancy 675
19.5.157 CD203: Memory capacity discrepancy 2 675
19.5.158 CD211: PCI-SDRAM DMA operation failure 675
19.5.159 CD212: Compression/extraction timeout detection 675
19.5.160 CD231: No Fax memory at FAX board mounting 675
19.5.161 CD241: Encryption ASIC setting error 676
19.5.162 CD242: Encryption ASIC mounting error 676
19.5.163 CD252: No relay circuit boards for IC-412 mounting at IC-412 mount setting 676
19.5.164 CD261: USB host board failure 676
19.5.165 CD271: i-Option activated and additional memory not installed 677
19.5.166 CD272: i-Option activated and additional memory and HDD not installed 677
19.5.167 CD401: NACK command incorrect 678
19.5.168 CD402: ACK command incorrect 678
19.5.169 CD403: Checksum error 678
19.5.170 CD404: Receiving packet incorrect 678
19.5.171 CD405: Receiving packet analysis error 678
19.5.172 CD406: ACK receiving timeout 678
19.5.173 CD407: Retransmission timeout 678
19.5.174 CE001: Abnormal message queue 678
19.5.175 CE003: Task error 678
19.5.176 CE004: Event error 678

19.5.177 CE005: Memory access error 678
19.5.178 CE006: Header access error 678
19.5.179 CE007: DIMM initialize error 678
19.5.180 CD3##: NVRAM data error 679
19.5.181 CE002: Message and method parameter failure 680
19.5.182 CEEE1: MFP board malfunction 680
19.5.183 CEEE2: Scanner section malfunction 680
19.5.184 CEEE3: Printer control board malfunction 681
19.5.185 CFB00 to CFFA0: Abort code 681
20. NETWORK ERROR CODE 682
20.1 Display procedure 682
20.2 List 682
21. Open API Related Trouble 694
21.1 Outline 694
21.2 Supported Version 694
21.3 Types of Trouble 694
21.4 Solution 695
22. POWER SUPPLY TROUBLE 696
22.1 Machine is not energized at all (DCPU operation check) 696
22.2 Fusing heaters do not operate 696
22.3 Power is not supplied to option 697
22.3.1 DF-617 697
22.3.2 PC-107/207/408 697
22.3.3 FS-527/529 697
23. IMAGE QUALITY PROBLEM 698
23.1 How to read element data 698
23.1.1 Table number 698
23.1.2 Level history 1 699
23.1.3 Level history 2 700
23.2 How to identify problematic part 701
23.2.1 Initial check items 701
23.3 Solution 704
23.3.1 Scanner system: white lines, white bands, colored lines and colored bands in sub scan direction 704
23.3.2 Scanner system: white lines, white bands, colored lines and colored bands in main scan direction 706
23.3.3 Scanner system: color spots 707
23.3.4 Scanner system: fog 708
23.3.5 Scanner system: blurred image, blotchy image 709

23.3.6 Scanner system: incorrect color image registration, sync shift (lines in main scan direction) 710
23.3.7 Scanner system: moire 711
23.3.8 Scanner system: skewed image 712
23.3.9 Scanner system: distorted image 713
23.3.10 Scanner system: low image density, rough image 714
23.3.11 Scanner system: defective ACS 715
23.3.12 Scanner system: blank copy, black copy 716
23.3.13 Scanner system: abnormal image 717
23.3.14 Scanner system: uneven density 718
23.3.15 Printer monocolor: white lines, white bands, colored lines and colored bands in sub scan direction 719
23.3.16 Printer monocolor: white lines, white bands, colored lines and colored bands in main scan direction 720
23.3.17 Printer monocolor: uneven density in sub scan direction 721
23.3.18 Printer monocolor: uneven density in main scan direction 722
23.3.19 Printer monocolor: low image density 723
23.3.20 Printer monocolor: gradation reproduction failure 725
23.3.21 Printer monocolor: foggy background 726
23.3.22 Printer monocolor: void areas, white spots 728
23.3.23 Printer monocolor: colored spots 729
23.3.24 Printer monocolor: blurred image 730
23.3.25 Printer monocolor: blank copy, black copy 731
23.3.26 Printer monocolor: uneven image 732
23.3.27 Printer 4-color: white lines, white bands, colored lines and colored bands in sub scan direction 733
23.3.28 Printer 4-color: white lines, white bands, colored lines and colored bands in main scan direction 734
23.3.29 Printer 4-color: uneven density in sub scan direction 735
23.3.30 Printer 4-color: uneven density in main scan direction 736
23.3.31 Printer 4-color: low image density 737
23.3.32 Printer 4-color: poor color reproduction 738
23.3.33 Printer 4-color: incorrect color image registration 739
23.3.34 Printer 4-color: void areas, white spots 741
23.3.35 Printer 4-color: colored spots 742
23.3.36 Printer 4-color: poor fusing performance, offset 743
23.3.37 Printer 4-color: brush effect, blurred image 744
23.3.38 Printer 4-color: back marking 745
23.3.39 Printer 4-color: uneven image 746

24. IC protector 747
24.1 Outline 747
24.2 IC protector list 747
24.2.1 Main body 747
24.2.2 DF-617 751
24.2.3 PC-107/PC-207 752
24.2.4 PC-408 753
24.2.5 JS-505 753
24.2.6 FS-527 754
24.2.7 SD-509 755
24.2.8 FS-529 756
25. TROUBLESHOOTING OF i-Option 758
25.1 Outline 758
25.1.1 Structure of license management 758
25.1.2 License management information 758
25.2 Error message 759
25.2.1 License management error 759

APPENDIX

26. PARTS LAYOUT DRAWING 761
26.1 Main body 761
26.1.1 Scanner section 761
26.1.2 Front side 762
26.1.3 Left side 764
26.1.4 Back side 765
26.1.5 Right side 768
26.1.6 Manual bypass tray 769
26.1.7 Tray 1 770
26.1.8 Tray 2 771
26.1.9 Fusing/paper exit section 772
26.2 DF-617/SP-501 773
26.3 PC-107/PC-207 (Option) 775
26.4 PC-408 (Option) 777
26.5 JS-505 (Option) 779
26.6 FS-527 (Option) 780
26.7 PK-517 (Option) 783
26.8 SD-509 (Option) 784
26.9 JS-603 (Option) 786
26.10 FS-529 (Option) 787

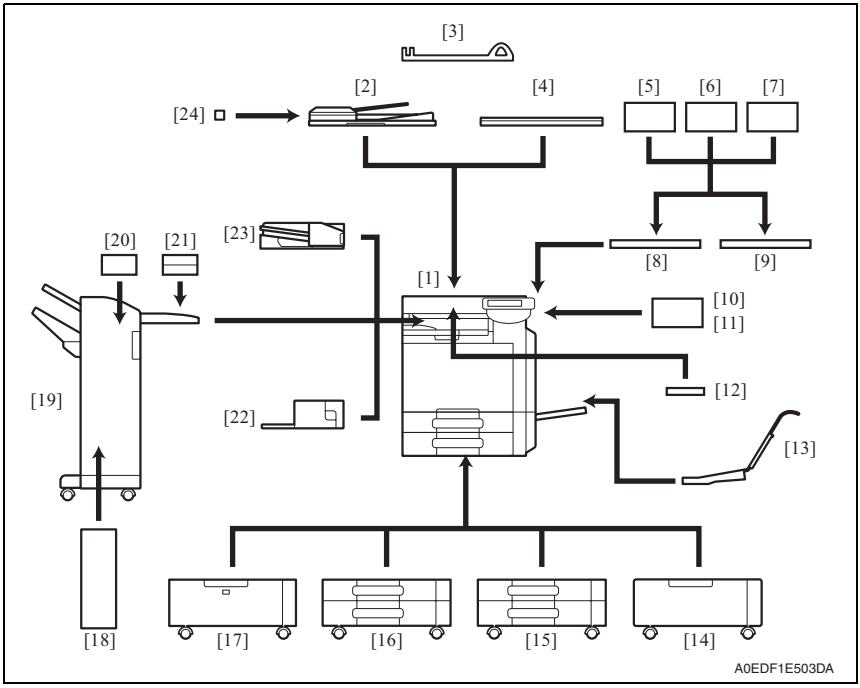
27. CONNECTOR LAYOUT DRAWING 789
27.1 Main body 789
27.1.1 Printer control board (PRCB) 789
27.1.2 MFP board (MFPB) 790
27.1.3 PCI board (PCIB) 791
27.1.4 PH relay board (PHREYB) 791
27.1.5 Front side relay board (FREYB) 792
27.1.6 Scanner relay board (REYB/SCAN) 792
27.1.7 DF control board (DFCB) 793
27.1.8 PC Control board (PCCB) 793
27.1.9 FS control board (FSCB) 795
27.1.10 SD drive board (SDDB) 797
28. RELAY CONNECTOR LAYOUT DRAWING 798
28.1 How to read the relay connector layout drawing 798
28.2 Main body 798
29. TIMING CHART 801
29.1 Main body 801
29.1.1 Timing chart when the main power switch is turned ON 801
29.1.2 Timing chart in color mode 802
29.2 DF-617 803
29.2.1 1-sided mode 803
29.2.2 2-sided mode 805
29.3 FS-527/SD-509/PK-517 807
29.3.1 Shift mode 807
29.3.2 2 flat stitching staples mode 808
29.3.3 Center staples mode 809
29.3.4 Punch mode 810
29.4 JS-603 811
29.4.1 Tray3 paper exit mode 811
29.5 FS-529 812
29.5.1 Shift mode 812
29.5.2 1 flat stitching staple mode 813
29.5.3 2 flat stitching staples mode 814

Blank Page

OUTLINE

1. SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

1/2 System front view

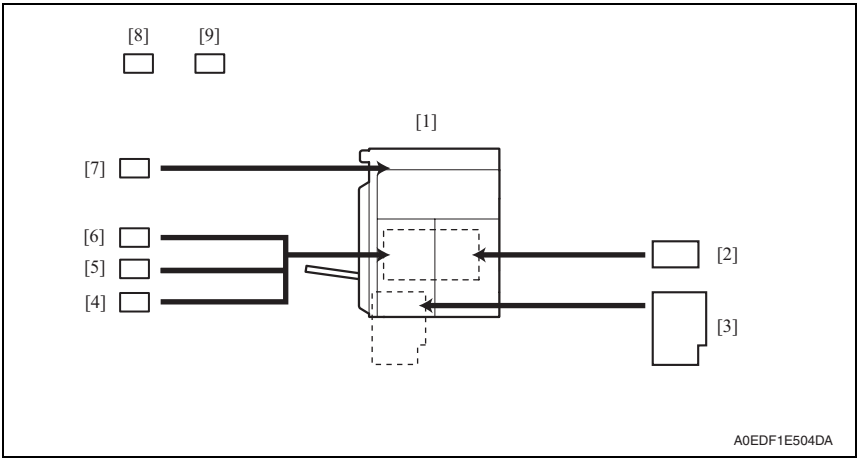


[1]	bizhub C360/C280/C220		[13]	Mount kit	MK-713 * Except for Europe area
[2]	Reverse automatic document feeder	DF-617	[14]	Desk	DK-507 * Except for Europe area
[3]	Assist handle	AH-101	[15]	Paper feed cabinet	PC-107
[4]	Original cover	OC-509	[16]	Paper feed cabinet	PC-207
[5]	Authentication unit (biometric type)	AU-101	[17]	Paper feed cabinet	PC-408
[6]	Authentication unit (biometric type)	AU-102	[18]	Saddle stitcher	SD-509
[7]	Authentication unit (IC card type)	AU-201	[19]	Finisher	FS-527
[8]	Working table * North America area only	WT-507	[20]	Punch kit	PK-517
[9]	Working table	WT-506	[21]	Job separator	JS-603
[10]	Local interface kit	EK-604	[22]	Finisher	FS-529
[11]	Local interface kit Optional setting only for bizhub C280 in China area.	EK-605	[23]	Job separator	JS-505
[12]	Keyboard holder	KH-101	[24]	Stamp unit	SP-501

NOTE

- **Use the desk or the paper feed cabinet without fail when installing on the floor in order to keep the function and quality of the unit.**

2/2 System rear view



[1]	bizhub C360/C280/C220		[6]	Mount kit	MK-720
[2]	Fax kit	FK-502	[7]	Key counter kit	KIT-1
[3]	Image controller	IC-412 * bizhub C360/C280 only	[8]	i-Option	LK-101 v2/102/103 v2/105
[4]	Security kit	SC-507	[9]	Upgrade kit	UK-203
[5]	Video interface kit	VI-505 * bizhub C360/C280 only			

2. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

2.1 Type

Type	Desktop/console *1 scanner/printer
Printing process	Laser electrostatic printing system
PC drum type	OPC drum: KM-12 (OPC with high mold releasability)
Scanning density	600 dpi
Exposure lamp	White rare-gas fluorescent lamp 30 W
Platen	Stationary (mirror scan)
Original scanning	Mirror scanning CCD optical system * Sheet through system when DF-617 is used
Registration	Rear left edge
Paper feeding separation system	Manual bypass : Small roller separation system with torque limiter Tray 1 : Roller separation system with pick-up mechanism Tray 2 : Roller separation system with pick-up mechanism
Exposure system	• 1 beam LD exposing system • Polygon mirror scan system
Exposure density	Equivalent to 1800 dpi in main scanning direction × 600 dpi in sub scanning direction
Developing system	Dry 2 components developing method, HMT developing system
Charging system	DC comb electrode scorotron system with electrode cleaning function (manual)
Neutralizing system	Red LED system
Image transfer system	Belt image transfer system (1st)/roller image transfer system (2nd)
Paper separating system	Combination of curvature, separating claws, and neutralization needle system
Fusing system	Belt fusing
Heating system	Halogen lamp

*1: Only when the optional paper feed cabinet/desk is installed.

2.2 Functions

Types of original		Sheets, books, and three-dimensional objects
Max. original size		A3 or 11 x 17
Max. original weight		Max. 2 kg
2 Multiple copies		1 to 9999
Warm-up time (at ambient temperature of 23° C/73.4° F and rated source voltage)	When the sub power switch is turned ON at any timing while the main power switch remains ON for a predetermined period of time or more.	
	bizhub C360/C280	27 sec. or less (Black print) 35 sec. or less (Color print)
	bizhub C220	22 sec. or less (Black print) 27 sec. or less (Color print)
	When the main power switch is turned ON during the sub power switch being ON.	
	bizhub C360/C280/C220	45 sec. or less (Black print, Color print)
Image loss	Copy	Leading edge: 4.2 mm (3/16 inch), Trailing edge: 3 mm (1/8 inch), Rear edge: 3 mm (1/8 inch), Front edge: 3 mm (1/8 inch)
	PC print	Leading edge: 4.2 mm (3/16 inch), Trailing edge: 4.2 mm (3/16 inch), Rear edge: 4.2 mm (3/16 inch), Front edge: 4.2 mm (3/16 inch)
First copy time	(Tray1/2 A4 or 8 $^1/_2$ x 11, full size)	
	bizhub C360/C280	5.8 sec. or less (Black print) 7.7 sec. or less (Color print)
	bizhub C220	7.5 sec. or less (Black print) 11.0 sec. or less (Color print)
Processing speed	Plain paper (black, full color), OHP film *2	bizhub C362/C280: 166.6 mm/s
		bizhub C220: 111.0 mm/s
	Thick 1, Thick 2, Thick 3, Thick 4, Post card, Envelope, Label sheet Plain paper (glossy mode)	bizhub C360/C280/C220: 55.5 mm/s
Copying/printing speed for multi-copy/ print cycle (A4 or 8 $^1/_2$ x 11, plain paper)	Black, Full color	bizhub C360: 1-sided: 36 copies/min *1, 2-sided: 34.9 copies/min *1 manual paper feed of 8 $^1/_2$ x 11 : 35 copies/min
		bizhub C280: 1-sided: 28.8 copies/min, 2-sided: 28.8 copies/min
		bizhub C220: 1-sided: 22.7 copies/min, 2-sided: 22.7 copies/min

Fixed zoom ratios	Full size	x1.000	
	Reduction	Metric area	x0.500, x0.707, x0.816, x0.866
		Inch area	x0.500, x0.647, x0.733, x0.785
	Enlargement	Metric area	x1.154, x1.224, x1.414, x2.000
		Inch area	x1.214, x1.294, x1.545, x2.000
	Zoom ratios memory	3 memories	
Variable zoom ratios	×0.250 to ×4.000	in 0.001 increments	
Paper size	Tray 1	Metric area	A3 to B5/B5S, A5S, 16K, 8K
		Inch area	11 x 17 to 8 1/2 x 11, 8 1/2 x 11S, 5 1/2 x 8 1/2S, 8 x 13
	Tray 2	Metric area	A3 to B5/B5S, A3 wide,16K, 8K
		Inch area	12 x 18 to 8 1/2 x 11, 8 1/2 x 11S, 5 1/2 x 8 1/2S, 8 x 13
	Manual bypass tray	Metric area	A3 to B6S, A6S, A3 wide, banner paper, 16K/16KS, 8K
		Inch area	12 x 18 to 5 1/2 x 8 1/2, 5 1/2 x 8 1/2S, 4 x 6S, 8 x 13
Copy exit tray capacity	Plain paper	250 sheets	
	Thick paper	10 sheets	
	OHP film	1 sheet	
External memory function	Supported external memory devices	USB flash memory device that supports the USB (1.1/2.0) interface FAT32-formatted memory device	

2.3 Paper

Type		Paper source (maximum tray capacity)		
		Tray 1	Tray 2	Manual bypass tray
Copy paper type	Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m² / 16 to 24 lb)	❍ (500 sheets)	❍ (500 sheets)	❍ (150 sheets)
	Translucent paper	—	—	—
	OHP film (crosswise feeding only) *2	—	—	❍ (20 sheets)
	Thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m² / 24.25 to 40 lb)	❍ (150 sheets)	❍ (150 sheets)	
	Thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m² / 40.25 to 55.5 lb)			
	Thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m² / 55.75 to 68 lb) *1			
	Thick paper 4 (257 to 271 g/m² / 68.25 lb to 72 lb) *1	—	—	
	Postcards	—	—	
	Envelopes	—	—	❍ (10 sheets)
	Labels	—	—	❍ (20 sheets)
	Long size paper (127 to 210 g/m² / 33.75 to 55.75 lb)	—	—	❍ (10 sheets)
Copy paper dimensions	Width	139.7 to 297 mm 5 1/2 to 11 3/4 inch	139.7 to 311.1 mm 5 1/2 to 12 1/4 inch	90 to 311.1 mm 3 1/2 to 12 1/4 inch
	Length	182 to 431.8 mm 7 1/4 to 17 inch	182 to 457.2 mm 7 1/4 to 18 inch	139.7 to 457.2 mm 5 1/2 to 18 inch
	Long size paper (Width x Length)	—	—	210 to 297 mm x 457.3 to 1200 mm or less 8 1/4 to 11 3/4 inch x 18 to 47 1/4 inch or less

*1: Image is not guaranteed when thick paper 3/4 is used.

*2: Black print only.

Automatic duplex unit : Only the plain paper weighing 64 to 90 g/m² (17 to 24 lb) or thick paper weighing 91 to 256 g/m² (24.25 to 68 lb) are reliably fed.

2.4 Materials

Parts name		Number of prints	Type name
Toner cartridge/C	bizhub C360	26,000 prints *1	TN319C
	bizhub C280/C220	26,000 prints *1	TN216C
Toner cartridge/M	bizhub C360	26,000 prints *1	TN319M
	bizhub C280/C220	26,000 prints *1	TN216M
Toner cartridge/Y	bizhub C360	26,000 prints *1	TN319Y
	bizhub C280/C220	26,000 prints *1	TN216Y
Toner cartridge/K	bizhub C360	29,000 prints *1	TN319K
	bizhub C280/C220	29,000 prints *1	TN216K
Developing unit/C		114,000 prints *2	DV311C
Developing unit/M		114,000 prints *2	DV311M
Developing unit/Y		114,000 prints *2	DV311Y
Developing unit/K		570,000 prints *2	DV311K
Drum unit/Y,M,C	bizhub C360	90,000 prints *2	DR311
	bizhub C280	75,000 prints *2	
	bizhub C220	55,000 prints *2	
Drum unit/K	bizhub C360	120,000 prints *2	DR311K
	bizhub C280	100,000 prints *2	
	bizhub C220	70,000 prints *2	
Waste toner box		45,000 prints *1	Waste toner box

*1: Specification value

*2: Field standard yield

- This machine has the field standard yield which indicates the available print numbers estimated by the quantities and usage of the unit in the market standard job mode. Yields for each preventative maintenance unit will differ depending on actual usage.
- The followings are the target unit. Developing unit, drum unit, fusing unit, transfer belt unit
- The market standard job modes for this unit are as follows.

Market standard job modes

		bizhub C360	bizhub C280	bizhub C220
Printing	B/W	4 P/J	3 P/J	2 P/J
	Color	2 P/J	1.5 P/J	1 P/J
Color mode		[Full Color] or [Black] (apart from [Auto Color])		
Paper size		LEF: 87 %, SEF: 13 %		
Color ratio		25 %		
Total print volume/month (total)		US: 6,700 EU: 8,700	US: 4,100 EU: 5,300	US: 2,400 EU: 3,200
No. of image stabilization operations	No. of times power turned on	20 times/month		
	No. of returns from sleep mode	0.2 time/day		
	Changes in surrounding environment	None		

2.5 Print volume

- bizhub C360

US	Average	Color print	1,700 prints/month
		Black print	5,000 prints/month
	Maximum	Color print	5,000 prints/month
		Black print	15,000 prints/month
EU	Average	Color print	2,200 prints/month
		Black print	6,500 prints/month
	Maximum	Color print	6,000 prints/month
		Black print	18,000 prints/month

- bizhub C280

US	Average	Color print	1,000 prints/month
		Black print	3,000 prints/month
	Maximum	Color print	3,000 prints/month
		Black print	9,000 prints/month
EU	Average	Color print	1,300 prints/month
		Black print	4,000 prints/month
	Maximum	Color print	3,500 prints/month
		Black print	10,500 prints/month

- bizhub C220

US	Average	Color print	600 prints/month
		Black print	1,800 prints/month
	Maximum	Color print	2,000 prints/month
		Black print	6,000 prints/month
EU	Average	Color print	800 prints/month
		Black print	2,400 prints/month
	Maximum	Color print	2,250 prints/month
		Black print	6,750 prints/month

2.6 Machine specifications

Power requirements	Voltage:	AC 100 V, 120 V, 127 V, 220-240 V	
	Current:	100 V	15 A
		110 V	15 A
		120 V	12 A
		127 V	12 A
		230 V	8 A
	Frequency:	50/60 Hz ± 3 Hz	
Max power consumption		1,500 W or less	
Dimensions		643 mm *1 (W) x 842 mm *2 (D) x 770 mm (H) *3 25.25 inch *1 (W) x 33.2 inch *2 (D) x 30.25 inch (H) *3	
Space requirements		1,649 mm (W) x 1,260 mm (D) x 1,588 mm (D) *4 65 inch (W) x 49.5 inch (D) x 62.5 inch (D) *4	
Weight	Machine	Approx. 98 kg / 216 lb (without drum unit and toner cartridge)	

*1: Width when the manual bypass tray is closed
*2: Including the control panel.
*3: Height up to the original glass
*4: When the finisher is separated and the paper feed tray is slide out

2.7 Operating environment

Temperature	10 to 30° C / 50 to 86° F (with a fluctuation of 10° C / 18° F or less per hour)
Humidity	15 to 85% (Relative humidity with a fluctuation of 10%/h)
Levelness	Difference between front and back, right and left should be 1 degree or under.

2.8 Print functions

Type	Built-in printer controller	
RAM	2 GB (shared with the main body)	
HDD	250 GB (shared with the main body)	
Interface	Standard	Ethernet (1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T) USB2.0/1.1
	Option	USB 2.0
Frame type	Ethernet 802.2, Ethernet 802.3, Ethernet II, Ethernet SNAP	
Supported protocols	TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6), BOOTP, ARP, ICMP, DHCP, DHCPv6, AutoIP, SLP, SNMP, FTP, LPR/LPD, RAW Socket, SMB over TCP/IP, IPP, HTTP, POP, SMTP, LDAP, NTP, SSL, IPX/SPX, AppleTalk, Bonjour, NetBEUI, WebDAV, DPWS, S/MIME, IPsec, DNS, DynamicDNS, LLMNR, LLTD	
Printer language	PCL5c/6 Emulation PCL XL ver. 2.1 Emulation PostScript 3 Emulation (3016) XPS ver.1.0	
Print resolution	Equivalent to 1,800 dpi in main scanning direction × 600 dpi in sub scanning direction	
Printer fonts	PCL Latin 80 Fonts Postscript 3 Emulation Latin 137 Fonts	

Supported computer	IBM PC/AT compatible machine, Macintosh (PowerPC/Intel processor: Only MacOS X 10.4/10.5 for Intel processor)	
Printer driver	PCL KONICAMINOLTA driver (PCL driver)	Windows NT Workstation Version 4.0 (SP6 or later) Windows NT Server Version 4.0 (SP6 or later) Windows 2000 Professional (SP4 or later) Windows 2000 Server (SP3 or later) Windows XP Home Edition (SP1 or later) Windows XP Professional (SP1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (SP1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (SP1 or later) Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows XP Professional x64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard x64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Enterprise x64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition Windows Vista Business * Windows Vista Enterprise * Windows Vista Home Basic * Windows Vista Home Premium * Windows Vista Ultimate * Windows Server 2008 Standard * Windows Server 2008 Enterprise * Windows 7 Home Premium/Professional/Ultimate * * 32 bits (x86)/64 bits (x64) environment are supported
	PostScript KONICAMI-NOLTA driver (PS driver)	Windows 2000 Professional (SP4 or later) Windows 2000 Server (SP3 or later) Windows XP Home Edition (SP1 or later) Windows XP Professional (SP1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (SP1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (SP1 or later) Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows XP Professional x64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard x64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Enterprise x64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition Windows Vista Business * Windows Vista Enterprise * Windows Vista Home Basic * Windows Vista Home Premium * Windows Vista Ultimate * Windows Server 2008 Standard * Windows Server 2008 Enterprise * Windows 7 Home Premium/Professional/Ultimate * * 32 bits (x86)/64 bits (x64) environment are supported

Printer driver	XPS KONICAMINOLTA driver (XPS driver)	Windows Vista Business * Windows Vista Enterprise * Windows Vista Home Basic * Windows Vista Home Premium * Windows Vista Ultimate * Windows Server 2008 Standard * Windows Server 2008 Enterprise * Windows 7 Home Premium/Professional/Ultimate * * 32 bits (x86)/64 bits (x64) environment are supported
	PostScript PPD driver (PS-PPD)	Mac OS 9.2 or later Mac OS X 10.2.8/10.3/10.4/10.5
	Fax driver	Windows NT Workstation Version 4.0 (SP6 or later) Windows NT Server Version 4.0 (SP6 or later) Windows 2000 Professional (SP4 or later) Windows 2000 Server (SP3 or later) Windows XP Home Edition (SP1 or later) Windows XP Professional (SP1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (SP1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (SP1 or later) Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows XP Professional x64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard x64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Enterprise x64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition Windows Vista Business * Windows Vista Enterprise * Windows Vista Home Basic * Windows Vista Home Premium * Windows Vista Ultimate * Windows Server 2008 Standard * Windows Server 2008 Enterprise * Windows 7 Home Premium/Professional/Ultimate * * 32 bits (x86)/64 bits (x64) environment are supported

2.9 Scan functions

Scanner	Scannable range		Same as the copier (Max. 11 x 17: inch area, A3: metric area)
	Scan speed (A4 or 8 1/2 x 11, Resolution 300 dpi)		70 pages/min
	Functions		Scan to E-mail, Scan to FTP, Scan to SMB, Scan to WebDAV, Scan to BOX
	Scanning resolution		200/300/400/600 dpi
TWAIN	Driver		TWAIN Driver, HDD TWAIN Driver
	Supported operating systems		Windows 2000 Professional (SP4) Windows XP Home Edition (SP3) Windows XP Professional (SP3) Windows NT 4.0 (SP6a) Windows Vista Home Basic (SP1) Windows Vista Home Premium (SP1) Windows Vista Business (SP1) Windows Vista Enterprise (SP1) Windows Vista Ultimate (SP1)
	PC		Conform to the specification of operating system
	Required memory		Conform to the specification of operating system
	Network		Computer to which TCP/IP protocol is correctly set
	Hard disk		Required 20 MB or more disk space
SMB	Supported operating systems	Windows	Windows NT4.0 Server/Workstation Windows 2000 Server/Professional Windows XP Home/Professional Windows Server 2003 each edition Windows Vista each edition Windows Server 2008 DFS function is supported only in the environment that structured with the following Windows server operating systems. • Windows 2000 Server each edition • Windows Server 2003 each edition • Windows Server 2008 Direct hosting function apply to the following operating systems. • Windows 2000 • Windows XP • Windows Vista (IPv6 function is available only when the Windows Vista is installed.)
		Samba *	2.2.x 3.x
		Novell Netware	Netware 6.5 (SP6 or later)

*: This machine supports Unicode. However, if the operating system used in a destination computer does not support Unicode (2 and 3 byte characters), SMB transmission may be unavailable. If SMB transmission is unsuccessful, specify the shared name of the destination folder using ASCII codes (one-byte alphanumeric characters).

NOTE

- **These specifications are subject to change without notice.**

Blank Page

MAINTENANCE

⚠ 3. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE ITEMS

3.1 Concept of periodical maintenance

- Cleaning/replacement cycle for each maintenance item of main body/options can be evaluated with the total counter or each life counter value of [Service Mode] → [Counter] → [Life].

3.1.1 Main body

A. Periodical maintenance 1 (total counter; every 60,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	Overall	Paper feed and image conditions	—		●			
2		Appearance	—	●	●			
3	Conveyance section	Timing roller	—	●				
4	Image transfer section	Around waste toner port	—	●				
5	Duplex section	Duplex transport roller	—	●				

B. Periodical maintenance 2 (life counter; every 120,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	Processing section	Developing unit/Y,M,C	1				●	

C. Periodical maintenance 3 (life counter; every 200,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	Paper feed section	Manual bypass tray feed roller	1				●	
		Manual bypass tray separation roller assy	1				●	

D. Periodical maintenance 4 (life counter; every 300,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	Paper feed section	Tray 1 pick-up roller	1				●	
2		Tray 1 feed roller	1				●	
3		Tray 1 separation roller assy	1				●	
4		Tray 2 pick-up roller	1				●	
5		Tray 2 feed roller	1				●	
6		Tray 2 separation roller assy	1				●	
7	Processing section	Ozone filter	1				●	*1
8	Image transfer section	Transfer belt unit	1				●	
9		Transfer roller unit	1				●	*1

*1: Replace it when replacing transfer belt unit.

E. Periodical maintenance 5 (life counter; every 550,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	Fusing section	Fusing unit	1				●	

F. Periodical maintenance 6 (life counter; every 600,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	Processing section	Developing unit/K	1				●	

3.1.2 DF-617

A. Periodical maintenance 1 (life counter; every 50,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	Overall	Paper feed and image conditions	—		●			
2		Appearance	—	●	●			
3	Paper feed section	Pick-up roller	—	●				
4		Feed roller	—	●				
5		Separation roller	—	●				
6	Conveyance section	Roller and rolls	—	●				
7	Scanning section	Scanning guide	—	●				
8	Paper feed section	Reflective sensor section	—	●				

B. Periodical maintenance 2 (life counter; every 200,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	Paper feed section	Pick-up roller	2				●	*1
2		Feed roller	1				●	
3		Separation roller	1				●	

*1: Replace those three parts at the same time.

3.1.3 PC-107/207/408

A. Periodical maintenance 1 (life counter; every 300,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	Overall	Paper feed and image conditions	—		●			
2		Appearance	—	●	●			
3	Paper feed section	Pick-up roller	1				●	*1
4		Feed roller	1				●	
5		Separation roller	1				●	

*1: Replace those three parts at the same time.

3.1.4 JS-505

A. Periodical maintenance 1 (life counter; every 300,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	Overall	Paper feed and image conditions	—		●			
2		Appearance	—	●	●			
3	Conveyance section	Roller and rolls	—	●				

3.1.5 JS-603/FS-527/SD-509/PK-517

A. Periodical maintenance 1 (total counter; every 300,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	Overall	Paper feed and image conditions	—		●			
2		Appearance	—	●	●			
3	Conveyance section	Roller and rolls	—	●				
4		Paddles	—	●				

B. Periodical maintenance 2 (life counter; every 800,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	FS-527 Conveyance section	Upper paddle	2				●	
2		Lower paddle	9				●	

3.1.6 FS-529

A. Periodical maintenance 1 (total counter; every 300,000 counts)

No.	Section	Description/part name	Qt.	Clean	Check	Lubrication	Replace	Descriptions
1	Overall	Paper feed and image conditions	—		●			
2		Appearance	—	●	●			
3	Conveyance section	Roller and rolls	—	●				

3.2 Periodical replacement parts list

- To ensure that the machine produces good copies and to extend its service life, it is recommended that the maintenance jobs described in this schedule be carried out as instructed.
- Replace with reference to the numeric values displayed on the total counter, the life counter or the messages displayed on the control panel.
- Maintenance conditions are based on the case of A4 or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11, standard mode and low power mode OFF.

		Color	B/W
*Standard mode	bizhub C360	4 pages per job	4 pages per job
	bizhub C280	3 pages per job	3 pages per job
	bizhub C220	2 pages per job	2 pages per job

3.2.1 Main body

Classification	Parts name	Parts No.	Qt.	Replacing cycle	Descriptions	Ref. page
Paper feed section	Tray 1 pick-up roller	A00J 5636 XX	1	300,000 *2	*4	P.39
	Tray 1 feed roller	A00J 5636 XX	1	300,000 *2		P.41
2	Tray 1 separation roller assy	A00J 5636 XX	1	300,000 *2		P.39
	Tray 2 pick-up roller	A00J 5636 XX	1	300,000 *2	*4	P.43
	Tray 2 feed roller	A00J 5636 XX	1	300,000 *2		P.43
2	Tray 2 separation roller assy	A00J 5636 XX	1	300,000 *2		P.43
	Manual bypass tray feed roller	A02E 5947 XX	1	200,000 *2	*4	P.43
	Manual bypass tray separation roller assy	4034 0151 XX	1	200,000 *2		P.45
Processing section	Toner cartridge/Y,M,C *1	—	1	26,000		P.31
	Toner cartridge/K *1	—	1	29,000		
	Drum unit/Y,M,C *1	—	1	C360:90,000 *3 C280:75,000 *3 C220:55,000 *3		P.26
	Drum unit/K *1	—	1	C360:120,000 *3 C280:100,000 *3 C220:70,000 *3		
	Developing unit/Y,M,C	—	1	114,000 *3		P.30
	Developing unit/K	—	1	570,000 *3		
	Ozone filter	A02E R727 XX	1	C360/C280:300,000 *3 C220:260,000 *3	*5	P.25
	Waste toner box *1	A162 WY1	1	(45,000)	*6	P.37

Classification	Parts name	Parts No.	Qt.	Replacing cycle	Descrip tions	Ref. page
Image transfer section	Transfer belt unit	A0ED R716 XX	1	C360/C280: 300,000 *3 C220:260,000 *3		P.34
	Transfer roller unit	A0ED R717 XX	1	C360/C280: 300,000 *3 C220:260,000 *3	*5	P.36
Fusing section	Fusing unit	A0ED R738 XX	1	523,000 *3	110 V	P.47
		A0ED R720 XX			120 V	
		A0ED R721 XX			230 V	

*1: The parts can be replaced either by user or service engineer.
*2: Actual durable cycle (life counter value)
*3: Field standard yield
See P.7
*4: Replace those three parts at the same time.
*5: The ozone filter and the transfer roller unit are furnished with the transfer belt unit so that all of them are replaced at same time.
*6: A waste toner full condition is detected with detecting the actual waste toner emissions.

3.2.2 Option

Classification	Parts name	Parts No.	Qt.	Replacing cycle	Descrip tions	Ref. Page
DF-617	Pick-up roller	9J07 3301 XX	2	200,000 *1	*3	*4
	Feed roller	4030 3005 XX	1	200,000 *1		
	Separation roller	9J07 3409 XX	1	200,000 *1		
PC-107	Pick-up roller	A00J 5636 XX	1	300,000 *1	*3	
	Feed roller	A00J 5636 XX	1	300,000 *1		
	Separation roller assy	A02E F566 XX	1	300,000 *1		
PC-207	Pick-up roller	A00J 5636 XX	2	300,000 *1	*3	
	Feed roller	A00J 5636 XX	2	300,000 *1		
	Separation roller assy	A02E F566 XX	2	300,000 *1		
PC-408	Pick-up roller	A00J 5636 XX	1	300,000 *1	*3	
	Feed roller	A00J 5636 XX	1	300,000 *1		
	Separation roller assy	A02E F566 XX	1	300,000 *1		
FS-527	Upper paddle	A0HR 7313 XX	2	800,000 *2		
	Lower paddle	A0HR 7348 XX	9	800,000 *2		

*1: Actual durable cycle (life counter value)
*2: Total counter value
*3: Replace those parts at the same time.
*4: See each option service manual.

3.3 Periodical cleaning parts list

- Clean with reference to the numeric values displayed on the total counter, the life counter or the messages displayed on the control panel.

3.3.1 Main body

Classification	Parts name	Cleaning cycle	Descriptions	Ref.Page
Conveyance section	Timing roller	60,000 *1		P.47
Processing section	Electrostatic charger wire/ Y,M,C,K	When toner cartridge/Y,M,C,K is replaced		P.29
Image transfer section	Area around the waste toner collecting port	60,000 *1		P.38
	Image transfer entrance guide	240,000 *1 or When transfer belt unit is replaced		P.33
	IDC registration sensor	240,000 *1 or When transfer belt unit is replaced		P.33
Duplex section	Duplex transport roller	60,000 *1		P.49

*1: Total counter value

3.3.2 Option

Classification	Parts name	Cleaning cycle	Descriptions	Ref.Page
DF-617	Pick-up roller	50,000 *1		*3
	Feed roller	50,000 *1		
	Separation roller	50,000 *1		
	Rollers and rolls	50,000 *1		
	Scanning guide	50,000 *1		
	Reflective sensor section	50,000 *1		
JS-505	Roller and rolls	300,000 *2		
JS-603/SD-509/PK-517	Roller and rolls	300,000 *2		
	Paddles	300,000 *2		
FS-527	Roller and rolls	300,000 *2		
	Upper paddle	300,000 *2		
	Lower paddle	300,000 *2		
FS-529	Roller and rolls	300,000 *2		

*1: Actual durable cycle (life counter value)
*2: Total counter value
*3: See each option service manual.

3.4 Concept of parts life

3.4.1 Life value of consumables and parts

- The life counter value of each materials and parts is available from [Service Mode] → [Counter] → [Life].
- Life specification value means an actual life terminated when prints are made under the conditions as defined in the next section, “Conditions for life specifications values.” The actual life may vary greatly depending on how the machine has been used and other factors.
- “M” refers to the rotation time of each unit.

	Description	Rotation time excess warning threshold value	Life threshold value	Life stop threshold value
Waste toner box	The waste toner full sensor on the front side relay board detects the amount of toner accumulated in the waste toner box and sends a signal that determines the end of the waste toner box life.	–	45,000 *1,2	–
Fusing unit	When the number of printed pages *4 reaches the set life value shown on the right, the end of unit life is detected. Rotation time for the fusing unit is also counted for control’s sake, but not used for detecting life.	–	550,000 counts	580,000 counts *3
Transfer belt unit	Number of prints *4 and rotation time of the transfer belt are counted, and detected when one of those two reaches to the life value shown on the right.	–	300,000 counts	330,000 counts *3
		C360/C280: 20,008 M C220: 30,030 M	C360/C280: 22,008 M C220: 33,033 M	C360/C280: 24,009 M C220: 36,036 M
Transfer roller unit	Rotation time of the transfer belt is counted, and detected when it reaches to the set life value shown on the right. *5	C360/C280: 20,008 M C220: 30,030 M	C360/C280: 22,008 M C220: 33,033 M	C360/C280: 24,009 M C220: 36,036 M
Ozone filter	Rotation time of the transfer belt is counted, and detected when it reaches to the set life value shown on the right. *5	C360/C280: 20,008 M C220: 30,030 M	C360/C280: 22,008 M C220: 33,033 M	C360/C280: 24,009 M C220: 36,036 M

	Description	Rotation time excess warning threshold value	Life threshold value	Life stop threshold value
Drum unit/ Y,M,C	Rotation time of the PC drum and number of prints *4 are counted, and detected when one of those values reaches to the set life value shown on the right. However, only the PC drum rotation time is available from the life counter.	C360/C280: 5,676 M C220:8,489 M	C360/C280: 6,244 M C220:9,338 M	C360/C280: 6,811 M *3 C220:10,187 M *3
Drum unit/K		C360/C280: 5,676 M C220:8,489 M	C360/C280: 6,244 M C220:9,338 M	C360/C280: 6,811 M *3 C220:10,187 M *3
Developing unit/Y,M,C	When the number of printed pages *4 reaches the set life value shown on the right, the end of unit life is detected.	–	120,000 counts	123,000 counts *3
Developing unit/K		–	600,000 counts	610,000 counts *3

*1: A waste toner full condition is detected with detecting the actual waste toner emissions.
*2: Once the toner-full is detected, it has to be replaced with the new waste toner box in order to reset.
*3: The initiation of any new print cycle is inhibited when reaching the life stop threshold value.
*4: For counting with number of prints, the paper size in the sub scan direction is accumulated and counts one when it reaches to 216.0 mm. For the paper with sub scan size of less than 216.0mm, it is accumulated with the size of 216.0 mm.
*5: As the transfer roller unit and the ozone filter are included in the transfer belt unit, they are replaced all together. When the transfer belt unit is replaced and New Release is performed, the life counter value is reset.

3.4.2 Conditions for life specifications values

Item			Description
Job type	bizhub C360		Black : Making 4 copies per job Color : Making 4 copies per job
	bizhub C280		Black : Making 3 copies per job Color : Making 3 copies per job
	bizhub C220		Black : Making 2 copies per job Color : Making 2 copies per job
Paper size			A4 or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11
Color ratio			Black to Color = 3:1
PV/M	bizhub C360	Average	Bk: 5,000 / Color: 1,700 (US), Bk: 6,500 / Color: 2,200 (EU)
		Maximum	Bk: 15,000 / Color: 5,000 (US), Bk: 18,000 / Color: 6,000 (EU)
	bizhub C280	Average	Bk: 3,000 / Color: 1,000 (US), Bk: 4,000 / Color: 1,300 (EU)
		Maximum	Bk: 9,000 / Color: 3,000 (US), Bk: 10,500 / Color: 3,500 (EU)
	bizhub C220	Average	Bk: 1,800 / Color: 600 (US), Bk: 2,400 / Color: 800 (EU)
		Maximum	Bk: 6,000 / Color: 2,000 (US), Bk: 6,750 / Color: 2,250 (EU)
Original density			B/W = 5 % for each color, 5 % for black
Low power mode			OFF
No. of operating days per month			20 days (Main power switch turned ON and OFF 20 times per month)

3.4.3 Control causing inhibited printing for one part when an inhibited-printing event occurs in another part

A. Outline

- To reduce the number of times that CE visits the client site, if one of the following parts subject to this control reaches the life stop threshold value where printing is disabled and if one of the rest of the parts reaches the threshold (See the list of the threshold value below) provided specially for this control, printing is disabled until both parts are replaced together.

B. Target parts

- Drum unit/Y,M,C,K

C. Threshold value

		Drum unit rotation time counter	Drum unit number of prints counter
bizhub C360	Y,M,C	6,747 M	107,100 counts
	K	6,619 M	139,940 counts
bizhub C280	Y,M,C	6,735 M	89,090 counts
	K	6,641 M	117,130 counts
bizhub C220	Y,M,C	10,032 M	65,020 counts
	K	9,945 M	82,060 counts

4. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE

NOTE

- **The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure of maintenance represents the isopropyl alcohol.**

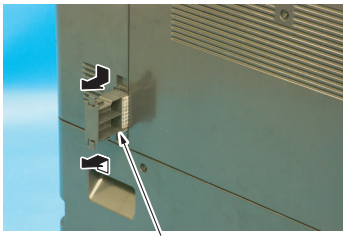
4.1 Housing section

4.1.1 Replacing the ozone filter

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

- Ozone filter: Every 300,000 counts (bizhub C360/C280)
  Every 260,000 counts (bizhub C220)

B. Procedure



1. Grip the handle on the ozone filter [1] and slide it out of the machine.

4.2 Photo conductor section

4.2.1 Replacing the drum unit

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

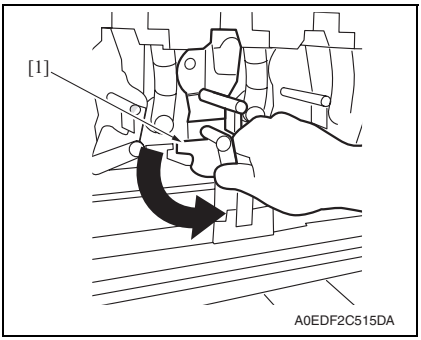
- Drum unit/Y,M,C : Every 90,000 counts (bizhub C360)
  Every 75,000 counts (bizhub C280)
  Every 55,000 counts (bizhub C220)
- Drum unit/K : Every 120,000 counts (bizhub C360)
  Every 100,000 counts (bizhub C280)
  Every 70,000 counts (bizhub C220)

NOTE

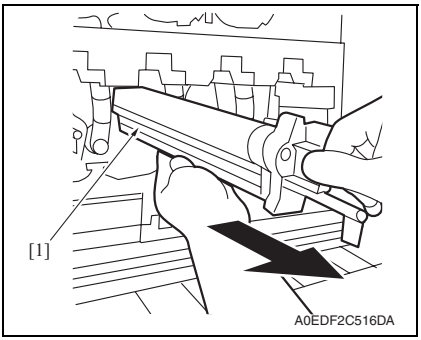
- **The following shows the procedure for replacing the drum unit/M, but take the same procedure for the drum unit/Y, C, K.**

B. Removal procedure

1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the waste toner box.
See P.37

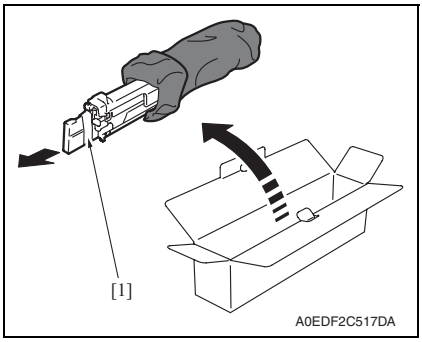


3. Turn the drum unit lock lever [1] and release the lock.

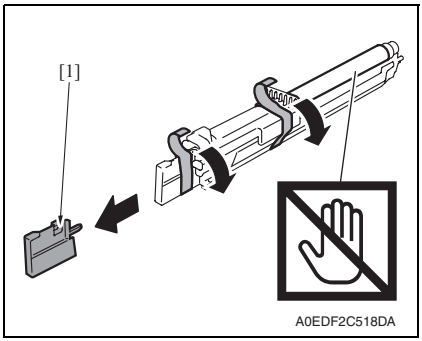


4. Pull the drum unit [1] to you and remove it from the machine.

C. Reinstall procedure



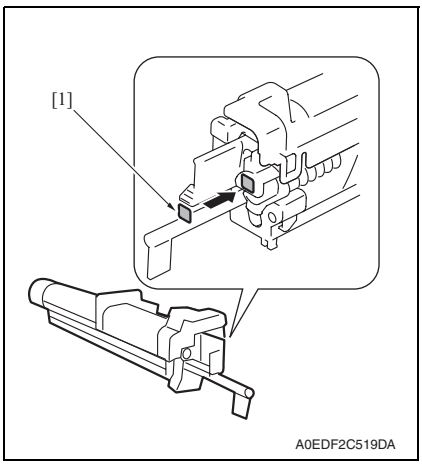
1. Remove the drum unit [1] from its package.
2. Remove the drum unit [1] from the plastic bag.



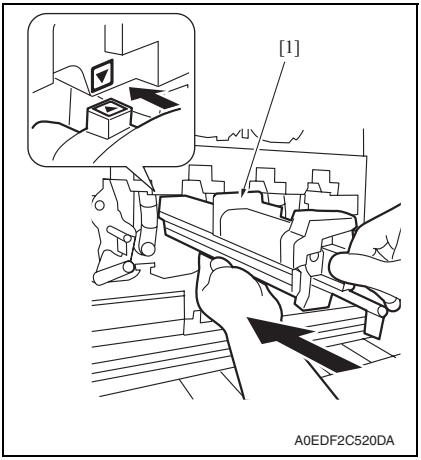
3. Remove the tape and packing material [1].

NOTE

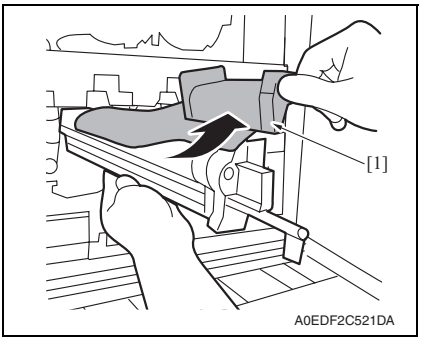
- **Do not hold the drum unit by the upper part. Holding it by the upper part can cause scratches on the surface of the photo conductor, resulting in the deterioration of image quality.**



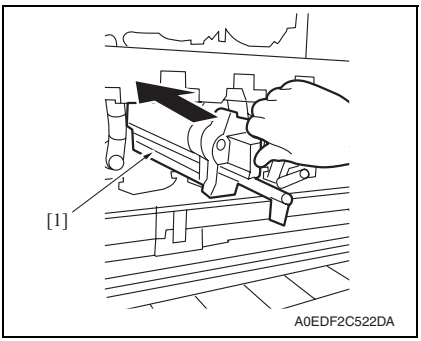
4. Put the label [1].
(Drum unit/C,M,Y only)



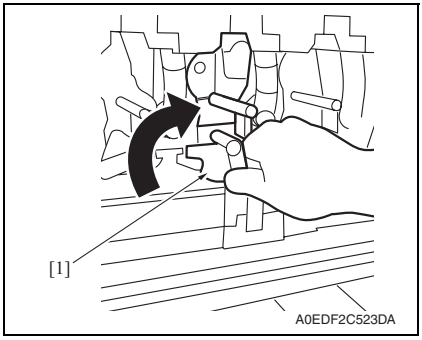
5. Align the "▲" mark on the drum unit with the "▼" mark on the machine and insert the drum unit [1] into the machine.



6. Remove the photo conductor protective sheet [1].



7. Completely insert the drum unit [1].



8. Turn the drum unit lock lever [1] and lock the drum unit.

NOTE

- **If the lock lever is hard to rotate, turn the lever while pushing the drum unit to the rear.**

9. Reinstall the waste toner box.

10. Close the front door.

11. Select [Service Mode] → [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Gradation Adjust] and carry out gradation adjust.
See P.391

4.3 Charging section

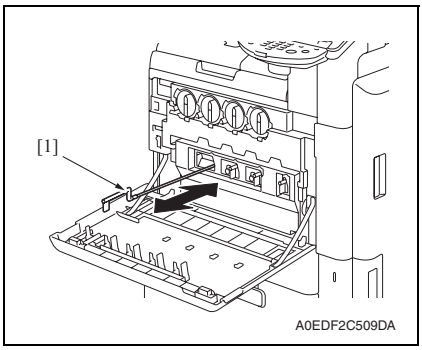
4.3.1 Cleaning of the electrostatic charger wire

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Electrostatic charger wire: when toner cartridge/Y,M,C,K is replaced

B. Procedure

1. Open the front door.



2. Slowly pull out the charger-cleaning tool [1] as far as possible.
Next, slowly push in the charger-cleaning tool as far as possible.
Repeat the above operations three times.

NOTE

- **Every time when replacing each color of the toner cartridge, clean the electrostatic charger wire of the corresponding color.**
- **Move the charger-cleaning tool slowly all the way to the end of either way.**

4.4 Developing section

4.4.1 Replacing the developing unit

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

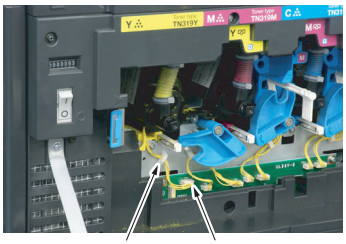
- Developing unit/Y,M,C : Every 114,000 counts
- Developing unit/K : Every 570,000 counts

NOTE

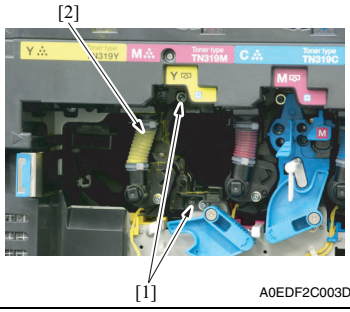
- **Although the procedure shown below is for the replacement of the developing unit/Y, use the same procedure to replace other developing units.**

B. Procedure

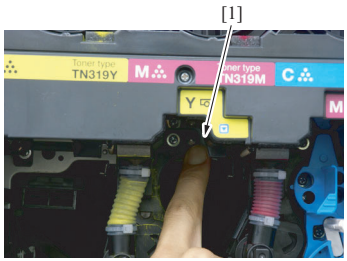
1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the waste toner box.
See P.37
3. Remove the front side relay board cover.
See P.65
4. Remove the drum unit.
See P.26



5. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [1], and disconnect the connector [2].



6. Remove two screws [1], and remove the developing unit [2].



A0EDF2C004DA

7. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.

NOTE

- **To install the two screws in the developing unit, press the position [1] with your finger as shown in the illustration.**

4.5 Toner supply section

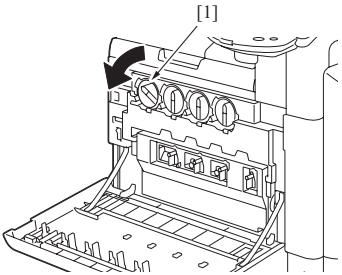
4.5.1 Replacing the toner cartridge

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

- Toner cartridge/Y,M,C : Every 26,000 prints
- Toner cartridge/K : Every 29,000 prints

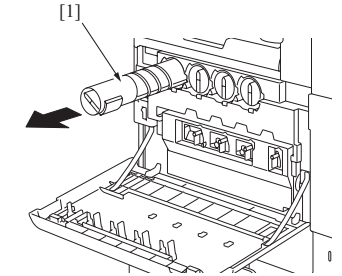
B. Removal procedure

1. Open the front door.



A0EDF2C501DA

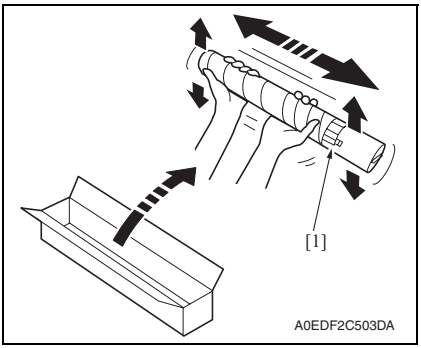
2. Turn the toner cartridge [1] in the direction as shown in the illustration to release the lock.



A0EDF2C502DA

3. Pull the toner cartridge [1] to you and remove it.

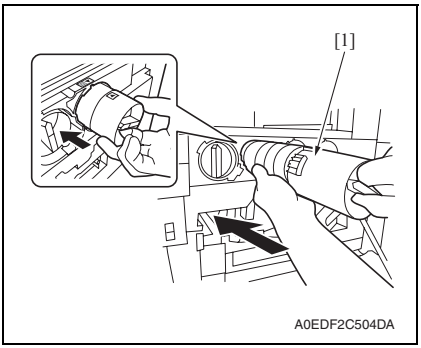
C. Reinstall procedure



1. Remove the new toner cartridge [1] from its packaging, and the shake the cartridge side to side 5 to 10 times.

NOTE

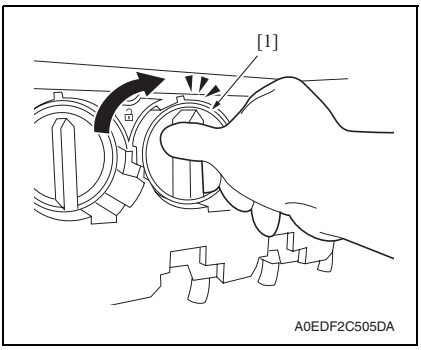
- **Shake the toner cartridge well. If shaking is not enough, that may cause trouble.**



2. Insert the toner cartridge [1] into the machine.

NOTE

- **Make sure that the toner cartridge is the same color as the label in the cartridge compartment.**
- **Make sure that the blue label position of the toner cartridge is matched with the one of the machine side.**



3. Completely insert the toner cartridge [1] into the machine and turn it in the direction as shown in the illustration in order to fix the toner cartridge.

4. Clean the electrostatic charger wire.
See P.29

4.6 1st transfer section

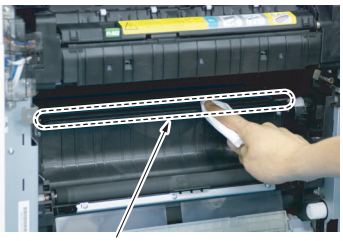
4.6.1 Cleaning of the image transfer entrance guide

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Image transfer entrance guide: Every 240,000 counts or when the transfer belt unit is replaced

B. Procedure

1. Remove the transfer belt unit.
See P.34



2. Wipe the image transfer entrance guide [1] clean of spilled toner and dirt using a cleaning pad with water or alcohol.

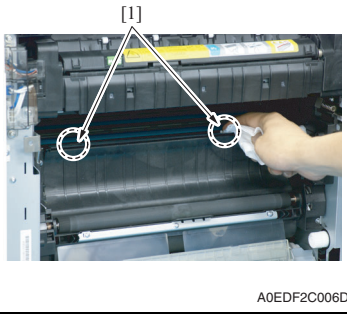
4.6.2 Cleaning of the IDC registration sensor/MK,YC

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- IDC registration sensor/MK,YC: Every 240,000 counts or when the transfer belt unit is replaced

B. Procedure

1. Remove the transfer belt unit.
See P.34



2. Wipe the surface of the IDC registration sensor/MK,YC [1] clean of spilled toner and dirt.

4.6.3 Replacing the transfer belt unit

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

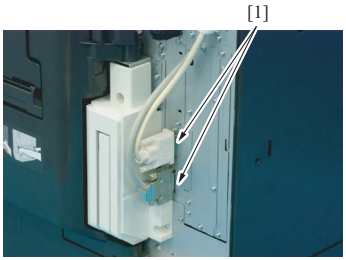
- Transfer belt unit : Every 300,000 counts (bizhub C360)
  Every 260,000 counts (bizhub C280/C220)

NOTE

- **Before replacement operations of the transfer belt unit, make sure to turn OFF the main power switch and the sub power switch.**

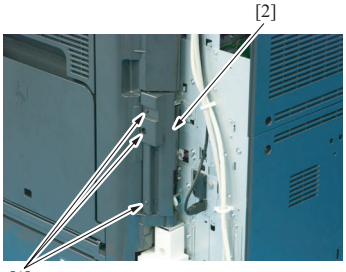
B. Removal procedure

1. Remove the rear right cover.
See P.56



A0EDF2C007DA

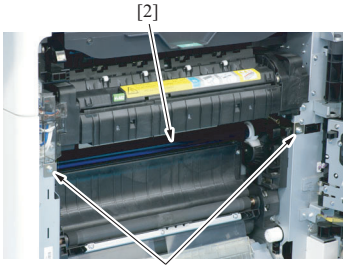
2. Disconnect two connectors [1].



A0EDF2C008DA

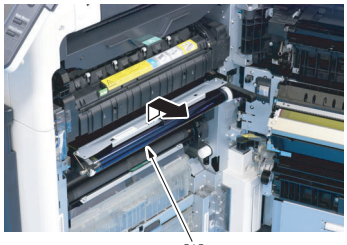
3. Remove three screws [1], and remove right door hinge cover [2].

4. Open the right door and regist unit.



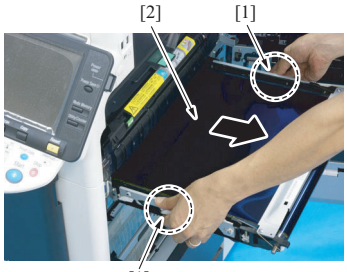
A0EDF2C009DA

5. Remove two screws [1] and unlock the transfer belt [2].



A0EDF2C010DA

6. Hold the both sides and lift it to take out the transfer belt unit [1] a little.



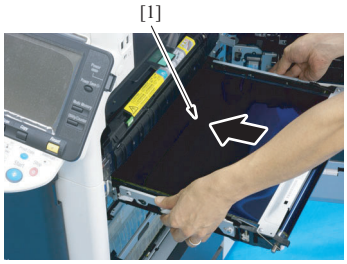
A0EDF2C011DA

7. Hold the position [1] as shown in the left and remove the transfer belt unit [2].

NOTE

- **Do not touch the surface of the Image transfer belt unit.**
- **Cover the image transfer belt unit with something such shade cloth to protect its surface from dust or foreign matter.**

C. Reinstall procedure

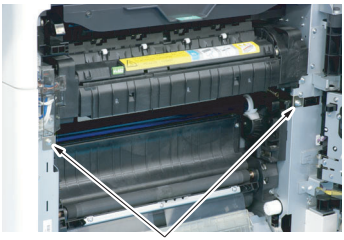


A0EDF2C012DA

1. Insert the transfer belt unit [1].

NOTE

- **Insert the transfer belt unit with care not to allow its docking gear to be damaged by hitting it against the rail or associated part.**
- **Do not touch the surface of the image transfer belt unit.**
- **Cover the image transfer belt unit with something such shade cloth to protect its surface from dust or foreign matter.**



2. Install the transfer belt unit with two screws [1].

NOTE

- **Replace the ozone filter and the transfer roller unit, which are supplied with the transfer belt unit, at the same time.**

3. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
4. Turn ON the main power switch.
5. Select [Service Mode] → [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Gradation Adjust] and carry out gradation adjust.
See P.391

4.7 2nd transfer/separation section

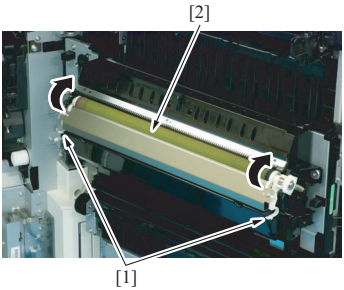
4.7.1 Replacing the transfer roller unit

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

- Transfer roller unit: Every 300,000 counts (bizhub C360)
  Every 260,000 counts (bizhub C280/C220)

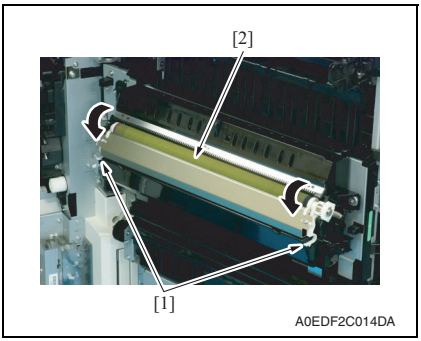
B. Removal procedure

1. Open the right door and the regist unit.



2. Unlock the lock levers [1] of the transfer roller unit (at two places).
3. Holding onto the lock levers [1] (at two places), remove the transfer roller unit [2].

C. Reinstall procedure



1. Holding onto the lock levers [1] (at two places), mount the new transfer roller unit [2].
2. Lock the lock levers [1] (at two places).

NOTE

- **Make sure that the levers are locked in position both at front and rear.**

3. Close the right door.

4.8 Toner collection section

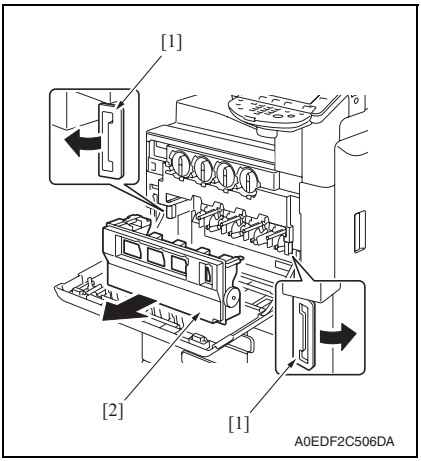
4.8.1 Replacing the waste toner box

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

- Waste toner box: Every 45,000 counts

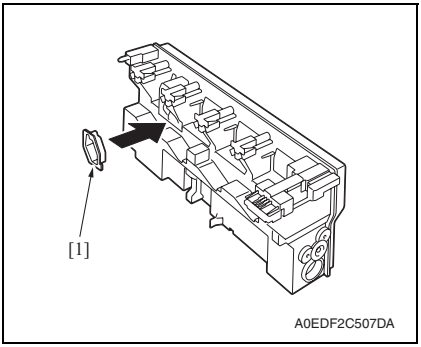
B. Removal procedure

1. Open the front door.



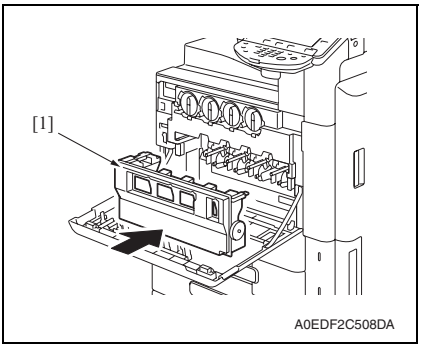
2. Unhook the waste toner box fixing lever [1] and remove the waste toner box [2].

3. Clean the surface around the waste toner collecting port.
See P.38



4. Take out the cap [1] from the new waste toner box package, and attach it to the old waste toner box.

C. Reinstall procedure



1. Remove the brand new waste toner box from its package and remove the packing material.
2. Set the waste toner box [1].

3. Close the front door.

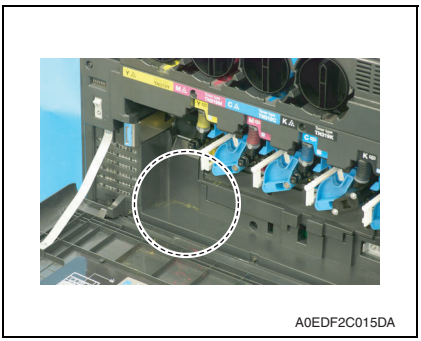
4.8.2 Cleaning of the area around the waste toner collecting port

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Area around the waste toner collecting port: Every 60,000 counts (upon each call)

B. Procedure

1. Remove the waste toner box.
See P.37



2. Wipe the areas around the waste toner collecting port clean of spilled toner and dirt using a cleaning pad with water or alcohol.

4.9 Paper feed section

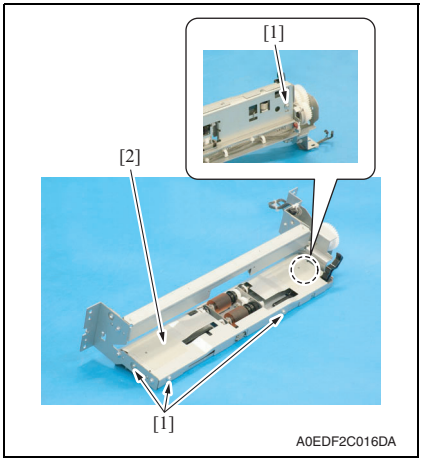
4.9.1 Replacing the tray 1 feed roller/tray 1 pick-up roller

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

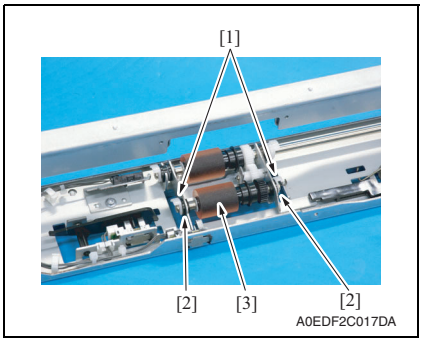
- Tray 1 feed roller: Every 300,000 counts
- Tray 1 pick-up roller: Every 300,000 counts

B. Procedure

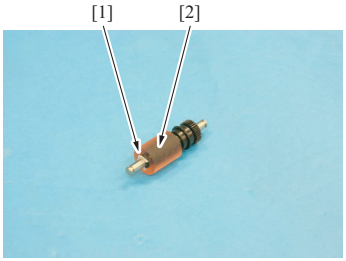
1. Remove the tray 1 paper feed unit.
See P.66
2. Remove the tray 1 separation roller unit.
See P.41



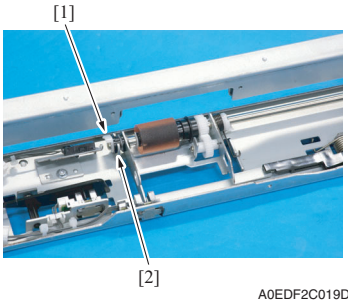
3. Remove four screws [1], and remove the tray 1 feed roller cover [2].



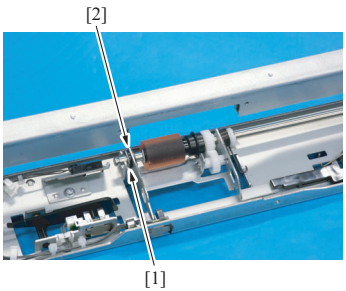
4. Remove two C-clips [1] and two bearings [2], and remove the tray 1 pick-up roller assy [3].



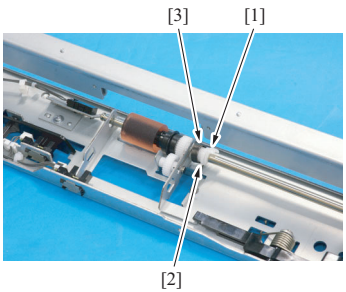
5. Remove the C-clip [1], and remove the tray 1 pick-up roller [2].



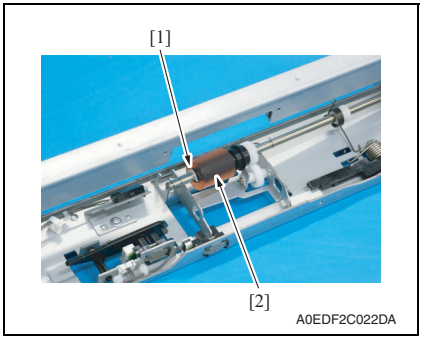
6. Remove the C-clip [1] and the bearing [2].



7. Remove the C-ring [1] and the bearing [2].



8. Remove the C-clip [1], and remove the bearing [2] and spring [3].



9. Remove the C-ring [1], and remove the tray 1 feed roller [2].

10. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.

11. Replace the tray 1 separation roller assy.
See P.41

12. Select [Service Mode] → [Counter] → [Life] and clear the count of [1st.].
See P.453

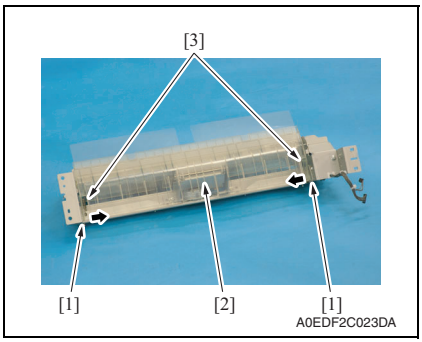
4.9.2 Replacing the tray 1 separation roller assy

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

- Tray 1 separation roller assy: Every 300,000 counts

B. Procedure

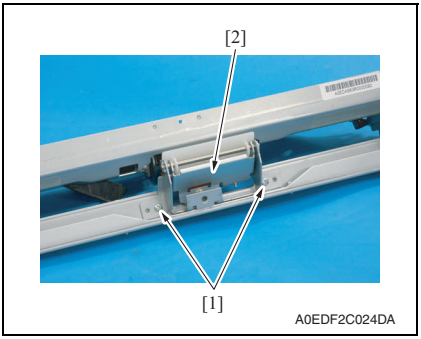
1. Remove the tray 1 paper feed unit.
See P.66



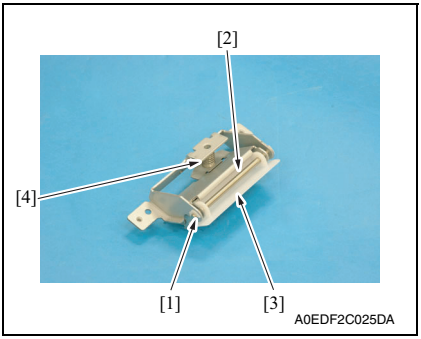
2. Unhook two tabs [1], and remove the jam clearing cover [2].

NOTE

- **When removing the jam clearing cover, be careful not to lose the springs [3].**



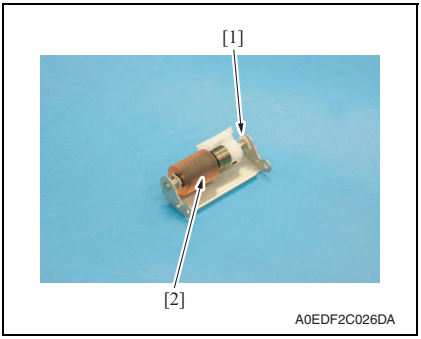
3. Remove two screws [1], and remove the tray 1 separation roller unit [2].



4. Remove the C-ring [1], and remove the shaft [2] and the cover [3].

NOTE

- **When removing the jam clearing cover, be careful not to lose the spring [4].**



5. Remove the C-ring [1], and remove the tray 1 separation roller assy [2].

6. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.

4.9.3 Replacing the tray 2 feed roller/tray 2 pick-up roller

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

- Tray 2 feed roller: Every 300,000 counts
- Tray 2 pick-up roller: Every 300,000 counts

B. Procedure

1. Remove the tray 2 paper feed unit.
See P.67
2. The remainder of the removal procedure is same as the one for the tray 1 feed roller/tray 1 pick-up roller. See “Replacing the tray 1 feed roller/tray 1 pick-up roller.”
See P.39
3. Replace the tray 2 separation roller assy.
See P.43
4. Select [Service Mode] → [Counter] → [Life] and clear the count of [2nd.].
See P.453

4.9.4 Replacing the tray 2 separation roller assy

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

- Tray 2 separation roller assy: Every 300,000 counts

B. Procedure

1. Remove the tray 2 paper feed unit.
See P.67
2. The remainder of the removal procedure is same as the one for the tray 1 separation roller assy. See “Replacing the tray 1 separation roller assy.”
See P.41

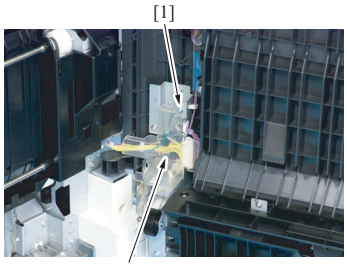
4.9.5 Replacing the manual bypass tray feed roller

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

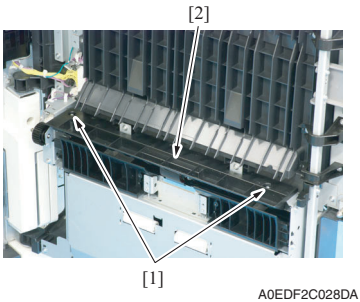
- Manual bypass tray feed roller: Every 200,000 counts

B. Procedure

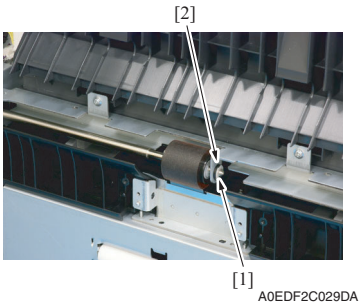
1. Remove the manual bypass tray separation roller unit.
See P.45



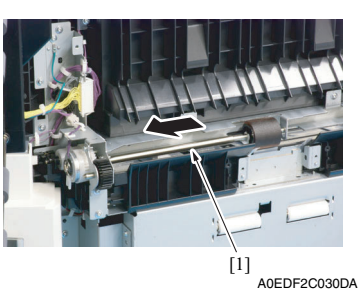
2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the connector cover [2].



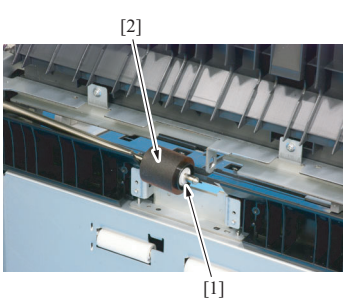
3. Remove two screws [1], and remove the feed roller cover [2].



4. Remove the C-ring [1] and the bearing [2].



5. Move the shaft [1] in the direction as shown in the illustration.



6. Remove the C-ring [1], and remove the manual bypass tray feed roller [2].

7. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
8. Replace the manual bypass tray separation roller assy.
See P.45
9. Select [Service Mode] → [Counter] → [Life] and clear the count of [Manual Tray].
See P.453

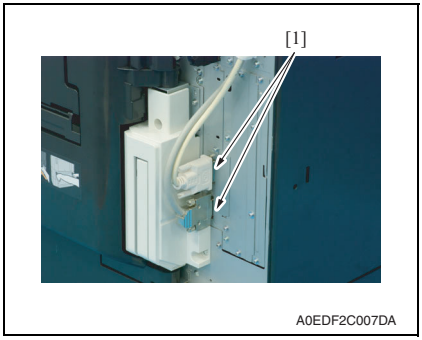
4.9.6 Replacing the manual bypass tray separation roller assy

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

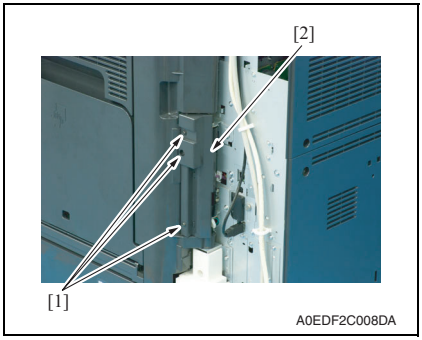
- Manual bypass tray separation roller assy: Every 200,000 counts

B. Procedure

1. Remove the rear right cover.
See P.56

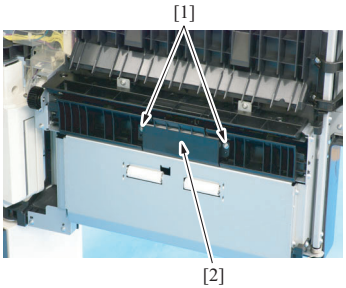


2. Disconnect two connectors [1].

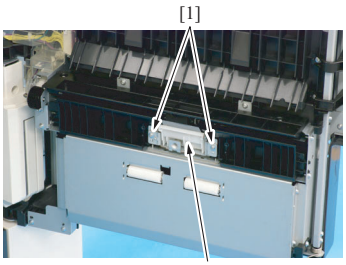


3. Remove three screws [1], and remove right door hinge cover [2].

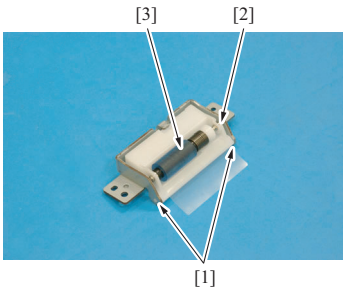
4. Open the right door.



5. Remove two screws [1], and remove the manual bypass tray separation roller cover [2].



6. Remove two screws [1], and remove the manual bypass tray separation roller unit [2].



7. Unhook two tabs [1], and remove the C-ring [2].
Remove the manual bypass tray separation roller assy [3].

NOTE

- **When removing the jam clearing cover, be careful not to lose the spring.**

8. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.

4.10 Registration section

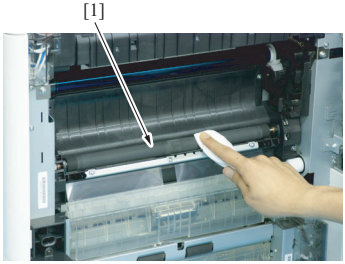
4.10.1 Cleaning of the timing roller

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Timing roller: Every 60,000 counts (upon each call)

B. Procedure

1. Open the right door and the regist unit.



A0EDF2C035DA

2. Using a cleaning pad with alcohol, wipe the timing roller [1] clean of dirt.

4.11 Fusing section

4.11.1 Replacing the fusing unit

⚠ CAUTION

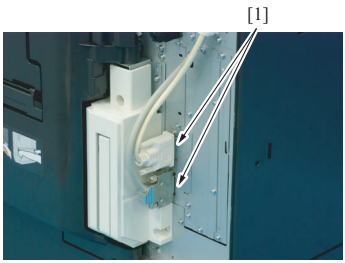
- **The temperature gets high in the vicinity of the fusing unit. You may get burned when you come into contact with the area. Before replacement operations, make sure that more than 20 minutes have elapsed since the main and sub power switches were turned off.**

A. Periodically replacing parts/cycle

- Fusing unit: Every 523,000 counts

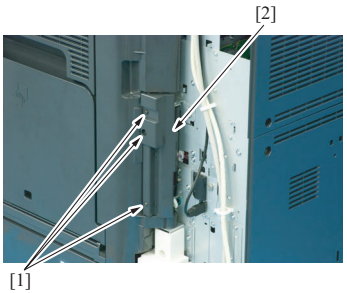
B. Procedure

1. Remove the rear right cover.
See P.56



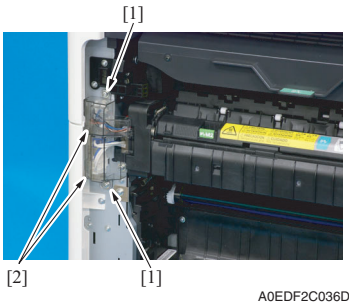
A0EDF2C007DA

2. Disconnect two connectors [1].

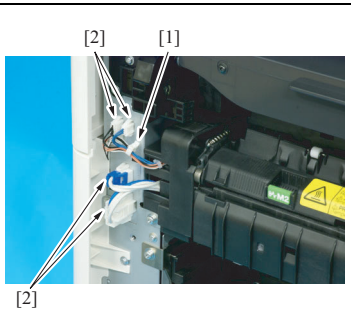


3. Remove three screws [1], and remove right door hinge cover [2].

4. Open the right door and the regist unit.

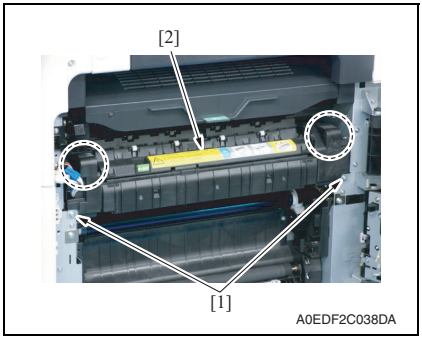


5. Remove the screw [1] each, and remove the two connector protective covers [2].



6. Remove the harnesses from the wire saddle [1].

7. Disconnect four connectors [2].



8. Remove two screws [1], and remove the fusing unit [2].

NOTE

- **When removing the fusing unit, hold the parts shown on the picture on the left so that it would not fall.**

4.12 Duplex section

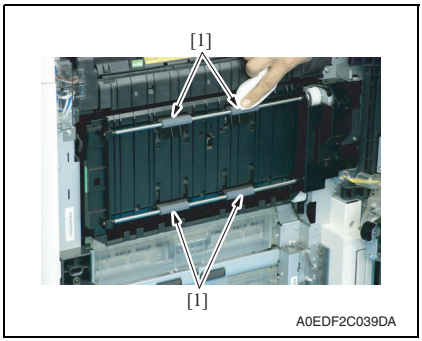
4.12.1 Cleaning of the duplex transport rollers

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Duplex transport rollers: Every 60,000 counts (upon each call)

B. Procedure

1. Open the right door.



2. Using a cleaning pad with water or alcohol, wipe the transport rollers [1] clean of dirt.

5. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEMS

5.1 Disassembly/adjustment prohibited items

A. Paint-locked screws

NOTE
- **To prevent loose screws, a screw lock in blue or green series color is applied to the screws.**
- **The screw lock is applied to the screws that may get loose due to the vibrations and loads created by the use of machine or due to the vibrations created during transportation.**
- **If the screw lock coated screws are loosened or removed, be sure to apply a screw lock after the screws are tightened.**

B. Red-painted screws

NOTE
- **The screws which are difficult to be adjusted in the field are painted in red in order to prevent them from being removed by mistake.**
- **Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.**

C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE
- **Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.**

D. Removal of PWBs

⚠ CAUTION
- **When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.**
- **The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.**
- **Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.**

5.1.1 CCD unit

A. Reason for prohibition
- Since the accuracy of the CCD unit is guaranteed as a unit, no accuracy is guaranteed if it is disassembled.
  Therefore, screws that lead to the disassembly of the CCD unit must not be removed.

5.1.2 PH unit

A. Reason for prohibition
- The laser runs inside the PH unit. Opening the cover may cause dust to enter and interrupt the laser. Do no remove any screw which may disassemble the PH unit.

5.1.3 Fusing unit

A. Reason for prohibition
- Inner part of the fusing unit and the position of the fusing belt are adjusted prior to shipping. Do not remove any screw which may disassemble the fusing unit.

5.2 Notes when transporting the machine

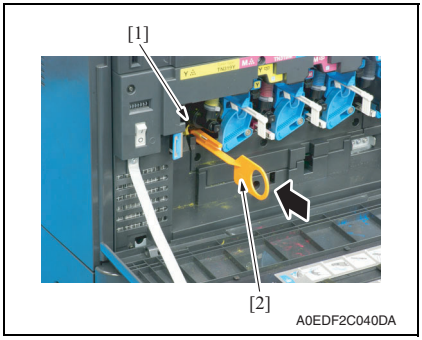
- When transporting a machine to reinstall it in another location, attach the following protective materials to the machine in order to prevent the machine from being damaged or spilling out by vibration during transportation.
- The protective materials are removed when the machine is set up. However, be sure to keep the protective materials after finishing the set-up.

5.2.1 Protective materials

A. Protective materials for the photo conductors

(1) Reinstall procedure

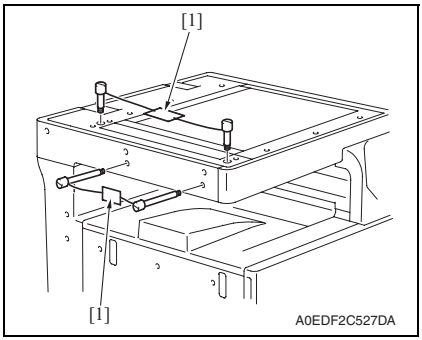
1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the waste toner box.
See P.37



3. Insert the protective materials for the photo conductors [2] in the indicated position [1] and push it as far as it will go.
4. Attach the protective materials to the rest of the photo conductors in the same way.

B. Scanner packing bracket

1. Check that the exposure unit is at the home position.
2. Remove four caps.



3. Attach the scanner packing brackets [1] to fix the scanner.

5.3 Disassembly/reassembly parts list

No.	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	Exterior parts	Front door	P.55
2		Left cover	P.55
3		Exit tray	P.56
4		Rear right cover	P.56
5		Upper right cover	P.56
6		Upper rear cover	P.57
7		Lower rear cover/1	P.57
8		Lower rear cover/2	P.57
9		Scanner rear cover	P.58
10		Scanner right cover	P.58
11		Scanner right front cover	P.59
12		USB interface cover	P.59
13		Scanner left front cover	P.59
14		Scanner upper front cover	P.60
15		Scanner left cover	P.60
16		Scanner upper rear cover	P.60
17		Scanner front cover	P.61
18		Slit glass cover	P.62
19		Original glass	P.62
20		Control panel assy	P.63
21		Tray 1	P.63
22		Tray 2	P.64
23		Front side relay board cover	P.65
24		Front cover	P.65
25	Units	Tray 1 paper feed unit	P.66
26		Tray 2 paper feed unit	P.67
27		PH unit	P.69
28		CCD board unit	P.72
29		Exposure unit	P.73
30		Sub hopper assy	P.75
31		Right door assy	P.76
32		Manual bypass tray unit	P.78
33		Regist unit	P.81
34		Conveyance unit	P.82
35		Hard disk drive (HDD)	P.83
36		PWB box	P.84
37		Main drive unit	P.86
38		Fusing drive unit	P.90
39		Hopper drive unit	P.92

No.	Section	Part name	Ref. page
40	Boards	Scanner relay board (REYB/SCAN)	P.93
41		Inverter board (INVB)	P.93
42		Machine condition monitor board (MCMB)	P.95
43		Front side relay board (FREYB)	P.95
44		DC power supply (DCPU)	P.96
45		PH relay board (PHREYB)	P.97
46		Printer control board (PRCB)	P.98
47		Service EEPROM board (SVERB)	P.99
48		MFP board (MFPB)	P.101
49		High voltage unit (HV)	P.104
50		SODIMM (DIMM)	P.105
51		NVRAM board (NRB)	P.106
52		Paper feed tray 1 paper FD sensor board (PSDB/1)	P.106
53		Paper feed tray 2 paper FD sensor board (PSDB/2)	P.107
54		Paper feed tray 1 LED board, paper feed tray 2 LED board (LEDB1, LEDB2)	P.108
55	Motors	Scanner motor (M201)	P.109
56		Duplex transport motor (M5)	P.112
57		Toner supply motor/YM, CK (M8, M9)	P.114
58		Transport motor (M1)	P.115
59		Color PC motor (M2)	P.116
60		Fusing motor (M3)	P.116
61		Switchback motor (M4)	P.117
62		Fusing pressure roller retraction motor (M11)	P.117
63		Toner cartridge motor/YM (M6)	P.118
64		Toner cartridge motor/CK (M7)	P.118
65		Color dev. unit engaged motor (M10)	P.120
66		Paper feed tray 1 lift-up motor (M12)	P.121
67		Paper feed tray 2 lift-up motor (M13)	P.123
68		Transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor (FM6)	P.123
69	Clutches	Paper feed tray 1 paper feed clutch (CL3)	P.125
70		Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport clutch (CL2)	P.126
71		Paper feed tray 2 paper feed clutch (CL1)	P.126
72		Manual paper feed clutch (CL7)	P.127
73		Developing clutch/K (CL6)	P.128
74		Registration roller clutch (CL4)	P.129
75	etc.	IDC registration sensor shutter solenoid (SD2)	P.130
76		IDC registration sensor/MK (IDCS/MK) assy	P.131
77		IDC registration sensor/YC (IDCS/YC) assy	
78		PH window cleaning pad	P.132
79		Scanner drive cable	P.133

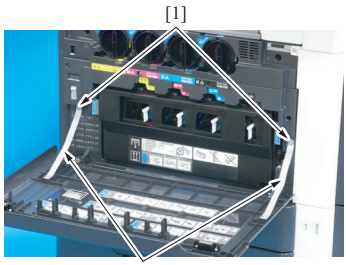
5.4 Cleaning parts list

No.	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	Processing section	Transfer belt unit	P.139
2		PH window	P.139
3	Tray 1	Tray 1 feed roller	P.140
4		Tray 1 pick-up roller	
5		Tray 1 separation roller	
6	Tray 2	Tray 2 feed roller	P.141
7		Tray 2 pick-up roller	
8		Tray 2 separation roller	
9		Tray 2 transport roller	P.142
10	Manual bypass tray	Manual bypass tray feed roller	P.142
11		Manual bypass tray separation roller	P.143
12	Scanner section	Original glass	P.143
13		Scanner rails	P.144
14		Mirrors (1st/2nd/3rd)	P.145
15		Lens	P.145
16		CCD sensor	P.146

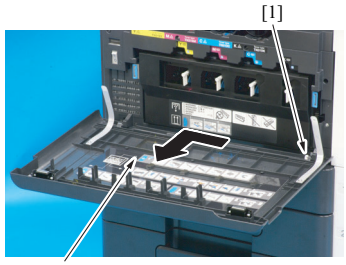
5.5 Disassembly/reassembly procedure

5.5.1 Front door

1. Open the front door.



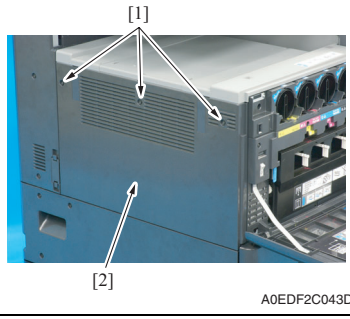
2. Remove two screws [1], and remove two stoppers [2].



3. Remove the C-clip [1], and remove the front door [2].

5.5.2 Left cover

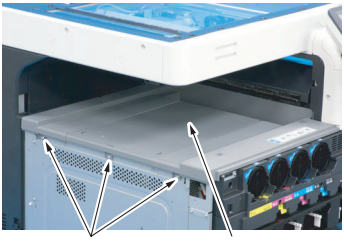
1. Open the front door.



2. Remove three screws [1], and remove the left cover [2].

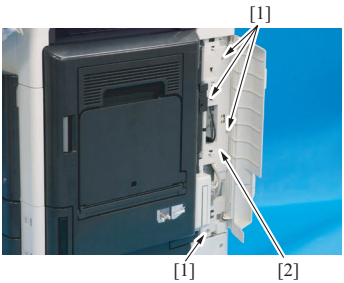
5.5.3 Exit tray

1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the left cover.
See P.55



3. Remove three screws [1], and remove the exit tray [2].

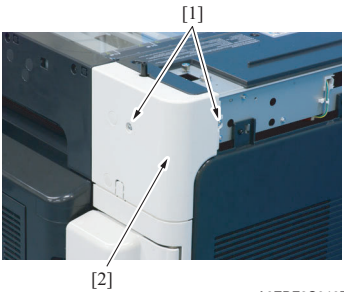
5.5.4 Rear right cover



1. Remove four screws [1], and remove the rear right cover [2].

5.5.5 Upper right cover

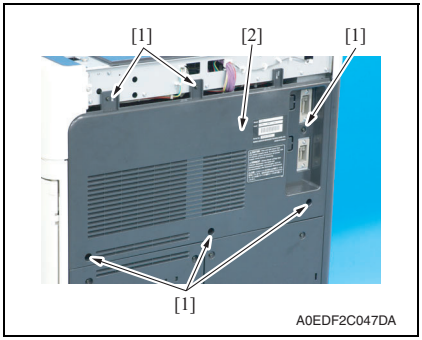
1. Remove the scanner rear cover.
See P.58



2. Remove two screws [1], and remove the upper right cover [2].

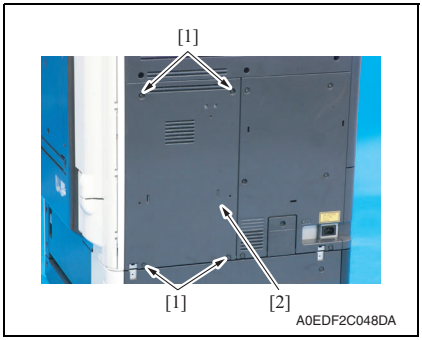
5.5.6 Upper rear cover

1. Remove the scanner rear cover.
See P.58



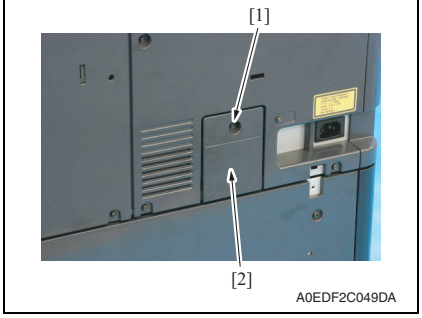
2. Remove six screws [1], and remove the upper rear cover [2].

5.5.7 Lower rear cover/1

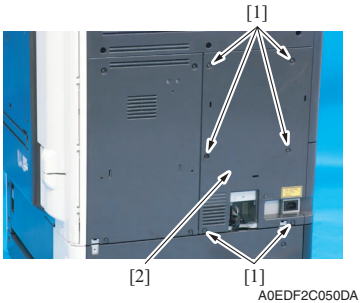


1. Remove four screws [1], and remove the lower rear cover/1 [2].

5.5.8 Lower rear cover/2

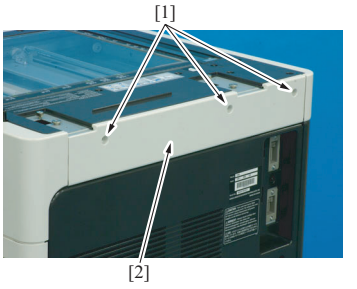


1. Remove the screw [1], and remove the connector cover [2].



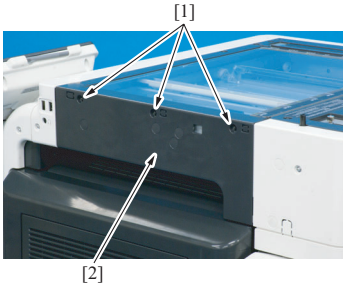
2. Remove six screws [1], and remove the lower rear cover/2 [2].

5.5.9 Scanner rear cover



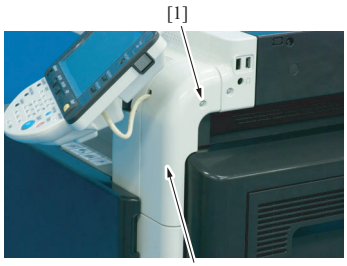
1. Remove three screws [1], and remove the scanner rear cover [2].

5.5.10 Scanner right cover



1. Remove three screws [1], and remove the scanner right cover [2].

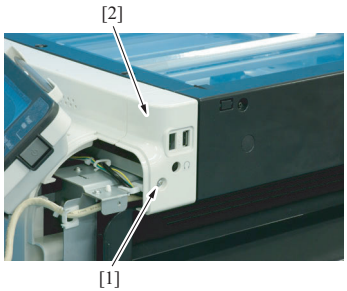
5.5.11 Scanner right front cover



1. Remove the screw [1], and remove the scanner right front cover [2].

5.5.12 USB interface cover

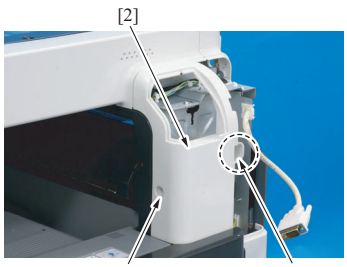
1. Remove the scanner right front cover.
See P.59



2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the USB interface cover [2].

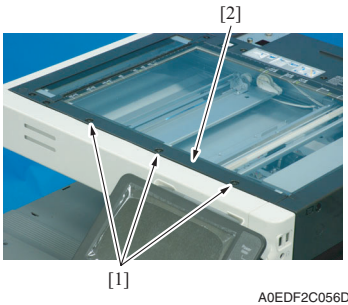
5.5.13 Scanner left front cover

1. Remove the control panel assy.
See P.63
2. Remove the scanner right front cover.
See P.59



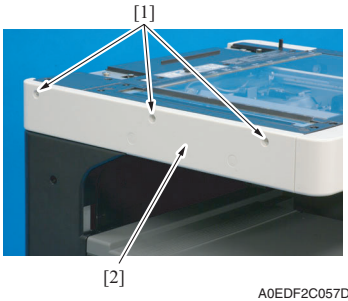
3. Remove two screws [1], and remove the scanner left front cover [2].

5.5.14 Scanner upper front cover



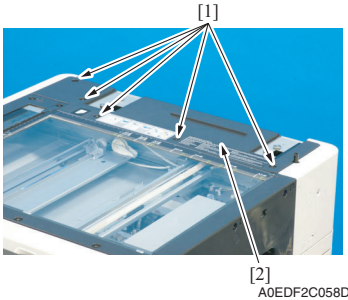
1. Remove three screws [1], and remove the scanner upper front cover [2].

5.5.15 Scanner left cover



1. Remove three screws [1], and remove the scanner left cover [2].

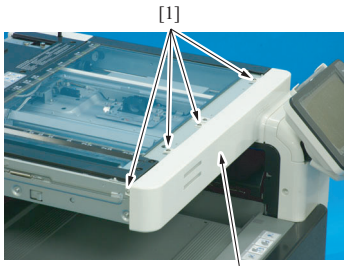
5.5.16 Scanner upper rear cover



1. Remove five screws [1], and remove the scanner upper rear cover [2].

5.5.17 Scanner front cover

1. Remove the scanner left cover.
See P.60
2. Remove the scanner right front cover.
See P.59
3. Remove the scanner left front cover.
See P.59
4. Remove the scanner upper front cover.
See P.60

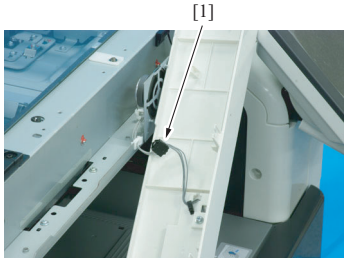


A0EDF2C059DA

5. Remove four screws [1], and remove the scanner front cover [2].

NOTE

- **Do not remove it in rush as it is connected to the harness.**

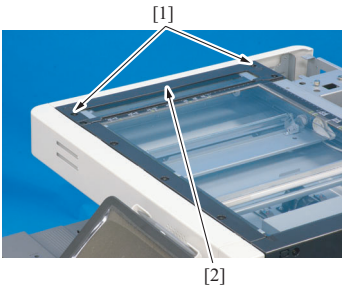


A0EDF2C060DA

6. Disconnect the connector [1].

5.5.18 Slit glass cover

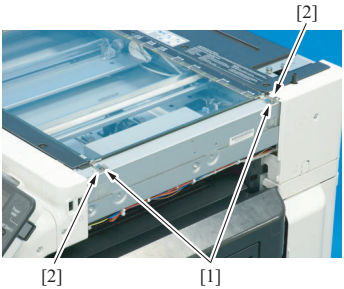
1. Remove the scanner upper rear cover.
See P.60



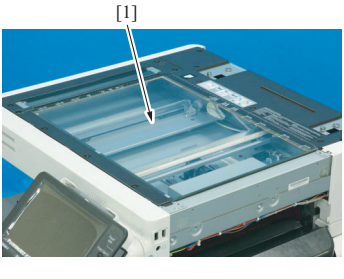
2. Remove two screws [1], and remove the slit glass cover [2].

5.5.19 Original glass

1. Remove the scanner right cover.
See P.58

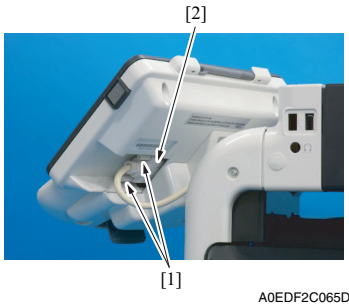


2. Remove each screw [1], and remove the original glass fixing bracket (near side/inmost side) [2].

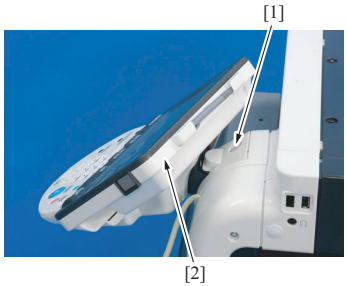


3. Remove the original glass [1].

5.5.20 Control panel assy



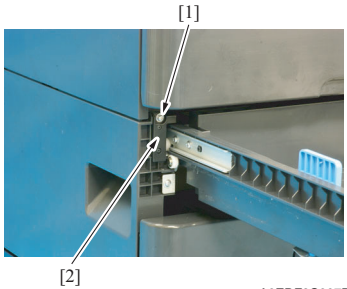
1. Remove two screws [1], and disconnect the connector [2].



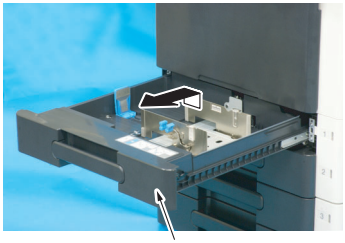
2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the control panel assy [2].

5.5.21 Tray 1

1. Slide out the tray 1.



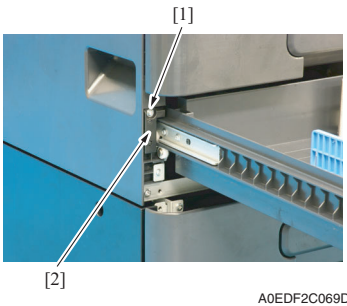
2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the stopper [2].



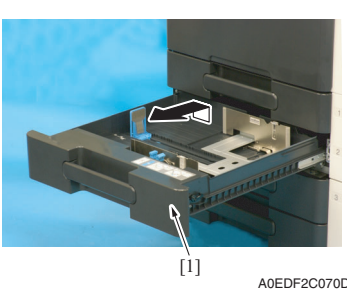
3. Remove the tray 1 [1].

5.5.22 Tray 2

1. Slide out the tray 2.



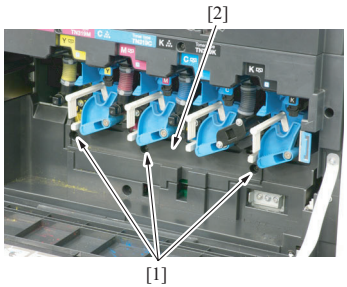
2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the stopper [2].



3. Remove the tray 2 [1].

5.5.23 Front side relay board cover

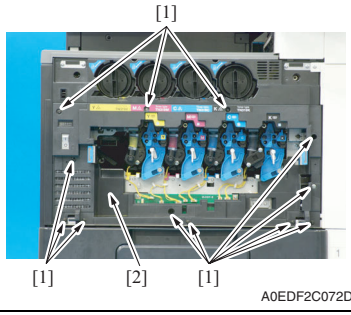
1. Remove the waste toner box.
See P.37



2. Remove three screws [1], and remove the front side relay board cover [2].

5.5.24 Front cover

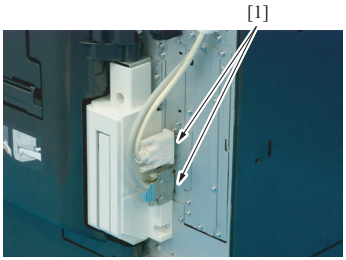
1. Remove the front door.
See P.55
2. Remove the front side relay board cover.
See P.65



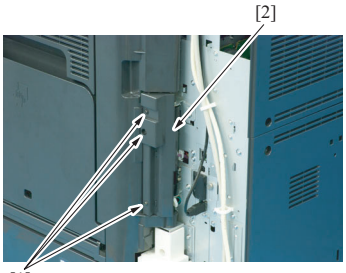
3. Remove 12 screws [1], and remove the front cover [2].

5.5.25 Tray 1 paper feed unit

1. Slide out the tray 1.
2. Remove the rear right cover.
See P.56

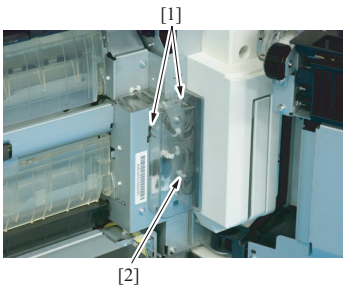


3. Disconnect two connectors [1].

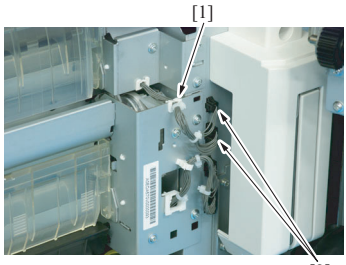


4. Remove three screws [1], and remove right door hinge cover [2].

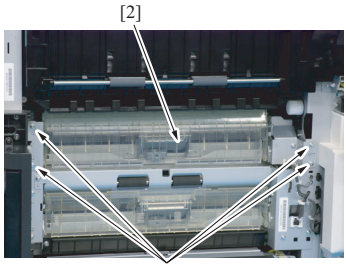
5. Open the right door and the regist unit.



6. Unhook two tabs [1], and remove the connector cover [2].



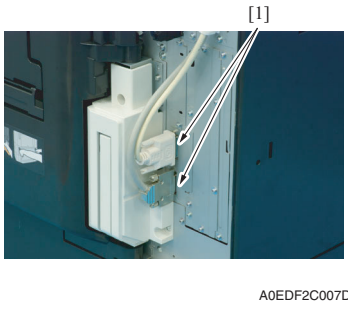
7. Remove the harnesses from the edge cover [1], and disconnect two connectors [2].



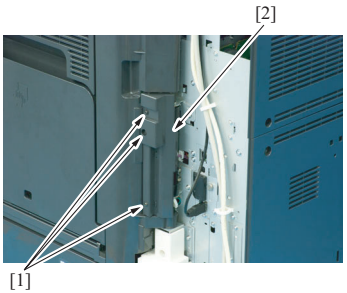
8. Remove four screws [1], and remove the tray 1 paper feed unit [2].

5.5.26 Tray 2 paper feed unit

1. Slide out the tray 2.
2. Remove the rear right cover.
See P.56

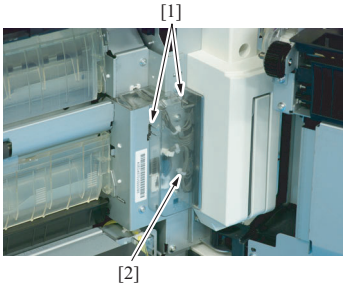


3. Disconnect two connectors [1].

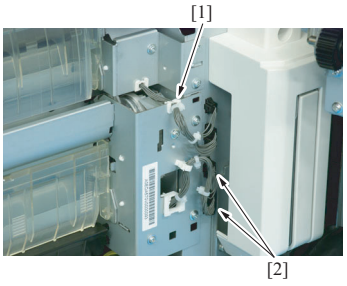


4. Remove three screws [1], and remove right door hinge cover [2].

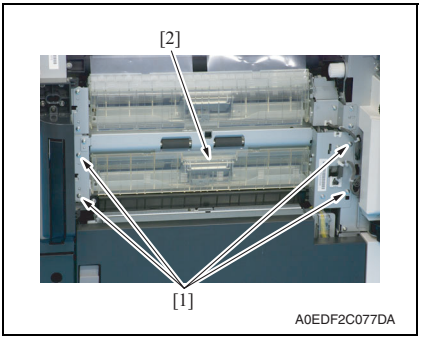
5. Open the right door and the regist unit.



6. Unhook two tabs [1], and remove the connector cover [2].



7. Remove the harnesses from the edge cover [1], and disconnect two connectors [2].



8. Remove four screws [1], and remove the tray 2 paper feed unit [2].

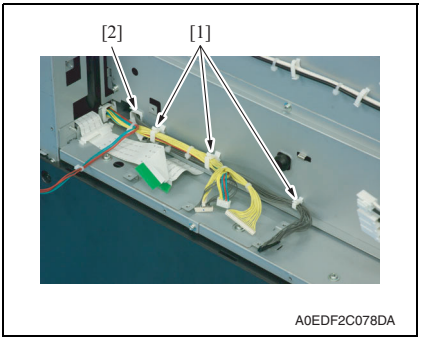
5.5.27 PH unit

CAUTION
• **Do not replace the printer head unit while the power is ON. Laser beam generated during the above mentioned activity may cause blindness.**
• **Do not disassemble or adjust the printer head unit. Laser beam generated during the above mentioned activity may cause blindness.**

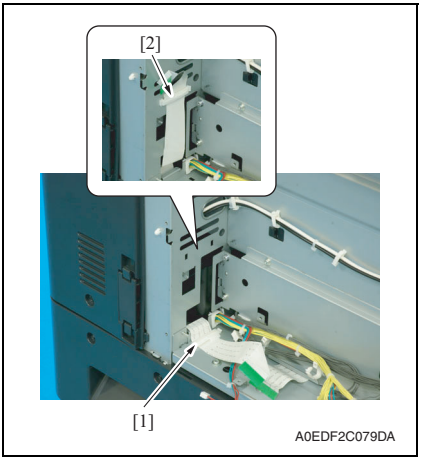
A. Removal procedure

1. Remove the DC power supply.
See P.96

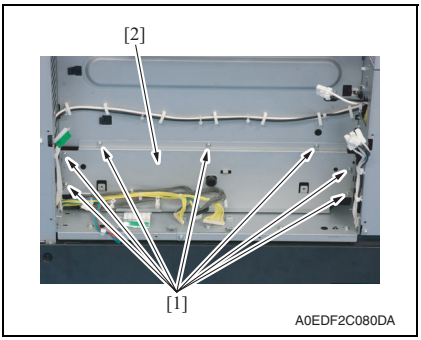
2. Remove the PH relay board.
See P.97



3. Remove the harnesses from three wire saddles [1] and the edge cover [2].

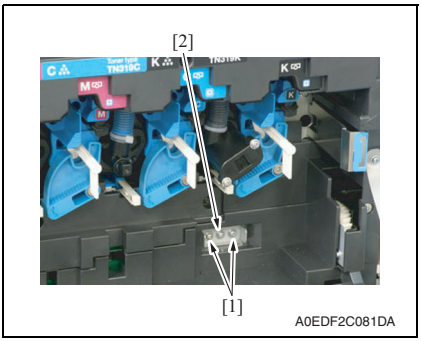


4. Remove the cable holder [1] of the flat cable.
5. Move the flat cable to the position [2] shown in the illustration and secure it with the cable holder.

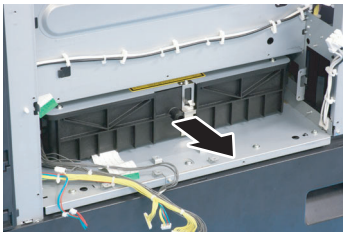


6. Remove seven screws [1], and remove the metal plate [2].

7. Remove the waste toner box.



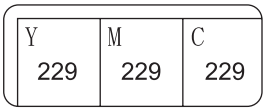
8. Remove two screws [1], and remove the set pin [2] for the PH unit.



A0EDF2C082DA

9. Remove the PH unit [1].

10. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.



A0EDF2C529DB

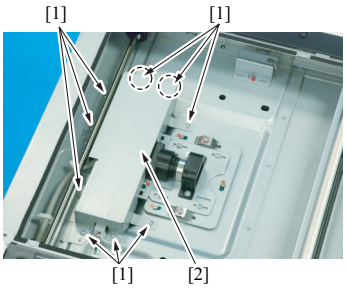
11. Select [Skew adjustment] after selecting [Service Mode] → [Machine] → [Skew adjustment], and input the adjustment value that is put on the side of the replaced PH unit.
See P.386

12. Execute [Skew adjustment] and [Skew adjustment reset] after selecting [Service Mode] → [Machine] → [Skew adjustment].

5.5.28 CCD board unit

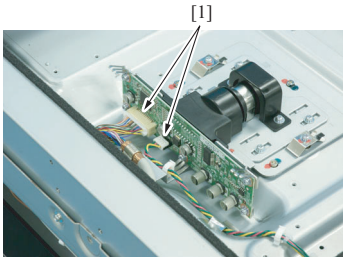
A. Removal procedure

1. Remove the original glass.
See P.62



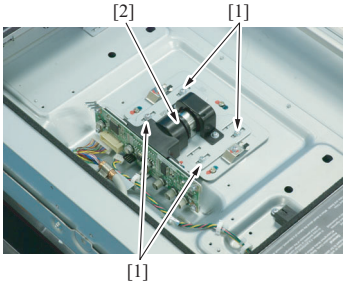
A0EDF2C244DA

2. Remove nine screws [1], and remove the CCD board protective shield [2].



A0EDF2C083DA

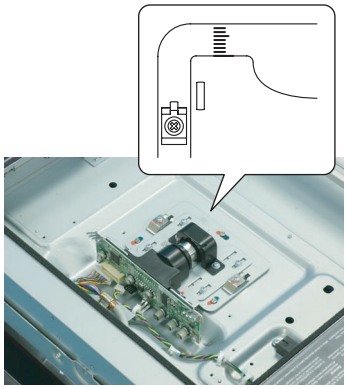
3. Disconnect two connectors [1].



A0EDF2C084DA

4. Remove four screws [1], and remove the CCD board unit [2].

B. Reinstall procedure



A0EDF2C085DA

1. Set the CCD unit to the mounting position at the center of the scale, and fix it with four screws.
2. Reinstall the original glass.
3. Turn ON the main power switch and sub power switch.
4. Carry out the [Cross Direction Adjustment] in Service Mode. If the specifications are not met, loosen the CCD board unit mounting screws and move the CCD board unit in the sub scan direction as necessary.
See P.382

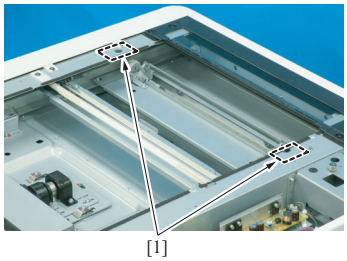
NOTE

- **Hold the CCD board unit by hand when moving it. NEVER use a screwdriver or similar tool to tap to move it, as a varied distance between the CCD sensor and lens results.**

5.5.29 Exposure unit

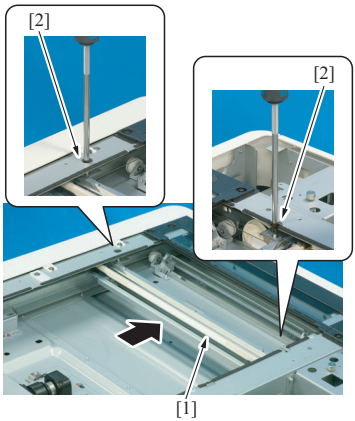
A. Removal procedure

1. Remove the original glass.
See P.62
2. Remove the scanner upper front cover.
See P.60
3. Remove the scanner upper rear cover.
See P.60

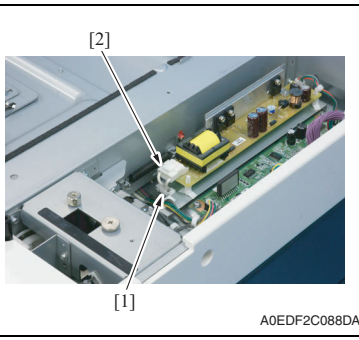


A0EDF2C086DA

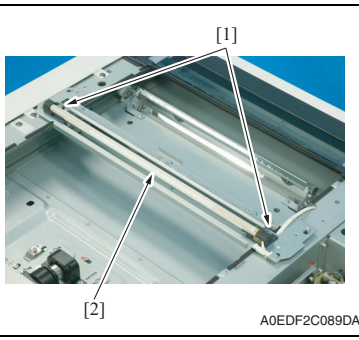
4. Remove the two sheets [1] as shown in the illustration.



5. Move the exposure unit [1] to the position where the sheets are removed (where a screwdriver can reach the screws) in the previous step.
6. Remove two screws [2], and remove the exposure unit [1].



7. Remove the harness from the edge cover [1], and disconnect the connector [2].

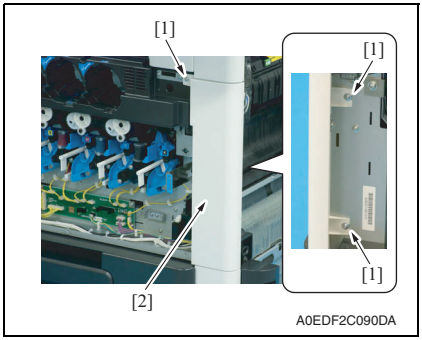


8. Remove two screws [1], and remove the exposure lamp [2] from the exposure unit.

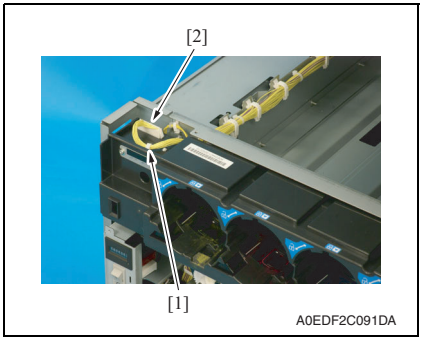
9. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
10. Perform the following setting. [Service Mode] → [ADF] → [Read Pos Adj]
See P.494

5.5.30 Sub hopper assy

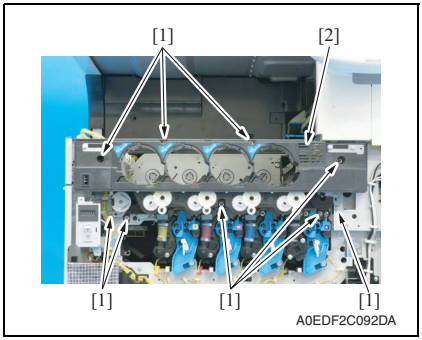
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the front cover.
See P.55
3. Remove the toner cartridge/Y,M,C,K.
See P.31
4. Remove the drum unit/Y,M,C,K.
See P.26
5. Remove the developing unit/Y,M,C,K.
See P.30
6. Remove the exit tray.
See P.56



7. Remove three screws [1], and remove the right front cover [2].



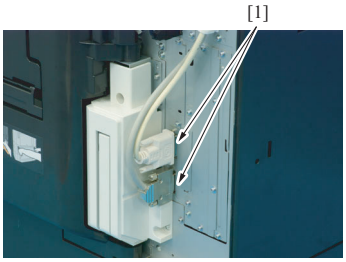
8. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [1], and disconnect the connector [2].



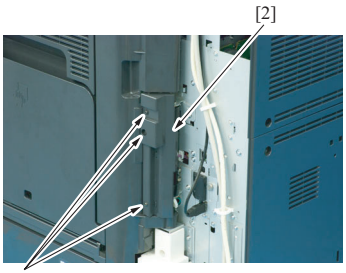
9. Remove nine screws [1], and remove the sub hopper assy [2].

5.5.31 Right door assy

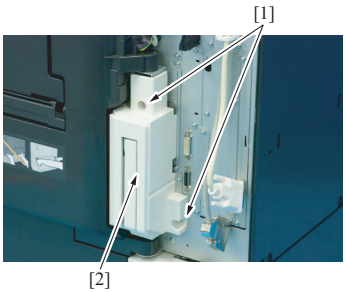
1. Remove the rear right cover.
See P.56



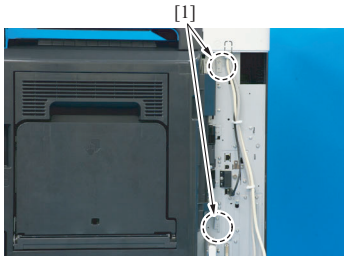
2. Disconnect two connectors [1].



3. Remove three screws [1], and remove right door hinge cover [2].

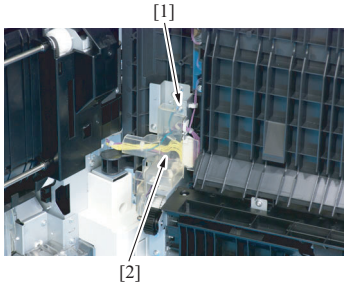


4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the lower right cover [2].

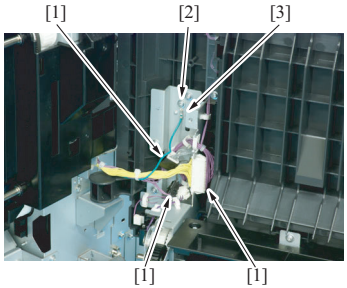


5. To mark the position where the right door assy is installed, draw two guide lines on the scales [1] indicated on the machine frame.

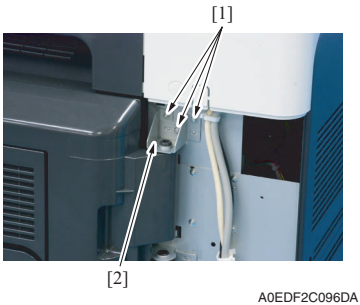
6. Open the right door.



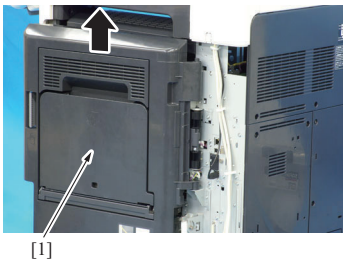
7. Remove the screw [1], and remove the connector cover [2].



8. Disconnect three connectors [1].
9. Remove the screw [2], and remove the ground terminal [3].



10. Remove three screws [1], and remove the hinge (upper) [2].



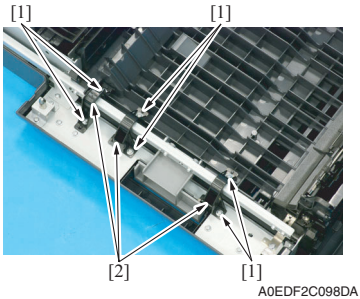
11. Raise the right door and remove the right door assy [1].

NOTE

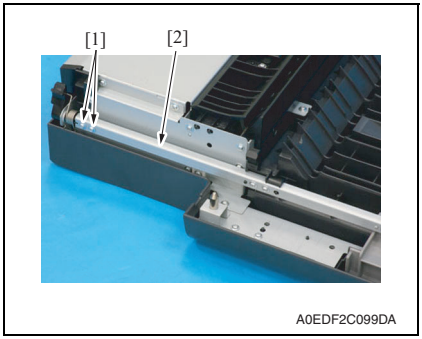
- **When installing the right door assy, align it with the guide lines drawn on the scales indicated on the machine frame. Open and close the right door to check for any interference and correct if necessary.**

5.5.32 Manual bypass tray unit

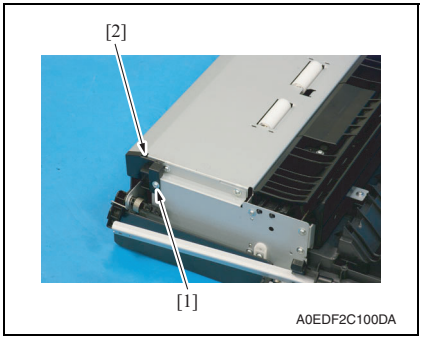
1. Remove the right door assy.
See P.76



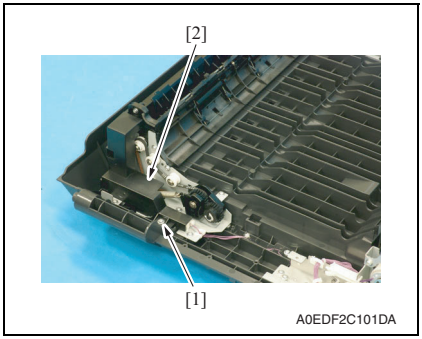
2. Remove two screws [1] each, and remove three covers [2].



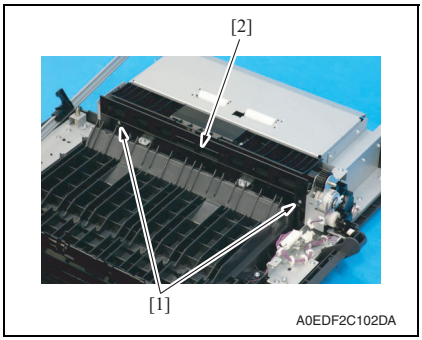
3. Remove two screws [1] and shift the support [2].



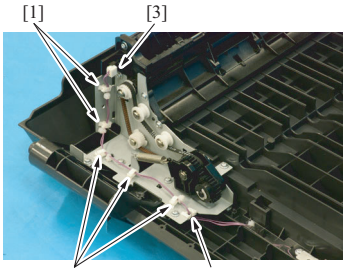
4. Remove the screw [1], and remove the cover [2].



5. Remove the screw [1], and remove the cover [2].

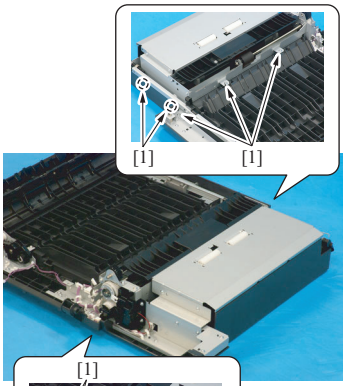


6. Remove two screws [1], and remove the cover [2].



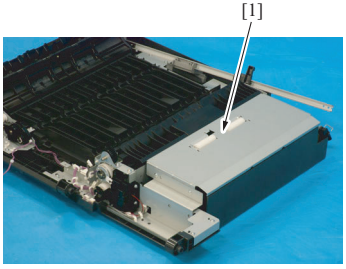
A0EDF2C103DA

7. Remove the harness from five wire saddles [1] and the edge cover [2], and disconnect the connector [3].



A0EDF2C104DA

8. Remove 13 screws [1].

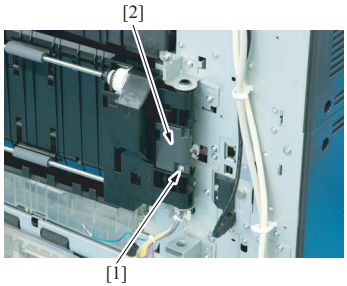


A0EDF2C105DA

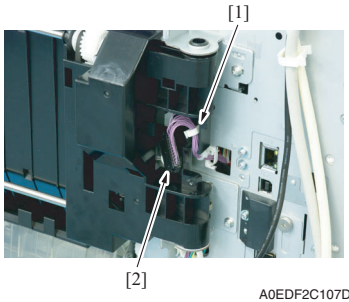
9. Remove the manual bypass tray unit [1].

5.5.33 Regist unit

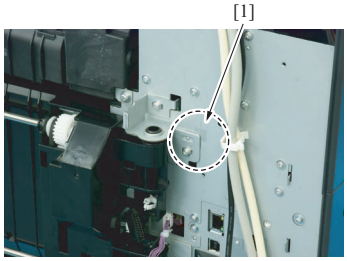
1. Remove the right door assy.
See P.76



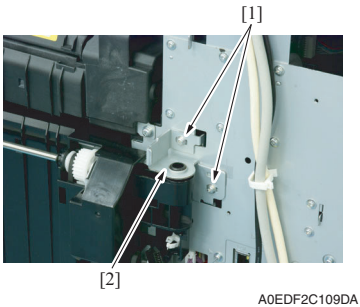
2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the connector cover [2].



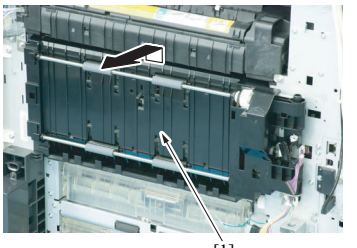
3. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [1], and disconnect the connector [2].



4. To mark the position where the regist unit is installed, draw guide lines on the scales [1] indicated on the machine frame.



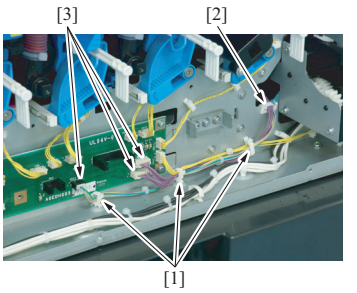
5. Remove two screws [1], and remove the hinge [2].



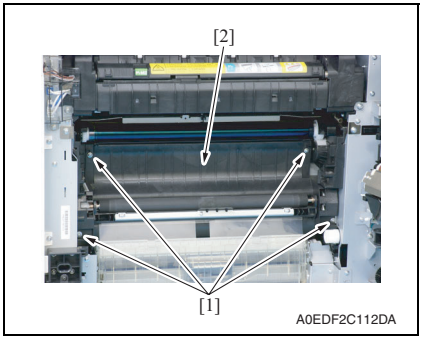
6. Remove the regist unit [1].

5.5.34 Conveyance unit

1. Remove the front cover.
See P.65



2. Remove the harness from three wire saddles [1] and the edge cover [2].
3. Disconnect three connectors [3].
4. Open the right door and the regist unit.



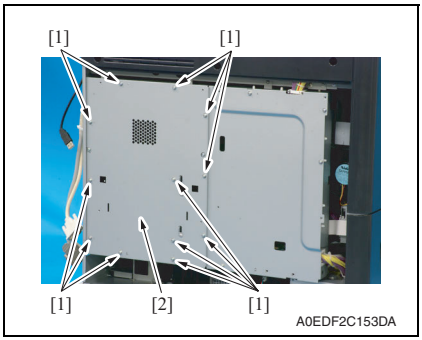
5. Remove four screws [1], and remove the conveyance unit [2].

NOTE

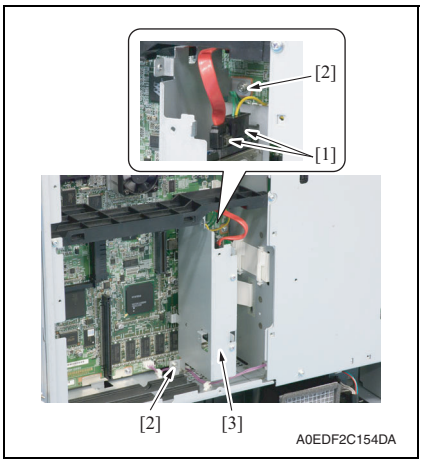
- **When removing the conveyance unit, be careful not to damage or deform the guide sheet of the tray 1 paper feed unit.**

5.5.35 Hard disk drive (HDD)

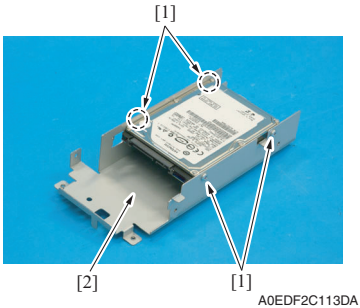
1. Remove the lower rear cover/1.
See P.57



2. Remove 12 screws [1], and remove the MFP board protective shield [2].



3. Disconnect two connectors [1].
4. Remove two screws [2], and remove the hard disk assy [3].



5. Remove four screws [1], and remove the metal plate [2].
6. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal..

NOTE

- **When the hard disk is replaced, select [State Confirmation] → [Memory/HDD Adj.] → [HDD Format] in Service Mode for logical format.**

After formatting the HDD, make the settings below as necessary.

- Reinstallation of movie data and OCR dictionary data.

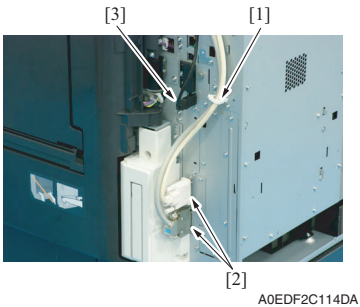
See P.452

- Resetting of HDD lock password

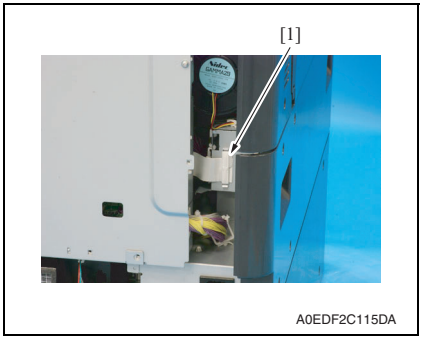
See P.350

5.5.36 How to open PWB box

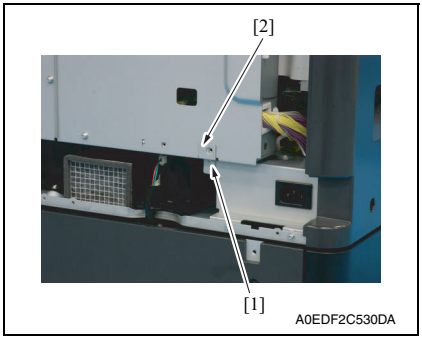
1. Remove the rear right cover.
See P.56
2. Remove the lower rear cover/1.
See P.57
3. Remove the lower rear cover/2.
See P.57



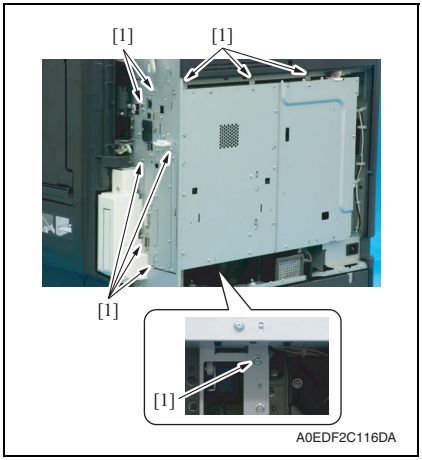
4. Remove the harnesses from the wire saddle [1], and disconnect two connectors [2] and USB connector [3].



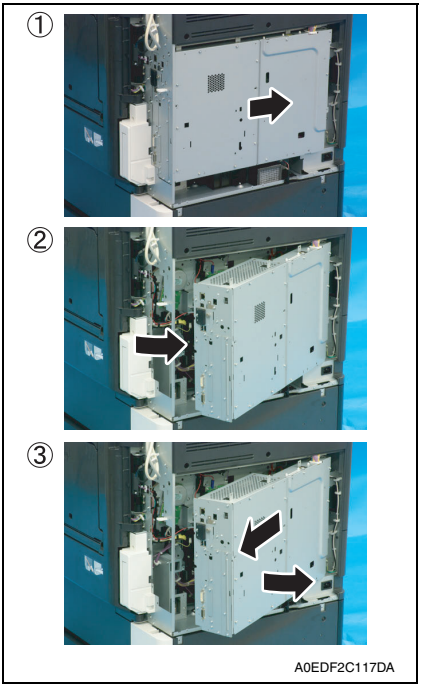
5. Remove the cable holder [1]



6. Remove the screw [1], and remove the metal plate [2].



7. Remove 10 screws [1].

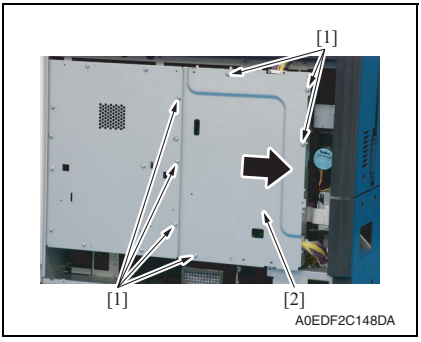


8. Open the PWB box as shown in the illustration.

①Slide the PWB box 20 mm to the direction shown in the illustration.
②Open the PWB box 15 degrees.
③Slide the PWB box 20 mm to the direction shown in the illustration and open it 75 degrees.

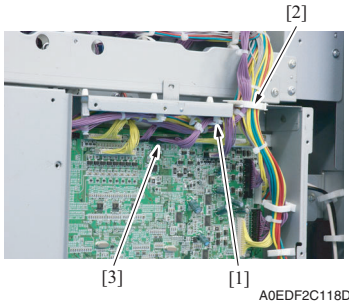
5.5.37 Main drive unit

1. Remove upper rear cover.
See P.57
2. Remove lower rear cover/1.
See P.57
3. Remove lower rear cover/2.
See P.57



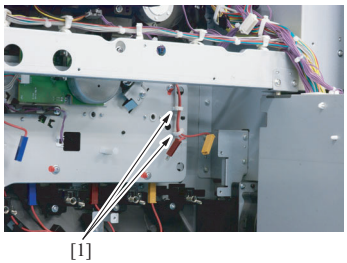
4. Remove seven screws [1], and remove the printer control board protective shield [2].

5. Open the PWB box.
See P.84

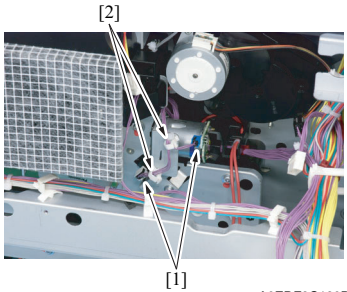


6. Remove the harnesses from the wire saddle [1] and the edge cover [2], and disconnect the connector [3].

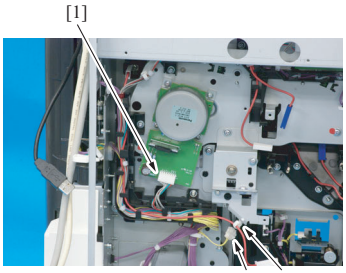
7. Remove the high voltage unit.
See P.104



8. Remove the harness from two wire saddles [1].

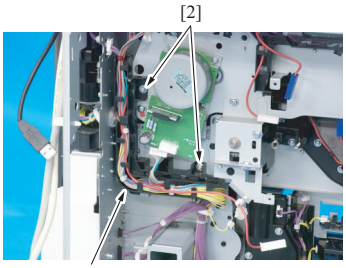


9. Disconnect two connectors [1], and remove the harnesses from two wire saddles [2].



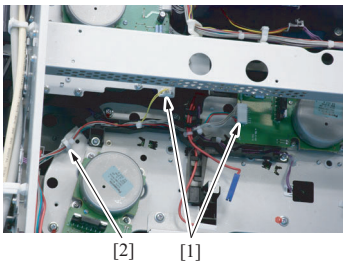
A0EDF2C121DA

10. Disconnect two connectors [1], and remove the harnesses from the wire saddle [2].



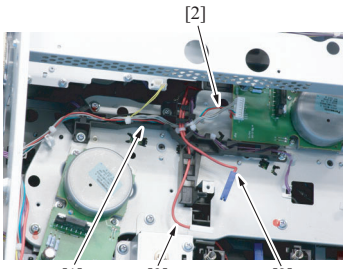
A0EDF2C122DA

11. Remove the harnesses from the harness guide [1].
12. Remove two screws [2], and remove the harness guide [1].



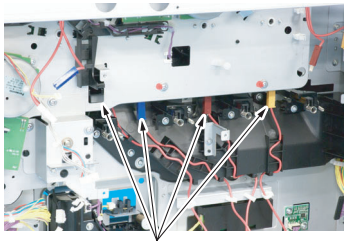
A0EDF2C123DA

13. Disconnect two connectors [1], and remove the harnesses from the wire saddle [2].



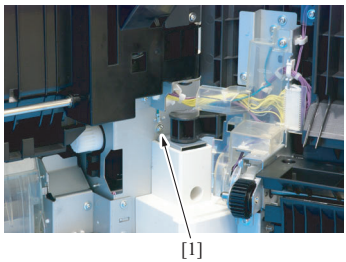
A0EDF2C124DA

14. Remove the harnesses [2] from the harness guide [1].

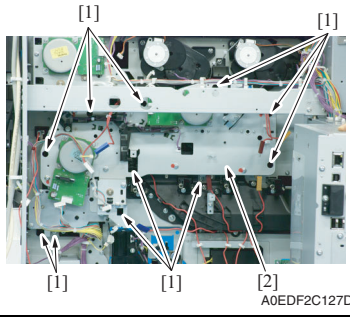


15. Disconnect four connectors [1].

16. Open the right door.



17. Loosen the screw (ground line) [1].

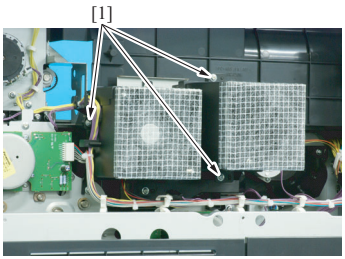


18. Remove 11 screws [1], and pull the main drive unit [2] out.

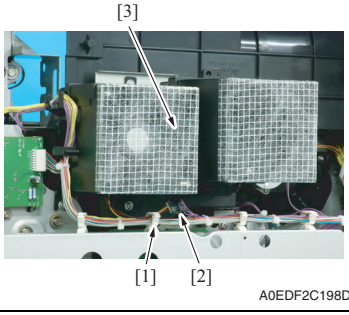
19. Put the harness aside and remove the main drive unit [2].

5.5.38 Fusing drive unit

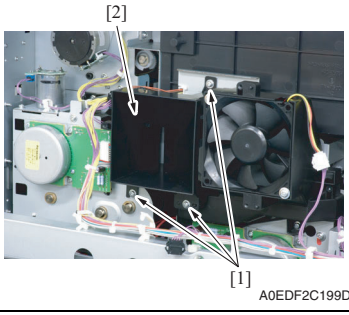
1. Remove the upper rear cover.
See P.57
2. Remove the fusing unit.
See P.47



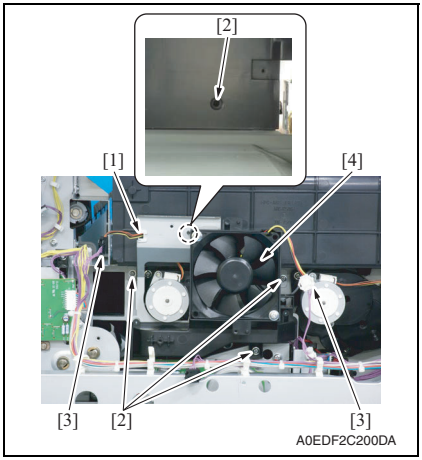
3. Remove three screws [1].



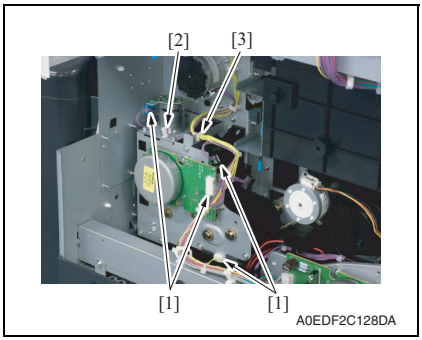
4. Remove the harnesses from the wire saddle [1].
5. Disconnect the connector [2], and remove the cooling fan motor/3 assy [3].



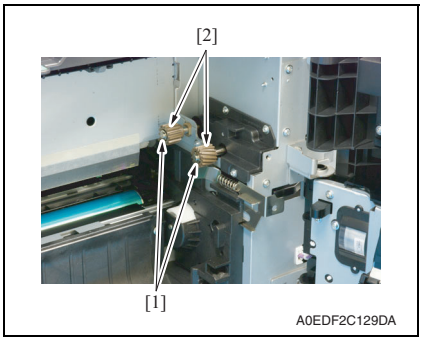
6. Remove three screws [1], and remove the duct [2].



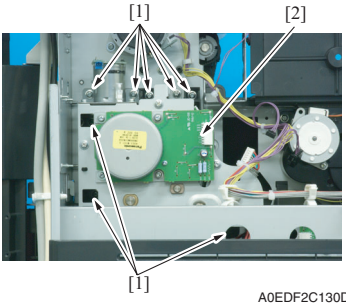
7. Remove the harness from the edge cover [1], and disconnect two connectors [3].
8. Remove four screws [2], and remove the duct assy [4].



9. Disconnect four connectors [1].
10. Remove the harnesses from the wire saddle [2] and the edge cover [3].



11. Remove the E-ring [1] each, and remove two gears [2].

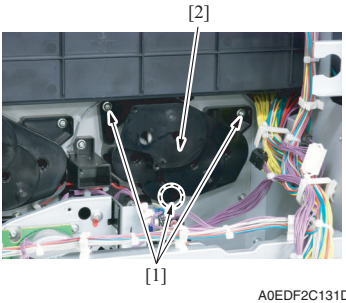


12. Remove eight screws [1], pull the fusing drive unit [2] to you, and remove it.

5.5.39 Hopper drive unit (C/K, Y/M)

A. Hopper drive unit (Y/M)

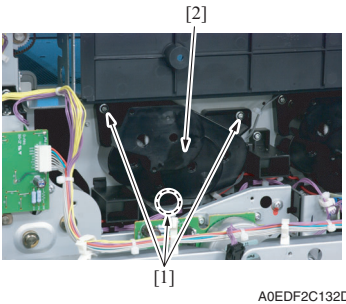
1. Remove the toner cartridge motor/YM. See P.118



2. Remove three screws [1], and remove the hopper drive unit (Y/M) [2].

B. Hopper drive unit (C/K)

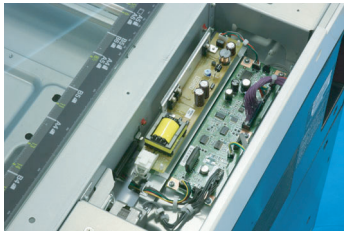
1. Remove the toner cartridge motor/CK. See P.118



2. Remove three screws [1], and remove the hopper drive unit (C/K) [2].

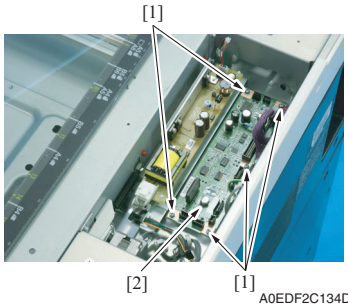
5.5.40 Scanner relay board (REYB/SCAN)

1. Remove the scanner upper rear cover.
See P.60



A0EDF2C133DA

2. Disconnect all connectors on the scanner relay board.

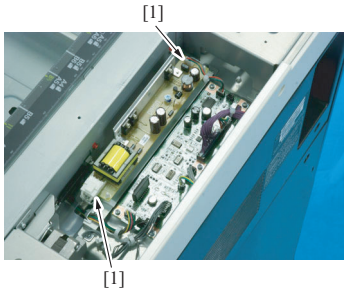


A0EDF2C134DA

3. Remove five screws [1], and remove the scanner relay board [2].

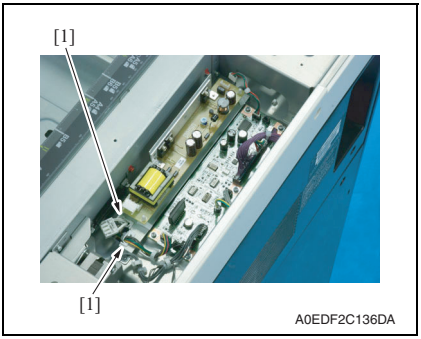
5.5.41 Inverter board (INVB)

1. Remove the scanner upper rear cover.
See P.60

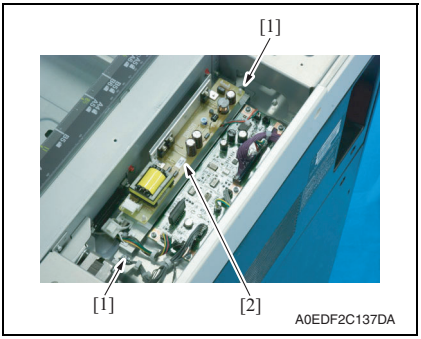


A0EDF2C135DA

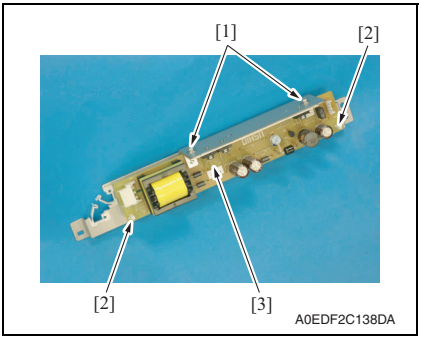
2. Disconnect two connectors [1].



3. Remove the harnesses from two edge covers [1].



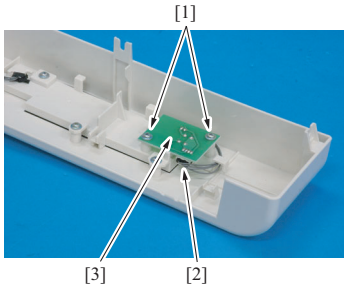
4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the inverter board assy [2].



5. Remove two screws [1] and two PWB supports [2], and remove the inverter board [3].

5.5.42 Machine condition monitor board (MCMB)

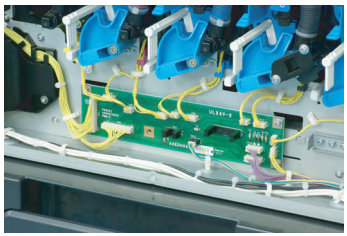
1. Remove the scanner front cover.
See P.61



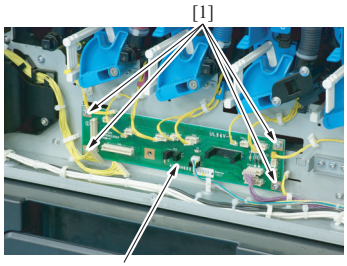
2. Disconnect the connector [2].
3. Remove two screws [1], and remove the machine condition monitor board [3].

5.5.43 Front side relay board (FREYB)

1. Remove the front cover.
See P.65



2. Disconnect all connectors on the front side relay board.



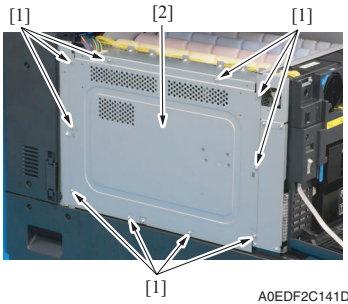
3. Remove four screws [1], and remove the front side relay board [2].

5.5.44 DC power supply (DCPU)

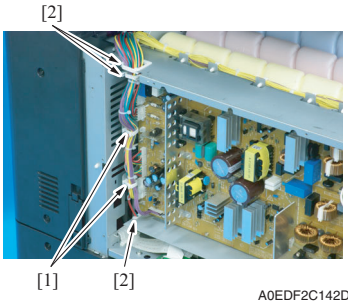
CAUTION

- **Remove the DC power supply after six minutes or more have passed since the power plug was disconnected.**

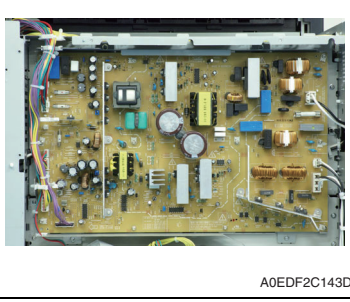
1. Remove the left cover.
See P.55
2. Remove the exit tray.
See P.56



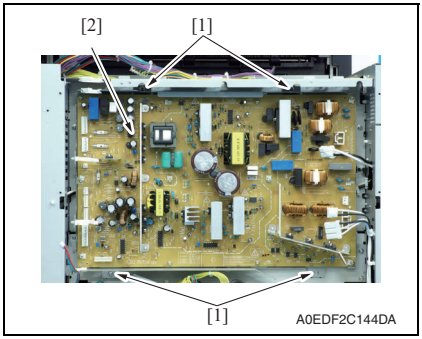
3. Remove 10 screws [1], and remove the DC power supply protective shield [2].



4. Remove the harnesses from two wire saddles [1] and three edge covers [2].



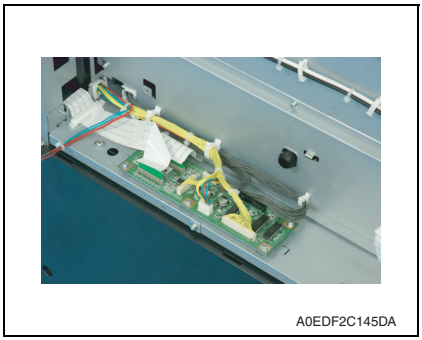
5. Disconnect all connectors on the DC power supply.



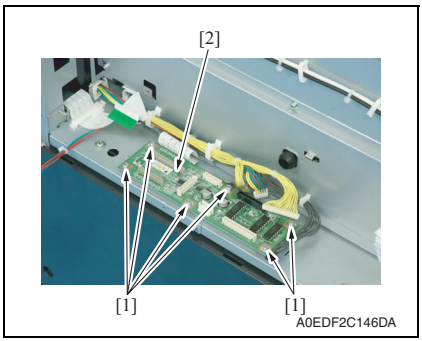
6. Remove four screws [1], and remove the DC power supply [2].

5.5.45 PH relay board (PHREYB)

1. Remove the DC power supply.
See P.96



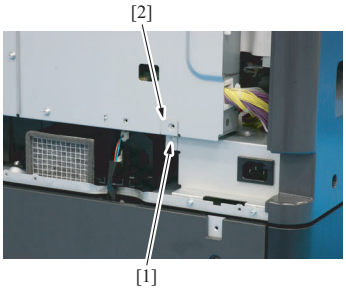
2. Disconnect all connectors and flat cables on the PH relay board.



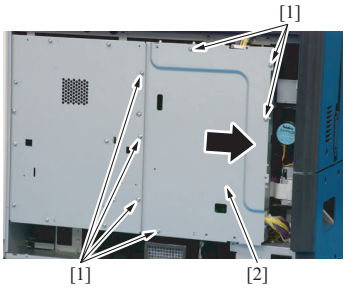
3. Remove six screws [1], and remove the PH relay board [2].

5.5.46 Printer control board (PRCB)

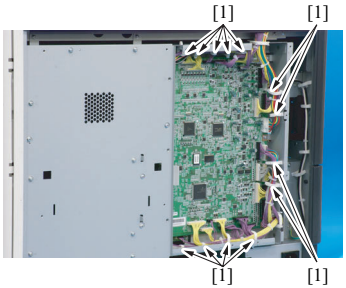
1. Remove the lower rear cover/1.
See P.57
2. Remove the lower rear cover/2.
See P.57



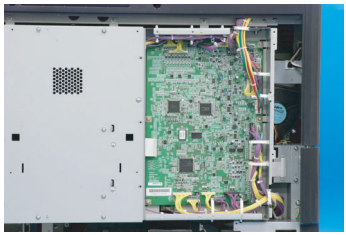
3. Remove the screw [1], and remove the metal plate [2].



4. Remove seven screws [1], and remove the printer control board protective shield [2].

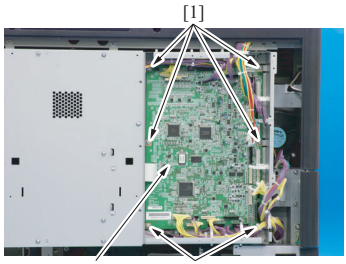


5. Remove the harnesses from 13 wire saddles [1].



A0EDF2C150DA

6. Disconnect all connectors on the printer control board.



A0EDF2C151DA

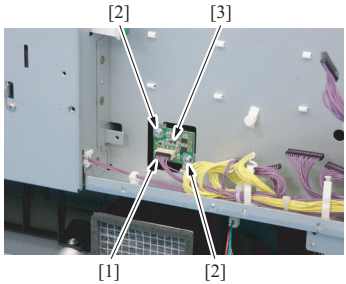
7. Remove six screws [1], and remove printer control board [2].

NOTE

- **When the printer control board is to be replaced, rewriting the firmware to the latest one.**

5.5.47 Service EEPROM board (SVERB)

1. Remove the printer control board.
See P.98



A0EDF2C152DA

2. Disconnect the connector [1].
3. Remove two screws [2], and remove the service EEPROM board [3].

NOTE

- **When the Service EEPROM board is replaced to the brand-new one, the error "License management error occurred." will be occurred.**
  In this case, it is necessary to repair the i-Option license management information.
  See P.759

NOTE
After replacing the service EEPROM board, all parts shown below are required to be replaced with new ones.
- **Developing unit/Y,M,C,K**
- **Drum unit/Y,M,C,K**
- **Toner cartridge/Y,M,C,K**
- **Image transfer belt unit**
- **Fusing unit**

NOTE
- **When service EEPROM is replaced, data of all adjustment settings stored in EEPROM disappear and the adjustment settings are returned to the default ones. After replacing the service EEPROM board, take the following steps to make readjustments.**

4. Open the front door and turn OFF and ON the main power switch and sub power switch.
5. Enter the Service Mode. Make individual adjustments shown in the following table in the order listed, using the machine maintenance list and the adjustment lists that were output at the time of main body installation and maintenance.

NOTE
- **At this time, a front door must be an open state.**

Order	Items that require readjustment in the Service Mode			Ref. page
1	Machine	Color Registration Adjustment	Cyan	P.385
2			Magenta	
3			Yellow	
2 4	Imaging Process Adjustment	Image Background Adj		P.393
2 5		Max Image Density Adj		P.392
2 6		Grad/Dev AC Bias V Selection		P.398
7	System 1	Change Warm Up Time		P.436
8	Machine	Exhaust Fan Stop Delay		P.386
9	System 2	Unit Change	Warning Display	P.441

NOTE
- **After replacing the service EEPROM board, be sure to make the above listed adjustments before the first warm-up is made.**

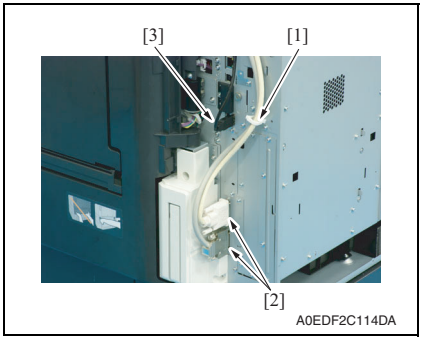
6. Turn OFF the main power switch and sub power switch.
7. Close the front door and turn ON the main power switch and sub power switch. Check to see that warm-up and image stabilization operations are completed normally.
8. Enter the Service Mode again. Make individual adjustments shown in the following table in the order listed, using the machine management list and the adjustment lists that were output at the time of main body installation and maintenance.

Order	Items that require readjustment in the Service Mode		Ref. page
2 1	Machine	Manual Bypass Tray Width Adj	P.388
2 2		Printer Reg. Loop Adj.	P.384
3		Fusing Temperature	P.371
4	Finisher	FS-FN adjustment	P.498

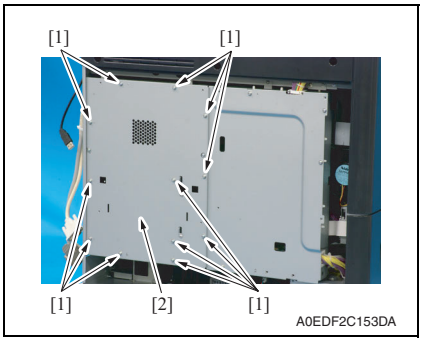
	Order	Items that require readjustment in the Service Mode			Ref. page
	5	Machine	Printer Area	Paper Feed Direction Adj.	P.377
	6		Fusing Transport Speed		P.372
2	7		Printer Area	Printer Image Centering Side 1	P.374
2	8			Prt. Image Center. Side 2 (Dup)	P.376
	9			Leading Edge Adjustment	P.375
2	10			Leading Edge Adj. Side 2 (Duplex)	P.375
2	11	Imaging Process Adjustment	Transfer Voltage Fine Adj	Secondary transfer adj.	P.395
	12			Primary transfer adj.	P.394

5.5.48 MFP board (MFPB)

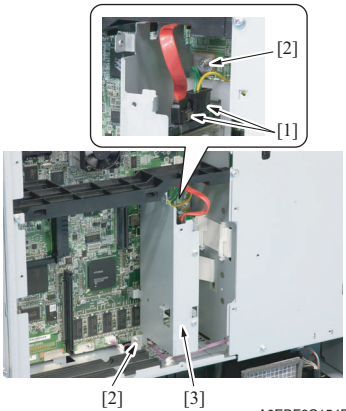
1. Remove the rear right cover.
See P.56
2. Remove the lower rear cover/1.
See P.57
3. Remove the lower rear cover/2.
See P.57



4. Remove the harnesses from the wire saddle [1], and disconnect two connectors [2] and the USB connector [3].

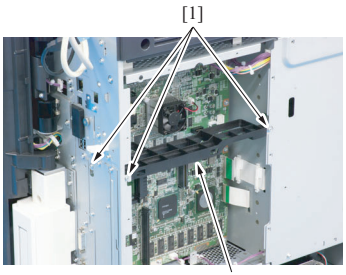


5. Remove 12 screws [1], and remove the MFP board protective shield [2].



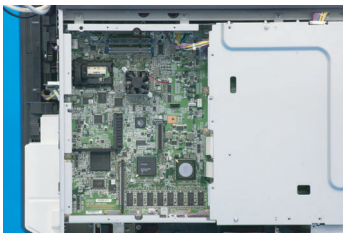
A0EDF2C154DA

6. Disconnect two connectors [1].
7. Remove two screws [2], and remove the hard disk assy [3].



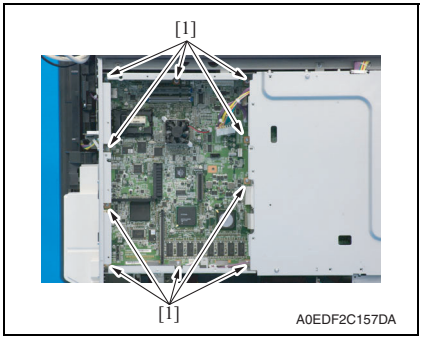
A0EDF2C155DA

8. Remove three screws [1], and remove the PWB rail (upper side) [2].



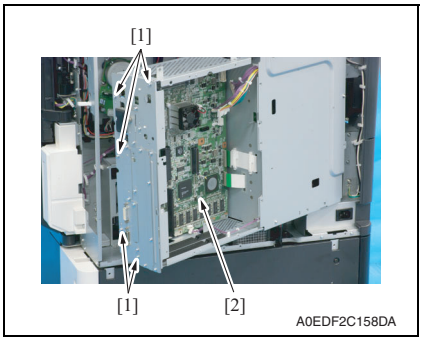
A0EDF2C156DA

9. Disconnect all connectors and flat cables on the MFP board.

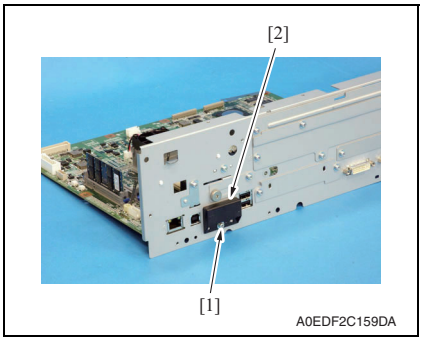


10. Remove 10 screws [1] of the MFP board.

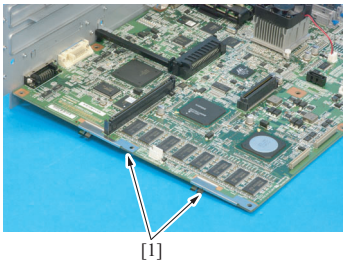
11. Open the PWB box.
See P.84



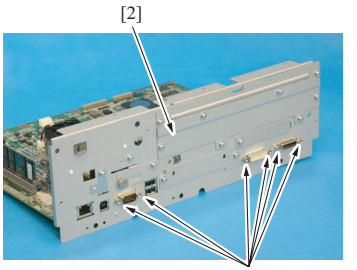
12. Remove five screws [1], and remove the MFP board assy [2].



13. Remove the screw [1], and remove the cover [2].



14. Remove two ground plates [1].



15. Remove six bolts [1], and remove the interface cover [2].

16. Remove the DIMM.

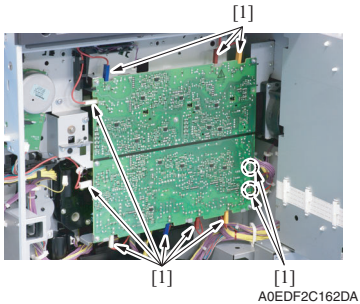
17. Remove the NVRAM.

NOTE

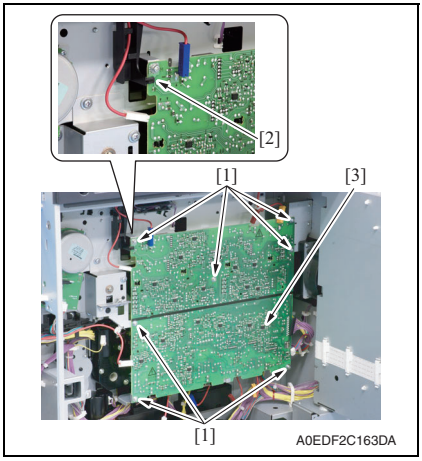
- **When the MFP board is to be replaced, rewriting the firmware to the latest one.**

5.5.49 High voltage unit (HV)

1. Open the PWB box.
See P.84



2. Disconnect 11 connectors [1].



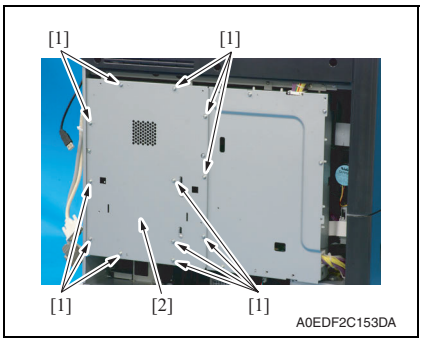
3. Remove seven screws [1], unhook the tab [2], and remove the high voltage unit [3].

NOTE

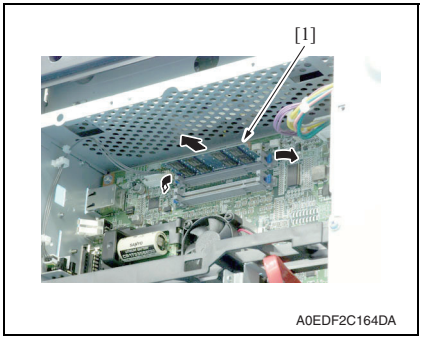
- **Install the high voltage unit so that the machine terminals come into contact with the counterparts on the high voltage unit and the high voltage unit properly fit into the tab.**

5.5.50 SODIMM (DIMM)

1. Remove the lower rear cover/1.
See P.57



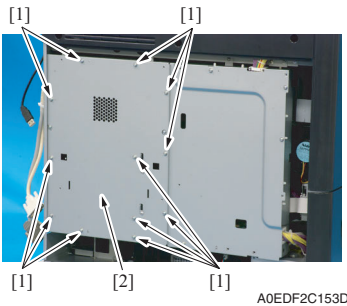
2. Remove 12 screws [1], and remove the MFP board protective shield [2].



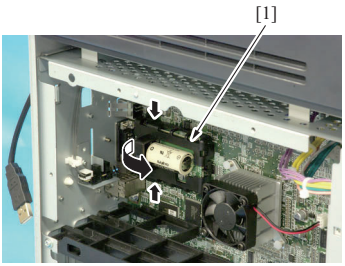
3. Remove the SODIMM [1] on the MFP board.

5.5.51 NVRAM board (NRB)

1. Remove the lower rear cover/1.
See P.57



2. Remove 12 screws [1], and remove the MFP board protective shield [2].



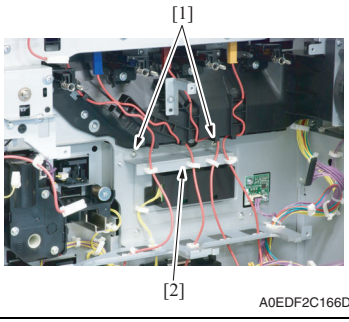
3. Remove the NVRAM board [1] on the MFP board.

NOTE

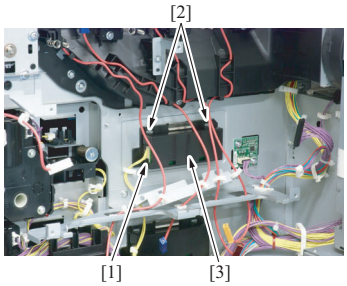
- **When the NVRAM board is replaced to the brand-new one, the error "License management error occurred." will be occurred. In this case, it is necessary to repair the i-Option license management information.**
See P.759

5.5.52 Paper feed tray 1 paper FD sensor board (PSDB/1)

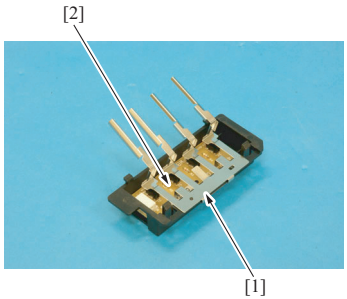
1. Slide out the tray 1.
2. Remove the high voltage unit.
See P.104



3. Remove two screws [1], and remove the metal plate [2].



4. Disconnect the connector [1].
5. Unhook two tabs [2], and remove the paper feed tray 1 paper FD sensor board assy [3].



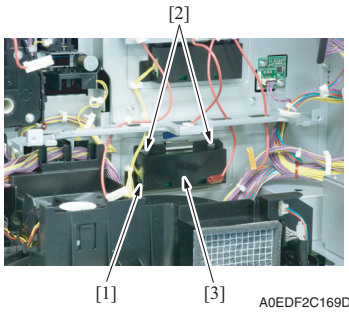
6. Remove the lever [1], and remove the paper feed tray 1 paper FD sensor board [2].

NOTE

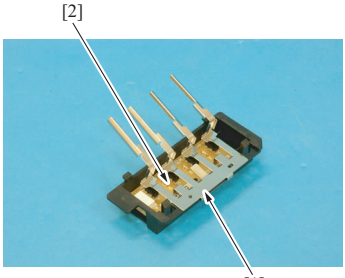
- **When removing the lever, be careful not to deform the lever.**

5.5.53 Paper feed tray 2 paper FD sensor board (PSDB/2)

1. Slide out the tray 2.
2. Remove the high voltage unit.
See P.104



3. Disconnect the connector [1].
4. Unhook two tabs [2], and remove the paper feed tray 2 paper FD sensor board assy [3].



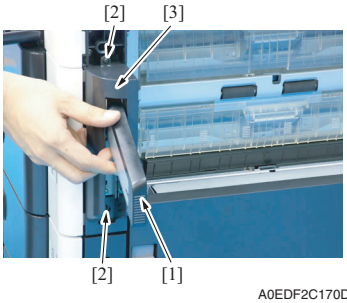
5. Remove the lever [1], and remove the paper feed tray 2 paper FD sensor board [2].

NOTE

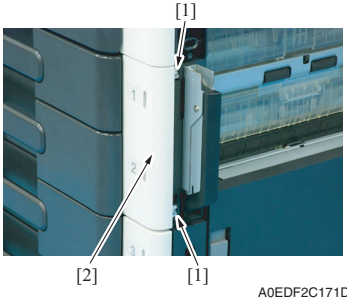
- **When removing the lever, be careful not to deform the lever.**

5.5.54 Paper feed tray 1 LED board, Paper feed tray 2 LED board (LEDB1, LEDB2)

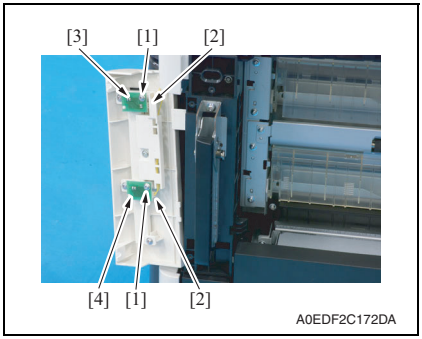
1. Open the right door.



2. Raising the front knob [1], remove two screws [2] and the front right cover [3].



3. Remove two screws [1] and place the lower front cover with the inside up.

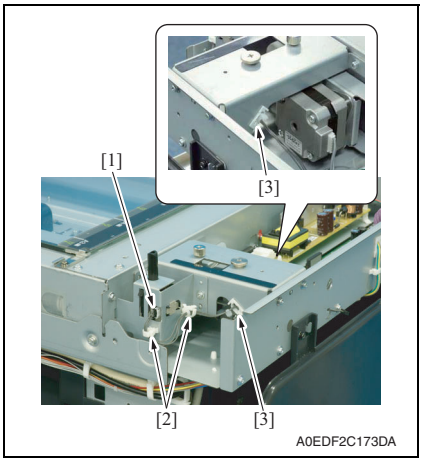


4. Remove the screw [1] each, disconnect the connector [2] each, and remove the paper feed tray 1 LED board [3] and the paper feed tray 2 LED board [4].

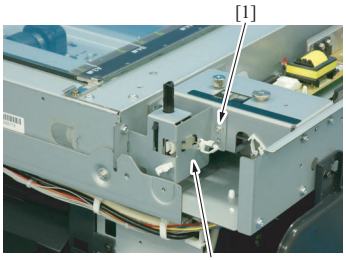
5.5.55 Scanner motor (M201)

A. Removal procedure

1. Remove the scanner rear cover.
See P.58
2. Remove the scanner upper rear cover.
See P.60
3. Remove the upper right cover.
See P.56

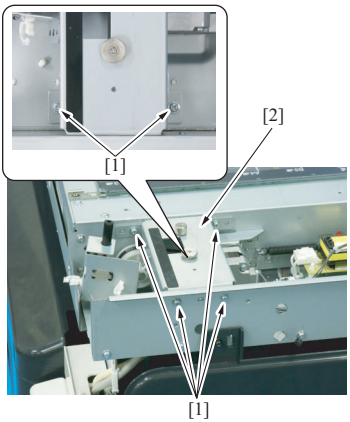


4. Disconnect the connector [1], and remove the harnesses from two wire saddles [2] and two edge covers [3].



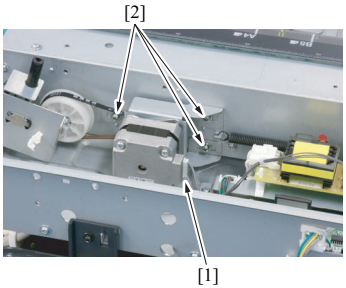
A0EDF2C174DA

5. Remove the screw [1], and remove the angle sensor assy [2].



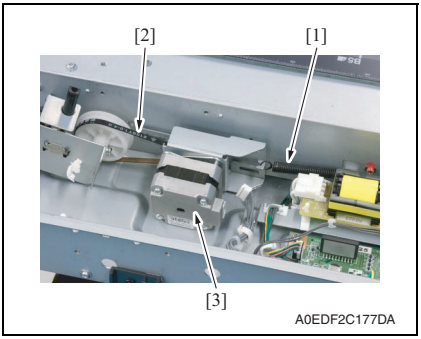
A0EDF2C175DA

6. Remove six screws [1], and remove the ADF base plate [2].

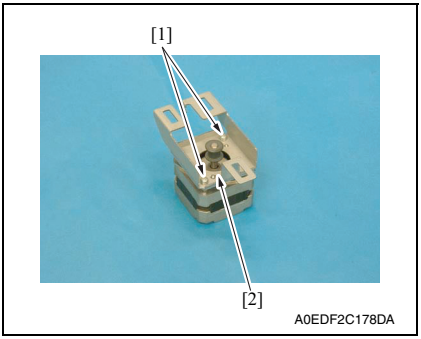


A0EDF2C176DA

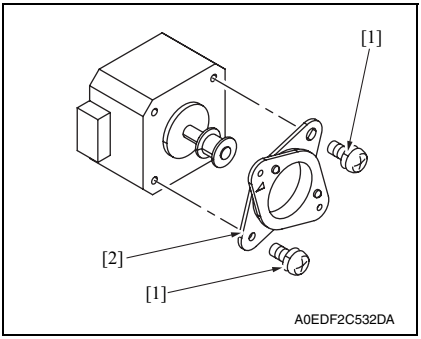
7. Disconnect the connector [1], and remove three screws [2].



8. Remove the spring [1] and the belt [2], and remove the scanner motor assy [3].

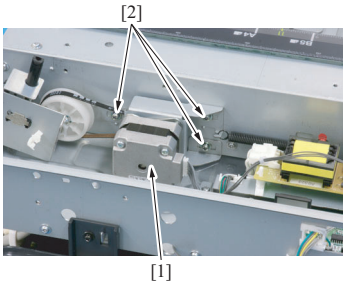


9. Remove two screws [1], and remove the bracket [2].

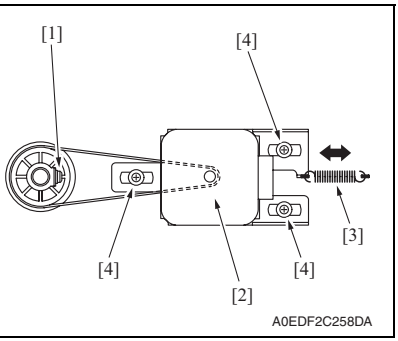


10. Remove two screws [1], and remove the damper [2].

B. Reinstall procedure



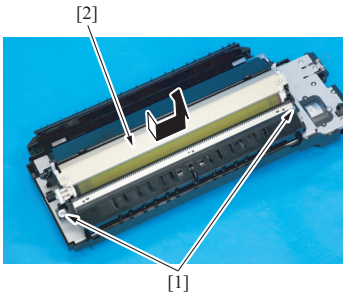
1. Temporarily secure the scanner motor assy [1] with three screws [2].



2. With the scanner drive gear set screw [1] located on the right-hand side as shown on the left, slide the scanner motor assy [2] to the left and check that it is returned to the original position by the tension of the spring [3].
   Perform this step three times.
3. Turn the pulley and make sure that the belt does not ride up on the pulley teeth.
4. Tighten the three screws [4] to fix the scanner motor assy [2] into position.

5.5.56 Duplex transport motor (M5)

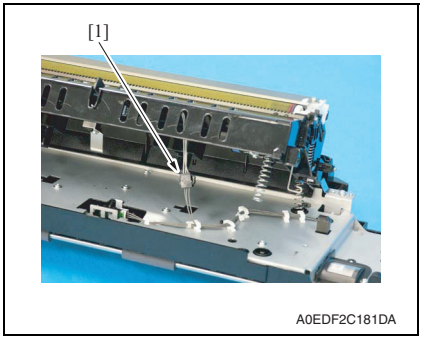
1. Remove the regist unit.
   See P.81



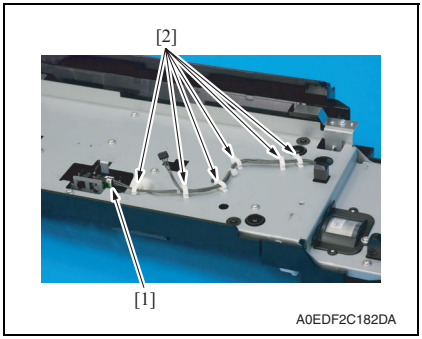
2. Remove two screws [1] and remove the 2nd transfer unit [2] as shown in the illustration.

NOTE

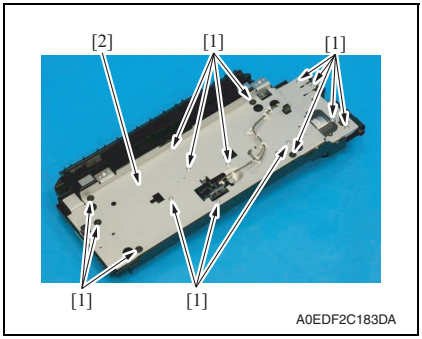
- **Do not remove it in rush as it is connected to the harness.**



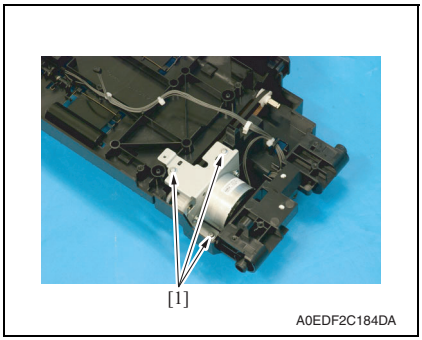
3. Disconnect the connector [1].



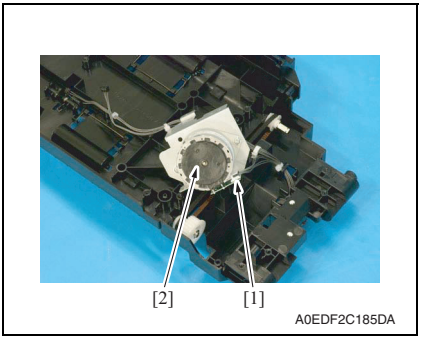
4. Disconnect the connector [1], and remove the harnesses from six wire saddles [2].



5. Remove 15 screws [1], and remove the metal plate [2].



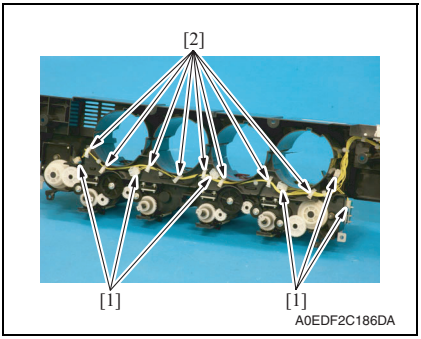
6. Remove three screws [1].



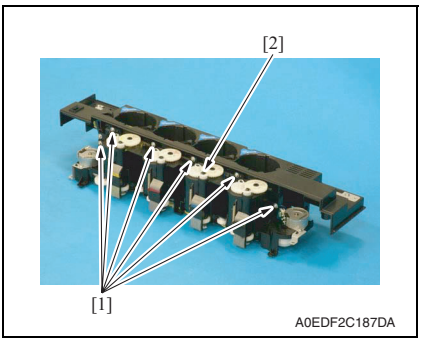
7. Disconnect the connector [1], and remove the duplex transport motor [2].

5.5.57 Toner supply motor/YM, CK (M8, M9)

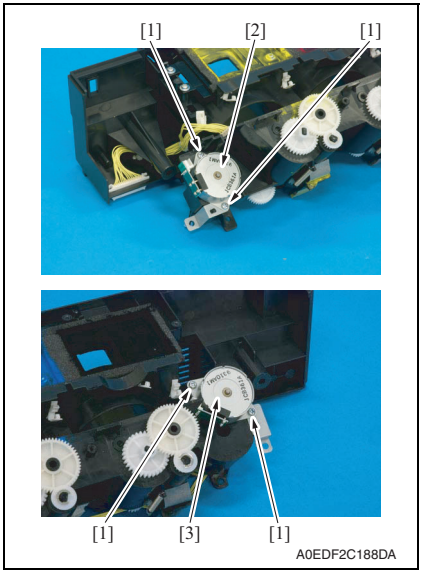
1. Remove the sub hopper assy.
See P.75



2. Disconnect six coonectors [1], and remove the harnesses from eight wire saddles [2].



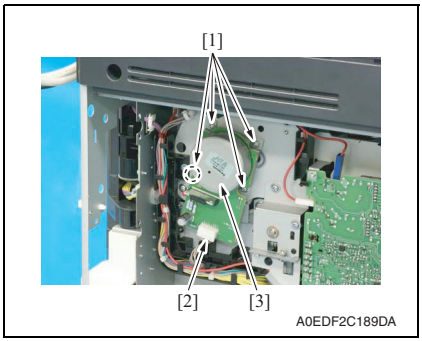
3. Remove six screws [1], and separate the sub hopper assy [2].



4. Remove two screws [1] each, and remove the toner supply motor/YM [2], CK [3].

5.5.58 Transport motor (M1)

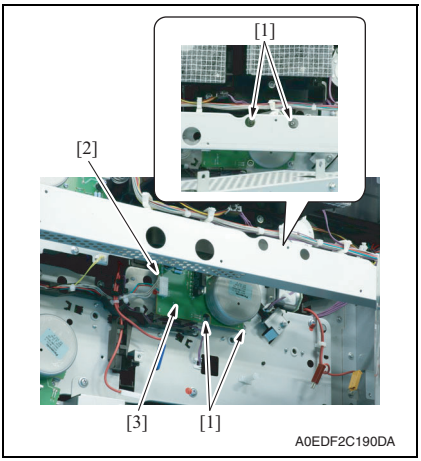
1. Open the PWB box.
See P.84



2. Remove four screws [1], disconnect the connector [2], and remove the transport motor [3].

5.5.59 Color PC motor (M2)

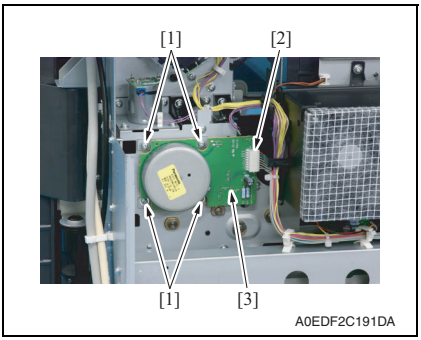
1. Remove the upper rear cover.
See P.57
2. Open the PWB box.
See P.84



3. Remove four screws [1], disconnect the connector [2], and remove the color PC motor [3].

5.5.60 Fusing motor (M3)

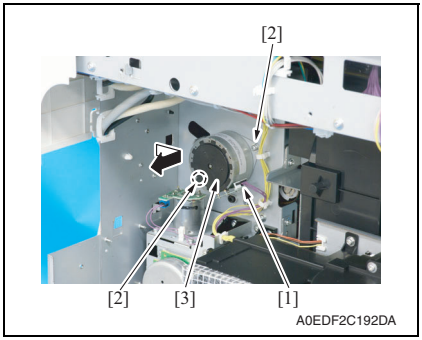
1. Remove the upper rear cover.
See P.57



2. Remove four screws [1], disconnect the connector [2], and remove the fusing motor [3].

5.5.61 Switchback motor (M4)

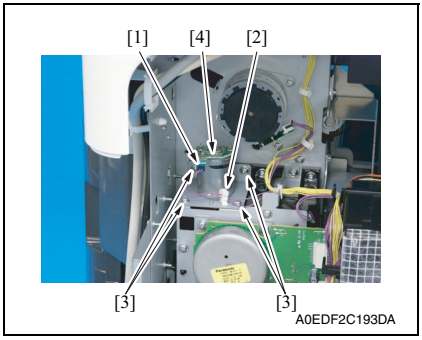
1. Remove the upper rear cover.
See P.57



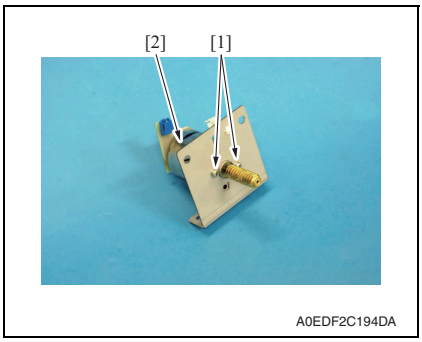
2. Disconnect the connector [1].
3. Remove two screws [2], and remove the switchback motor [3].

5.5.62 Fusing pressure roller retraction motor (M11)

1. Remove the upper rear cover.
See P.57



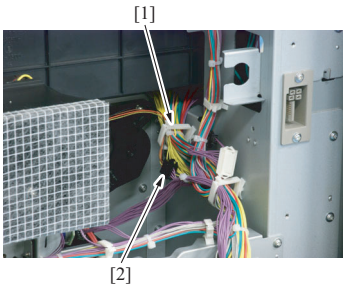
2. Disconnect the connector [1], and remove the harness from the wire saddle [2].
3. Remove four screws [3], and remove the fusing pressure roller retraction motor assy [4].



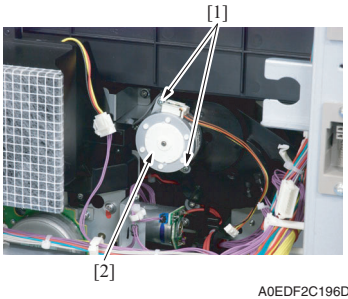
4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the fusing pressure roller retraction motor [2].

5.5.63 Toner cartridge motor/YM (M6)

1. Remove the upper rear cover.
See P.57



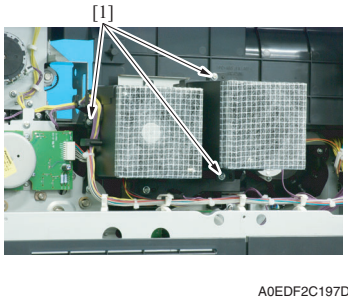
2. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [1], and disconnect the connector [2].



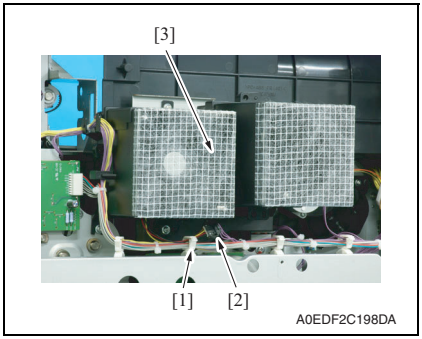
3. Remove two screws [1], and remove the toner cartridge motor/YM [2].

5.5.64 Toner cartridge motor/CK (M7)

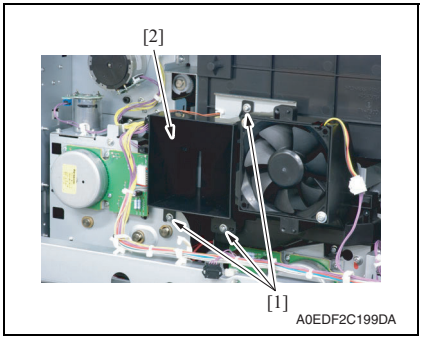
1. Remove the upper rear cover.
See P.57



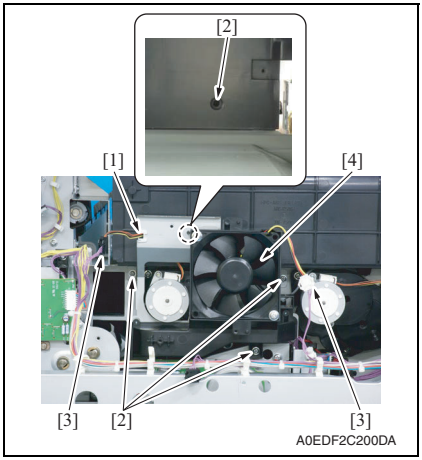
2. Remove three screws [1].



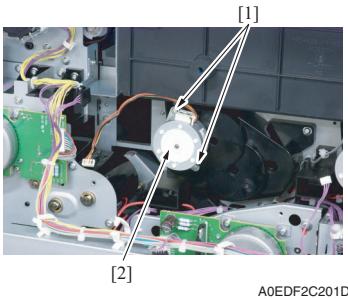
3. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [1].
4. Disconnect the connector [2], and remove the cooling fan motor/3 assy [3].



5. Remove three screws [1], and remove the duct [2].



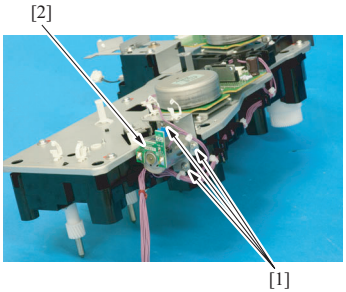
6. Remove the harness from the edge cover [1].
7. Remove four screws [2], disconnect two connectors [3], and remove the duct assy [4].



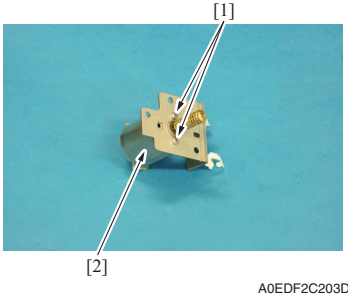
8. Remove two screws [1], and remove the toner cartridge motor/CK [2].

5.5.65 Color dev. unit engaged motor (M10)

1. Remove the main drive unit.
See P.86



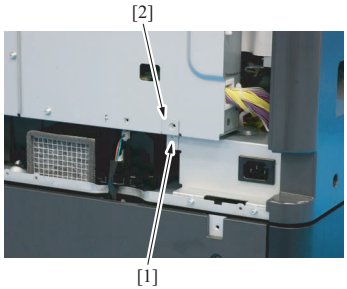
2. Remove three screws [1], and remove the color dev. unit engaged motor assy [2].



3. Remove two screws [1], and remove the color dev. unit engaged motor [2].

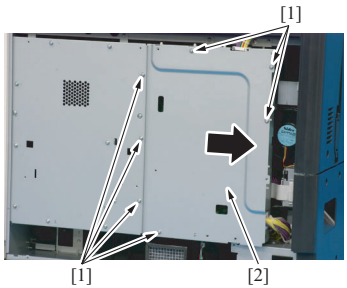
5.5.66 Paper feed tray 1 lift-up motor (M12)

1. Remove the high voltage unit.
See P.104
2. Remove the tray 1.
See P.63
3. Remove the tray 2.
See P.64



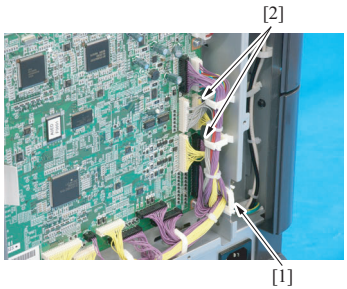
A0EDF2C147DA

4. Remove the screw [1], and remove the metal plate [2].



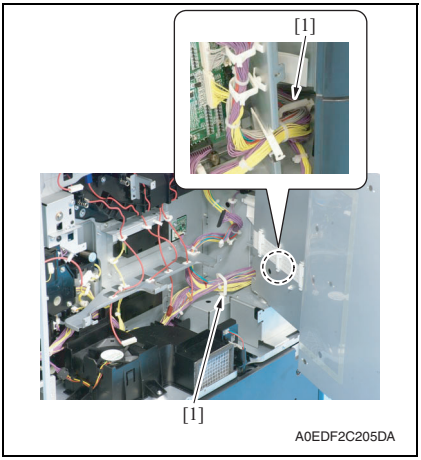
A0EDF2C148DA

5. Remove seven screws [1], and remove the printer control board protective shield [2].

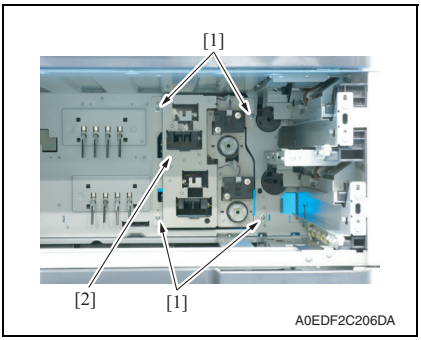


A0EDF2C204DA

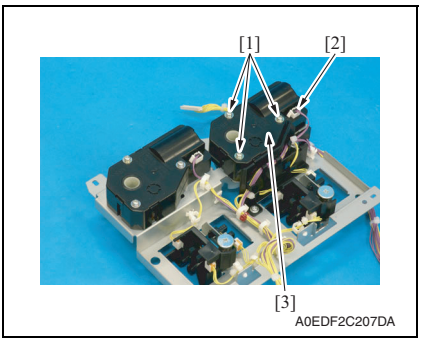
6. Remove the harnesses from the edge cover [1], and disconnect two connectors [2] on the printer control board.



7. Remove the harnesses from two wire saddles [1].



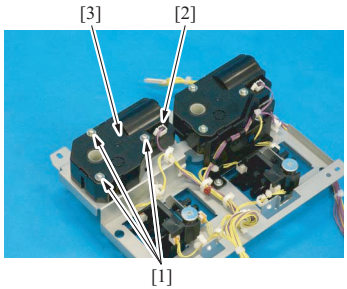
8. Remove four screws [1], and remove the paper feed lift-up unit [2].



9. Remove three screws [1], disconnect the connector [2], and remove the paper feed tray 1 lift-up motor [3].

5.5.67 Paper feed tray 2 lift-up motor (M13)

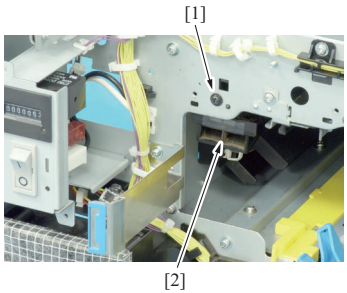
1. Remove the paper feed lift-up unit.
See P.121



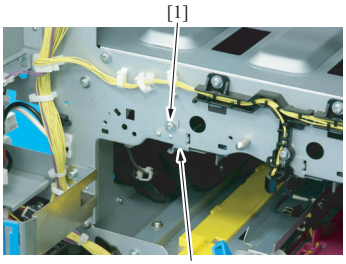
2. Remove three screws [1], disconnect the connector [2], and remove the paper feed tray 2 lift-up motor [3].

5.5.68 Transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor (FM6)

1. Remove the DC power supply.
See P.96
2. Remove the transfer belt unit.
See P.34
3. Remove the drum unit/Y,M.
See P.26
4. Remove the developing unit/Y,M.
See P.30
5. Remove the sub hopper assy.
See P.75

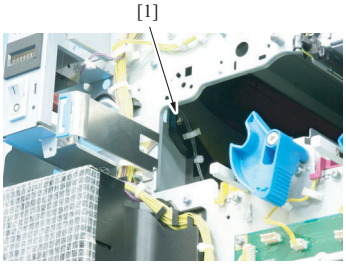


6. Remove the screw [1], and remove the waste toner duct [2].



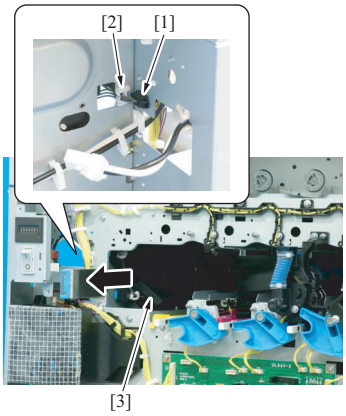
A0EDF2C210DA

7. Remove the screw [1], and remove the rail [2] for the developing unit/Y.



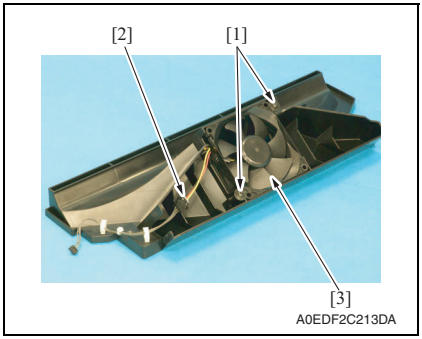
A0EDF2C211DA

8. Remove the screw [1] of the transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor assy.



A0EDF2C212DA

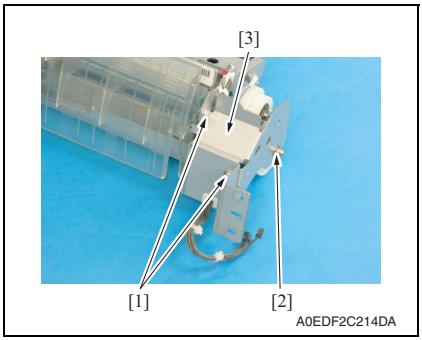
9. Disconnect the connector [1].
10. Remove the harnesses from the edge cover [2], and remove the transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor assy [3].



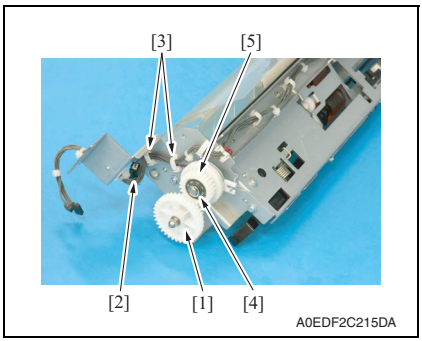
11. Remove two screws [1], disconnect the connector [2], and remove the transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor [3].

5.5.69 Paper feed tray 1 paper feed clutch (CL3)

1. Remove the tray 1 paper feed unit.
See P.66



2. Remove two screws [1] and the E-ring [2], and remove the metal plate [3].



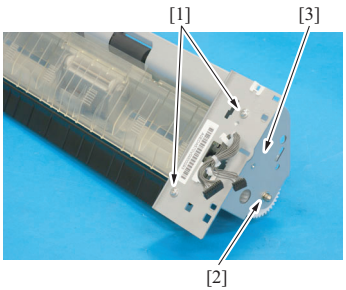
3. Remove the gear [1].
4. Disconnect the connector [2], and remove the harness from two wire saddles [3].
5. Remove the E-ring [4], and remove the paper feed tray 1 paper feed clutch [5].

NOTE

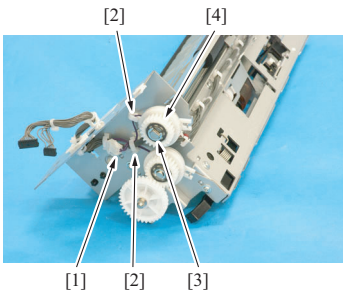
- **When mounting the paper feed tray 1 paper feed clutch, set the convex part of the stopper into the concave part of the paper feed tray 1 paper feed clutch [5].**

5.5.70 Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport clutch (CL2)

1. Remove the tray 2 paper feed unit.
See P.67



2. Remove two screws [1] and the E-ring [2], and remove the metal plate [3].



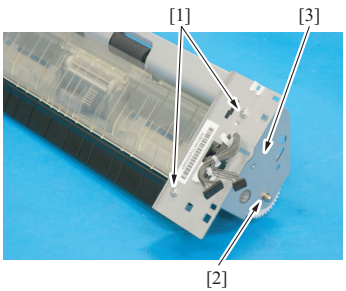
3. Disconnect the connector [1], and remove the harness from two wire saddles [2].
4. Remove the E-ring [3], and remove the paper feed tray 2 vertical transport clutch [4].

NOTE

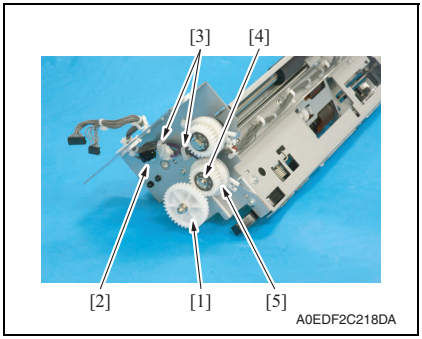
- **When mounting the paper feed tray 2 vertical transport clutch, set the convex part of the stopper into the concave part of the paper feed tray 2 vertical transport clutch [4].**

5.5.71 Paper feed tray 2 paper feed clutch (CL1)

1. Remove the tray 2 paper feed unit.
See P.67



2. Remove two screws [1] and the E-ring [2], and remove the metal plate [3].



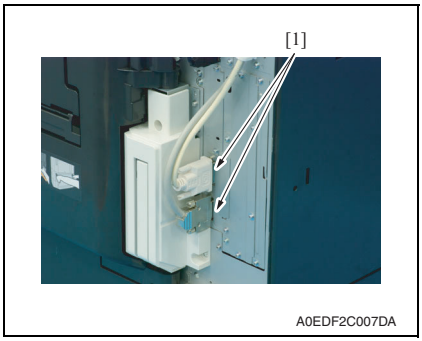
3. Remove the gear [1].
4. Disconnect the connector [2], and remove the harness from two wire saddles [3].
5. Remove the E-ring [4], and remove the paper feed tray 2 paper feed clutch [5].

NOTE

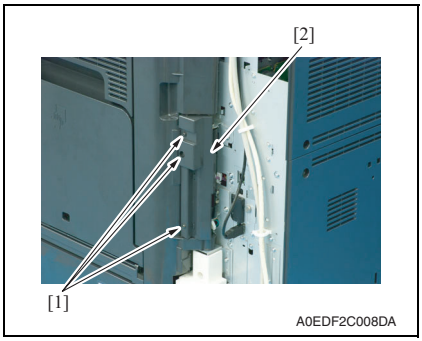
- **When mounting the paper feed tray 2 paper feed clutch, set the convex part of the stopper into the concave part of the paper feed tray 2 paper feed clutch [5].**

5.5.72 Manual paper feed clutch (CL7)

1. Remove the rear right cover.
See P.56

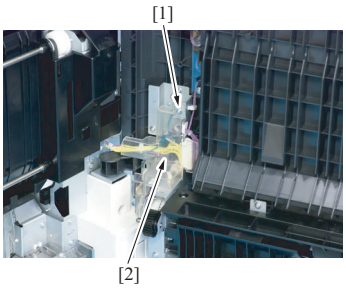


2. Disconnect two connectors [1].

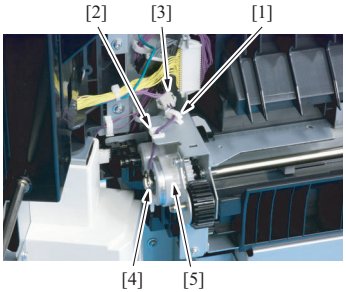


3. Remove three screws [1], and remove right door hinge cover [2].

4. Open the right door.



5. Remove the screw [1], and remove the connector cover [2].



6. Disconnect the connector [3], and remove the harness from the wire saddle [1] and the edge cover [2].

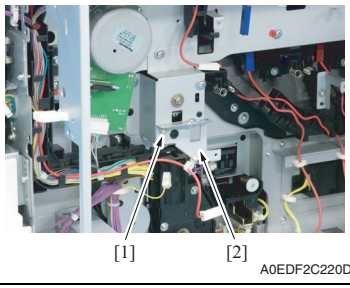
7. Remove the E-ring [4], and remove the manual paper feed clutch [5].

NOTE

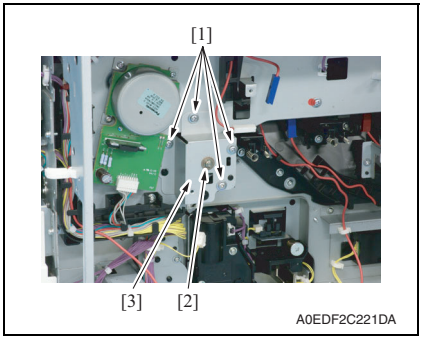
- **When mounting the manual paper feed clutch, set the convex part of the stopper into the concave part of the manual paper feed clutch [5].**

5.5.73 Developing clutch/K (CL6)

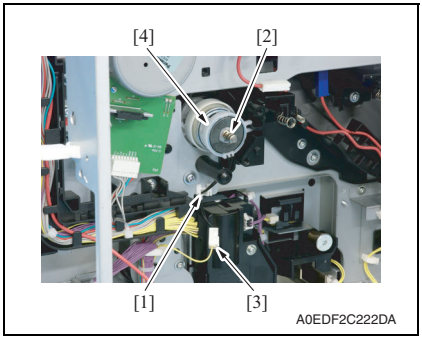
1. Remove the high voltage unit.
See P.104



2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the metal plate [2].



3. Remove four screws [1] and the E-ring [2], and remove the developing clutch/K cover [3].



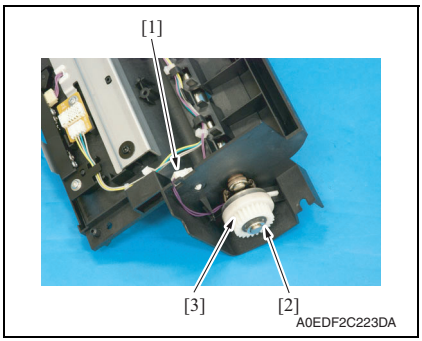
4. Remove the harness from the edge cover [1].
5. Disconnect the connector [3], remove the E-ring [2], and remove the developing clutch/K [4].

NOTE

- **When mounting the developing clutch/K, set the convex part of the stopper into the concave part of the developing clutch/K [4].**

5.5.74 Registration roller clutch (CL4)

1. Remove the conveyance unit.
See P.82



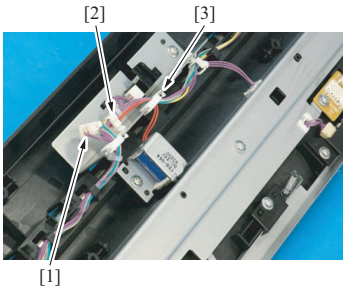
2. Disconnect the connector [1], remove the E-ring [2], and remove the registration roller clutch [3].

NOTE

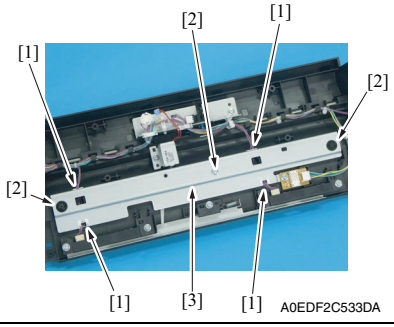
- **When mounting the registration roller clutch, set the convex part of the stopper into the concave part of the registration roller clutch [3].**

5.5.75 IDC registration sensor shutter solenoid (SD2)

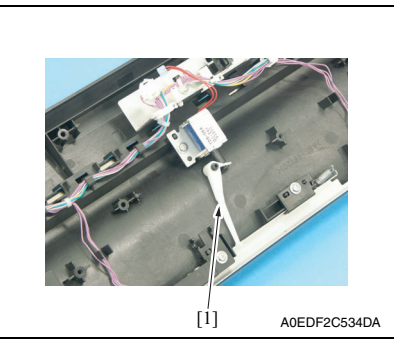
1. Remove the conveyance unit.
See P.82



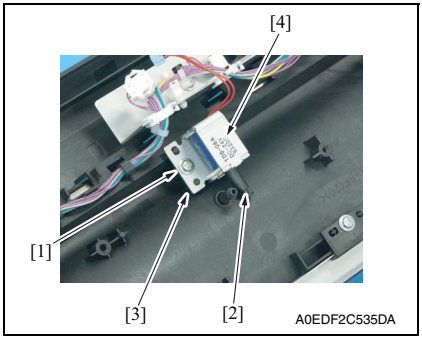
2. Disconnect the connector [1], and remove the harnesses from the wire saddle [2] and the edge cover [3].



3. Remove the harnesses from four edge covers [1].
4. Remove three screws [2], and remove the metal plate [3].



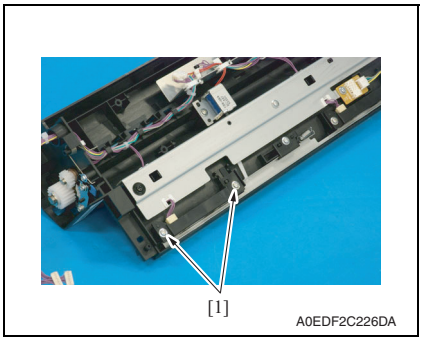
5. Remove the shutter lever [1].



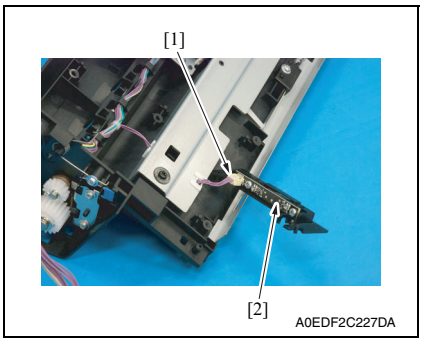
6. Remove the screw [1], the pin [2] and the spacer [3], and remove the IDC registration sensor shutter solenoid [4].

5.5.76 IDC registration sensor/MK, YC (IDCS/MK, YC) assy

1. Remove the conveyance unit.
See P.82



2. Remove two screws [1].



3. Disconnect the connector [1], and remove the IDC registration sensor/MK assy [2].
4. Repeat steps 2 to 3 and remove the IDC registration sensor/YC assy.

5.5.77 PH window cleaning pad

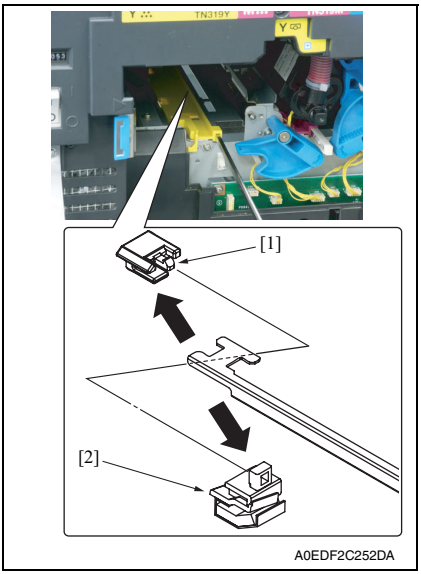
NOTE

- **The following shows the procedure for replacing the PH window cleaning pad/Y. Take the same procedure when replacing the pads for the other colors.**

1. Remove the PH unit.
See P.69
2. Remove the developing unit/Y,M,C,K.
See P.30

NOTE

- **Depending on the pad to be removed, you do not have to remove all developing units.**

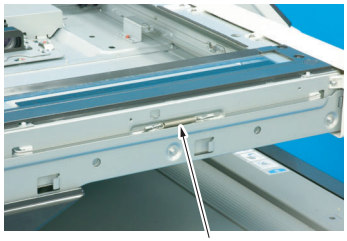


3. Unhook the tab [1], and remove the cleaning pad [2].

5.5.78 Scanner drive cable

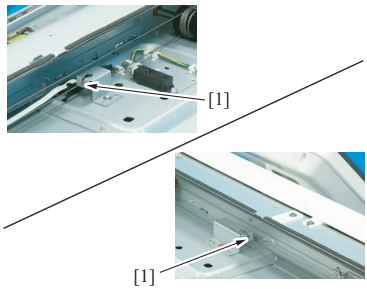
A. Removal procedure

1. Remove the scanner front cover.
See P.61
2. Remove the exposure unit.
See P.73
3. Remove the scanner motor.
See P.109



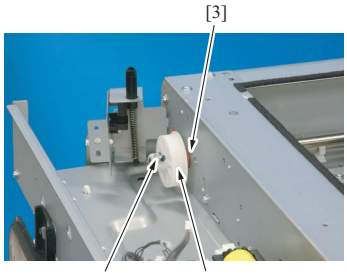
A0EDF2C228DA

4. Remove the hook side spring [1] of the scanner drive cables.



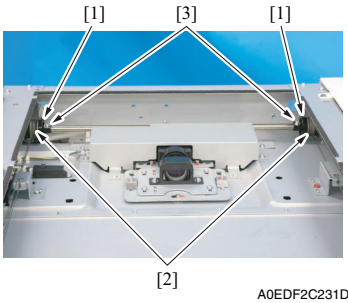
A0EDF2C229DA

5. Remove the bead side [1] of the scanner drive cables from the adjustment anchor.



A0EDF2C230DA

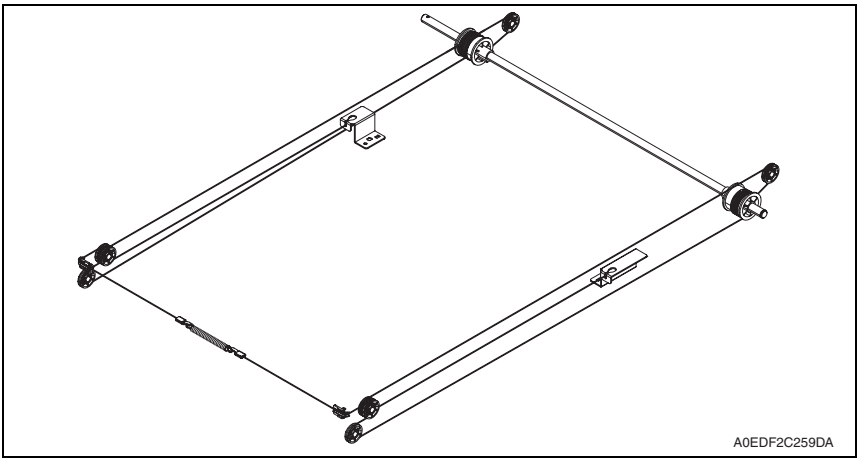
6. Remove the screw [1], and remove the scanner drive gear [2].
7. Remove the bearing [3].



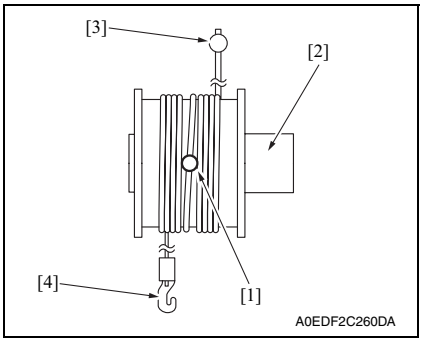
8. Remove the scanner drive cables [2] from each pulley [1].
9. Remove the screw [3] each, and remove two pulleys [1] from the shaft.

B. Reinstall procedure

(1) Overall figure



(2) Winding of the scanner drive cables



<Front side>

1. Set the round bead [1] of the scanner drive cable (silver) into the hole of the pulley [2] as shown in the illustration.

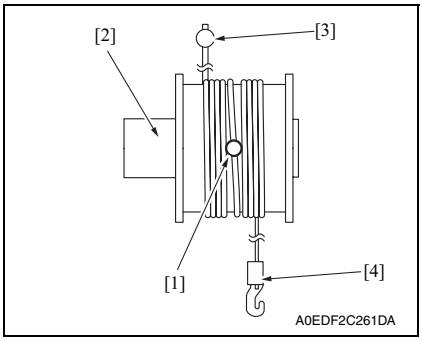
NOTE

- **Make sure that the bead securely rests in the hole of the pulley.**

2. Twist the scanner drive cable [3] (of which side has the bead at the end) around the pulley 4 times as shown in the illustration.
3. Twist the hook side scanner drive cable [4] around the pulley 4 times as shown in the illustration.

NOTE

- **Make sure that no part of the cable rides on the other.**



<Rear side>

4. Set the round bead [1] of the scanner drive cable (black) into the hole of the pulley [2] as shown in the illustration.

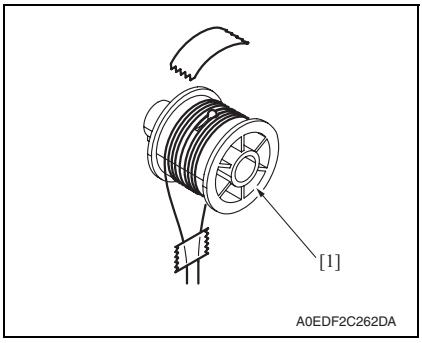
NOTE

- **Make sure that the bead securely rests in the hole of the pulley.**

5. Twist the scanner drive cable [3] (of which side has the bead at the end) around the pulley 4 times as shown in the illustration.
6. Twist the hook side scanner drive cable [4] around the pulley 4 times as shown in the illustration.

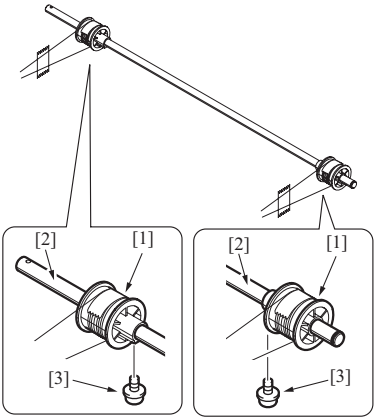
NOTE

- **Make sure that no part of the cable rides on the other.**



<Same for the front and the rear>

7. Apply the tape to fix the scanner drive cable to the pulley [1].

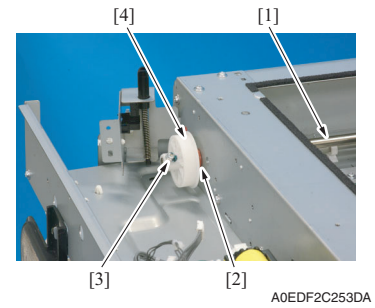


<Same for the front and the rear>

8. Put the front/rear pulleys [1] into the shaft [2], and fix them with one screw each [3].

NOTE

- **Set the pulley at the direction as shown in the illustration.**
- **Fix the pulley at the position as shown in the illustration.**
- **Apply the screw lock on the screw.**



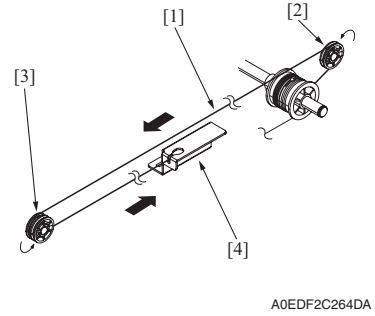
<Same for the front and the rear>

9. Install the shaft [1] and the bearing [2].

10. Install the gear [4] with the screw [3].

NOTE

- **Apply the screw lock on the screw.**

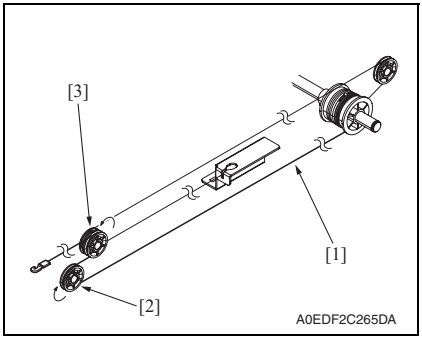


<Front side>

11. Run the bead side scanner drive cable [1] from the pulley B [2] to the pulley C [3]. Attach the bead to the adjustment anchor [4].

NOTE

- **Make the cable run inside the rear groove of the pulley C.**

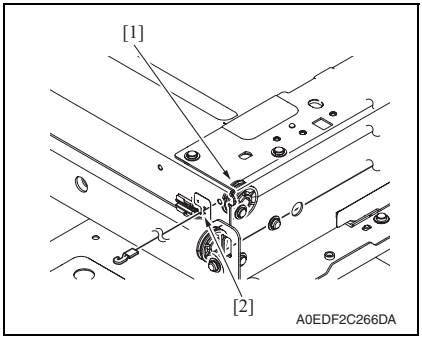


<Front side>

12. Run the hook side scanner drive cable [1] around the pulley D [2] and the pulley C [3] in this order.

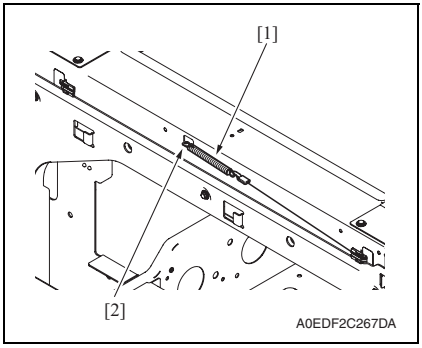
NOTE

- **Make the cable run inside the front groove of the pulley D [2].**



<Front side>

13. Run the scanner drive cable from the pulley C [1] to the hole [2] on the scanner left frame, and pass the cable through the hole [2].

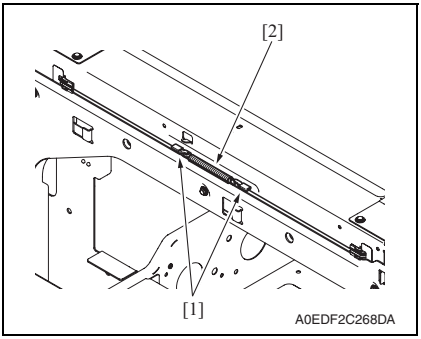


<Front side>

14. Attach the spring [1] to the cable and attach the other end of the spring to the hook [2] on the scanner left frame.

<Rear side>

15. Install the scanner drive cable with the same procedure as the front one.



16. Attach the spring [2] to the hooks [1] of the front and rear scanner drive cables.

17. Remove the tape that fixes the front/rear pulleys.

18. Adjust the positioning of the exposure unit and mirrors unit.
See P.532

19. Perform the following setting.
[Service Mode] → [Machine] → [Scan Area] → [Feed Direction Adjustment]
See P.383

20. Perform the following setting.
[Service Mode] → [ADF] → [Read Pos Adj]
See P.494

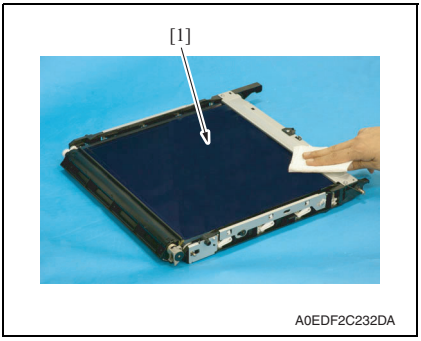
5.6 Cleaning procedure

NOTE

- **The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure represents the ethanol isopropyl alcohol.**

5.6.1 Transfer belt unit

1. Remove the transfer belt unit.
See P.34



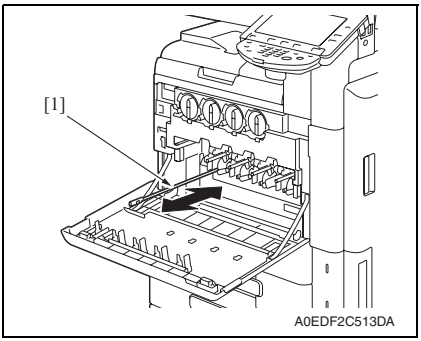
2. Using a cleaning pad, wipe the transfer belt [1].

NOTE

- **Do not wipe out with water.**
- **Do not wipe out with any solvents.**

5.6.2 PH window

1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the waste toner box.
See P.37



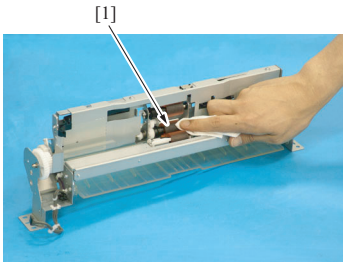
3. Clean the PH window by putting the PH window cleaning jig back and forth a couple times.

NOTE

- **Clean every PH window of Y,M,C,K.**

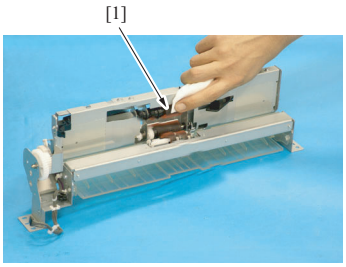
5.6.3 Tray 1 feed roller, tray 1 pick-up roller, tray 1 separation roller

1. Remove the tray 1 paper feed unit.
See P.66



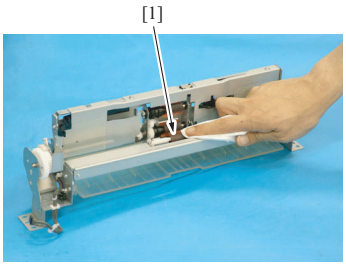
A0EDF2C233DA

2. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the tray 1 feed roller [1] clean of dirt.



A0EDF2C234DA

3. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the tray 1 pick-up roller [1] clean of dirt.

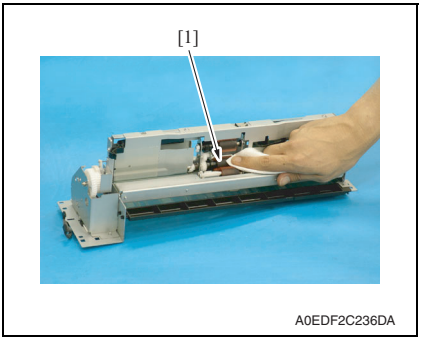


A0EDF2C235DA

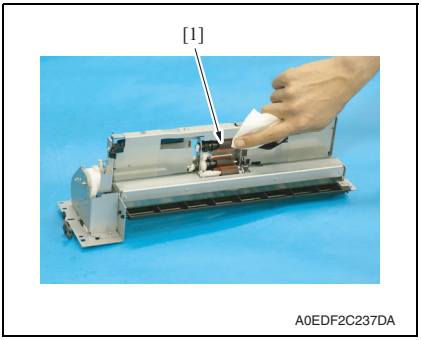
4. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the tray 1 separation roller [1] clean of dirt.

5.6.4 Tray 2 feed roller, tray 2 pick-up roller, tray 2 separation roller

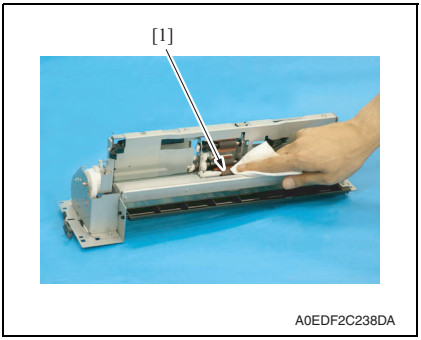
1. Remove the tray 2 paper feed unit.
See P.67



2. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the tray 2 feed roller [1] clean of dirt.



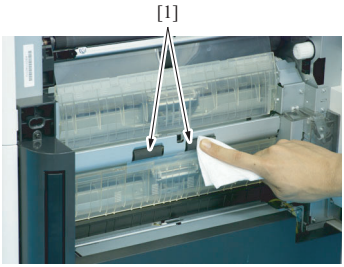
3. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the tray 2 pick-up roller [1] clean of dirt.



4. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the tray 2 separation roller [1] clean of dirt.

5.6.5 Tray 2 transport roller

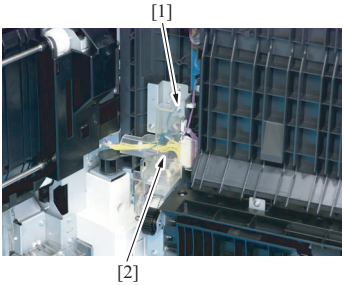
1. Open the right door.



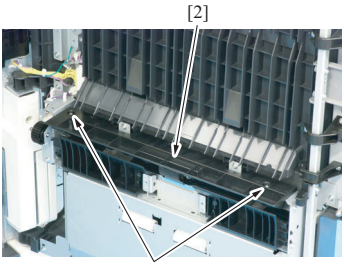
2. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the tray 2 transport rollers [1] clean of dirt.

5.6.6 Manual bypass tray feed roller

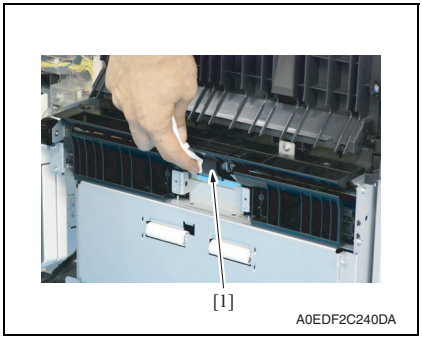
1. Remove the manual bypass tray separation roller unit.
See P.45



2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the connector cover [2].



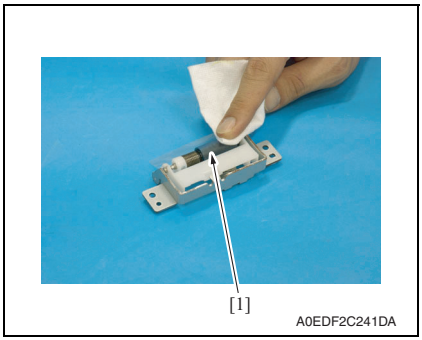
3. Remove two screws [1], and remove the feed roller cover [2].



4. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the manual bypass tray feed roller [1] clean of dirt.

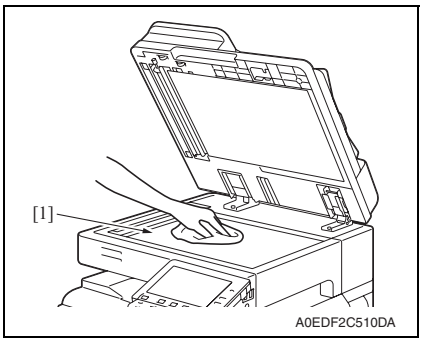
5.6.7 Manual bypass tray separation roller

1. Remove the manual bypass tray separation roller unit.
See P.45

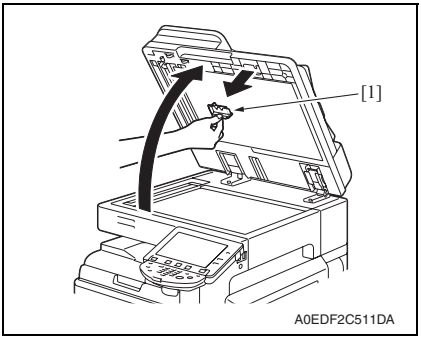


2. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the manual bypass tray separation roller [1] clean of dirt.

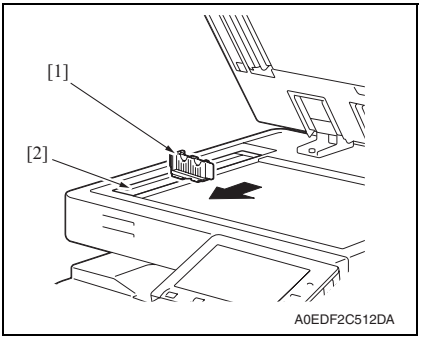
5.6.8 Original glass



1. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the original glass [1] clean of dirt.



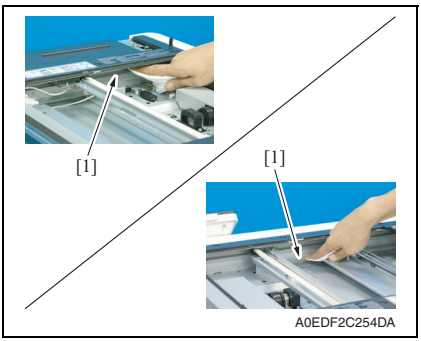
2. Open the ADF, and remove the slit glass cleaner [2].



3. Clean the slit glass [2] with the cleaner [1].

5.6.9 Scanner rails

1. Remove the original glass.
See P.62



2. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the scanner rails [1] clean of dirt.

NOTE

- **Apply lubricant after cleaning.**

5.6.10 Mirrors (1st/2nd/3rd)

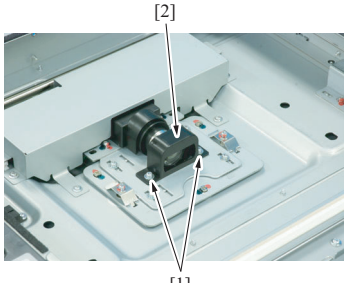
1. Remove the original glass.
See P.62



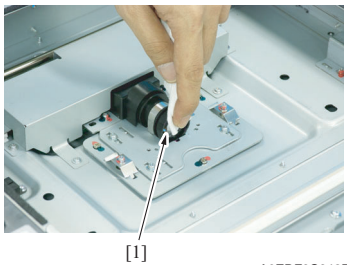
2. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the mirror 1 [1] and mirror 2/3 [2].

5.6.11 Lens

1. Remove the original glass.
See P.62



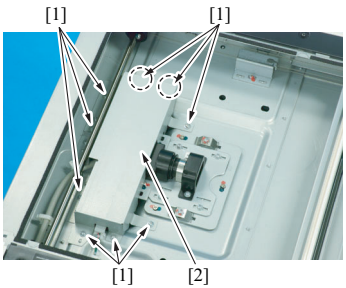
2. Remove two screws [1] and lens cover [2].



3. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the lens [1] clean of dirt.

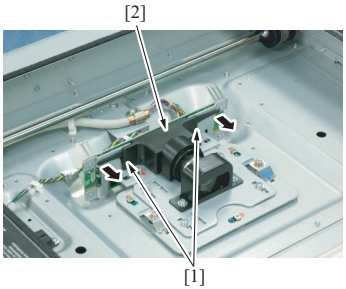
5.6.12 CCD sensor

1. Remove the original glass.
See P.62



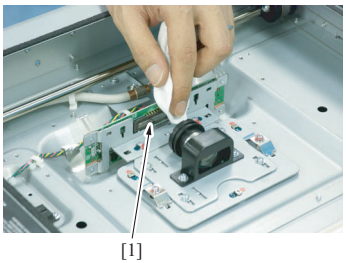
A0EDF2C244DA

2. Remove nine screws [1], and remove the CCD board protective shield [2].



A0EDF2C245DA

3. Unhook two tabs [1], and remove the CCD sensor cover [2].

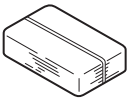


A0EDF2C246DA

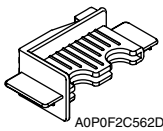
4. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the CCD sensor [1] clean of dirt.

6. SERVICE TOOL

6.1 Service material list

Name	Shape	Material No.	Remarks
Cleaning pad	 A02EF2C526DA	000V-18-1	10pcs/1pack
Isopropyl alcohol	 A00KF2C506DA	—	

6.2 CE tool list

Tool name	Shape	Quantity	Parts No.	Remarks
Slit glass cleaning jig	 A0P0F2C562DA	1	A01H 1005 ##	
Color chart	 A0P0F2C553DA	1	9J06 PJP1 ##	A3
			9J06 PJP2 ##	11 x 17

7. FIRMWARE REWRITING

7.1 Outline

- There are two ways to update the firmware: One is by directly connecting with the main body using the USB memory device, and the other is by downloading over a network using the Internet ISW.

NOTE

- **The settings in the "Utility" mode and the "Service Mode" will not be changed, when the firmware is updated.**

NOTE

- **When updating the firmware to the function version 3-compliant, it is necessary to execute the following steps to update the firmware.**

The BootROM rewriting and the loadable device driver/OCR dictionary installing should be executed as necessary depend on the firmware type or usage environment.

1. Touch [BootRom] in the firmware update item display, and touch [START].
2. Check the message “BootRom Update completed successfully”, and touch [OK].
3. Rewrite the firmware data.
4. Select [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Data Install], and update the movie data to the new version.
   See P.452
5. When operating the machine with the function version 3, select [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Software Switch Setting] and change the function version of the machine. (When operating the machine without updating the function version, this setting is unnecessary.)
   See P.441
6. Turn OFF and ON the main power switch and sub power switch.
7. Install the loadable device driver as occasion demands.
   See P.521
8. Install the OCR dictionary data for the searchable PDF as occasion demands.
   See P.452

7.2 USB memory

7.2.1 Preparation

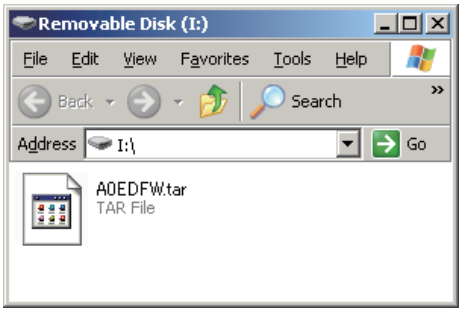
- Conditions for USB memory which can be used for updating the firmware are as follows:
  - Without security function added (security function can be turned off)
  - Memory with 1 GB to 2 GB are recommended (One with 4 GB or more may not operate)
  - Corresponds to USB 2.0
  - Formatted with FAT32 type
  - A USB flash memory that appears as multiple drives on a computer cannot be used.

7.2.2 Procedure

1. Connect the USB to the PC, and copy the firmware data to the USB memory.

NOTE

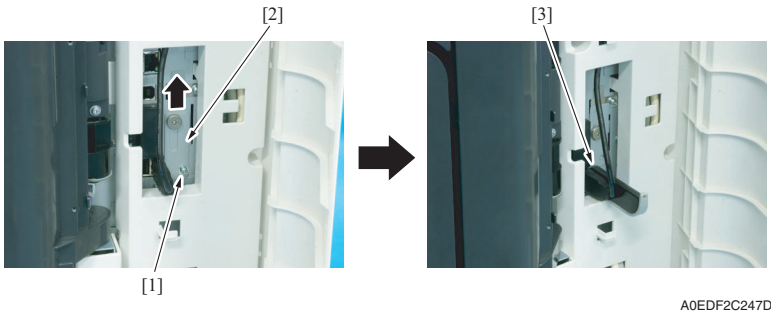
- **The firmware data to be updated must be copied to the root directory with the file name "A0EDFW. tar."**



A0EDF2E537DA

- **More than one firmware data with a single model or multiple models can be stored in the USB memory. (Maximum of fifteen files)**
  When storing more than one firmware data, make a folder with a name "(model code) FW" ("A0EDFW" for this machine) right under the root directory.
  (File names can be set arbitrarily)
- **When making a folder and storing more than one firmware data, it is also necessary to copy the firmware data "A0EDFW. tar" to the root directly.**

2. Turn OFF the main power switch and the sub power switch.
3. Remove the screw [1].
4. Lift up the cover [2] of the USB port.
5. Insert the USB memory device to the USB port [3] for service.



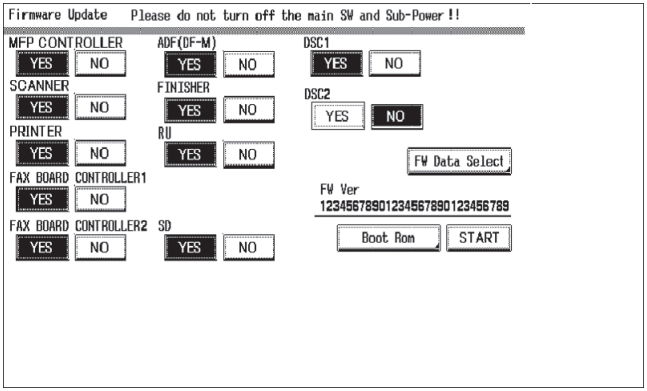
A0EDF2C247DA

NOTE

- **USB memory must be connected with the main power switch/sub power switch off.**
- **When updating the firmware, use the USB port for the service.**
  It cannot be updated when connected to another USB port.

6. Turn ON the main power switch and the sub power switch.

7. Control panel shows F/W items to be updated, and select the particular type of F/W to be updated. (Select [YES].)



A0EDF2C514DA

F/W to be updated	Appropriate board	Remark
MFP CONTROLLER	MFP board (MFPB)	
SCANNER	MFP board (MFPB)	
PRINTER	Printer control board (PRCB)	
FAX BOARD CONTROLLER1	Fax board (Main)	Only when the FK-502 is mounted
FAX BOARD CONTROLLER2	Fax board (Sub)	Only when the FK-502 is mounted
ADF (DF-M)	DF control board (DFCB)	
FINISHER	FNS control board (FSCB)	Only when the FS-527/529 is mounted
RU	Transfer control board (TRCB)	
SD	SD drive board (SDDB)	Only when the SD-509 is mounted
DSC1	DSC board	Only when the SC-507 is mounted
DSC2	Not used	

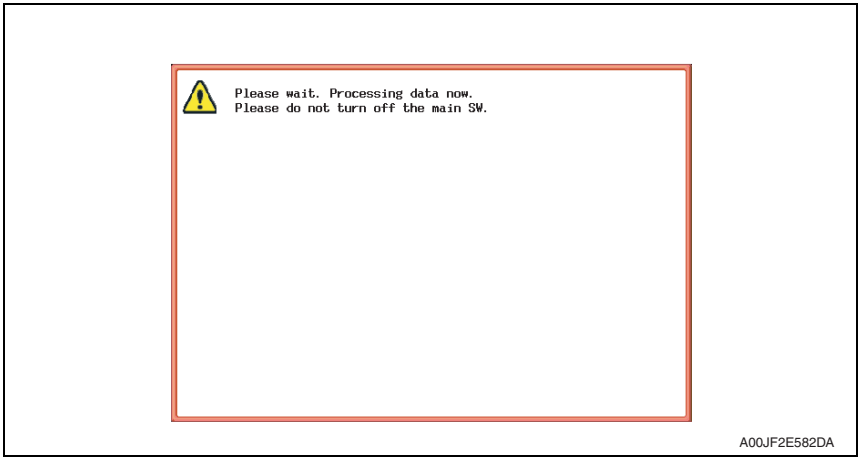
NOTE

- **Unless one of the keys on the control panel is pressed, firmware is automatically updated after 30 seconds when the main power switch/sub power switch is turned on.**
- **When the BootRom file is in the firmware data, [RootRom] key is displayed. Pressing the key updates data.**
- **When more than one firmware are stored in step 1, pressing [FW Data Select] enables selection. (Data of other models cannot be selected.)**
  (Data with * at the left top of data selection screen will be the default data copied to the root directly in the USB memory.)

8. Press the [START]. (At this time, the Start key starts blinking red.)
9. Check that the control panel shows the message indicating that the data has been rewritten correctly ([Downloading Completed]). Check also the check sum value ([Check Sum ####]) shown on the control panel. (The Start key lights blue.)
10. Turn OFF the main power switch and the sub power switch.
11. Remove the USB memory device, and fix the cover of the USB port using a screw.
12. Turn ON the main power switch and the sub power switch.

NOTE

- **When turning the main power switch ON for the first time after the firmware is updated, data may sometimes be internally updated.**
  In that case, the following message will be displayed. Never turn the main power switch OFF until either the serial number input screen or the trouble code screen is displayed.



13. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
14. Select [Firmware Version].
15. Make sure if the version of firmware is updated.

7.2.3 Action when data transfer fails

- If “NG” appears on the control panel, indicating that rewriting has been unsuccessful (in which case the Start key lights up red), take the following steps.

1. Perform the data rewriting procedure again.
2. If the procedure is abnormally terminated, change the USB memory for a new one and try another rewriting sequence.
3. If the procedure is still abnormally terminated, change the board that has caused “NG” and carry out data rewriting procedure.

F/W to be updated	Appropriate board	Remark
MFP CONTROLLER	MFP board (MFPB)	
SCANNER	MFP board (MFPB)	
PRINTER	Printer control board (PRCB)	
FAX BOARD CONTROLLER1	Fax board (Main)	Only when the FK-502 is mounted
FAX BOARD CONTROLLER2	Fax board (Sub)	Only when the FK-502 is mounted
ADF (DF-M)	DF control board (DFCB)	
FINISHER	FNS control board (FSCB)	Only when the FS-527/529 is mounted
RU	Transfer control board (TRCB)	
SD	SD drive board (SDDB)	Only when the SD-509 is mounted
DSC1	DSC board	Only when the SC-507 is mounted
DSC2	Not used	

7.3 Updating the firmware with the Internet ISW

7.3.1 Outline

- [Internet ISW] is the system which gives the instruction for updating the firmware with the control panel of the main body, so the main body will automatically receive the firmware from the program server over a network for updating. With the Internet ISW, the firmware can be updated when the CE is at the user's without firmware data.

7.3.2 Service environment

The following conditions are necessary for using the Internet ISW function.

- The main body is connected to such a network environment that the firmware can be downloaded on the internet using the ftp or http protocol.

The "Internet ISW" will not operate under the following conditions.

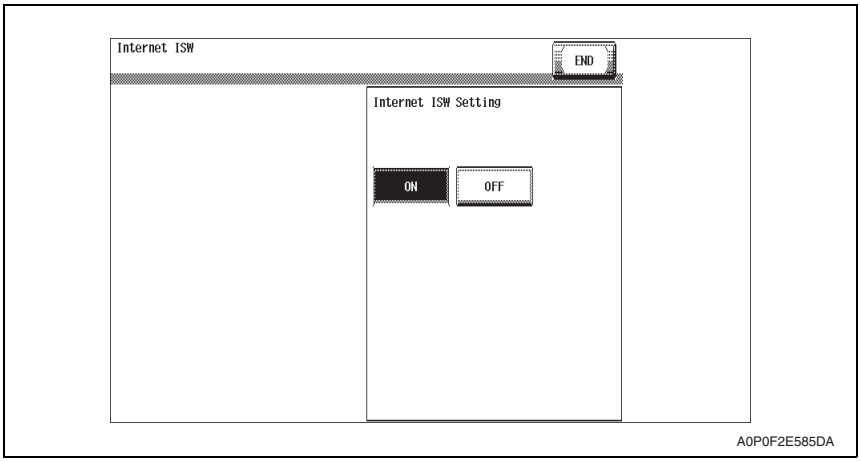
- Main power switch is set to OFF.
- Sub power switch is set to OFF.
- When the following setting is set to "ON":
  [Administrator Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode]
- Machine is operating, or there are jobs present (including appointed jobs).
- Machine is in idle with suspended job
- Paper jam has occurred
- Image file is in the memory
- Model or the circuit board of the program does not match

7.3.3 Preparations for firmware rewriting

- For using the Internet ISW, the network parameter, program server address as well as firewall address need to be set to the main body.
- For details of each setting item, refer to Adjustment/Setting "Internet ISW".
  See P.505

A. Internet ISW Set

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [Internet ISW Set] which is available from [Internet ISW].



3. Touch [ON], and touch [END].

NOTE

- **Settings such as server setting, etc. will be available by selecting "ON" on this setting.**
- **When the following setting is set to "ON", "ON" cannot be selected on this setting. [Administrator Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode]**

B. Protocol setting

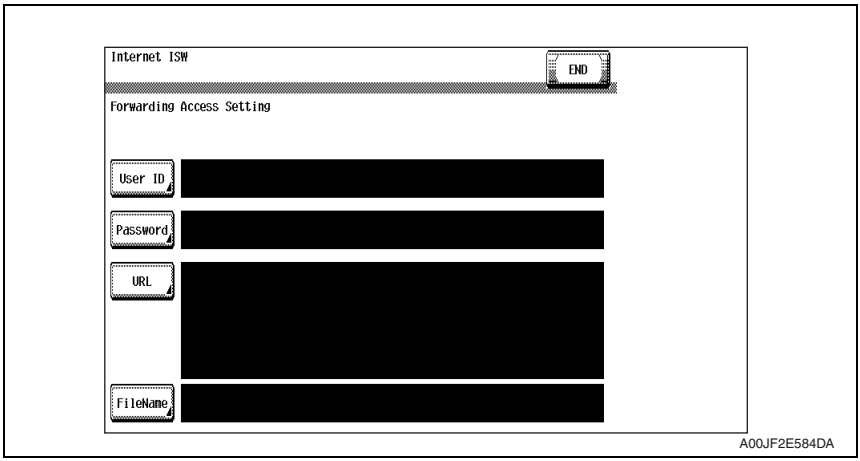
- **It performs the setting concerning the protocol (ftp or http) for connecting to the Internet ISW.**
- **When connecting to the program server using a proxy server, perform the setting for a proxy server.**

Step	Connecting by http	Connecting by ftp
0	Select [Internet ISW] which is available from [Service Mode].	
1	Data Input Setting • Touch [HTTP Setting], and select [ON].	Data Input Setting • Touch [FTP Setting], and select [ON].
2	Connect Proxy • For connecting via proxy server, select [ON].	
3	Proxy Server • For connecting via proxy server, set the proxy server address and the port number. *1.* Select the [Server Address], and set the proxy server address by IP addressing scheme or FQDN scheme. *2.* Select [Port Number], and set the port number for the proxy server from 1 through 65535.	
4	Proxy Authentication • Set the login name and the password which may be necessary for authentication when accessing to the proxy server. *1.* When Authentication is necessary for accessing to the proxy server, select [Authentication], and select [ON]. *2.* Select [Log-in Name], and enter the login name on the on-screen keyboard. *3.* Select [Password], and enter the password on the on-screen keyboard.	Connection Setting • Perform the setting for accessing FTP server. *1.* Select [Port Number], and set the port number for FTP server from 1 through 65535. *2.* Select [Connection Time Out], and set the time for the connection time out from 1 through 60. *3.* When connecting in PASV mode, select [PASV Mode], and select [ON]. *PASV Mode: This mode is for transferring the file with FTP under the condition where communication is restricted such as inside the firewall. Since with PASV mode, the client with restriction sets the port number, data transmission port can be secured to enable the file transmission.
5	Connection Time-Out • Select [Connection Time-Out], and set the time for the connection time out between 30 and 300 seconds.	—

C. Forwarding access setting

- To make the access setting for the program server which stores the firmware data.

1. Select [Internet ISW] which is available from [Service Mode].
2. Touch [Forwarding Access Setting].



3. Select [User ID], and enter the user ID which is necessary for connecting to the program server on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [END].
4. Select [Password], and enter the password which is necessary for connecting to the program server on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [END].
5. Select [URL], and enter the directory which stores the program server address and the firmware on the on-screen keyboard by URL method, and touch [END].

NOTE

- **Enter the URL which matches to the protocol to be used.**

When connecting to http		**http:///(host name or IP address)/directory name**
	or	**https:///(host name or IP address)/directory name**
When connecting to ftp		**ftp:///(host name or IP address)/directory name**

6. Select [File Name], and enter the file name of the firmware data to be downloaded on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [END].
7. Touch [END] to finish setting.

7.3.4 Firmware rewriting from the control panel

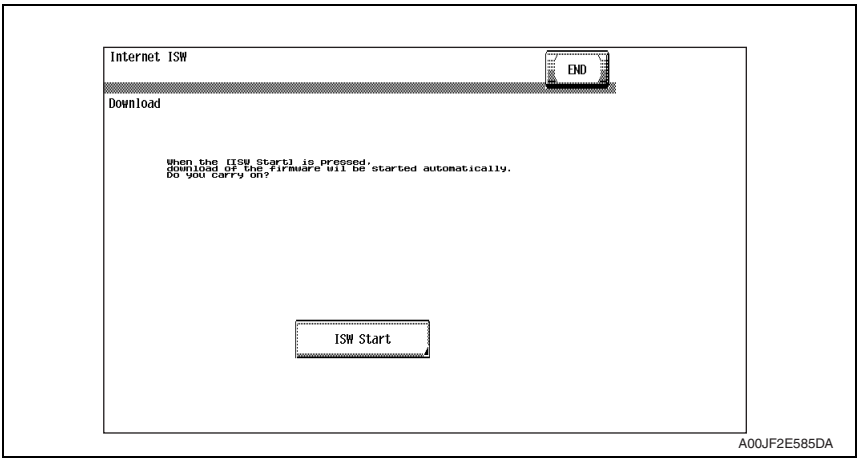
NOTE

- **When performing the Internet ISW, ask the administrator for permission beforehand.**
- **DO NOT turn OFF the main/sub power switch while downloading.**

A. Conducting rewriting on the control panel.

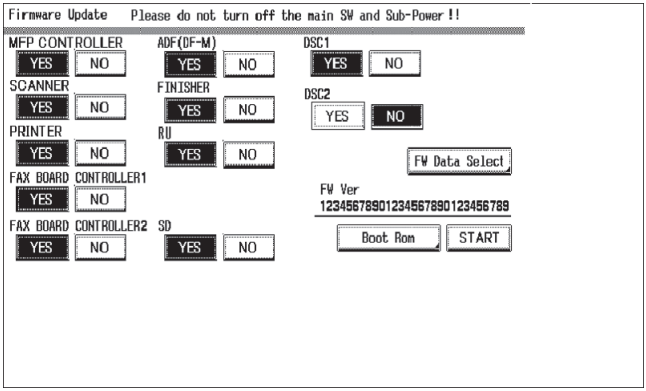
1. Perform the following setting.
[Service Mode] → [Internet ISW] → [Download]

2. Touch [ISW Start].



3. The main body will automatically start running, and it starts accessing the server.

4. Control panel shows F/W items to be updated, and select the particular type of F/W to be updated. (Select [YES].)



A0EDF2C514DA

F/W to be updated	Appropriate board	Remark
MFP CONTROLLER	MFP board (MFPB)	
SCANNER	MFP board (MFPB)	
PRINTER	Printer control board (PRCB)	
FAX BOARD CONTROLLER1	Fax board (Main)	Only when the FK-502 is mounted
FAX BOARD CONTROLLER2	Fax board (Sub)	Only when the FK-502 is mounted
ADF (DF-M)	DF control board (DFCB)	
FINISHER	FNS control board (FSCB)	Only when the FS-527/529 is mounted
RU	Transfer control board (TRCB)	
SD	SD drive board (SDDB)	Only when the SD-509 is mounted
DSC1	DSC board	Only when the SC-507 is mounted
DSC2	Not used	

NOTE

- **Unless one of the keys on the control panel is pressed, firmware is updated after 30 seconds when the unit has restarted.**

B. During firmware updating

1. The message to indicate the status will be displayed on the screen while connecting or transferring data.

C. Completed or failed

(1) Firmware updated normally

1. When the Firmware is normally updated, restart the main body in auto or manual mode to display the outcome, and touch [OK] to return to the main screen.

(2) Failing to update the firmware due to the network trouble

1. When updating failed to complete due to the trouble on connecting to the network, an error code and the message will be displayed.
2. Restart the main body in auto or manual mode, and touch [OK]. It can be used with the firmware version before conducting updating.
3. Check the settings for the network by error codes, and try updating again.

NOTE

- **For error codes, refer to "Error code list for the Internet ISW".**
See P.159

(3) Failing to update the firmware after downloading has started

1. Once firmware updating has started, the ROM in the main body will be deleted. When it failed right after updating has started, restart the main body, and shift to the standby screen to retry downloading.
2. When updating on the control panel, touch [settings] on the standby screen, and check the Network settings again.
Touch [Download], and restart the Internet ISW.

NOTE

- **Return to the standby screen without fail after turning the main power switch OFF/ON if the firmware is not updated.**
- **Firmware can be updated with the USB memory with the main power switch OFF.**

D. Confirming the firmware version

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Select the [Firmware Version].
3. Check if the firmware version is updated.

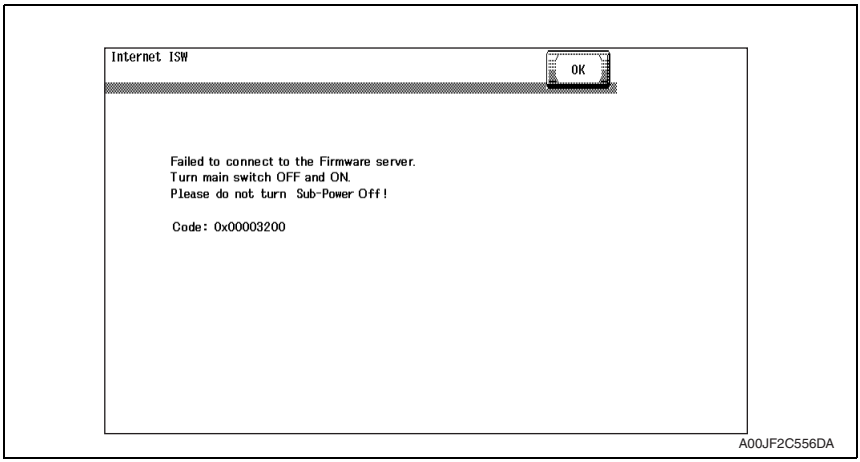
7.3.5 Firmware rewriting from the CS Remote Care

- For detailed error information relating to CS Remote Care, refer to "Adjustment/Setting: CS Remote Care."
See P.399
- For the firmware update procedure using CS Remote Care, refer to CS Remote Care Center Manual.

7.3.6 Error code list for the Internet ISW

- When a trouble occurred while conducting the Internet ISW and it was not normally connected, the message on the status and the error code will be displayed on the control panel.
  When updating with CS Remote Care, the error code will be sent to the CS Remote Care center.

<Sample display>



Error code Control panel	Description	Countermeasure
0x00000001	Illegal error on the control	• Check if the following setting is set to "Valid". [Service Mode] → [Internet ISW] → [Internet ISW setting] • Check the status of the following setting. [Service Mode] → [Internet ISW] → [Transfer access setting] • If the above process does not solve the problem, inform the corresponding error code to the KONICA MINOLTA.
0x00000010	Parameter error	• Check if the following setting is set to "Valid". [Service Mode] → [Internet ISW] → [Internet ISW setting] • If the above process does not solve the problem, inform the corresponding error code to KONICA MINOLTA.

Error code Control panel	Description	Countermeasure
0x00111000	Error concerning the network • Connection has been completed.	• Check the User's network environment. (LAN cable's connection) • Check the status of the following setting. [Service Mode] → [Internet ISW] → [Transfer access setting] • Check to see if the FTP server operates normally.
0x00111001	Error concerning the network • It cannot be connected to the server.	• Check the network environment of the User. • Check to see if the FTP server operates normally.
0x00111100	Error concerning the network • Communication timeout.	
0x00111101	Error concerning the network • Disconnection occurred.	• Check the network environment of the User. • Check to see if the FTP server operates normally.
0x00111110	Error concerning the network • The network is not connected.	
0x00110010	Error concerning the network • Others	
0x00001###	FTP error • Reply code when it failed to be connected.	• Check to see if FTP server normally operates. • Check the IP address, user's name, etc.
0x00002###	FTP error • Error reply code for the user command or pass command.	• Check to see if FTP server operates normally.
0x00003###	FTP error • Error reply code for CWD command.	
0x00004###	FTP error • Error reply code for the TYPE command.	• Check to see if FTP server operates normally.
0x00005###	FTP error • Error reply code for the PORT command.	
0x00006###	FTP error • Error reply code for the PASV command.	• Check to see if FTP server operates normally. • Set the PASV mode to "Invalid", and try it again.
0x00007###	FTP error • Error reply code for the RETR command.	• Check to see if FTP server operates normally. • Wait for about 30 minutes and try it again.
0x10000100	• It cannot be accepted because of the job currently being executed. • ISW being executed by other method.	• Wait for the current job to be completed and try it again.
0x10000101	• It cannot be accepted because the sub power switch is OFF.	• Turn sub power switch ON and try it again.
0x10000102	• The Internet ISW is already being executed.	• Wait for the current Internet ISW to be completed.

Error code Control panel	Description	Countermeasure
0x10000103	• It failed to prohibit the job. (It failed to lock the operation.) → It failed to lock the job because the operation is already locked with PSWC, etc.	• Check if the following setting is set to "Valid." [Service Mode] → [Internet ISW] → [Internet ISW setting] • If the above process does not solve the problem, inform the corresponding error code to the KONICA MINOLTA.
0x10000104	• There is no space for F/W data to be downloaded.	
0x10000106	• Check sum error	
0x10000107	File access error • The file downloaded has an error. • The header of the file which has been read has an error. • The size of the file to be downloaded is too large. • When it is identified to be the different type of F/W.	• Check to see if the downloaded F/W is of the correct type.
0x10000108	• The area F/W is stored is destroyed, and another ISW is necessary.	• Wait until ISW is automatically executed on MFP side.
0x20000000	The temporary error when running the subset • When starting the Internet ISW in a normal program, the rebooting will start and the Internet ISW will be executed with the subset program. During the process by the subset program, it has to be in the "Failed" status unless the Internet ISW is successfully conducted. This code is used temporarily to make it in error status.	

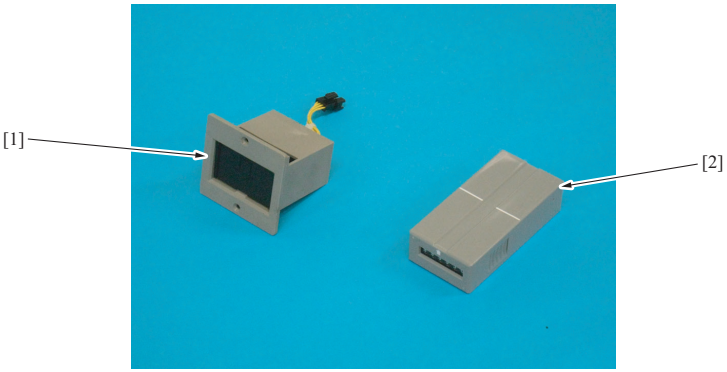
NOTE

- **When a code other than the ones listed above is displayed, contact KMBT and inform the error code.**

8. COMMERCIALLY AVAILABLE PARTS

8.1 Installing the key counter

8.1.1 Configuration

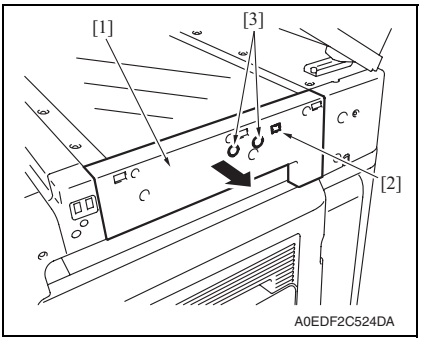


[1]	Key counter socket	[2]	Key counter

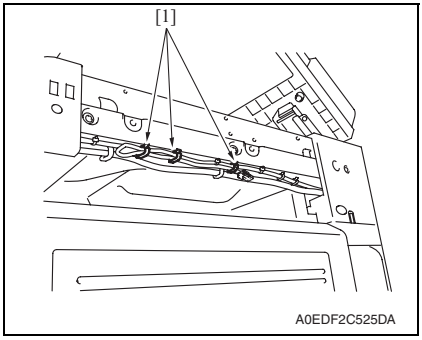
8.1.2 Procedure

NOTE

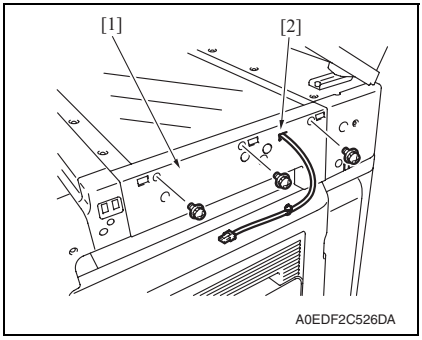
- **When mounting the key counter, the optional key counter kit KIT-1 (4623-472) is necessary.**
- **Procedure for directly mounting the key counter to the main unit is described below.**
  For mounting the key counter to the optional working table WT-506, refer to WT-506 installation manual.



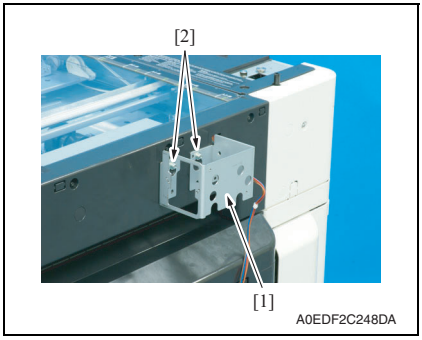
1. Remove the scanner right cover [1]. See P.58
2. Cut out the knockouts [2] of the scanner right cover.
3. Remove two caps [3].



4. Remove the harness for the key counter from three wire saddles [1].



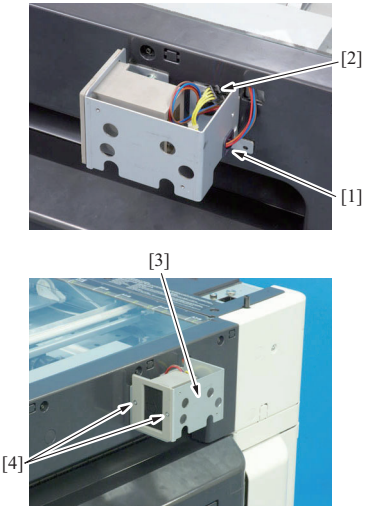
5. Mount the scanner right cover [1], and insert the harness for the key counter through the hole [2] knock-outs were removed from.



6. Using two screws [2], secure the counter mounting bracket [1].

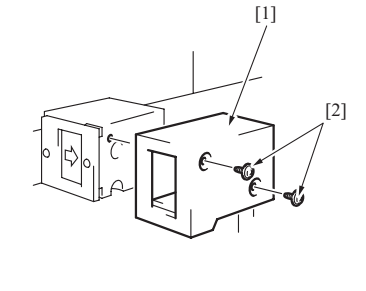
NOTE

- **Secure the counter mounting bracket passing the connector into the bracket.**
- **Use the two long screws (V116 0418 14: M4 x 18) in the key counter kit to secure the counter mounting bracket.**



A0EDF2C249DA

7. Mount the edge cover [1] to the counter mounting bracket and set the harness to the edge cover.
8. Connect the key counter socket connector [2].
9. Using two screws [4], secure the counter socket [3].



A00JF2C584DA

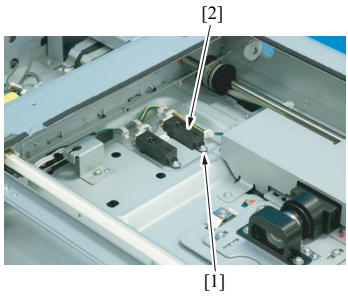
10. Using two screws [2], secure the key counter cover [1].

11. Select [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice] → [Key Counter Only], [Vendor 1 + Key Counter] or [Vendor 2 + Key Counter].
Set color mode and message.
For details on setting, see “ADJUSTMENT/SETTING.”
See P.520

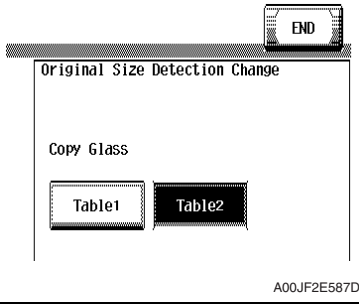
8.2 Installing the original size detection 2 sensor (PS205)

8.2.1 Procedure

1. Remove the original glass.
See P.62

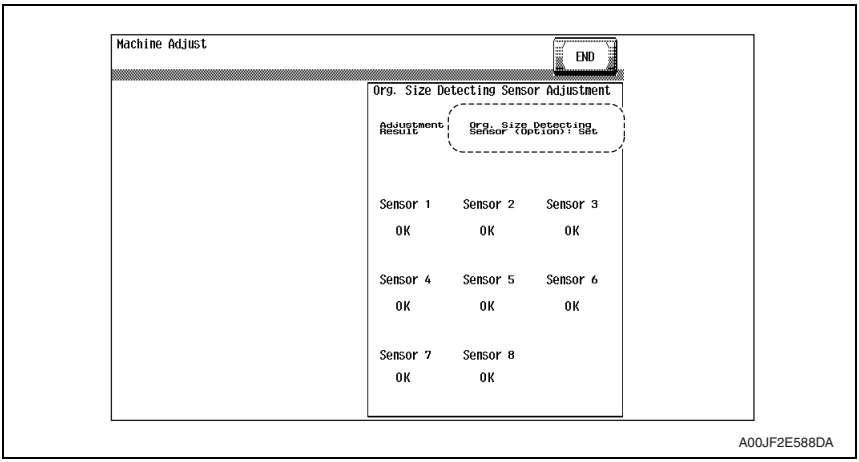


2. Using the screw [1], mount the original size detection 2 sensor (PS205) [2] and fix it.



3. Select [Service Mode] → [System 1] → [Original Size Detection], and set the original glass to [Table2].

4. Select [Service Mode] → [Machine] → [Org. Size Detecting Sensor Adj].
See P.372



5. Check to make sure that the [Org. Size Detecting Sensor (Option): Set] is displayed on the original size detection sensor adjustment screen.

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

9. HOW TO USE THE ADJUSTMENT/SETTING SECTION

- "Adjustment/Setting" contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this "Adjustment/Setting," the default settings are indicated by " ".

Advance checks

- Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The original glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

⚠ CAUTION

- **To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the scanner cables or gears of the exposure unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the fusing unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The developing unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

10. UTILITY

10.1 List of utility mode

NOTE

- **Keys displayed on screens are different depending on the setting.**
- **For displaying the keys with *, ** marks, see "Administrator Security Level."** See P.339
- **For displaying the keys with *** marks, see "Administrator Feature Level."** See P.511

Utility Mode					Ref. page
One-Touch/ User Box Registration	Create One-Touch destination	Address Book (Public)/ (Personal)	E-mail		P.183
			User Box		P.183
			Fax		P.183
			PC (SMB)		P.183
			FTP		P.184
			WebDAV		P.184
			IP Address Fax		P.184
			Internet Fax		P.184
		Group			P.184
		E-mail Settings	E-mail Subject		P.185
			E-mail Body		P.185
	Create User Box	Public/Personal User Box			P.185
		Bulletin Board User Box			P.186
		Relay User Box			P.186
	Limiting Access to Destina-tions	Apply Levels/ Groups to Destinations	Address Book		P.187
			Group		P.187
			Program		P.187
User Settings	System Settings	Language Selection			P.188
		Measurement Unit Settings			P.188
		Paper Tray Settings	Auto Tray Selection Settings		P.188
			Auto Tray Switch ON/OFF		P.188
			No Matching Paper in Tray Setting		P.188
			Print Lists		P.189
		Auto Color Level Adjust.			P.189
		Power Save Settings*	Low Power Mode Settings*		P.189
			Sleep Mode Settings*		P.190
		Output Settings**	Print/Fax Out-put Settings**	Print**	P.190
				Fax**	
			Output Tray Settings**		P.190
		AE Level Adjustment**			P.191

Utility Mode				Ref. page
User Settings	System Settings	Auto Paper Select for Small Original		P.191
		Blank Page Print Settings**		P.191
		Page Number Print Position**		P.192
		Select Keyboard**		P.192
	Custom Display Settings	Copier Settings	Default Tab	P.193
			Shortcut Key 1	P.193
			Shortcut Key 2	
			Quick Settings 1	P.193
			Quick Settings 2	
			Quick Settings 3	
			Quick Settings 4	
			Default Tab Density Settings	P.193
		Scan/Fax Settings	Default Tab	P.194
			Program Default	P.194
			Address Book Index Default	P.194
			Shortcut Key 1	P.194
			Shortcut Key 2	
			Default Address Book	P.195
			Default Address Type	P.195
		User Box Settings	Default Tab	P.195
			Shortcut Key 1	P.195
			Shortcut Key 2	
		Copy Screen	Copy Operating Screen	P.196
		Fax Active Screen	TX Display	P.196
			RX Display	P.196
		Color Selection Settings		P.196
		Left Panel Display Default		P.197
		Search Option Settings		P.197
	Copier Settings	Auto Booklet ON when Fold & Staple		P.197
		Auto Zoom for Combine/Booklet		P.197
		Auto Sort/Group Selection		P.198
		Default Copy Settings		P.198
		Default Enlarge Display Settings		P.199
		When AMS Direction is Incorrect		P.199
		Separate Scan Output Method		P.199
		Enlargement Rotation		P.200
		Auto Zoom (Platen)*		P.200
		Auto Zoom (ADF)*		P.200
		Specify Default Tray when APS Off*		P.200
		Select Tray for Insert Sheet*		P.201
		Half-Fold Specification		P.201
		Print Jobs During Copy Operation**		P.201

Utility Mode				Ref. page
User Settings	Copier Settings	Automatic Image Rotation		P.201
		Finishing Program		P.202
		Card Shot Settings	Layout	P.202
			Zoom	
			Store Original Size	
	Scan/Fax Settings	JPEG Compression Level		P.203
		Black Compression Level		P.203
		TWAIN Lock Time		P.203
		Default Scan/Fax Settings		P.203
		Default Enlarge Display Settings		P.204
		Compact PDF/XPS Compression Level		P.204
		Color TIFF Type		P.205
		OCR Operation Setting		P.205
		Graphic Outlining		P.205
	Printer Settings	Basic Settings	PDL Setting	P.205
			Number of Copies	P.205
			Original Direction	P.206
			Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP	P.206
			A4/A3 ↔ LTR/LGR Auto Switch	P.206
			Banner Sheet Setting	P.206
			Binding Direction Adjustment	P.207
			Line Width Adjustment	P.207
			Gray Background Text Correction	P.207
			Gray Background Text Correction (Fiery Controller)	P.208
		Paper Setting	Paper Tray	P.208
			Paper Size	P.208
			2-Sided Print	P.208
			Binding Position	P.208
			Staple	P.209
			Punch	P.209
			Banner Paper Tray	P.209
		PCL Settings	Font Settings	P.209
			Symbol Set	P.210
			Font Size	P.210
			Line/Page	P.210
			CR/LF Mapping	P.210

Utility Mode					Ref. page
User Settings	Printer Settings	PS Setting	Print PS Errors		P.211
			ICC Profile Settings	Photo-RGB Color	P.211
				Photo-Output Profile	
				Text-RGB Color	
				Text-Output Profile	
				Figure/Table Graph-RGB Color	
				Figure/Table Graph-Output Profile	
				Simulation-Profile	
			Auto Trapping		P.211
			Black Overprint		P.212
		XPS Settings	Verify XPS Digital Signature		P.212
		Print Reports	Configuration Page		P.213
			Demo Page		
			PCL Font List		
			PS Font List		
		TIFF Image Paper Setting			P.213
	Change Password				P.214
	Change E-mail Address				P.214
	Change Icon				P.214
	Register Authentication Settings				P.215
	Registered Application Setting	Default Application Selection			P.215
	Cellular Phone/PDA Setting	Link File Error Notification			P.215
		Proxy Server Use			P.215
		Print Settings			P.215
Administrator Settings	System Settings	Power Save Settings	Low Power Mode Settings		P.216
			Sleep Mode Settings		P.216
			Power Save Key		P.216
			Enter Power Save Mode		P.217
		Output Settings	Print/Fax Output Settings	Print	P.217
				Fax	
			Output Tray Settings		P.217
			Shift Output Each Job		P.218
		Date/Time Settings			P.218
		Daylight Saving Time			P.218
		Weekly Timer Settings	Weekly Timer ON/OFF Settings		P.219
			Time Settings		P.219
			Date Settings		P.219
			Select Time for Power Save		P.219
			Password for Non-Business Hours		P.219

Utility Mode					Ref. page
Administrator Settings	System Settings	Restrict User Access	Copy Program Lock Settings		P.220
			Delete Saved Copy Program		P.220
			Restrict Access to Job Settings	Changing Job Priority	P.220
				Delete Other User Jobs	P.220
				Registering and Changing Addresses	P.220
				Changing Zoom Ratio	P.221
				Changing the “From” Address	P.221
				Change Registered Overlay	P.221
				Biometric/IC Card Info. Registration	P.221
			Restrict Operation	Restrict Broadcasting	P.221
		Expert Adjustment	AE Level Adjustment		P.222
			Printer Adjustment	Leading Edge Adjustment	P.222
				Centering	P.224
				Leading Edge Adjustment (Duplex Side 2)	P.225
				Centering (Duplex 2nd Side)	P.226
				Erase Leading Edge ***	P.227
				Vertical Adjustment ***	P.228
				Media Adjustment	P.229
			Finisher Adjustment	Center Staple Position	P.230
				Half-Fold Position	P.231
				Punch Horizontal Position Adjustment	P.232
				Punch Regist Loop Size Adjustment	P.233
				Paper Alignment Plate Setting	P.233
			Density Adjustment	Thick 1/1+ -Yellow	P.233
				Thick 2/3/4-Yellow	
				Thick 1/1+ -Magenta	
				Thick 2/3/4-Magenta	
				Thick 1/1+ -Cyan	
				Thick 2/3/4-Cyan	
				Thick 1/1+ -Black	
				Thick 2/3/4-Black	
				Black Image Density	P.234
			Image Stabilization	Image Stabilization Only	P.234
				Image Stabilization Setting	
			Paper Separation Adjustment		P.236

Utility Mode						Ref. page
Administrator Settings	System Settings	Expert Adjustment	Color Registration Adjust	Color Registration Adjust (Yellow)		P.236
				Color Registration Adjust (Magenta)		
				Color Registration Adjust (Cyan)		
			Gradation Adjustment	Image Stabilization Only		P.238
				Print		
				Copy		
			Scanner Area ***	Scanner Adjustment: Leading Edge ***		P.240
				Scanner Adjustment: Centering ***		P.241
				Horizontal Adjustment ***		P.242
				Vertical Adjustment ***		P.243
			ADF Adjust-ment ***	Centering***		P.244
				Original Stop Position***		P.245
				Centering Auto Adjustment***		P.246
				Auto Adj. of Stop Position***		P.246
			Line Detection	Prior Detection Setting		P.247
				Feed Cleaning Settings		P.247
			User Paper Settings ***			P.248
			Erase Adjustment	Non-Image Area Erase Operation Settings		P.249
		List/Counter	Management List	Job Settings List		P.249
			Paper Size/Type Counter			P.249
			Meter Counter List			P.250
			Check Consumables List			P.250
		Reset Settings	System Auto Reset			P.250
			Auto Reset			P.251
			Job Reset	When Account is changed		P.251
				When Original is set on ADF		P.251
				NEXT JOB	Staple Setting	P.251
					Original Set/ Bind Direction	P.251
					Reset Data After Job	P.252

Utility Mode					Ref. page
Administrator Settings	System Settings	User Box Settings	Delete Unused User Box		P.252
			Delete Secure Print Documents		P.252
			Auto Delete Secure Documents		P.252
			Encrypted PDF Delete Time		P.252
			ID & Print Delete Time		P.253
			Document Hold Setting		P.253
			External Memory Function Settings		P.253
			Allow/Restrict User Box		P.254
			ID & Print Delete after Print Setting		P.254
			Document Delete Time Setting		P.254
		Standard Size Setting***	Original Glass Original Size Detect***		P.254
			Foolscap Size Setting***		P.254
		Stamp Settings	Header/Footer Settings		P.255
			Fax TX Settings		P.255
		Blank Page Print Settings			P.255
		Application Key Settings			P.255
		Skip Job Operation Settings	Fax		P.256
			Other than Fax		
		Default Bypass Paper Type Setting			P.256
		Page Number Print Position			P.256
		Advanced Preview Setting			P.256
	Administrator/Machine Settings	Administrator Registration			P.256
		Input Machine Address			P.257
	One-Touch/User Box Registration	Create One-Touch Destination	Address Book	E-mail	P.257
				User Box	P.257
				Fax	P.257
				PC (SMB)	P.257
				FTP	P.258
				WebDAV	P.258
				IP Address Fax	P.258
				Internet Fax	P.258
			Group		P.258
			E-mail Settings	E-mail Subject	P.258
				E-mail Body	P.259
		Create User Box	Public/Personal User Box		P.259
			Bulletin Board User Box		P.259
			Relay User Box		P.259
			Annotation User Box		P.259

Utility Mode					Ref. page
Administrator Settings	One-Touch/ User Box Registration	One-Touch/ User Box Registration List	Address Book List		P.260
			Group List		P.260
			Program List		P.260
			E-mail Subject/Text List		P.260
		Maximum Number of User Boxes			P.261
	User Authentication/ Account Track	General Settings			P.261
		User Authentication Settings	Administrative Setting	User Name List	P.264
				Default Function Permission	P.264
				ID & Print Settings	P.265
				ID & Print Operation Settings	P.265
				Default Operation Selection	P.265
			User Registration		P.266
			User Counter		P.266
		Account Track Settings	Account Track Registration		P.266
			Account Track Counter		P.267
		Print without Authentication			P.267
		Print Counter List			P.267
		External Server Settings			P.268
		Limiting Access to Destinations	Create Group		P.268
			Apply Levels/Groups to Destinations		P.268
			Apply Levels/Groups to Users		P.268
		Authentication Device Settings	General Settings		P.269
			Logoff Settings		P.270
		Auth/Acct Track Common Setting	Logout Confirmation Screen Display Setting		P.270
			Single Color > 2 Color Output Management		P.270
		Scan to Home Settings			P.270
		Scan to Authorized Folder Settings			P.271
	Network Settings	TCP/IP Settings	IPv4 Settings		P.271
			IPv6 Settings		P.272
			DNS Host		P.272
			DNS Domain		P.273
			DNS Server Settings(IPv4)		P.273
			DNS Server Settings(IPv6)		P.273
			IPsec Settings		P.274
			IP Filtering (Permit Access)		P.276
			IP Filtering (Deny Access)		P.276
			RAW Port Number		P.277
			LLMNR Setting		P.277
		NetWare Settings	IPX Settings		P.277
			NetWare Print Settings		P.278
			User Authentication Settings (NDS)		P.279

Utility Mode					Ref. page
Administrator Settings	Network Settings	HTTP Server Settings			P.280
		FTP Settings	FTP TX Settings		P.282
			FTP Server Settings		P.283
		SMB Settings	Client Settings		P.283
			Print Settings		P.284
			WINS Settings		P.284
			Direct Hosting Settings		P.285
		LDAP Settings	Enabling LDAP		P.285
			Setting Up LDAP		P.286
			Default LDAP Server Setting		P.290
		E-mail Settings	E-mail TX (SMTP)		P.290
			E-mail RX (POP)		P.293
			S/MIME Communication Settings		P.296
		SNMP Settings			P.297
		AppleTalk Settings			P.301
		Bonjour Setting			P.301
		TCP Socket Settings	TCP Socket		P.302
			TCP Socket (ASCII Mode)		P.302
		Network Fax Settings	Network Fax Function Settings	IP Address Fax Function	P.303
				Internet Fax Function	P.303
			SMTP TX Settings		P.303
			SMTP RX Settings		P.304
		WebDAV Settings	WebDAV Client Settings		P.304
			WebDAV Server Settings		P.306
		Web Service Settings	Web Service Common Settings		P.306
			Printer Settings		P.307
			Scanner Settings		P.308
		SSDP Settings			P.309
		Detail Settings	Device Setting		P.309
			Time Adjustment Setting		P.310
			Status Notification Setting	Register Notification Address	P.311
			Total Counter Notification Settings		P.312
			PING Confirmation		P.313
			SLP Setting		P.313
			LPD Setting		P.313
			Prefix/Suffix Setting	ON/OFF Setting	P.313
				Prefix/Suffix Setting	P.313
			Error Code Display Setting		P.314
		IEEE802.1X Authentication Settings			P.314
		Web Browser Setting			P.314
		Bluetooth Setting			P.315

Utility Mode				Ref. page
Administrator Settings	Copier Settings	Auto Zoom (Platen)		P.315
		Auto Zoom (ADF)		P.315
		Specify Default Tray when APS OFF		P.315
		Select Tray for Insert Sheet		P.315
		Print Jobs During Copy Operation		P.316
		Automatic Image Rotation		P.316
		Card Shot Settings	Layout	P.316
			Zoom	
			Store Original Size	
	Printer Settings	USB Timeout		P.317
		Network Timeout		P.317
		Print XPS Errors		P.317
		PSWC Direct Print		P.317
2		Assign Account to Acquire Device Info		P.318
	Fax Settings	Header Information		P.318
		Header/ Footer Position	Header Position	P.318
			Print Receiver's Name	P.318
			Footer Position	P.319
		Line Parameter Setting	Dialing Method	P.319
			Receive Mode	P.319
			Number of RX Call Rings	P.319
			Number of Redials	P.320
			Redial interval	P.320
			Line Monitor Sound	P.320
			Line Monitor Sound Vol.	P.320
		TX/RX Settings	Duplex Print (RX)	P.320
			Letter/Ledger over A4/A3	P.321
			Print Paper Selection	P.321
			Print Paper Size	P.321
			Incorrect User Box No. Entry	P.321
			Tray Selection for RX Print	P.321
			Min. Reduction for RX Print	P.322
			Print Separate Fax Pages	P.322
			File After Polling TX	P.322
			No. of Sets (RX)	P.322
2			Individual Receiving Line Setup	P.322
2			Individual Sender Line Setup	P.323

Utility Mode					Ref. page
Administrator Settings	Fax Settings	Function Settings	Function ON/ OFF Setting	F Code TX	P.323
				Relay RX	P.323
				Relay Printing	P.324
				Destination Check Display Function	P.324
				Confirm Address (TX)	P.324
				Confirm Address (Register)	P.324
			Memory RX Setting		P.325
			Closed Network RX		P.325
			Forward TX Setting		P.325
			Incomplete TX Hold		P.326
			PC-Fax RX Setting		P.326
			TSI User Box Setting		P.326
		PBX Connection Setting			P.327
		Report Settings	Activity Report		P.327
			TX Result Report		P.327
			Sequential TX Report		P.327
			Timer Reservation TX Report		P.327
			Confidential RX Report		P.328
			Bulletin TX Report		P.328
			Relay TX Result Report		P.328
			Relay Request Report		P.328
			PC-FAX TX Error Report		P.328
			Broadcast Result Report		P.329
			TX Result Report Check		P.329
			Network Fax RX Error Report		P.329
			MDN Message		P.329
			DSN Message		P.330
			Print E-mail Message Body		P.330
		Job Settings List			P.330
		Multi Line Settings	Line Parame-ter Setting	Dialing Method	P.331
				Number of RX Call Rings	P.331
				Line Monitor Sound	P.331
			Function Settings	PC-FAX TX Setting	P.331
			Multi Lines Settings		P.332
			Sender Fax No.		P.332
		Network Fax Settings	Black Compression Level		P.332
			Color/Grayscale Multi-Value Compression Method		P.333
			Internet Fax Self Rx Ability		P.333
			Internet Fax Advanced Settings		P.334
			IP Address Fax Operation Settings		P.335

Utility Mode				Ref. page
Administrator Settings	System Connection	OpenAPI Settings	Access Setting	P.335
			SSL/Port Number	P.336
			Authentication	P.336
		Call Remote Center		P.337
		Automatic Prefix/Suffix Setting		P.337
		Printer Information		P.337
		Cellular Phone/PDA Setting		P.337
	Security Settings	Administrator Password		P.338
		User Box Administrator Setting		P.338
		Administrator Security Levels		P.339
		Security Details	Password Rules	P.339
			Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error	P.340
			Confidential Document Access Method	P.341
			Manual Destination Input	P.341
			Print Data Capture	P.342
			Job Log Settings	P.342
			Restrict Fax TX	P.342
			Hide Personal Information	P.343
			Hide Personal Information (MIB)	P.343
			Display Activity Log	P.343
			Initialize	P.344
			Job History Thumbnail Display	P.344
			Secure Print Only	P.344
			Copy Guard	P.344
			Password Copy	P.345
			Web browser contents access	P.345
		Enhanced Security Mode		P.345
		HDD Settings	Check HDD Capacity	P.348
			Overwrite HDD Data	P.349
			Overwrite All Data	P.350
			HDD Lock Password	P.350
			Format HDD	P.351
			HDD Encryption Setting	P.351
		Function Management Settings	Usage Settings for Each Function	P.352
			Maximum Job Allowance	P.352
			Network Function Usage Settings	P.352
			Authentication Time Setting	P.353
		Stamp Settings	Apply Stamps	P.353
			Delete Registered Stamp	P.353
		Image Log Transfer Settings		P.354
		Driver Password Encryption Setting		P.354

Utility Mode			Ref. page
Administrator Settings	License Settings	Get Request Code	P.355
		Install License	P.355
		List of Enabled Functions	P.355
	OpenAPI Authentication Management Settings		P.356
Check Consumable Life		Print List	—
Banner Printing			P.356
My Panel Settings	Language Setting		P.356
	Measurement Unit Setting		
	Copier Settings		
	Scan/Fax Settings		
	Color Selection Setting		
	Main Menu Settings		
	Initial Screen Setting		
Device Information			P.357
Meter Count	Check Details	Copy	P.358
		Print	
		Scan/Fax	
		Other	
		Print List	
		Coverage Rate *2	
Remaining Copy Count *1			—

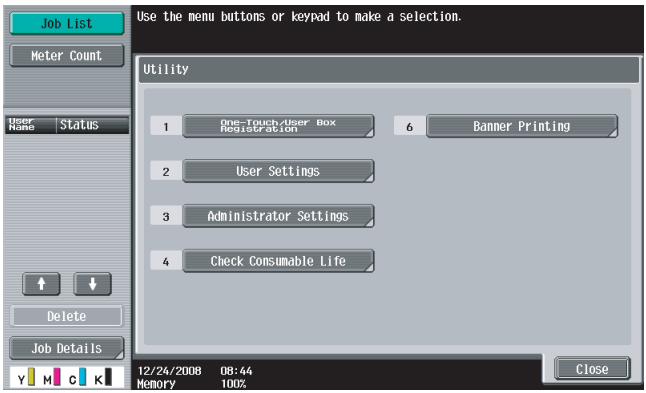
*1: Displayed after a user or account authentication if maximum limit is set for the number of copies the user or account can make.

*2: Coverage rate can be used as a rough toner consumption estimate and may not completely reflect the actual amount of toner used.

10.2 Starting/Exiting

10.2.1 Starting procedure

1. Press the Utility/Counter key.
2. The Utility Mode screen will appear.



A0P0F3E543DA

10.2.2 Exiting procedure

- Touch the [Close] key.

10.3 Touch Panel Adjustment

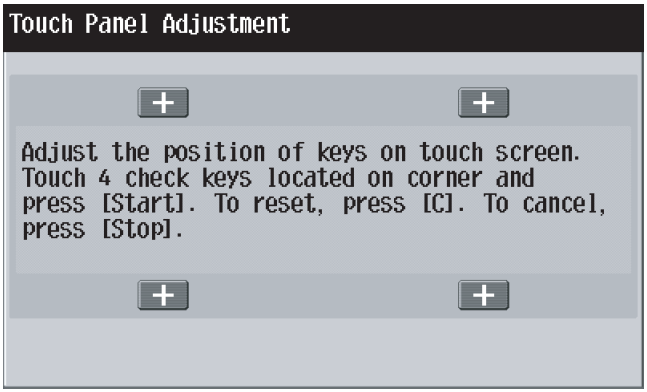
A. Use

- To adjust the position of the touch panel display
- Make this adjustment if the touch panel is slow to respond to a pressing action.
- Use during the setup procedure.

B. Procedure

1. Press the Accessibility key.
2. Touch [Touch Panel Adj.].
3. Using the tip of a pen or similar object, touch the four keys (+) on the screen in sequence.

- These crosses may be touched in any order; but be sure to touch the center of each cross.
- Use care not to damage the screen surface with the tip of the pen.



A0P0F3E544DA

4. Touching all four crosses will turn the Start key ON in blue.
5. Press the Start key.

10.4 One-Touch User Box Registration

- In a copier where the user authentication function that uses an external server or MFP is set to ON, when you operate the copier without performing user authentication, this menu is not displayed.
- It will not be displayed when the authentication device is set to “Set” by the following setting.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

10.4.1 Create One-Touch destination-Address Book (Public)/(Personal)

A. E-mail

(1) Use

- To register/change e-mail address to send scanned data.

(2) Procedure

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed address to check, edit or delete the setting.

B. User Box

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device or the vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  (It will be displayed when the key counter is mounted.)

(1) Use

- To register/change the Box address when storing the scanned data in the box in the hard disk in the main body.

(2) Procedure

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed address to check, edit or delete the setting.
- At least one User Box must be registered for registering a Box address.

C. Fax

(1) Use

- To register/change the fax destinations.

(2) Procedure

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed address to check, edit or delete the setting.

D. PC (SMB)

(1) Use

- To register/change SMB address to send scanned data.

(2) Procedure

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed address to check, edit or delete the setting.

E. FTP

(1) Use

- To register/change FTP address to send scanned data.

(2) Procedure

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed address to check, edit or delete the setting.

F. WebDAV

(1) Use

- To register/change WebDAV address to send scanned data.

(2) Procedure

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed address to check, edit or delete the setting.

G. IP Address Fax

- Setting will be available only when [IP Address FAX] is set to “ON” in the following settings.
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [Network Fax Settings] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

(1) Use

- To register/change the IP address fax destination when transmitting the IP address fax data.

(2) Procedure

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed address to check, change or delete the setting.

H. Internet Fax

- Setting will be available only when [Internet FAX] is set to “ON” in the following settings.
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [Network Fax Settings] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

(1) Use

- To register/change the Internet fax address when transmitting the internet fax data.

(2) Procedure

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed address to check, change or delete the setting.

10.4.2 Create One-Touch destination-Group

A. Use

- To register/change a group to send scanned data/fax data simultaneously.

B. Procedure

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed group to check, edit or delete them.
- At least one address must be registered for registering a new group.

10.4.3 Create One-Touch destination-E-mail Settings

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that the management device 2 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. E-mail Subject

(1) Use

- To register the e-mail subject when transmitting the scanned data.

(2) Procedure

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed address to detail check, edit or delete the setting.
- The subject can be set as default by selecting the subject displayed on the screen and pressing [Set as Default].

B. E-mail Body

(1) Use

- To register the e-mail message when transmitting the scanned data.

(2) Procedure

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed address to detail check or delete the setting.
- The text can be set as default by selecting the text displayed on the screen and pressing [Set as Default].

10.4.4 Create User Box

- It will not be displayed when the authentication device is set to “Set” by the following setting.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that the vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  (It will be displayed when the key counter is mounted.)
- This menu is not available due to functional restriction during user authentication when [User Box] is set to Restrict.
- It will not be displayed when [Allow/Restrict User Box] is set to “Restrict” in the following settings.
  [Administrator Settings] → [System Settings] → [User Box Settings]

10.4.5 Create User Box-Public/Personal User Box

A. Use

- To register/change the box for storing text data in the hard disk of the machine.
- Shared or personal box can be registered according to its intended use.

B. Procedure

- A new box can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed box to change or delete it.

10.4.6 Create User Box-Bulletin Board User Box

- It will not be displayed when the authentication device 1 is set to “Set” by the following setting.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that the vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  (It will be displayed when the key counter is mounted.)
- It will not be displayed due to functional restriction upon user authentication when [User Box] is set to “OFF.”
- It will be displayed only when the optional fax kit (FK-502) is mounted.
- It will not be displayed during user authentication if the fax operation is set to “Restrict” by the function restriction.

A. Use

- To register/change the bulletin board user box.

B. Procedure

- A new box can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed box to change or delete it.

10.4.7 Create User Box-Relay User Box

- It will not be displayed when the authentication device 1 is set to “Set” by the following setting.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that the vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  (It will be displayed when the key counter is mounted.)
- It will not be displayed due to functional restriction upon user authentication when [User Box] is set to “OFF.”
- It will be displayed only when the optional FAX kit (FK-502) is mounted.
- It will be displayed when the following setting is set to “ON.”
  [Service Mode] → [FAX] → [System] → [Display Setting] → [Relay]

A. Use

- To register/change the Relay User Box.

B. Procedure

- A new box can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed box to change or delete it.

10.4.8 Limiting Access to Destinations

- It will not be displayed when the following setting is set to “ON.”
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode]

A. Outline

- The Limiting Access to Destinations setting allows or restricts individual user's access to each destination. This enables security control by restricting information that can be accessed.

(1) Apply Levels

- One of the six levels from 0 to 5 can be assigned to all destinations. Similarly, one of the levels from 0 to 5 can be assigned to all users. Depending on the combination of the destination and user levels, destinations that a user can access can be limited.
  For example, users of level 2 can access the destinations that belong to the levels 0 to 2, but cannot access to the destinations that belong to the levels 3 to 5. Level 5 users can access all destinations of the levels 0 to 5.

(2) Groups

- A group can be made with a certain name to allow its members to access its destinations. Users and destinations can be registered for the group so that the registered destinations can be accessed by the registered users.
  Access restriction depending on an individual level is also applied to the group with access to the destinations determined by the combination of the user and destination levels within a group.
- A destination can be included in only one group.
- A user can be included in multiple different groups.

10.4.9 Limiting Access to Destinations-Apply Levels/Groups to Destinations

A. Address Book

(1) Use

- Sets a level and a group for destinations registered in the address book.

(2) Procedure

- Select a destination, press [Apply Level] or [Apply Group] and make a setting.

B. Group

(1) Use

- Sets a level and a group for destinations registered in the group.

(2) Procedure

- Select a destination, press [Apply Level] or [Apply Group] and make a setting.

C. Program

(1) Use

- Sets a level and a group for destinations registered in the program.

(2) Procedure

- Select a destination, press [Apply Level] or [Apply Group] and make a setting.

10.5 User Settings

10.5.1 System Settings-Language Selection

A. Use

- To select the language on the LCD display.
- To change the language used on the control panel.

B. Procedure

- The language options depend on the marketing area selected in [Marketing Area] available from [System 1] under Service Mode.
See P.430

10.5.2 System Settings-Measurement Unit Settings

A. Use

- To select the unit displayed on the LCD display.

B. Procedure

- The default setting varies depending on the marketing area.

mm (Numerical Value) inch (Numerical Value) inch (Fraction)

10.5.3 System Settings-Paper Tray Settings

A. Auto Tray Selection Settings

(1) Use

- To set the tray for automatic selection when APS is being set.
- To establish the priority for switching the Tray when ATS is being set.

(2) Procedure

- Select the tray on the [Auto Tray Select] screen.
- Set the priority on the [Tray Priority] screen.

B. Auto Tray Switch ON/OFF

(1) Use

- To set whether to automatically switch to another tray with same size paper when the paper feed tray runs out of paper during printing.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Restrict.

Allow “Restrict”

C. No Matching Paper in Tray Setting

(1) Use

- To set whether to switch to another tray automatically when the specified tray runs out of paper during printing.
  Stop Printing (Tray Fixed) : It stops printing when the specified tray runs out of paper.
  Switch Trays (Tray Priority): To switch to another tray with the specified paper and print when the tray is out of paper

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Stop Printing (Tray Fixed).

“Stop Printing (Tray Fixed)” Switch Trays (Tray Priority)

D. Print Lists

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device or the vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  (It will be displayed when the key counter is mounted.)
- It will not be displayed when the authentication device 1 is set to "Set" by the following setting.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

(1) Use

- To set the paper feed tray for output the list for the meter count or the unit check.
- It sets the simplex/duplex printing of the output for the sales counter or the unit check list.

(2) Procedure

<Paper tray>

- The default setting is Tray 1.

<Simplex/Duplex>

- The default setting is 1-Sided.

10.5.4 System Settings-Auto Color Level Adjust.

A. Use

- To set the criterion level to discriminate between a colored original and a black-and-white original in the auto color mode.

B. Procedure

- Five levels are available to choose from and the default setting is 3.

Black		Standard	Full Color	
1	2	"3"	4	5

10.5.5 System Settings-Power Save Settings

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "Level 1" or "Level 2."
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Administrator Security Level]
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device 1 or the vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. Low Power Mode Settings

(1) Use

- To set the time until low power starts operating after the last key operation has been completed.
- Low power: To turn LED and LCD OFF, and lower the power consumption.

(2) Procedure

- Use the 10-key pad for setting.
- The default setting is 15 min.

"15 min." (10 to 240)

B. Sleep Mode Settings

(1) Use

- To set the time until sleep mode starts operating after the last key operation has been completed.
- Turn all lines OFF except 5 V line for control.
- 2 "OFF" will only be displayed when [Sleep ON/OFF Choice Setting] in Service Mode is set.

(2) Procedure

- Use the 10-key pad for setting.
- The default setting is 30 min.

"30 min." (15 to 240) / OFF

10.5.6 System Settings-Output Settings

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "Level 2."
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Administrator Security Levels]
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device or the vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  (It will be displayed when the key counter is mounted.)

A. Print/Fax Output Settings

(1) Use

- To set the timing for printing for the PC print job or fax received.
  Batch Print : Starts printing when all data are received
  Page Print : Starts printing every time data for each page are received

(2) Procedure

<Printer>

- The default setting is Page Print.

<Fax>

- The default setting is Batch Print.

NOTE

- **[FAX] will be displayed only when the optional fax kit (FK-502) is mounted.**

B. Output Tray Setting

- It will be displayed when the optional finisher FS-527 or the job separator JS-505 is mounted.

(1) Use

- To set the priority output tray for each application (Copy print, Printer, Fax and Print Reports).

(2) Procedure

- The default settings are as follows.
  Copy : Tray 1
  Print : Tray 1
  Report Output : Tray 2
  Fax : Tray 2
- [Tray 3] will be displayed only when the job separator JS-603 is mounted to the finisher FS-527.

10.5.7 System Settings-AE Level Adjustment

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "Level 2."
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Administrator Security Levels]
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device or the vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  (It will be displayed when the key counter is mounted.)

A. Use

- To set the default setting for AE (Auto Exposure) The larger the value becomes the more emphasized the background will be.
  To make the background level foggier : Increase the setting value
  To make the background level less foggy : Decrease the setting value

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 2.

"2" (0 to 4)

10.5.8 System Settings-Auto Paper Select for Small Original

A. Use

- To make the copy setting when the paper is undetectably small, or no original is being set.
- To copy the original such as business cards with which the original detection is not effective.
  Copy on Small Size : Copies on A5 paper.
  Copy on A4/Letter : Copies on A4 or Letter (8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11) size paper.
  Prohibit Copy : Does not copy since the original size cannot be detected. paper feed tray needs to be selected prior to pressing the Start key.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Prohibit Copy.

Copy on Small Size Copy on A4/Letter "Prohibit Copy"

10.5.9 System Settings-Blank Page Print Settings

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "Level 2."
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Administrator Security Levels]
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. Use

- Select wether or not to print the stamp/composition on blank pages.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Do Not Print.

Print "Do Not Print"

10.5.10 System Settings-Page Number Print Position

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to “Level 2.”
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Administrator Security Levels]

A. Use

- Specify a page number print position when printing page numbers after configuring 2-sided print or booklet settings. Select whether to print the page numbers on a same position on all pages or on positions symmetric with respect to the stapling position.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Left & Right Bind: All the Same/Top & Bottom Bind: All the Same.
  “Left & Right Bind: All the Same/Top & Bottom Bind: All the Same”
  Left & Right Bind: Symmetrical/Top & Bottom Bind: All the Same
  Left & Right Bind: Symmetrical/Top & Bottom Bind: Symmetrical

10.5.11 System Settings-Select Keyboard

A. Use

- Select the keyboard type displayed by default in the touch panel.
- The type of keyboard to be displayed when [Local Keyboard] is selected depends on the language selected in [User Settings] → [System Settings] → [Language Selection].
- The type of keyboard corresponding to each language is shown below.

Language	Keyboard
Japanese	Standard keyboard (JIS) + Local keyboard (Japanese)
English (US) *1	Standard keyboard (US ASCII) only
English (UK) *1	Standard keyboard (US ASCII) + Local keyboard (UK)
French	Standard keyboard (US ASCII) + Local keyboard (French)
Italian	Standard keyboard (US ASCII) + Local keyboard (Italian)
German	Standard keyboard (US ASCII) + Local keyboard (German)
Spanish	Standard keyboard (US ASCII) + Local keyboard Spanish)
Simplified Chinese	Standard keyboard (JIS) + Local keyboard (Simplified Chinese)
Traditional Chinese	Standard keyboard (JIS) + Local keyboard (Traditional Chinese)
Korean	Standard keyboard (JIS) + Local keyboard (Korean)

*1 : If [Marketing Area] is set to Europe and [Language Selection] is set to English, English (UK) takes effect. If another marketing area and English are selected, English (US) takes effect.

B. Procedure

- The language options depend on the marketing area selected in [Marketing Area] available from [System 1] under Service Mode.
  See P.430

Standard Keyboard Local keyboard

10.5.12 Custom Display Settings-Copier Settings

A. Default Tab

(1) Use

- Selects a default tab display in the copy mode.
  Basic : Normal basic screen
  Quick Copy : This screen displays all options that can be selected for Paper, Zoom, and Duplex/Combine functions.
  For color functions, all selectable options can be displayed on the screen.
  The normal [Basic] screen is also displayed as another tab on the screen.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Basic.

"Basic" Quick Copy

B. Shortcut Key 1/2

(1) Use

- Selects whether to use the shortcut key.
- Adds frequently used shortcut keys of auxiliary functions to the basic screen.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

- When this setting is set to ON, select auxiliary functions to get their shortcut keys displayed on the screen.

C. Quick Settings 1, 2, 3, 4

- It will be displayed in bizhub C652/C552 machines where the firmware version is function enhancement 1 or later and in all bizhub C452 machines.

(1) Use

- Allows you to register setting conditions for frequently used copy functions and place them on the basic settings screen.
- The registered setting condition can be invoked by only pressing the corresponding easy setting key.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

- When this setting is set to ON, select the copy functions you wish to register.

△2 D. Default Tab Density Settings

(1) Use

- Specify whether to display the copy density setting in the basic settings screen. If [ON] is selected, you can press [Dark] or [Light] in the basic settings screen to adjust the copy density.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

- If [ON] is selected, [Quick Settings 3] and [Quick Settings 4] cannot be specified.

10.5.13 Custom Display Settings-Scan/Fax Settings

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device 1 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. Default Tab

(1) Use

- To set the basic screen display in scan/fax mode.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Address Book.

Address Search (LDAP) Job History "Address Book" Direct Input

B. Program Default

(1) Use

- To set the default display for the program screen during scan/fax mode.
- To keep the default display on the program screen which frequently changes during scan/fax mode

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is PAGE 1.

Temporary One-Touch/ "PAGE1" to PAGE27

C. Address Book Index Default

(1) Use

- To set the default display for the address book screen during scan/fax mode.
- To keep the default display instead of search string on the address book which frequently changes during scan/fax mode.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Favorite.

"Favorite" /ABC to WXYZ / etc

D. Shortcut Key 1/2

- [Shortcut Key 2] is not displayed when the optional image controller (IC-412) is installed.

(1) Use

- Selects whether to use the shortcut key.
- Adds frequently used shortcut keys of auxiliary functions to the basic screen.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

- When this setting is set to ON, select auxiliary functions to get their shortcut keys displayed on the screen.

E. Default Address Book

(1) Use

- Sets a default screen display for the scan/fax mode where the address book is set to be displayed.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Index.

"Index" Address Type

F. Default Address Type

(1) Use

- When the Default Address Book setting is set to "Address Type", select an address type that is displayed as the default in the "Address Book" tab.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Group.

Fax / E-Mail / Box / I-Fax / IP Ad. Fax / PC(SMB) / FTP / WebDAV / "Group"

10.5.14 Custom Display Settings-User Box Settings

A. Default Tab

(1) Use

- Selects a default tab display in the user box mode.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Public.

"Public" Personal System Group

B. Shortcut Key 1/2

- [Shortcut Key 2] is not displayed when the optional image controller (IC-412) is installed.

(1) Use

- Selects whether to use the shortcut key.
- Adds the shortcut keys of frequently used user box functions to the basic screen.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

- When this setting is set to ON, select auxiliary functions to get their shortcut keys displayed on the screen.

10.5.15 Custom Display Settings-Copy Screen

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that key counter, vendor, or authentication device 1 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  However, this menu is available when the key counter is installed and [The next job reservation] is set to License.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. Copy Operating Screen

(1) Use

- To set the display on the control panel screen during printing.
  Yes : The screen shows that the printing is being carried out. The job can be reserved with [Program Next Job].
  No : The screen does not indicate the printing being carried out. The normal copy setting screen will be displayed. The copy reservation is available.

(2)

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

10.5.16 Custom Display Settings-Fax Active Screen

- It will be displayed only when the optional fax kit (FK-502) is mounted.
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that key counter, vendor, or authentication device 1 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. TX Display

(1) Use

- To set the screen display for the control panel when transmitting fax.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

B. RX Display

(1) Use

- To set the screen display on the control panel when receiving fax.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

10.5.17 Custom Display Settings-Color Selection Settings

A. Use

- Specifies a color that highlights a selection on the control panel.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Green.

"Green" Blue Yellow Pumpkin

10.5.18 Custom Display Settings-Left Panel Display Default

A. Use

- Specifies an item that is shown as a default on the left panel display.

  Job List (List Display) : Displays a list of jobs that are both being printed and waiting to be printed.
  Job List (Status Display) : Displays the status of jobs that are being processed.
  Check Job Settings : Displays the setting of the copy job that is being printed.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Job List.

"Job List" Check Job Settings

10.5.19 Custom Display Settings-Search Option Settings

A. Uppercase and Lowercase Letters

(1) Use

- Select whether or not to differentiate between upper case and lowercase letters.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Differentiate.

"Differentiate" Do Not Differentiate

B. Search Option Screen

(1) Use

- Select whether or not to display [Uppercase and Lowercase Letters] setting in the advanced search.
- Displaying the search option screen allows changing the search criteria for an individual search.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Off.

On "Off"

10.5.20 Copier Settings-Auto Booklet ON when Fold & Staple

- It will be displayed only when the optional finisher is mounted.

A. Use

- To set whether to set the auto booklet when fold & staple is selected.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Auto Select Booklet.

"Auto Select Booklet" OFF

10.5.21 Copier Settings-Auto Zoom for Combine/Booklet

A. Use

- To set whether to select the appropriate magnification when combine or booklet is selected during auto paper select.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Auto Display Zoom Ratio.

"Auto Display Zoom Ratio" OFF

10.5.22 Copier Settings-Auto Sort/Group Selection

A. Use

- Selects whether to use the auto sort/group selection function when a job has output of two or more sheets.

  Yes : Automatically disables the Auto sort/group selection when a sheet of original is placed on the ADF and the start key is pressed. Automatically enables the Auto sort/group selection when two or more sheets of originals are placed on the ADF and the start key is pressed.

  No : Disable the Auto sort/group selection.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Yes.

"Yes" No

10.5.23 Copier Settings-Default Copy Settings

- This menu is unavailable if user authentication is not made while either of authentication devices is set to Set in the [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice].
- This menu is not available when the key counter is set or when a warning appears to inform that the vendor's main power switch needs to be checked or coins (a card) are not inserted under the condition where the vendor is set to Set in the [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice].

A. Use

- To make default settings for the copy mode.

* The machine is initialized at the following timings:

- The main power switch is turned ON.
- Panel is reset.
- In an Interrupt mode.
- Auto Reset
- The password entry screen for account track is changed.

B. Procedure

<Current Setting>

- The settings made on the control panel before entering the setting menu screens are registered as the default settings of copy functions.

<Factory Default>

- The settings made at the time of shipment from the factory are registered as the default settings of copy functions.

10.5.24 Copier Settings-Default Enlarge Display Settings

- Displayed only when you select [Utility/Counter] → [User Settings] → [Copier Settings] in the enlarge display mode.

A. Use

- To make default settings for the enlarge display mode.

* The machine is initialized at the following timings:
- The main power switch is turned ON.
- Panel is reset.
- In an Interrupt mode.
- Auto Reset
- The password entry screen for account track is changed.

B. Procedure

<Current Setting>

- The settings made on the control panel before entering the setting menu screens are registered as the default settings of copy functions.

<Factory Default>

- The settings made at the time of shipment from the factory are registered as the default settings of copy functions.

10.5.25 Copier Settings-When AMS Direction is Incorrect

A. Use

- To set whether to print when the original is set in different direction from the set paper during auto zoom select.
  Print : To print according to the selected direction and size of paper
  Delete Job : To display alarm and cancel the job

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Print.

"Print" Delete Job

10.5.26 Copier Settings-Separate Scan Output Method

A. Use

- To set the output mode at Separate Scan setting.
  Page Print : Print consecutively during the read operation.
  Batch print : Print all at once after reading all data.
  Copy setting can be changed after the read operation.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Page Print.

"Page Print" Batch Print

10.5.27 Copier Settings-Enlargement Rotation

A. Use

- Sets whether to rotate images of which length is more than 297 mm in the main scan direction (in the horizontal direction on the ADF or the Original glass) in the copying process.
  - Allow : Makes an enlargement rotation only when black is selected for the color setting.
  - Restrict : Disables an enlargement rotation regardless of the color setting.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Restrict.

Allow "Restrict"

10.5.28 Copier Settings-Auto Zoom (Platen)

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "Level 1" or "Level 2." [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Administrator Security Levels]

A. Use

- To set whether to function the auto magnification when the feed tray is selected with document set on the original glass (excepting at automatic paper selection mode.)

B. Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

10.5.29 Copier Settings-Auto Zoom (ADF)

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "Level 1" or "Level 2". [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Administrator Security Levels]

A. Use

- To set whether to function the auto magnification when the feed tray is selected with document set on the ADF (excepting at automatic paper selection mode.)

B. Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

10.5.30 Copier Settings-Specify Default Tray when APS Off

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "Level 1" or "Level 2." [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Administrator Security Levels]

A. Use

- To set the tray to be used when APS is cancelled.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Tray (Tray 1) Before APS OFF.

"Tray Before APS OFF" Default Tray

10.5.31 Copier Settings-Select Tray for Insert Sheet

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to “Level 1” or “Level 2.”
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Administrator Security Levels]

A. Use

- To select the default setting of the tray for cover sheet paper.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Tray 2.

2 10.5.32 Copier Settings-Half-Fold Specification

- It will be displayed only when the optional saddle stitcher SD-509 is installed in the finisher FS-527.

A. Use

- Specify whether to apply Half-Fold together for all pages or for each page when handling a job containing multiple pages.
  When Booklet is selected simultaneously with Half-Fold, all pages are half-folded together even if [One Sheet at a Time] is selected.
  If the number of original pages exceeds the folding capacity of this machine, the “Fold” function setting is cancelled automatically, and the sheets are printed without being folded.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Multiple Sheets.

One Sheet at a Time	“Multiple Sheets”

10.5.33 Copier Settings-Print Jobs During Copy Operation

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to “Level 2.”
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Administrator Security Levels]

A. Use

- To set whether to accept the printing job for print data or fax data during copy operation.
  Accept : Receives the print data or fax data to print.
  Receive Only : Print data or fax data will be printed when the copy operation is finished.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Accept.

“Accept”	Receive Only

10.5.34 Copier Settings-Automatic Image Rotation

- [It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to “Level 1” or “Level 2.”
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Administrator Security Levels]

A. Use

- Sets whether to automatically rotate images to print if the original and specified paper directions are not consistent with each other.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

“ON”	OFF

10.5.35 Copier Settings-Finishing Program

A. Use

- Configure whether to display the Finishing Program button in the basic settings screen. To display the button, register the contents of the finishing program. Register frequently used finishing functions so that you can set them at once by using the button that appears in the basic settings screen.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

- When selecting "ON," select the contents to be registered in the finishing program.

10.5.36 Copier Settings-Card Shot Settings

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "Level 2."
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Administrator Security Levels]

A. Layout

(1) Use

- To set the initial copy layout setting in card shot mode.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Top/Bottom.

"Top/Bottom" Left/Right (Top Half) Left/Right

B. Zoom

(1) Use

- To set the initial zoom setting in card shot mode.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Full Size.

"Full Size" x 1.0

C. Store Original Size

(1) Use

- To pre-register original sizes that are used in card shot mode.

(2) Procedure

- Enter an original size, name it, and register the data.

10.5.37 Scan/Fax Settings-JPEG Compression Level

A. Use

- To set the JPEG compression method when scanning with JPEG while in scan/fax mode.

High Quality	: Lowers the compression rate and puts priority in quality while scanning.
Standard	: Compression rate and quality are normally balanced while scanning.
High Compression	: Makes the compression rate higher and puts priority in lowering the data volume while scanning.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Standard.

High Quality "Standard" High Compression

10.5.38 Scan/Fax Settings-Black Compression Level

A. Use

- To set the black compression method for scanning in the black mode while in scan/fax mode.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is MMR.

MH "MMR"

10.5.39 Scan/Fax Settings-TWAIN Lock Time

- It will not be displayed when the optional image controller IC-412 is mounted.

A. Use

- To set the period of time for unlocking the operation panel while in TWAIN scanning.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 120 sec.

"120 sec." (30 to 300 sec.)

10.5.40 Scan/Fax Settings-Default Scan/Fax Settings

- This menu is unavailable if user authentication is not made while either of authentication devices is set to set in the [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice].
- This menu is not available when the key counter is set or when a warning appears to inform that the vendor's main power switch needs to be checked or coins (a card) are not inserted under the condition where the vendor is set to Set in the [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice].

A. Use

- To make default settings for the fax/scan mode.

* The machine is initialized at the following timings:

- The main power switch is turned ON.
- Panel is reset.
- In an Interrupt mode.
- Auto Reset
- The password entry screen for account track is changed.

B. Procedure

<Current Setting>

- The settings made on the control panel before entering the setting menu screens are registered as the default settings of fax/scan functions.

<Factory Default>

- The settings made at the time of shipment from the factory are registered as the default settings of fax/scan functions.

10.5.41 Scan/Fax Settings-Default Enlarge Display Settings

- Displayed only when you select [Utility/Counter] → [User Settings] → [Scan/Fax Settings] in the enlarge display mode.

A. Use

- To make default settings for the enlarge display mode.

* The machine is initialized at the following timings:

- The main power switch is turned ON.
- Panel is reset.
- In an Interrupt mode.
- Auto Reset
- The password entry screen for account track is changed.

B. Procedure

<Current Setting>

- The settings made on the control panel before entering the setting menu screens are registered as the default settings of fax/scan functions.

<Factory Default>

- The settings made at the time of shipment from the factory are registered as the default settings of fax/scan functions.

10.5.42 Scan/Fax Settings-Compact PDF/XPS Compression Level

A. Use

- Selects a compression method applied to scanned data that is produced with the use of Compact PDF/XPS in the scan/fax mode.

High Quality	: Lowers the compression rate and puts priority in quality while scanning.
Standard	: Compression rate and quality are normally balanced while scanning.
High Compression	: Makes the compression rate higher and puts priority in lowering the data volume while scanning.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Standard.

High Quality “Standard” High Compression

10.5.43 Scan/Fax Settings-Color TIFF Type

A. Use

- Select the compression level used for saving TIFF format data in color.
  TIFF (TTN2) : Scan in TTN2.
  TIFF (modified TAG) : Scan in modified TAG.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is TIFF (TTN2).

"TIFF (TTN2)" TIFF (modified TAG)

10.5.44 Scan/Fax Settings-OCR Operation Setting

- It will be displayed only when the optional i-Option (LK-105) is activated.

A. Use

- To set the method of OCR operation where a searchable PDF file is created.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Prioritize Quality.

"Prioritize Quality" Prioritize Speed

10.5.45 Scan/Fax Settings-Graphic Outlining

A. Use

- To set the precision of outline conversion where outline PDFs are created.
- To set the processing level where scanned document is divided into text areas and image areas and the text is converted to outlines.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

"OFF" LOW MIDDLE HIGH

10.5.46 Printer Settings-Basic Settings

A. PDL Setting

(1) Use

- To set the PDL (Page Description Language) for PC printing.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Auto.

"Auto" PCL PS

B. Number of Copies

(1) Use

- To set the number to be copied when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.
- To use when the number cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing from Windows DOS, etc.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 1.

"1" (1 to 9999)

C. Original Direction

(1) Use

- To set the default setting for the direction of the original during PC printing.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Portrait.

"Portrait"	Landscape

D. Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP

(1) Use

- To set whether to store the print data to HDD when receiving the next job during RIP process of the current job.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF

ON	"OFF"

E. A4/A3 ↔ LTR/LGR Auto Switch

(1) Use

- To set whether to switch between A4 and Letter (8 1/2 x 11) size paper, and A3 and Ledger (11 x 17) size paper in reading.

NOTE

- **When switching the size, the image will be printed in the same magnification.**
- **The image will not be reduced when there is image deficiency.**

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

F. Banner Sheet Setting

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to print on the banner (front cover) page.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

G. Binding Direction Adjustment

(1) Use

- Specifies the alignment between the sides of paper (binding position adjustment) in duplex printing.
- To achieve faster printing performance, select Productivity Priority. To address misalignment problems between sides of copies in the horizontal and vertical directions, select Finishing Priority.

Finishing Priority	: Able to optimize sides aligning operation as the process is performed after the machine receives all of the print data.
Productivity Priority	: Able to accelerate print speed as sides alignment proceeds together with data reception and print operation.
Control Adjustments	: Comply with the command from the printer driver and does not take the side alignment step.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Finishing Priority.

"Finishing Priority" Productivity Priority Control Adjustments

H. Line Width Adjustment

(1) Use

- To correct line width of the output data during PC print.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Thin.

"Thin" Normal Thick

I. Gray Background Text Correction

(1) Use

- Letters or lines on a gray background may look thicker than those on a non-gray background.

ON	: Makes characters and lines on a grayscale background thicker and sharpens the outlines of characters and figures.
OFF	: Makes grayscale background text correction by selecting Thin, Normal, or Thick in [Line Width Adjustment]. If selecting "ON" makes lines too thick, select "OFF."

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

J. Gray Background Text Correction (Fiery Controller)

- It will be displayed when the optional image controller IC-412 is mounted.

(1) Use

- To make thin lines and small characters on a grayscale background more visible by correcting their line width when the optional image controller IC-412 is installed.
  - ON : Makes characters and lines on a grayscale background thicker and sharpens the outlines of characters and figures.
  - OFF : Makes grayscale background text correction by selecting Thin, Normal, or Thick in [Line Width Adjustment] If selecting “ON” makes lines too thick, select “OFF.”

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

“ON” OFF

10.5.47 Printer Settings-Paper Setting

A. Paper Tray

(1) Use

- To set the paper feed tray when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.
- To use when paper feed tray cannot be specified by the printer driver when printing from Windows DOS, etc.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Auto.

B. Paper Size

(1) Use

- To set the paper size when not specified by the printer diver during printing.
- To use when the paper size cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing from Windows DOS, etc.

C. 2-Sided Print

(1) Use

- To set whether to carry out duplex print during PC printing when not specified by the printer driver.
- To use when 2-sided printing cannot be specified by the printer driver while printing by Windows DOS, etc.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

D. Binding Position

(1) Use

- To set the binding direction during duplex printing when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.
- To use when binding direction cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing by Windows DOS, etc.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Left Bind.

Top Bind “Left Bind” Right Bind

E. Staple

- It will be displayed only when the optional finisher is mounted.

(1) Use

- To set whether to staple or not when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.
- To use hen staple is not specified by the printer driver during printing by the Windows DOS, etc.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

1 Position	2 Position	"OFF"

F. Punch

- It will be displayed only when the optional finisher and punch kit are mounted.

(1) Use

- To select whether to make punch-holes or not when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.
- To use when the printer driver cannot specify punching during printing from Windows DOS, etc.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

2-Hole/3-Hole/4-Hole	"OFF"

* The number of punch holes being set is available from [Service Mode] → [Finisher].

G. Banner Paper Tray

(1) Use

- To set the feed tray for printing on the banner (front cover) page.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Auto.

10.5.48 Printer Settings-PCL Settings

A. Font Settings

(1) Use

- To set the font when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.
- To use when the printer driver cannot specify the font during printing from Windows DOS, etc.
- It can be selected from the Resident font or the download font.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Courier.

1. When selecting from the Internal font, touch [Internal], and select the one from the displayed font list.

B. Symbol Set

(1) Use

- To set the font symbol set when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.
- To use when the font symbol set cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing from Windows DOS, etc.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Roman-8 or PC8, Code Page 437.

C. Font Size

(1) Use

- To set the font size when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.
- To set the font size when it cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing from Windows DOS, etc.
- To set scalable font (: Point) and bitmap font (: Pitch) respectively.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is
  Scalable Font : 12.00 points
  Bitmap Font : 10.00 pitch

D. Line/Page

(1) Use

- To set the number of lines per page for printing the text data.

(2) Procedure

- Default setting value differs depending on the values by the following two different settings.
  [Utility/Counter] → [User Setting] → [Printer Setting] → [Basic Setting] → [Original Direction]
  [Utility/Counter] → [User Setting] → [Printer Setting] → [Paper Setting] → [Default Paper Size]

"60 or 64 lines" (5 to 128)

E. CR/LF Mapping

(1) Use

- To set the mode for replacing data when printing the text data.
  Mode 1 : CR → CR-LF LF=LF FF=FF
  Mode 2 : CR=CR LF→CR-LF FF→CR-FF
  Mode 3 : CR→CR-LF LF→CR-LF FF→CR-FF
  OFF : Does not replace

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

Mode 1 Mode 2 Mode 3 "OFF"

10.5.49 Printer Settings-PS Setting

A. Print PS Errors

(1) Use

- To set whether to print or not the error information when an error occurred during PS rasterizing.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

B. ICC Profile Settings

(1) Use

- To select a profile to be used for print jobs from a computer when a profile is not specified by printer driver.
- Possible to set a profile separately for each of the following items.
  Photo-RGB Color
  Photo-Output Profile
  Text-RGB Color
  Text-Output Profile
  Figure/Table/Graph-RGB Color
  Figure/Table/Graph-Output Profile
  Simulation Profile

(2) Procedure

- The default settings are shown below.

Photo-RGB Color	: Device Color
Photo-Output Profile	: Auto
Text-RGB Color	: Device Color
Text-Output Profile	: Auto
Figure/Table/Graph-RGB Color	: Device Color
Figure/Table/Graph-Output Profile	: Auto
Simulation Profile	: None

C. Auto Trapping

(1) Use

- Select this option to superimpose neighboring colors to print so as to prevent white space being generated around a picture.
  ON : Adjacent colors are overprinted. If white lines appear at borders of colors on a graph or figure, select "ON."
  OFF : The data is printed as is without being trap-processed.

NOTE

- **If color-dulling results at the border of colors when "ON" is selected, change it to "OFF."**
- **Trapping process is sometimes specifiable with the application. When the trapping process is specified in the application, select "OFF" on the machine side.**

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

D. Black Overprint

(1) Use

- Select this option to print with no white space around black characters or figures.

  Text/Figure : Adjacent portion between a text and figure is overprinted with black. Use this setting when a white line appears around the black portion in a graph or figure.

  Text : Black is overprinted on the adjacent colors in the text portion. Use this setting when a white line appears around the text.

  OFF : The data is printed as is without overprinting with black.

NOTE

- **If color-dulling results around the black portion when "ON" is selected, change it to "OFF."**
- **The black overprinting process is sometimes specifiable with the application. When the trapping process is specified in the application, select "OFF" on the machine side.**

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

Text/Figure	Text	"OFF"

10.5.50 Printer Settings-XPS Settings

A. Verify XPS Digital Signature

(1) Use

- Selects whether to verify digital signatures attached to XPS (XML Paper Specification) files when printing the files.
- When digital signature verification is selected, files with invalid digital signatures are not printed.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

10.5.51 Printer Settings-Print Reports

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device 1 or vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  (It will be displayed when the key counter is mounted.)

A. Use

- To output the report or demo page concerning the print setting.
- To check the setting concerning the printer.
  The types of report available for output are as follows.
  Configuration Page : The list of printer setting will be output.
  Demo Page : The test page will be output.
  PCL Font List : PCL font list will be output.
  PS Font List : PS font list will be output.

B. Procedure

1. Touch [User Setting] → [Printer Setting] → [Print Reports].
2. Select the report to be output.
3. Select the feed tray.
4. Select simplex or duplex print, and touch the Start key.

10.5.52 Printer Settings-TIFF Image Paper Setting

A. Use

- Select this option to configure how to determine the paper size when directly printing TIFF or JPEG image data.
  Auto : Select this option to calculate the size of the image based on its resolution and the number of pixels to print the image on paper that fits the image size.
  Select this option to print images on paper of the same size as the image.
  Priority Paper Size : Select this option to print on paper of the priority paper size specified on the machine. If the image size is larger than the paper size, it is automatically reduced.

NOTE

- **When "Auto" is selected and paper larger than the image size is not in the paper trays, paper size error occurs.**

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Auto.

"Auto" Priority Paper Size

10.5.53 Change Password

- When conducting user authentication (MFP only), it will be displayed only when the authentication is complete.
- This menu is available only when box administrator authentication is established during user authentication or account track.

A. Use

- To modify the password used for the user authentication.

B. Procedure

- Enter the user authentication password with the keys on the control panel.

Current Password : Enter the user authentication password currently used.
New Password : Enter the new user authentication password to be used.
Retype Password : Enter the new user authentication password again.

NOTE

- **When [Password Rules] which can be displayed by the following setting is set to "ON", password using the single letter or the password same with the previous one, less than 8-digit will not be modified.**
  [Utility/Counter] → [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting]
- **When the following setting is set to "ON", entering the incorrect password three times will cause access lock. When an access lock occurred, turn the main power switch OFF, and wait for 10 seconds or more and turn main power switch ON again to enter the password again.**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode]

10.5.54 Change E-mail Address

- When conducting user authentication (MFP only), it will be displayed only when the authentication is complete.
- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "Level 2."
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Administrator Security Levels]

A. Use

- To modify the e-mail address which is registered as a user.

B. Procedure

- Enter the new e-mail address using the keys on the control panel.

10.5.55 Change Icon

- When conducting user authentication, it will be displayed only when the authentication is complete.

A. Use

- Change the icon specified as registered user information.

B. Procedure

- Select the icon and press [OK].

10.5.56 Register Authentication Settings

- It will be displayed when user authentication (MFP) is completed and the following is met; [Biometric/IC Card Info. Registration] is set to "Allow" in [Utility/Counter] → [Administrator Settings] → [System Settings] → [Restrict User Access] → [Restrict Access to Job Settings].

A. Use

- To enable users to register or delete their own biometric/IC card information.

10.5.57 Registered Application Setting-Default Application Selection

- It will be displayed only when the intermediate authentication server is used for user authentication and user authentication is completed.
  However, it cannot be displayed depending on the setting of the application side.

A. Use

- For each user, set the application that is started just after the intermediate authentication.

B. Procedure

- As the applications registered in MFP appear, select an application you wish to set as the one to be started at the beginning, and touch [OK].

10.5.58 Cellular Phone/PDA Setting-Link File Error Notification

- It will be displayed only when the optional local interface kit EK-605 is mounted.

A. Use

- To set whether to print a job where a link error occurs when you are trying to print a web page and its links (page or file) from a cellular phone or PDA.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Yes.

"Yes" No

10.5.59 Cellular Phone/PDA Setting-Proxy Server Use

- It will be displayed only when the optional local interface kit EK-605 is mounted.

A. Use

- To set whether to use a proxy server when communicating with a cellular phone or PDA.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

10.5.60 Cellular Phone/PDA Setting-Print Settings

- It will be displayed only when the optional local interface kit EK-605 is mounted.

A. Use

- To set different print settings used when printing from a cell phone or PDA.

B. Procedure

- The following items can be set.
  Basic : 1-sided/2-sided, Full Color/Black, Paper, Finishing
  Application : Page Margin, Stamp/Composition

10.6 Administrator Settings

- The Administrator Settings will be available by entering the administrator password (8 digits) set by the Administrator Settings or Service Mode.
  (The administrator password is initially set to "12345678.")

NOTE

- **When the following setting is set to "ON", entering the incorrect administrator password three times will cause access lock.**
  The access lock is released after the lapse of a predetermined period of time after the main power switch is turned OFF and then ON more than 10 seconds later.
  The access lock can be released by touching keys as follows.
  [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [Administrator unlocking]

10.6.1 System Settings-Power Save Settings

A. Low Power Mode Settings

(1) Use

- To set the time until low power starts operating after the last key operation has been completed.
  Low power: To turn LED and LCD OFF, and lower the power consumption.

(2) Procedure

- Use the 10-key pad for setting.
- The default setting is 15 min.

"15 min." (10 to 240)

B. Sleep Mode Settings

(1) Use

- To set the time until sleep mode starts operating after the last key operation has been completed.
- Turn all lines OFF except 5 V line for control.
- 2 "OFF" will only be displayed when [Sleep ON/OFF Choice Setting] in Service Mode is set.

NOTE

- **The sleep mode will begin in 48 hours even if it sets it to "OFF."**

(2) Procedure

- Use the 10-key pad for setting.
- The default setting is 30 min.

"30 min." (15 to 240) / OFF

C. Power Save Key

(1) Use

- To set the type of the power save mode which starts by pressing the Power Save key.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Low Power.

"Low Power" Sleep

D. Enter Power Save Mode

(1) Use

- To set whether to immediately switch to the power save mode after printing in case of receiving the fax/PC print during power save mode.
  Normal : Switches to the power save mode according to the normal power save mode after the printing.
  Immediately : Switches to the power save mode immediately after the printing.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Immediately.

Normal	"Immediately"

10.6.2 System Settings-Output Settings

A. Print/Fax Output Settings

(1) Use

- To set the timing for printing for the PC print job or fax received.
  Batch Print : Starts printing when all data are received
  Page Print : Starts printing every time data for each page are received

(2) Procedure

<Printer>

- The default setting is Page Print.

<Fax>

- The default setting is Batch Print.

NOTE

- **[FAX] will be displayed only when the optional fax kit (FK-502) is mounted.**

B. Output Tray Settings

- It will be displayed when the optional finisher FS-527 or the job separator JS-505 is mounted.

(1) Use

- To set the priority output tray for each application (Copy print, Printer, Fax and Print Reports).

(2) Procedure

- The default settings are as follows.
  Copy : Tray 1
  Print : Tray 1
  Report Output : Tray 2
  Fax : Tray 2

- [Tray 3] will be displayed only when the job separator JS-603 is mounted to the finisher FS-527.

C. Shift Output Each Job

- It will be displayed when the optional finisher FS-527/529 or the job separator JS-505 is mounted.

(1) Use

- To set whether to offset each job when paper is printed using the finisher.
- Some paper type may fail to be discharged or get deteriorated loading when large volume copies are printed using the finisher.
  This function is used to print large volume copies when finisher is mounted.
  (When this function is set to “No”, the paper is discharged without offsetting the paper to the center of the tray.)

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Yes.

“Yes” No

10.6.3 System Settings-Date/Time Settings

A. Use

- To set the date/time and the time zone to start the clock.
- This setting should be carried out for set up.

B. Procedure

- For time zone, set the time difference with the world standard time.
- Setting range for the time zone: -12:00 to +12:00 (by 30 minutes)
- When the following setting is set to “ON”, [Set Data] will be displayed. Touch [Set Data] and modify the time.
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [Detail Settings] → [Time Adjustment Setting]

10.6.4 System Settings-Daylight Saving Time

A. Use

- To set whether to set the daylight saving time.
- To set the time difference in setting the daylight saving time.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes “No”

- When setting to ON, set the time difference to move up.
  “60 min.” (1 to 150)

10.6.5 System Settings-Weekly Timer Settings

A. Weekly Timer ON/OFF Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to use or not to use the weekly timer.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

B. Time Settings

(1) Use

- To set the time to turn ON/OFF the weekly timer for each day of the week.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch the key of the day to be set.
2. Using the 10-key pad, input the ON time and the OFF time.
3. For cancelling the setting, press [Clear].

C. Date Settings

(1) Use

- To select the date or the day of the week for the weekly timer to function.

(2) Procedure

1. Select the Year/Month with [+] / [-] keys.
2. For setting by the date, touch the appropriate key of the day.
3. For setting by the day of the week, touch the appropriate key of the week by [Daily Setting].
4. Check to make sure that the set key of the day is highlighted, and touch [OK].

D. Select Time for Power Save

(1) Use

- To set the time to turn power OFF/ON when the weekly timer is set and the power is ON.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

<Set Time for Power Save>

- Using the 10-key pad, input the time to turn OFF and to turn back ON again.

E. Password for Non-Business Hours

(1) Use

- To set whether to input the password before using when the weekly timer is set.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

- When setting to Yes, enter the password (eight digits).

10.6.6 System Settings-Restrict User Access

A. Copy Program Lock Settings

(1) Use

- To set the prohibition for modifying the registered copy program.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch the key for the appropriate copy program.
2. Touch [OK].

B. Delete Saved Copy Program

(1) Use

- To delete the registered program job.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch the appropriate program job.
2. Touch [Delete].
3. Touch [Yes] on the check screen to delete the program job.

C. Restrict Access to Job Settings

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device 1 or vendor 2 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

(1) Changing Job Priority

<Use>

- To set whether to allow or restrict the change on the print priority for the job.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Allow.

"Allow" Restrict

(2) Delete Other User Jobs

<Use>

- To set whether to allow or restrict job delete by other users when the user is authenticated.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Restrict.

Allow "Restrict"

(3) Registering and Changing Addresses

<Use>

- To set whether to allow or restrict the change of the registered address.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Allow.

"Allow" Restrict

NOTE

- **[Allow] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON".**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode]

(4) Changing Zoom Ratio

<Use>

- To set whether to allow or restrict the change on the registered magnification.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Allow.

"Allow" Restrict

(5) Change the "From" Address

<Use>

- To set whether or not to prohibit the registered from address to be changed.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Allow.

"Allow" Restrict

(6) Change Registered Overlay

<Use>

- Selects allow or restrict for the change of registered overlay.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Allow.

"Allow" Restrict

(7) Biometric/IC Card Info. Registration

<Use>

- Allow or restrict the registration or deletion of authentication information.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Allow.

"Allow" Restrict

D. Restrict Operation

(1) Restrict Broadcasting

<Use>

- To set whether or not to prohibit sending the fax to more than one address.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

10.6.7 System Settings-Expert Adjustment

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that vendor 2 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  (It will be displayed when the Key Counter is mounted or when the following setting shows that switch No.33 is set to [01] at HEX assignment.
  [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Software Switch Setting])

A. AE Level Adjustment

(1) Use

- To set the default setting for AE (Auto Exposure) the larger the value becomes the more emphasized the background will be.
  To make the background level foggier : Increase the setting value
  To make the background level less foggy : Decrease the setting value

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 2.

"2" (0 to 4)

B. Printer Adjustment

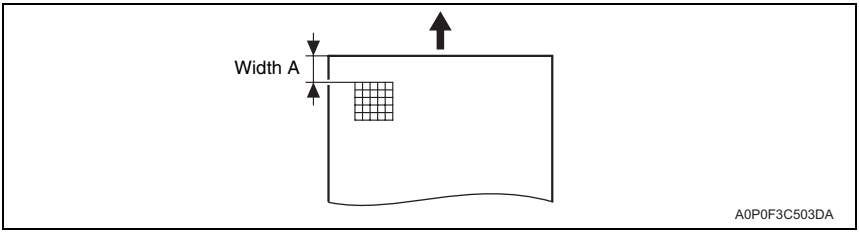
(1) Leading Edge Adjustment

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that management device 1 is mounted during the device power is OFF or no authentication is set.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
- This menu is unavailable when the key counter is not inserted while only the key counter is set to Set by [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice].

<Use>

- To vary the print start position in the sub scan direction for each of different paper types in the manual bypass tray.
- The PH unit has been replaced.
- The paper type has been changed.
- The print image deviates in the sub scan direction.
- A faint image occurs on the leading edge of the image.
- Able to make an individual adjustment for each paper type of plain paper, thick 1/1+, thick 2, thick 3, thick 4, transparencies, and envelopes.

<Procedure>



- Width A on the test pattern produced should fall within the following range.

Specifications: 4.2 ± 0.5 mm
Setting range: -3.0 mm to +3.0 mm (in 0.2 mm increments)

1. Place A3 paper on the manual bypass tray.
2. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
3. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Printer Adjustment] → [Leading Edge Adjustment].
4. Select the [Normal].
5. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
6. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
7. If width A falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If width A is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one.
   If width A is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.
8. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
9. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
10. If width A is outside the specified range, change the setting again and make a check again.
11. If width A falls within the specified range, touch [OK].
12. Following the same procedure, adjust for thick 1 to 3, OHP, and envelope.

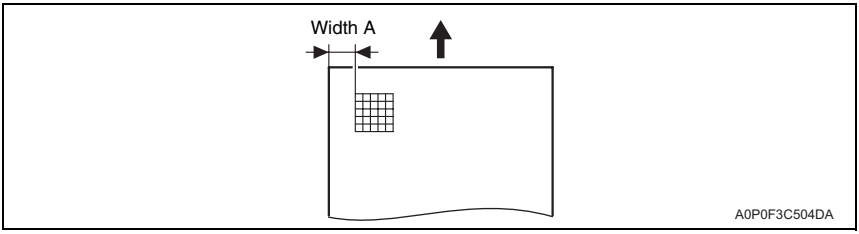
(2) Centering

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that management device 1 is mounted during the device power is OFF or no authentication is set.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
- This menu is unavailable when the key counter is not inserted while only the key counter is set to Set by [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice].

<Use>

- To vary the print start position in the main scan direction for each paper source.
- The PH unit has been replaced.
- A paper feed unit has been added.
- The print image deviates in the main scan direction.

<Procedure>



- Width A on the test print produced should fall within the following range.

Specifications: 3.0 ± 0.5 mm
Setting range: -3.0 mm to +3.0 mm (in 0.2 mm increments)

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Printer Adjustment] → [Centering].
3. Select the paper source to be adjusted.
4. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
5. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
6. If width A falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If width A is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one.
   If width A is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.
7. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
8. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
9. If width A is outside the specified range, change the setting again and make a check again.
10. If width A falls within the specified range, touch [OK].
11. Following the same procedure, adjust for all other paper sources.
    (Use A4 or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ × 11 plain paper for the bypass.)

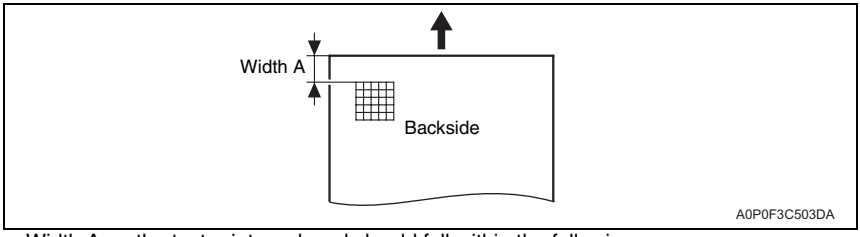
(3) Leading Edge Adjustment (Duplex Side 2)

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that management device 1 is mounted during the device power is OFF or no authentication is set.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
- This menu is unavailable when the key counter is not inserted while only the key counter is set to Set by [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice].

<Use>

- Makes an adjustment by changing the image write start position in the sub scan direction on the 2nd side of duplex printing for individual types of paper.
- When the 2nd side image on paper fed from the tray is shifted in the sub scan direction.
- Able to make an individual adjustment for each paper type of plain paper, thick 1/1+, thick 2 and thick 3.

<Procedure>



- Width A on the test print produced should fall within the following range.
- For measurement, use the image produced on the backside of the test print.

Specifications: 4.2 ± 0.5 mm
Setting range: -3.0 mm to +3.0 mm (in 0.2 mm increments)

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Printer Adjustment] → [Leading Edge Adjustment (Duplex side 2)].
3. Select the [Normal].
4. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
5. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
6. If width A falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If width A is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one.
   If width A is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.
7. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
8. Check the dimension of width A on the test print
9. If width A is outside the specified range, change the setting again and make a check again.
10. If width A falls within the specified range, touch [OK].
11. Following the same procedure, adjust for thick 1 to 3.

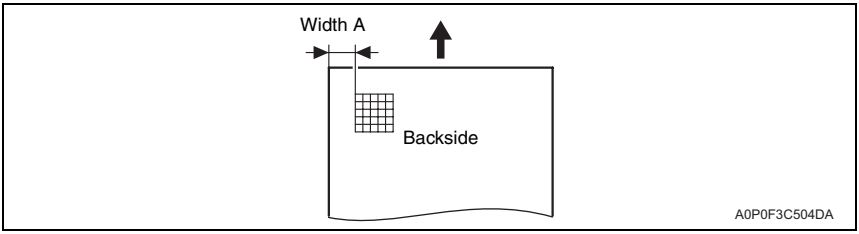
(4) Centering (Duplex 2nd Side)

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that management device 1 is mounted during the device power is OFF or no authentication is set.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
- This menu is unavailable when the key counter is not inserted while only the key counter is set to Set by [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice].

<Use>

- To vary the print start position in the main scan direction for each paper source in the 2-sided mode.
- The image on the backside of the 2-sided copy deviates in the main scan direction.

<Procedure>



- Width A on the test print produced should fall within the following range.
- For measurement, use the image produced on the backside of the test print.

Specifications: 3.0 ± 0.5 mm
Setting range: -3.0 mm to +3.0 mm (in 0.2 mm increments)

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Printer Adjustment] → [Centering (Duplex 2nd Side)].
3. Select the paper source to be adjusted.
4. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
5. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
6. If width A falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If width A is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one.
   If width A is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.
7. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
8. Check the dimension of width A on the test print on the backside of the copy.
9. If width A is outside the specified range, change the setting again and make a check again.
10. If width A falls within the specified range, touch [OK].
11. Following the same procedure, adjust for all other paper sources.
    (Use A4 or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ × 11 plain paper for the manual bypass tray.)

(5) Erase Leading Edge

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to “Level 2”.
  [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [Administrator Feature Level]

<Use>

- To set the leading edge erase amount of the paper.
- To change the width of the area not printed along the leading edge of the paper.
- To make this setting independently for Front and Back sides.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is “4 mm”.

“4 mm” 5 mm 7 mm

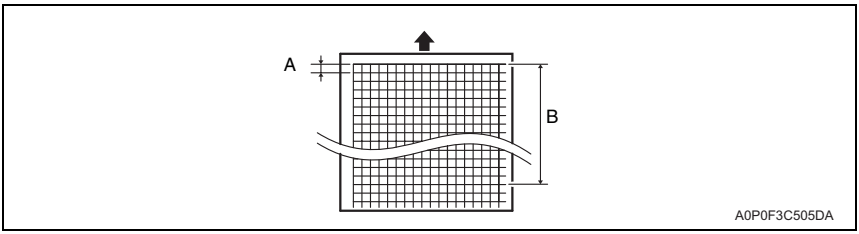
(6) Vertical Adjustment

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "Level 2."
  [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [Administrator Feature Level]

<Use>

- To synchronize the paper transport speed with the image writing speed.
- The printed image on the copy distorts (stretched, shrunk).
- When the printed image on the copy is stretched in the sub scan direction.
- Able to make an individual adjustment for each paper type of plain paper, thick 1/1+, thick 2, thick 3 and thick 4.

<Procedure>



- Width A and width B on the test pattern produced should fall within the following ranges.
  Width A: equivalent to one grid
  Width B: equivalent to 48 grids

Specifications
A: 7.9 to 8.3
B: 389.1 to 392.1

Setting Range
A, B: -7 to +7

1. Load manual bypass tray with A3 or 11 × 17 plain paper.
2. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
3. Touch these keys in this order: [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Vertical Adjustment].
4. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test pattern.
5. Check width A (equivalent to one grid) and width B (equivalent to 48 grids) on the test pattern.
6. If width of A or B falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+]/[-] keys.
   If width A or B is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one.
   If width A or B is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.
7. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test pattern again.
8. Check width A and width B on the test pattern.
9. If width A or B falls outside the specified range, change the setting value and make a check again.
10. If width A or B falls within the specified range, touch [OK].
11. Following the same procedure, adjust for [Thick 1 to 4].

(7) Media Adjustment

<Use>

- Adjust the 2nd image transfer output (ATVC) on the 1st page and the 2nd page for each paper type.
- △2 This function is provided to open [Transfer Voltage Fine Adj] → [2nd Transfer Adjust] of Service Mode up to administrator and the fine-adjusted value is reflected in the Service Mode setting.
- To use when the transfer failure at the trailing edge occurs.
- Pressing the [AUTO] key down activates the 2nd image transfer amperage upper and lower limit control. In this case, the machine uses the voltage determined by the transfer voltage control and the 2nd image transfer output fine adjustment value does not take effect.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is 0.

-8 to +7 (Step: 1)

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Expert Adjustment] → [Printer Adjustment] → [Media Adjustment].
3. Select the side of the image (1st side or 2nd side), on which the transfer failure occurs.

NOTE

- **For envelopes, OHP film and banner thick, only 1st side can be selected.**

4. Select the paper type with the transfer failure.
5. Enter the new setting from the [+] / [-] keys.
   To increase the ATVC value (in the direction of a foggier image), increase the setting value.
   To decrease the ATVC value (in the direction of a less foggy image), decrease the setting value.
6. Touch [OK] to validate the adjustment value.
7. Check the print image for any image problem.

* To automatically control the 2nd image transfer output without using the 2nd image transfer output fine adjustment value, press [Auto].

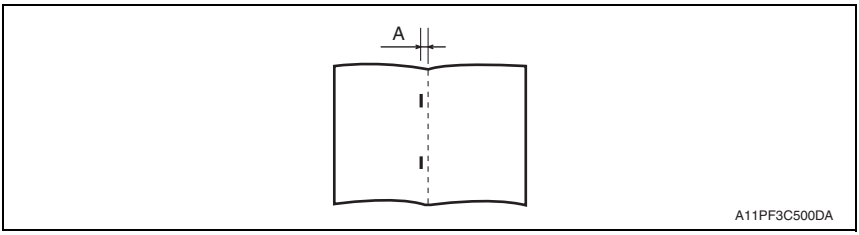
C. Finisher Adjustment

(1) Center Staple Position

<Use>

- Adjust the stapling position for each paper size when printing with the center staple function.
- Adjust the stapling position for each paper size when printing with the center staple function.

<Procedure>



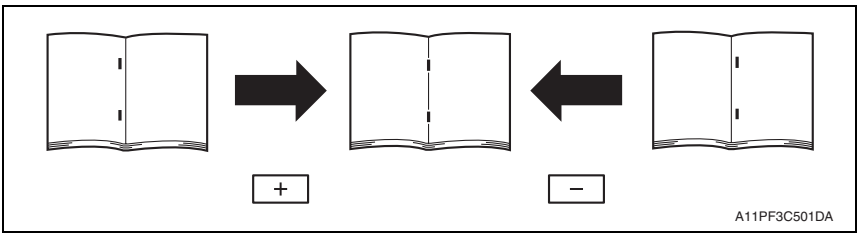
NOTE

- **After half-fold position adjustment, make this center staple position adjustment.**

1. Place five sheets of originals on the ADF.
2. Make a set of copy in the saddle stitching mode.
3. Check the amount of horizontal deviation (A) between the staple and the half fold positions on the set of copy.

Specification A: 0 ± 1.0 mm
Adjustment range: -10.0 mm to +10.0 mm (1 step: 0.1 mm)

4. If (A) is out of the specified range, make the following adjustment.
5. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
6. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Finisher Adjustment] → [Center Staple Position].
7. Touch the paper size where staple position is adjusted.
8. Look at the copy and adjust the staple position with the [+]/[-] key.



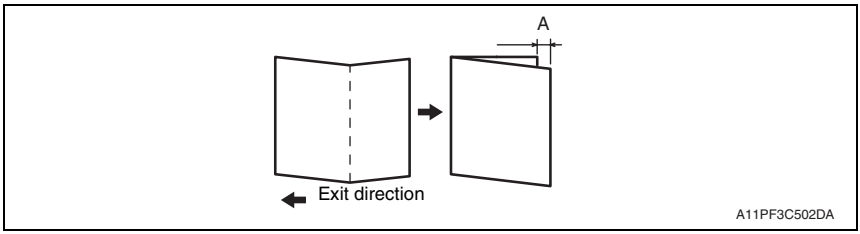
9. Touch [OK].
10. Make another set of copy sample and check the amount of deviation (A).

(2) Half-Fold Position

<Use>

- Use this adjustment to adjust the half-fold position in half-fold printing.

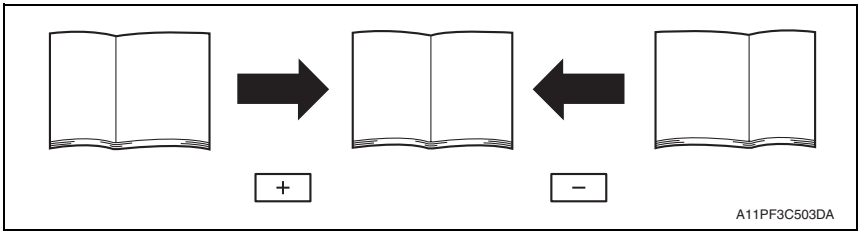
<Procedure>



1. Place two sheets of originals on the ADF.
2. Make a copy in the folding mode.
3. Fold the copies along the crease.
4. Measure the amount of deviation (A).

Specification A: 0 ± 1.0 mm
Adjustment range: -10.0 mm to +10.0 mm (1 step: 0.1 mm)

5. If (A) is out of the specified range, make the following adjustment.
6. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
7. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Finisher Adjustment] → [Half-Fold Position].
8. Touch the paper size where half-fold position is adjusted.
9. Look at the copy and adjust the half-fold position with the [+]/[-] key.



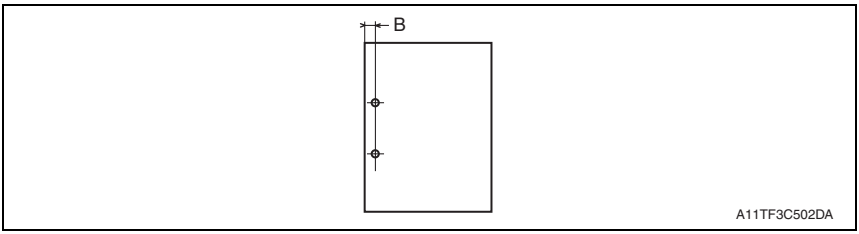
10. Touch [OK].
11. Make another set of copy sample and check the amount of deviation (A).

(3) Punch Horizontal Position Adjustment

<Use>

- To change the horizontal position of the punch holes.

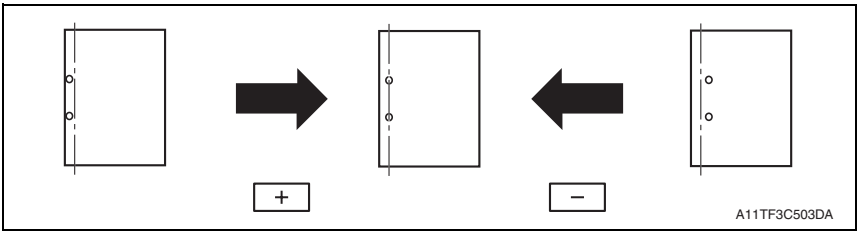
<Procedure>



1. Make a copy sample in the punch mode.
2. Make an adjustment so that the width B is within the following range.

Specification B: 9.5 mm ± 1.0 mm (2-3 hole), 11.0 mm ± 1.0 mm (2-4 hole),
10.5 mm ± 1.0 mm (SWE4 hole)
Adjustment range: -10.0 mm to +10.0 mm (1 step: 0.1 mm)

3. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
4. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Finisher Adjustment] → [Punch Horizontal Position Adjustment].
5. Touch the paper type where punch horizontal position is adjusted.
6. Look at the copy and adjust the punch horizontal position with the [+]/ [-] key.
   To make width B greater: Enter the value of [+]
   To make width a smaller: Enter the value of [-]



7. Touch [OK].
8. Make another set of copy sample and check the amount of deviation (B).

(4) Punch Regist Loop Size Adjustment

<Use>

- Adjusts the punch loop size used for paper exited from the main body.
- To address problems such as misaligned punch holes, wrinkled paper, and jam at the punch registration section.

<Procedure>

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Finisher Adjustment] → [Punch Regist Loop Size Adjustment].
3. Touch the paper size where punch regist loop size is adjusted.
4. Set the correction value using the [+]/[-] keys.
   Misaligned punched holes: Enter the value of [+]
   Wrinkled paper: Enter the value of [-]
5. Touch [OK].

(5) Paper Alignment Plate Settings

<Use>

- Fine adjusts the paper alignment plate that aligns ejected paper when FS-529 is installed.

<Procedure>

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Finisher Adjustment] → [Paper Alignment Plate Settings].
3. Select the [Paper Alignment Plate Pos.(Back)] or [Paper Alignment Plate Pos.(Front)].

The default setting is 0.0 mm.
Setting range: -10.0 mm to +10.0 mm (in 0.1 mm increments)

4. Set the correction value using the [+]/[-] keys.
5. Touch [OK].

D. Density Adjustment

(1) Thick Paper Image Density-Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black

<Use>

- To fine-adjust density of printed images of each color for thick paper and OHP transparencies. (Only black color adjustable for OHP transparencies)
- To change the density of the printed image for each color with thick paper and OHP transparencies

<Procedure>

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Density Adjustment].
3. Select a type of thick paper and a color that need to be adjusted.
4. Touch the Lighter or Darker key to correct the image density.
   Light color: Touch the Darker key.
   Dark color: Touch the Lighter key.

(2) Black Image Density

<Use>

- To fine-adjust the density of the printed image for a black print
- To vary the density of the printed image of a black print

<Procedure>

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Density Adjustment] → [Black Image Density].
3. Touch the Lighter or Darker key as necessary to correct the image density.
   If the black is light, touch the Darker key.
   If the black is dark, touch the Lighter key.

E. Image Stabilization

(1) Image Stabilization Only

<Use>

- The image stabilization sequence is carried out without clearing the historical data of image stabilization control.
- Use if an image problem persists even after [Gradation Adjustment] has been executed.
- When [Max Image Density Adj] and [Image Background Adj] of Service Mode are changed.

<Procedure>

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Image Stabilization] → [Image Stabilization Only].
3. Press the Start key to start Stabilizer.
   The Start key turns red and stays lit up red during the Stabilizer sequence.
4. Stabilizer is completed when the Start key turns blue.

(2) Initialize+Image Stabilization

<Use>

- To carry out an image stabilization sequence after the historical data of image stabilization control has been initialized.
- Use if an image problem persists even after [Gradation Adjustment] has been executed.
- Use if tone reproduction and maximum density are faulty even after image stabilization has been executed.

<Procedure>

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Image Stabilization] → [Initialize+Image Stabilization].
3. Press the Start key to start Stabilizer.
   The Start key turns red and stays lit up red during the Stabilizer sequence.
4. Stabilizer is completed when the Start key turns blue.

(3) Image Stabilization Setting

<Use>

- To change the type and timing of image stabilization.
- To provide the desirable image stabilization control that depends on customer's machine usage pattern, i.e. the ratio of color to black print.

Standard : This mode is suitable for low-volume users and reduces the number of times image stabilization is carried out when the main power switch is turned ON.
If the change of absolute humidity is detected during warm-up, normal stabilization is performed during warm-up.

Color Priority : This mode is suitable for high-volume and high ratio of color print users.
Color stabilization sequence is performed unconditionally when the main power switch and the sub power switch are turned ON.

Black & White Priority : This mode is suitable for users who use mainly black print and use less color print. It provides monochrome stabilization and reduces the number of times image stabilization is carried out when the main power switch is turned ON. If the change of absolute humidity is detected during warm-up, monochrome stabilization is performed during the warm-up and color stabilization is performed before color printing.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Standard.

"Standard" Color Priority Black & White Priority

F. Paper Separation Adjustment

(1) Use

- For duplex printing of thin paper, the paper separation position is adjusted for the first and second sides of paper.
- To adjust the balance between paper separation and image transfer performances by changing the paper separation position in duplex printing of thin paper (64 g/ m^2) in hot and humid conditions.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 0.

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Paper Separation Adjustment].
3. Select [Front] or [Back].
4. Change the setting value with [+] or [-] key.
   Priority on paper separation performance: Increase the setting value
   Priority on image transfer performance: Decrease the setting value
5. Touch [OK] to determine the adjusted value.
6. Make a print and check the image.

G. Color Registration Adjust

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that management device 1 is mounted during the device power is OFF or no authentication is set.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
- This menu is unavailable when the key counter is not inserted while only the key counter is set to Set by [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice].

(1) Color Registration Adjust (Yellow, Magenta, Cyan)

<Use>

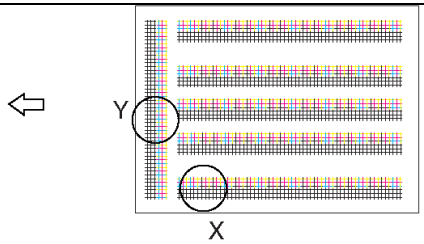
- To adjust color shift if there is any when comparing the original with copy of the plain or thick paper.
- To correct any color shift.
- Able to make an individual adjustment for each paper type of plain paper, thick 1/1+, thick 2, thick 3 and thick 4.

<Procedure>

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Color Registration Adjust].
3. Load tray 1 with A3/11x17 or A4/8 $^1/_2$ x11 normal paper.
4. Press the Start key.
5. On the test pattern produced, check for deviation between the black line and the line of each color at positions X and Y.
6. Select the color to be adjusted.
7. Using the [+] / [-] key, change the setting value as necessary. (At this time, only the line of the selected color moves.)
   If the cross deviates in the direction of A, increase the setting.
   If the cross deviates in the direction of B, decrease the setting.
8. Produce another test pattern and make sure that there is no deviation.

<Check Procedure>

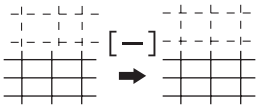
Check point X, Y



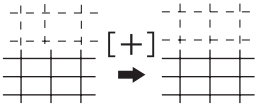
Adjustment for X direction:
Check point X

If the cross deviates in the direction of A, increase the setting.
If the cross deviates in the direction of B, decrease the setting.

Direction of A



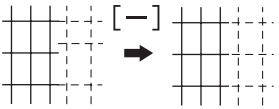
Direction of B



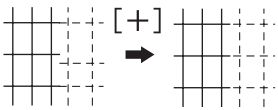
Adjustment for Y direction:
Check point Y

If the cross deviates in the direction of A, increase the setting.
If the cross deviates in the direction of B, decrease the setting.

Direction of A



Direction of B



A0P0F3C511DA

H. Gradation Adjustment

- It will not be displayed when the following setting is set to "ON."
  [Service Mode] → [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Dev. Bias Choice]
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that management device 1 is mounted during the device power is OFF or no authentication is set.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
- This menu is unavailable when the key counter is not inserted while only the key counter is set to Set by [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice].

(1) Use

- To make an automatic adjustment of gradation based on the test pattern produced and the readings taken by the scanner.
- Color reproduction performance becomes poor.
- The IU has been replaced.
- The image transfer belt unit has been replaced.

Printer (Gradation) : It gives the highest priority to gradation performance of the image as it adjusts.
Printer (Resolution) : It gives the highest priority to reproduction performance of letters and lines as it adjusts.
Copy : It gives the highest priority to increasing the number of images to be stored in the memory as it adjusts.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Stabilizer] and the Start key to perform image stabilization.

NOTE

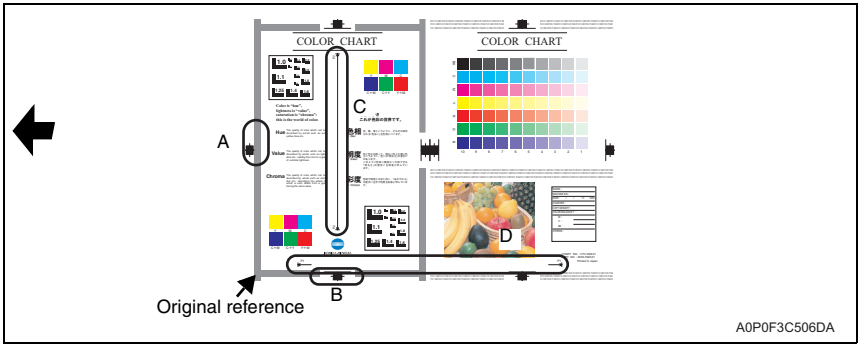
- **Before executing Gradation adjust, be sure to perform Stabilizer.**

2. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
3. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Gradation Adjustment].
4. Select the appropriate mode for the gradation adjustment.
5. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test pattern.
6. Place the test pattern produced on the original glass.
7. Place ten blank sheets of A3/11 x 17 paper on the test pattern and lower the original cover.
8. Press the Start key. (The machine will then start scanning the test pattern.)
9. Touch [OK] and repeat steps from 2 through 7 twice (a total of three times).

If the image is faulty, perform the troubleshooting procedures for image problems.

I. Scanner Area

- Use the following color chart for the adjustment of the scanner section.
- If the color chart is not available, a scale may be used instead.
- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to “Level 2.”
  [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [Administrator Feature Level]
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that management device 1 is mounted during the device power is OFF or no authentication is set.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
- This menu is unavailable when the key counter is not inserted while only the key counter is set to Set by [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice].



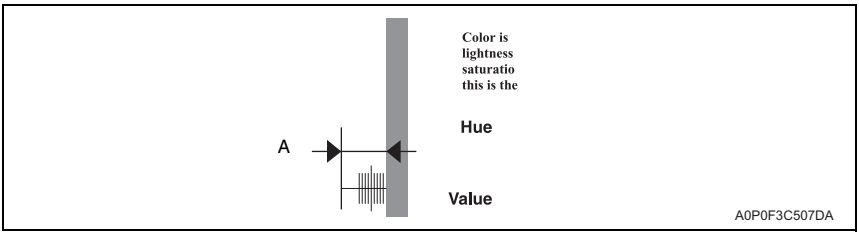
Adjustment item	Ref.
A: Scanner Adjustment: Leading Edge Adjustment	P.240
B: Scanner Adjustment: Centering	P.241
C: Horizontal Adjustment	P.242
D: Vertical Adjustment	P.243

(1) Scanner Adjustment: Leading Edge

<Use>

- To adjust variations in mounting accuracy and sensitivity of the scanner home sensor and in mounting accuracy of the original width scale by varying the scan start position in the main scan direction.
- When the original glass is replaced.
- When the original width scale is replaced.
- The scanner home sensor has been replaced.

<Procedure>



- A width on the color chart and one on the test print are measured and adjusted so that the difference of A width satisfies the specifications shown below.
- An adjustment must have been completed correctly of [Leading Edge Adjustment] of the Printer Adjustment.

Specifications
A: ± 0.5 mm

Setting range
-3.0 to +3.0 (in 0.1 mm increments)

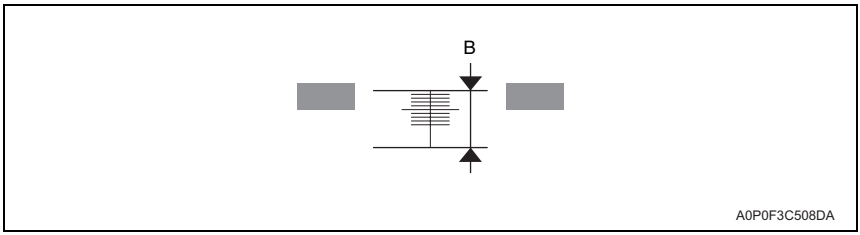
1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Scanner Adjustment] → [Scanner Adjustment: Leading Edge].
3. Position the color chart correctly so that the original reference point is aligned with the scale.
4. Press the Start key to make a copy.
5. Check point A on the image of the test print.
6. If the image falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If the copy image is less than the specified length, increase the setting value.
   If the copy image exceeds the specified length, decrease the setting value.
7. Press the Start key to make another test print.
8. Check the image on the test print to see if the specifications are met.
9. Make adjustments until the specifications are met.

(2) Scanner Adjustment: Centering

<Use>

- To adjust part-to-part variations in accuracy of scanner parts and their mounting accuracy by varying the scan start position in the main scan direction.
- When the CCD unit is replaced.
- When the original glass is replaced.
- The scanner home sensor has been replaced.

<Procedure>



- B width on the color chart and one on the test print are measured and adjusted so that the difference of B width satisfies the specifications shown below.
- An adjustment must have been completed correctly of [Leading Edge Adjustment] of the Printer Adjustment.

Specifications
B: ± 1.0 mm

Setting range
-4.0 to +4.0 (in 0.1 mm increments)

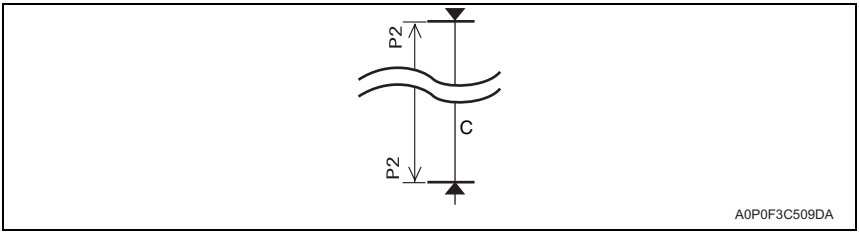
1. Call the Administrator Setting to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Scanner Adjustment] → [Scanner Adjustment: Centering].
3. Position the color chart correctly so that the original reference point is aligned with the scale.
4. Press the Start key to make a copy.
5. Check point B on the image of the test print.
6. If the image falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If the copy image is less than the specified length, increase the setting value.
   If the copy image exceeds the specified length, decrease the setting value.
7. Press the Start key to make another test print.
8. Check point B of the image on the test print to see if the specifications are met.
9. Make adjustments until the specifications are met.

(3) Horizontal Adjustment

<Use>

- To adjust the zoom ratio in the main scan direction for the scanner section.
- The CCD unit has been replaced.

<Procedure>



- Measure C width on the color chart and on the test print, and adjust the gap to be within the following specification.
- An adjustment must have been completed correctly of [Vertical Adjustment] of the printer adjustment.

Specifications
C: ± 1.0 mm

Setting range
0.990 to 1.010 (in 0.001 increments)

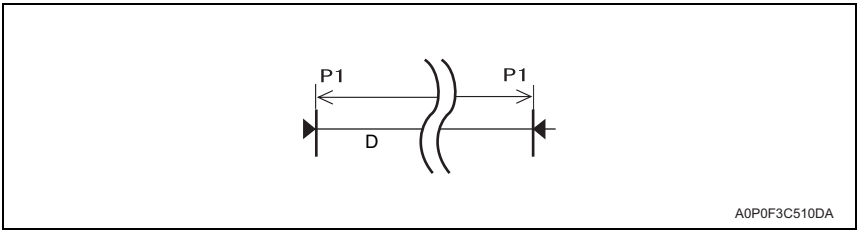
1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Scanner Adjustment] → [Horizontal Adjustment].
3. Position the color chart correctly so that the original reference point is aligned with the scale.
4. Press the Start key to make a test print.
5. Check the C width on the image of the test print.
6. If the image falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If the C width on the copy sample is less than one on color chart, increase the setting.
   If the C width on the copy sample exceeds one on color chart, decrease the setting.
7. Press the Start key to make another test print.
8. Check the image on the test print to see if the specifications are met.
9. Make adjustments until the specifications are met.

(4) Vertical Adjustment

<Use>

- To adjust the zoom ratio in the sub scan direction for the scanner section.
- The exposure unit has been replaced.
- The scanner motor has been replaced.
- The scanner drive cables have been replaced.

<Procedure>



- Measure D width on the color chart and on the test print, and adjust the gap to be within the following specification.
- An adjustment must have been completed correctly of [Vertical Adjustment] of the printer adjustment.

Specifications
D: ± 1.5 mm

Setting Range
0.990 to 1.010 (in 0.001 increments)

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Scanner Adjustment] → [Vertical Adjustment].
3. Position the color chart correctly so that the original reference point is aligned with the scale.
4. Press the Start key to make a test print.
5. Check the D width on the image of the test print.
6. If the image falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If the D width on the copy sample is less than one on color chart, increase the setting.
   If the D width on the copy sample exceeds one on color chart, decrease the setting.
7. Press the Start key to make another test print.
8. Check the image on the test print to see if the specifications are met.
9. Make adjustments until the specifications are met.

J. ADF Adjustment

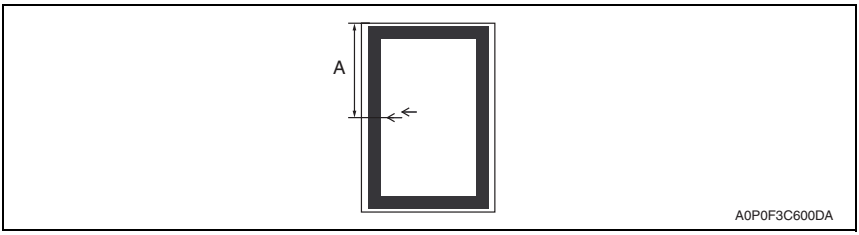
- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "Level 2."
  [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [Administrator Feature Level]

(1) Centering

<Use>

- To adjust the read position in the main scanning direction.
- When the result is Unable in the [Centering Auto Adjustment].
- When ADF has been replaced.

<Procedure>



1. Place the chart in the document feed tray (with the side having an arrow facing up).
2. Make a full size copy of the chart.
3. Check that the difference in the widths of A between the chart and the copy sample falls within the specified range.

Specification A: 0 ± 2.0 mm

△2 Adjustment range: -4.4 mm to +4.4 mm (1 step: 0.1 mm)

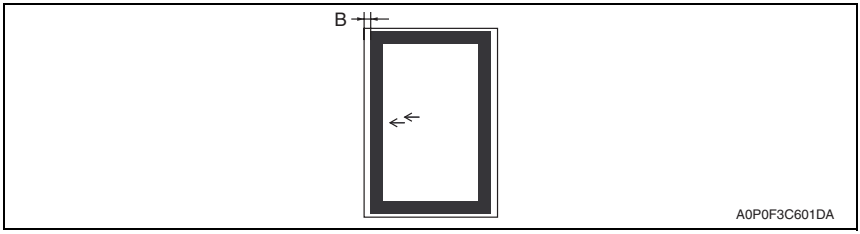
4. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
5. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [ADF Adjustment] → [Centering].
6. Look at the copy and make adjustment with the [+]/[-] key.
   If the difference in the widths of A is greater than the specifications, enter the [+] value.
   If the difference in the widths of A is smaller than the specifications, enter the [-] value.
7. Touch [OK].
8. Make a copy of the chart again and check that the difference in the widths of A falls within the specified range.

(2) Original Stop Position

<Use>

- To manually adjust the original stop position and the read position in each of the ADF modes.
- When the result is Unable in the [Auto Adj. of Stop Position].

<Procedure>



1. Place the chart in the document feed tray (with the side having an arrow facing up).
2. Make a full size copy of the chart.

NOTE

- **In the same way place the chart with the blank side facing up in the document feed tray in the duplex mode and make a copy. Check the difference in the widths of a between the chart and the second sided surface of the copy sample.**

3. Check that the difference in the widths of B between the chart and the copy sample falls within the specified range.

Specification B: 0 ± 2.0 mm
Adjustment range: -4.0 mm to +4.0 mm (1 step: 0.1 mm)

4. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
5. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [ADF Adjustment] → [Original Stop Position].
6. Look at the copy and adjust [Front] or [Back] with the [+]/[-] key.
   If the difference in the widths of B is greater than the specifications, enter the [+] value.
   If the difference in the widths of B is smaller than the specifications, enter the [-] value.
7. Touch [OK].
8. Make a copy of the chart again and check that the difference in the widths of B falls within the specified range.

(3) Centering Auto Adjustment

<Use>

- To automatically adjust the read position in the main scanning direction.
- When ADF has been replaced.

<Procedure>

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [ADF Adjustment] → [Centering Auto Adjustment].
3. Place the chart in the document feed tray (with the side having an arrow facing up).
4. Press the Start key.
5. Make sure that result is OK. Then, touch [New].
6. Touch [Close].

NOTE

- **If the result is Unable:**
  Check and correct the skew of the document.
  Manually correct the value of [Original Stop Position].
  See P.245

(4) Auto Adj. of Stop Position

<Use>

- To automatically adjust the read position for the Sub Scanning Direction.
- To check skew feed.
- When ADF has been replaced.

<Procedure>

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [ADF Adjustment] → [Auto Adj. of Stop Position].
3. Touch [Front] or [Back].
4. Place the chart in the document feed tray.
   [Front]: Set the chart with its arrow side facing upward.
   [Back]: Set the chart with its blank side facing upward.
5. Press the Start key.
6. Make sure that result is OK. Then, touch [New].
7. Touch [Close].

NOTE

- **If the result is Unable:**
  Check and correct the skew of the document.
  Manually correct the value of [Original Stop Position].
  See P.245

K. Line Detection

(1) Prior Detection Setting

<Use>

- To set whether or not to perform pre-detection of stain on the ADF original glass.
- To set the detection level of the pre-detection of stain on the ADF original glass.
- To set how to display the warning when stain on the ADF original glass is detected.
- Use when changing the display of the warning which requests the cleaning of the stain on the glass detected by the pre-detection of the lines.
  TYPE1 : Warning will be displayed by the maintenance mark. (warning code: D-1)
  TYPE2 : Warning will be displayed on the message area on the basic screen.
  TYPE3 : Warning will be displayed on all screens.
  OFF : Warning will not be displayed.

- Use when changing the detection level for the pre-detection of stain on the original glass.
  Low : Stain on the glass will not be detected easily.
  Normal : Normal detection level
  High : Stain on the glass will easily be detected.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Yes.

"Yes" No

NOTE

- **[Warning Level] and [Detection Level] can be set when "Yes" is selected.**
- **Be aware that selecting "No" and performing the pre-detection with the following setting will display "NG."**
  [Service Mode] → [Machine] → [ADF Scan Glass Contamination]
- **When "No" is selected, the original glass cleaning operation after the job ends does not operate.**

<Warning Level>

- The default setting is TYPE2.

TYPE1 "TYPE2" TYPE3 OFF

<Detection Level>

- The default setting is Std.

Low "Std." High

(2) Feed Cleaning Settings

<Use>

- To set the operation for detection and removing operation of stain on the ADF original glass when feeding the original.
- Use when changing the operation for detection and removing operation of stain on the ADF original glass when feeding the original.
  Do not remove : Cleaning is not conducted as the cleaning brush does not rotate.
  Remove : Glass is cleaned with the cleaning brush rotating at one original intermittent.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Remove.

"Remove" Do not remove

L. User Paper Settings

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to “Level 2.”
  [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [Administrator Feature Level]

(1) Use

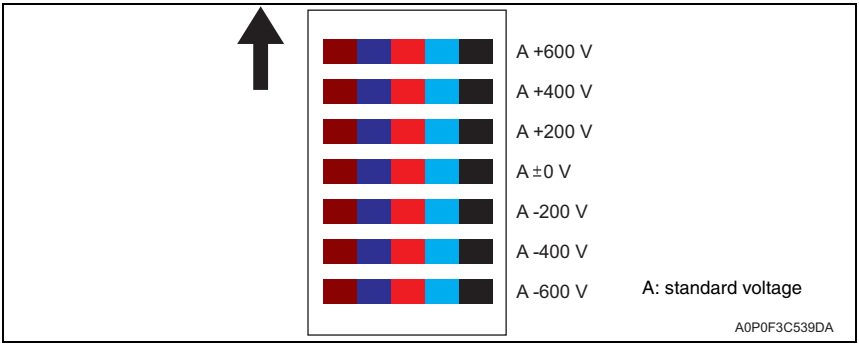
- To set and register individual user paper that includes different basic weight and transfer output fine adjustment data.
- To register a paper type that is suitable for customer’s intended use and use environment.
- The feature available from [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [User Paper Settings] is extended to Administrator. However, the fusing temperature setting is not possible in Administrator Settings.
- The user paper registration keys and corresponding paper types are as follows:
  User Paper 1, 2 : Plain paper
  User Paper 3 : Thick 1
  User Paper 4 : Thick 2
  User Paper 5 : Thick 3

(2) Procedure

1. Call the Administrator Settings to the screen.
2. Touch [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [Forward] → [User Paper Settings].
3. Select the desired key from [User Paper 1] to [User Paper 5] to register user paper.
4. Select [Basic Weight] and enter a value with the [+]/ [-] key.
5. Select one from the following; [Media Front - Color], [Media Front - Black], [Media Back-Color], or [Media Back - Black]. Enter a 2nd transfer output value with the [+]/[-] key.
   Setting range: -7 to +8 (1 step: 1 increment or decrement)
6. Load the tray with A4S or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11S paper.
7. Touch [Test Pattern Output]. Specify a paper feed tray and select either 1st side or 2nd side.
8. Press the Start key and check the image of the output test pattern. If the image is not acceptable, adjust the settings, output and check a test pattern again.

(3) Test pattern in user paper settings

- The printable test pattern for user paper settings is provided to ease determining the most appropriate 2nd transfer output value used when customizing user paper.
- This test pattern changes output voltage as shown below based on the standard voltage A (voltage determined by the 2nd image transfer auto transfer voltage control) on a sheet of paper.



M. Erase Adjustment

(1) Non-Image Area Erase Operation Settings

<Use>

- Configure Non-Image Area operation settings.
  - Auto : Automatically detects the background density of the original, and selects either [Bevel] or [Rectangular] accordingly.
  - Specify : Allows you to manually specify an erase method and original density. As an erase method, select [Bevel] or [Rectangular]. Specify an original density from five levels.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Specify.

Auto	"Specify"

10.6.8 System Settings-List/Counter

A. Management List

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  (It will be displayed when the key counter is mounted or when the following setting shows that switch No.33 is set to [01] at HEX assignment.
  [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Software Switch Setting])

(1) Job Settings List

<Use>

- To output the value set by the setting menu.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Job Settings List].
2. Select the feed tray.
3. Select simplex or duplex print, and touch the Start key.

B. Paper Size/Type Counter

<Use>

- To register the combination of the specific paper size and the paper type, and to set the count.

<Procedure>

1. Press a key out of 1 to 10 registration keys.
2. Select the paper type.
3. Touch the paper size key to select the paper size.

C. Meter Counter List

- Setting will be available only when the following setting shows that either authentication device, management device 2, vendor 2 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

(1) Use

- To output the meter counter list.
- To print out the list in this setting because counter list cannot be printed when the following setting shows that vendor is mounted.
  [Meter Counter] → [Details]

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Meter Counter List].
2. Select the Feed tray.
3. Select simplex or duplex print, and touch the Start key.

D. Check Consumables List

- Setting will be available only when the following setting shows that either authentication device, management device 2, vendor 2 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

(1) Use

- To output the consumable life list.
- To print out the list in this setting because the list cannot be printed when the following setting shows that vendor is mounted.
  [Utility] → [Check Consumable Life]

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Consumable Life List].
2. Select the feed tray.
3. Select simplex or duplex print, and touch the Start key.

10.6.9 System Settings-Reset Settings

A. System Auto Reset

(1) Use

- To set the period of time until system auto reset starts functioning.

(2) Procedure

<Priority Mode>

- To set the functions displayed during system auto reset from Copy and Scan/Fax.
- The default setting is Copy.

"Copy" Scan/Fax

<System Auto Reset Time>

- The default setting is 1 min.

"1 min." (1 to 9, OFF)

B. Auto Reset

(1) Use

- To set the period of time until auto reset starts functioning in “Copy” and “Scan/Fax.”

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 1 min.

“1 min.” (1 to 9, No)

C. Job Reset

(1) When Account is changed

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  (It will be displayed when the key counter is mounted.)

<Use>

- Selects whether to reset (initialize) a machine when the key counter is unplugged, a magnetic card is pulled out, or user authentication/account track is set.
- To select not to reset to the default settings even when the accounts are changed through the use of a data management device.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Reset.

“Reset” Do Not Reset

(2) When Original is set on ADF

<Use>

- Select whether to reset the function when originals are placed on the ADF.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Do Not Reset.

Reset “Do Not Reset”

(3) Next Job: Staple Setting

<Use>

- To set whether to cancel the staple setting when the staple setting job started and the next job setting has become available.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

(4) Next Job: Original Set/Bind Direction

<Use>

- To set whether to cancel the original set/bind direction when the job (which original set/bind direction is set) started and the next job setting has become available.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

(5) Next Job: Reset Data After Job

<Use>

- To set whether to cancel the setting for scanning or transmitting fax when the scanning is finished or fax is transmitted, making the next job setting available.
  (The address will be cleared even when [OFF] is selected.)

<Procedure>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

10.6.10 System Settings-User Box Settings

A. Delete Unused User Box

(1) Use

- To delete the unnecessary box without data.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Delete Unused User Box].
2. Touch [Yes] on the Check screen.

B. Delete Secure Print Documents

(1) Use

- To delete the whole classified documents in the box.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Delete Secure Documents].
2. Touch [Yes] on the Check screen.

C. Auto Delete Secure Document

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to delete the confidential documents in the box after a certain period of time. It also sets the period of time to store data.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 1 Day.

12 Hours "1 Day" 2 Days 3 Days 7 Days 30 Days Save

D. Encrypted PDF Delete Time

(1) Use

- Specifies whether to delete encrypted PDF data stored in the box after a lapse of a predetermined period of time.
  Sets the time period for which encrypted PDF data can be stored.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 1 Day.

12 Hours "1 Day" 2 Days 3 Days 7 Days 30 Days Save

E. ID & Print Delete Time

(1) Use

- Specifies whether to delete ID & print data stored in the box after a lapse of a predetermined period of time.
  Sets the time period for which ID & print data can be stored.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 1 Day.

12 Hours "1 Day" 2 Days 3 Days 7 Days 30 Days Save

F. Document Hold Setting

(1) Use

- Selects whether to store the document again in the box after it was retrieved from the box.
- If the function is set to No, the document is automatically deleted after it was retrieved.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

G. External Memory Function Settings

(1) Use

- This operation enables or disables functions using an external memory connected to this machine.
- Capability to enable [Save Document] and [Print Document] separately.

Save Document : a function that saves scanned documents into the external memory using [Save Document] in the box mode.
Print Document : a function that prints and sends documents saved in the external memory using [Use Document] in the box mode.

(2) Procedure

<Save Document>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

<Print Document>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

H. Allow/Restrict User Box

(1) Use

- Specify whether to release functions so that the user can create, edit, or delete a User Box.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Allow.

"Allow" Prohibit

I. ID & Print Delete after Print Setting

(1) Use

- Select whether to check that the document saved in the ID & Print User Box has been deleted after printed.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Confirm with User.

"Confirm with User" Always Delete

J. Document Delete Time Setting

(1) Use

- This function enables the administrator to specify the time to delete a document from a User Box when you cannot specify the document deletion time. When automatically specifying the document deletion time, select [Yes] and set the deletion time.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 1 Day.

12 Hours "1 Day" 2 Days 3 Days 7 Days 30 Days Save

10.6.11 System Settings-Standard Size Setting

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "Level 2."
  [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [Administrator Feature Level]

A. Original Glass Original Size Detect

(1) Use

- To change the document size detection table.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Table1.

"Table1" Table2

B. Foolscap Size Setting

(1) Use

- To set the size for foolscap paper.
- Upon setup.

(2) Procedure

- Select the size from among the following five.

220 x 330 mm $8^{1}/_{2}$ x 13 $8^{1}/_{4}$ x 13 $8^{1}/_{8}$ x $13^{1}/_{4}$ "8 x 13"

10.6.12 System Settings-Stamp Settings

A. Header/Footer Settings

(1) Use

- Saves or deletes header/footer settings.
- Able to obtain registered header/footer data by [Application] → [Stamp/Composition]

(2) Procedure

- Touch [New] to register new headers and footers.

B. Fax TX Settings

(1) Use

- Specifies whether to reset a stamp setting when fax is sent.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Cancel.

"Cancel"	Do Not Cancel

10.6.13 System Settings-Blank Page Print Settings

A. Use

- Specifies whether to print a stamp/page number on blank pages.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Print.

"Print"	Do Not Print

10.6.14 System Settings-Application Key Settings

- This is displayed only when the optional i-Option (LK-101 or LK-103) is activated.

A. Use

- To assign the additional functions provided by i-Option to the application keys.
- This settings allow free application key assignment to additional functions provided by i-Option as well as to "User Box", "Fax/Scan" and "Copy" to which the application keys were conventionally assigned. (However, Key 0 is assigned to the function of displaying the application menu so that other functions cannot be assigned to Key 0.)
- The functions that can be assigned are as follows:
  Copy, Fax/Scan, User Box, Image Panel, Web Browser, My Panel

B. Procedure

1. Select [Key 1] or [Key 2].
2. Select a function to which the key is assigned, and touch [OK].

10.6.15 System Settings-Skip Job Operation Settings

A. Use

- Configure whether to start processing for the next job when the current job stops due to running out of paper in the paper tray.

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Skip Job Operation Settings].
2. Make settings and touch [OK].

10.6.16 System Settings-Default Bypass Paper Type Setting

A. Use

- Configure the initial settings for the paper type to be used for the bypass tray.

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Default Bypass Paper Type Setting].
2. Select the desired paper type and touch [OK].

10.6.17 System Settings-Page Number Print Position

A. Use

- Specify a page number print position when printing page numbers after configuring 2-sided print or booklet settings. Select whether to print the page numbers on a same position on all pages or on positions symmetric with respect to the stapling position.

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Page Number Print Position].
2. Check test print and fine adjust the position.

10.6.18 System Settings-Advanced Preview Setting

A. Original direction setting display

(1) Use

- To set whether to display the screen where the original set direction can be selected after touching [Preview] when printing with the advanced preview function.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

10.6.19 Administrator/Machine Settings-Administrator Registration

A. Use

- Registers administrator information displayed Help service/Administrator information screen as well as sender addresses used for E-mail transmission from the machine.

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Administrator Name], [E-mail Address] to input them.
2. Using the 10-key pad, enter the extension No.

10.6.20 Administrator/Machine Settings-Input Machine Address

A. Use

- To register the name of the machine and e-mail address.
  Machine Name : When the file name of the transmitted file or the document name of document registered in Box is generated automatically, it is added.
  E-mail : To be used as from address at internal Fax transmission.

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Device Name] and input the name.
2. Touch [E-mail Address] and input the E-mail address.

10.6.21 One-Touch/User Box Registration-Create One-Touch Destination

A. Address Book

(1) E-mail

<Use>

- To register/change the e-mail address for transmitting the scanned data by e-mail.

<Procedure>

- Touch [New] to register the new address.
- Select any displayed address to check, edit, or delete the setting.

(2) User Box

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device or the vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

<Use>

- To register or change the box address for storing the scanned data to the box in the hard disk of the machine.

<Procedure>

- Touch [New] to register the new address.
- Select any displayed address to check, edit, or delete the setting.
- At least one user box must be registered in order to register the box address.

(3) Fax

<Use>

- To register or change the fax number for transmitting the fax.

<Procedure>

- Touch [New] to register the new address.
- Select any displayed address to check, edit, or delete the setting.

(4) PC (SMB)

<Use>

- To register or change the SMB address for transmitting the scanned data by SMB.

<Procedure>

- Touch [New] to register the new address.
- Select any displayed address to check, edit, or delete the setting.

(5) FTP

<Use>

- To register and change the FTP address for transmitting the scanned data by FTP.

<Procedure>

- Touch [New] to register the new address.
- Select any displayed address to check, edit, or delete the setting.

(6) WebDAV

<Use>

- To register and change the WebDAV address for transmitting the scanned data by WebDAV.

<Procedure>

- Touch [New] to register the new address.
- Select any displayed address to check, edit, or delete the setting.

(7) IP Address Fax

<Use>

- To register/change the IP address fax destination when transmitting the IP address fax data.

<Procedure>

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed address to check, change or delete the setting.

(8) Internet Fax

<Use>

- To register/change the Internet fax address when transmitting the internet fax data.

<Procedure>

- A new address can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed address to check, change or delete the setting.

B. Group

(1) Use

- To register or change the group with a number of addresses to transmit data simultaneously.

(2) Procedure

- Touch [New] to register the new group.
- Select any displayed group to check, edit, or delete the setting.
- At least one address must be registered in order to register the group.

C. E-mail Settings

(1) E-mail Subject

<Use>

- To register the e-mail subject for transmitting the scanned data by e-mail.

<Procedure>

- Touch [New] to register the new subject.
- Select any displayed subject to detail check, edit, or delete the setting.
- The subject can be set as default by selecting the subject displayed on the screen and pressing [Set as Default].

(2) E-mail Body

<Use>

- To register the e-mail message for transmitting the scanned data by e-mail.

<Procedure>

- Touch [New] to register the new message.
- Select any displayed message to detail check or delete the setting.
- The text can be set as default by selecting the text displayed on the screen and pressing [Set as Default].

10.6.22 One-Touch/User Box Registration-Create User Box

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device 1 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. Public/Personal User Box

(1) Use

- To register or change the box for storing the text data in the hard disk of the machine.

(2) Procedure

- Touch [New] to register the new box.
- Select any displayed box to edit or delete it.

B. Bulletin Board User Box

(1) Use

- To register or change the bulletin board user box.

(2) Procedure

- Touch [New] to register the new box.
- Select any displayed box to edit or delete it.

C. Relay User Box

- It will be displayed when the optional fax kit FK-502 is installed.

(1) Use

- To register/change the Relay User Box.

(2) Procedure

- A new box can be registered by touching [New].
- Select any displayed box to change or delete it.

D. Annotation User Box

(1) Use

- To register or change the annotation user box.
- To attach the image of the date, time, and/or filing number to the document data stored in the scanner mode, and to distribute them.

(2) Procedure

- Touch [New] key to register the new box.
- Select any displayed box to change or delete it.

10.6.23 One-Touch/User Box Registration-One-Touch/User Box Registration List

A. Address Book List

(1) Use

- To output the address book list.

(2) Procedure

1. Select the destination type to be output.
2. Touch [Starting destination No.] and enter the number from which output starts.
3. Touch [No. of Destinations] and specify the number of destinations to be output.
4. Touch [Print], and select the paper feed tray.
5. Select the simplex or duplex print, and press the Start key to output the list of abbreviated addresses.

B. Group List

(1) Use

- To output the group list.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Starting destination No.] and enter the number from which output starts.
2. Touch [No. of Destinations] and specify the number of destinations to be output.
3. Touch [Print], and select the paper feed tray.
4. Select the simplex or duplex print, and press the Start key to output the list of abbreviated addresses.

C. Program List

(1) Use

- To output the program list.

(2) Procedure

1. Select the destination type to be output.
2. Touch [Starting destination No.] and enter the number from which output starts.
3. Touch [No. of Destinations] and specify the number of destinations to be output.
4. Touch [Print], and select the paper feed tray.
5. Select the simplex or duplex print, and press the Start key to output the list of abbreviated addresses.

D. E-mail Subject/Text List

(1) Use

- To output the subject or the text list.

(2) Procedure

1. Select the paper feed tray.
2. Select the simplex or duplex print, and press the Start key to output the list of abbreviated addresses.

10.6.24 One-Touch/User Box Registration-Maximum Number of User Boxes

A. Use

- Set the maximum of public, personal, and group boxes that individual users can hold.

B. Procedure

1. Select a user box type and name.
2. If a maximum number of user boxes is not specified, set Max. No. of Use Boxes to [OFF].
3. If a maximum number of user boxes is not specified, set Max. No. of Use Boxes to [OFF].

10.6.25 User Authentication/Account Track-General Settings

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that key counter or vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

NOTE

- **Before registering a user, select an authentication method. If all management data is cleared after the authentication method was selected, the histories of the registered users, print, send, receive, and save jobs are deleted.**

A. User Authentication

(1) Use

- To set the user authentication method.
- To select whether to authenticate the user by the external server or MFP.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

"OFF" ON (External Server) ON (MFP)

NOTE

- **[OFF] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON."**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode]
- **[ON (External Server)] cannot be selected when external servers are not registered in the following setting.**
  [Administrator Settings] → [User Authentication/Account Track] → [External Server Settings]
- **Neither [ON (External Server)] or [ON (MFP)] can be selected when the presence of management device is set in the following setting.**
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

B. Public User Access

(1) Use

- To set whether to allow or prohibit the nonregistered user to use the system when User authentication has been set.
- Able to use the machine without authentication by logging in as a public user when [ON (Without Login)] is selected.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Restrict.

"Restrict"	ON (With Login)	ON (Without Login)

NOTE

- **This setting is not available without user authentication.**
- **[Allow] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON." [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode]**
- **[Allow] cannot be selected when [Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track] is set to "Do Not Synchronize."**

C. Account Track

(1) Use

- To set whether to enable the account track function or not.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

"OFF"	ON

D. Account Track Input Method

(1) Use

- To set the authentication method for the account track.
- To select whether to authenticate by password or by account name & password.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Account Name & Password.

"Account Name & Password"	Password Only

NOTE

- **This setting is not available without the account track.**
- **"Password Only" cannot be set when using both user authentication and account track.**

E. Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track

(1) Use

- To set whether to synchronize the user authentication and account track.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Synchronize.

"Synchronize"	Do not synchronize

NOTE

- **The setting is available only when carrying out the user authentication and account track.**

F. When # of Jobs Reach Maximum

(1) Use

- To set whether to stop the currently printing job and start the next job, or to stop the machine, when reaching to the upper limit for the number of printed pages set by the user authentication and the account track.
- To stop the machine when the number of printed pages reach the upper limit set by the user authentication and the account track.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Skip Job.

"Skip Job" Stop Job

G. Number of User Counters Assigned

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that management device 2 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

(1) Use

- To set the number available to be assigned for the user registration and account registration.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 500.
- The total number to be registered for the user authentication and account track is 1000. The number for the user registration will be set.

* When setting the [# of Counters Assigned for Users] to 50, the number available for Account Track will be 950.

NOTE

- **The setting is available only when carrying out the user authentication and account track.**

H. Ticket Hold Time Setting

(1) Use

- Specify the desired length of holding time of Kerberos authentication ticket.

NOTE

- **This setting takes effect only when the authentication server type is set to active directory.**

(2) Procedure

- The default settings is 60 min.

1 to "60 min."

I. Scanner Settings

- It will be displayed only when the optional image controller IC-412 is mounted and user authentication or account track has been set.

(1) Use

- To select whether to use TWAIN scan function available in Fiery Remote Scan when user authentication or account track is set to on.
- When user authentication or account track is set to on, select the use of TWAIN scan function available in Fiery Remote Scan software that is supplied with the image controller.

(2) Procedure

- The default settings are Restrict.

Allow "Restrict"

10.6.26 User Authentication/Account Track-User Authentication Setting

- The settings are available only when carrying out the user authentication.

A. Administrative Setting

(1) User Name List

- It cannot select [OFF] when the following setting is set to "ON."
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode]

<Use>

- To set whether to display or not the list key for user names on user authentication screen.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

NOTE

- **[ON] cannot be selected when [ON] is specified in the following setting.**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode]

(2) Default Function Permission

<Use>

- To set the default value for the function permission in user authentication by the external server.
- To set the function which authenticated user can use when initially authenticating the user by the external server.
- Items available for setting: Copy, Scan, Fax, Print, User Box, Print Scan/Fax TX, Save to External Memory, Read the stored document in External Memory, Manual destination input, Cellular Phone/PDA and Web browser

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Allow.

"Allow" Restrict

(3) ID & Print Settings

<Use>

- To set whether to use ID & Print (a job sent by a user cannot be printed until the user authentication is completed).
- To set whether to print a job of unauthenticated or public user or to save the job into the ID & Print User Box.

<Procedure>

<ID & Print>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

<Public User>

- The default setting is Print Immediately.

"Print Immediately" Save

(4) ID & Print Operation Settings

- It will be displayed only when the following setting shows that authentication device is set to "installed".
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

<Use>

- To set whether to print all jobs or only one job from the same authenticated user when ID & Print is selected.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Print All Jobs.

"Print All Jobs" Print Each Job

(5) Default Operation Selection ⚠2

<Use>

- In the Login screen for user authentication where ID and print jobs are stored, specify the default values for the operation to be carried out after authentication has been completed.
  When using this machine while the ID & print function is disabled, the user can select [Access] to log in to this machine without specifying the operation to be carried out after authentication.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Print.

"Print" Print & Access Basic Screen Access Basic Screen

B. User Registration

(1) Use

- To register, change or delete the user for authentication.

(2) Procedure

1. Select the user, and touch [Edit]
2. Input the user name, user password, and e-mail address.

NOTE

- **It cannot be entered when conducting authentication by external server.**

3. Set the output permission, max allowance set, function permission, and touch [OK].

NOTE

- **When the public users are allowed, the output permission and the function permission can be set.**
- **[Authentication Information Registration] does not appear when the presence of Authentication Device 2 is set in the following setting.**
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
- **[Output Permission], [Max. Allowance Set], and [Function Permission] do not appear when the presence of Management Device 1 is set in the following setting.**
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

C. User Counter

(1) Use

- To display the status of use of the copy+print, copy, print and scan/fax for each user.

(2) Procedure

1. Select the user and touch [Counter Details].
2. Select the key to check to see the status of use.
3. For clearing the counter, touch [Clear Counter].
4. For clearing the all counters, touch [Reset All Counters].

10.6.27 User Authentication/Account Track-Account Track Setting

- The settings are available only when carrying out the account track.

A. Account Track Registration

(1) Use

- To register and change the account.

(2) Procedure

1. Select the proper Account and touch [Edit].
2. Input the [Account Name], [Password] and [Name].
3. Set the [Output Permission], and [Max. Allowance Set], and touch [OK].

NOTE

- **When the "Password Only" is selected for [Account Track Input Method], [Account Name] does not appear.**
- **When the "Account Name & Password" is selected for [Account Track Input Method], [Name] does not appear.**

B. Account Track Counter

(1) Use

- To display the status of use of the copy+print, copy, print and scan/fax for each account.

(2) Procedure

1. Select the account and touch [Counter Details].
2. Select the key for the item to be checked.
3. For clearing the counter, touch [Clear Counter].
4. For clearing the all counters, touch [Reset All Counters].

10.6.28 User Authentication/Account Track-Print without Authentication

- It cannot select [Allow] when the following setting is set to "ON."
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode]

A. Use

- To set whether to allow or restrict the print which user and account are not specified.
- To allow or restrict printing which user and account are not specified.
- When Allow is selected, pages printed by unidentified users are counted and included in the count of the public user.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Restrict.

Allow "Restrict"

10.6.29 User Authentication/Account Track-Print Counter List

- The setting is available only when carrying out the user authentication or account track.
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that key counter, vendor, authentication device1 or management device 2 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. Use

- To print out the User counter and the account counter.

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Counter List].
2. Select the paper feed tray.
3. Select the simplex or duplex print, and press the start key to output the counter list.

10.6.30 User Authentication/Account Track-External Server Settings

A. Use

- Registers and sets an external server that is used for user authentication.

B. Procedure

1. Select one from No. 1 to No. 20 and touch [NEW].
2. Set [Server Name] and [Server Type].
3. To change settings, select an external server to be edited and touch [Edit].

<Server Type>

Active Directory NTLM v1 NTLM v2 NDS LDAP

NOTE

- **Neither [NTLM v1] nor [NTLM v2] appear when OFF is selected in the following setting.**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [SMB Settings] → [User Authentication (NTLM)]
- **[NDS] does not appear when OFF is selected in the following setting.**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [NetWare Settings] → [User Authentication Setting (NDS)]

10.6.31 User Authentication/Account Track-Limiting Access to Destinations

A. Create Group

(1) Use

- Registers and edits groups of destinations for limiting access.

(2) Procedure

1. Select a group and touch [Edit].
2. Enter [Group Name].
3. Set the Access Allowed Level and touch [OK].

B. Apply Levels/Groups to Destinations

(1) Use

- Sets Apply Level and Apply Group for individual destinations.

(2) Procedure

1. Select one from Address Book, Group, and Program.
2. Select a registered address. Touch [Apply Group] and [Apply Level] independently to make each settings.

C. Apply Levels/Groups to Users

(1) Use

- Sets Apply Level or Apply Group for individual users.

(2) Procedure

1. Select a registered user. Touch [Apply Group] and [Apply Level] independently to make each settings.

10.6.32 User Authentication/Account Track-Authentication Device Settings

- The function can be displayed only when the authentication device 2 is set to Set by [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. General Settings

(1) Use

- Specifies a device used for user authentication.
  Card Authentication : Select the IC card type and operation settings.
  Bio Authentication : Select the beep and operation settings.

(2) Procedure

Card Authentication Bio Authentication

- Select either one of the authentication devices and press the corresponding key to go to the individual operation setting screen.
- The screen displays the authentication device that is selected in [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice] → [Authentication Device 2].
  When [Card 1] is selected as the authentication device, select the card type from among [FeliCa], [TypeA], [SSFC], [FCF], and [FCF (Campus)] and make the operation settings. If [FeliCa+Type A], [SSFC+Type A], [FCF+Type A], or [FCF (Campus)+Type A] is selected, both the FeliCa and Type A cards can be used in this machine at the same time.
  When [Card 2] is selected as authentication device, the authentication device name will be displayed differently depending on the type of installed loadable device driver.
- If SSFC (Shared Security Formats Cooperation) is selected in Card Authentication, set [Company Code], [Company Identification Code], [Area No.], [Building No.], [Floor No.], [Room No.], and [Security Level].
- If LEGIC (PID) is selected in Card Authentication, perform the access setting (STAMP input) for LEGIC (PID).
- If MIFARE (PID) is selected in Card Authentication, perform the MIFARE key setting.

(3) How to set the card information when using SSFC card.

- When using SSFC card for user authentication, get the following information from the administrator.
  And it is necessary to convert the information into the value for the control panel.

Necessary information			Setting value on the control panel
Item	Sampled-data	Sampled-data (hexadecimal number)	
Room Number	37 (decimal number)	00 25	37 *1
Floor Number	15 (decimal number)	00 0F	15 *1
Building Number	50 (decimal number)	00 32	50 *1
Area Number	85 (decimal number)	00 55	85 *1
Security Level	2 (decimal number)	00 02	2 *1
Company Identification Code (CL Code) *2	06BGLQVX17 (ASCII code)	30 36 42 47 4C 51 56 58 31 37	30 36 42 47 4C 51 56 58 31 37
Company Code *3	CompanyA (ASCII code)	-	CompanyA

*1: Enter the value as a decimal number format.
*2: The character length of the company code is 10 bytes.
*3: Use alphabetical upper case/lower case characters and numeric characters for Company code. When the company code is not set, this space will be left blank.

B. Logoff Settings

(1) Use

- Select whether or not the user is logged off after a scan or fax is sent or after the copy document is scanned.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Do not log off.

"Do not log off"	Log off

10.6.33 User Authentication/Account Track-Auth/Acct Track Common Setting

A. Logout Confirmation Screen Display Setting

(1) Use

- Select whether or not to display the logout confirmation screen.
- If the setting is made not to display the confirmation screen, the logout sequence is performed only through the access key operation with no confirmation screen appearing.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON"	OFF

B. Single Color > 2 Color Output Management

(1) Use

- Configure whether to manage the output of single color or 2 color as color print or black print.
  When managing it as black print, even a user who is restricted from performing color print can perform single color or 2 color output.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Color.

"Color"	Black

10.6.34 User Authentication/Account Track-Scan to Home Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to enable the Scan to Home function that is used to send scanned data to user's home folder.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Disable.

Enable	"Disable"

10.6.35 User Authentication/Account Track-Scan to Authorized Folder Settings

A. Use

- Use to restrict specification of sending destinations by users.
- Enabling this item disables manual entry of destinations except for recipients of faxes or IP address faxes. Therefore users can specify sending destinations only by accessing the address book. Enabling this item also applies the following restrictions.
  - Users cannot save documents to User Boxes
  - Users cannot transmit documents from User Boxes
  - Users cannot use annotation User Boxes
  - Users cannot use the image panel
  - Users cannot select addresses from the transmission history
  - Users cannot use the URL notification function

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Do Not Limit.

Limit	"Do Not Limit"

10.6.36 Network Settings-TCP/IP Settings

A. TCP/IP Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to enable or disable TCP/IP settings.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON"	OFF

NOTE

- **When the setting is changed, turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.**

B. IPv4 Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to enter the IP address (IPv4) directly or to obtain it automatically.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Auto Input.

Manual Input	"Auto Input"

- When it is set to [Auto Input], select the method to obtain it automatically.

DHCP Setting	:	ON	OFF
BOOTP Setting	:	ON	OFF
ARP/PING Setting	:	ON	OFF
AUTO IP Setting	:	ON	OFF

NOTE

- **[ARP/PING Setting] and [Auto IP Setting] cannot be set to "OFF" simultaneously.**
- **They will all be set to "ON" when [Manual Input] is changed to [Auto Input].**

- When it is set to [Manual Input], set the IP address, subnet mask and default gate way.

C. IPv6 Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to use IP address (IPv6).
- To set whether to enter the IP address (IPv6) directly or to obtain it automatically.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON"	OFF

<Auto IPv6 Setting>

- To set whether or not to automatically obtain IP address (IPv6). When selecting [OFF], set a global address or gateway address.
- The default setting is ON.

"ON"	OFF

<DHCPv6 Setting>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON"	OFF

D. DNS Host

(1) Use

- To set the DNS host name.
- To set whether or not to enable the dynamic DNS setting.

(2) Procedure

<DNS Host Name>

1. Touch [DNS Host Name].
2. Enter the DNS host name on the screen key board, and touch [OK].

<Dynamic DNS Settings>

- The default setting is No Limit.

Enable	"No Limit"

E. DNS Domain

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to enable the auto obtaining for the DNS domain name.
- To set the DNS default domain name.
- To set the DNS search domain name.

(2) Procedure

<DNS Domain Name Auto Retrieval>

- The default setting is Enable.

"Enable"	No Limit

NOTE

- **"Enable" cannot be set when [IP Settings] is set to "Auto Input."**

<Search Domain Name Auto Retrieval>

- The default setting is Enable.

"Enable"	No Limit

- Touch [Default DNS Domain Name] or [DNS Search Domain Name 1 to 3], and enter the domain name using the keyboard on the screen and touch [OK].

F. DNS Server Settings (IPv4)

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to enable the auto obtaining of the DNS server address.
- To set the priority/substitute DNS server address.

(2) Procedure

<DNS Server Auto Obtain>

- The default setting is Enable.

"Enable"	No Limit

NOTE

- **"Enable" cannot be set when [IP Settings] is set to "Auto Input."**

<Priority/secondary DNS server.>

- Touch the corresponding key, and input the server address.

G. DNS Server Settings (IPv6)

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to enable the auto obtaining of the DNS server address.
- To set the priority/substitute DNS server address.

(2) Procedure

<DNS Server Auto Obtain>

- The default setting is Enable.

"Enable"	No Limit

NOTE

- **"Enable" cannot be set when [IP Settings] is set to "Auto Input."**

<Priority/secondary DNS server.>

- Touch the corresponding key, and input the server address.

H. IPsec Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to use IPsec protocol for IP network communication.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

- When selecting [ON], make settings in [IKE Setting], [IPSec SA Setting], and [Peer].

I. IPsec Settings-IKE Settings

(1) Use

- To make the settings that relate to IKE (Internet Key Exchange) protocol which is used for IPsec communication.
- Settings can be made independently for four different sets (Group 1 to 4).

(2) Procedure

<Group>

- Among four groups (Group 1 to 4), select a group where settings are made.

<Encryption Algorithm>

- Set a encryption algorithm used for IPsec communication.
- The default setting is OFF.

DES_CBC 3DES_CBC "OFF"

<Authentication Algorithm>

- Set an authentication algorithm used for IPsec communication.
- The default setting is OFF.

MD5 SHA-1 "OFF"

<Key Validity Period>

- Set a key validity period.
- The default setting is 28800 (sec.).

80 to 604800 (sec.)

<Diffie-Hellman Group>

- Set Diffie-Hellman group.
- The default setting is Group 2.

J. IPsec Settings-IPsec SA Settings

(1) Use

- To make the settings that relate to IPsec SA (Security Association) which is used for IPsec communication.
- Settings can be made independently for eight different sets (Group 1 to 8).

(2) Procedure

<Group Set Number>

- Among Group 1 to 8, select a group where settings are made.
- After touching the key of the Group, make the following settings.
  (If the combination of each selection is not allowed among different settings, the key operation of the corresponding option is locked.)

<Security Protocol>

- Set a security protocol.
- The default setting is OFF.

AH ESP ESP_AH “OFF”

<ESP Encryption Algorithm>

- Set an encryption algorithm used for ESP protocol.
- The default setting is OFF.

DES_CBC 3DES_CBC AES_CBC AES_CTR NULL “OFF”

<ESP Authentication Algorithm>

- Set authentication algorithm used for ESP protocol.
- The default setting is OFF.

MD5 SHA-1 “OFF”

<AH Authentication Algorithm>

- Set authentication algorithm used for AH protocol.
- The default setting is OFF.

MD5 SHA-1 “OFF”

<Lifetime After Establishing SA>

- Set the period of time starting from when SA connection is established and ending when the SA connection is cut.
- The default setting is 3600 (sec.).

120 to 604800 (sec.)

K. IPsec Settings-Peer

(1) Use

- To register destinations used for IPsec communication.
- Settings can be made independently for different ten sets (Group 1 to 10).

(2) Procedure

<Peer>

- Among Group 1 to 10, select a group where settings are made.
- After touching the key of the Group, make the following setting.

<Encapsulation Mode>

- Set a encapsulation mode used for IPsec.
- The default setting is OFF.

Tunnel Mode Transport Mode "OFF"

<IP Address>

- When the encapsulation mode is set, specify the IP address of destinations.
- Touch [IP Address] and enter the IP address with IPv4 or IPv6 format.

<Pre-Shared Key Text>

- When the encapsulation mode is set, specify a Pre-shared key (Key data).
- Touch [Input] and enter the Pre-shared key.

<Perfect Forward Secrecy>

- When the transport mode is selected, set whether to use Perfect forward secrecy.
- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

L. IP Filtering (Permit Access)

(1) Use

- To set the IP filtering (Permit Access).
- To set whether to allow only IP addresses that are within a specified range.

(2) Procedure

1. Select Enable or "Disable".
2. When [Enable] is set, select one from Set 1 to Set 5 and specify the range of IP addresses to be allowed using the 10-key pad.
3. Touch [OK].

M. IP Filtering (Deny Access)

(1) Use

- To set the IP filtering (Deny Access).
- When [Enable] is set, select one from Set 1 to Set 5 and specify the range of IP addresses to be allowed using the 10-key pad.

(2) Procedure

1. Select Enable or "Disable".
2. When [Enable] is set, select one from Set 1 to Set 5 and enter the range of IP addresses to be denied using the 10-key pad.
3. Touch [OK].

N. RAW Port Number

(1) Use

- To set the RAW port number.
- Several data can be accepted at the same time by selecting several ports.

(2) Procedure

1. Select the necessary port number.
2. When using the selected port, press the Clear key to clear the value, and enter the RAW port number using the 10-key pad.
3. Touch [OK].

O. LLMNR Setting

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to enable LLMNR (Linklocal Multicast Name Resolution) setting.
- To perform the name resolution to send data to a computer with Windows Vista/Server 2008 installed, select [Enable].
  To perform the name resolution especially in the IPv6-only communication environment, enable this setting.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Enable.

"Enable"	No Limit

10.6.37 Network Setting-NetWare Settings

A. IPX Settings

(1) Use

- To enable or disable the NetWare (IPX) setting.
- To set the ethernet frame type.

(2) Procedure

<IPX Settings>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON"	OFF

<Ethernet Frame Type>

- The default setting is Auto Detect.

"Auto Detect"	802.2	802.3	Ethernet II	802.3SNAP

B. NetWare Print Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to use the NetWare print mode.
- To set the NetWare print mode.
- To display NetWare status.

(2) Procedure

<NetWare Print Settings>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

<NetWare Print Mode>

- The default setting is PServer.

"PServer"	Nprinter/Rprinter

- After selecting either key in the NetWare print mode setting, proceed to each setting screen.

<Status>

1. Touch [Status].
2. Touch up/down arrow keys to select the server to check.
3. Check the NetWare status.

C. P Server Settings: Print Server Name/Print Server Password

(1) Use

- To set the print server name and print server password.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Print Server name] or [Print Server Password].
2. Enter the print server name or the print server password (up to 63 characters) using the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

D. P Server Settings: Polling Interval

(1) Use

- To set the polling interval.
- To set the interval to search the print queue.

(2) Procedure

1. Press the Clear key.
2. Enter the polling interval between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

E. P Server Settings: NDS/Bindery Setting

(1) Use

- To set whether to enable or disable the bindery setting when using NetWare4.x model and after.
- To enable the bindery service.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is NDS.

"NDS"	NDS/Bindery

F. P Server Settings: File Server Name

(1) Use

- To set the full server name for the print server to logon.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [File Server Name].
2. Enter the File server name (up to 47 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

G. P Server Settings: NDS Context Name

(1) Use

- To set the NDS context name (context name to register NDS print server).

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [NDS Context name].
2. Enter the NDS context name (up to 191 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

H. P Server Settings: NDS Tree Name

(1) Use

- To set the NDS tree name (name to login).

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [NDS Tree Name].
2. Enter the NDS tree name (up to 63 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

I. Nprinter/Rprinter Settings: Print Server Name

(1) Use

- To set the print server name.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Print Server Name].
2. Enter the printer name (up to 63 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

J. Nprinter/Rprinter Settings: Printer Number

(1) Use

- To set the printer number.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Auto] and cancel the reverse display.
2. Press the Clear key.
3. Enter the number between 0 and 254 using the 10-key pad.

K. User Authentication Setting (NDS)

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to use the user authentication setting.
- To conduct user authentication in netware environment.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

10.6.38 Network Settings-http Server Settings

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. http Server Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to use the http server setting.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

B. PSWC Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to use the PageScope Web Connection.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

C. IPP Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to enable or disable IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) setting.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

D. Accept IPP jobs

(1) Use

- To set whether to allow or restrict the IPP job.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

E. Support Information

(1) Use

- To set the operation support information.
- For the response setting to see if IPP transmission supports each function.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Support Information].
2. Set "ON" or OFF for each item.

F. Printer Information

(1) Use

- To set the printer information.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Printer Information].
2. Enter the printer name, printer location, and printer information on the on-screen keyboard.
3. Touch [Print URI] to check the printer URI information.

G. IPP Authentication Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to use the IPP authentication setting.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

H. Authentication Method

(1) Use

- To set the authentication method for IPP authentication.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is requesting-user-name.

"requesting-user-name" basic digest

I. User Name

(1) Use

- To set the User name for IPP authentication.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [User Name].
2. Enter the user name on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

J. Password

(1) Use

- To set the password for IPP authentication.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Password].
2. Enter the password on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

K. realm

(1) Use

- To set the realm for identifying the authentication setting for IPP authentication.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [realm].
2. Enter the realm on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

10.6.39 Network Settings-FTP Settings

A. FTP TX Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to use FTP TX settings.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

B. FTP TX Settings: Proxy Server Address

(1) Use

- To set the proxy server address.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Host Address].
2. Select [Input Host Name], [IPv4 Address Input], or [IPv6 Address Input] and enter a host address.

C. FTP TX Settings: Proxy Server Port Number

(1) Use

- To set the proxy server port number.

(2) Procedure

- Press the Clear key.
- Enter the proxy server port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

D. FTP TX Settings: Port No.

(1) Use

- To set the port number to be used for transmission with FTP server.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Input].
2. Press the Clear key.
3. Enter the proxy server port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-Kay pad.

E. FTP TX Settings: Connection Timeout

(1) Use

- To set the timeout period for connecting to FTP server.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Input].
2. Press the Clear key.
3. Enter the connecting timeout period between 5 and 300 using the 10-key pad.

F. FTP Server Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to use this machine as FTP server.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

NOTE

- **[ON] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON."**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode]

10.6.40 Network Settings-SMB Setting

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. Client Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to use the SMB transmission setting.
- To set whether or not to enable the user authentication setting by NTLM.
- To set the NTLM version for the user authentication.
  NTLM has v1 and v2. Select the version which suits the network environment.

(2) Procedure

<Client Settings>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

<NTLM Settings>

- The default setting is v1.

"v1" v2 v1/v2

<User Authentication (NTLM)>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

<DFS Setting>

- Select [ON] when using SMB transmission under an environment that uses a distributed file system (DFS).
- The default setting is Enable.

"Enable" Invalid

B. Print Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to use SMB port or not in printer mode.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

C. Print Settings: NetBIOS Name

(1) Use

- To set NetBIOS name.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [NetBIOS Name].
2. Enter the NetBIOS name (up to 15 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

D. Print Settings: Print Service Name

(1) Use

- To set the print service name.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Print Service Name].
2. Enter the print service name (up to 13 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

E. Print Settings: Workgroup

(1) Use

- To set the workgroup.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Workgroup].
2. Enter the workgroup (up to 15 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

F. WINS Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to enable the WINS setting.
- To use the WINS (Windows Internet Name Service) setting is necessary.
- By using the WINS, the traffic by broadcast can be reduced, and the communication becomes available with the network where broadcast does not reach.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

G. WINS Settings: Automatic Retrieval Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to enable the auto obtaining of the WINS server address.
- To acquire the WINS server address automatically.
- To obtain the WINS server address from DHCP server. If there are more than on address settings, up to two can be acquired.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Enable.

"Enable"	No Limit

H. WINS Settings: WINS Server Address 1, 2

(1) Use

- To set the WINS server address.
- To use when manually entering the WINS server address.
- The primary address and the secondary address can be set.
  (The primary address has the priority during operation.)

(2) Procedure

- Touch [1] or [2].
- Enter the WINS server address.

I. WINS Settings: Node Type Setting

(1) Use

- To set a node type.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is H Node.

B Node	P Node	N Node	"H Node"

J. Direct Hosting Setting

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to enable the direct hosting setting.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON"	OFF

10.6.41 Network Settings-LDAP Settings

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. Enabling LDAP

(1) Use

- To set whether to enable or disable the LDAP function.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

B. Setting Up LDAP

- Registration and/or setting concerning the LDAP server can be conducted.
- Touch [Setting Up LDAP], and select the optional blank key to register and/or set.

(1) LDAP Server Name

<Use>

- Set the LDAP server name.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Server Name].
2. Enter the server name (up to 32 one-byte characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

(2) Max. Search Results

<Use>

- To set the Max. results of address for LDAP search.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Max. Search Results].
2. Press the Clear key.
3. Enter the Max. Search result numbers between 5 and 1000 using the 10-key pad.

(3) Timeout

<Use>

- To set the timeout period for LDAP search.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Timeout].
2. Press the Clear key.
3. Enter the timeout period between 5 and 300 using the 10-key pad.

(4) Initial Setting for Search Details

<Use>

- To set the initial items for search conditions in LDAP detail search.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Initial Setting for Search Details].
2. Touch the key about condition for each search item, and select the condition.
3. Touch [OK].

(5) Check Connection

- It will not be displayed when [Enabling LDAP] is set to “OFF.”
- It will not be displayed when the following is set to “Restrict.”
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Security Details] → [Manual Destination Input]

<Use>

- To check the connection with the LDAP server which has been set.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Check Connection].
2. Confirm a proper connection and touch [Close].

(6) Reset All Settings

<Use>

- To return the contents registered in the LDAP server to what they were prior to the shipping.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Reset All Settings].
2. Check the message and touch [Yes].
3. Touch [OK].

(7) Server Address

<Use>

- To set the LDAP server address.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Server Address].
2. Select [Input Host Name], [IPv4 Address Input] or [IPv6 Address Input], and enter the server address.

(8) Search Base

<Use>

- To set the directory path for LDAP server.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Search Base].
2. Enter the search base (up to 255 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

(9) SSL Setting

<Use>

- To set whether to use SSL (data encryption) for connecting to LDAP server.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

(10) Port Number

<Use>

- To set the LDAP server port number.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Input].
2. Press the Clear key.
3. Enter the port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-Kay pad.

(11) Port Number (SSL)

<Use>

- To set the port number for LDAP server when using SSL.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Input].
2. Press the Clear key.
3. Enter the port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-Kay pad.

(12) Certificate Verification Level Settings

<Use>

- To verify the server certificate, configure settings to verify the certificate.

<Procedure>

Expiration Date	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.
Key Usage	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.
Chain	: Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine.
Expiration Date Confirmation	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.
CN	: Select whether to check that the CN of the server certificate matches the server address.

(13) Authentication Type

<Use>

- To set the authentication method to logon to LDAP server.

Anonymous	: User name and password are not necessary (Dynamic authentication will be invalid when anonymous is selected.)
Simple	: Simple method which needs the user name and the password
Digest-MD5	: Method available with normal LDAP server. When failing to authenticate with Digest-MD5, it automatically switches to CRAM-MD5.
GSS-SPNEGO	: Method available with Windows active directory (Kerberos authentication).
NTLM (v1)	: Standard user authentication format used for Windows NT, etc.
NTLM (v2)	: Standard user authentication format used for Windows NT, etc. It has been applied to the Windows NT4.0 SP4 and later versions. Its security has been enhanced compared to v1.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Anonymous.

"Anonymous" Simple Digest-MD5 GSS-SPNEGO NTLM v1 NTLM v2

(14) Select Server Authentication Method

<Use>

- To set the authentication system when conducting LDAP server authentication.
- To use when changing the server authentication system.

Use Set Value : It conducts authentication with the setting value set by [LDAP Server Registration].
Use User Authentication ID and Password : It conducts authentication with the registration data for the copier's user authentication.
Dynamic Authentication : It conducts authentication by dynamic authentication.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Set Value.

"Set Value" User Authentication Dynamic Authentication

(15) Referral Setting

<Use>

- To set whether or not to use the referral setting.
- To use when tracing the server with referral at the time of LDAP connection.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

(16) Login Name

<Use>

- To set the login name to connect to LDAP server.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Login Name].
2. Enter the logon name (up to 255 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

NOTE

- **The setting is not available when authentication method is set to anonymous.**

(17) Password

<Use>

- To set the password for connecting to LDAP server.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Password].
2. Enter the password (up to 128 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

NOTE

- **The setting is not available when authentication method is set to anonymous.**

(18) Domain Name

<Use>

- To set the domain name for connecting to LDAP server.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Domain Name].
2. Enter the domain name (up to 64 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

C. Default LDAP Server Setting

(1) Use

- To set the server to be used as the default when searching LDAP.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Default LDAP Server Setting].
2. Select the optional server.

10.6.42 Network Settings-E-mail Settings

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. E-mail TX (SMTP)

(1) E-mail TX (SMTP)

<Use>

- To set whether to enable or disable the e-mail transmission setting.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

(2) Scan to E-mail

<Use>

- To set whether or not to transfer scanned data by e-mail.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

(3) Status Notification

<Use>

- To set whether or not to inform the status by e-mail.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

(4) Total Counter Notification

<Use>

- To set whether or not to inform the total counter by e-mail.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

(5) SMTP Server Address

<Use>

- To set the SMTP server address.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Host Address].
2. Select [Input Host Name], [IPv4 Address Input] or [IPv6 Address Input], and enter the server address.

(6) Binary Division

<Use>

- To set whether to carry out binary division for data to be transmitted.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

(7) Divided Mail Size

<Use>

- To set the dividing size when carrying out the binary division for data to be transmitted.
- To change the dividing size of the data.

<Procedure>

1. Press the Clear key.
2. Enter the dividing mail size between 100 and 15000 (in 100 increments) using the 10-key pad.

(8) Connection Timeout

<Use>

- To set the timeout period for connection in transmitting e-mail to SMTP server.

<Procedure>

- Select the timeout period using [+] / [-] keys.
- The default setting is 60 sec.

"60 sec." (30 to 300, in 30 sec. increments)

(9) Server Capacity

<Use>

- To set the Max. capacity per mail which SMTP server can receive.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is No Limit.

"No Limit" (1 to 100)

(10) SSL Setting

<Use>

- To set whether or not to use SSL when sending an e-mail.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

SMTP over SSL Start TLS "OFF"

(11) Port No.

<Use>

- To set the port number for transmission with SMTP server.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Input].
2. Press the Clear key.
3. Enter the port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

(12) Port Number (SSL)

<Use>

- To set the port number when using SSL.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Input].
2. Touch the Clear key.
3. Enter the port number (SSL) between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

(13) Certificate Verification Level Settings

<Use>

- To verify the server certificate, configure settings to verify the certificate.

<Procedure>

Expiration Date	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.
Key Usage	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.
Chain	: Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine.
Expiration Date Confirmation	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.
CN	: Select whether to check that the CN of the server certificate matches the server address.

(14) Detail Settings: SMTP Authentication
<Use>
• To set whether or not to enable SMTP authentication.

<Procedure>
• The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

• When set to "ON", enter the [User ID], [Password] and [Domain Name].

(15) Detail Settings: POP Before SMTP Authentication
<Use>
• To set whether or not to enable the POP Before SMTP authentication.

<Procedure>
• The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

(16) Detail Settings: POP Before SMTP Time
<Use>
• To set the time necessary for POP Before SMTP authentication.

<Procedure>
1. Touch [Input].
2. Press the Clear key.
3. Enter the time for POP Before SMTP between 0 and 60 using the 10-key pad.

B. E-mail RX (POP)
(1) E-mail RX (POP)
<Use>
• To set whether to enable or disable the e-mail reception setting.

<Procedure>
• The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

(2) POP Server Address
<Use>
• To set the POP server address.

<Procedure>
1. Touch [Host Address].
2. Select [Input Host Name], [IPv4 Address Input] or [IPv6 Address Input], and enter the server address.

(3) Connection Timeout
<Use>
• To set the timeout period for connection in receiving e-mail to POP server.

<Procedure>
• Select the timeout period of connection using [-]/[+] keys.

(4) SSL Setting

<Use>

- To set whether or not to use SSL when receiving an e-mail.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

(5) Port No.

<Use>

- To set the port No. for transmitting with POP server.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Input].
2. Touch the Clear key.
3. Enter the port No. between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

(6) Port Number (SSL)

<Use>

- To set the port number when using SSL.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Input].
2. Touch the Clear key.
3. Enter the port number (SSL) between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

(7) Certificate Verification Level Settings

<Use>

- To verify the server certificate, configure settings to verify the certificate.

<Procedure>

Expiration Date	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.
Key Usage	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.
Chain	: Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine.
Expiration Date Confirmation	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.
CN	: Select whether to check that the CN of the server certificate matches the server address.

(8) Login Name

<Use>

- To enter a login name used for POP server authentication.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Login Name].
2. Enter a login name.

(9) Password

<Use>

- To enter a login name used for POP server authentication.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Password].
2. Enter a password.

(10) APOP Authentication

<Use>

- To set whether to use APOP authentication.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

(11) Check for New Messages

- It will not be displayed when either [Internet Fax] is set to "OFF" in the following settings. [Administrator Settings] → [Network Setting] → [Network Fax Setting] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

<Use>

- To set whether to automatically check a POP server for new messages.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Yes.

"Yes" No

(12) Polling Interval

- It will not be displayed when either [Internet Fax] is set to "OFF" in the following settings. [Administrator Settings] → [Network Setting] → [Network Fax Setting] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

<Use>

- To set a polling interval at which a POP server is checked for new messages.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is 15 minutes.

1 to 60 minutes

C. S/MIME Communication Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to activate S/MINE communication that provides encrypted E-mail transmission.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

D. S/MIME Communication Settings-Digital Signature

(1) Use

- Set whether to add a digital signature to S/MIME messages.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Do not add signature.

"Do not add signature" Always add signature Select when sending

E. S/MIME Communication Settings-E-mail Text Encryption Method

(1) Use

- To select an encryption method used for S/MIME E-mail text.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 3DES.

RC2-40 RC2-64 RC2-128 DES "3DES" AES-128 AES-192 AES-256

F. S/MIME Communication Settings-Print S/MIME Information

(1) Use

- To select whether to print S/MIME information when sending and receiving E-mail.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

G. S/MIME Communication Settings-Automatically Obtain Certificates

(1) Use

- To set whether to automatically acquire a certificate when sending or receiving E-mail.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

H. S/MIME Communication Settings-Certificate Verification Level Settings

(1) Use

- To verify the server certificate, configure settings to verify the certificate.

(2) Procedure

Expiration Date	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.
Key Usage	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.
Chain	: Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine.
Expiration Date Confirmation	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.

10.6.43 Network Settings-SNMP Setting

A. SNMP Setting

(1) Use

- To set whether to use SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) or not.
- To set the SNMP version to be used.
- To readout management information base and to enter community name for writing.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

- To individually set whether or not to use SNMP v1/v2c (IP), SNMP v3 (IP), and SNMP v1 (IPX).
- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

B. UDP Port Number

(1) Use

- To set the UDP standby port number which is used for SNMP (IP).

(2) Procedure

1. Touch the Clear key.
2. Enter the port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

C. SNMP v1/v2c Settings

(1) Use

- To conduct setting when using SNMP v1/v2c.
- To use when entering the community name for reading the Management Information Base (MIB) and writing to it.

(2) Procedure

<Read Community Name Settings>

- Enter a read community name.

<Write Setting>

- The default setting is Enable.

"Enable" Disable

NOTE

- **[Enable] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON." [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode]**

<Write Community Name Settings>

- Enter a write community name.

D. SNMP v3 Settings

(1) Context Name Settings

<Use>

- Set the context name which is used for SNMP v3.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Name].
2. Enter the context name (up to 64 characters) on the on-screen key board, and touch [OK].

(2) Discovery User Permissions

<Use>

- To set whether or not to enable the discovery authority user which is used for SNMP v3.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

(3) Discovery User Name Settings

<Use>

- To set the name of the discovery authority users which is used for SNMP v3.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Discovery User Name].
2. Enter the discovery user name (up to 32 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

NOTE

- **The user name same with the read user name or the write user name cannot be set.**

(4) Read User Name Settings

<Use>

- To set the read-only user name used for SNMP v3.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Read User Name].
2. Enter the read user name (up to 32 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

NOTE

- **The user Name same with the discovery user name cannot be used.**

(5) Security Level

<Use>

- To set the security level of the read-only user used for SNMP v3.

  OFF : No authentication will be conducted when the read-only user accesses.

  auth-password : Conducts authentication only for the authentication password when the read-only user accesses.

  auth-password/priv-password : Conducts authentication by authentication password and privacy password when read-only user accesses.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is auth-password/priv-password.

  OFF auth-password “auth-password/priv-password”

(6) Password Setting

<Use>

- To set the authentication password for the read-only user which is used for SNMP v3.

<Procedure>

1. Select a type of password.
2. Enter the password (up to 32 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

(7) Write User Name Settings

<Use>

- To set the name of the reading/writing authority user which is used for SNMP v3.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Write User Name].
2. Enter the write user name (up to 32 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

NOTE

- **The user name same with the discovery use name cannot be used.**

(8) Security Level

<Use>

- To set the security level for the reading/writing authority user which is used for SNMP v3.
  - OFF : Authentication will not be conducted when reading/writing authority user accesses.
  - auth-password : Conducts authentication only with authentication password when reading/writing authority user accesses.
  - auth-password/priv-password : Conducts authentication by authentication password and privacy password when reading/writing authority user accesses.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is auth-password/priv-password.

OFF	auth-password	“auth-password/priv-password”

NOTE

- **[Authentication OFF] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to “ON.” [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode]**

(9) Encryption Algorithm

<Use>

- To set the encryption algorithm in SNMPv3 communication.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is DES.

“DES”	AES-128

(10) Authentication Algorithm

<Use>

- To set the authentication algorithm in SNMPv3 communication.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is MD5.

“MD5”	SHA-1

E. TRAP Setting

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to allow the TRAP function.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Allow.

“Allow”	Restrict

F. TRAP Setting When Authentication failed

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to enable the TRAP function when authentication failed.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Invalid.

Enable	“Invalid”

10.6.44 Network Settings-AppleTalk Settings

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. AppleTalk Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to enable or disable the AppleTalk setting.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

B. Printer Name

(1) Use

- To set the printer name displayed on the AppleTalk network.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Printer Name].
2. Enter the printer name (up to 31 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

C. Zone Name

(1) Use

- To set the zone name connected with AppleTalk network.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Zone Name].
2. Enter the zone name (up to 31 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

D. Current Zone

(1) Use

- To display the current zone on AppleTalk network.

10.6.45 Network Settings-Bonjour Setting

A. Bonjour Setting

(1) Use

- To use when operating under the Bonjour service environment.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

B. Bonjour Name

(1) Use

- To set the name for identifying over the bonjour network.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Bonjour Name].
2. Enter the Bonjour name (up to 64 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

10.6.46 Network Settings-TCP Socket Settings

A. TCP Socket

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to set the TCP socket.
- To set the port number for TCP socket transmission.

(2) Procedure

<TCP Socket>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

<Port Number>

1. Touch the Clear key.
2. Enter the port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

- When SSL Certificate is registered, the following can be set.

<SSL Setting>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

<Port Number>

1. Touch [Enter].
2. Press Clear key.
3. Enter a port number within the range between 1 and 65535 with the 10-key pad.

<Port Number (SSL)>

1. Touch [Enter].
2. Press Clear key.
3. Enter a port number within the range between 1 and 65535 with the 10-key pad.

B. TCP Socket (ASCII Mode)

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to set the TCP socket for ASCII mode.
- To set the port number which is used for TCP socket transmission by ASCII mode.

(2) Procedure

<TCP Socket/ASCII Mode>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

<Port Number (ASCII Mode)>

1. Touch the Clear key.
2. Enter the port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

10.6.47 Network Settings-Network Fax Setting

- It will not be displayed on the screen when all items are set to "OFF" in the following settings.
  [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Network Fax Settings]

A. Network Fax Function Settings

(1) IP Address Fax Function

- Setting will be available only when [IP Address Fax] is set to "ON" in the following settings.
  [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Network Fax Settings]

<Use>

- To set whether or not to use IP address fax function.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

(2) Internet Fax Function

- Setting will be available only when [Internet Fax] is set to "ON" in the following settings.
  [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Network Fax Settings]

<Use>

- To set whether or not to use Internet fax function.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

B. SMTP TX Settings

(1) Use

- To set SMTP TX when network fax function is being used.
- To set SMTP TX port number and connecting time out period when network fax function is being used.

(2) Procedure

<Port Number>

1. Touch [Input].
2. Enter the port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

<Connection Timeout>

1. Touch [Input].
2. Enter the connection timeout time between 5 and 1000 (sec.) using the 10-key pad.

C. SMTP RX Settings

(1) Use

- To set SMTP RX when network fax function is being used.
- To set SMTP RX port number and connecting time out period when network fax function is being used.

(2) Procedure

<SMTP RX>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

<Port No.>

1. Touch [Input].
2. Enter the port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

<Connection Timeout>

1. Touch [Input].
2. Enter the connection timeout time between 5 and 1000 (sec.) using the 10-key pad.

10.6.48 Network Settings-WebDAV Settings

A. WebDAV Client Settings

(1) WebDAV Client Setting

<Use>

- To set whether to use WebDAV Client Settings.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

(2) WebDAV Client Settings: Proxy Server Address

<Use>

- To set the proxy server address.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Host Address].
2. Select [Input Host Name], [IPv4 Address Input], or [IPv6 Address Input] and enter a host address.

(3) WebDAV Client Settings: Proxy Server Port Number

<Use>

- To set the proxy server port number.

<Procedure>

1. Press the Clear key.
2. Enter the proxy server port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

(4) WebDAV Client Settings: User Name

<Use>

- To set the user name for WebDAV authentication.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [User Name].
2. Enter the user name on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

(5) WebDAV Client Settings: Password

<Use>

- To set the password for WebDAV authentication.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Password].
2. Enter the password on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

(6) WebDAV Client Settings: Connection Timeout

<Use>

- To set the timeout period for connecting to WebDAV server.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Input].
2. Press the Clear key.
3. Enter the connecting timeout period between 5 and 300 using the 10-key pad.

(7) WebDAV Client Settings: Server Authentication Character Code

<Use>

- To set a character code used during WebDAV server authentication.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is UTF-8.

"UTF-8"	Windows Code page

(8) WebDAV Client Settings: Certificate Verification Level Settings

<Use>

- To verify the server certificate, configure settings to verify the certificate.

<Procedure>

Expiration Date	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.
Key Usage	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.
Chain	: Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine.
Expiration Date Confirmation	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.
CN	: Select whether to check that the CN of the server certificate matches the server address.

B. WebDAV Server Settings

(1) WebDAV Server Setting

<Use>

- To set whether to use WebDAV Server Settings.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

(2) WebDAV Server Settings: SSL Setting

- It is displayed only when SSL Certificate is registered.

<Use>

- To set whether to use SSL/TSL for communications when using the machine as WebDAV server.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Non-SSL Only.

"Non-SSL Only" SSL Only SSL/Non-SSL

NOTE

- **When "ON" is selected in [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode], only [SSL Only] is selectable.**

(3) WebDAV Server Settings: Password Setting

<Use>

- To set a password to access WebDAV server.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Password Setting].
2. Enter a password with the keyboard on the screen, and touch [OK].

- Touching [Initial Password] can restore the default password setting. (Default password: sysadm)

10.6.49 Network Settings-Web Service Settings

A. Web Service Common Settings

(1) Web Service Common Settings: Friendly Name

<Use>

- To define a friendly name that is used when printing a job with WSD (Web Service on Devices) function.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Friendly Name].
2. Enter the friendly name (up to 62 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

(2) Web Service Common Settings: Publication Service

<Use>

- To set whether or not to enable Publication Service.
- Select [Enable] when using this machine under an environment where communication is possible only with Windows Vista's IPv6.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Invalid.

Enable	"Invalid"

(3) Web Service Common Settings: SSL Setting

- It will be displayed only when SSL Certificate is registered.

<Use>

- To set whether to use SSL when using WSD (Web Service on Devices) function.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

(4) Web Service Common Settings: Certificate Verification Level Settings

- It will be displayed only when SSL Certificate is registered.

<Use>

- To verify the server certificate, configure settings to verify the certificate.

<Procedure>

Expiration Date	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.
Key Usage	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.
Chain	: Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine.
Expiration Date Confirmation	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.

B. Printer Settings

(1) Printer Settings

<Use>

- To set whether to use this printer as a WSD printer.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

(2) Printer Settings: Printer Name

<Use>

- To set the WS printer name.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Printer Name].
2. Enter the friendly name (up to 63 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

(3) Printer Settings: Printer Location

<Use>

- To set the WS printer location.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Printer Location].
2. Enter the friendly name (up to 63 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

(4) Printer Settings: Printer Information

<Use>

- To set the WS printer information.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Printer Information].
2. Enter the friendly name (up to 63 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

C. Scanner Settings

(1) Scanner Settings

<Use>

- To set whether to use this machine as a WSD scanner.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

(2) Scanner Settings: Scanner Name

<Use>

- To set the WS scanner name.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Scanner Name].
2. Enter the friendly name (up to 63 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

(3) Scanner Settings: Scanner Location

<Use>

- To set the WS scanner location.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Scanner Location].
2. Enter the friendly name (up to 63 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

(4) Scanner Settings: Scanner Information

<Use>

- To set the WS scanner information.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Scanner Information].
2. Enter the friendly name (up to 63 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

(5) Scanner Settings: Connection Timeout

<Use>

- To set the timeout period for connection of WS scanner.

<Procedure>

1. Press the Clear key.
2. Enter the connecting timeout period between 30 and 300 using the 10-key pad.

10.6.50 Network Settings-SSDP Settings

A. Use

- To set whether to use SSDP protocol.
- To set the multicast TTL value.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

<Multicast TTL Setting >

- The default setting is 1.

"1" to 10

10.6.51 Network Settings-Detail Settings

A. Device Setting

(1) MAC Address

<Use>

- To display the MAC address of the machine.

<Procedure>

- The address cannot be changed.

(2) Network Speed

<Use>

- To set the network speed.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Auto.

"Auto"	10Mbps Full Duplex	10Mbps Half Duplex
100Mbps Full Duplex	100Mbps Half Duplex	1Gbps Full Duplex

NOTE

- **When Network speed setting is changed, turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.**

(3) LLTD Setting

<Use>

- To set whether or not to enable LLTD (Link Layer Topology Discovery).
- By enabling LLTD, Windows Vista's Network Map can show this machine's location on the network.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is Enable.

"Enable"	Disable

B. Time Adjustment Setting

(1) Use

- To set whether to enable or disable the NTP setting.
- To synchronize the time between the server and the client.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

C. Time Adjustment Setting-Auto IPv6 Retrieval

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to automatically obtain NTP server's IPv6 address.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON"	OFF

D. Time Adjustment Setting-NTP Server Setting

(1) Use

- To set the NTP server address.

(2) Procedure

<Host Address>

1. Touch [Host Address].
2. Select [IP Address Input], and enter the IP address.
3. Select [Host name Input], and enter the host name.

<Port Number>

1. Touch the Clear key.
2. Enter the port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

E. Time Adjustment Setting-Auto Time Adjustment

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to automatically adjust time.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Off.

On	"Off"

F. Time Adjustment Setting-Polling Interval

(1) Use

- To set a polling interval when Auto Time Adjustment is set to ON.

(2) Procedure

1. Press the Clear key.
2. Enter a polling interval within the range between 1 to 240 hours with the 10-key pad.

G. Status Notification Setting

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that authentication device is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
- To notify status, notifications both by E-mail and by SNMP TRAP function can be set. For E-mail, up to ten IP addresses and one IPX address can be set. For SNMP TRAP function, up to five IP addresses and one IPX can be set.

(1) Register Notification Address (IP Address)

<Use>

- To set IP addresses to which machine status notifications are sent.
- Up to 5 addresses can be registered.

<Procedure>

1. From IP address 1 to 5, select an IP address where settings are made.
2. Touch [Host Address].
3. Select [Input Host], [IPv4 Address Input] or [IPv6 Address Input] and enter a host address.
4. Touch the Clear key and enter a port number within the range of 1 to 65535 using the 10-key pad.
5. Touch [Community Name] and enter a community name.
6. Touch [Notification Item] and set the items to be notified to [ON].
7. Touch [OK] and finish the settings.

(2) Register Notification Address (IPX Address)

<Use>

- To set IPX addresses to which machine status notifications are sent.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [IPX Address].
2. Touch [Network Address] or [Node Address] and enter an address.
3. Touch [Community Name] and enter a community name.
4. Touch [Notification Item] and set the items to be notified to [ON].
5. Touch [OK] and finish the settings.

(3) Register Notification Address (E-mail Address)

<Use>

- To set E-mail addresses to which machine status notifications are sent.
- Up to 10 addresses can be registered.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Forward].
2. From E-mail addresses 1 to 10, select an E-mail address where settings are made.
3. Touch [Edit E-mail Address].
4. Enter an E-mail address (up to 320 one-byte characters) using the keyboard on the screen and touch [OK].
5. Touch [Notification Item] and set the items to be notified to [ON].
6. Touch [OK] and finish the settings.

H. Total Counter Notification Settings

(1) Notification Schedule Setting

<Use>

- To set the schedule for informing the total counter value.
- Two different schedules can be set for reporting.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Schedule 1] or [Schedule 2].
2. Select the reporting cycle from [Daily], [Weekly] or [Monthly].
3. When selecting [Daily] for the reporting cycle, set the Interval of day(s).
4. When selecting [Weekly] for the reporting cycle, set the Interval of week(s) and day of the Week.
5. When selecting [Monthly] for the reporting cycle, set the Interval of month(s) and date of the month.

(2) Notification Address Setting

<Use>

- To set the e-mail address for reporting the total counter value.
- Up to three e-mail addresses can be set.
- It can be selected whether to apply the schedule of the [Set Schedule] to each address.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Address 1], [Address 2] or [Address 3].
2. Touch [E-mail Address Edit].
3. Enter the e-mail address (up to 320 one-byte characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].
4. Touch [Set Schedule].
5. Select ON/OFF for each schedule.

(3) Model Name

<Use>

- To set the device name for identifying the copier when reporting the total counter.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Model Name].
2. Enter the model name (up to 20 one-byte characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

(4) Send Now

<Use>

- To transfer the current total counter value to the set address.

I. PING Confirmation

(1) Use

- To set the TCP/IP network diagnosis by PING.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Host Address] for PING transmission.
2. Select [Input Host Name], [IPv4 Address Input], or [IPv6 Address Input] and enter a host address.
3. Touch [Check Connection] key to check the connection.

J. SLP Setting

(1) Use

- To set whether to use SLP or not.
  Device search will be available with TWAIN by setting SLP enable.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Enable.

"Enable"	Disable

K. LPD Setting

(1) Use

- To set whether to use LPD during printing or not.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Enable.

"Enable"	Disable

L. Prefix/Suffix Setting

(1) ON/OFF Setting

<Use>

- To set whether to add prefix or suffix to the address when calling or entering an address.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

(2) Prefix/Suffix Setting

<Use>

- To register or change the prefix or suffix.
- Eight types of prefix and suffix can be added.
  Prefix: Letters added to the top of the text (header part)
  Suffix: Letters added to the bottom of the text (footer part)

<Procedure>

- Available number to be registered as prefix is up to 20 characters.
- Available number to be registered as suffix is up to 64 characters.

M. Error Code Display Setting

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to display an error code when a network-related error occurs.
- To help to identify the cause of network error by displaying an error code.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

10.6.52 Network Settings-IEEE802.1X Authentication Settings

A. Use

- To set whether or not to use IEEE802.1X authentication.
- To display IEEE802.1X authentication status.
- To initialize IEEE802.1X authentication settings.

NOTE

- **IEEE802.1X authentication settings are made with PageScope Web Connection.**

B. Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

<Auth. Status>

- Displays present IEEE802.1X authentication status.

<Reset Job Settings>

- Returns all IEEE802.1X authentication settings to initial values.

<Certificate Verification Level Settings>

- Sets a certificate verification method for server certificate verification.

Expiration Date	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.
CN	: Select whether to check that the CN of the server certificate matches the server address.
Chain	: Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine.

10.6.53 Network Settings-Web Browser Setting

- It will be displayed only when the optional i-Option (LK-101 v2 or LK-103 v2) is activated.

A. Use

- To set whether to use the web browser function.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Enable.

"Enable" Invalid

10.6.54 Network Settings-Bluetooth Setting

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to “Invalid.”
  [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Bluetooth Settings]

A. Use

- To set whether to enable or disable the Bluetooth function.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Enable.

“Enable”	Invalid

10.6.55 Copier Settings-Auto Zoom (Platen)

A. Use

- To set whether to function the auto zoom when the tray is selected with document set on the original glass (excepting at automatic paper selection mode.)

B. Use

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	“OFF”

10.6.56 Copier Settings-Auto Zoom (ADF)

A. Use

- To set whether to function the auto zoom when the feed tray is selected with document set on the ADF (excepting at automatic paper selection mode.)

B. Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

“ON”	OFF

10.6.57 Copier Settings-Specify Default Tray when APS OFF

A. Use

- To set the tray to be used when APS is cancelled.
- To set the tray (tray 1) for the default setting when cancelling APS.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Tray Before APS ON.

“Tray Before APS ON”	Default Tray

10.6.58 Copier Settings-Select Tray for Insert Sheet

A. Use

- To select the initial value for the tray for the cover sheet paper.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Tray 2.

10.6.59 Copier Settings-Print Jobs During Copy Operation

A. Use

- To set whether to receive printing jobs for print data or fax data during copy operation.
- To restrict receiving printing jobs for print data or fax data during copy operation.

  Accept : Receives the print data or fax data and print
  Receive Only : Print data or fax data will be printed when the copy operation is finished

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Accept.

"Accept" Receive Only

10.6.60 Copier Settings-Automatic Image Rotation

A. Use

- Select whether or not the image is automatically rotated when the document and copy paper orientations are different.

  When Auto Paper / Auto Zoom / Reduce is set : If the "Auto" Paper setting, "Auto" Zoom setting or a Reduce setting is selected, the image is automatically rotated to fit the orientation of the paper.
  When Auto Paper / Auto Zoom is set : If the "Auto" Paper setting or "Auto" Zoom setting is selected, the image is automatically rotated to fit the orientation of the paper.
  When Auto Zoom / Reduce is set : If the "Auto" Zoom setting or a Reduce setting is selected, the image is automatically rotated to fit the orientation of the paper.
  When Auto Zoom is set : If the "Auto" Zoom setting is selected, the image is automatically rotated to fit the orientation of the paper.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is When Auto Paper / Auto Zoom is set.

When Auto Paper / Auto Zoom / Reduce is set "When Auto Paper / Auto Zoom is set"
When Auto Zoom / Reduce is set When Auto Zoom is set

10.6.61 Copier Settings-Card Shot Settings

A. Layout

(1) Use

- To set the initial copy layout setting in card shot mode.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Top/Bottom.

"Top/Bottom" Left/Right (Top Half) Left/Right

B. Zoom

(1) Use

- To set the initial zoom setting in card shot mode.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Full Size.

"Full Size"	x 1.0

C. Store Original Size

(1) Use

- To pre-register original sizes that are used in card shot mode.

(2) Procedure

- Enter an original size, name it, and register the data.

10.6.62 Printer Settings-USB Timeout

A. Use

- To set a period of time that elapses before input and output timeouts of communication are activated.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 60 seconds for input and output timeouts.

"60 seconds" (10 to 1000 seconds)

10.6.63 Printer Settings-Network Timeout

A. Use

- To set a period of time that elapses before input and output timeouts of communication are activated.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 60 seconds for input and output timeouts.

"60 seconds" (10 to 1000 seconds)

10.6.64 Printer Settings-Print XPS Errors

A. Use

- To set whether to print error information when an error occurs while printing a XPS file.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes	"No"

10.6.65 Printer Settings-PSWC Direct Print

A. Use

- To set whether or not to allow direct print with PageScope Web Connection.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes	"No"

10.6.66 Printer Settings-Assign Account to Acquire Device Info

A. Use

- Specify whether this machine requests the password from the Windows printer driver when the Windows printer driver acquires device information, for example, which options are installed in this machine.
  - Yes : Sets a password. By setting a password, the speed at which the printer driver obtains the machine information increases.
  - No : Does not set a password. The machine authenticates the printer driver with the OpenAPI feature.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

10.6.67 Fax Settings

- Settings are available only when the optional fax kit (FK-502) is mounted.

10.6.68 Fax Settings-Header Information

A. Use

- To register the name of the sender and fax ID which will be printed when transmitting fax.

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Sender] and enter the name of the sender (up to 30 characters) on the on-screen keyboard.
2. Enter Sender Fax No. (up to 20 characters) using the 10-key pad and [+], [Space] displayed on the screen.

10.6.69 Fax Settings-Header/Footer Position

A. Header Position

(1) Use

- To set the position to print the header when transmitting fax.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Outside Body Text.

Inside Body Text "Outside Body Text" OFF

NOTE

- **[Outside Body Text] cannot be selected for Internet Fax/IP Address Fax.**

B. Print Receiver's Name

- It will not be displayed on the screen when [Fax Target] is set to beside "US" or "HK" in the following settings.
  [Service Mode] → [System 1] → [Marketing Area]

(1) Use

- To set whether to print the information of TX destination (Registered name or Fax No.) when transmitting fax.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

C. Footer Position

(1) Use

- To set whether to print the footer when transmitting fax.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

Inside Body Text	Outside Body Text	"OFF"

NOTE

- **[Outside Body Text] cannot be selected for the color mode of Internet Fax/IP Address Fax.**

10.6.70 Fax Settings-Line Parameter Setting

A. Dialing Method

(1) Use

- To set the dialing method.
- The displays are different depending on the country.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is PB.

"PB"	10 pps

NOTE

- **The displays are different depending on the country.**

B. Receive Mode

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that management device 2 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

(1) Use

- To set the fax reception mode.
- To change to manual reception when using the remote reception function, etc. when connected to the external telephone.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Auto RX.

"Auto RX"	Manual RX

C. Number of RX Call Rings

(1) Use

- To set the number of times to receive call rings.
- To change the number of times of the fake ringback tone after it starts calling until it starts receiving.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 2 X.

"2 X" (0 to 15)

D. Number of Redials

(1) Use

- To set the number of redials.
- To change the number of times to redial when the line is busy, etc.
- The line which can be set up is different depending on the country.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 3 X.

"3 X" (0 to 7)

NOTE

- **The line which can be set up is different depending on the country.**

E. Redial Interval

(1) Use

- To set the interval for redialing.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 3 min.

"3 min" (1 to 15)

F. Line Monitor Sound

(1) Use

- To set whether to output the line monitor sound from the speaker or not.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

G. Line Monitor Sound Vol.

(1) Use

- To set the volume of the speaker.

(2) Procedure

- Change the volume by touching the [Lower] or [Higher].

10.6.71 Fax Settings-TX/RX Settings

A. Duplex Print (RX)

- It will not be displayed when [Print Separate Fax Pages] is set to "ON."

(1) Use

- To set whether to carry out the duplex print for the received original when receiving fax.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

B. Letter/Ledger over A4/A3

(1) Use

- To set weather to use the inch paper priority when receiving fax.

(2) Procedure

ON OFF

NOTE

- **The default setting is different depending on the country.**

C. Print Paper Selection

(1) Use

- To set the priority for paper feed tray when receiving fax.
  Auto select : Selected automatically.
  Priority Size : Printed on size with priority. When the size is not set, it will be printed on the closest size.
  Fixed Size : Printed only on the fixed size.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Auto Select.

"Auto Select" Fixed Size Priority Size

D. Print Paper Size

(1) Use

- To set the paper size to print the text when receiving fax.
- The displays are different depending on the country.
- To make the setting of [Print Paper Size] enable, set [Tray Selection for RX Print] to [Auto].

(2) Procedure

- The initial setting is A4.

A3 B4 "A4"

NOTE

- **The displays are different depending on the country.**

E. Incorrect User Box No. Entry

(1) Use

- To set the operation when the unregistered box number is entered.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Print.

"Print" Show Error Message Auto Create User Box

F. Tray Selection for RX Print

(1) Use

- To select the paper tray to be fixed when printing the received text.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Auto.
- Items available for selection are different depending on the paper feed option mounted.

"Auto" Tray 1 Tray 2 Tray 3 Tray 4

G. Min. Reduction for RX Print

(1) Use

- To set the print magnification for received text.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 96.

"96" (87 to 96, x1.0)

H. Print Separate Fax Pages

- It will not be displayed when [Duplex print (RX)] is set to "ON."

(1) Use

- To set whether to divide the original into pages when it is longer than the standard size.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

I. File After Polling TX

(1) Use

- To set whether to delete the original which polling transmission has been completed.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Delete.

"Delete" Save

J. No. of Sets (RX)

(1) Use

- To set the number of copies to be printed with the received document.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 1 set.

1 to 10 set.

△2 **K. Individual Receiving Line Setup**

- It will be displayed only when the optional FAX kit (FK-502) line 2 is installed and the following setting is set to "TX and RX" or "RX Only".
  [Administrator Settings] → [Fax Settings] → [Multi Line Settings] → [Multi Line Settings] → [Line 2 Setting]

(1) Use

- Specify whether to configure the individual receiving line setup.
- When this setting is set to "ON," the following settings can be made separately for each fax line:
  Forward TX setting, TSI User Box Setting, PC-FAX RX setting, Memory RX Setting

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

L. Individual Sender Line Setup

- It will be displayed only when the optional FAX kit (FK-502) line 2 is installed and the following setting is set to "TX and RX" or "TX Only".
  [Administrator Settings] → [Fax Settings] → [Multi Line Settings] → [Multi Line Settings] → [Line 2 Setting]

(1) Use

- Specify whether to configure the individual sender line setup.
- When this setting is set to "ON," the following settings can be made separately for each fax line:
  Header Information

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

10.6.72 Fax Settings-Function Settings

A. Function ON/OFF Setting

(1) F-Code TX

<Use>

- To set whether to use the F code transmission.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

NOTE

- **When the setting is changed, turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.**

(2) Relay RX

- It will be displayed when the following setting is set to "ON."
  [Service Mode] → [FAX] → [System] → [Display Setting] → [Relay]

<Use>

- To set whether to use the relay RX function.
- To use the machine as the relay delivery station during relay TX.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

(3) Relay Printing

- It will be displayed when the following setting is set to "ON."
  [Service Mode] → [FAX] → [System] → [Display Setting] → [Relay]

<Use>

- To set whether to use the relay print function.
- To print out the document that the machine relayed during relay TX.
- The relay print will be output in the following case.
  1. When the relay delivery completes appropriately.
  2. When the delivery job is cancelled halfway by turning OFF sub power switch.
  3. When the delivery job is cancelled due to redial over.
  4. When main power switch is turned OFF/ON during relay print error.
  5. When delivery job is deleted in user operation during redialing.
  6. When delivery job is deleted in user operation during relay delivery.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

(4) Destination Check Display Function

<Use>

- To set whether or not to display the list of specified addresses when sending the fax.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

(5) Confirm Address (TX)

<Use>

- To set whether to use Confirm Address (the machine displays the screen where the user reenters the fax number for confirmation when the user faxes by entering the fax number directly with the keys).

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

(6) Confirm Address (Register)

<Use>

- To set whether to use Confirm Address (the machine displays the screen where the user reenters the fax number for confirmation when the user faxes by entering the fax number directly with the keys).

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

B. Memory RX Setting

- It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to “ON.”
  [Service Mode] → [FAX] → [System] → [Display Setting] → [Compulsory Memory RX]
- It will not be displayed when [PC-FAX RX Setting], [Forward TX Setting] or [TSI User Box Setting] is set to “ON.”

△2

(1) Use

- To set whether to use the forced memory RX function.
- To store the received text in the hard disk without printing, and print it out when ordered.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is NO.
- Enter the password (up to 8 digits) for printing when set to [ON].

C. Closed Network RX

- It will be displayed when the following setting is set to “ON.”
  [Service Mode] → [FAX] → [System] → [Display Setting] → [Closed area RX]

(1) Use

- To set whether to use the closed network function.
- To receive data only from the device which password matches.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.
- When set to [ON], enter the password (up to 4 digits) to be used.

D. Forward TX Setting

- It will not be displayed when [PC-FAX RX Setting], [Memory RX] or [TSI User Box Setting] is set to “ON.”
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that Vendor or Authentication Device is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

(1) Use

- To set whether to use the forward fax function.
- To forward the received text to the receiver which has been specified.
  Forward & Print : Forward the received text, and print all out
  Forward & Print (If TX Fails): Forward the received text, and prints out only when fails to be forwarded

(2) Procedure

<Forward TX Setting>

- The default setting is No.
- When set to [Yes], set the address to forward to.

E. Incomplete TX Hold

- It will be displayed when the following setting is set to "ON."
  [Service Mode] → [FAX] → [System] → [Display Setting] → [Re-Transmission]
- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that management device 2 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

(1) Use

- To set whether to use incomplete TX hold function.
- To re-send the data failed to be sent after a given time.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

- When set to Yes, specify the Incomplete TX Hold Time.

F. PC-Fax RX Setting

- It will not be displayed when [Forward TX Setting], [Memory RX] or [TSI User Box Setting] is set to "ON."

(1) Use

- To set whether to use the PC-FAX reception function.
- To store the received text file in the box in the hard disk.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Restrict.

Allow "Restrict"

- When Allow is selected, make the settings of Receiving user box destination, Print ON/OFF, and Password check ON/OFF.

G. TSI User Box Setting

- It will not be displayed when [Forward TX Setting], [Memory RX] or [PC-Fax RX Setting] is set to "ON."

(1) Use

- To set whether to use TSI distribution or not.
- To set setting method when there is no matched box at receiving.
  Automatically Print : To print the received data.
  Memory RX Use Box : To store the received data in the forced memory receiving box.

(2) Procedure

<TSI User Box Setting>

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

- Press [TSI User Box Registration] and register the distribution.

<Non-matched Box Setting>

- The default setting is Automatically Print.

"Automatically Print" Memory RX User Box

10.6.73 Fax Settings-PBX Connection Setting

A. Use

- To set whether to use PBX connection setting or not.
- This will be used when the machine is connected to PBX line.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is No.
- When set to [Yes], enter the external number between 0 and 9999.

10.6.74 Fax Settings-Report Settings

A. Activity Report

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that vendor or authentication device is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

(1) Use

- To set whether to print out the activity report or not, and also the timing for printing.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

- When this setting is set to ON, make the setting of Output Setting.
- The default setting is Every 100 Comm.

Daily "Every 100 Comm." 100/ Daily

B. TX Result Report

(1) Use

- To set whether to print out the TX report, and also the timing for printing.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is If TX Fails.

ON "If TX Fails" OFF

C. Sequential TX Report

(1) Use

- To set whether to print out the sequential TX report or not.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

D. Timer Reservation TX Report

(1) Use

- To set whether to print out the reservation TX or not.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

E. Confidential RX Report

(1) Use

- To set whether to print out the confidential RX report.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

F. Bulletin TX Report

(1) Use

- To set whether to print out the bulletin TX report or not.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

G. Relay TX Result Report

- It will be displayed when the following setting is set to "ON."
  [Service Mode] → [FAX] → [System] → [Display Setting] → [Relay]

(1) Use

- To set whether to print out the relay TX result report or not.
- To print out the relay TX result report after the relay delivery is completed when the machine is used as the relay delivery station.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

H. Relay Request Report

- It will be displayed when the following setting is set to "ON."
  [Service Mode] → [FAX] → [System] → [Display Setting] → [Relay]

(1) Use

- To set whether to print out the relay request RX report or not.
- To print out the relay request RX report during relay request RX when the machine is used as the relay delivery station.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

I. PC-Fax TX Error Report

(1) Use

- To set whether to print out the PC-fax TX error report or not.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

J. Broadcast Result Report

(1) Use

- To set the format to output the broadcast result report.
  All Destinations : Outputs all reports after transmitting to all addresses
  Each Destination : Outputs a report after each transmission

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is All Destinations.

"All Destinations" Each Destination

K. TX Result Report Check

(1) Use

- To set whether to display the TX result report screen.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

L. Network Fax RX Error Report

- Settings will be available when either [IP Address Fax] or [Internet Fax] is set to "ON" in the following settings.
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Setting] → [Network Fax Setting] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

(1) Use

- To set whether to print RX error report when network fax function is being used.
- To print the error report at unusual situation such as receiving the image data that cannot be processed.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON

"ON" OFF

M. MDN Message

- Settings will be available only when [Internet Fax] is set to "ON" in the following settings.
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Setting] → [Network Fax Setting] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

(1) Use

- To set whether to print message when receiving response message to MDN request when internet fax function is being used.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON

"ON" OFF

N. DSN Message

- Settings will be available only when [Internet Fax] is set to “ON” in the following settings. [Administrator Settings] → [Network Setting] → [Network Fax Setting] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

(1) Use

- To set whether to print message when receiving response message to DSN request when network fax function is being used.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

O. Print E-mail Message Body

- Settings will be available only when [Internet Fax] is set to “ON” in the following settings. [Administrator Settings] → [Network Setting] → [Network Fax Setting] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

(1) Use

- To set whether to print mail text received normally as the report when internet fax function is being used.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

“ON” OFF

10.6.75 Fax Settings-Job Settings List

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that Vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]
  (It will be displayed when the key counter is mounted or when the following setting shows that switch No.33 is set to [01] at HEX assignment.
  [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Software Switch Setting])

(1) Use

- The set value list of the fax set up into this machine can be printed.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Administrator Settings] → [Fax Setting] → [Job Settings List].
2. Select the feed tray.
3. Select the simplex or duplex print, and touch the Start key.

10.6.76 Fax Settings-Multi Lines Settings

- It will be displayed only when the optional fax kit (FK-502) line 2 is mounted.

A. Line Parameter Setting

(1) Dialing Method

<Use>

- To set the dial method for the expanded line.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is PB.

"PB" 10 pps

NOTE

- **The displays are different depending on the country.**

(2) Number of Rx Call Rings

<Use>

- To set the number of RX call rings for the expanded line.
- To change the number of artificial ringback tones with expanded line when receiving calls until it starts receiving operation.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is 2 X.

"2 X" (0 to 15)

(3) Line Monitor Sound

<Use>

- To set whether or not to output the line monitor sound of the expanded line from the speaker.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

B. Function Settings

(1) PC-FAX TX Setting

- This setting does not appear when "RX Only" is selected for [Multi Line Settings].

<Use>

- To set the number of the line used for PC-FAX transmission.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is No Selection.

"No Selection" Line 1 Line 2

C. Multi Lines Setting

(1) Use

- To set the system for using each line when using more than one line.

(2) Procedure

<Multi Line Usage>

- When selecting [Normal], perform the transmission setting for Line 2.

<Line 2 Setting>

- The default setting is TX and RX.

"TX and RX" RX Only TX Only

D. Sender Fax No.

(1) Use

- To register the fax ID when using the additional line.

(2) Procedure

- Use 10-key pad or [+] / [space], enter the fax ID (up to 20 characters).

10.6.77 Fax Settings-Network Fax Settings

- It will be displayed only when either [IP Address Fax] or [Internet Fax] is set to "ON" in the following settings.
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [Network Fax Settings] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

A. Black Compression Level

- It will be displayed only when either [IP Address Fax] or [Internet Fax] is set to "ON" in the following settings.
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [Network Fax Settings] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

(1) Use

- To set black compression level at black TX mode when network fax function is being used.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is MH.

"MH" MR MMR

B. Color/Grayscale Multi-Value Compression Method

- It will be displayed only when either [IP Address Fax] or [Internet Fax] is set to "ON" in the following settings.
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [Network Fax Settings] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

(1) Use

- To set a color/black multi value compression method used when faxing selecting JPEG or PDF as a file format under network fax operation.
  JPEG (Color) : Data is compressed in color JPEG format.
  JPEG (Gray Scale) : Data is compressed in monochrome JPEG format.
  Unset : Data transmission in color or grayscale is disabled. Data is compressed in black and white (binary) with a specified compression method.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is JPEG (Color).

"JPEG (Color)" JPEG (Gray Scale) Unset

C. Internet Fax Self Rx Ability

- It will be displayed only when [Internet Fax] is set to "ON" in the following settings.
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [Network Fax Settings] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

(1) Use

- To set image data compression system, paper size and resolution, which can be received by the machine with internet fax.

(2) Procedure

- The following shows the options of each setting item.

Compression Type	Paper Size	Resolution
JPEG (Color)	A3	600 x 600 (Ultra Fine)
JPEG (Gray Scale)	B4	400 x 400 (Super Fine)
MMR	A4	200 x 200 (Fine)
MR	—	200 x 100 (Std.)
MH	—	—

D. I-Fax Advanced Settings

- It will be displayed only when [Internet Fax] is set to "ON" in the following settings. [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [Network Fax Settings] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

(1) Use

- To set advanced functions of internet fax.

MDN Request	: To set whether to send MDN (Message Disposition Notification) request when transmitting through internet fax.
DSN Request	: To set whether to send DSN (Delivery Status Notification) request when transmitting through internet fax.
MDN Response	: To set whether to response for MDN request made by the other machine when receiving through internet fax.
MDN/DSN Response Watch Time	: To set the period to observe the response from the other machine when sending MDN/DSN request. In the case of time over, time out message is notified.
Max Resolution	: To set maximum resolution for reading, TX/RX and record when internet fax function is being used.
Add Content-Type Information	: To set whether or not to add Content-Type information when using Internet fax. When [Yes] is selected, "application=faxbw" is added as sub-type to MIME Content-Type header.

NOTE

- **Only MDN Request will be sent when both MDN Request and DSN Request are set to "ON."**

(2) Procedure

- Default settings are shown below.

MDN Request	: "ON"	OFF
DSN Request	: ON	"OFF"
MDN Response	: "ON"	OFF
MDN/DSN Response Watch Time	: "24 hours" (1 to 99)	OFF
Max Resolution	: 400 x 400	"600 x 600"
Add Content-Type Information	: Yes	"Do Not Send"

E. IP Address Fax Operation Settings

- It will not be displayed when [IP Address Fax Function] is set to “OFF” in the following settings.
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [Network Fax Settings] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

(1) Use

- To set the operational mode applied to IP address fax.
  Mode1: This mode allows communication between Konica Minolta models capable of transmitting IP address faxes and models compatible with the Direct SMTP standard defined by CIAJ. However, a unique method developed for Konica Minolta models is used to transmit a color fax.
  Mode2: This mode allows communication between Konica Minolta models capable of transmitting IP address faxes and models compatible with the Direct SMTP standard defined by CIAJ. The transmission in color mode is performed in the communication mode (Profile-C format) compatible with the Direct SMTP standard.

(2) Procedure

<Operation Mode>

- The default setting is Mode1.

“Mode1” Mode2

- When selecting Mode 2, make color original transmission settings.

10.6.78 System Connection-OpenAPI Settings

A. Access Setting

(1) Use

- To allow or restrict the access from other systems with OpenAPI when using PageScope Data Administrator.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Allow.

“Allow” Restrict

B. SSL/Port Settings

(1) Use

- To set the SSL/access port for other systems with OpenAPI.

(2) Procedure

<SSL Setting>

- The default setting is Non-SSL Only.

"Non-SSL Only" SSL Only SSL/Non-SSL

<Port No./Port No.(SSL)>

1. Select Port No. or Port No. (SSL), and touch [Input].
2. Press the Clear key.
3. Enter the port number between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

<Client Certificates>

- The default setting is Do Not Request.

Request "Do Not Request"

<Certificate Verification Level Settings>

Expiration Date	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.
Key Usage	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.
Chain	: Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine.
Expiration Date Confirmation	: Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.
CN	: Select whether to check that the CN of the server certificate matches the server address.

C. Authentication

(1) Use

- To set whether to authenticate access of other systems which uses OpenAPI when using PageScope Data Administrator.
- To set authentication of the access from other systems using OpenAPI.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

- When setting to [ON], enter the login name and the password to be set.

10.6.79 System Connection-Call Remote Center

- It will be displayed when the setup at the CS Remote Care center is complete.

A. Use

- To call the CS Remote Care center from the administrator, when the CS Remote Care setup is complete.

B. Procedure

For details, see “CS Remote Care.”
See P.399

10.6.80 System Connection-Automatic Prefix/Suffix Setting

(1) Use

- Select whether to automatically add prefix and suffix to a destination number.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

10.6.81 System Connection-Printer Information

- It will be displayed only when the optional local interface kit EK-605 is mounted.

A. Use

- Specify [Printer Name], [Printer Location], [Printer Information], and [Printer URI]. The [Printer Information] setting is linked to [Printer Information] in [HTTP Server Settings].

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Printer Information].
2. Enter the printer name, printer location and printer information using the keyboard on the display.
3. Touch [Printer URI], and confirm the printer URI information.

10.6.82 System Connection-Cellular Phone/PDA Setting

- It will be displayed only when the optional local interface kit EK-605 is mounted.

A. Use

- Specify whether to allow the user to print data in a cellular phone or PDA or save such data in a User Box.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Restrict.

Allow “Restrict”

10.6.83 Security Settings-Administrator Password

A. Use

- To set/change the administrator password.

B. Procedure

- Enter the administrator password on the on-screen keyboard.
  Current Password : Enter the current administrator password
  New Password : Enter the new administrator password to be used
  Re-Input Password : Re-enter the new administrator password

NOTE

- **When selecting [Utility/Counter] → [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Security Details] leads to [Password Rules] being ON, the password with the same letters, the password which is same as the previous one and the password of less than eight digits cannot be changed.**

10.6.84 Security Settings-User Box Admin. Setting

- Setting is disabled if user authentication or account track is not performed.

A. Use

- To set whether to allow or restrict the box administrator to use the system.
- To allow the box administrator to use the system.
  The box administrator is the special administrator for box, who is allowed to browse contents in common box / individual box without the password.

NOTE

- **[Allow] cannot be set when the user authentication or account track is not carried out.**

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Restrict.

Allow “Restrict”

NOTE

- **[Allow] cannot be selected when user authentication and account track are not conducted.**
- **[Allow] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to “ON.”**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode]

- Set the password when setting to [Allow].

NOTE

- **When the following setting shows that [Password Rules] is set to “ON”, the Password using only a single letter or the password same with the previous one, or the password with less than eight letters cannot be accepted.**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings]

10.6.85 Security Settings-Administrator Security Levels

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that vendor or authentication device 1 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. Use

- To set the level for administrator settings item open to the user.
- To make part of the administrator settings items open to the user.
  - Level 1 : [Power Save Setting], [Auto Magnification Selection (Platen)], [Auto Magnification Selection (ADF)], [Specify Default Tray when APS Off], [Select Tray for Insert Sheet] and [Card Shot Settings] are available to users.
  - Level 2 : [Power Save Setting], [Output Setting], [Date/Time Setting], [Daylight Savings Time Setting], [AE Level Adjustment], [Auto Magnification Selection (Platen)], [Auto Magnification Selection (ADF)], [Specify Default Tray when APS Off], [Select Tray for Insert Sheet], and [Print Jobs During Copy Operation] are available to users.
  - Prohibit : Not to allow the user to set neither Level 1 nor Level 2

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Prohibit.

Level 1 Level 2 “Prohibit”

10.6.86 Security Settings-Security Details

A. Password Rules

(1) Use

- To set whether to apply the password rules.
- To apply the password rule to enhance security.
- Passwords to be covered: CE password, administrator password, public user box password, user password, account track password, passwords for confidential documents, SNMPv3 WriteUser password, WebDAV server password.
- Details of the password rules:
  Password except user password, public user box password, SNMPv3 WriteUser password shall be 8 digits of one-bite alphanumeric characters. (Case-sensitive)
  User password shall be 8 to 64 digits of one-bite alphanumeric characters. (Case-sensitive)
  Public user box password shall be 8 digits of one-bite alphanumeric characters.
  SNMPv3 WriteUser password shall be 8 to 32 digits of one-bite alphanumeric characters.
  Password with only the same letter is prohibited.
  Password same with the one prior to change is prohibited.

When the password rule is set to [ON], the password cannot be changed or registered unless it follows the above conditions.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

NOTE

- **[OFF] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON."**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhances Security Mode]
- **[ON] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "OFF."**
  [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [CE Authentication]
  [CE Authentication] will not be displayed and cannot be set to "OFF" when [Password Rules] is set to "ON."

B. Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error

(1) Use

- To set the function for prohibiting authentication operation in order to prevent the unauthorized access.
- To use when setting the system to prohibit authentication failure when conducting authentication by password, etc.
- Authentications which are subjected to this function: CE authentication, administrator authentication, user+ accounts authentication, SNMP authentication, secure print authentication, user box authentication.

Mode 1 : When failed to authenticate, authentication operation (entering the password) will be prohibited for a certain period of time.

Mode 2 : When failed to authenticate, authentication operation (entering the password) will be prohibited for a certain period of time.
The number of times failure occurred will be counted, and when the number reaches to the specified time, authentication will be prohibited and the access will be locked.
When the access is locked, touch [Release] on the main body, or turn main power switch OFF/ON to cancel it.
For CE authentication and administrator authentication, only turning main power switch OFF/ON will cancel it.
When the machine goes into an access lock condition, release the lock in the following procedure.

User+ accounts authentication SNMP authentication Secure print authentication User box authentication	• Touch keys in the following order. [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Security Details] → [Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error]. Then touch [Release].
Administrator authentication	• After the main power switch is turned OFF and ON, the access lock is released automatically after the lapse of a predetermined period of time.
	• [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [Administrator unlocking]
CE authentication	• The lock release timer starts to operate by input the Stop → 0 → 9 → 3 → 1 → 7 in [Meter Count] → [Check Details] → [Coverage Rate] after the main power switch is turned OFF and On. When the timer reaches the time specified in this setting, the access lock is released.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Mode 1.

"Mode 1" Mode 2

NOTE

- **[Mode2] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON." [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode]**
- **Only the number of times for trials up to the access lock can be changed.**
- When [Mode 2] is selected, set the number of times where checks are made before access is locked.
- Touch [Release Time Settings] and set a period of time that elapses before access lock is released.

C. Confidential Document Access Method

(1) Use

- To display the status of the authentication system on the control panel for the confidential document access.
- It cannot be changed at the operator's option since it will automatically be set according to the [Prohibit Functions When Auth. Error] setting.
- It will be set to [Mode 1] when [Prohibit Functions When Auth. Error] is set to [Mode 1].
  It will be set to [Mode 2] when [Prohibit Functions when Auth. Error] is set to [Mode 2].

Mode 1 : This mode is for authentication by confidential document ID and password. It displays the list of the corresponding confidential document to print them.
Mode 2 : This mode is for authentication by confidential document ID. It displays the list of the corresponding confidential document, and print them with authentication by password.

NOTE

- **[Mode2] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON." [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode]**

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Mode 1.

"Mode 1" Mode 2

D. Manual Destination Input

(1) Use

- To set whether to allow or prohibit to manually enter the destination address on the destination Input screen.

△2 Allow All : Allows manual destination input in all transmission options.
Enable Functions Individually : Allows manual destination input only for G3 fax and restricts it in other transmission options.
Restrict : Hides the [Direct Input] tab to prevent you from directly entering destinations.

(2) Procedure

△2 • The default setting is Allow All.

"Allow All" Enable Functions Individually Restrict

E. Print Data Capture

(1) Use

- To set whether to allow or restrict capturing the print job data.
- To be used when carrying out [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Data capture].

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Allow.

"Allow"	Restrict

NOTE

- **[Allow] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON." [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode]**

F. Job Log Settings

(1) Use

- Selects whether to keep logs of operations and access made by users and service engineers.
- To set whether to overwrite existing logs.
- To ensure security, this settings is used to keep logs of operations and access including security settings changes, authentication, and job executions by users and service engineers.
- Logs are saved in HDD and NVRAM.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes	"No"

NOTE

- **After selecting "Yes", the main power switch must be turned OFF and ON so that the new setting takes effect.**
- **When ON is selected in [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode], this setting is automatically set to "Yes."**

<Overwrite>

- Set whether to allow or restrict overwriting existing logs when saving audit logs.
- The default setting is Restrict.

Allow	"Restrict"

- To erase audit logs, press [Erase Job Log].

G. Restrict Fax TX

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to prohibit sending fax.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON	"OFF"

H. Hide Personal Information

- It will not be displayed when the two settings below are as follows:
  The authentication device is set in [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Function Management Choice] → [Authentication Device].
  "NO" is selected in [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Function Management Settings] → [Authentication Device Setting] → [Job Confirmation Display].

(1) Use

- Selects whether to display file names and destinations in job logs.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

I. Hide Personal Information (MIB) 2

- It will not be displayed when the setting below is as follows:
  "ON" is selected in [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode].

(1) Use

- Specify whether to display the file name, address, or User Box number as MIB information in Job List.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

J. Display Activity Log

- It will not be displayed when both settings are as follows:
  The authentication device is set in [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Function Management Choice] → [Authentication Device].
  "NO" is selected in [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Function Management Settings] → [Authentication Device Setting] → [Job Confirmation Display].

(1) Use

- Selects whether to display communication logs for scan/fax transmission.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

K. Initialize

(1) Use

- All data of selected items is cleared.
- Data of the following items can be cleared.
  - Job history
  - Copy Program
  - Network Settings
  - One-Touch/User Box Registration

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Initialize].
2. Select the desired item to clear its data and touch [OK].
3. Select [Yes] on the confirmation screen and touch [OK] to initialize the data.

L. Job History Thumbnail Display

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to display a thumbnail of originals when displaying a job history.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

M. Secure Print Only

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to allow only Secure Print for print jobs from PC.
  When “ON” is selected in this setting, the Secure Print feature must be always used for printing from a printer driver. As all print jobs require ID or a password, output documents remains private.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

N. Copy Guard

- It will be displayed only when the optional security kit SC-507 is mounted.

(1) Use

- Specify whether to use the Copy Guard function.
  If [Copy Guard] is selected in [Application], you can embed copy inhibit information on paper.
- This is used upon set-up of the optional security kit SC-507.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes “No”

O. Password Copy

- It will be displayed only when the optional security kit SC-507 is mounted.

(1) Use

- Specify whether to use the Password Copy function.
  If [Password Copy] is selected in [Application], you can embed a password on paper. You can also detect a password embedded on paper.
- This is used upon set-up of the optional security kit SC-507.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

P. Web browser contents access

(1) Use

- To set whether to enable or disable access to locally-stored files (pre-installed contents, image files, and help files) from the web browser that is interacting with MFP via OpenAPI applications.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is Allow.

"Allow" Restrict

* When using the application where server authentication is carried out by web browser extensions, [Allow] is automatically selected.

10.6.87 Security Settings-Enhanced Security Mode

A. Use

- To set whether or not to enhance security.
- To use when enhancing the security function at user's option.
- The following settings are necessary for setting the security enhancement "ON".

Administrator Password	: Change it with the one which meets password rules.
User Authentication	: Set to "User Authentication (MFP)" or "User Authentication (External Server)".
HDD encryption word	: Set the encryption word with 20 characters.
SSL Certificate	: Register self-certificate for SSL communication from the PSWC.
Image Controller Setting	: Set to [Controller 0].
CE Password	: Change it with the one which meets password rules.
CE Authentication	: Set to [ON].
Image Controller Setting	: Set to [Controller 0].
Management Function Choice	: Set to "Unset."

B. Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

NOTE

2 **• Note that setting Enhanced Security Mode to "ON" disables the following functions.**

Terminal Debug (forcibly prohibited when Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON")

Print Data Capture (forcibly prohibited when Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON")

In CS Remote Care, the following operation is prohibited.

Rewriting instructions of firmware, communication of the account track counter information, the setting renewal of the machine

Firmware upgrading through Internet ISW (When the Enhanced Security Mode is set to ON, the setting of this function cannot be changed from "OFF.")

- **Setting the Enhanced Security Mode "ON" will change the setting values for the following functions.**

2

Function Name	Default Setting	When Enhanced Security mode is set to [ON]
Password Rules • To apply the password rule to enhance security.	OFF	ON (not to be changed)
Prohibit Functions When Auth. Error • To set the function for prohibiting Authentication operation in order to prevent the unauthorized access.	Mode 1	Mode 2 (not to be changed): Three times is set. * The number of times can be changed to once, twice, or three times. (It is twice, four or six times for WebDAV server password.)
Secure Document Access Method • To display the status of the Authentication system on the control panel for the Confidential document access.	Mode1	Mode 2 (not to be changed) * In association with Prohibit Functions When Auth. Error, the method is changed from authentication using Secure Document ID and password (Mode 1) to that using the password with the Secure Document first narrowed down by Secure Document ID (Mode 2).
Public User Access • To permit use by a public user having no user registration if user authentication setting has been made.	Restrict	Restrict (not to be changed)
User List • To display the list key for User names on User Authentication screen.	OFF	OFF (not to be changed)
Print without Authentication • To allow or restrict printing which user and account are not specified.	Restrict	Restrict (not to be changed)

Function Name	Default Setting	When Enhanced Security mode is set to [ON]
User Box Admin. Setting • To set whether to allow or restrict the Box Administrator to use the system.	Restrict	Restrict (not to be changed)
SSL • To set whether to encrypt access by SSL.	OFF	ON (not to be changed)
SSL Encryption Strength • To set the SSL encryption strength for the SSL encryption communication.	AES-256, 3DES-168, RC4-128,DES-56, RC4-40	AES/3DES (not to be changed to one containing strength lower than AES/3DES)
Automatically Obtain Certificates of S/MIME	No	No (not to be changed)
S/MIME Encryption Method	3DES	3DES (not to be changed to DES or RC-2)
FTP Server • To set whether to use FTP server or not.	ON	OFF (not to be changed)
SNMPv1/v2c • To use when changing Write setting.	Read/Write enable	Only Read is enabled (not to be changed)
SNMP v3 Security Level and auth/priv-password • To set the security level for the Reading/Writing Authority User which is used for SNMP v3.	auth/priv-password	The security level can be selected from among [authpassword] and [auth/priv-password]. An 8-digit-or-more auth-password and priv-password can both be set.
Print Data Capture • To set whether to allow or restrict capturing the Print Job Data.	Allow	Restrict (not to be changed)
Network Setting Clear • To clear the network setting through PageScope Web Connection.	Enabled	Restrict
Administrator Password Change Via Network • To clear the network setting through PageScope Web Connection.	Enabled	Restrict (not to be changed)
Release Time Settings • To set the period of time to be elapsed before the access lock state is released.	5 min.	The setting value should be 5 min. or more (no value less than 5 can be set)
Destination Registration Change by User (Address Book and Program destination)	Enabled	Restrict (not to be changed)
Secure Print User Box Preview	Thumbnail View, Detail View, and Document Details are enabled	Only Detail View is enabled before password authentication (Mode 2)

Function Name	Default Setting	When Enhanced Security mode is set to [ON]
Initialize (Network Settings) • To clear the network related settings.	Enabled	Restrict (not to be changed)
Image Log Transfer Settings • Specifies whether to transfer the input or output image data to the server using whenever MFP inputs or outputs image data.	OFF	OFF (not to be changed)
Internet ISW Set • To set firmware upgrading by Internet ISW, and enable or disable various settings.	OFF	OFF (not to be changed)
Operation Ban release time • To set the period of time to be elapsed before the access lock state is released in CE password authentication.	5 min.	The setting value should be 5 min. or more (no value less than 5 can be set)

10.6.88 Security Settings-HDD Settings

A. Check HDD Capacity

(1) Use

- To display the used space capacity, total space capacity, and the remaining capacity of the hard disk.
- To check the capacity and the status of use of the hard disk.

B. Overwrite HDD Data

- When the image becomes unnecessary, temporary data overwrite function will write meaningless data over all area where images are stored, and destroy the image data itself.
  The structure of image data will be destroyed so that in case HDD is stolen, the remaining data included in the image data will not leak. Using the HDD lock password function or HDD encryption function along with this function will provide a high level of security which prevents images of great importance from leaking. It is recommended to use HDD lock password function or HDD encryption function along with this function for those who require high level of security.

(1) Use

- To set whether or not to use overwrite temporary data.
- To set overwriting method to use temporary data overwrite function.
- To use when making temporary data overwrite function valid.
- All data are temporarily written into HDD during PC print, copier print, scanning and fax transmission. When the operation is complete, perform overwriting to the area data were once written in HDD in order to enhance security.
- To change overwriting method to use temporary data overwrite function.
  Mode 1: To overwrite 0x00 one time.
  Mode 2: Overwrite 0x00 → overwrite 0xff → overwrite 0x61 →validation

- "Encryption Priority/Overwrite Priority" can be selected.
  Encryption Priority : When the encryption word is set, the security level of the data will be enhanced before writing to HDD. When erasing data, they will all be converted into encryption data before overwritten. Therefore, overwriting will be executed with the value besides the value specified by the selected mode.
  Overwrite Priority : Standard encryption method will be applied to data written to HDD even when the encryption word is set, so overwriting and erasing will be performed without fail using the specified value in the selected mode.
  It is used for performing the overwriting and erasing according to the HDD data erase standard.

NOTE

- **It is necessary to make HDD format when encryption priority/overwrite priority setting is changed.**

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON "OFF"

When selecting [ON], select an overwrite method.

- The default setting is Mode 1.

"Mode 1" Mode 2

NOTE

- **[OFF] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON."**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode]

- The default setting is Encryption Priority.

"Encryption Priority" Overwrite Priority

C. Overwrite All Data

(1) Use

- To delete the whole data in the hard disk by overwriting.
- To initialize the area of use for the user stored in NVRAM.
- To use when disposing of the hard disk.
- Select the overwriting method from Mode 1 through 8.

  Mode 1 : It overwrites 0x00 once.

  Mode 2 : Overwrites with random numbers → overwrites with random numbers → overwrites with 0x00

  Mode 3 : Overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff → overwrites with random numbers → verifies

  Mode 4 : Overwrites with random numbers → overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff

  Mode 5 : Overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff → overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff

  Mode 6 : Overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff → overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff → overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff → overwrites with random numbers

  Mode 7 : Overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff → overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff → overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff → overwrites with 0xaa

  Mode 8 : Overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff → overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff → overwrites with 0x00 → overwrites with 0xff → overwrites with 0xaa → verifies

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Overwrite All Data].
2. Touch [Overwrite].
3. Touch [Yes] on the check screen.
4. Touch [YES] on the confirmation screen.
5. Turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

D. HDD Lock Password

(1) Use

- To set the lock password for the hard disk.
- To enter, change or delete the lock password for the hard disk.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [HDD Lock Password].
2. Enter the password (20 characters) on the on-screen keyboard, and touch [OK].

NOTE

- **Password using only a single letter is not acceptable.**
- **Don't forget the password. When the password is forgotten, the replacement of hard disk is needed.**
- **After setting a lock password, if you replace the HDD due to its breakage or other reasons and install a new HDD, an error message is displayed. In that case, clear the HDD lock password and set a new password with the procedure shown below.**

3. Re-enter the password to confirm.
4. Turn OFF the main power switch and turn it ON again more than 10 seconds after.

E. Format HDD

(1) Use

- To conduct logical formatting of HDD.

NOTE

- **It is subject to logical formatting here, therefore if starting with physical formatting, follow as [Service Mode] → [State Confirmation] → [Memory/HDD Adj.] → [HDD Format].**

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [HDD Formatting].
2. Select [Yes] on the confirmation screen and touch [OK].
3. Turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

F. HDD Encryption Setting

(1) Use

- To re-set encrypting word due to exchange of NVRAM board or etc.

NOTE

- **HDD formatting is required after this setting. Therefore it is necessary to retrieve certain data from HDD in advance.**
  The following data will be lost after HDD formatting.
  ① Address data
  ② Authentication data : Authentication mode, user authentication setting, account track setting
  ③ Box setting data : Box and text in the box, setting information of each box, box for fax
  ④ Job history, fax transmission history

⚠ **And after setting the HDD encryption key, the movie data and OCR dictionary data need to be reinstalled as necessary since these data will be deleted by HDD format.**

⚠ • **If you replace the HDD due to its breakage or other reasons, you can automatically reset the encryption key by installing a new HDD and performing the logical format.**

(2) Procedure

1. Press [HDD Encryption Setting].
2. Enter encryption key (20 characters) with the keyboard on the operation panel and press [OK].

NOTE

- **Double-byte and identical characters are not acceptable.**

3. Turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.
4. Open [Administrator Settings] and conduct HDD formatting according to the instruction appeared on the panel.
5. Turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

10.6.89 Security Settings-Function Management Setting

A. Each Function Setting

- It will be displayed only when the following setting shows that Vendor 2 or Management Device is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

(1) Use

- To set whether to use management function for each item of [Copy], [PC print], [Send data] and [Print others].
  [Print others] is not displayed when vendor is connected.
- [ON] for [Send Data] will not be displayed when the optional image controller (IC-412) is mounted.
- To set whether to use Management function for each item of [Copy], [PC print], [Send data] and [Print others].
  [Print others] is not displayed when Vendor is connected.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF Prohibit

B. Max Copy Set

- It will be displayed only when the following setting shows that vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

(1) Use

- To set the upper limit of the number of copy or PC print when management function has been set.

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is 9999.

1 to "9999"

C. Network Function Usage Settings

(1) Use

- To set whether to use network function or not when management function has been set.
- Not to use the network function whose counter is difficult to be managed when management function has been set.
- The following are target functions.
  PC-FAX transmission/Using the HDD TWAIN driver to view and retrieve documents in user boxes/Using PageScope Box Operator to view and retrieve documents in user boxes/Using PageScope Scan Direct to retrieve documents in user boxes/Using PageScope Job Spooler to view and retrieve documents in user boxes/Box operations using the PageScope Web Connection

(2) Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

NOTE

- **However, when the vendor or management device setting in the Service Mode is set, this setting is set to OFF.**
  Exercise caution since it will stay in "OFF" setting even when "unset" is selected on vendor or management device setting in Service Mode later.

D. Authentication Time Setting

- It will be displayed only when the following setting shows that authentication device 1 is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

(1) Use

- To set the authentication mode when authentication device is used.
- To change the authentication mode when authentication device is used.
  Keep Card : Authentication is available leaving the card in the given place when making authentication with the device.
  Touch and Print : Card is placed only when authentication is made with the device and if the card is left for a given time (authentication reset time) the authentication setting is reset.
- When selecting “Touch and Print”, authentication reset is set after completing the job in [Authentication Time].

(2) Procedure

<Authentication Method>

- The default setting is Touch and Print.

Keep Card	“Touch and Print”

<Authentication Time>

- The default setting is 1 min.

1 to 30 min.

<Authentication Log-out When Job is Completed>

- The default setting is Yes.

“Yes”	No

10.6.90 Security Settings-Stamp Settings

A. Apply Stamps

(1) Use

- Selects whether to add a stamp to documents when jobs are printed or fax/scanned data is sent.

(2) Procedure

- The each default setting is Do Not Apply.

Apply	“Do Not Apply”

- Touch “Apply” to make stamp settings independently for print and transmission modes.

B. Delete Registered Stamp

(1) Use

- Deletes registered stamps, and copy protect/repeat stamps.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Delete Registered Stamp].
2. Select [Stamp] or [Copy Protect/Stamp Repeat].
3. Select [Yes] on the confirmation screen and touch [OK] to delete the registered stamps.

10.6.91 Security Settings-Image Log Transfer Settings

- It will be displayed when the following setting shows that switch No.63 is set to [01] at HEX assignment.
  [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Software Switch Setting]

A. Use

- Specifies whether to transfer the input or output image data to the server using whenever MFP inputs or outputs image data.
  Makes the settings of the WebDAV server or the FTP server where image data are transferred.
- Use this settings to keep logs of input and output image data for security purpose.

B. Procedure

- The each default setting is No.

Yes "No"

- When selecting [Yes], make the settings of the server where data are transferred.
- Set the following item.

<WebDAV Server setting>

- Host Name, File Path, User Name, Password, Port Number, Proxy, SSL Setting.

<FTP Server setting>

- Host Name, File Path, User Name, Password, Port Number, PASV, and Proxy.

10.6.92 Security Settings-Driver Password Encryption Setting

A. Use

- To set whether to use the factory default encryption word or user-defined one as a common key that encrypts a password used for a print job.
  User-Defined : Sets an encryption word. Enter an encryption word of 20 letters.
  Use Factory Default: Uses the factory default encryption word (undisclosed predefined encryption key).

NOTE

- **When selecting [User-Defined], set an encryption key being consisted of the same letters in the printer driver. If the encryption word set in the main body differs from the encryption key set in the printer driver, different encrypted passwords are created and printing cannot be made.**
- **The use of OpenAPI allows an encryption key to be obtained from the main body.**

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Use Factory Default.

User-Defined "Use Factory Default"

10.6.93 License Settings-Get Request Code

A. Use

- To display and print a request code and serial number used to activate i-Option.
- Used to confirm the request code and serial number.

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Get Request Code], and [Yes].
2. A serial number and request code are issued.
3. By touching [Print], the serial number and request code are printable.

10.6.94 License Settings-Install License

- This is displayed only when the additional memory included in the optional upgrade kit UK-203 is installed.

A. Use

- To allow administrator to activate functions provided by i-Option.
- Used when administrator activates functions provided by i-Option.
- By selecting a desired function and entering the corresponding license code, the function can be activated.
- By making settings in [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting], CE can also activate functions provided by i-Option.

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Install License].
2. Touch [Select Function].
3. Select i-Option function to be activated, and touch [Yes].
4. Touch [OK].
5. Touch [License Code].
6. Enter the license code that was issued in the license management server using the key board on the control panel, and touch [OK].
7. Touch [Install] key.
8. Confirm the message, select [Yes], and touch [OK].
9. Turn OFF and ON the main power switch.

10.6.95 License Settings-List of Enabled Functions

- This is displayed only when the additional memory included in the optional upgrade kit UK-203 is mounted.

A. Use

- To display currently activated functions.
- Used to check the functions that are activated now.

10.6.96 OpenAPI Authentication Management-Restriction Code Setting

A. Use

- These are communication settings for the application which is developed by the third vendor.
  Do not set or change these settings without vendor's instructions.

10.7 Banner Printing

- It will not be displayed when the following setting shows that vendor is mounted.
  [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Management Function Choice]

A. Use

- To shift to the banner printing mode.
- To use when printing on the long size paper.

B. Procedure

1. Set the long size paper to the bypass tray.
2. Touch [Banner Printing], and touch [ON].
3. Send the job for the long paper print.
4. Touch [Finish] to finish banner printing mode.

NOTE

- **Only PC print is available for the long paper print.**
- **Normal job cannot be accepted during banner printing mode.**

10.8 My Panel Settings

- This is displayed only when a registered user is logging in after user authentication. However, this is not displayed when both management device 2 and user authentication are used.

A. Use

- To make various settings about My Panel.
- To customize My Panel screen for individual registered users.
- Items that can be set are as follows:
  Language Setting, Measurement Unit Setting, Copier Settings, Scan/Fax Settings, Color Selection Setting, Main Menu Settings, and Initial Screen Setting

B. Procedure

1. Touch [My Panel Settings].
2. Touch a key that represents a desirable item and change its settings.

NOTE

- **Registering, editing, and deleting My Panel settings are allowed only when logging in as a registered user.**
- **When My Panel is not customized, the settings for MFP take effect in the three of the control panel settings, Language setting, Measurement unit setting, and Color selection setting.**
- **Depending on the functions provided by each MFP and the optional device configuration, not all My Panel settings may not take effect.**

10.9 Device Information

A. Use

- To display the function version of the firmware installed in MFP and the IP address.

B. Procedure

- Touch [Device Information] to check the function version and IP address.

<About function version>

△2

Function version / Model	Version 1	Version 2	Version 3
bizhub C652/C552	Initial firmware	Function enhancement 1	Function enhancement 2
bizhub C452	—	Initial firmware	Function enhancement 2
bizhub C652DS/C552DS	—	—	Initial firmware
bizhub C360/C280/C220	—	Initial firmware	Function enhancement 2

10.10 Meter Count

10.10.1 Counter details

A. Meter Count

- You can check the total number of pages printed after the counting start date.

Total	To check the total number of printed pages.
Black	To check the total number of pages printed in Black mode.
Color	To check the total number of pages printed in Single Color, 2 Color, or Full Color modes.

B. Copy

- To check the total number of pages copied.
- This value includes the number of pages on which data saved in a User Box in copy mode is printed, and the number of pages list-output in [Administrator Settings].

	Total	Large Size *	Total (Copy + Print)
Black	Indicates the total number of pages copied in Black mode	Indicates the total number of pages copied on large-size paper in Black mode	Indicates the total number of pages copied in Black mode and that of pages printed in Black mode through a computer
Full Color	Indicates the total number of pages copied in Full Color mode	Indicates the total number of pages copied on large-size paper in Full Color mode	Indicates the total number of pages copied in Full Color mode and that of pages printed in Full Color mode through a computer
Single Color	Indicates the total number of pages copied in Single Color mode	Indicates the total number of pages copied on large-size paper in Single Color mode	—
2 Color	Indicates the total number of pages copied in 2 Color mode	Indicates the total number of pages copied on large-size paper in 2 Color mode	Indicates the total number of pages copied in 2 Color mode and that of pages printed in 2 Color mode through a computer
Total	Indicates the total number of pages copied in all the color modes	Indicates the total number of pages copied on large-size paper in all the color modes	—

*: The large size setting is configured in [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Counter Setting].

C. Print

- Check the total number of pages printed through a computer.

	Total	Large Size *	Total (Copy + Print)
Black	Indicates the total number of pages printed in Black mode	Indicates the total number of pages printed on large-size paper in Black mode.	Indicates the total number of pages copied in Black mode and that of pages printed in Black mode through a computer
Full Color	Indicates the total number of pages printed in Full Color mode	Indicates the total number of pages printed on large-size paper in Full Color mode.	Indicates the total number of pages copied in Full Color mode and that of pages printed in Full Color mode through a computer
2 Color	Indicates the total number of pages printed in 2 Color mode	Indicates the total number of pages printed on large-size paper in 2 Color mode.	Indicates the total number of pages copied in 2 Color mode and that of pages printed in 2 Color mode through a computer
Total	Indicates the total number of pages printed in all the color modes	Indicates the total number of pages printed on large-size paper in all the color modes.	—

*: The large size setting is configured in [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Counter Setting].

D. Scan/Fax

- Check the total number of original pages scanned in the Scan/Fax or User Box mode.
- Check the total number of pages on which a file in a User Box or a received file is printed.
- Check the total number of pages sent and received in the fax mode.

	Total	Large Size *1
Black	Indicates the total number of pages on which a file in a User Box or a received file is printed in Black mode *2	Indicates the total number of pages on which a file in a User Box or a received file is printed on large-size paper in Black mode *2
Full Color	Indicates the total number of pages on which a file in a User Box or a received file is printed in Full Color mode *2	Indicates the total number of pages on which a file in a User Box or a received file is printed on large-size paper in Full Color mode *2
Scans	Indicates the total number of original pages scanned in the Scan/Fax and User Box modes	Indicates the total number of large-size original pages that are scanned in the Scan/Fax and User Box modes.
Fax TX	Indicates the total number of pages in a sent fax (G3)	—
Fax RX	Indicates the total number of pages in a received fax (G3)	—

*1: The large size setting is configured in [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Counter Setting].

*2: In the Memory RX mode, pages are counted when printed.

E. Other

- Check the total number of scanned and printed original pages, total number of printed sheets, and total number of pages printed on both sides regardless of functions or colors.

Original Counter	To check the total number of original pages that are scanned and printed in the Copy, Print, and Scan/Fax modes *
Paper Counter	To check the total number of sheets that are printed in the Copy, Print, and Scan/Fax modes *
Total Duplex	To check the total number of pages printed on both sides

*: If a file is saved in a User Box, its pages are not counted unless they are printed. Report or list output pages are not targeted for counting.

F. Print List

- The counter list is printed.

(1) Procedure

1. Touch [Print List].
2. Select a paper tray
3. Select 1-Sided or 2-Sided, and touch [Start] or press the Start key.

G. Coverage Rate

- This is not displayed when [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Coverage Rate Screen] is set to “Do Not Display.”
- The coverage rate can be cleared in [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [Coverage Rate Clear].

(1) Use

- The coverage rate does not match the actual amount of toner used but only an indication.
- The coverage rate is the average printing dot percentage with A4 paper area as 100 %.
- The coverage rate displays the printing dot accumulated average (calculated in A4) of each color (C/M/Y/K) for copy, printer, and fax/scan in unit of 0.001 %.
- The coverage rate is calculated from all output excluding the following items.

<Items excluded in the calculation>

- Output of meter counter list
- Output in service mode
- Output automatically performed by MFP such as image stabilization pattern

Blank Page

11. ADJUSTMENT ITEM LIST

△2

Adjustment/setting items				No	Replace paper feed roller	Replace separation roller assy	Change marketing area	Install LCT	Replace CCD unit	Replace mirror unit	Replace developing unit	Replace drum unit	Replace transfer belt unit
			Replacement part/Service job										
Service Mode	Machine	Printer Area	Leading Edge Adjustment	1									
			Printer Image Centering Side 1	2				❍					
			Paper Feed Direction Adj.	3					(1)	(3)			
		Scan Area	Image position: Leading Edge	4									
			Scanner Image Centering	5					(3)				
			Main Scan Zoom Adj.	6					(2)				
			Sub Scan Zoom Adj.	7						(4)			
		Org. Detecting Sensor Adj.		8			❍						
		Skew adjustment	Print Head Skew Adj.	9									
			Print Head Skew Reset	10									
	Touch Panel Adjust			11									
	State Confir-mation	Memory/ HDD	HDD R/W Check	12									
			HDD Format	13									
		Table Number		14									
	Firmware Version			15									
	System 1/2	Re-entry of setting values		16									
		Serial Number		17									
	Counter	Life	Counter Clear	18	❍	❍							
	Image Process Adjustment		Gradation Adjust	19							❍	❍	❍
	ADF		Read Pos Adj	20						(2)			
	Enhanced Security		NVRAM Data Backup	21									
Re-entry of Utility settings				22									
Re-entry of Enhanced Security settings				23									
Exposure unit/Mirrors unit positioning				24						(1)			
Scanner motor belt adjustment				25									
F/W upgrading				26									
Installation of original size sensor				27									
Remounting of NVRAM (MFP board)				28									
Replace transfer belt unit				29									

- This table shows the adjustment items that are required when a part of the machine has been replaced. Priority order, if applicable, during the adjustment procedures is indicated by the corresponding number in the parentheses.

No	Replace PH unit	Replace original size detection sensor	Wind scanner drive cables	Replace scanner motor	Replace exposure unit	Replace scanner home sensor	Replace printer control board	Replace MFP board	Replace original glass	Replace IDC registration sensor	Replace hard disk	Add key counter	Execute initialize	Execute add. option	Execute F/W update	Add fax board
1	(3)															
2	(4)															
3																
4									(2)							
5						❍			(1)							
6																
7			(4)	(2)	(3)											
8		(3)														
9	(1)															
10	(2)															
11													(6)			
12											(2)					
13											(1)					
14		(2)											(2)			
15														❍	❍	
16													(4)			
17													(3)			
18																
19								(3)								
20			(3)		(2)											
21								(4)								
22													(1)			
23												❍	(5)			
24			(2)		(1)											
25			(1)	(1)												
26							❍	(2)								❍
27		(1)														
28								(1)								
29										❍						

12. SERVICE MODE

12.1 List of service mode

* The function tree is shown to comply with the format displayed on the screen.

	Service Mode			Ref. Page
	Machine	Fusing Temperature		P.371
		Fusing Transport Speed		P.372
		Org. Size Detecting Sensor Adj.		P.372
		Printer Area	Leading Edge Adjustment	P.373
2			Printer Image Centering Side 1	P.374
2			Leading Edge Adj. Side 2 (Duplex)	P.375
2			Prt. Image Center. Side 2 (Dup)	P.376
			Paper Feed Direction Adj.	P.377
			Tray Printing Position: Tip	P.378
		Scan Area	Image Position: Leading Edge	P.380
2			Scanner Image Centering	P.381
2			Main Scan Zoom Adj.	P.382
2			Sub Scan Zoom Adj.	P.383
2		Printer Reg. Loop Adj.		P.384
		Color Registration Adjustment		P.385
		Exhaust Fan Stop Delay		P.386
2		Print Head Skew Adj.	Print Head Skew Adj.	P.386
			Print Head Skew Reset	P.387
2		Manual Bypass Tray Width Adj		P.388
		Lead Edge Erase Adjustment		P.389
2		ADF Scan Glass Contamination		P.389
		Non-Image Area Erase Check		P.390
	Firmware Version			P.390
	Imaging Process Adjustment	Gradation Adjust		P.391
2		Max Image Density Adj	Copy	P.392
			Printer	
2		Image Background Adj		P.393
2		Transfer Voltage Fine Adj	Primary transfer adj.	P.394
			Secondary transfer adj.	P.395
		Stabilizer	Stabilization Only	P.395
			Initialize+Image Stabilization	P.396
		Thick Paper Density Adjustment		P.396
		Paper separation adjustment		P.397
2		Manual Toner Add		P.397
		Monochrome Density Adjustment		P.398
2		Grad/Dev AC Bias V Selection		P.398
	CS Remote Care			P.399

Service Mode				Ref. Page
System 1	Marketing Area			P.430
	Tel/Fax Number			P.431
	Serial Number			P.431
⚠2	Sleep ON/OFF Choice Setting			P.432
	Foolscap Size Setting			P.432
	Original Size Detection			P.432
	Install Date			P.433
	Initialization	Clear All Data		P.433
		Clear Individual Data	Copy Program Data	P.433
			Address Registration Data	P.434
			Fax Setting Data	P.434
			All History Data	P.434
			Network Setting Data	P.434
		System Error Clear		P.435
⚠2	Problem Unit Isolation Set.			P.435
	Post card transfer table			P.436
	Change Warm Up Time			P.436
	Machine State LED Setting			P.438
System 2	HDD			P.439
	Image Controller Setting			P.439
	Option Board Status			P.440
	Consumable Life Reminder			P.440
	Unit Change			P.441
	Software Switch Setting			P.441
⚠2	CDD Calibration			P.443
	LCT Paper Size Setting			P.443
	Line Mag Setting			P.443
	Data Capture			P.444
⚠2	ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Set.			P.446
	Stamp			P.447
	Network Fax Settings			P.448
	Image Stabilization Setting			P.448
	User Paper Settings			P.449
	Coverage Rate Screen			P.450
	JAM Code Display Setting			P.450
	Boot up Screen			P.451
	Install Data			P.452
	Bluetooth Settings			P.452

Service Mode			Ref. Page
Counter	Life		P.453
	Service Call		P.455
	Section Service Call		P.455
	Warning		P.455
	Maintenance		P.455
	Service Total		P.456
	Counter Of Each Mode		P.456
	Service Call History (Data)		P.457
	ADF Paper Pages		P.457
	Paper Jam History		P.457
	Fax Connection Error		P.457
2	ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Counter		P.457
	Parts Counter (Fixed)		P.457
	Jam		P.458
	Section JAM		P.458
	Counter Reset		—
2	List Output	Batch List CSV Output	XXXXX
		Machine Management List	P.459
		Adjustments List	P.459
		Parameter List	P.459
		Service Parameter	P.459
		Protocol Trace / Last	P.459
		Protocol Trace / Error	
		Fax Setting List	P.459
		Fax Analysis List	P.459
	State Confirmation	Sensor Check	P.460
		Table Number	P.474
		Level History1	P.474
		Level History2	P.474
		Temp. & Humidity	P.475
		CCD Check	P.475
		Memory/HDD Adj. / Memory Check	P.476
		Memory/HDD Adj. / Compress / Decompression Check	P.476
		Memory/HDD Adj. / Memory Bus Check	P.477
		Memory/HDD Adj. / DSC Bus Check	P.477
		Memory/HDD Adj. / HDD R/W Check	P.477
		Memory/HDD Adj. / HDD Format	P.478
		Memory/HDD State	P.478
		Color Regist	P.479
		Adjustment Data List	P.479

Service Mode			Ref. Page
Test Mode	Gradation Pattern		P.480
	Halftone Pattern		P.481
	Lattice Pattern		P.482
	Solid Pattern		P.483
	Color Sample		P.483
	8 Color Solid Pattern		P.484
	CMM Pattern		P.484
2	Paper Passage Test		P.485
	Fax Test		P.485
ADF	Original Stop Position		P.486
	Registration Loop Adj.		P.487
	Auto Stop Position Adjustment		P.488
	Paper Passage		P.490
	Sensor Check		P.491
	Original Tray Width		P.493
	Read Pos Adj	Read Pos Adj	P.494
		Auto Adjust	
	Feed Zoom	Orig. Feed Zoom Ad	P.496
		Auto Adjust	P.496
	Scanning Light Adjustment		P.497
	Mixed Original Size adjustment		P.497
FAX *1	Line 1 *1	Modem/NCU *1	P.497
2		Network *1	
		System *1	
		Fax File Format *1	
		Communication *1	
		List Output *1	
		Function Parameter *1	
		Initialization *1	
	Line 2 *2	Modem/NCU *2	
		Network *2	
		Communication *2	
		Initialization *2	

Service Mode			Ref. Page
Finisher *3	FS-FN adjustment *3	Center Staple Position *3	P.498
		Half-Fold Position *3	P.499
2		Punch Edge Adj *3	P.500
		Punch Regist Loop Size *3	P.501
2		Finisher Components Test Mode *4	P.501
		Load Data *4	P.503
		Alignment Plate Position *5	P.503
2		Paper Alignment Guides W. Adj. *3	P.503
	Punch Option setting		P.504
	Job Separator *6		P.504
Internet ISW	Internet ISW Set		P.505
	HTTP Setting *7		P.505
	FTP Setting *7		P.506
	Forwarding Access Setting *7		P.507
	Download *7		P.508

*1: It will be displayed only when the optional fax kit (FK-502) line 1 is mounted.
*2: It will be displayed only when the optional fax kit (FK-502) line 2 is mounted.
*3: It will be displayed only when the optional finisher (FS-527) is mounted.
*4: It will be displayed only when the optional finisher (FS-527/529) is mounted.
*5: It will be displayed only when the optional finisher (FS-529) is mounted.
*6: It will be displayed only when the optional separator (JS-505) is mounted.
*7: It will be displayed only when the [Internet ISW Set] is set to “ON.”

12.2 Starting/Exiting

12.2.1 Starting procedure

NOTE

- **Ensure appropriate security for Service Mode function setting procedures. They should NEVER be shown to any unauthorized person not involved with service jobs.**

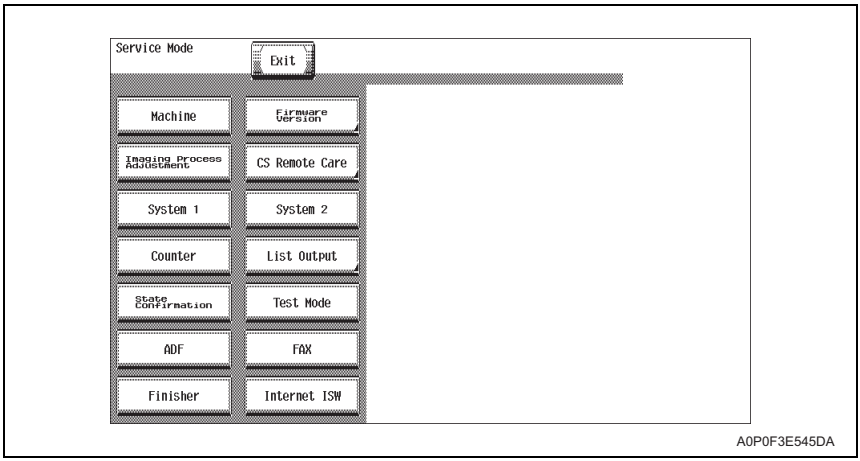
A. Procedure

1. Press the Utility/Counter key.
2. Touch [Details] on meter count display.
3. Press the following keys in this order.; Stop → 0 → 0 → Stop → 0 → 1

NOTE

- **When selecting [CE Authentication] under [Enhanced Security] available from Service Mode, authentication by CE password is necessary.**
  Enter the 8 digits CE password, and touch [END].
  (The initial setting for CE password is "92729272.")
- **When the following setting is set to "ON", CE password authentication is necessary; [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode]**
- **If a wrong CE password is entered, re-enter the right password. The machine will not enter Service Mode unless the CE password is entered correctly. To return to the Basic screen, turn OFF the sub power switch and turn it ON again.**
  When the following setting is set to "Mode 2", operation will be prohibited since it indicates authentication failure by failing to enter the correct CE password within the specified number of times.
  if the access lock is activated, the lock release timer starts to operate by input the Stop → 0 → 9 → 3 → 1 → 7 in [Meter Count] → [Check Details] → [Coverage Rate] after the main power switch is turned OFF and On. When the timer reaches the time specified in this setting, the access lock is released.
- **The service code entered is displayed as "∗."**

4. The Service Mode menu will appear.



NOTE
- **Be sure to change the CE password from its default value.**
- **For the procedure to change the CE password, see the Enhanced Security.**
See P.509

B. Exiting procedure
- Touch the [Exit] key.

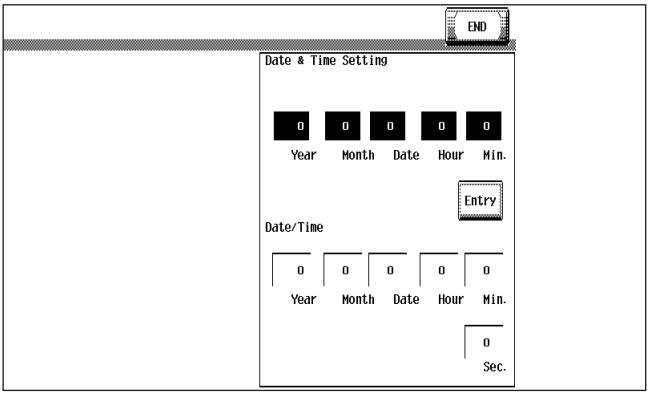
12.3 Date/Time Input mode

A. Use
- This mode is used to set time-of-day and date.

B. Procedure
1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Press the following keys in this order.
   Stop → 1 → 1 → 4 → 4 → Clear
3. Enter year, month, day, hour, and minute, in that order, from 10-key pad.
   (Year 4 digits → Month 2 digits → Day 2 digits → Hour 2 digits → Minute 2 digits)

NOTE
- **Before entering date and time, press the Clear key to delete the present time from the place where data and time is entered.**
- **When setting the month, day, hour, or minute, enter "0" first if the data one digit.**

4. Make sure that correct figures have been entered and then touch [Entry].
5. Touch [END] to return to the Service Mode.



A00JF3E537DA

12.4 Machine

12.4.1 Fusing Temperature

A. Use

- To adjust individually the temperature of the heating roller and the fusing pressure roller for each type of paper, thereby coping with varying fusing performance under changing environmental conditions.
- When fusing performance is poor, or wax streak or offset occurs when the type of paper is changed or environmental conditions change.
- Use when the curling of the paper due to the paper type or environmental change occurred, or when the paper jam, as well as stapling or folding position error occurred due to the curling of the paper.
- By setting the temperature higher (+), gloss of print can be improved.
- By setting the temperature lower (-), exit roller mark can be reduced.

<Adjustment range>

Paper type	Setting range	step
Plain Paper	-20 °C to +5 °C	5 °C
OHP Film	-20 °C to +5 °C	5 °C
Thick 1	-20 °C to +5 °C	5 °C
Thick 2	-20 °C to +5 °C	5 °C
Thick 3	-20 °C to +5 °C	5 °C
Thick 4	-20 °C to +5 °C	5 °C
Post.	-20 °C to +5 °C	5 °C
Enve.	-5 °C to +5 °C	5 °C

B. Procedure

NOTE

- **To adjust the fusing temperature, adjust on the heating side first. If the further adjustment is necessary, adjust on the pressure side.**

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Fusing Temperature].
3. Select the paper type and fusing roller type (Heater Roller or Pressure).
4. Enter the new setting from the [+] / [-] key.
   If fusing performance is poor, increase the setting.
   If wax streaks occur, decrease the setting.
   If offset is poor, decrease the setting.
   If curling of the paper occurs, decrease the setting.
5. Touch [END] to validate the adjustment value.
6. Return to the basic screen.
7. Output two or three test printing and check to see whether the image has any problem.
8. Make the adjustment for each type of paper.

12.4.2 Fusing Transport Speed

A. Use

- To adjust the speed of the fusing motor so as to match the fusing speed with transport speed.
- Brush effect or blurred image is evident as a result of changes in environmental conditions or degraded durability.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Fusing Transport Speed].
3. Select the transport speed, at which the brush effect or blurred image has occurred.

<bizhub C360/C280>

Transport speed	Paper Setting
165 mm/s	Plain paper: black/color
55 mm/s	Plain paper: black/color (Glossy) Thick 1, Thick 2, Thick 3, Thick 4, envelope, postcard: black/color OHP film: black

<bizhub C220>

Transport speed	Paper Setting
110 mm/s	Plain paper: black/color
55 mm/s	Plain paper: black/color (Glossy) Thick 1, Thick 2, Thick 3, Thick 4, envelope, postcard: black/color OHP film: black

4. Enter the new setting from the 10-key pad.
   If brush effect is evident, vary the setting value and check for image.
   If a blurred image occurs, decrease the setting.
5. Touch [END] to validate the adjustment value.
6. Check the print image for any image problem.

12.4.3 Org. Size Detecting Sensor Adj.

A. Use

- To automatically adjust the original detection distance for the original size detection sensor/1.
- To display if the original size detection sensor/2 is mounted.
- When the sensor is replaced with a new one.
- When an optional sensor has been added.
- When an erroneous original size detection is made.
- When the marketing area setting is changed.

B. Procedure

1. Place a blank sheet of A3 or 11 x 17 paper on the original glass and lower the original cover.
2. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
3. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Org. Size Detecting Sensor Adj.].
4. Press the Start key.

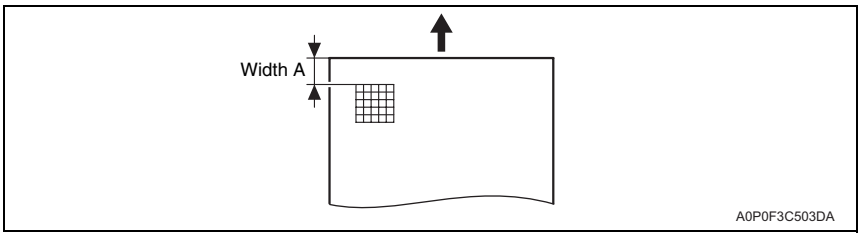
If the adjustment has been successfully made, it completes the adjustment procedure.
If the adjustment has turned out to be unsuccessful, check the optional original size sensors for correct installation and change the defective sensor or harness.

12.4.4 Printer Area-Leading Edge Adjustment

A. Use

- To vary the print start position in the sub scan direction for each of different paper types. (to adjust the timing starting from the roller connection up to start of 2nd transfer output)
- The PH unit has been replaced.
- The paper type has been changed.
- The print image deviates in the sub scan direction.
- A faint image occurs on the leading edge of the image.
- This setting can be made independently for plain paper, Thick 1, Thick 2, Thick 3, Thick 4, OHP films, and envelopes.

B. Procedure



- Width A on the test pattern produced should fall within the following range.

Specifications: 4.2 ± 0.5 mm

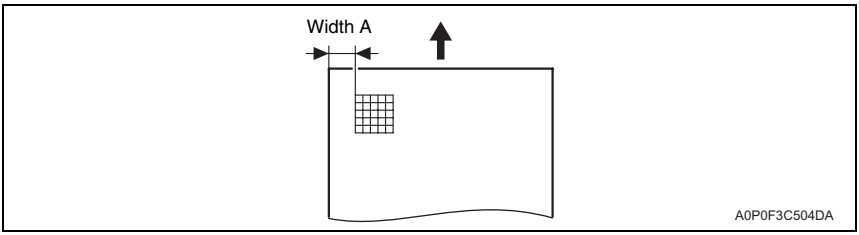
1. Place A3 paper on the manual bypass tray.
2. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
3. Touch [Machine] → [Printer Area] → [Leading Edge Adjustment].
4. Select the [Plain Paper].
5. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
6. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
7. If width A falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If width A is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one.
   If width A is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.
8. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
9. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
10. If width A is outside the specified range, change the setting again and make a check again.
11. If width A falls within the specified range, touch [END].
12. Following the same procedure, adjust for Thick 1 to 4, OHP film, and Enve.

12.4.5 Printer Area-Printer Image Centering Side 1

A. Use

- To vary the print start position in the main scan direction for each paper source.
- The PH unit has been replaced.
- A paper feed unit has been added.
- The print image deviates in the main scan direction.

B. Procedure



- Width A on the test pattern produced should fall within the following range.

Specifications: 3.0 ± 0.5 mm

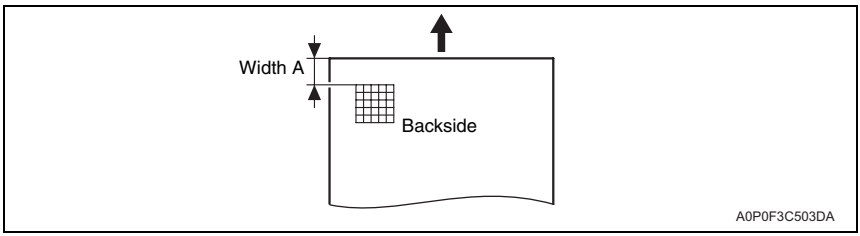
1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [Machine] → [Printer Area] → [Printer Image Centering Side 1].
3. Select the paper source to be adjusted.
4. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
5. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
6. If width A falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If width A is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one.
   If width A is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.
7. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
8. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
9. If width A is outside the specified range, change the setting again and make a check again.
10. If width A falls within the specified range, touch [END].
11. Following the same procedure, adjust for all other paper sources.
    (Use A4 or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11 plain paper for the bypass.)

12.4.6 Printer Area-Leading Edge Adj. Side 2 (Duplex)

A. Use

- For individual types of paper, this function allows the adjustment of the image write start position in the sub scan direction on the 2nd side of duplex printing.
  (to adjust the timing starting from the roller connection up to start of 2nd transfer output)
- This adjustment is made when the image on the 2nd side of paper deviates from the original position in the sub scan direction.
- This adjustment can be made independently for each of plain paper, thick 1, thick 2, and thick 3.

B. Procedure



- Width A on the test pattern produced should fall within the following range.
- For measurement, use the image produced on the backside of the test pattern.

Specifications: 4.2 ± 0.5 mm

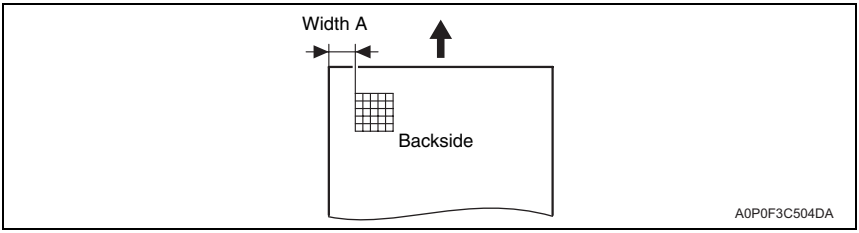
1. Place A3 paper on the tray.
2. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
3. Touch [Machine] → [Printer Area] → [Leading Edge Adj. Side 2 (Duplex)].
4. Select the [Plain Paper].
5. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
6. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
7. If width A falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If width A is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one.
   If width A is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.
8. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
9. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
10. If width A is outside the specified range, change the setting again and make a check again.
11. If width A falls within the specified range, touch [END].
12. Following the same procedure, adjust for Thick paper.

12.4.7 Printer Area-Prt. Image Center. Side 2 (Dup)

A. Use

- To vary the print start position in the main scan direction for each paper source in the 2-Sided mode.
- The image on the backside of the 2-sided copy deviates in the main scan direction.

B. Procedure



- Width A on the test pattern produced should fall within the following range.
- For measurement, use the image produced on the backside of the test pattern.

Specifications: 3.0 ± 0.5 mm

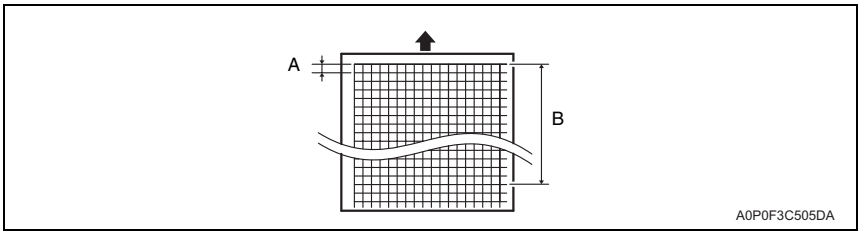
1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [Machine] → [Printer Area] → [Prt. Image Center. Side 2 (Dup)].
3. Select the paper source to be adjusted.
4. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
5. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
6. If width A falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If width A is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one.
   If width A is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.
7. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
8. Check the dimension of width A on the test print on the backside of the copy.
9. If width A is outside the specified range, change the setting again and make a check again.
10. If width A falls within the specified range, touch [END].
11. Following the same procedure, adjust for all other paper sources.
    (Use A4 or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11 plain paper for the manual bypass tray.)

12.4.8 Printer Area-Paper Feed Direction Adj.

A. Use

- To synchronize the paper transport speed with the image writing speed.
- [Sub Scan Zoom Adj.] becomes necessary.
- The print image on the copy distorts (stretched, shrunk).
- When the print image on the copy is stretched in the sub scan direction.
- This setting can be made independently for plain paper, Thick 1, Thick 2, Thick 3, and Thick 4.

B. Procedure



- Width A and width B on the test pattern produced should fall within the following ranges.
  Width A: equivalent to one grid
  Width B: equivalent to 48 grids

Specifications
A: 7.9 to 8.3
B: 389.1 to 392.1

1. Load manual bypass tray with A3 or 11 x 17 plain paper.
2. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
3. Touch [Machine] → [Printer Area] → [Paper Feed Direction Adj.].
4. Select [Plain Paper].
5. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
6. Check width A (equivalent to one grid) and width B (equivalent to 48 grids) on the test print.
7. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Printer Area] → [Paper Feed Direction Adj].
8. If width of A or B falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+]/[-] keys.
   If width A or B is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one.
   If width A or B is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.
9. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print again.
10. Check width A and width B on the test print.
11. If width A or B falls outside the specified range, change the setting value and make a check again.
12. If width A or B falls within the specified range, touch [END].
13. Following the same procedure, adjust for thick paper.

12.4.9 Tray Printing Position: Tip

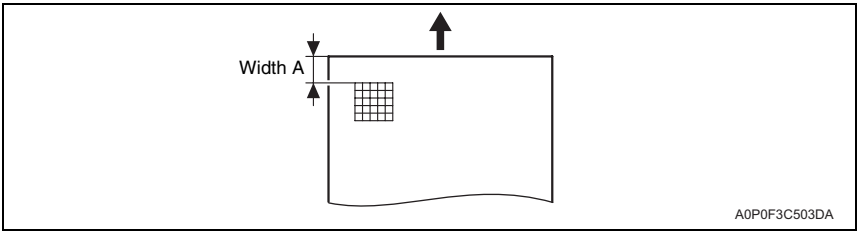
A. Use

- To change and adjust image printing position at vertical scanning direction by each feed. (to adjust the timing starting from the roller connection up to start of 2nd transfer output). It is not applicable in case the job is fed at re-feed.
- To be used when [Printer Area-leading Edge Adjustment] is not enough for full adjustment (as such case that image printing position gets deviated due to pattern of each feed.)
- Setting is available according to feed of 1st. Short (the length of paper at vertical scanning direction is under 276.4 mm), 1st. Long (the length of paper at vertical scanning direction is over 276.4 mm), 2nd/3rd/4th and manual.
- Adjustment is made for plain paper.

B. Procedure

NOTE

- **[Printer Area-leading Edge Adjustment] should be made within specification.**
- **Image printing position at vertical scanning direction is adjusted based on the combination value of this setting figure and [Printer Area-leading Edge Adjustment] figure. In case the value is larger than +3.0mm or less than -3.0mm, the figure should be rounded to 3.0mm or -3.0mm.**



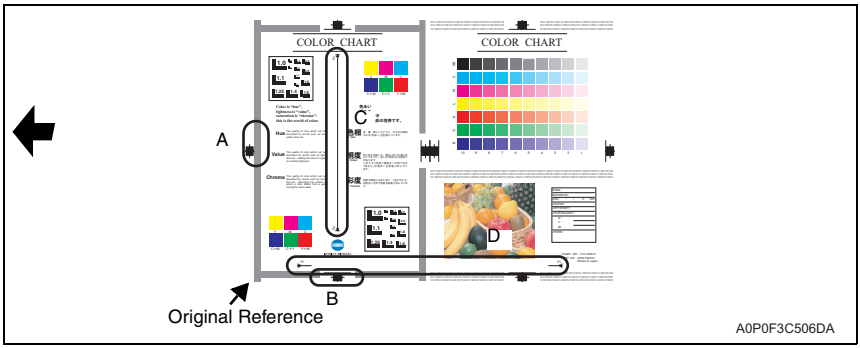
- Width A on the test pattern produced should fall within the following range.

Specifications: 4.2 ± 0.5 mm

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [Machine] → [Printer Area] → [Tray Printing Position: Tip].
3. Set plain paper to the targeted tray, and select the feed tray.
4. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
5. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
6. If width A falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If width A is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one.
   If width A is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.
7. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test print.
8. Check the dimension of width A on the test print.
9. If width A is outside the specified range, change the setting again and make a check again.
10. If width A falls within the specified range, touch [END].

12.4.10 Scan Area

- Use the following color chart for the adjustment of the scanner section.
- If the color chart is not available, a scale may be used instead.



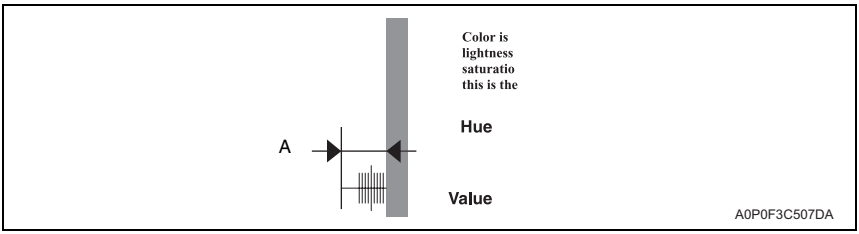
	Adjustment item	Ref.
	A: Image Position: Leading Edge	P.380
2	B: Scanner Image Centering	P.381
2	C: Main Scan Zoom Adj.	P.382
2	D: Sub Scan Zoom Adj.	P.383

12.4.11 Scan Area-Image Position: Leading Edge

A. Use

- To adjust variations in mounting accuracy and sensitivity of the scanner home sensor and in mounting accuracy of the original width scale by varying the scan start position in the main scan direction.
- When the original glass is replaced.
- When the original width scale is replaced.
- The scanner home sensor has been replaced.

B. Procedure



- A width on the color chart and one on the test print are measured and adjusted so that the difference of A width satisfies the specifications shown below.
- An adjustment must have been completed correctly of [Leading Edge Adjustment] of [Printer Area].

Specifications
A: ± 0.5 mm (10 ± 0.5 mm if a scale is used)

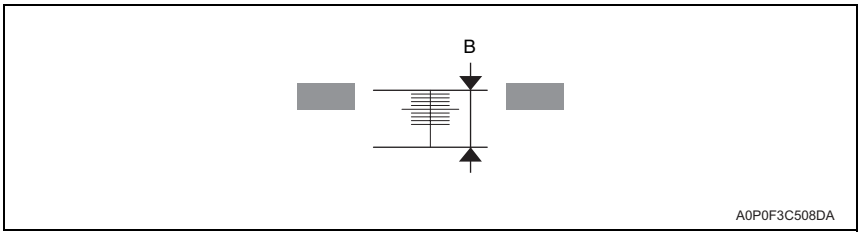
1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Scan Area] → [Image Position: Leading Edge].
3. Position the color chart correctly so that the original reference point is aligned with the scale.
4. Press the Start key to make a copy.
5. Check point A on the test print.
6. If width A on the test print falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If the test print is less than the specified length, increase the setting value.
   If the test print exceeds the specified length, decrease the setting value.
7. Press the Start key to make another test print.
8. Check the image on the test print to see if the specifications are met.
9. Make adjustments until the specifications are met.

12.4.12 Scan Area-Scanner Image Centering

A. Use

- To adjust part-to-part variations in accuracy of scanner parts and their mounting accuracy by varying the scan start position in the main scan direction.
- When the CCD unit is replaced.
- When the original glass is replaced.
- The scanner home sensor has been replaced.

B. Procedure



- B width on the color chart and one on the test print are measured and adjusted so that the difference of B width satisfies the specifications shown below.
- An adjustment must have been completed correctly of [Printer Image Centering Side 1] of [Printer Area].

Specifications
B: ± 1.0 mm

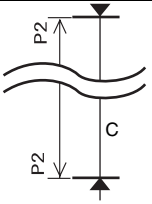
1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Scan Area] → [Scanner Image Centering].
3. Position the color chart correctly so that the original reference point is aligned with the scale.
4. Press the Start key to make a copy.
5. Check point B on the image of the test print.
6. If the test print falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If the test print is less than the specified length, increase the setting value.
   If the test print exceeds the specified length, decrease the setting value.
7. Press the Start key to make a test print.
8. Check point B of the image on the test print to see if the specifications are met.
9. Make adjustments until the specifications are met.

12.4.13 Scan Area-Main Scan Zoom Adj.

A. Use

- To adjust the zoom ratio in the main scan direction for the scanner section.
- The CCD unit has been replaced.

B. Procedure



A0P0F3C509DA

- Measure C width on the color chart and on the test print, and adjust the gap to be within the following specification.
- An adjustment must have been completed correctly of “Paper Feed Direction Adj.” of [Printer Area].

Specifications
C: ± 1.0 mm

* Standard size when using a scale: 200.0 mm

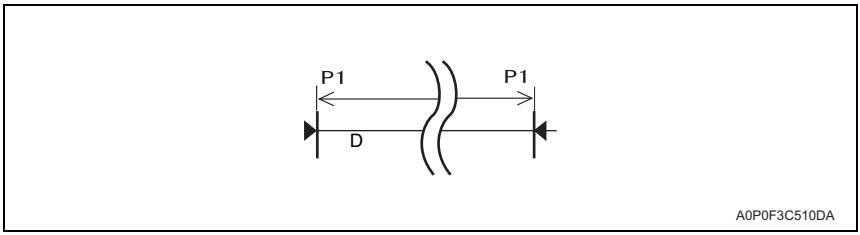
1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Scan Area] → [Main Scan Zoom Adj.].
3. Position the color chart correctly so that the original reference point is aligned with the scale.
4. Press the Start key to make a test print.
5. Check the C width on the image of the copy.
6. If the test print falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If the C width on the test print is less than one on color chart, increase the setting.
   If the C width on the test print exceeds one on color chart, decrease the setting.
7. Press the Start key to make another test print.
8. Check the image on the test print to see if the specifications are met.
9. Make adjustments until the specifications are met.

12.4.14 Scan Area-Sub Scan Zoom Adj.

A. Use

- To adjust the zoom ratio in the sub scan direction for the scanner section.
- The exposure has been replaced.
- The scanner motor has been replaced.
- The scanner drive cables have been replaced.

B. Procedure



- Measure D width on the color chart and on the test print, and adjust the gap to be within the following specification.
- An adjustment must have been completed correctly of “Paper Feed Direction Adj.” of [Printer Area].

Specifications
D: ± 1.5 mm

* Standard size when using a scale: 200.0 mm

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Scan Area] → [Sub Scan Zoom Adj.].
3. Position the color chart correctly so that the original reference point is aligned with the scale.
4. Press the Start key to make a test print.
5. Check the D width on the image of the test print.
6. If the test print falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key.
   If the D width on the test print is less than one on color chart, increase the setting.
   If the D width on the test print exceeds one on color chart, decrease the setting.
7. Press the Start key to make another test print.
8. Check the image on the test print to see if the specifications are met.
9. Make adjustments until the specifications are met.

12.4.15 Printer Reg. Loop Adj.

△2

A. Use

- To set the correction value of the paper loop length for each process speed of tray 1 to tray 4, LCT, bypass, and duplex.
- To adjust the length of the loop formed in paper before the registration rollers.
- Use “Paper Passage” for paper passage check.
- When a paper skew occurs.
- When a paper misfeed occurs.

B. Procedure

- The adjustable range is different depending on paper source and processing speed.

<bizhub C360/C280>

	Tray 1/2	Tray 3/4 LCT	Manual	Duplex
165 mm/sec	-8 to +8	-8 to +8	-8 to +8	-8 to +8
55 mm/sec	-15 to +15	-15 to +15	-8 to +8	-15 to +15

<bizhub C220>

	Tray 1/2	Tray 3/4 LCT	Manual	Duplex
110 mm/sec	-8 to +8	-8 to +8	-8 to +8	-8 to +8
55 mm/sec	-15 to +15	-15 to +15	-8 to +8	-15 to +15

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
△2 2. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Printer Reg. Loop Adj.].
3. Select a paper source and a processing speed where the settings are made by touching the corresponding keys.
4. Enter the new setting from the 10-key pad.
   To decrease the loop amount: Increase the setting value
   To increase the loop amount: Decrease the setting value

12.4.16 Color Registration Adjustment-Cyan, Magenta, Yellow

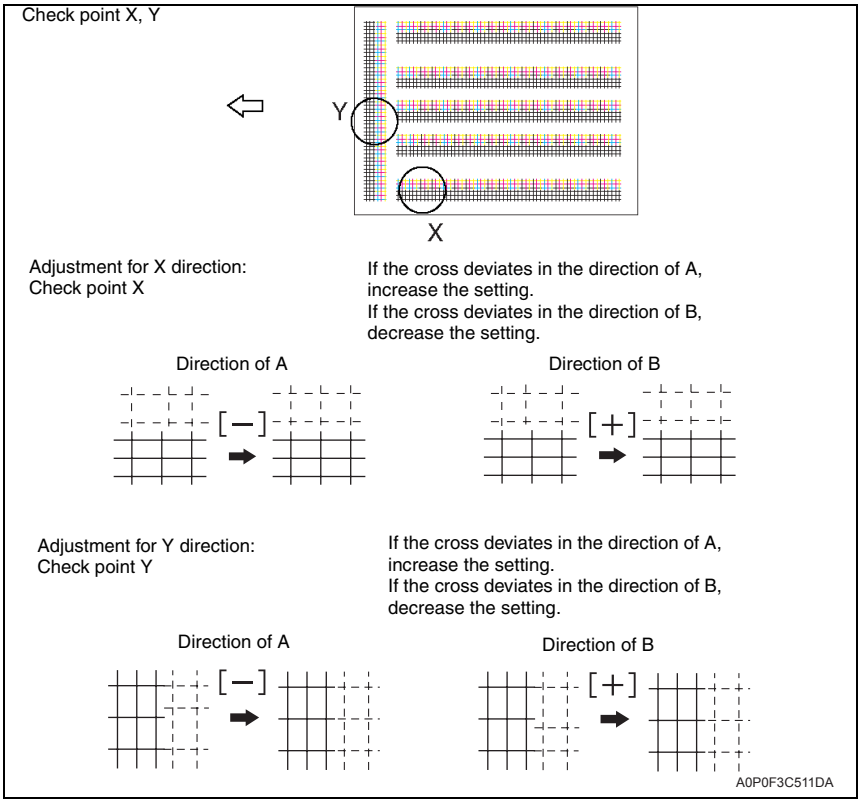
A. Use

- To adjust color shift if there is any when comparing the original with copy of the plain or thick paper.
- To correct any color shift.
- This setting can be made independently for plain paper, Thick 1, Thick 2, Thick 3, and Thick 4.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Color Registration Adjustment].
3. Load manual bypass tray with A3/11 x 17 or A4/8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11 plain paper.
4. Press the Start key.
5. On the test pattern produced, check for deviation between the black line and the line of each color at positions X and Y.
6. Select the color to be adjusted.
7. Using the [+] / [-] key, change the setting value as necessary. (At this time, only the line of the selected color moves.)
   If the cross deviates in the direction of A, increase the setting.
   If the cross deviates in the direction of B, decrease the setting.
8. Produce another test pattern and make sure that there is no deviation.

<Check Procedure>



12.4.17 Exhaust fan Stop Delay

A. Use

- To set the period of time before the exhaust fan motor stops.
- At the completion of a print job/image stabilization or at jam/malfunction, the fan motor rotating at full speed comes to a stop. The period of time before the fan motor stops can be delayed so that ozone left around the PC drum can be discharged.

B. Procedure

- 0 to 15 (minutes) can be entered with the ten-key pad. (Default is 0.)

NOTE

- **When this setting is set to 0 (minute), the fan motor runs for 5 seconds before it stops.**

△2 12.4.18 Skew adjustment-Print Head Skew Adj.

A. Use

- This function allows you to set the default position of the skew correction motor.
- Adjusts and sets a value that is used as an individual skew correction motor's reference position for skew correction control.
- This setting is made after the PH unit is replaced.
- Use this function when the information of the motor's position setting is lost due to the replacement of the service EEPROM board or other reasons.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order:
△2 [Machine] → [Skew adjustment] → [Print Head Skew Adj.].
3. Select the color to be set.
4. Enter the skew value described on the new PH unit with the 10-key pad.
5. Touch [OK].
△2 6. Proceed to [Print Head Skew Reset].

12.4.19 Skew adjustment-Print Head Skew Reset

A. Use

- Returns the skew correction motor to the default position and clear the backup copies of the cumulative skew amount.
- After PH unit replacement, perform [Print Head Skew Adj.] and then execute this function.
- Use this feature when the information of the skew correction position that is backed up in the machine is lost by replacing the service EEPROM board or other reasons.
- After addressing the alert code P-14 and completing an action to the problem, perform this function.
- Use this function when the current skew correction motor's position becomes unavailable due to the skew adjustment interrupted by the door being opened or the main power switch being turned OFF.

B. Procedure

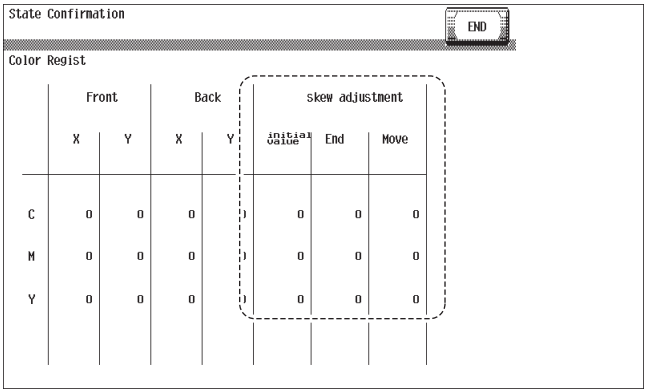
1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order:
   [Machine] → [Skew adjustment] → [Print Head Skew Reset].
3. Touch the start key and execute the Print Head Skew Reset.

NOTE

- **After replacing the PH unit or service EEPROM board, set the initial position of the skew correction as follows: [Machine] → [Skew adjustment] → [Print Head Skew Adj.]. After completing [Print Head Skew Adj.], perform [Print Head Skew Reset].**
- **After the Print Head Skew Reset is complete, be sure to perform [Initialize + Image Stabilization].**

(1) Skew adjustment result on the panel

- Skew adjustment result is provided in [Skew Adjust Value], which is selected as follows: [Service Mode] → [State Confirmation] → [Color Regist].



A0P0F3E546DA

Skew Adjust Value	Description
Initial	• Displays the initial position of the skew correction set in [Skew adjustment] which is selected as follows: [Service Mode] → [Machine] → [Skew adjustment] → [Print Head Skew Adj.]. The initial position is same as the one set upon shipment.
End	• Displays the final skew correction position that was obtained after finishing the image stabilization control.
Move	• Displays how much skew adjust value changed in the previous image stabilization control.

△2 **12.4.20 Manual Bypass Tray Width Adj**

A. Use

- To set the maximum width and the minimum width for the bypass paper width detection resistor of the manual bypass guide.
- Use when the bypass paper width detection resistor of the manual bypass guide has been changed.
- Use when a false paper size is displayed when the manual bypass is used.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
△2 2. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Manual Bypass Tray Width Adj].
3. Touch [Max. Width].
4. Load the bypass tray with paper having a width of 297 mm.
5. Press the Start key and check that the results are [OK].
6. Touch [Min. Width.].
7. Load the bypass tray with paper having a width of 100 mm.
8. Press the Start key and check that the results are [OK].

✻ Make the adjustment again if the results are [NG].

12.4.21 Lead Edge Erase Adjustment

A. Use

- To set the leading edge erase amount of the paper.
- Upon user requests, it is possible to specify the void area where image is not printed along the leading edge.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 4 mm.

"4 mm" 5 mm 7 mm

NOTE

- **When "4 mm" is selected, 4.2 mm is the actual amount to be erased in print based on the control system of the machine.**

2 12.4.22 ADF Scan Glass Contamination

A. Use

- To check the stain on the ADF original glass and display the result.
- To manually perform the pre-detection of the stain which is normally conducted when the main/sub power switch is turned ON, recovering from the sleep/low power mode, etc.
2 • [ADF Scan Glass Contamination] will be conducted with the detection level set by the following setting.
  [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Set.] → [ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Sensitivity]
  When the above setting is set to "Not Set", "NG" will be displayed even though the pre-detection is conducted.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2 2. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [ADF Scan Glass Contamination].
3. Press the start key to start the pre-detection.
4. Check to make sure that "OK" is displayed for the result.

✻ When the result says "NG", clean the glass and check again.

12.4.23 Non-Image Area Erase Check

A. Use

- The non-image area erase function may not work properly under bright light source. Incoming light quantity is checked to verify that the non-image area erase function can work properly under the environment.
- Verification results are shown as follows:
  OK : Works properly.
  NG1 : Works properly. However, data that may interfere with the non-image area erase function was found. This function may not work well with dark original.
  NG2 : Data that may interfere with the non-image area erase function was found.
- Use this feature when installing a new machine or reinstalling a machine in a new place.
- Use this feature when the non-image area erase function fails to work properly due to the changes of the surrounding environment at the installation site.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Non-Image Area Erase Check].
3. Press the Start key to start a check.

NOTE

- **Before the check, make sure that the ADF or original cover is completely opened. In addition, make sure that no scratch or stain exists on the original glass.**

4. Check the result is "OK."

✻ If the check result is "NG1" or "NG2," reinstall the machine in another place or adjust the orientation of the machine to reduce light incidence on the machine. Then, perform the check again.

12.5 Firmware Version

A. Use

- To check the firmware version.
- Use when the firmware is upgraded.
- When the firmware is upgraded or PWB is replaced.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [Firmware Version].
3. Select the appropriate key from 1 to 3 to check the Firmware Version.

12.6 Imaging Process Adjustment

12.6.1 Gradation Adjust

- It will not be displayed when the following setting is set to “ON”.

△2 [Service Mode] → [Image Process Adjustment] → [Grad/Dev AC Bias V Selection]

A. Use

- To make an automatic adjustment of gradation based on the test pattern produced and the readings taken by the scanner.
- Color reproduction performance becomes poor.
- The imaging unit, drum unit or developing unit has been replaced.
- The image transfer belt unit has been replaced.

✻ The Adj. Values of “Dark” and “Highlight” shown on the gradation adjust screen represent how much corrections are made to produce an ideal image output. Conv. Value shows the difference from the ideal image density.

✻ The closer the Conv. Value to 0, the more ideal the image.

Stablizer : Before gradation adjust, perform image stabilization.
Print : Priority is image gradation reproducibility (priority on gradation) as well as reproducibility of characters and lines (priority on resolution).
Copy : Priority is to increase the number of images that can be stored in the memory (priority on compression). The adjustment conforms to FEET (non-screen).

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Image Process Adjustment] → [Gradation Adjust].
3. Touch [Stabilizer] and the Start key to perform image stabilization.

NOTE

- **Before executing Gradation adjust, be sure to perform Stabilizer.**

4. Select Print or Copy and select the paper size on which test pattern is printed.
5. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test pattern.

NOTE

- **When the image stabilization performed in step 3 is NG, the Start key stops functioning.**
- **When one of the alert codes, P-5, P-6, P-7, P-8, P-9, and P-28 is on the screen and [Printer] is selected, the Start key stops functioning.**

6. Place the test pattern produced on the original glass.

NOTE

- **Depending on the size of the test pattern, it is set in a different position. Set the test pattern according to the instructions displayed on the control panel.**

7. Place ten blank sheets of paper on the test pattern and lower the original cover.
8. Press the Start key. (The machine will then start scanning the test pattern.)
9. Touch [OK] and repeat steps from 4 through 8 twice (a total of three times).
10. Touch [Gradation Adjust] to display the Adj. Values and Conv. Values of each color (C, M, Y and K) for Dark and Highlight.
11. Use the following procedures to check the Conv. Value.

Dark: 0 ± 100 and Highlight: 0 ± 60: It completes the adjustment procedure.
If neither Dark nor Highlight falls outside the ranges specified above: Perform steps from 4 to 8.

NOTE
- **If the convergence falls within the specified range after the second Gradation Adjustment, further adjustment may not be necessary.**

- If a fault is detected, "0" is displayed for all values. In that case, after turning off the main power switch, turn it on again more than 10 seconds after and then make the gradation adjustment again.
- △2 If either dark or highlight still remains outside the specified ranges perform Max Image Density Adj.
- If a total of four sequences of gradation adjust do not bring the values into the specified range, check the image.
- If the image is faulty, perform the troubleshooting procedures for image problems.

△2 12.6.2 Max Image Density Adj

A. Use
- To adjust gradation, color, and image density to target reproduction levels by varying the maximum amount of toner sticking to paper through auxiliary manual fine-adjustment of gamma of each color after gradation adjust.
- An image quality problem is not corrected even after gradation adjust has been run.

B. Procedure
- The default setting is 0.

-10 to +10 (step: 1 *)

*: 1 step corresponds to 0.03 in density difference.

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. △2 Touch these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Max Image Density Adj].
3. Select [COPY] or [Printer].
4. Select the color to be adjusted.
5. Enter the new setting from the 10-key pad or [+/-].
   To increase the maximum amount of toner sticking, increase the setting value.
   To decrease the maximum amount of toner sticking, decrease the setting value.
6. Touch [END] to return to the [Process] menu screen.
7. Touch [Stabilizer].
8. Touch [Stabilizer Mode].
9. Press the Start key to validate the adjustment value.
10. Check the print image for any image problem.

NOTE
- **If the setting value has been changed, be sure to run an image stabilization sequence to make valid the new value.**

12.6.3 Image Background Adj

A. Use

- To adjust the highlight portion (fog level) to the target reproduction level by making an auxiliary manual fine-adjustment of γ of each color after gradation adjust.
- Use when a foggy background occurs due to a printer problem.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 0.

-5 to +5 (step: 1)

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Image Background Adj].
3. Select the color to be adjusted.
4. Enter the new setting from the 10-key pad.
   To make the background level foggier, decrease the setting value.
   To make the background level less foggy, increase the setting value.
5. Touch [END] to return to the [Image Adjust] menu screen.
6. Touch [Stabilizer].
7. Touch [Stabilization Only].
8. Press the Start key to validate the adjustment value.
9. Check the print image for any image problem.

NOTE

- **If the setting value has been changed, be sure to run an image stabilization sequence to make valid the new value.**

12.6.4 Transfer Voltage Fine Adj-Primary transfer adj.

A. Use

- Adjust the output value for the 1st image transfer voltage.
- To use when white spots appeared.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 0.

-8 to +7 (step: 1)

*1 step is equivalent to 2μA.

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Select [Test Mode] → [Halftone Pattern] to output the red or green test pattern.
See P.481
3. When the test pattern image has white spots, adjust with the following procedure.
4. Touch these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Transfer Voltage Fine Adj].
5. Select [Primary transfer adj.].
6. Select the color.
7. Change the setting value using the [+] / [-] keys.
Adjust the output value for the 1st image transfer voltage by;
Increasing it: Increase the setting value (white spots will decrease)
Decreasing it: Decrease the setting value
8. Touch [OK] key to set the adjustment value.
Gradually increase the adjustment value to the acceptable white spots level while checking the test pattern.

NOTE

- **PC drum memory may occur by taking measure to white spots occurred by increasing the 1st image transfer voltage to adjust it.**
Check the image on the test print or the color chart when adjusting.

12.6.5 Transfer Voltage Fine Adj-Secondary transfer adj.

A. Use

- Adjust the 2nd image transfer output (ATVC) on the 1st page and the 2nd page for each paper type.
- To use when the transfer failure at the trailing edge occurs.
- Pressing the [AUTO] key down activates the 2nd image transfer amperage upper and lower limit control. In this case, the machine uses the voltage determined by the auto transfer voltage control and the 2nd image transfer output fine adjustment value does not take effect.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 0.

-8 to +7 (step: 1)

* 1 step is equivalent to 100 V.

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Transfer Voltage Fine Adj].
3. Select [Secondary transfer adj.].
4. Select the side of the image (1st side or 2nd side), on which the transfer failure occurs.

NOTE

- **For envelopes, OHP film and banner thick, only 1st side can be selected.**

5. Select the paper type with the transfer failure.
6. Enter the new setting from the [+] / [-] keys.
   To increase the ATVC value (in the direction of a foggier image), increase the setting value.
   To decrease the ATVC value (in the direction of a less foggy image), decrease the setting value.
7. Touch [END] to validate the adjustment value.
8. Check the print image for any image problem.

* Press [Auto] to automatically control the 2nd image transfer output without using the 2nd image transfer output fine adjustment value.

12.6.6 Stabilizer-Stabilization Only

A. Use

- The image stabilization sequence is carried out without clearing the historical data of image stabilization control.
- Use if an image problem persists even after gradation adjustment has been executed.
- When [Max Image Density Adj] and [Image Background Adj] of Service Mode are changed.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Stabilizer].
3. Touch [Stabilization Only].
4. Press the Start key to start Stabilizer.
   The Start key turns red and stays lit up red during the stabilizer sequence.
5. Stabilizer is completed when the Start key turns blue.

12.6.7 Stabilizer-Initialize+Image Stabilization

A. Use

- To carry out an image stabilization sequence after the historical data of image stabilization control has been initialized.
- Use if an image problem persists even after gradation adjustment has been executed.
- Use if tone reproduction and maximum density are faulty even after stabilizer mode has been executed.
- When color shift correction is needed again after the machine maintenance.
- After executing the skew adjustment reset.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Stabilizer].
3. Touch [Initialize+Image Stabilization].
4. Press the Start key to start stabilizer.
   The Start key turns red and stays lit up red during the stabilizer sequence.
5. Stabilizer is completed when the Start key turns blue.

12.6.8 Thick Paper Density Adjustment

A. Use

- To fine-adjust density of printed images of each color for thick paper and OHP transparencies. (Only black color adjustable for OHP transparencies)
- To change the density of the printed image for each color with thick paper and OHP transparencies.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 0.

-5 to +5 (step: 1)

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Thick Paper Density Adjustment].
3. Touch the Lighter or Darker key for the desired color to correct the image density.
   Light color: Touch the Darker key.
   Dark color: Touch the Lighter key.

12.6.9 Paper separation adjustment

A. Use

- By changing the period between the activation of the timing roller and the 2nd image transfer output, the paper separation position can be adjusted for the 1st and 2nd sides of paper in duplex print that uses thin paper.
- To ensure proper balance between paper separating and image transferring performances by varying the paper separation position applied for duplex printing of thin paper (64 g/ m^2) in hot and humid conditions.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 0.

-2 mm to +2 mm (step: 0.1 mm)

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Paper separation adjustment].
3. Select [First Side] or [Second Side].
4. Use the [+] or [-] key to change the setting value.
   Priority on paper separation performance: Increase the setting value.
   Priority on image transfer performance: Decrease the setting value.
5. Touch [OK] and determine the adjustment value.
6. Make a print and check the produced image.

12.6.10 Manual Toner Add

A. Use

- To adjust the set T/C level by replenishing an auxiliary supply of toner when a low ID occurs due to a lowered T/C after large numbers of prints have been made of originals having a high image density.
- When there is a drop in T/C.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Manual Toner Add].
3. Select the color, for which supply of toner is to be replenished.
4. Pressing the Start key will let the machine detect the current toner density and; if the density is lower than a reference value, a toner replenishing sequence and then a developer agitation sequence are run.
5. These sequences are repeated up to a maximum of four times until the toner density reaches the reference value. If the toner density is found to be higher than the reference value, only a developer agitation sequence is carried out.

12.6.11 Monochrome Density Adjustment

A. Use

- To fine-adjust the density of the printed image for a black print.
- To vary the density of the printed image of a black print.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 0.

-2 to +2 (step: 1)

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Monochrome Density Adjustment].
3. Touch [Lighter] or [Darker] as necessary to correct the image density.
   If the black is light, touch the Darker key.
   If the black is dark, touch the Lighter key.

2 12.6.12 Grad/Dev AC Bias V Selection

A. Use

- To change the setting of the development AC voltage.
- When this function is turned ON, it decreases the development AC voltage, thereby preventing voltage leak from occurring.
- Use when patches of white occur in the image in an ambience of low atmospheric pressure, such as in high altitudes.
- If ON is set, the screen doesn't display [Service Mode] → [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Gradation Adjust] and the Gradation Adjust is not allowed.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

12.7 CS Remote Care

12.7.1 Outlines

- CS Remote Care enables the machine and the computer at CS Remote Care center to exchange data through telephone/fax line in order to control the machine.
- CS Remote Care enables the machine to call the computer at the center when trouble occurs. It also enables the computer at the center to contact the machine for the necessary data.
- Data which CS Remote Care handles can be divided into the following groups.
  a. Data which show the status of use of the machine such as total count, PM count.
  b. Data which show the abnormal situation on the machine such as where and how often errors occur.
  c. Data on adjustment
  d. Data on setting

NOTE

- **It cannot be set when the following setting is set to "ON".**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode]

12.7.2 Setting up the CS Remote Care

NOTE

- **For resetting up the machine which CS Remote Care has already been set up, clear the RAM for CS Remote Care before resetting.**
  See P.416
- **When using a telephone line modem for connection, use the data modem which is based on the ITU-T recommendations V.34/V.32 bis/V.32 and AT command.**

A. Using the tel/fax modem, E-mail

Step	Procedure		
	Using the telephone line modem	Using the Fax line modem *1	Using E-mail
0	Register the device ID to the application at CS Remote Care center. The initial connection is not available unless the device ID is registered.		
1	Connecting the modem Turn the power for the modem OFF. Connect the machine and the modem with a modem cable. Connect the modem and the wall jack with a modular cable. * For connecting the modular cable, see the manual for the modem.	Be sure to remove the telephone line modem when the fax line is used.	Be sure to remove the telephone line modem when e-mail is used.
2	Inputting the ID code *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [ID Code], and touch [ID Code]. *2.* Input the seven digits ID of the service person, and touch [ID Code] again. See P.413		

Step	Procedure		
	Using the telephone line modem	Using the Fax line modem *1	Using E-mail
3	Clearing the RAM *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remove Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [RAM Clear]. *3.* Select Set, and touch [OK]. See P.416		
4	Selecting the CS Remote Care function Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remove Care] → [System Selection], and touch [Modem].	Selecting the CS Remote Care function Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remove Care] → [System Selection], and touch [Fax].	Selecting the CS Remote Care function Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [System Setting], and touch [E-Mail 1] or [E-Mail 2].
5	Inputting the ID code *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [ID Code], and touch [ID Code]. *2.* Input the seven digits ID of the service person, and touch [ID Code] again. See P.413		
6	Setting the date and time for CS Remote Care *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [Date & Time Setting]. *3.* Input the date, time and the time zone using the 10-key pad, and touch [Set]. See P.414		
7	Setting the Center ID *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [Machine Setting] → [Center ID], and input the Center ID (five digits). See P.414		
8	Confirm the Device ID *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [Machine Setting] → [Device ID], and input Device ID (13 digits). **NOTE** • **[Device ID] displays the serial number that is entered in [Service Mode]→[System 1]→[Serial Number].**		
9	Proceed to step 10.		Encryption setting *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [Basic Setting] and select either Encryption or No Encryption. Retransmission interval on e-mail delivery error • When selecting [E-mail2], set the retransmission interval on e-mail delivery error in software SW setting. See P.404
10	Setting the telephone number of the Center *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [Machine Setting] → [Center Telephone Number]. *3.* Input the telephone number of the center using the 10-keys pad and [P], [T], [W], [-]. See P.414		Setting the Respond Timeout *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [Respond Timeout] and enter the response timeout using the 10-key pad. **NOTE** • **Under normal conditions, there is no need to change the default setting.** See P.414

Step	Procedure		
	Using the telephone line modem	Using the Fax line modem *1	Using E-mail
11	Inputting the device telephone number *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [Machine Setting] → [Device Telephone Number]. *3.* Input the Device telephone number using the 10-key pad and [P], [T], [W], [-]. See P.414		Proceed to step 12.
12	Inputting the AT command for initializing the modem *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [AT Command]. *3.* Input AT Command. **NOTE** • **Change this command only when it is necessary. (They do not need to be changed in normal condition.)** • **For details on AT command, see the manual for the modem.** See P.417	Proceed to step 13.	Setting the E-mail address *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Server Set]. See P.418 *2.* Touch [Server for RX], and set POP3 server address, POP3 login name, POP3 password and POP3 port number. *3.* Press [Receive], and set the E-Mail address, Mail Check, Connection Time Out and APOP Authentication. *4.* Touch [Send], and set the SMTP server address, SMTP port number, Connection Time Out, and APOP Authentication. *5.* Touch [TX/RX Test], and press Start key to carry out a transmission/reception test. If it fails to exchange messages, see the error message to take necessary measure, and try again.
13	Setting the DIPSW for CS Remote Care **NOTE** • **This setting is not normally necessary. Take this step only when necessary in a specific connecting condition.**		When selecting [E-Mail2]: *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [Schedule] and set the schedule of periodic transmission. See P.414 *3.* Touch [Center Notifi. Item] and set items that will be reported to the Center. See P.414

Step	Procedure		
	Using the telephone line modem	Using the Fax line modem *1	Using E-mail
14	Executing the initial transmission *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [initial transmission] key on the right bottom of the screen to start initial transmission. *3.* When the machine is properly connected with the center, CS Remote Care setting screen will be displayed. **NOTE** • **The initial transmission key at the right bottom of the screen will be displayed only when the center ID, the device ID, Telephone number of the center and the device telephone number have been input.** See P.414		Receiving the initial connection E-mail message Sending the initial connection E-mail message from the center to the address of the copier. **NOTE** • **When receiving the initial connection E-mail message from the center while CS Remote Care-related screen is being displayed, the current setting information will be deleted, and CS Remote Care setting will be displayed.** • **For sending the initial connection E-mail, see the manual for CS Remote Care center.** • **Messages can be exchanged only between the center with initial connection and the copier.** • **The initial connection from the center will be carried out, and the E-mail address of the center will be stored in the copier.** • **When the initial registration is complete, the E-mail address of the center will be displayed by selecting [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [Detail Setting], [Basic Setting] → [E-Mail address].**

*1: Setting will be available only when the optional fax board is installed.

B. When using a WebDAV server in http communication

• When using http communication for CS Remote Care, the setup is as follows:

Step	http (bilateral communication)	http (unilateral communication: Device to Center)
	Procedure	
0	Register the device ID to the application at CS Remote Care center. The initial connection is not available unless the device ID is registered.	
1	Be sure to remove the telephone line modem when the http communication is used.	
2	Inputting the ID code *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [ID Code], and touch [ID Code]. *2.* Input the seven digits ID of the service person, and touch [ID Code] again. See P.413	
3	Clearing the RAM *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remove Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [RAM Clear]. *3.* Select Set, and touch [OK]. See P.416	
4	Selecting the CS Remote Care function Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remove Care] → [System Selection], and touch [http1].	Selecting the CS Remote Care function Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remove Care] → [System Selection], and touch [http2].
5	Inputting the ID code *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [ID Code], and touch [ID Code]. *2.* Input the seven digits ID of the service person, and touch [ID Code] again. See P.413	

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Step</th><th>http (bilateral communication)</th><th>http
(unilateral communication: Device to Center)</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">Procedure</th></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Setting the date and time for CS Remote Care
1. Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting].
2. Touch [Date & Time Setting].
3. Input the date, time and the time zone using the 10-key pad, and touch [Set].
See P.414</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Setting the Center ID
1. Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting].
2. Touch [Machine Setting] → [Center ID], and input the Center ID (five digits).
See P.414</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Confirm the Device ID
1. Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting].
2. Touch [Machine Setting] → [Device ID], and input Device ID (13 digits).

NOTE
• [Device ID] displays the serial number that is entered in [Service Mode] → [System 1] → [Serial Number].</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Encryption setting
1. Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting].
2. Touch [Basic Setting] → [Client Setting] and select either Encryption or No Encryption.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Heart Beat *1
1. Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [Detail Setting], and touch [Heart Beat].
2. In [Communication], set whether or not to enable Heart Beat communication. (Default: Yes)
3. Touch [Comm. Interval] and enter a Heart Beat transmission interval (1 to 256 minutes, Default: 30 minutes).
4. In [Specified Transmission], set whether or not to enable Heart Beat transmission at a specified interval. (Default: Yes)
5. Touch [Hour] and [Minute] and enter a time for specified transmission.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td>Proceed to step 12.</td><td>Notification Setting
1. Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [Detail Setting], and touch [Notification Setting].
2. Touch [Schedule] and set the schedule of periodic transmission.
See P.414
3. Touch [Center Notifi. Item] and set items that will be reported to the Center.
See P.414</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">Setting the http server
1. Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Server Set].
See P.421
2. Touch [HTTP Server Settings] and set a URL address, account, password, and port number.
3. Touch [Proxy/SSL] and make proxy server and SSL settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Setting the DIPSW for CS Remote Care
NOTE
• This setting is not normally necessary. Take this step only when necessary in a specific connecting condition.</td></tr>
</table>

Step	http (bilateral communication)	http (unilateral communication: Device to Center)
	Procedure	
14	Executing the initial transmission *1.* Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. *2.* Touch [initial transmission] key on the right bottom of the screen to start initial transmission. **NOTE** • **The initial transmission key at the right bottom of the screen will be displayed only when the center ID and the URL address have been input.** See P.414 *3.* When the machine is properly connected with the center, CS Remote Care setting screen will be displayed. • If communication error between the machine and Center occurs, check the error code that appears.	

*1 Heart Beat is a feature that uploads a Heart Beat file to the registered web server at a specified interval to report that the device is operating. Heart Beat files include total counter and status information.

12.7.3 Software SW setting for CS Remote Care

NOTE

- **SW bits data are written into the NVRAM every time a change is made. In case you changed bit data by accident, be sure to restore the previous state.**

A. Input procedure

1. Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [Detail Setting], and touch [Software Switch Setting].
2. Touch [Switch No.], and input the switch number (two digits) using the 10-key pad.
3. Touch [Bit Assignment], and select switch bit number using the arrow keys, and input 0 or 1 using the 10-key pad.
   (For setting by hexadecimal numbers, touch [HEX Assignment] key, and input using the 10-key pad or A to F keys.)
4. Touch [Fix].

NOTE

- **About functions of each switch, see to "B. List of software SW for CS Remote Care."**

B. List of software SW for CS Remote Care

SW No.	Functions	Ref. Page
01	• Dial Mode, Line for send only, Baud rate	P.405
02	• Emergency transmission, Date specified transmission, Call parts replace date, Call drum replace date, Call regular service date (PM), Auto call on the IC Life, Auto call of the IR shortage, Auto call on the zero reset of the fixed parts replacement	P.406
03	• Trouble display setting, Auto call on the toner empty, Auto call on the waste toner bottle full	P.406
04	• CS Remote Care communication mode	P.407
05	• Modem redial interval	P.407
06	• Modem redial times	P.408
07	• Redial for response time out	P.408

SW No.	Functions	Ref. Page
08	• Retransmission interval on E-Mail/http delivery error	P.408
09	• Retransmission times on E-Mail/http delivery error	P.409
10	• Time zone settings	P.409
11	• Timer 1 RING reception → CONNECT reception	P.409
12	• Timer 2 Dial request completed → CONNECT reception	P.410
13	• Reservation	—
14	• Timer 4 Line connection → Start request telegram delivery	P.410
15	• Timer 5 Wait time for other side's response	P.410
16	• Reservation	—
17	• Reservation	—
18	• Attention display To set weather to give the alarm display when using the modem but the power for the modem is OFF.	P.411
19	• Reservation	—
20	• Reservation	—
21	• Automatic transmission of chronological misfeed data at the time of transmission of misfeed frequent occurrence warning, transmission of paper-based misfeed frequent occurrence warning, transmission of original-based misfeed frequent occurrence warning	P.411
22	• Paper-based misfeed frequent occurrence threshold value	P.411
23	• Original-based misfeed frequent occurrence threshold value	P.412
24 : 40	• Reservation	—

C. Details of software SW for CS Remote Care

NOTE

- **Do not change any bit not described on this table.**
- **Shaded portions denote default values.**

SW No.	Default		
01	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 81
		1000 0001	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-4	Baud rate	0110		9600 bps
		0111		19.2 Kbps
		1000		38.4 Kbps
		Other		Not available
3-2	Reservation			
1	Line for send only	Disable	Enable	
0	Dial Mode	Pulse	Tone	

SW No.	Default		
02	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: FF
		1111 1111	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Auto call on the zero reset of the fixed parts replacement	Disable	Enable	
6	Auto call of the IR shortage	Disable	Enable	
5	Auto call on the IC Life	Disable	Enable	
4	Call regular service date(PM)	Disable	Enable	
3	Call drum replace date	Disable	Enable	
2	Call parts replace date	Disable	Enable	
1	Date specified transmission	Disable	Enable	
0	Emergency transmission	Disable	Enable	

SW No.	Default		
03	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 0A
		0000 1010	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-4	Reservation			
3	Auto call on the waste toner bottle full	Disable	Enable	
2	Reservation			
1	Auto call on the toner empty	Disable	Enable	
0	Trouble Display setting	When the CSRC is not connected	When the CSRC is connected	Select the type of message to be displayed at the time of automatic trouble notification made when the CSRC is connected, either the message when the CSRC is connected or that when the CSRC is not connected.

SW No.	Default		
04	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 02
		0000 0010	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-2	Reservation			
1-0	CS Remote Care communication mode	00		DATA
		01		FAX
		10		E-mail
		11		Not available

SW No.	Default		
05	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 03
		0000 0011	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-5	Reservation			
4-0	Modem redial interval	00001		1 minute
		00010		2 minutes
		00011		3 minutes
		00100		4 minutes
		00101		5 minutes
		00110		6 minutes
		00111		7 minutes
		01000		8 minutes
		01001		9 minutes
		01010		10 minutes
		Others		Not available

SW No.	Default		
06	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 0A
		0000 1010	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-0	Modem redial times	0000 0000		0 time
		0000 0001		1 time
		:		:
		0000 1010		10 times
		:		:
		0110 0010		98 times
		0110 0011		99 times
		Others		Not available

SW No.	Default		
07	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 01
		0000 0001	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-0	Redial for response time out	0000 0000		0 time
		0000 0001		1 time
		Others		Not available

SW No.	Default		
08	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 06
		0000 0110	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-0	Retransmission interval on E-mail/http delivery error	0000 0000		0 minute
		0000 0001		10 minutes
		:		:
		0000 0110		60 minutes
		:		:
		0000 1011		110 minutes
		0000 1100		120 minutes
		Others		Not available

SW No.	Default		
09	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 0A
		0000 1010	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-0	Retransmission times on E-mail/http delivery error	0000 0000		0 time
		0000 0001		1 time
		:		:
		0000 1010		10 times
		:		:
		0110 0010		98 times
		0110 0011		99 times
		Others		Not available

SW No.	Default		
10	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 00
		0000 0000	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-0	Time zone settings	0000 0000		-12 hours
		0000 0001		-11 hours
		:		:
		0110 0010		+12 hours
		0001 1010		+13 hours
		Others		Not available

SW No.	Default		
11	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 20
		0010 0000	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-0	Timer 1 RING reception → CONNECT reception	0000 0000		0 sec
		0000 0001		1 sec
		:		:
		0010 0000		32 sec
		:		:
		1111 1110		254 sec
		1111 1111		255 sec

SW No.	Default		
12	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 40
		0100 0000	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-0	Timer 2 Dial request completed → CONNECT reception	0000 0000		0 sec
		0000 0001		1 sec
		:		:
		0100 0000		64 sec
		:		:
		1111 1110		254 sec
		1111 1111		255 sec

SW No.	Default		
14	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 20
		0010 0000	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-0	Timer 4 Line connection → Start request telegram delivery	0000 0000		0 msec
		0000 0001		100 msec
		:		:
		0010 0000		3,200 msec
		:		:
		1111 1110		25,400 msec
		1111 1111		25,500 msec

SW No.	Default		
15	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 1E
		0001 1110	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-0	Timer 5 Wait time for other side's response	0000 0000		0 msec
		0000 0001		1 sec
		:		:
		0001 1110		30 sec
		:		:
		1111 1110		254 sec
		1111 1111		255 sec

SW No.	Default		
18	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 01
		0000 0001	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-1	Reservation			
0	Attention display To set weather to give the alarm display when using the modem but the power for the modem is OFF.	OFF	ON	

⚠1

SW No.	Default		
21	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 00
		0000 0000	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-3	Reservation			
⚠1 2	Automatic transmission of chronological misfeed data at the time of transmission of misfeed frequent occurrence warning	OFF	ON	
⚠1 1	Original-based misfeed frequent occurrence threshold value	OFF	ON	If the number of jams exceeds the threshold specified per day (0:00 to 23:59), Jam Frequent Occurrence Warning is sent. At 12 a.m. of the next day, the counter is reset.
⚠1 0	Paper-based misfeed frequent occurrence threshold value	OFF	ON	

SW No.	Default		
22	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 05
		0000 0101	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-0	Paper-based misfeed frequent occurrence threshold value	0000 0001		1
		0000 0010		2
		:		:
		0000 0101		5
		:		:
		0000 1110		14
		0000 1111		15
		Others		Not available

SW No.	Default		
23	Bit	7654 3210	HEX: 05
		0000 0101	

Bit	Functions	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7-0	Original-based misfeed frequent occurrence threshold value	0000 0001		1
		0000 0010		2
		:		:
		0000 0101		5
		:		:
		0000 1110		14
		0000 1111		15
		Others		Not available

12.7.4 Setup confirmation

- **Follow the steps below to make sure that CS Remote Care has been properly set up.**

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [CS Remote Care].
3. Check to make sure that only selected item is displayed.

12.7.5 Calling the maintenance

- When CE starts maintenance, inputting the ID code of CE (seven digits: numbers which CE can identify. They are controlled by the distributor.) will transmit the information to the Center side and tells that the maintenance has started. When the maintenance is finished, touching [Maintenance Complete] key will transmit the information to the center and tells that it is finished.

A. When starting the maintenance

1. Select Service Mode and touch [CS Remote Care].
2. Touch [ID Code], and input ID Code.
3. Touch [ID Coke].

* The Start key blinks while maintenance is being carried out.

B. When finishing the maintenance

1. Select Service Mode and touch [CS Remote Care].
2. Touch [Maintenance Complete].

12.7.6 Calling the center from the administrator

- When the CS Remote Care setup is complete, the administrator can call the CS Remote Care center.

1. Select [Administrator Settings], and touch [System Connection].
2. Touch [Admin. transmission].
3. Press the Start key.
   When the setup is not complete or another transmission is being carried out, the Admin. transmission key will not be displayed, and the transmission is not available.

NOTE

- **For transmitting data of the machine by calling the center on the specified date and time, refer to the manual for CS Remote Care center.**

12.7.7 Checking the transmission log

- The transmission log list will be output to be checked.

1. Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail setting].
2. Touch [Communication Log Print].
3. Load tray 1 or bypass tray with A4S paper.
4. Press the Start key to output transmission log.

12.7.8 Detail on settings

A. System Selection

(1) Use

- To select the system type for remote diagnosis.
- Use to newly build or change the system.

(2) Procedure

- Select E-Mail, Modem, or Fax.
- Fax is available only when the optional fax kit is being installed.

E-Mail1 E-Mail2 Modem Fax http1 http2

B. ID Code

(1) Use

- To register the service ID.
- Use when registering and changing service ID.

(2) Procedure

- Enter a 7-digit code from the 10-key pad. (0000001 to 9999999)

<Registration>

- Touch ID code and enter the service ID.
- Touch [ID code] to register the ID.
- The [Detail Setting] will appear when the ID has been registered.

C. Detail Setting

(1) Basic Setting (E-Mail1, E-Mail2, Modem or Fax)

<Use>

- Execute the primary setting.
- Use to change the set contents.
- Use to register the machine to the CS Remote Care center.

<Procedure>

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [CS Remote Care].
3. Touching the [Detail Setting] will display the primary setting.

<Center Setting>

- Set the center ID, Device ID, and the phone No.
- When e-mail is selected for system and all setup procedures are completed, e-mail address of the center is displayed.

* When entering the phone number, 10-keys and keys on the screen have following meanings.

  [-] Pose : Waits to start transmitting after dialing
  [W] Wait : Detects the dial tone of the other end
  [T] Tone dial : Carry out tone dialing
  [P] Pulse dial : Carry out pulse dialing
  [*], [#] : To be used as necessary

<Schedule (Only when the [E-Mail2] is selected)>

- Set the schedule of notification to the center.
- Up to three different notification schedules can be registered.
- Select the notification cycle from [Day], [Week], or [Month].
  When selecting [Day] for the notification cycle, set the Day Frequency.
  When selecting [Week] for the notification cycle, set the Week Frequency and day of the week.
  When selecting [Month], set the Month Frequency and the date of the month.

<Center Notification (Only when the [E-Mail2] is selected)>

- Select the items of data that will be sent to the center in one-way transmission through E-Mail2.
- The following table shows each of the notification item keys and corresponding data.

[1]	Sales count data	[7]	EKC data
[2]	Error count data	[8]	Adjustment data
[3]	Service count data	[9]	Coverage data
[4]	Life count data Life cycle data	[10]	Not used
[5]	CSRC-System data Device config data	[11]	Not used
[6]	History data	[12]	Not used

NOTE

- **Multiple items of data can be selected and sent at one time. However, be sure that only EKC data cannot be sent together with other items of data.**

<Initial Transmission>
- Touching the Initial Transmission key will sent the information to the CS Remote Care center to register the machine.
  (Only when the modem or fax is selected on the system Input.)

(2) Basic Setting (http1 or http2)

<Use>
- Execute the primary setting.
- Use to change the set contents.
- Use to register the machine to the CS Remote Care center.

<Procedure>
1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [CS Remote Care].
3. Touching the [Detail Setting] will display the primary setting.

<Center Setting>
- Set the center ID.
- Display the device ID.

<Client Setting>
- To set whether or not to encrypt communication.

<Heart Beat>
- To make Heart Beat related settings.
- Heart Beat is a feature that uploads a Heart Beat file to the registered web server at a specified interval to report that the device is operating. Heart Beat files include total counter and status information.

<Initial Transmission>
- Touching the Initial Transmission key will sent the information to the CS Remote Care center to register the machine.

(3) Date & Time Setting

<Use>
- To set the data and time-of-day.
- Use to set or change the date and time-of-day.

<Procedure>
1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [CS Remote Care].
3. Touch [Detail Setting] to access Date & Time Setting.
4. Enter the date (month, day and year), time-of-day, and the time zone from the 10-key pad.
5. Touch [SET] to start the clock.

(4) RAM Clear

<Use>

- To clear the following data at the center.
  ID Code, Primary Setting, Date/Time Input (Time Zone), Software SW Setting and AT Command.
- To be used for setting CS Remote Care.
- To be used for reset the every data of the center to default.

NOTE

- **If RAM clear is selected during transmission, RAM clear processing will be implemented at the time the transmission is completed regardless of whether it is done properly or not.**

<Procedure>

- The default setting is “Unset.”

Set “Unset”

(5) Communication Log Print

<Use>

- To print out the communication log.
- Use to output and use the communication log.

<Procedure>

1. Call the Service Mode on the screen.
2. Touch [CS Remote Care].
3. Touch [Detail Setting] to access communication log print.
4. Load tray 1 or bypass tray with A4S or 8 1/2 x 11 paper.
5. Press Start key to print out the communication log.

(6) Software Switch Setting

<Use>

- To change the CS Remote Care settings.

<Procedure>

- Refer to “Software SW setting for CS Remote Care” for the setting.
  See P.404

(7) Response Time Out

<Use>

- It sets the intervals for resending e-mails when transmission error occurred.
- It can be set only when [E-Mail] is selected by System Setting.
- To use when changing the intervals for resending e-mails when transmission error occurred.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is 60 minute.

“60 minute” (10 to 1440)

(8) AT Command

<Use>

- To set the command to be issued at the time of modem initialization.
- This setting is available only when [Modem] is selected for the system setting.

<Procedure>

- Enter the command and touch [SET] to register.

(9) Notification Setting

<Use>

- To make the settings of notification to the Center that is performed under unilateral communication via http.
- This setting is available only when [http2] is selected in System Setting.

<Procedure>

<Schedule>

- Set the schedule of notification to the center.
- Up to three different notification schedules can be registered.
- Select the notification cycle from [Day], [Week], or [Month].
  When selecting [Day] for the notification cycle, set the Day Frequency.
  When selecting [Week] for the notification cycle, set the Week Frequency and day of the week.
  When selecting [Month], set the Month Frequency and the date of the month.

<Center Notifi. Item>

- The following table shows each of the notification item keys and corresponding data.

[1]	Sales count data	[7]	EKC data
[2]	Error count data	[8]	Adjustment data
[3]	Service count data	[9]	Coverage data
[4]	Life count data Life cycle data	[10]	Not used
[5]	CSRC-System data Device config data	[11]	Not used
[6]	History data	[12]	Not used

NOTE

- **Multiple items of data can be selected and sent at one time. However, be sure that only EKC data cannot be sent together with other items of data.**

D. Server Setting (E-Mail1 or E-mail2 is selected.)

(1) Server for RX-POP3 server

<Use>

- To set the POP3 server address used for the CS Remote Care.
- To set the address of the POP3 Server.
- POP3 server address can be set with IP address or the domain name.

<Procedure>

<Input IP Address>

- IP address version 4 format
  [0 to 255].[0 to 255].[0 to 255].[0 to 255]

<Input FQDN>

- Enter the domain name.

(2) Server for RX-POP3 login name

<Use>

- To set the logon name for the POP3 server used for the CS Remote Care.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is No.
- Up to 64 characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) can be used.

(3) Server for RX-POP3 password

<Use>

- To set the logon password for the POP3 server used for the CS Remote Care.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is No.
- Up to 15 characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) can be used.

(4) Server for RX-POP3 port number

<Use>

- To set the POP3 port number used for the CS Remote Care.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is 110.

"110" (1 to 65535)

(5) Receive-E-mail Address

<Use>

- To set the e-mail address used for the CS Remote Care.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is No.
- Up to 129 characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) can be used.

(6) Receive-Mail Check

<Use>

- To set whether or not to use mail check and the time interval for the POP server used for the CS Remote Care.
- To change the time interval for mail check.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is No.

"No" (1 to120 min., No)

(7) Receive-Connection timeout

<Use>

- To set the timeout period for connection during reception.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is 60 Sec.

"60 Sec" (30 to 300 Sec)

(8) Receive-APOP Authentication

<Use>

- To set whether or not to authenticate the APOP during reception.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

(9) Send-SMTP server

<Use>

- To set the SMTP sever address for transmission used for the CS Remote Care.
- SMTP server address can be set by the IP address or the domain name.

<Procedure>

<Input IP Address>

- IP address version 4 format
  [0 to 255].[0 to 255].[0 to 255].[0 to 255]

<Input FQDN>

- Enter the domain name.

(10) Send-SMTP port number

<Use>

- To set the SMTP port number for transmission used for the CS Remote Care.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is 25.

"25" (1 to 65535)

(11) Send-SMTP Connection Time-out

<Use>

- To set the timeout period for transmission.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is 60 Sec.

"60 Sec" (30 to 300 Sec)

(12) Send-Authentication Setting

<Use>

- To set whether or not to authenticate during transmission via SMTP server.
- To use when authenticating during transmission.
  Available authentication mode: POP Before SMTP, SMTP authentication

<Procedure>

- The default setting is OFF.

"OFF" POP Before SMTP SMTP Authentication

* Setting to "POP Before SMTP" will set the time for POP Before SMTP.

- The default setting is 60 Sec.

"60 Sec" (0 to 60 Sec)

* When setting to SMTP authentication, touch the "Setting Check" key for authentication.
  User ID : Enter the user ID for SMTP authentication.
  Password : Enter the password for SMTP authentication.
  Domain name : Enter the domain name for SMTP authentication.

(13) TX/RX Test

<Use>

- To determine the correct transmission and reception using CS Remote Care.

<Procedure>

- Press the Start key to let the machine start the transmission and reception test.
- The test procedure and result will be displayed on the screen.

(14) Data Initialization

<Use>

- To initialize the contents for the sever setting.

<Procedure>

- The default setting is No.

Yes "No"

E. Server Setting (http1 or http2 is selected)

(1) HTTP Server Settings

<Use>

- To set a http server at the other end that is used in CS Remote Care.

<Procedure>

<URL>

- To set the address of the http server.

<Account>

- To set an account that is used to access the http server.

<Password>

- To set a password that is used to access the http server.

<Port Number>

- To set a port number that is used to access the http server.

(2) Proxy/SSL

<Use>

- To make proxy/SSL settings of the http server at the other end that is used in CS Remote Care.

<Procedure>

<Proxy Server>

- To set whether or not to use a proxy server.

<SSL Settings>

- To set whether or not to use SSL communication.

(3) Data Initialization

<Use>

- To initialize values in the server settings.

12.7.9 List of the CS Remote Care error code

A. When connecting by modem

Error code	Error	Solution
0001	The line is busy (Busy detection)	• Transmit again manually.
0002	Failure of the Modem default setting at transmitting (When the transmission completes with modem initial setting failed)	• Check if the power of the modem is ON. • Check the connecting condition between the modem and the main body.
0003	Timeout of CONNECT at transmitting (No response to ATD)	• Transmit again manually. • Check if the power of the modem is ON. • Check the connecting condition between the modem and the main body.
0005	Timeout of CONNECT at receiving (No response to ATA)	• Check if the power of the modem is ON. • Check the connecting condition between the modem and the main body.
0006	Shut down of the data modem line (Host) (Carrier OFF is detected)	• No solution, because the line is shut down at the host side.
0008	Timeout of start request telegram delivery (Start request telegram is not delivered after line connection)	• Transmit again manually.
0009	Timeout of finish request telegram delivery (Finish request telegram is not delivered (Start of shut down).)	• Transmit again manually.
000A	Receiving rejection (Receiving is made when the main body is set to reject receiving.)	• Check the setting condition of the host side. • Check the setting condition of the main body side.
000B	RS232C driver over run (When the modem detects over run.)	• If the same error is detected several times, turn the modem power OFF and ON.
000C	If the same error is detected several times, turn the modem power OFF and ON.	• If the same error is detected several times, turn the modem power OFF and ON.
000D	Break Interrupt (BI) indicator (When the modem detects Break Interrupt (BI) indicator.)	• If the same error is detected several times, turn the modem power OFF and ON.
0011	Baud rate ERROR (When selected baud rate is out of the specification (9600 bps to 38400 bps).)	• Check the baud rate of the software DipSW.
0018	Machine ID has already been registered (Request telegram 2 (SET-UP) comes from the main body that has already registered machine ID.)	• Set the initial registrations again for all including the host side.
0019	Center ID error (Center ID of the host is not identical with the one of start request telegram.)	• Check center ID setting of the main body side. • Check center ID setting of the main body side.

Error code	Error	Solution
001A	Device ID inconsistency (Device ID of the host is not identical with the one of start request telegram.)	• Check device ID setting of the main body side. • Check the setting of the host side.
001B	Device ID unregistered (Request telegram 2 (Constant data transmitting, emergency call) comes from the main body that has not registered machine ID yet.)	• Check device ID setting of the main body side. • Check the setting of the host side.
001E	Impossible to change (during printing) (Setting cannot be changed because the setting change is made during the machine is printing or starts printing.)	• Try again when the machine is not printing.
0020	Timeout of telegram delivery (At waiting mode of telegram delivery the machine fails to receive the telegram in a given time.)	• Try communication again.
0027	Transmission / receiving collision (Receiving is detecting during transmitting processing)	• Try communication again.

NOTE

- **When a code other than the ones listed above is displayed, contact KMBT and inform the error code.**

B. When connecting by e-mails

Error code	Error	Solution
0001	Connection timeout during transmission	• Check the SMTP server on User side.
0###	Transmission error ###: SMTP responding code (hexadecimal) For SMTP responding code, see RFC issued by IETF after converting hexadecimal number into decimal one.	• Check the SMTP server on User side.
0003	Connection timeout when receiving	• Check the POP3 server on User side.
0005	Receiving error	• Check the POP3 server on User side.
0020	SMTP communication error	• Check SMTP authentication setting.
1030	Machine ID mismatching • Received an e-mail which tells that machine ID mismatches.	• Check the machine ID setting. • Check the machine ID setting on host side.
1050	Grammar error • Received mail did not define the CS Remote Care command (2 digits). • The Type of Subject and the command of attached file are not consistent.	• Check mail content.

Error code	Error	Solution
1061	Modifying not allowed • The host sent a command mail that asked modifying data of item where setting change is not allowed.	• Ask the host to send another instruction mail for modifying.
1062	Modifying not available due to the copy job currently performing • When informing the host that it cannot be modified due to the copy job currently performing.	• Ask the host to send another instruction mail for modifying.
1080	Data length problem • LEN value of TEXT data and actual data length are not consistent.	• Ask the host to send another instruction mail for modifying.
1081	Frame No. error • The last frame has not been received. • There are missing frame No.	• Check the status of the machine registration on host side.
1082	Subject Type problem • Received code did not define the Type of Subject.	• Ask the host to send another instruction mail for modifying.
1084	Date expired • Expiration date for data modification command has passed.	• Ask the host to send another instruction mail for modifying.
1091	Oversized command • Received attached file exceeds the machine's receive buffer size.	• Ask the host to send another instruction mail for modifying.
1092	Received an error mail when center setup is not complete	• Check the status of the machine registration on host side.
2039	Socket is not connected. • LAN cable on the copier side is detached.	• Check the SMTP server and POP3 server on user side.
203C	Connection timeout	• Check timeout setting
203E	Network is down. • LAN cable on the copier side is detached.	• Check the connection between the copier on the user's side and the network connector. • Check the network environment on the user's side.
3000	POP3_AUTHORIZATION_ERR	• Check the POP3 server environment on user's side.
3001	POP3_TRANSACTION_ERR	• Check the POP3 server environment on user's side.
3002	POP3_CONNECT_ERR	• Check the POP3 server environment on user's side.
3003	POP3_TIMEOUT_ERR	• Check the POP3 server environment on user's side.
3004	POP3_FORMAT_ERR	• Check the POP3 server environment on user's side.
3005	POP3_MEMORY_ERR	• Check the POP3 server environment on user's side.
3006	POP3_JOBID_ERR	• Check the POP3 server environment on user's side.
3007	POP3_NO_DATA_ERR	• Check the POP3 server environment on user's side.

	Error code	Error	Solution
	3008	POP3_DELETE_FAIL_ERR	• Check the POP3 server environment on user's side.
	3009	POP3_MAILBOX_FULL	• Check the POP3 server environment on user's side.
⚠2	4103	During polling from MFP, MIO is not active and MFP cannot start communication.	• Wait for a while and try transmitting again.
⚠2	4104	During e-mail transmission from MFP to the center, the SMTP channel is not in the "Ready" status and MFP cannot send e-mail.	• Wait for a while and try transmitting again.
⚠2	4105	During polling from MFP, the POP3 channel is not in the "Ready" status and MFP cannot receive e-mail.	• Wait for a while and try transmitting again.
⚠2	4106	During e-mail transmission from MFP to the center, MIO is not active and MFP cannot start communication.	• Wait for a while and try transmitting again.
⚠2	41F9	Control error • In the CS Remote Care's internal sequence, message transfer failed.	• Turn the main power switch OFF and then ON.
⚠2	41FA	Control error • MIO response timed out.	• Turn the main power switch OFF and then ON.
⚠2	41FB	Control error • As the file descriptor of the e-mail that MFP receives from MIO is invalid, MFP cannot receive the e-mail.	• Turn the main power switch OFF and then ON.
⚠2	41FC	Control error • During the creation of data to be sent by e-mail, the CS Remote Care's internal status error occurs or the data that need to be sent has not been created.	• Turn the main power switch OFF and then ON.
⚠2	41FD	Control error • During e-mail reception, the parameter sent from MIO to the CS Remote Care is invalid and MFP cannot receive the e-mail.	• Turn the main power switch OFF and then ON.
⚠2	41FE	Control error • After the completion of e-mail transmission, MFP received the transmission completion message from MIO. However, the CS Remote Care's internal status was not the status of transmission completion.	• Turn the main power switch OFF and then ON.
⚠2	41FF	Control error • During e-mail reception, MIO became inactive.	• Turn the main power switch OFF and then ON.
⚠2	4210	Control error • E-mail sent from MIO could not be properly handled in the CS Remote Care.	• Turn the main power switch OFF and then ON.
⚠2	5***	MIO detects error when sending an attached file.	• Check the SMTP server /POP3 server environment on user's side.
⚠2	6***	MIO detects error during a sending sequence.	• Check the SMTP server /POP3 server environment on user's side.

NOTE

- **When a code other than the ones listed above is displayed, contact KMBT and inform the error code.**

C. When connecting by http

Error code	Error	Solution
0001	Connection timeout during transmission	• Check the http server.
0***	Transmission error ###: http responding code (hexadecimal) For http responding code, see RFC issued by IETF after converting hexadecimal number into decimal one.	• Check the http server.
0003	Connection timeout when receiving	• Check the http server.
0005	Receiving error	• Check the http server.
1030	Machine ID mismatching • Received a file which tells that machine ID mismatches.	• Check the machine ID setting. • Check the machine ID setting on host side.
1050	Grammar error • Received file did not define the CS Remote Care command (2 digits). • The Type of Subject and the command of file are not consistent.	• Check file content.
1061	Modifying not allowed • The host sent a command file that asked modifying data of item where setting change is not allowed.	• Ask the host to send another instruction file for modifying.
1062	Modifying not available due to the copy job currently performing • When informing the host that it cannot be modified due to the copy job currently performing.	• Ask the host to send another instruction file for modifying.
1080	Data length problem • LEN value of TEXT data and actual data length are not consistent.	• Ask the host to send another instruction file for modifying.
1081	Frame No. error • The last frame has not been received. • There are missing frame No.	• Check the status of the machine registration on host side.
1082	Subject Type problem • Received code did not define the Type of Subject.	• Ask the host to send another instruction file for modifying.
1084	Date expired • Expiration date for data modification command has passed.	• Ask the host to send another instruction file for modifying.
1091	Oversized command • Received file exceeds the machine's receive buffer size.	• Ask the host to send another instruction file for modifying.

Error code	Error	Solution
2001	http request result problem • Internal status error	• Check user network environment. • Check http server environment.
2002	http request result problem • File list acquisition result problem	
2003	http request result problem • Request header transmission failure	
2004	http request result problem • Request body transmission failure	
2005	http request result problem • Response header receive response failure	
2006	http request result problem • Response body receive response failure	
2007	http request result problem • Session ID inconsistent	
3002	http request result problem • Unopened client ID was specified	
3003	http request result problem • Receive time out occurred	
3004	http request result problem • Receive error occurred. Or wrong request URL was specified.	
3005	http request result problem • Content-Length or receive size exceeded the specified max. transfer size. Message body size was too large.	
3006	http request result problem • Due to reset, process was stopped. Or message body size exceeded the specified max. transfer size.	
3007	http request result problem • Internal error occurred. Or due to internal reset, process was stopped.	
3008	http request result problem • Connection to WebDAV server failed.	
3009	http request result problem • Error occurred during transmission to the WebDAV server.	
3010	http request result problem • Time out occurred during transmission to the WebDav server.	
3011	http request result problem • Connection to the proxy server failed.	
3012	http request result problem • The proxy server refused CONNECT request.	
3013	http request result problem • The proxy server was set to enabled, but the proxy server host was not set.	
3014	http request result problem • Proxy server authentication failed.	

Error code	Error	Solution
3015	http request result problem • Other errors were sent from the proxy server.	• Check user network environment. • Check http server environment.
3016	http request result problem • Internal error occurred.	
3017	http request result problem • As the device application specified MIO_REQBODY_ERROR, process was stopped.	
4106	When data is uploaded from MFP to the web server, the network connection is not enabled and MFP cannot start communication.	• Wait for a while and try transmitting again.
41FA	Control error • MIO response timed out.	• Turn the main power switch OFF and then ON.
5***	MIO detects error at file sending.	• Check the http server environment.
6***	MIO detects error at sending sequence.	• Check the http server environment.

NOTE

- **When a code other than the ones listed above is displayed, contact KMBT and inform the error code.**

D. When connecting by Fax modem

Error code	Error	Solution
T50	Host terminal ID not correct	• Check the telephone number set for host.
R80	Serial number received from the host not correct.	• Check the status of the Machine registration on host side.
R81	Disconnection of writing instruction from host during machine is running.	• Wait for a while and try transmitting again.
R82	Disconnection of FAX-CSRC instruction when FAX-CSRC is not allowed.	• Check the status of the Machine registration on host side.
R83	Host command error.	• Contact KMBT and inform the error code.
R84	NVRAM writing error.	• Contact KMBT and inform the error code.

NOTE

- **When a code other than the ones listed above is displayed, see the FK-502 Service Manual.**

12.7.10 Troubleshooting for CS Remote Care

If communication is not done properly, check the condition by following the procedures shown below.

1. Shift the screen in the order of [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [Detail Setting]. At this time, in the cases of initial transmitting / administrator transmitting / maintenance start transmitting / maintenance finish transmitting, the communication result will be displayed at the top of the screen.

* For the communication result, the following message will be displayed based on its success or failure.

Display of communication result	Cause	Solution
Communicating	—	—
Communication trouble with the center	Although the machine tries to communicate with the center, there is any trouble and the communication completes unsuccessfully.	• See the list of error message and confirm the corresponding point. See P.422
Complete successfully	—	—
Modem trouble	Although the machine tries to communicate with the center, there is any trouble in the modem.	• Check if the power of modem in ON. • Check if there is any problem in connection between the modem and the main body.
Busy line	Although the machine tries to communicate with the center, the line to the center is busy.	• Communicate with the center again.
No response	Although the machine tries to communicate with the center, there is no response from the center.	• Communicate with the center again. • Check the communication environment of the center side.

12.7.11 CS Remote Care Operation under Enhanced Security Mode

CS Remote Care can be used even when “ON” is selected in [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode].
However, to keep the enhanced security level, the following restrictions are accompanied.

- Only SSL communication is available.
- Error occurs if the Center tries to send the following commands.
  - Firmware update command
  - Command of reading and updating account track information
  - Machine settings update command
  - Command of reading and updating Internet ISW setting information

12.8 System 1

12.8.1 Marketing Area

A. Use

- To make the various settings (language, paper size, fixed zoom ratios, etc.) according to the applicable marketing area.
- Upon setup.

B. Procedure

<Marketing Area>

- Select the applicable marketing area and touch [END] to set the marketing area.

JAPAN	US	Europe	Others1
Others2	Others3	Others4	Others5

<Fax Target>

1. Touch the [Fax Target].
2. Select the applicable marketing area using [+] and [-] keys, and touch [END].

(1) List of functions affected by marketing area setting

- The listed are the functions of which setting is automatically changed depending on the selected marketing area.

Marketing area / Setting item	JAPAN	US	Europe	Others1	Others2	Others3	Others4	Others5
Language (Default value)	Japanese	English	English	English	English	Simplified Chinese	Traditional Chinese	English
Language Selection (Selectable language)	Japanese English French Italian German Spanish	English French Italian German Spanish Japanese	English French Italian German Spanish Japanese	English French Spanish Japanese	English French Spanish Traditional Chinese	Simplified Chinese English	Traditional Chinese English	English French Spanish Hangul
Additional selectable language when the UK-203 is installed.	Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Hangul	Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Hangul	Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Hangul	Italian German Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Hangul	Italian German Japanese Simplified Chinese Hangul	French Italian German Spanish Japanese Traditional Chinese Hangul	French Italian German Spanish Japanese Simplified Chinese Hangul	Italian German Japanese Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese
Foolscap size	8 x 13	8 x 13	8 x 13	8 x 13	8 x 13	8 x 13	8 x 13	8 x 13
LCT size	A4 LEF	Letter LEF	A4 LEF	A4 LEF	A4 LEF	A4 LEF	A4 LEF	A4 LEF
LCC size	A4 LEF	Letter LEF	A4 LEF	A4 LEF	A4 LEF	A4 LEF	A4 LEF	A4 LEF
Unit	Metric	Inch	Metric	Metric	Metric	Metric	Metric	Metric
Total counter mode	Mode1	Mode2	Mode2	Mode2	Mode2	Mode2	Mode2	Mode2
Size counter	No count	A3, 11x17	A3,B4, 11x17, 8 1/2x14	A3,B4, 11x17, 8 1/2x14	A3,B4, 11x17, 8 1/2x14	A3,B4, 11x17, 8 1/2x14	A3,B4, 11x17, 8 1/2x14	A3,B4, 11x17, 8 1/2x14
Unit Change	Japan	US	Europe	Europe	Europe	Europe	Europe	Europe

NOTE

- **The language used in the service mode depends on the Language Selection setting, and changes to the language as following table.**

Language Selection	Service Mode
Japanese	Japanese
Simplified Chinese	Simplified Chinese
Traditional Chinese	Traditional Chinese
Hangul	Hangul
Language other than listed above	English

12.8.2 Tel/Fax Number

A. Use

- To enter the tel/fax number of the service contact that will appear on the control panel when a malfunction occurs in the machine.
- Upon setup.

B. Procedure

- Enter the tel/fax number (19 digits) from the 10-key pad.
- Use Interrupt key to enter "-."

12.8.3 Serial Number

A. Use

- To register the serial numbers of the machine and options.
- The numbers will be printed on the list output.
- To use the serial number as machine ID during CS Remote Care communication.
- Upon setup.

NOTE

- **When main power switch was turned ON while the serial No. was not entered, the message to require entering the serial No. will be displayed.**
- **Do not change the serial number registered in the machine. If memory data is lost and entering the serial number is required, enter the original correct serial number. Be careful to enter the correct serial number since characters other than alphanumeric can be also entered. CSRC communication is not available if a wrong serial number is entered.**
- **The serial number of "Printer" can be checked through the following: [Utility] → [Meter Count] → [Check Details].**

B. Procedure

- Type the serial numbers.
  Printer, Scanner, ADF, LCT, Sorter/FN, Duplex, Vendor, Fax1, Fax2, RU, ZU (Not used)

12.8.4 Sleep ON/OFF Choice Setting

2

A. Use

- To display the option of "OFF" for the sleep mode setting screen available from administrator settings.

NOTE

- **The sleep mode will begin in 48 hours even if it sets it to "OFF."**

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Prohibit.

Permit	"Prohibit"

12.8.5 Foolscap Size Setting

A. Use

- To set the size for foolscap paper.
- Upon setup.

B. Procedure

- Select the size from among the following five.

$8^1/_2$ x $13^1/_2$	220 x 330 mm	$8^1/_2$ x 13	$8^1/_4$ x 13	$8^1/_8$ x $13^1/_4$	8 x 13

12.8.6 Original Size Detection

A. Use

- To change the document size detection table.
- Use to change the setting for the document size detection table.

  Copy Glass : To change the size detection table for the document glass.

  $8^1/_2$ x 14/Foolscap Size Detection

  : To set whether paper of $8^1/_2$ x $13^1/_2$ size is detected as $8^1/_2$ x 14 or foolscap in original glass or ADF size detection.
  When Table 1 is selected in Copy Glass, paper of $8^1/_2$ x $13^1/_2$ size is detected as foolscap despite of the setting of $8^1/_2$ x 14/Foolscap Size Detection.

B. Procedure

<Copy Glass>

- The default setting is Table1.

"Table1"	Table2

NOTE

- **Table 2 can be set only when original size detection sensor 2 is being mounted.**

<81/2 x 14/Foolscap Size Detection>

- The default setting is $8^1/_2$ x 14.

"$8^1/_2$ x 14"	Foolscap

12.8.7 Install Date

A. Use

- To register the date the main body was installed.
- Upon setup.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode on the screen.
2. Select the key as follows.
   [System 1] → [Install Date].
3. Enter the date (Year 4 digit → Month 2 digit → date 2 digit) from the 10-key pad.
4. Touch [Entry] to set the date of installation.

12.8.8 Initialization-Clear All Data

A. Use

- To initialize the setting data.
- For details on items to be cleared, see “CONTENTS TO BE CLEARED BY RESET FUNCTION.”
  See P.530

NOTE

- **When removing or installing the hard disk after registering the data below, be sure to clear the data.**
  Referring data: One-touch registration, user authentication/account track.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Select the key as follows.
   [System 1] → [Initialization] → [Clear All Data].
3. Press the Start key.
4. When [OK] is displayed, turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

12.8.9 Initialization-Clear Individual Data

- Clear Individual Data enables you to select and clear multiple items at a time.

A. Copy Program Data

(1) Use

- To clear data registered as copy program.
- Use this feature to clear all copy program data at a time.

(2) Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode on the screen.
2. Select the key as follows.
   [System 1] → [Initialization] → [Copy Program Data].
3. Press the Start key.
4. When [OK] is displayed, turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

B. Address Registration Data

(1) Use

- To clear address registration data.
- Use this feature to initialize address registration data.
- The following are address registration data:
  Group address data, Program key data, One-touch destination data, Mail body data, Subject data, Prefix/suffix data

(2) Procedure

1. Select the key as follows.
   [System 1] → [Initialization] → [Address Registration Data].
2. Press the Start key.
3. When [OK] is displayed, turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

C. Fax Setting Data

(1) Use

- To clear fax-related settings and parameters. However, address-related data is not cleared.
- Use this feature to clear fax-related settings and parameters at a time.

(2) Procedure

1. Select the key as follows.
   [System 1] → [Initialization] → [Fax Setting Data].
2. Press the Start key.
3. When [OK] is displayed, turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

D. All History Data

(1) Use

- To clear history data.
- The following are history data:
  Job history, Journal history, Receive reject history, Destination history, Job secure counter (Internal data for history management)

(2) Procedure

1. Select the key as follows.
   [System 1] → [Initialization] → [All History Data].
2. Press the Start key.
3. When [OK] is displayed, turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

E. Network Setting Data

(1) Use

- To clear network-related settings.
- Use this feature to initialize and set network-related settings again when the machine does not work properly upon change of network-related settings.

(2) Procedure

1. Select the key as follows.
   [System 1] → [Initialization] → [Network Setting Data].
2. Press the Start key.
3. When [OK] is displayed, turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

12.8.10 Initialization-System Error Clear

A. Use

- To reset the trouble data.
- Use to clear the [Jam], [Trouble], [Error] displays, and other improper displays.
- For details on items to be cleared, see “CONTENTS TO BE CLEARED BY RESET FUNCTION.”
See P.530

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Select the key as follows.
[System 1] → [Initialization] → [System Error Clear].
3. Press the Start key.
4. When [OK] is displayed, turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

2 12.8.11 Problem Unit Isolation Set.

A. Use

2 • Individual units and options have a set or unset setting for the problem unit isolation function.
- When a problem occurs, this function enables the continuous use of the units that are not affected by separately controlling them and isolating other units that have a problem.
- The machine isolates only units that have a “set” setting.

NOTE

- **The malfunction detection mechanism is not applied to units and options that are being isolated.**
- This function can be selected for the following units and options.
Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, Tray 4, LCT, manual, Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Center Stapling, Staple, Scanner, ADF
- Though Problem Unit Isolation Set. is not selected, if the specified malfunctions occur on the above listed units or options, an alert screen appears and asks users whether to isolate the units or options where malfunction occurs.
See the “Trouble shooting” section for the corresponding trouble codes.
See P.578

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Unset for individual units and options.

Set	“Unset”

- After changing the setting, touch [Decision] and turn the main power switch OFF and ON to make the new setting effective.

12.8.12 Post card transfer table

A. Use

- This setting allows you to select the transfer table to be used for thick3 postcards.
- For the use of thick 3 postcards, you can select the transfer table suitable for postcards.
- This setting is used to improve transfer performance to postcards.

Post. : The postcard 2nd image transfer table is used when printing on thick3 postcards.
Thick 3 : The normal thick3 2nd image transfer table is used when printing on thick 3 postcards.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Thick 3.

Post. “Thick 3”

12.8.13 Change Warm Up time

A. Use

- To change warm up completion time.
- Mode is changed to Mode 2 in case the paper gets curled significantly when black printing is conducted immediately after warm up at mode 1.
- Mode is changed to Mode 3 or 4 in case the paper gets curled immediately after normal warm up or the curled paper causes paper jam, paper exit failure, punch/staple/fold position failure or etc.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Mode1.

“Mode1” Mode2 Mode3 Mode4

C. Fusing operation mode

- This machine provides each operation mode using [Change Warm Up time] setting and [PPM control (high-humidity environment mode) prohibit choice] setting in order to offer stable capabilities that respond wide ranges of users' needs. When the main power switch is turned on, the mode is defined according to each choice setting.
- The following table shows the features of each operation mode.

Operation mode	Service Mode		Target user	Advantages	Disadvantages
	Change Warm Up time	PPM control prohibit choice			
1	Mode1	ON	Mostly used for black printing For fast printing	Constant print speed Black: 27 sec. Color: 35 sec High productivity even at high-humidity environment	Risk of paper curl at high-humidity environment
2		OFF	Mostly used for black printing For preventing curl	Print speed at non-high-humidity environment Black: 27 sec. Color: 35 sec Paper curl can be prevented	Long warm up time & low productivity at high-humidity environment Warm up takes 60 sec at high-humidity environment
3	Mode2	ON	To secure functions equivalent to the previous machine replaced. For fast printing	Constant print speed Black: 35 sec. Color: 35 sec High productivity even at high-humidity environment	Risk of paper curl at high-humidity environment
4		OFF	To secure functions equivalent to the previous machine replaced. To prevent paper curl	Print speed at non-high-humidity environment Black: 35 sec. Color: 35 sec Paper curl can be prevented	Long warm up time & low productivity at high-humidity environment Warm up takes 60 sec at high-humidity environment
5	Mode3	ON	For fast printing To prevent paper curl immediately after warm up	Constant print speed Black: 27 sec. Color: 35 sec Paper curl immediately after warm up can be prevented High productivity even at high-humidity environment	Lower productivity immediately after warm up Risk of paper curl at high-humidity environment
6		OFF	To prevent paper curl immediately after warm up and at high-humidity environment	Print speed at non-high-humidity environment Black: 35 sec. Color: 35 sec Paper curl can be prevented immediately after warm up Paper curl can be prevented even at high-humidity environment	Long warm up time & low productivity at high-humidity environment Warm up takes 60 sec at high-humidity environment
7	Mode4	OFF ON	Curl need to be prevented without deterioration of productivity	High productivity at any environment Curl can be prevented	Warm up constantly takes more than 60 sec

12.8.14 Machine State LED Setting

A. Use

- To set how to display main body statuses on the machine state LED (state display lamp, paper empty lamp).
- Each of Type1 and Type2 has the following LED display forms.

Machine State LED Setting		Type1	Type2
Warning statuses	Attention • Toner supply door open • Improper toner cartridge placement	Blinking	Blinking
	Near life	Blinking	Unlit
	Alert code	Unlit	Unlit
	Problem unit isolation	Blinking	Blinking
	Fatal error • Trouble code • Jam • Door opened • Life stop	Lit	Lit
Amount of paper remaining (Tray 1 and 2)	100 % to near empty	Unlit	Unlit
	Near empty	Blinking	Unlit
	Empty	Lit	Lit
	Being lifted up Door opened or closed	Unlit	Unlit
Amount of paper remaining (Tray 3 and 4)	100 % to near empty	Unlit	Unlit
	Near empty	Blinking	Unlit
	Empty	Lit	Lit
	Being lifted up Door opened or closed	Unlit	Unlit

B. Procedure

- Each default setting is Type2.

Type 1 “Type 2”

12.9 System 2

12.9.1 HDD

- Not used.

12.9.2 Image Controller Setting

A. Use

- To set the type of the controller.
- [Peripheral Mode] appears when [Others] is selected.
- When setting up the controller.

B. Procedure

Image Controller Setting

- Select the controller to be used.
  "Controller 0" : The standard controller is used.
  Controller 1 : The optional image controller IC-412 is used.
  Controller 2 : undefined.
  Controller 3 : undefined.
  Others : undefined.

Peripheral Mode

- Select the operating mode of the Scanner.
  Mode 1: undefined.
  Mode 2: undefined.
  Mode 3: undefined.

NOTE

- **When the following setting is "ON", this setting should be set to "Controller 0". [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode] When [Enhanced Security Mode] is set to "ON", this setting cannot be changed.**
- **After changing setting, make sure to turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.**

Note on returning the setting from "Controller 1" to "Controller 0".

- Selecting "Controller 0" will initialize the following settings made while "Controller 1" was selected. Reset the following items as necessary when using the internal standard controller.

<Control panel on the machine>

- Setting items included in [Network Setting] available from [Administrator Setting]. (Except [Status Notification Setting] and [Prefix/Suffix Setting] available from the following setting. [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [Detail Settings].)
- The following setting
  [Administrator Settings] → [User Authentication /Account Track] →[General Settings] → [External Server]
- The following setting
  [Administrator Settings] → [System Connection] → [OpenAPI Setting]
- Mailbox Destination (scan)
- Information on the original specified by the program destination

<PageScope Web Connection>

- SSL/TLS

12.9.3 Option Board Status

A. Use

- To set when the optional fax board (FK-502) or DSC board (SC-507) is mounted.
- Use when setting up the optional fax kit (FK-502) or security kit (SC-507) is mounted.

B. Procedure

- The default settings are “Unset.”

Fax (circuit 1)	: Set	“Unset”
Fax (circuit 2)	: Set	“Unset”
DSC1	: Set	“Unset”
DSC2	: Not used	

NOTE

- **When the setting has been changed, turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.**

12.9.4 Consumable Life Reminder

A. Use

- To select whether or not to give the display of PM parts lifetime
  PM parts lifetime display : An entire screen warning is given when the service life of a specific unit has been reached, prompting the user to replace the part.
- Applicable units:
  Transfer belt unit, fusing unit, ozone filter, transfer roller unit, developing unit, drum unit
- Use to select not to give the display of PM parts lifetime.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is No.

Yes	“No”

12.9.5 Unit Change

A. Use

- To select who is to replace a unit.
- Upon setup.
- When the unit life arrives, the warning display is intended for the specific person who is going to replace the unit.
  When "User" is selected : Printing is inhibited.
  When "Service" is selected : Life warning.
- To set whether or not to display a toner near empty warning.
- Developing unit/Y,M,C,K are not subject to this setting because they are replaced by customer engineer.

B. Procedure

<Unit Change>

- The following are the default settings:

△2

	Japan		US, Europe		Others1/2/3/4/5	
Toner Cartridge	"User"	Service	"User"	Service	"User"	Service
Drum Unit	User	"Service"	User	"Service"	"User"	Service
Waste Toner Box	User	"Service"	"User"	Service	"User"	Service
Punch Dust Box	"User"	Service	"User"	Service	"User"	Service

<Warning Display>

Toner Near Empty : "Yes" No

12.9.6 Software Switch Setting

A. Use

- To set the operating characteristic of each function from software switch depending on what types of printing are normally made.

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Software Switch Setting].
2. Touch [Switch No.] and enter the intended switch number with the ten-key pad.
3. Touch [Bit Assignment].
4. Use [←] or [→] to select a bit. To set the bit, enter 0 or 1 with the ten-key pad.
5. To set the bit in hex, touch [HEX Assignment] and use the ten-key pad and [A] to [F] keys to enter numbers and characters.
6. Touch [Fix].

12.9.7 Software Switch Setting-Setting items in the software switch setting

△2 **A. Change the function version of the machine**

(1) Use

- To change the function version of the firmware version.

  HEX Assignment 10 : Operate with the function version 2.
  HEX Assignment 20 : Operate with the function version 3.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Software Switch Setting].
2. Touch [Switch No.] and enter "25" with the ten-key pad.
3. Touch [HEX Assignment] and enter "10" or "20" with the ten-key pad.
4. Touch [Fix].

B. ACS mode control change

(1) Use

- To change the 1st image transfer roller pressure/retraction operation control in ACS mode.
- When a user makes mainly black prints, selecting 01 may allow avoiding the PC drum wear-out caused by unnecessary rotation of color imaging units.

HEX Assignment 00 : The color print (pressed) position is set as the default position of the 1st image transfer roller. (Default setting)
HEX Assignment 01 : The black print (retracted) position is set as the default position of the 1st image transfer roller.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Software Switch Setting].
2. Touch [Switch No.] and enter “50” with the ten-key pad.
3. Touch [HEX Assignment] and enter “00” or “01” with the ten-key pad.
4. Touch [Fix].

C. Secure Print shortcut key display in the User Box mode menu

(1) Use

- To display the [Secure Print] shortcut key in the User Box mode menu (the default setting is not shown).
  bit0-0: Does not display the shortcut key
  bit0-1: Displays the shortcut key

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Software Switch Setting].
2. Touch [Switch No.] and enter “69” with the ten-key pad.
3. Touch [BIT Assignment] and select “bit0” with [←]/[→] key.
4. Enter “0” or “1” with the 10-key pad.
5. Touch [Fix].

D. Printing on paper of nonstandard size fed from the bypass tray (AnySize mode)

(1) Use

- To enable printing only by the setting made on the printer driver when printing is attempted on paper of nonstandard size fed by way of the bypass tray (the default setting is the conventional operation).
  bit0-0 : Conventional operation
  bit0-1 : The print cycle is initiated for the paper specified on the printer driver regardless of the bypass tray paper setting.

(2) Procedure

1. Touch [Software Switch Setting].
2. Touch [Switch No.] and enter “69” with the ten-key pad.
3. Touch [BIT Assignment] and select “bit2” with [←]/[→] key.
4. Enter “0” or “1” with the 10-key pad.
5. Touch [Fix].

12.9.8 CDD Calibration

A. Use

- To set whether to use the calibration adjustment value set prior to the shipping.
- To display the current calibration adjustment value.
- When CCD unit has been replaced, set to "OFF."
  After replacing the CCD unit, the default generic value needs to be set since the calibration value set for each unit changes to control the differences in reading performance on each scanner (CCD).
- The original calibration adjustment value can be disabled to address image failure and other problems caused by individual CCD performance difference.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

NOTE

- **When the setting is changed, the function becomes available by turning the main power switch OFF and ON again.**

12.9.9 LCT Paper Size Setting

A. Use

- To set the paper size for the LCT.
- Use this feature upon LCT set-up.

B. Procedure

- The default setting depends on the setting made for the applicable marketing area.

A4 $8^{1}/_{2}$ x 11

12.9.10 Line Mag Setting

A. Use

- To set whether to use the offset value which has been set prior to the shipping.
- To display the current magnification offset value.
- When CCD unit has been replaced, set to "OFF."
  After replacing the CCD unit, the default generic value needs to be set since the magnification offset value between the lines set for each unit changes to control the differences in reading performance on each scanner (CCD).
- The original offset value can be disabled to address image failure and other problems caused by individual CCD performance difference.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

"ON" OFF

NOTE

- **When the setting is changed, the function becomes valid by turning the main power switch OFF and ON again.**

12.9.11 Data Capture

A. Use

- When an error occurs, it acquires the print job data in order to analyze the cause of the error.
- When an error occurs, this will be used to analyze the cause of the error according to the print job data.

B. Procedure

NOTE

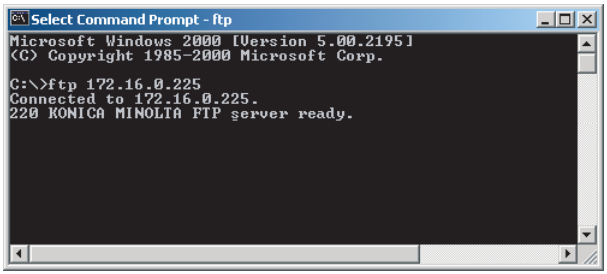
- **The following conditions are necessary for this function.**
  When selecting [Security Setting] → [Security Details] → [Print Data Capture] in Administrator Settings, [Allow] must be set.
- **The hard disk must be mounted to the machine.**
- **When selecting [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [FTP Settings], [FTP Server Settings: ON] must be set.**
- **This function is not available when the optional image controller IC-412 is mounted.**

1. Select [Service Mode] → [System 2], and touch [Data Capture]. Select [ON].
   (While the Data Capture setting is [ON], the print job data from the PC will be stored in the hard disk.)

NOTE

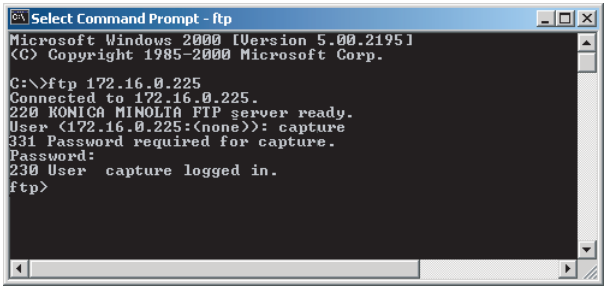
- **Maximum 5 print job data can be stored, and the data will be overwritten beginning with the chronologically oldest one.**

2. Check the IP address of the machine.
3. Connect the PC (Windows) and the machine with ethernet cable.
4. Start the DOS command prompt of the PC, and specify the IP address of the machine to start FTP.



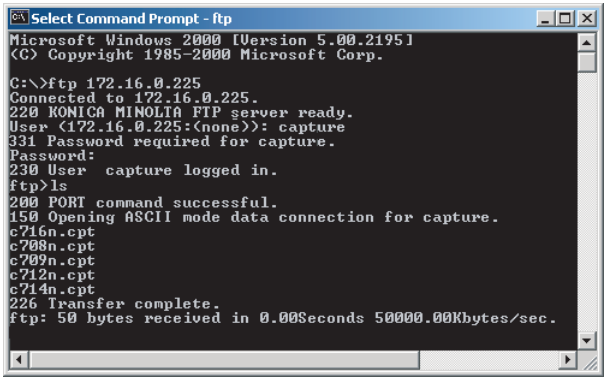
A0P0F3E547DA

5. Input the user name and the password.
   User name: capture
   Password: sysadm



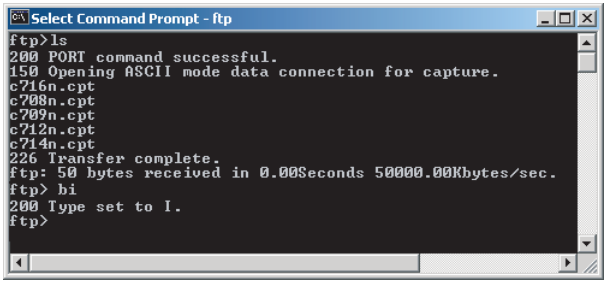
A0P0F3E548DA

6. Using the “ls” command, display the list of the file available for capture.



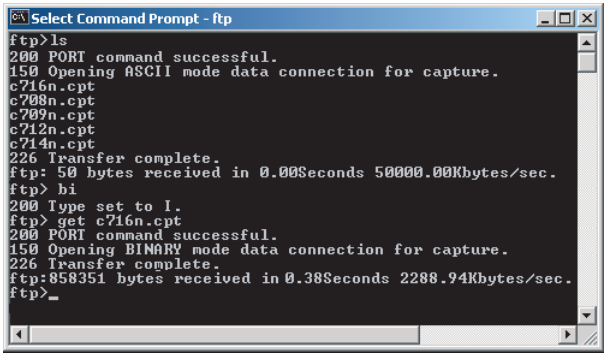
A0P0F3E549DA

7. Using the “binary” command, set the File transfer mode to the binary transfer.



A0P0F3E550DA

8. Using the “get” command, transfer the data for capture to PC.



A0P0F3E551DA

9. Finish the command prompt.

NOTE

- **After receiving capture data, select [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Security Details], and select [Restrict] for print data capture in order to delete the job data stored in the hard disk.**
  When HDD Format or Overwrite Temporary Data is performed, job data is deleted.

2 12.9.12 ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Set.-ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Sensitivity

A. Use

- To set the detection level for the pre-detection of stain on the ADF original glass.
- Use when changing the setting for whether or not to detect the stain on the ADF original glass when opening/closing ADF as well as its detection level as the main/sub power being ON, recovering from the sleep/low power mode, etc.
  Not Set : Detection of stain on the glass will not be conducted.
  Low : Stain on the glass will not be detected easily.
  Normal : Normal level detection.
  High : Stain on the glass will easily be detected.

NOTE

- **Be aware that selecting “Not Set” and performing the pre-detection with the following setting will display “NG.”**
  2 **[Service Mode] → [Machine] → [ADF Scan Glass Contamination]**
- **When “Not Set” is selected, the original glass cleaning operation after the job ends does not operate.**

B. Procedure

- The default setting is “Normal.”

Not Set Low “Normal” High

12.9.13 ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Set.-ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Warn/Level

A. Use

- To set how to display the warning when stain on the ADF original glass is detected.
- Use when changing the display of the warning which requests the cleaning of the stain on the glass detected by the pre-detection of the lines.
  0: Warning will not be displayed.
  1: Warning will be displayed by the maintenance mark. (warning code: D-1/D-2)
  2: Warning will be displayed on the message area on the basic screen.
  3: Warning will be displayed on all screens.

NOTE

- **This setting is invalid when [ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Sensitivity] is set to "Not Set."**

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 2.

0 1 "2" 3

12.9.14 ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Set.-ADF Scan Glass Contamin. During Scan

A. Use

- To set the operation for cleaning on the ADF original glass when feeding the original.
- Use when changing the operation for cleaning on the ADF original glass when feeding the original.
  0 : Cleaning is not conducted as the cleaning brush does not rotate.
  1 : Glass is cleaned with the cleaning brush rotating at two originals intermittent.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 1.

0 "1"

12.9.15 Stamp

A. Use

- To set the mounting status of the optional stamp unit SP-501.
- To use when setting up the stamp unit SP-501.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Unset.

Set "Unset"

12.9.16 Network Fax Settings

A. Use

- To set whether or not to use network fax function.
- To use network fax function (IP address fax, internet fax).
- Selection will be available when each network fax function is set to "ON" in the following settings.
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [Network Fax Settings] → [Network Fax Function Settings]

B. Procedure

- The default settings are OFF.

IP Address Fax	: ON	"OFF"
SIP-Fax	: Not Used	
Internet Fax	: ON	"OFF"

12.9.17 Image Stabilization Setting

A. Use

- To change the type and timing of image stabilization.
- To provide the desirable image stabilization control that depends on customer's machine usage pattern, i.e. the ratio of color to black print.

  Standard : This mode is suitable for low-volume users and reduces the number of times image stabilization is carried out when the main power switch is turned ON.
  If the change of absolute humidity is detected during warm-up, normal stabilization is performed during warm-up.

  Color Priority : This mode is suitable for high-volume and high ratio of color print users. Color stabilization sequence is performed unconditionally when the main power switch and the sub power switch are turned ON.

  Mono Priority : This mode is suitable for users who use mainly black print and use less color print. It provides monochrome stabilization and reduces the number of times image stabilization is carried out when the main power switch is turned ON. If the change of absolute humidity is detected during warm-up, monochrome stabilization is performed during the warm-up and color stabilization is performed before color printing.

B. Procedure

- The default settings are Standard.

"Standard" Color Priority Mono Priority

12.9.18 User Paper Settings

A. Use

- To set and register individual user paper that includes a different basic weight, fusing temperature, 2nd image transfer fine adjustment value.
- User Paper Settings is also available from [Administrator Settings] → [System Settings] → [Expert Adjustment] → [User Paper Settings].
- To register a paper type that is suitable for individual customer's intended use and use environment.
- The following shows user paper registration keys and corresponding paper types.
  User Paper 1/2 : Plain paper
  User Paper 3 : Thick1
  User Paper 4 : Thick2
  User Paper 5 : Thick3

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Select the key as follows.
   [System 2] → [▶] → [User Paper Settings].
3. Select the desired key from [User Paper 1] to [User Paper 5] to register user paper.
4. Select [Basic Weight] and enter a value with the [+]/[-] key.
5. Select [Heating Side] or [Pressurizing Side] and enter a fusing temperature with the [+]/[-] key.
   The setting range is -20 °C to +5 °C. (1 step: 5 °C)

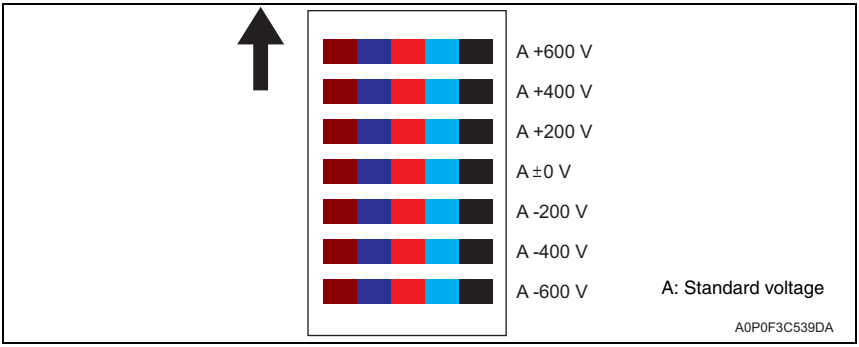
NOTE

- **The fusing temperature (Heating Side) for the User Paper 1 is set to "-10 °C" as the default value to prevent paper from curling.**

6. Select one from the following: [Front-Color], [Front-Black], [Back-Color], or [Back-Black]. Enter a 2nd image transfer fine adjustment value with the [+]/[-] key.
   The setting rage is -7 to +8. (1 step: 1 increment or decrement)
7. Set paper of A4S or 8 1/2 x 11S on the manual tray.
8. Select [1-side] (only front side) or [Front side] (only back side) and press the Start key.
9. Check the image of the output test pattern.
   If the image is not acceptable, adjust the settings and output the test pattern again.

(1) Test Pattern in User Paper Settings

- The printable test pattern for user paper settings is provided to ease determining the most appropriate 2nd image transfer output value when customizing user paper.
- This test pattern changes output voltage as shown below based on the standard voltage A (voltage determined by the 2nd image auto transfer voltage control) on a sheet of paper.



12.9.19 Coverage Rate Screen

A. Use

- To set whether or not to display a coverage rate on the sales counter screen and sales counter list.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Display.

“Display”	Do Not Display

12.9.20 JAM Code Display Setting

A. Use

- To set whether or not to add a jam code to a jam warning display on the control panel when a jam occurs.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Do Not Display.

Display	“Do Not Display”

12.9.21 BootUp Screen

A. Use

- To customize the BootUp Screen displayed upon machine start-up.
- Use this feature when changing the KonicaMinolta logo displayed on the control panel upon start-up to a client company logo or others for client's intended use of the machine.
- Register logo data in the machine's flash ROM via a USB memory device.
  The following are the logo data specifications that should be met.

Image format	: PNG format
File extension	: *. png
File name	: BootupScreen.png
Image size	: 800 x 480 dots
Color	: 256 colors (Palette that the machine specifies is used.)

NOTE

- **When making the logo data, use the exclusive image making tool.**
- **If a USB memory device is not connected or a nonconforming USB memory device is connected, "USB NG" is displayed and logo data cannot be registered.**
- **If the file name of logo data does not conform to the above specifications, "File NG" message is displayed and logo data cannot be registered.**

B. Procedure

1. Save logo data that conforms to the above specifications in the root directory of a USB memory device.

NOTE

- **Be sure to save data in the root directory as the machine cannot detect data saved in other directories.**

2. Connect the USB memory device to the machine USB port.
3. Select the key as follows.
   [System 2] → [▶] → [BootUp Screen].
4. Touch [Set].
5. Check result "OK" is displayed and touch [END].

NOTE

- **If logo data is already registered, new logo data overwrites the existing logo data.**
- **The color of logo data may look different between the machine control panel and some PC screens. After registering logo data, restart the machine and check the color of the logo data on the BootUp screen.**

* To delete registered data, touch [Delete] and check result "OK" is displayed.

12.9.22 Install Data

A. Use

- To install movie help data or OCR dictionary data into HDD.
- To use when the logical format of the hard disk is performed.
- To install each data into the machine HDD via USB memory device.

B. Procedure

NOTE

- **To use OCR function, the optional i-Option LK-105 must be activated.**

1. Save data (*.tar) into the root directory of a USB memory device.
2. Connect the USB memory device to the machine USB port.
3. Select the key as follows.
   [System 2] → [▶] → [Install Data].
4. Touch [Movie Data] or [OCR Dictionary].
   You can select the above two types of data at a time and install them.
5. Touch [Set].
6. Press the Start key to install the data.
7. Check result “OK” is displayed and touch [END].

NOTE

- **If data is already installed, it is necessary to delete old data before installing new one.**

* To delete registered data, select the data to be deleted and touch [Delete]. Check result “OK” is displayed.

12.9.23 Bluetooth Settings

A. Use

- To set whether to enable or disable the Bluetooth function.
- Use this setting upon set-up of the optional local interface kit EK-605.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Invalid.

Effective	“Invalid”

12.10 Counter

- The counter displays the counts of various counters to allow the technical representative to check or set as necessary.

12.10.1 Common procedure

1. Touch [Counter] to show the counter menu.
2. Select the specific counter to be displayed.
3. To clear the counts of two or more counters within a group or across different groups at once, touch [Counter Reset], select the specific counters to be cleared, and touch [END]. Two or more counters can be selected.
   (However, the [Service Call], [Service Total], and [JAM] counters cannot be selected.)

12.10.2 Life

A. Use

- To check the number of hours or times each of the different maintenance parts has been used.
- To clear the count of each counter.
- To perform New Release in fusing unit and transfer belt unit.
- To check how many times maintenance parts have been used.
- When each of the maintenance parts is replaced.

B. Procedure

(1) Counter clear

- To clear the count of a counter, select the specific part and press the Clear key.
- If a counter is cleared mistakenly, press the Interrupt key, which will undo the clearing operation.
- It is not possible to clear the count of the counters for the fusing unit, transfer belt unit, imaging unit and TCR new article detection.
- For the count method of each counter, see the table “Count method of each life counter.”

<Count method of each life counter>

Counter item	Counting method
Fusing Unit Rotation Time	• Counts how many hours the fusing unit has turned.
Fusing Unit Page Count	• Counts how many sheets have been ejected. The counter increases by 1 per every 216 mm in the sub scan direction and shows the total count. For paper length less than 216 mm in the sub scan direction, the counter uses 216 mm as the paper length.
Transfer Belt Unit Rotation Time	• Counts how many hours the transfer belt has turned.
Transfer Belt Unit Page Count	• Counts how many sheets have been ejected. The counter increases by 1 per every 216 mm in the sub scan direction and shows the total count. For paper length less than 216 mm in the sub scan direction, the counter uses 216 mm as the paper length.
Transfer Roller Unit	• Counts how many hours the transfer roller has turned.
Ozone Filter	• Counts how many hours the ozone filter has turned.
1st.	• Number of sheets of paper fed from tray 1
2nd.	• Number of sheets of paper fed from tray 2
3rd.	• Number of sheets of paper fed from tray 3
4th.	• Number of sheets of paper fed from tray 4
Manual Tray	• Number of sheets of paper fed from the bypass

Counter item	Counting method
Drum Unit (C) Rotation Time	• Counts how many hours PC drum has turned.
Drum Unit (M) Rotation Time	
Drum Unit (Y) Rotation Time	
Drum Unit (K) Rotation Time	
Developing Unit (C) Print Count	• Counts how many sheets have been printed.
Developing Unit (M) Print Count	
Developing Unit (Y) Print Count	
Developing Unit (K) Print Count	
LCT Parts	• Number of sheets of paper fed from the LCT
ADF Feed	• Number of sheets of original fed through the take-up section of the ADF
ADF Reverse	• Number of sheets of original fed through the turnover unit of the ADF
Sorter/Finisher	• Number of sheets of paper fed out of the sorter/finisher
TCR new article detection (C)	• Period of time over which the toner cartridge has been used.
TCR new article detection (M)	
TCR new article detection (Y)	
TCR new article detection (K)	

(2) New Release

- After replacing a fusing unit or transfer belt unit, perform New Release to clear its life counter.

1. Select the key as follows.
   [Counter] → [Life] → [New Release].
2. Open the front door.
3. Select a unit where New Release is made.
4. Press the Start key and perform New Release.

(3) New Release Disable mode

- To enable a unit that is used temporarily for troubleshooting to be used again as a new unit in another machine, the New Release Disable mode is provided.
- Applicable units are the following units that have the new unit detection feature
  Drum unit/C,M,Y,K, Developing unit/C,M,Y,K
- See the following page for the method of enabling the New Release Disable mode.
  See P.513

12.10.3 Service Call Counter

A. Use

- To count and display how many times trouble has been detected on a trouble type basis.
- Use this feature to check how many times trouble has occurred.

NOTE

- **In the service call counter list, "Reboot" shows how many times abort code (C-FXXX) has occurred.**

12.10.4 Section Service Call

A. Use

- To count and display how many times trouble has been detected during a certain period, i.e. an interval between service visits, on a trouble type basis.
- Use this feature to check how many times trouble has occurred in a certain period, i.e. an interval between service visits.
- By clearing the counter at the time of visit to your customer, i.e. service visit, you can check how many times trouble has occurred since the previous visit.
  To reset the counter, use [Counter Reset].

NOTE

- **In the zone service call list, "Reboot" shows how many times abort code (C-FXXX) has occurred.**

12.10.5 Warning

A. Use

- To count and display how many times warning code has been detected on a warning code type basis.
- To check the number of warning conditions detected according to the warming type

B. Procedure

- To clear the count of a counter, select the specific part and press the Clear key.
- If a counter is cleared mistakenly, press the Interrupt key, which will undo the clearing operation.
- When a warning condition occurs, an oil mark appears at the lower left corner of the basic screen.
- Touching the oil mark will display the warning code screen.

12.10.6 Maintenance

A. Use

- To set a count value for maintenance of any given part.
- When any given part is replaced.

B. Procedure

Maint.-Set

- Enter the maintenance counter value from the 10-key pad.

Maint.-Count

- The number of sheets that have been ejected is counted up. (1 sided: 1 count, 2 sided: 2 count)
- Pressing the Clear key will clear the count.
- If the count is cleared mistakenly, press the Interrupt key, which will undo the clearing operation.

12.10.7 Service Total

A. Total

(1) Use

- To display the count value for the service total counter.
- Use to check the total No. of printed pages including the ones printed by the Service Mode.

(2) Procedure

Service Total : No. of pages printed by user mode and Service Mode.
Service Total (Duplex) : No. of pages printed by user mode and Service Mode in duplex.

B. Paper Size 1/2

(1) Use

- To display the count value for service total counter of each paper size.
- To check the total number of printed pages including the one at Service Mode according to each paper size.
- The count of Paper Size 1 and Paper Size 2 that contain the following paper sizes is provided respectively.

Paper Size 1: A3, A4, A4S, A5, A6, B4, B5, B5S, B6, Post., 12 x 18, 11 x 17, $8^1/_2$ x 14, $8^1/_2$ x 11, $8^1/_2$ x 11S, $7^1/_4$ x $10^1/_2$, $5^1/_2$ x $8^1/_2$, 4 x 6, Foolscap
Paper Size 1: 8K, 16K, long Length, Others

12.10.8 Counter of Each Mode

A. Use

- To display the printed pages in the following specified modes; copy, printer, scanner, and fax. It also displays the count value of using the specified mode.
- Use to check the printed pages in the following specified modes; copy, printer, scanner, and fax, as well as No. of times each mode was used, in order to know the using condition.

Copy/printer/scanner counter : Displays individual counts in copy, printer, and scan mode.
Fax-related counter : Displays individual counts in fax mode
Counter by finishing option : Displays individual counts on a finishing option basis.
Stabilization counter : Displays individual counts on a basis of the factors that cause image stabilization. The counter helps to understand what causes image stabilization and how to improve image stabilization control.
PJ counter : Jobs that the machine has processed are divided according to the number of pages per job: 1P/J, 2P/J, ... 10P/J, or 11P/J and more. The total number of jobs in each group is counted and displayed separately based on whether job is processed in color, monochrome, or auto color mode.
The counter is used to understand how the machine has been used in the field.

12.10.9 Service Call History (Data)

A. Use

- To display the trouble history in chronological order.
- Use to check the trouble history in chronological order.

12.10.10 ADF Paper Pages

A. Use

- To display the No. of pages fed to the automatic document feeder.
- Use to check the No. of pages fed to the automatic document feeder.

12.10.11 Paper Jam History

A. Use

- To display the jam history in chronological order.
- Use to check the jam history in chronological order.

NOTE

- **[Code] displayed on the screen of JAM history indicates JAM code. For details of JAM code, see "Trouble shooting."**
See P.537

12.10.12 Fax Connection Error

A. Use

- To display the No. of fax transmission errors occurred.
- Use to check the No. of fax transmission errors occurred.

2 12.10.13 ADF Scan Glass Contamin. Counter

A. Use

- To display the average number of detected stain on the ADF original glass at the pre-detection.
- Used for checking the number of detected stain on the ADF original glass.

Pre-detect Large Size	: Large-sized detected stain divided by the number of times pre-detection is practiced (average number of detected lines) will be displayed.
Pre-detect Small Size	: Small-sized detected stain divided by the number of times pre-detection is practiced (average number of detected lines) will be displayed.
Cleaning Brush Rotation Count	: Total rotation count is displayed by counting 1 per one rotation of cleaning brush.

B. Procedure

- To clear each counter value, select the items to be cleared, and press the Clear key. (When selecting [Pre-detect Large Size] or [Pre-detect Small Size] is selected, both values will be cleared.)
- If the count is cleared mistakenly, press the Interrupt key, which will undo the clearing operation.

12.10.14 Parts Counter (Fixed)

- Not Used.

12.10.15 Jam

A. Use

- To count and display how many times jam has been detected on a jam location basis.

12.10.16 Section JAM

- To count and display how many times jam has been detected in a certain period, i.e. an interval between service visits, on a jam location basis.
- Use this feature to check how many times jam has occurred in a certain period, i.e. an interval between service visits.
- By clearing the jam counter at the time of visit to your customer site, i.e. service visit, you can check how many times jam has occurred since the previous visit.
  To reset the counter, use [Counter Clear].

12.11 List Output

△2 12.11.1 Batch List CSV Output

A. Use

- To save various lists data into a USB memory device all together with the CSV format.
- Compared to output to paper, outputting various lists data to the USB memory device can save time, paper, and toner.
  With the output data, analyzing the machine statistically becomes easier.
- Lists data to be output are as follows:

Target list	Data symbol
Machine Management List	S1
Adjustments List	S2
Parameter List	S3
Service Parameter	S4
Protocol Trace List	S5
Fax Setting List	S6
Management List	A1
Paper Size/Type Counter	A2
Configuration Page	U1
PCL Font List	U2
PS Font List	U3
Meter Count	C1

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [List Output].
3. Insert the USB memory device to the USB port (for user).
4. Touch [USB save] displayed in the Batch List CSV Output.
   Then, List data are transferred to the USB memory device.
5. Confirm that “OK” is displayed as the result of data saving.

<File names of lists data>

- Each list data has its file name in accordance with the following file name rule.
  [2-digit data symbol that corresponds to each list (see the above table)] + [_(underscore)] + [13-digit serial number] + [6-digit date (year, month, and day)] + [2-digit hour] + [2-digit minute].csv

12.11.2 Machine Management List

A. Use

- To produce an output of a list of setting values, adjustment values, total counter values, and others.
- At the end of setup or when a malfunction occurs.

B. Procedure

- Load the A4S plain paper to a paper source.
- Press the Start key, which will let the machine produce the list.
- The time-of-day and date will also be printed.

12.11.3 Adjustment List

A. Use

- To output the adjustment list for machine adjustment, process adjustment, etc. in Service Mode.
- At the end of setup or when a malfunction occurs.

B. Procedure

- Load the A4S plain paper to a paper source.
- Press the Start key, which will let the machine produce the list.
- The time-of-day and date will also be printed.

12.11.4 Parameter List

- For details, see FK-502 Service Manual.

12.11.5 Service Parameter

- For details, see FK-502 Service Manual.

12.11.6 Protocol Trace

- For details, see FK-502 Service Manual.

12.11.7 Fax Setting List

- For details, see FK-502 Service Manual.

12.11.8 Fax Analysis List

- For details, see FK-502 Service Manual.

12.12 State Confirmation

12.12.1 Sensor Check

A. Use

- To display the states of the input ports of sensors and switches when the machine remains stationary.
- Used for troubleshooting when a malfunction or a misfeed occurs.

B. Procedure

- The operation of each of the switches and sensors can be checked on a real-time basis.
- It can be checked as long as the 5-V power line remains intact even when a door is open.

(1) Electrical components check procedure through input data check

- When a paper misfeed occurs in the paper feed section of the machine, the tray 2 paper feed sensor is considered to be responsible for it.

1. Remove the sheet of paper misfed.
2. From the sensor check list that follows, check the panel display of the tray 2 paper feed sensor. For the tray 2 paper feed sensor, you check the data of “Paper feed” of “Tray 2.”
3. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
4. Select [State Confirmation] → [Sensor Check] and then select the screen that contains “Paper feed” under “Tray 2.” For “Paper feed” under “Tray 2,” select “1” on the left-hand side of the screen.
5. Check that the data for “Paper feed” under “Tray 2” is “0” (sensor blocked).
6. Move the actuator to unblock the tray 2 paper feed sensor.
7. Check that the data for “Paper feed” under “Tray 2” changes from “0” to “1” on the screen.
8. If the input data is “0,” change the sensor.

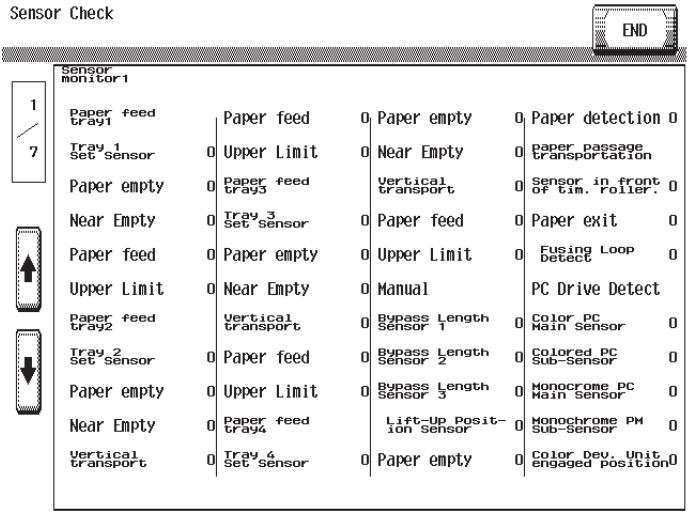
12.12.2 Sensor check screens

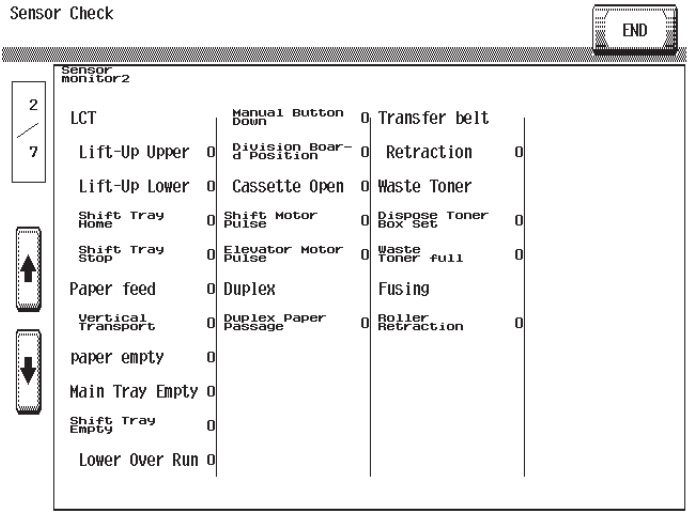
- These are only typical screens which may be different from what are shown on each individual machine.

A. Sensor monitor

(1) Sensor monitor 1,2

2

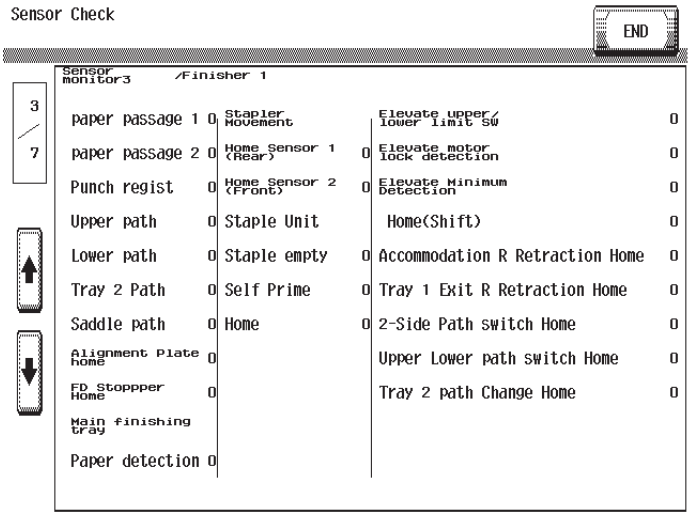


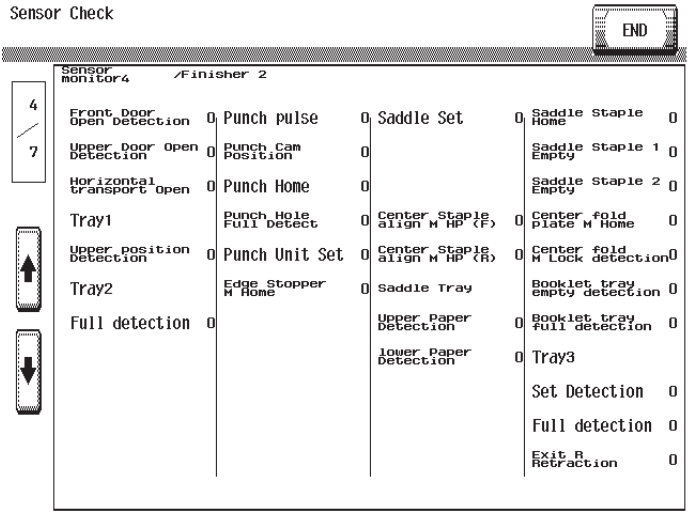


A0EDF3E506DB

(2) Sensor monitor 3,4

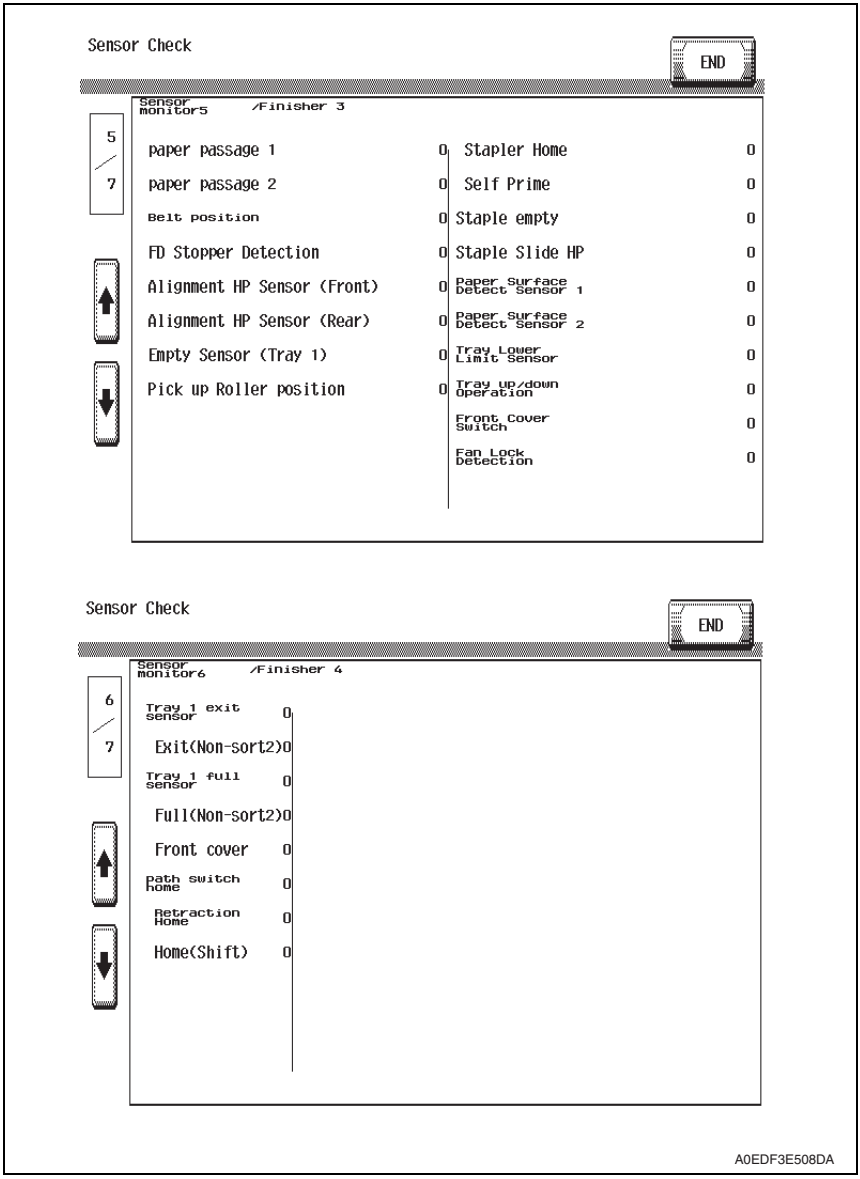
2



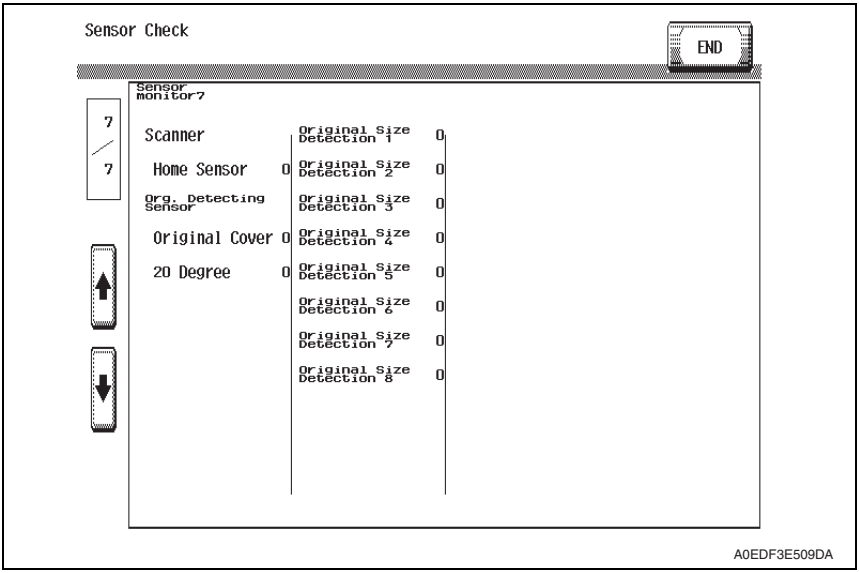


A0EDF3E507DB

(3) Sensor monitor 5,6



(4) Sensor monitor 7



12.12.3 Sensor check list

A. Sensor monitor

(1) Sensor monitor 1 (Main body, PC-107/207)

	Symbol	Panel display	Part/signal name	Operation characteristics/panel display	
				1	0
		Paper feed tray 1			
2	PS15	Tray 1 Set Sensor	Paper feed tray 1 device detection sensor	In position	Out of position
	PS24	Paper empty	Paper feed tray 1 paper empty sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
	PS11	Near Empty	Paper feed tray 1 near empty sensor	Near empty	Not near empty
	PS23	Paper feed	Paper feed tray 1 paper feed sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
	PS25	Upper Limit	Paper feed tray 1 upper limit sensor	At raised position	Not at raised position
		Paper feed tray 2			
2	PS18	Tray 2 Set Sensor	Paper feed tray 2 device detection sensor	In position	Out of position
	PS21	Paper empty	Paper feed tray 2 paper empty sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
	PS12	Near Empty	Paper feed tray 2 near empty sensor	Near empty	Not near empty
	PS19	Vertical transport	Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
	PS20	Paper feed	Paper feed tray 2 paper feed sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
	PS22	Upper Limit	Paper feed tray 2 upper limit sensor	At raised position	Not at raised position
		Paper feed tray 3			
2	—	Tray 3 Set Sensor	—	Set	Unset
	PS115	Paper empty	Tray3 empty sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
	PS113	Near Empty	Tray3 near empty sensor	Near empty	Not near empty
	PS117	Vertical transport	Tray3 vertical transport sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
	PS116	Paper feed	Tray3 paper feed sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
	PS114	Upper Limit	Tray3 upper limit sensor	At raised position	Not at raised position
		Paper feed tray 4			
2	—	Tray 4 Set Sensor	—	Set	Unset

Symbol	Panel display	Part/signal name	Operation characteristics/panel display	
			1	0
PS124	Paper empty	Tray4 empty sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PS122	Near Empty	Tray4 near empty sensor	Near empty	Not near empty
PS126	Vertical transport	Tray4 vertical transport sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS125	Paper feed	Tray4 paper feed sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS123	Upper Limit	Tray4 upper limit sensor	At raised position	Not at raised position
	Manual			
2 PS28	Bypass Length Sensor 1	Manual multi FD sensor /1	Paper present	Paper not present
2 PS29	Bypass Length Sensor 2	Manual multi FD sensor /2	Paper present	Paper not present
2 PS30	Bypass Length Sensor 3	Manual multi FD sensor /3	Paper present	Paper not present
PS26	Lift-Up Position Sensor	Manual lift-up position sensor	Paper feed available position	Standby position
PS27	Paper empty	Manual paper empty sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PS31	Paper detection	Manual paper detection sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
	Paper passage transportation			
PS1	Sensor in front of tim. roller.	Sensor in front of tim. roller	Paper present	Paper not present
PS3	Paper exit	Paper exit sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS2	Fusing Loop Detect	Fusing loop detect sensor	Loop present	Loop not present
	PC Drive Detect			
PS33	Color PC Main Sensor	Color PC main sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PS35	Color PC Sub-sensor	Color PC sub-sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PS34	Monochrome PC Main Sensor	Monochrome PC main sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PS36	Monochrome PC Sub-sensor	Monochrome PC sub-sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PS37	Color Dev. Unit engaged position	Color dev. unit engaged position sensor	Released	Engaged

(2) Sensor monitor 2 (Main body, PC-408)

Symbol	Panel display	Part/signal name	Operation characteristics/panel display	
			1	0
	LCT			
PS4	Lift-Up Upper	Lift-up upper limit sensor	Raised Position	Not raised
PS13	Lift-Up Lower	Lift-up lower limit sensor	Lowered Position	Not lowered
PS12	Shift Tray Home	Shifter home position sensor	At home	Not at home
PS11	Shift Tray Stop	Shifter stop position sensor	Return position	Not at return position
PS1	Paper feed	Paper feed sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS2	Vertical Transport	Vertical transport sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS3	Paper empty	Paper empty sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
MTPEB	Main Tray Empty	Main tray paper empty board	Paper not present	Paper present
PS9	Shift Tray Empty	Shift tray empty sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PS7	Lower Over Run	Lower limit over run sensor	malfunction	operational
UN1	Manual Button Down	Manual down control board	ON	OFF
PS14	Division Board Position	Division board position sensor	At home	Not at home
PS6	Cassette Open	Cassette open sensor	Open	Closed
PS8	Shift Motor Pulse	Shift motor pulse sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PS10	Elevator Motor Pulse	Elevator motor pulse sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
	Duplex			
PS40	Duplex paper passage	Duplex paper passage sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
	Transfer belt			
PS39	Retraction	Transfer belt retraction sensor	Not Retracted	Retracted
	Waste toner			
—	Dispose Toner Box Set	Dispose toner box set sensor	Set	Unset
—	Waste Toner Full	Waste toner full sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
	Fusing			
PS38	Roller retraction	Fusing pressure roller retraction sensor	Not Retracted	Retracted

△2

(3) Sensor monitor 3 (FS-527)

NOTE

- **"Tray 1" indicates the tray 2 (lower) and "Tray 2" is the tray 1 (upper) shown on the panel.**

Symbol	Panel display	Part/signal name	Operation characteristics/ panel display	
			1	0
	Finisher 1			
PS1	paper passage 1	Paper passage sensor/1	Paper present	Paper not present
PS2	paper passage 2	Paper passage sensor/2	Paper present	Paper not present
PS10	punch regist	Registration sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS8	Upper path	Upper path sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS9	Lower path	lower path sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS6	Tray 2 Path	Tray1 path sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS11	Saddle path	Saddle path sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS17	Alignment Plate home	Alignment plate home sensor	At home	Not at home
PS20	FD Stopper Home	Leading edge stopper home sensor	At home	Not at home
	Main finishing tray			
PS16	Paper detection	Tray2 paper detection sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
	Stapler Movement			
PS18	Home Sensor 1 (Rear)	Stapler home sensor/1	At home	Not at home
PS19	Home Sensor 2 (Front)	Stapler home sensor/2	At home	Not at home
	Staple Unit			
—	Staple empty	—	No staple	Staple
—	Self Prime	—	Staple	No staple
—	Home	—	At home	Not at home
SW2	Elevate upper/lower limit SW	Tray2 upper position switch	At lower limit position	Not at lower limit position
SW3		Tray2 lower position switch		
M15	Elevate motor lock detection	Elevate motor	Lock	Other than lock
PS21	Elevate Mininum Detection	Tray2 lower position sensor	At lower limit position	Not at lower limit position
PS25	Home (Shift)	Tray2 shift home sensor	Rear	Front
PS13	Accommodation R Retraction Home	Accommodation roller pressure sensor	No electricity restrictions	Electricity restrictions

Symbol	Panel display	Part/signal name	Operation characteristics/ panel display	
			1	0
PS12	Tray 1 Exit R Retraction Home	Exit roller pressure sensor	No electric-ity restric-tions	Electricity restrictions
PS3	2-Side Path switch Home	Duplex path switching sensor	Duplex	Not duplex
PS26	Upper Lower path switch Home	Upper lower path switching sensor	Upper path	Lower path
PS7	Tray 2 path Change Home	Tray1 path switching home sensor	Tray 1	Upper path

(4) Sensor monitor 4 (FS-527/SD-509/PK-517/JS-603)

NOTE

- **"Tray 1" indicates the tray 2 (lower) and "Tray 2" is the tray 1 (upper) shown on the panel.**

Symbol	Panel display	Part/signal name	Operation characteristics/ panel display	
			1	0
	Finisher 2			
SW1	Front Door Open Detection	Front door switch	Closed	Open
PS14	Upper Door Open Detection	Upper door sensor	Closed	Open
PS5	Horizontal transport Open	Horizontal conveyance cover sensor	Closed	Open
	Tray1			
PS24	Upper position Detection	Tray2 upper position sensor	Top detected	Other than top detected
	Tray2			
PS22	Full detection	Tray1 full sensor	Full	Other than full
PS300	Punch pulse	Punch pulse sensor/1	ON	OFF
PS200	Punch Cam Position	Punch cam position sensor	At home	Not at home
PS100	Punch Home	Punch home sensor/1	At home	Not at home
PS30	Punch Hole Full Detect	Punch hole full sensor	Full	Other than full
—	Punch Unit Set	—	Set	Other than set
PS45	Edge Stopper M Home	Leading edge stopper home sensor	At home	Not at home
—	Saddle Set	—	Set	Other than set
M21	Upper Paddle Rotation Signal	Upper paddle motor	ON	OFF
M22	Lower Paddle Rotation Signal	Lower paddle motor	ON	OFF
PS42	Center Staple align M HP (F)	Center staple alignment home sensor/F	At home	Not at home
PS41	Center Staple align M HP (R)	Center staple alignment home sensor/R	At home	Not at home

Symbol	Panel display	Part/signal name	Operation characteristics/ panel display	
			1	0
	Saddle Tray			
PS43	Upper Paper Detection	Paper detection sensor/1	Staple	No staple
PS44	lower Paper Detection	Paper detection sensor/2	Staple	No staple
—	Saddle Staple Home	—	At home	Not at home
—	Saddle Staple 1 Empty	—	Staple	No staple
—	Saddle Staple 2 Empty	—	Staple	No staple
PS47	Center fold plate M Home	Center fold plate home sensor	At home	Not at home
M25	Center fold M Lock detection	Center fold roller motor	Lock	Other than lock
PS48	Booklet tray empty detection	Booklet tray near full sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS50	Booklet tray full detection	Booklet tray full sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
	Tray3			
—	Set Detection	—	Set	Other than set
PS36	Full detection	Tray3 full sensor	Full	Other than full
PS35	Exit R Retraction	Tray3 exit roller retraction sensor	No electricity restrictions	Electricity restrictions

(5) Sensor monitor 5 (FS-529)

Symbol	Panel display	Part/signal name	Operation characteristics/ panel display	
			1	0
	Finisher 3			
PS1	paper passage 1	Paper passage sensor/1	Paper present	Paper not present
PS10	paper passage 2	Paper passage sensor/2	Paper present	Paper not present
PS13	Belt position	Belt position sensor	At home	Not at home
PS14	FD Stopper Detection	Leading edge stopper home sensor	ON	OFF
PS8	Alignment HP Sensor (Front)	Alignment plate home sensor/F	At home	Not at home
PS9	Alignment HP Sensor (Rear)	Alignment plate home sensor/R	At home	Not at home
PS7	Empty Sensor (Tray 1)	Paper empty sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS12	Pick up Roller position	Pick up roller position sensor	No electricity restrictions	Electricity restrictions
—	Stapler Home	—	At home	Not at home
—	Self Prime	—	Staple	No staple
—	Staple empty	—	No staple	Staple
PS11	Staple Slide HP	Stapler home sensor	At home	Not at home
PS2	Paper Surface Detect Sensor 1	Paper surface detect sensor/1	Blocked	Unblocked
PS3	Paper Surface Detect Sensor 2	Paper surface detect sensor/2	Blocked	Unblocked
PS6	Tray Lower Limit Sensor	Tray lower limit sensor	At lower limit position	Not at lower limit position
PS4	Tray up/down Operation	Tray up/down operation sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
SW1	Front Cover Switch	Front door switch	Closed	Open
FM1	Fan Lock Detection	Fan motor	Lock	Other than lock

(6) Sensor monitor 6 (JS-505)

Symbol	Panel display	Part/signal name	Operation characteristics/panel display	
			1	0
	Finisher 4			
PS1	Tray 1 exit sensor	Lower tray exit sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PS2	Exit (Non-sort2)	Upper tray exit sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
T1FDT B/LED	Tray 1 full sensor	Lower tray paper full detect board/LED	Full	Other than full
T2FDT B/LED	Full (Non-sort2)	Upper tray paper full detect board/LED	Full	Other than full
PS3	Front cover	Front door sensor	Closed	Open
PS4	path switch home	Route change home sensor	At home	Not at home
PS5	Retraction Home	Pressure/retraction home sensor	At home	Not at home
PS6	Home (Shift)	Shift home sensor	At home	Not at home

(7) Sensor monitor 7

Symbol	Panel display	Part/signal name	Operation characteristics/panel display	
			1	0
	Scanner			
PS201	Home Sensor	Scanner home sensor	At home	Out of home
	Org. Detecting Sensor			
RS201	Original Cover	Original cover sensor	Lowered	Raised
PS202	20 Degree	Angle sensor	Less than 20 degree *1	20 degree or more *1
PS204	Original Size Detection 1	Original size detection 1 sensor	Original loaded, not mounted	Original not loaded
PS205	Original Size Detection 2	Original size detection 2 sensor	Original loaded, not mounted	Original not loaded
—	Original Size Detection 3	Not used	—	—
—	Original Size Detection 4	Not used	—	—
—	Original Size Detection 5	Not used	—	—
—	Original Size Detection 6	Not used	—	—
—	Original Size Detection 7	Not used	—	—
—	Original Size Detection 8	Not used	—	—

*1: Detection is made at 20 degrees and 15 degrees of open/close angle when mounting the original cover OC-509 and the reverse automatic document feeder DF-617 respectively.

12.12.4 Table Number

A. Use

- When IDC is detected, for plain paper, thick, and Black, the machine independently displays each Vg/Vdc output value that is calculated based on the density (toner amount stuck on the belt) of the test pattern created on the transfer belt.
- Used for troubleshooting of image problems.
- Reference values: C, M, Y K Vdc: around 400 V, Vg: around 500 V

B. Procedure

- If the value is high, correct so that the image density becomes low.
- If the value is low, correct so that the image density becomes high.

12.12.5 Level History1

A. Use

- To display TCR (T/C ratio), IDC/registration sensor output values, and fusing temperature.
- Used for troubleshooting of image problems.

B. Procedure

- TCR-C/-M/-Y/-K : Shows the T/C output reading taken last.
- IDC1/IDC2 : Shows the latest IDC data.
- Temp-Heat : Displays the latest temperature on the heating roller.
- Temp-Press : Displays the latest temperature of the pressure roller.

"Reading taken last" means

- Density of toner of the latest image
- When a test print is produced by pressing the Start key while level history 1 is being displayed.

12.12.6 Level History 2

A. Use

- IDC Sensor (Transfer belt bare surface level) as adjusted through the image stabilization sequence and ATVC value.
- Used for troubleshooting of image problems.

B. Procedure

- IDC Sensor : Shows the intensity adjustment value (0 to 255) of the IDC sensor.
- ATVC (C, M, Y, K) : Shows the first image transfer ATVC adjustment value (10 to 100 μA).
- ATVC (2nd) : Shows the second image transfer ATVC adjustment value (300 to 5000 V).

12.12.7 Temp. & Humidity

A. Use

- To display the temperature and humidity of a specific location (IDC sensor/fusing unit portion) inside the machine.
- Used as reference information when a malfunction occurs.

B. Procedure

- Temp-Inside : 0 to 100 °C in 1 °C increments
- Temp-Heater : 0 to 260 °C in 1 °C increments
- Temp-Press. : 0 to 260 °C in 1 °C increments
- Humidity : 0 to 100 % in 1 % increments
- Absolute Humidity : 0 to 100 in 1 increments

12.12.8 CCD Check

A. Use

- To display the D/A value of CCD clamp/gain for R, G, and B.
- Used for troubleshooting for the CCD sensor.

B. Procedure

- Use the following guidelines on the correct range of values.

<CCD>

CLAMP:The maximum value and the minimum value of the output value should be within the range shown below.

Acceptable clamping rage	Minimum value	Maximum value
R	600	1500
G	600	1700
B	600	1600

GAIN :The maximum value and the minimum value of the output value should be within the range shown below.

Acceptable gain range	Minimum value	Maximum value
R	20	238
G	10	222
B	70	247

12.12.9 Memory/HDD Adj.-Memory Check

A. Use

- To check correspondence of data written to and that read from memory through write/read check.
- If the copy image is faulty.
- 2 The following shows the memory names that correspond to each memory where check is made.

  WORK0 : Standard memory (DIMM0)
  WORK1 : Standard memory (DIMM1)
  FILE0, 1 : Memory of ASIC200 installed in the MFP board
  FILE2, 3 : Memory of ASIC200 installed in the EIF board for IC-412
  FILE4, 5 : Not used.

Rough Check

- A check is made to see if the image data reading and writing are correctly made in a very limited area.
- The progress of the check sequence is displayed in percentage.

Detail Check

- A check is made to see if the image data reading and writing are correctly made at the addresses and buses in all areas.
- The progress of the check sequence is displayed in percentage.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [State Confirmation] → [Memory / HDD Adj.] → [Memory Check].
3. Select the desired type of check, either [Rough Check] or [Detail Check].
4. Press the Start key to start the check procedure.
5. When the check procedure is completed, the results are shown on the screen. If the check results are NG, check the memory for connection or replace the memory with a new one.

✻ Press the Stop key to interrupt the check sequence.

12.12.10 Memory/HDD Adj.-Compress / Decompression Check

A. Use

- To check whether compression and decompression are carried out properly.
- If the copy image is faulty.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [State Confirmation] → [Memory / HDD Adj.] → [Compress / Decompression Check].
3. Pressing the Start key will automatically start to complete a compression/decompression check sequence.
4. The check result will be displayed.

12.12.11 Memory/HDD Adj.-Memory Bus Check

A. Use

- To check to see if image data is correctly transferred from scanner to memory, and from memory to printer.
- Bus check between scanner and memory has two steps; the scanner internal check step as internal processing and the check step between scanner and memory. If either of the two steps is NG, NG1 or NG2 is displayed respectively.
- If the print image is faulty.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [State Confirmation] → [Memory / HDD Adj.] → [Memory Bus Check].
3. Select either [Scanner → Memory], [Memory → PRT], or both.
4. Pressing the Start key will start the memory bus check and be terminated automatically.
5. The check result will be displayed, [OK] or [NG].

12.12.12 Memory/HDD Adj.-DSC Bus Check

A. Use

- To check the connection between the DSC board and the scanner section when the optional security kit SC-507 is installed.
- When an error is detected after checking, NG1 or NG2 is displayed depending on the location of the board where the defect is found.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [State Confirmation] → [Memory / HDD Adj.] → [DSC Bus Check].
3. Touch [Scanner → DSC].
4. Pressing the Start key will start the DSC bus check and be terminated automatically.
5. The check result will be displayed.

12.12.13 Memory/HDD Adj.-HDD R/W Check

A. Use

- To check to see if the hard disk is connected properly, and if read/write operation of the hard disk is correctly performed.
- When the hard disk is mounted.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [State Confirmation] → [Memory / HDD Adj.] → [HDD R/W Check].
3. Pressing the Start key will start the hard disk R/W check sequence and be terminated automatically.
4. The check result will be displayed, [OK] or [NG].

12.12.14 Memory/HDD Adj.-HDD Format

A. Use

- To format the hard disk.
- The function proceeds in the order of physical format to logical format.
- If the hard disk is yet to be formatted, the malfunction code "C-D010" will appear. Ignore this code and continue with the formatting procedure.
- When the hard disk is mounted.
- When the hard disk is to be initialized. (Physical format to logical format)

NOTE

- **As formatting of HDD deletes movie data and OCR dictionary data, after formatting HDD, you need to reinstall these data as necessary.**

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [State Confirmation] → [Memory / HDD Adj.] → [HDD Format].

Physical Format

1. Touch [Physical Format].
2. Press the Start key to start the formatting sequence.
3. The sequence will be automatically terminated as it is completed.
4. Turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

NOTE

- **If [HDD Encryption Setting] is not set to "ON," when the physical format is completed and the main power switch is turned OFF/ON, a message that prompts you to set an encrypting word is displayed.**
  If you perform [HDD Encryption Setting], after setting an encrypting word, perform the logical format.

Logical Format (only when initial is set up)

1. Touch [Logical Format].
2. Press the Start key to start the formatting sequence.
3. The sequence will be automatically terminated as it is completed.
4. Turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

✻ Formatting the hard disk will erase all data contained in it.

12.12.15 Memory/HDD State

A. Use

- To display the condition and amount of the memory and hard disk.

B. Procedure

- When the encryption board is mounted, the machine automatically recognizes it and displays [Set].

12.12.16 Color Regist

A. Use

- To check each of C, M, and Y for color shift amount.
- The data is updated after a color shift correction has been made or color shift adjustment has been completed.
- To display the results of skew adjustment.

B. Procedure

- For each of C, M, and Y, the color shift amount (in X and Y directions) at two locations (one at the front and the other in the rear) and the difference in color shift amount between the front and rear (X and Y directions) are displayed.
- Display unit: dots
- Individual color shifts of C, M, and Y are based on K and their amounts are displayed.
- For details of skew adjustment, see the following.
See P.386

12.12.17 Adjustment Data List

A. Use

- To display the adjustment and setting value set in the main body.
- Use to check the adjustment and setting value set in the main body.

12.13 Test Mode

- To check the image on the printer side by letting the machine produce various types of test pattern. It also tests the printing operation in Paper Passage Test, as well as the fax transmission.
- The machine searches through the paper sources in the order of tray 2, tray 3, tray 4, LCT and tray 1 for paper of the maximum size for printing.

12.13.1 Procedure for test pattern output

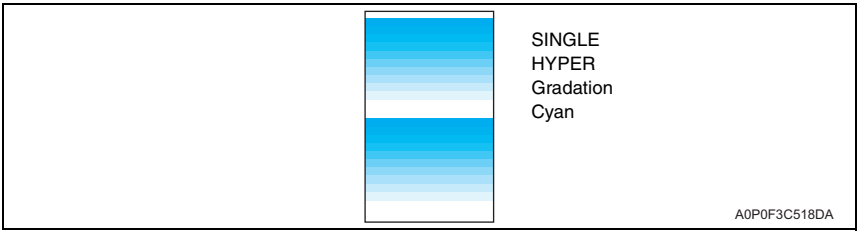
1. Touch [Test Mode] to display the test mode menu.
2. Touch the desired test pattern key.
3. Set up the desired functions and press the Start key.

12.13.2 Gradation Pattern

A. Use

- To produce a gradation pattern.
- Used for checking gradation reproducibility.

<Test pattern>



B. Procedure

- # of Print (“1” to 999)
- Select “SINGLE” (single copy) or MULTI (multi copy).
- Select FEET or “HYPER”.
- Select “1-Sided”, 2-Side1 or 2-Side2.
  2-Side1: The same pattern is printed on both front and back sides.
  2-Side2: The front side is blank and the pattern is printed on the back side.
- Select “Gradation”, Resolution or Error diffusion if HYPER has been selected.
- Select “12 Gradations”, 24 Gradations or 256 Gradations.
- Select the color mode.
  “Cyan”, Magenta, Yellow, Black (4PC), CMYK, 8 Color, 4 Color, Black (1PC)
  Black (4PC): Uses four colors.
  Black (1PC): Uses one color of black.

NOTE

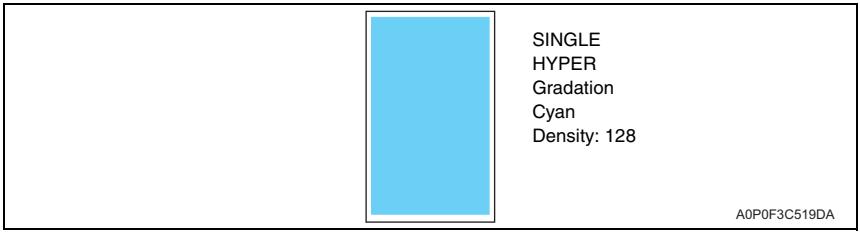
- **When 24 Gradations or 256 Gradations is selected, [8 Color] or [4 Color] is not selectable in color mode.**

12.13.3 Halftone Pattern

A. Use

- To produce a solid halftone pattern.
- Used for checking uneven density and pitch noise.

<Test pattern>



B. Procedure

- # of Print (“1” to 999)
- Select “SINGLE” (single copy) or MULTI (multi copy).
- Select FEET or “HYPER.”
- Select “Gradation”, Resolution or Error diffusion if HYPER has been selected.
- Select “1-Sided”, 2-Side1 or 2-Side2.
  2-Side1: The same pattern is printed on both front and back sides.
  2-Side2: The front side is blank and the pattern is printed on the back side.
- Select the color mode.
  “Cyan”, Magenta, Yellow, Black (4PC), Red, Green, Blue, CMYK, 3 Color, 4 Color, Black (1PC), MIX
- Select a printable area from [Full Bleed] or [Front Half].

NOTE

- **[Front Half] is selectable only for one-side printing.**

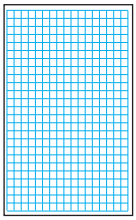
- Type the density level (0 to “255”).

12.13.4 Lattice Pattern

A. Use

- To produce a lattice pattern.
- Used for checking fine line reproducibility and uneven density.
- A reverse pattern is also used to check for fine line reproducibility of white letters on a solid background.

<Test pattern>



SINGLE
FEET
Cyan
CD Width: 5
FD Width: 5
Density: 255
Normal

A0P0F3C520DA

B. Procedure

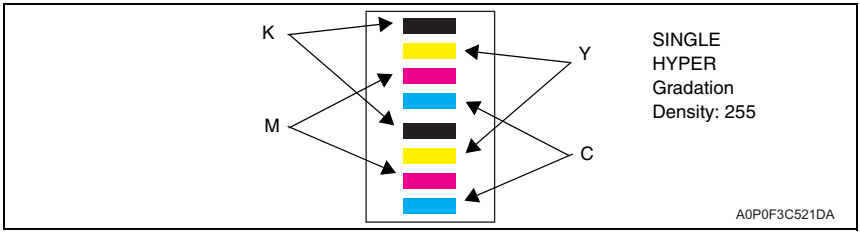
- # of Print (“1” to 999)
- Select “SINGLE” (single copy) or MULTI (multi copy).
- Select “FEET” or HYPER.
- Select “Gradation”, Resolution or Error diffusion if HYPER has been selected.
- Select”1-Sided”, 2-Side1 or 2-Side2.
  2-Side1: The same pattern is printed on both front and back sides.
  2-Side2: The front side is blank and the pattern is printed on the back side.
- Select Gradation or Resolution. (Only select HYPER)
- Select the color mode.
  “Cyan”, Magenta, Yellow, Black (4PC), Red, Green, Blue, CMYK, 3 Color, 4 Color, Black (1PC)
- Enter CD width and FD width (0 to 191 dots).
- Type the density level (0 to “255”).
- Select “Normal” or Reverse.

12.13.5 Solid Pattern

A. Use

- To produce each of the C, M, Y, and K solid patterns.
- Used for checking reproducibility of image density.

<Test pattern>



B. Procedure

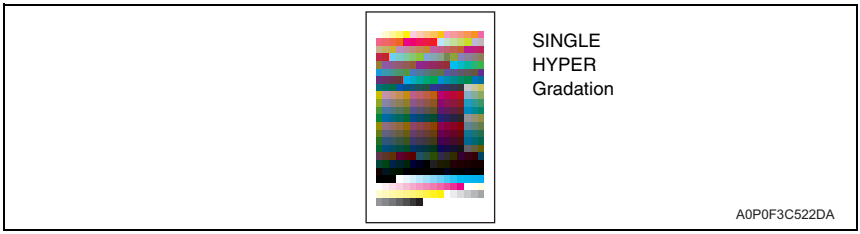
- # of Print (“1” to 999)
- Select “SINGLE” (single copy) or MULTI (multi copy).
- Select FEET or “HYPER.”
- Select “Gradation”, Resolution or Error diffusion if HYPER has been selected.
- Type the density level (0 to “255”).

12.13.6 Color Sample

A. Use

- To produce a color sample.
- Used for checking reproducibility of each of the different colors.

<Test pattern>



B. Procedure

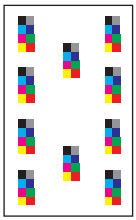
- # of Print (“1” to 999)
- Select “SINGLE” (single copy) or MULTI (multi copy).
- Select FEET or “HYPER.”
- Select “Gradation”, Resolution or Error diffusion if HYPER has been selected.
- Produce 12-gradation-level patches of C, M, Y, K, R, G, and B, and a patch of each of the 12 reference colors in the hue circle with lightness and saturation corrected.

12.13.7 8 Color Solid Pattern

A. Use

- To produce an 8-color solid pattern.
- Used for checking color reproducibility and uneven density of each color.

<Test pattern>



SINGLE
HYPER
Gradation
Density: 255

A0P0F3C523DA

B. Procedure

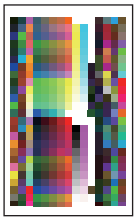
- # of Print (“1” to 999)
- Select “SINGLE” (single copy) or MULTI (multi copy).
- Select FEET or “HYPER.”
- Select “Gradation”, Resolution or Error diffusion if HYPER has been selected.
- Type the density level (0 to “255”).

12.13.8 CMM pattern

A. Use

- To produce a CMM (Color Management Module) pattern.
- Used to check color difference depending on the places where output is made.

<Test pattern>



Error diffusion
270 degrees

A0P0F3C524DA

B. Procedure

- # of Print is always “1”.
- Select “Error diffusion”, Gradation, or Resolution.
- Select an angle from among “0 degrees”, 90 degrees, 180 degrees, and 270 degrees.

12.13.9 Paper Passage Test

A. Use

- To test the printing operation in running mode.
- Use to check the printing operation in running mode from each paper source.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch these keys in this order: [Test Mode] → [Running Mode].
3. Touch [Select Tray] and select the paper feed tray to be tested.
4. Touch [Paper Kind] and select a paper type.
5. Press the Start key to start the running mode.
6. Pressing the Stop key will stop operation.

12.13.10 Fax Test

- For details, see FK-502 Service Manual.

12.14 ADF

12.14.1 Original Stop Position

A. Use

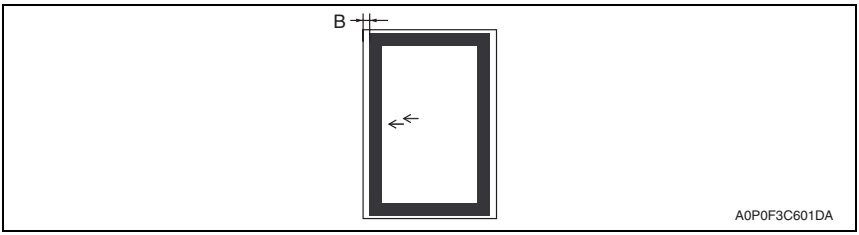
- To manually adjust the original stop position and the read position in each of the ADF modes.
- When the result is Unable in the automatic adjustment of the original stop position.

B. Procedure

NOTE

- **Before performing this adjustment, the feed zoom adjustment needs to be complete.**
See P.496

(1) Sub Scanning Direction 1-Side / Sub Scanning Direction 2-Side



1. Place the chart in the document feed tray (with the side having an arrow facing up).
2. Make a full size copy of the chart.

NOTE

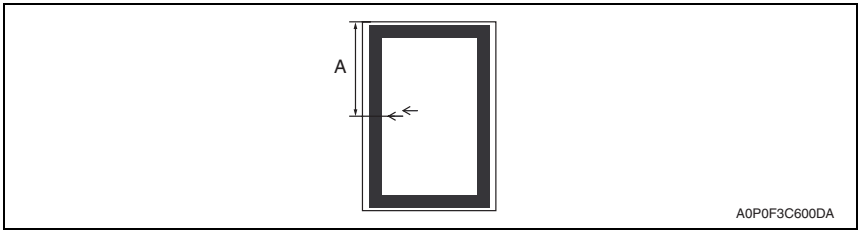
- **In the same way place the chart with the blank side facing up in the document feed tray in the duplex mode and make a copy. Check the difference in the widths of a between the chart and the second sided surface of the copy sample.**

3. Check that the difference in the widths of B between the chart and the copy sample falls within the specified range.

Specification B: 0 ± 2.0 mm
Adjustment range: -4.0 mm to +4.0 mm (1 step: 0.1 mm)

4. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
5. Touch [ADF] → [Original Stop Position].
6. Touch [Sub Scanning Direction 1-Side] or [Sub Scanning Direction 2-Side].
7. Enter the value from the ten-key pad. (Press the [+/-] key to change the +/- code.)
   If the difference in the widths of B is greater than the specifications, enter the + value.
   If the difference in the widths of B is smaller than the specifications, enter the - value.
8. Touch [END].
9. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
10. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.
11. Make a copy of the chart again and check that the difference in the widths of B falls within the specified range.

(2) Main Scanning (Front) / Main Scanning (Back)



1. Place the chart in the document feed tray (with the side having an arrow facing up).
2. Make a full size copy of the chart.

NOTE

- **In the same way place the chart with the blank side facing up in the document feed tray in the duplex mode and make a copy. Check the difference in the widths of a between the chart and the second sided surface of the copy sample.**

3. Check that the difference in the widths of A between the chart and the copy sample falls within the specified range.

Specification A: 0 ± 2.0 mm
△2 Adjustment range: -4.4 mm to +4.4 mm (1 step: 0.1 mm)

4. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
5. Touch [ADF] → [Original Stop Position].
6. Touch [Main Scanning (Front)] or [Main Scanning (Back)].
7. Enter the value from the ten-key pad. (Press the [+/-] key to change the +/- code.)
   If the difference in the widths of A is greater than the specifications, enter the + value.
   If the difference in the widths of A is smaller than the specifications, enter the - value.
8. Touch [END].
9. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
10. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.
11. Make a copy of the chart again and check that the difference in the widths of A falls within the specified range.

12.14.2 Registration Loop Adj.

<Use>

- To adjust the length of the loop to be formed in paper before the registration rollers.
- When an original misfeed or skew occurs.

<Procedure>

The default setting is 0.
Adjustable range: -5 mm to + 5 mm (in 1-mm increments)

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [ADF] → [Registration Loop Adj].
3. Select either [1-Side] or [Second Side] for the adjustment.
4. Press the clear key and change the setting value using the 10-key pad. (Press the [+/-] key to change the +/- code.)
   The amount of loop increases by the amount of positive (+) value and decreases by the amount of negative (-) value.
5. Touch [END].
6. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
7. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

12.14.3 Auto Stop Position Adjustment

A. Use

- To automatically adjust the read position for the Sub Scanning Direction.
- To check skew feed.
- When ADF has been replaced.

B. Procedure

(1) Sub Scanning Direction 1-SIde

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [ADF] → [Auto Stop Position Adjustment].
3. Touch [Sub Scanning Direction 1-SIde].
4. Place the chart in the document feed tray (with the side having an arrow facing up).
5. Press the Start key.
6. Make sure that result is OK. Then, touch [SET].
7. Touch [END].
8. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
9. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

NOTE

If the result is Unable:

- **Check and correct the skew of the document.**
- **Manually correct the value of [Original Stop Position].**

See P.486

(2) Sub Scanning Direction 2-SIde

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [ADF] → [Auto Stop Position Adjustment].
3. Touch [Sub Scanning Direction 2-SIde].
4. Place the chart in the document feed tray (Set the chart with its blank side facing upward).
5. Press the Start key.
6. Make sure that result is OK. Then, touch [SET].
7. Touch [END].
8. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
9. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

NOTE

If the result is Unable:

- **Check and correct the skew of the document.**
- **Manually correct the value of [Original Stop Position].**

See P.486

(3) Main Scanning (Front)

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [ADF] → [Auto Stop Position Adjustment].
3. Touch [Main Scanning (Front)].
4. Place the chart in the document feed tray (with the side having an arrow facing up).
5. Press the Start key.
6. Make sure that result is OK. Then, touch [SET].
7. Touch [END].
8. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
9. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

NOTE

If the result is Unable:

- **Check and correct the skew of the document.**
- **Manually correct the value of [Original Stop Position].**

See P.486

(4) Main Scanning (Back)

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [ADF] → [Auto Stop Position Adjustment].
3. Touch [Main Scanning (Back)].
4. Place the chart in the document feed tray (Set the chart with its blank side facing upward.).
5. Press the Start key.
6. Make sure that result is OK. Then, touch [SET].
7. Touch [END].
8. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
9. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

NOTE

If the result is Unable:

- **Check and correct the skew of the document.**
- **Manually correct the value of [Original Stop Position].**

See P.486

12.14.4 Paper Passage

A. Use

- To check for paper passage through the ADF in each of the ADF modes.
- Used for checking the document path for any abnormal condition when a document misfeed occurs.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [ADF] → [Paper Passage].
3. Select a paper passage mode to be tested from [1-Sided No Detect], [1-Sided Mixed Org.], [2-Sided], or [AMS Mixed Org.].
4. Set the original in the feed tray.
5. The Start key changes from orange to blue.
6. Press the Start key. The operation starts.

NOTE

- **After starting the operation by pressing the Start key, if the Start key is pressed during the operation, the operation will be suspended. Then, if the Start key is pressed again during the suspension, the operation will be resumed.**
- **If the Stop key is pressed during the test operation, the test will be forced to end.**
- **If there is no Original set in the feed Tray, the Start key will not work.**
- **All Originals set in the feed Tray are passed through. Upon the completion of all Originals passed through, the Paper Through Test ends.**

12.14.5 Sensor Check

A. Use

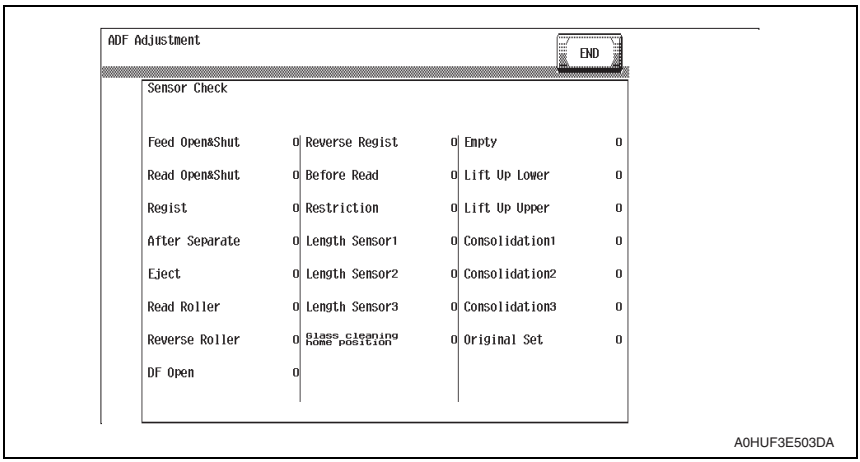
- To check sensors on the paper path.
- When a document misfeed occurs.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [ADF] → [Sensor Check].
3. Operate the sensor to check by using paper or the like, and check the screen display. (Paper detected: 1, No paper detected: 0)

C. Sensor check screen

- This is only typical screen which may be different from what are shown on each individual main unit.



A0HUF3E503DA

D. Sensor check list

Symbol	Panel display	Part/Signal name	Operation characteristics/ panel display	
			1	0
PS1	Feed Open&Shut	Feed open/close sensor	Open	Close
PS2	Read Open&Shut	Read open/close sensor	Open	Close
2 PS3	Registration Sensor	Registration sensor	Paper present (Blocked)	Paper not present (Unblocked)
PS4	After Separate	After separate sensor	Paper present (Unblocked)	Paper not present (Blocked)
2 PS5	Exit Sensor	Exit sensor	Paper present (Unblocked)	Paper not present (Blocked)
PS6	Read Roller	Read roller sensor	Pressure (Blocked)	Retraction (Unblocked)
PS7	Reverse Roller	Reverse roller sensor	Pressure (Blocked)	Retraction (Unblocked)

	Symbol	Panel display	Part/Signal name	Operation characteristics/ panel display	
				1	0
	RS201	DF Open	Original cover sensor	Open	Close
	PS8	Reverse Regist	Reverse registration sensor	Paper present (Blocked)	Paper not present (Unblocked)
	PS9	Before Read	Before read sensor	Paper present (Blocked)	Paper not present (Unblocked)
2	VR1	Original Width Sensor	Document width detection variable resistor	Analog value	
	PS10	Length Sensor1	Length sensor/1	Paper present	Paper not present
	PS11	Length Sensor2	Length sensor/2	Blocked	Unblocked
	PS12	Length Sensor3	Length sensor/3	Paper present	Paper not present
	PS21	Glass Cleaning home position	Glass cleaning sensor	At home	Not at home
2	PS14	Original Detection Sensor	Empty sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
	PS16	Lift Up Lower	Lift up lower sensor	Unblocked	Blocked
	PS15	Lift Up Upper	Lift up upper sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
2	PS19	Mixed Original 1	Consolidation sensor/1	Paper present	Paper not present
2	PS18	Mixed Original 2	Consolidation sensor/2	Paper present	Paper not present
2	PS17	Mixed Original 3	Consolidation sensor/3	Paper present	Paper not present
	PS20	Original Set	Original set sensor	In position	Out of position

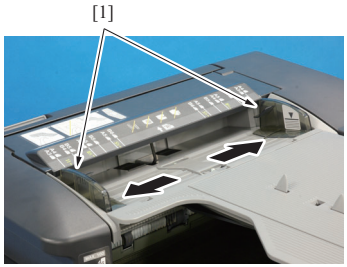
12.14.6 Original Tray Width

A. Use

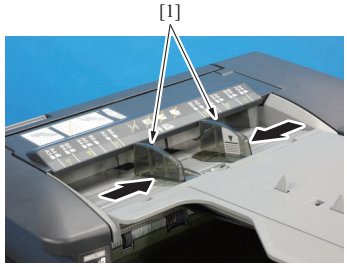
- To set the values of maximum (A3 position) and minimum (B6 position) widths on the document width detection variable resistor.
- When an original misfeed occurs.
- When an original size detection error occurs.
- When the document width detection variable resistor has been replaced.
- When the EEPROM has been replaced.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [ADF] → [Original Tray Width].



3. Widen the width across the edge guides [1] by sliding them to the “A3” position.
4. Touch [Max. Width].
5. Press the Start key.
6. OK is displayed when the adjustment has been completed.



7. Narrow the width across the edge guides [1] by sliding them to the “B6” position.
8. Touch [Min. Width].
9. Press the Start key.
10. OK is displayed when the adjustment has been completed.
11. Touch [END].
12. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
13. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

NOTE

If the result is NG:

- **Possible causes includes failure of the document width detection variable resistor, wrong wiring to the volume and failure of the DFCB.**

12.14.7 Read Pos Adj

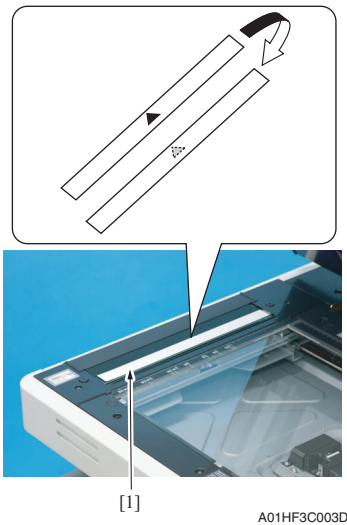
A. Use

- To adjust the original read position.
- When the first/second carriage, the scanner wire, the scanner assy, the DF original glass, and/or the glass step sheet have been replaced.

B. Procedure

(1) Auto Adjust

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [ADF] → [Read Pos Adj].
3. Touch [Auto Adjust].



4. Open the ADF.
5. Place the ADF reading chart [1] so that a triangular mark may become the original glass side (downward) and the pointed tip of the triangle points toward the black sheet on the left side.
6. Press the Start key.

NOTE

- **Be sure that the ADF reading chart is in position.**
- **Keep the automatic document feeder open while making the adjustment.**

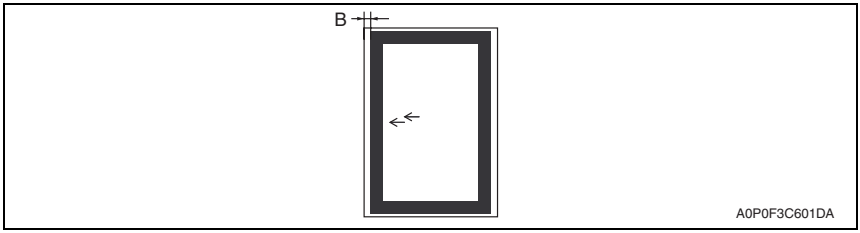
7. Make sure that the result is OK.
8. Touch [END].
9. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
10. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

NOTE

If the result is Unable:

- **Check that the chart is in the correct place.**
- **Make the manual adjustment on the [Read Pos Adj] screen.**
  See P.495

(2) Read Pos Adj



1. Place the chart in the document feed tray (with the side having an arrow facing up).
2. Make a full size copy of the chart.

Specification B: 0 ± 1.0 mm
Adjustment range: -64 mm to +64 mm (1 step: 1 mm)

3. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
4. Touch [ADF] → [Read Pos Adj].
5. Touch [Read Pos Adj].
6. Enter the value using the [-]/[+] keys.
   If the difference in the widths of B is greater than the specifications, enter the - value.
   If the difference in the widths of B is smaller than the specifications, enter the + value.
7. Touch [END].
8. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
9. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.
10. Make a copy of the chart again and check that the difference in the widths of B falls within the specified range.

12.14.8 Feed Zoom

A. Use

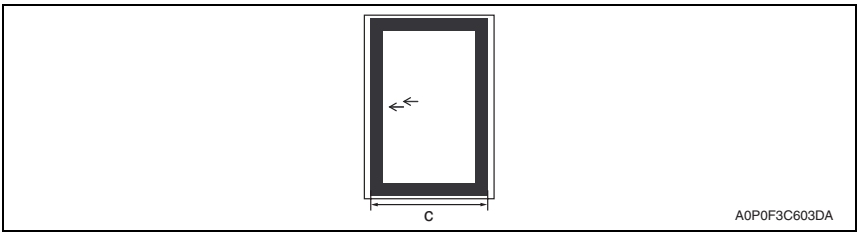
- To adjust the feed zoom of ADF in the feeding direction.
- When ADF has been replaced.

B. Procedure

(1) Auto Adjust

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [ADF] → [Feed Zoom].
3. Touch [Auto Adjust].
4. Place the chart in the document feed tray (with the side having an arrow facing up).
5. Press the Start key.
6. Make sure that result is OK. Then, touch [SET].
7. Touch [END].
8. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
9. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

(2) Orig. Feed Zoom Ad



1. Place the chart in the document feed tray (with the side having an arrow facing up).
2. Make a full size copy of the chart.

Specification C: 0 ± 1.0 mm
Adjustment range: -2.00% to +2.00% (1 step: 0.1%)

3. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
4. Touch [ADF] → [Feed Zoom].
5. Touch [Orig. Feed Zoom Ad].
6. Enter the value using the [-]/[+] keys.
   If the difference in the widths of C is greater than the specifications, enter the - value.
   If the difference in the widths of C is smaller than the specifications, enter the + value.
7. Touch [END].
8. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
9. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.
10. Make a copy of the chart again and check that the difference in the widths of C falls within the specified range.

12.14.9 Scanning Light Adjustment

A. Use

- To adjust the scanning light of ADF.
- Used for adjusting the difference in the scanning lights between scanning from the original glass and scanning from the ADF original glass.

B. Procedure

Adjustable range: -4 to + 4 (1 step)

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [ADF] → [Scanning Light Adjustment].
3. Select a color by pressing [Red], [Green], or [Blue].
4. Press the value using the [+]/[-] key.

NOTE

- **It is recommended that the scanning light adjustment should be made by the same steps for all the three colors of red, green, and blue.**

5. Touch [END].
6. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
7. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

12.14.10 Mixed original Size adjustment

A. Use

- To adjust paper length detection accuracy used during paper feed in ADF mixed original mode.
- To set the threshold for each size detection based on the length detected when feeding standard sizes (large and small sizes).

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [ADF] → [Mixed original Size adjustment].
3. Place the chart in the document feed tray (with the side having an arrow facing up).
4. Press the Start key.
5. Make sure that result is OK. Then, touch [SET].
6. Touch [END].
7. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
8. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

12.15 FAX

- For details, see FK-502 Service Manual.

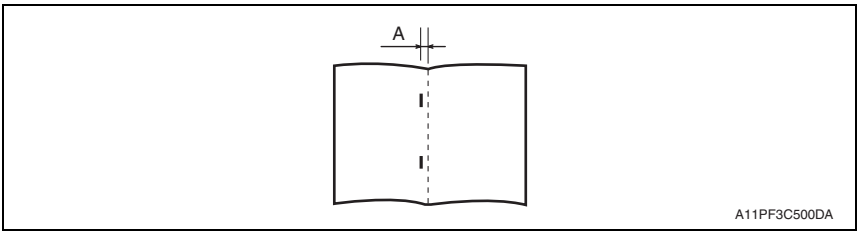
12.16 Finisher

12.16.1 FS-FN adjustment - Center Staple Position

A. Use

- Adjust the stapling position for each paper size when printing with the center staple function.
- Adjust the stapling position for each paper size when printing with the center staple function.

B. Procedure



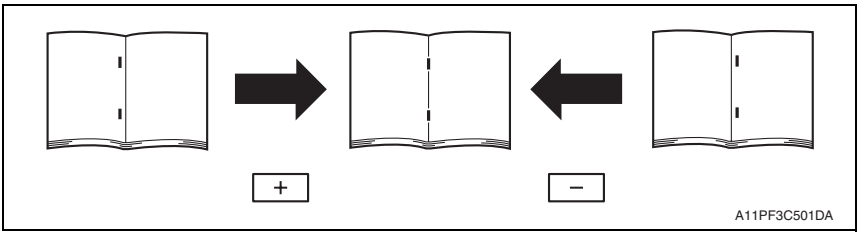
NOTE

- **After [Half-Fold Position] adjustment, make this [Center Staple Position] adjustment.**

1. Place five sheets of originals on the ADF.
2. Make a set of copy in the saddle stitching mode.
3. Check the amount of horizontal deviation (A) between the staple and the half fold positions on the set of copy.

Specification A: 0 ± 1.0 mm
Adjustment range: -10.0 mm to +10.0 mm (1 step: 0.1 mm)

4. If (A) is out of the specified range, make the following adjustment.
5. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
6. Touch [Finisher] → [FS-FN adjustment] → [Center Staple Position].
7. Touch the paper size where staple position is adjusted.
8. Look at the copy and adjust the staple position with the [+]/[-] key.



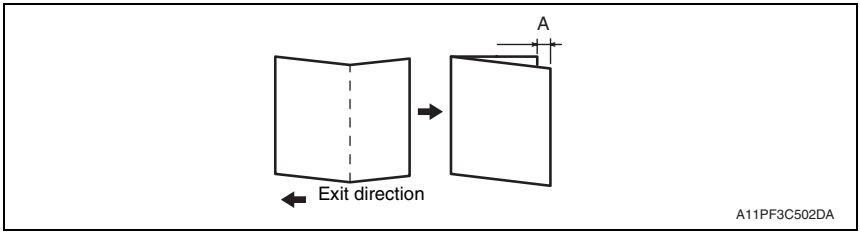
9. Press the Reset key.
10. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
11. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.
12. Make another set of copy sample and check the amount of deviation (A).

12.16.2 FS-FN adjustment - Half-Fold Position

A. Use

- Use this adjustment to adjust the half-fold position in half-fold printing.

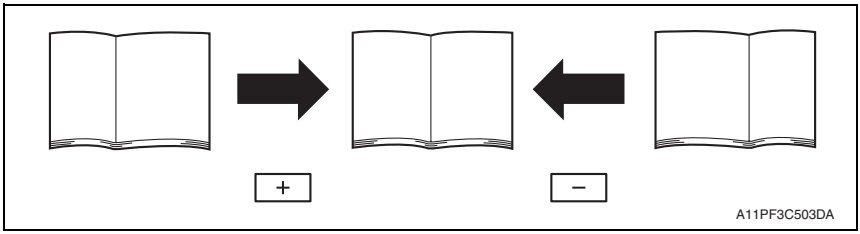
B. Procedure



1. Place two sheets of originals on the ADF.
2. Make a copy in the folding mode.
3. Fold the copies along the crease.
4. Measure the amount of deviation (A).

Specification A: 0 ± 1.0 mm
Adjustment range: -10.0 mm to +10.0 mm (1 step: 0.1 mm)

5. If (A) is out of the specified range, make the following adjustment.
6. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
7. Touch [Finisher] → [FS-FN adjustment] → [Half-Fold Position].
8. Touch the paper size where half-fold position is adjusted.
9. Look at the copy and adjust the half-fold position with the [+]/[-] key.



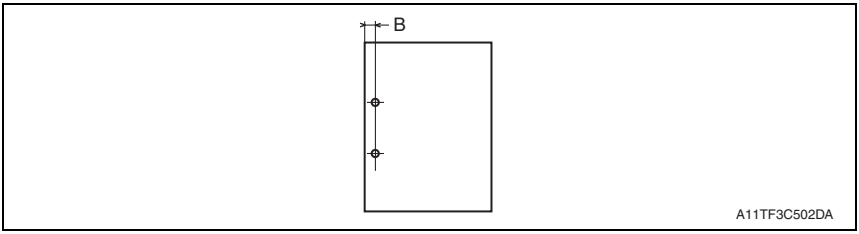
10. Press the Reset key.
11. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
12. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.
13. Make another set of copy sample and check the amount of deviation (A).

12.16.3 FS-FN adjustment - Punch Edge Adj

A. Use

- To change the horizontal position of the punch holes.

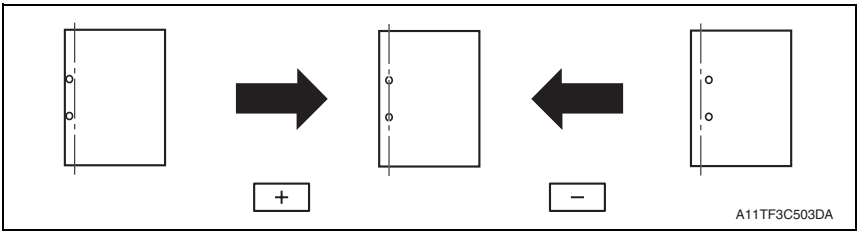
B. Procedure



1. Make a copy sample in the punch mode.
2. Make an adjustment so that the width B is within the following range.

Specification B: 9.5 mm ± 1.0 mm (2-3 hole), 11.0 mm ± 1.0 mm (2-4 hole),
10.5 mm ± 1.0 mm (SWE4 hole)
Adjustment range: -10.0 mm to +10.0 mm (1 step: 0.1 mm)

3. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
4. Touch [Finisher] → [FS-FN adjustment] → [Punch Edge Adj].
5. Touch the paper type where punch horizontal position is adjusted.
6. Look at the copy and adjust the punch horizontal position with the [+]/[-] key.
   To make width B greater: Enter the value of [+]
   To make width B smaller: Enter the value of [-]



7. Press the Reset key.
8. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
9. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.
10. Make another set of copy sample and check the amount of deviation (A).

12.16.4 FS-FN adjustment - Punch Regist Loop Size

A. Use

- Adjusts the punch loop size used for paper exited from the main body.
- To address problems such as misaligned punch holes, wrinkled paper, and jam at the punch registration section.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [Finisher] → [FS-FN adjustment] → [Punch Regist Loop Size].
3. Touch the paper size where punch regist loop size is adjusted.
4. Set the correction value using the [+]/[-] keys.
   Misaligned punched holes: Enter the value of [+]
   Wrinkled paper: Enter the value of [-]

Adjustment range: -4.0 to +4.0

5. Press the Reset key.
6. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
7. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

⚠2 12.16.5 FS-FN adjustment - Finisher Components Test Mode

A. Use

- Use this adjustment to check finisher's operation.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. ⚠2 Touch [Finisher] → [FS-FN adjustment] → [Finisher Components Test Mode].
3. Touch [1] or [2] to select a mode.
4. Press the Start key to start finisher operation.
5. Press the Stop key to stop ongoing finisher operation.

⚠2 C. Finisher Components Test Mode list (FS-527/SD-509)

NOTE

- **"Tray 1" indicates the tray 2 (lower) and "Tray 2" is the tray 1 (upper) shown on the panel.**

Mode	
Finisher Components Test Mode1	Stapler movement
	Alignment Moving
	Tray up/down operation
	FD Stopper Operation
	Punch Drive Standard Holes
	Punch Drive MC (2 Holes)
	Tray 1 Exit Roller Open/Close
	Accommodation Roller Open/Close
	2-Side Path Switch
	Conveyance Drive
	Tray 2 Path Switch
	Upper/Lower Path Switch
	Paddle Operation
	Shift Operation
Finisher Components Test Mode2	Saddle Stapler Operation
	Center fold knife operation
	Center staple Transport motor Drive
	Edge Stopper Operation
	Center Staple Paddle operation

⚠2 D. Finisher Components Test Mode list (FS-529)

Mode	
Finisher Components Test Mode1	Stapler Movement
	Alignment Plate F/R Movement
	Tray up/down operation
	FD Stopper operation
	Exit Roller Retraction
	Paper Path Switch
	Conveyance Drive
	Paper surface Detect Solenoid
	Paddling Belt Up/Down
	Paddle 1 Rotation Solenoid Drive

12.16.6 FS-FN adjustment - Load Data

A. Use

- Register or call values adjusted for the finisher when it was installed at the customer site.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [Finisher] → [FS-FN adjustment] → [Load Data].
3. Select a mode from the following.

- Present adjusted value enrollment: Registers values adjusted for the finisher at the installation.
- Enrollment lingua set point call: Calls values adjusted for the finisher at the installation.

4. Press the Start key.
5. Check that [OK] is displayed.
6. Touch [END].
7. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
8. Turn OFF the main power switch. Then, wait for 10 sec. or more and turn ON the main power switch.

12.16.7 FS-FN adjustment - Alignment Plate Position

A. Use

- When FS-529 is installed, use this feature to fine adjust the aligning plate that aligns ejected paper.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [Finisher] → [FS-FN adjustment] → [Alignment Plate Position].
3. Select the [Alignment Plate Position (Back)] or [Alignment Plate Position (Side)].

The default setting is “0.0mm”.
Adjustment range: -10.0 mm to +10.0 mm (1 step: 0.1 mm)

4. Set and adjust a value with the [+]/[-] key.
5. Touch [OK].
6. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
7. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

2 12.16.8 FS-FN adjustment - Paper Alignment Guides W. Adj.

A. Use

- To fine adjust the horizontal width of the aligning plate.
- Use this feature to fine adjust the aligning plate that aligns ejected paper.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. 2. Touch [Finisher] → [FS-FN adjustment] → [Paper Alignment Guides W. Adj.].
3. Select a mode from the following.

The default setting is “0.0mm”.
Adjustment range: -10.0 mm to +10.0 mm (1 step: 0.1 mm)

4. Set and adjust a value with the [+]/[-] key.
5. Press the Reset key.
6. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
7. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

12.16.9 Punch Option Setting

A. Use

- Specifies punch settings depending on the optional punch kit attached to the finisher.
- An individual punch setting needs to be made according to the type of the punch option.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [Finisher] → [Punch Option Setting].
3. Touch [PK-517].
4. Touch [2-Holes/3-Holes], [2-Holes/4-Holes], [EU4 holes] or [SWE4 holes].
5. Touch [decision].
6. Touch [END].
7. Touch [Exit] on the Service Mode screen.
8. Turn OFF the main power switch. Then, wait for 10 sec. or more and turn ON the main power switch.

12.16.10 Job Separator

A. Use

- Checks the job separator's operation.

B. Procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Touch [Finisher] → [Job Separator].
3. Select the mode where you wish to check the operation.
4. Press the Start key to start job separator operation.
5. Press the Stop key to stop ongoing job separator operation.

12.17 Internet ISW

- By using this setting, the firmware stored in the server can be downloaded over internet for upgrading.
- For details for upgrading the firmware, refer to “FIRMWARE REWRITING” in the Maintenance section.
See P.148

12.17.1 Internet ISW Set

A. Use

- To set whether or not to enable each setting for Internet ISW.
- To use when upgrading the firmware by Internet ISW.
- Each setting such as Server setting will be valid by setting this to “ON”.

NOTE

- **When the following setting is set to “ON”, this setting will automatically be set to “OFF” and cannot be changed.**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode]

B. Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

12.17.2 HTTP Setting

- It will be displayed only when [Internet ISW Set] is set to “ON”.

12.17.3 HTTP Setting-Data Input Setting

A. Use

- To set whether or not to enable downloading using the HTTP protocol.
- To use when accessing the server using the HTTP protocol.
- Setting on the proxy server will be valid when this setting is “ON”.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

12.17.4 HTTP Setting-Connect Proxy

A. Use

- To set whether or not to connect via proxy server when accessing the server.
- To use when accessing the server via proxy server.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

12.17.5 HTTP Setting-Proxy Server

A. Use

- To set the address and the port number for the proxy server.
- To use when accessing the server via proxy server.

B. Procedure

<Server Address>

- Enter an address using IPv4, IPv6, or FQDN format.

<Port Number>

- Enter the value between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.
  (The default setting is 80)

12.17.6 HTTP Setting-Proxy Authentication

A. Use

- To set the login name or password when authentication is necessary for accessing the proxy server.
- To use when authentication is necessary for accessing the proxy server.

B. Procedure

<Authentication>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

<Log-in Name>

- Enter the login name (up to 32 one-byte characters) on the on-screen keyboard.

<Password>

- Enter the password (up to 32 one-byte characters) on the on-screen keyboard.

12.17.7 HTTP Setting-Connection Time-Out

A. Use

- To set the time for the timeout for accessing the server.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 60 sec.

30 to 300 sec.

12.17.8 FTP Setting

- It will be displayed only when [Internet ISW Set] is set to “ON”.

12.17.9 FTP Setting-Data Input Setting

A. Use

- To set whether or not to enable downloading using FTP protocol.
- To use when accessing the server with FTP protocol.
- Setting this to “ON” will enable the proxy server setting.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is ON.

“ON” OFF

12.17.10 FTP Setting-Connect Proxy

A. Use

- To set whether or not to access the server via proxy server.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

12.17.11 FTP Setting-Proxy Server

A. Use

- To set the address and the port No. of the proxy server.

B. Procedure

<Server Address>

- Enter an address using IPv4, IPv6, or FQDN format.

<Port Number>

- Enter the value between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

12.17.12 FTP Setting-Connection Setting

A. Use

- To set the port No. and the time for timeout when accessing the FTP server, and also to set whether or not to enable PASV mode.
- To use when accessing the FTP server.
- To use when connecting by the PASV (passive) mode (FTP server side will inform the connection port before connecting).

B. Procedure

<Port Number>

- Enter the value between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.

<Connection Time Out>

- Enter the value between 1 and 60 (min.) using the 10-key pad.

<PASV Mode>

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

12.17.13 Forwarding Access Setting-User ID

A. Use

- To register the user ID for accessing the program server where firmware is to be stored.

B. Procedure

1. Select [User ID].
2. Enter the user ID (up to 64 one-byte characters) on the on-screen keyboard.

12.17.14 Forwarding Access Setting-Password

A. Use

- To register the password for accessing the program server where firmware is to be stored.

B. Procedure

1. Select [Password].
2. Enter the password (up to 64 characters) on the on-screen keyboard.

12.17.15 Forwarding Access Setting-URL

A. Use

- To register the address and directory of the program server where the firmware is to be stored in URL.

B. Procedure

1. Select [URL].
2. Enter the URL (up to 256 one-byte characters) on the on-screen keyboard.

NOTE

- **Enter the URL which format suits the protocol to be used.**
  When connecting to http http:// (Host name or IP address)/ directory name or https:// (Host name or IP address)/directory name.
  When connecting to ftp ftp:// (Host name or IP address) / directory name.

12.17.16 Forwarding Access Setting-FileName

A. Use

- To register the file name of the firmware data to be downloaded.

B. Procedure

1. Select [FileName].
2. Enter the file name (up to 63 one-byte characters) on the on-screen keyboard.

12.17.17 Download

A. Use

- Access the program server according to the Internet ISW setting, and download the firmware.
- To use when updating the firmware via network.

B. Procedure

1. Select [Download].
2. Touch [ISW Start] to start downloading the firmware.
3. The message to show the status will be displayed on the screen while connecting and transferring data.

NOTE

- **When it failed to connect to the program server, or failed to download, the error code and the message will be displayed. Check the cause of the error by the error code, and follow the message for resetting.**
  Refer to "Error cord list" for the error codes.
  See P.159
- When the firmware is normally upgraded, the main body will automatically be restarted to complete the Internet ISW.

13. ENHANCED SECURITY

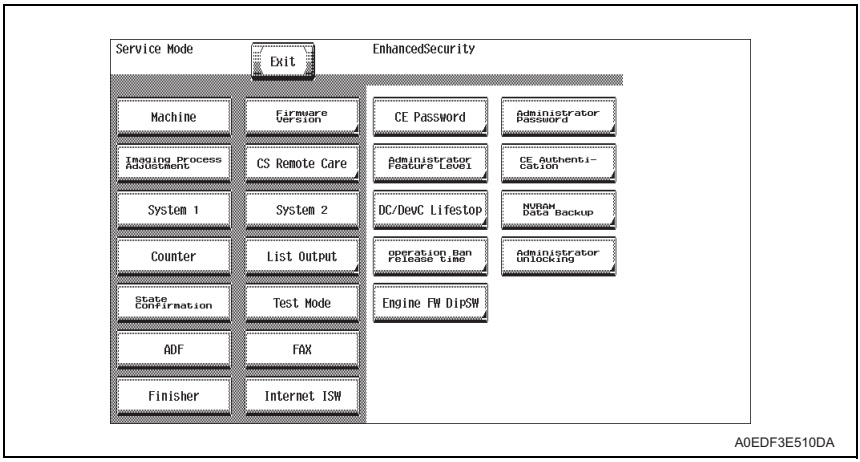
13.1 List of Enhanced Security

Service Mode		Ref. Page
Enhanced Security	CE Password	P.510
	Administrator Password	P.510
	Administrator Feature Level	P.511
	CE Authentication	P.511
	DC/DevC Lifestop	P.512
	NVRAM Data Backup	P.512
	Operation Ban release time	P.512
	Administrator unlocking	P.513
	Engine FW DipSW	P.513

13.2 Starting/Exiting

13.2.1 Starting procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Press the following keys in this order.
   Stop → 0→ Clear
3. Enhanced Security menu will appear.



A0EDF3E510DA

13.2.2 Exiting procedure

- Touch the [Exit].

13.3 Enhanced Security

13.3.1 CE Password

A. Use

- To set and change the CE password.

B. Procedure

- Enter the CE password (8 digits) on the on-screen keyboard.
- The initial setting is "92729272."

  Current Password : Enter the currently using CE password.
  New Password : Enter the new CE password.
  Re-Input Password : Enter the new CE password again.

NOTE

- **When the following setting leads to the Password Rules [ON], the password with the same letters as well as the password which is same as the previous one cannot be changed.**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings]
- **NEVER forget the CE password. When forgetting the CE password, call responsible person of KMBT.**

13.3.2 Administrator Password

A. Use

- To set and change the administrator password.
- Use this function when the administrator forget the administrator password because a new password can be set without entering the current administrator password with this.

B. Procedure

- Enter the administrator password (8 digits) on the on-screen keyboard.
- The initial setting is "12345678."

  New Password : Enter the new administrator password.
  Re-Input Password : Enter the new administrator password again.

NOTE

- **When the following setting leads to the Password Rules [ON], the password with the same letters, the password which is same as the previous one and the password of less than eight digits cannot be changed.**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings]

13.3.3 Administrator Feature Level

A. Use

- To set which modes to be allowed for the administrator to use in Service Mode.
- Use when allowing the administrator to use some modes in Service Mode.
- The modes allowed for the administrator to use in each setting are as follows.

Administrator settings function			Level 1	Level 2
[System Setting] → [Expert Setting]	Printer Adjustment	Erase Leading Edge	—	❍
	Scanner Adjustment	Leading Edge Adjustment	—	❍
		Centering	—	❍
		Horizontal Adjustment	—	❍
		Vertical Adjustment	—	❍
	ADF Adjustment	Centering	—	❍
		Original Stop Position	—	❍
		Centering Auto Adjustment	—	❍
		Auto Adj. of Stop Position	—	❍
	User paper Settings		—	❍
[Standard Size Setting]	Original Glass Original Size Detect		—	❍
	Foolscap Size Setting		—	❍

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Prohibit.

Level1 Level2 “Prohibit”

13.3.4 CE Authentication

- It will not be displayed when the following settings are set to “ON”.
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode] or [Password Rules].

A. Use

- To determine whether or not to authenticate CE password as entering Service Mode.
- Use when authenticating CE password as entering Service Mode.

NOTE

- **For setting the following setting to “ON”, set the CE Authentication to “ON” and change the initial CE password beforehand.**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode] or [Password Rules]

B. Procedure

- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

13.3.5 DC/DevC Lifestop

A. Use

- To select whether or not to stop a print cycle when the drum unit/developing unit reaches its service life.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Stop.

"Stop"	No Stop

13.3.6 NVRAM Data Backup

A. Use

- To backup NVRAM data in the main body to the flash memory.
- To backup current data in order to prevent data in NVRAM from being erased unexpectedly.
- To backup data manually. It usually makes backup every hour automatically.
- Backup data can be restored by following the specified procedure when the trouble (CD3XX) occurred.
  Refer to "TROUBLESHOOTING" for details on restoration procedure.
  See P.679

B. Procedure

1. Touch [NVRAM Data Backup].
2. Touch [Start] to start making a backup.
3. Check the message [Backup is completed.], and turn main power switch OFF. Wait for ten seconds or more and turn main power switch back ON.

13.3.7 Operation Ban release time

A. Use

- To set the time that elapses before the machine releases an access lock that is activated after the CE password authentication.
- To set the period of time that elapses before the machine releases the access lock, which aims to prevent the unintentional release of the access lock.
- After the CE password authentication, if the access lock is activated, the lock release timer starts to operate by input the Stop → 0 → 9 → 3 → 1 → 7 in [Meter Count] → [Check Details] → [Coverage Rate] after the main power switch is turned OFF and On. When the timer reaches the time specified in this setting, the access lock is released.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is 1 (minutes).

"1" to 60 (minutes)

NOTE

- **When Enhanced Security Mode is set to ON in [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode], the period of time that can be set in this setting is 5 minutes or more.**

13.3.8 Administrator unlocking

A. Use

- To release an access lock that is activated after an administrator password authentication.
- To release the access lock with service authority when an administrator password authentication fails and the access lock is activated.
- When the main power switch is turned OFF and ON or the period of time set in the Release Time Settings elapses, the machine releases the access lock that is activated after the administrator password authentication.
  In addition to these operations, this setting provides another way to release the access lock.

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Administrator unlocking].
2. Touch [unlocking] to release an access lock.
3. When [OK] is displayed, touch [OK].

13.3.9 Engine FW DipSW

- It will be displayed when the following setting shows that switch No.59 is set to [01] at HEX assignment.
  [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Software Switch Setting])

A. Use

- To make printer engine settings.
- The following table shows DIP switches that can be set in this machine.

Switch No.	Function	Ref. page
1	• Not used	-
2	• Not used	-
3	• New Release Disable mode	P.514
4	• Not used	-
5	• PPM control (high-humidity environment mode) prohibit choice	P.515
6	• Not used	-
7	• Photo conductor setup rotation time choice	P.515
8 : 28	• Not used	-

B. Procedure

1. Touch [Engine FW DipSW].
2. Touch the key that corresponds to the switch No. of the function to be set and check the key is highlighted (ON state) in reverse video.
3. Touch [OK].

C. Details of Each Function

(1) New Release Disable mode

- To enable a unit that is temporarily used for troubleshooting or other purposes to be used again as a new unit in another machine, New Release Disable mode is provided.
- Applicable units are the following that have the new unit detection feature.
  Drum unit/Y,M,C,K, Developing unit/Y,M,C,K
- In new release disable mode, automatic adjustment with TCR sensor and image stabilization for new article are not implemented, instead parameters of the units before replacement is used for management.

<Procedure>

1. Open the front door.
2. Touch [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [Engine FW DipSW].
3. Touch [3] and check the key is highlighted (ON state) in reverse video.
4. Touch [OK].
5. Close the front door.
   By closing the front door, the New Release Disable mode takes effect.

Notes when using the New Release Disable mode

<1> Before starting the mode

- **Output the list in [Service Mode] → [List Output] to check the information on the wear-out rate of each unit and keep the Dmax density adjustment value.
  Replace units that have reached their life or that are near life with new ones, and perform New Release.**
- **In case of toner empty, implement toner supply by replacing the toner cartridge with the new one. After confirming the empty status is cleared, go on this mode.**

<2> During the New Release Disable mode

- **The New Release Disable mode is subject to the condition that the New Release Disable mode should not be used for a long period, i.e. within several printing pages.
  Units used in the New Release Disable mode for a long time cannot be guaranteed as new ones.**
- **In the New Release Disable mode, the unit life counter is not reset and it continues to count in a normal manner. If the counter reading becomes close to the value at which an accumulated rotation time excess warning is issued or becomes close to the end of life value, the accumulated rotation time excess warning or the end of life warning can be issued in the New Release Disable mode.
  (If the unit counter should reach the end of life value while temporarily using a new unit in the New Release Disable mode, turn OFF the New Release Disable mode, open and close the front door (or turn the main power switch and sub power switch OFF and ON), and perform New Release in a normal manner. In this case, the previous unit, which has been temporarily removed, cannot be used again.)**
- **After activating the New Release Disable mode in [Engine FW DipSW], do not turn OFF and ON the main power switch and sub power switch or do not let the machine go into the sleep mode until the work in the New Release mode is completed.
  (In case that the main power switch is turned OFF or the machine goes into the sleep mode, be sure to open the front door and turn the main power switch ON or activate the machine from the sleep mode. Then turn ON the New Release Disable mode and close the lower front door.**

<3> After finishing work in New Release Disable mode

- **When continuing to use the new unit used in the New Release Disable mode in the same machine, turn OFF the new Release Disable mode and open and close the front door (or turn OFF and ON the main power switch and sub power switch) to perform New Release.**
- **To reinstall the previous unit used in the machine, open the front door, turn OFF the New Release Disable mode, replace the new unit with the previous unit, and close the front door (or turn the main power switch and sub power switch OFF and ON).**
  In this case, perform Initialize + Image Stabilization, Gradation Adjustment, and input of the previous Dmax density adjustment value in service mode. If these adjustments are not performed, gradation reproducibility cannot be guaranteed.
- **After temporarily using a new unit in the New Release Disable mode, before reinstalling the previous unit, be sure to check the reading of the unit life counter in [Service Mode] → [Counter] → [Life] to learn that New Release is not performed on the new unit, i.e. the counter value have not decreased.**
  (There is no way to judge whether New Release is performed on the new unit or not from the appearance of the unit. Checking the counter reading is necessary to avoid bringing back the unit on which New Release is performed, assuming that the unit remains new.)

(2) PPM control (high-humidity environment mode) prohibit choice

- It prohibits one function of PPM controls that prevent deterioration of paper fusing, which is "high-humidity environment mode" control that blocks paper curl at high-humidity environment.
- When this setting in ON, the high-humidity environment mode of PPM control is not implemented.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [Engine FW DipSW].
2. Touch [5] and check the key is highlighted (ON state) in reverse video.
3. Touch [OK].

(3) Photo conductor setup rotation time choice

- It extends the time of photo conductor setup rotation in order to prevent whiting that occur when the photo conductor is left doing nothing for a long period.
- Since warm up time especially set for bizhub C220 is considerably short, whiting sometime cannot be avoided with normal idling. In that case, this setting is used.
  OFF : Warm up time priority mode Normal mode
  ON : Image quality priority mode It extends the photo conductor idling time to prevent whitening.

<Procedure>

1. Touch [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [Engine FW DipSW].
2. Touch [7] and check the key is highlighted (ON state) in reverse video.
3. Touch [OK].

14. BILLING SETTING

14.1 List of billing setting

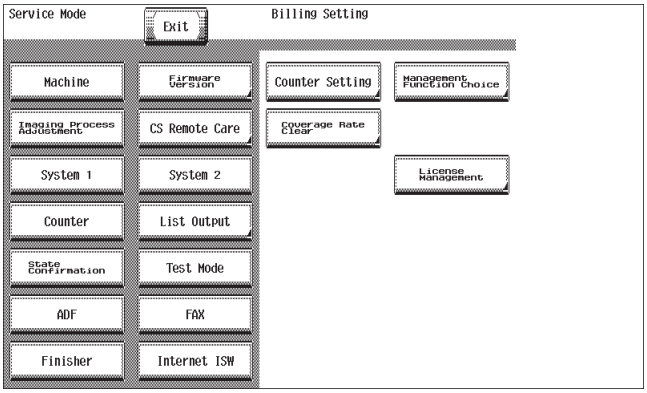
Service Mode			Ref. Page
Billing Setting	Counter Setting		P.517
	Management Function Choice		P.520
	Coverage Rate Clear		P.528
	License Management	Activation	*1
		Deactivation	
		Repair	
		Initialize	
		Request Code	
		List	
		Function List	
	OpenAPI Authentication Management	Restriction Code	P.529
		Region Code	P.529

*1: For details, see the LK-101 v2/102/103 v2/105 service manual.

14.2 Starting/Exiting

14.2.1 Starting procedure

1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2. Press the following keys in this order.
   Stop → 9
3. Billing Setting menu will appear.



A0P0F3E557DA

14.2.2 Exiting procedure

- Touch the [Exit].

14.3 Billing Setting

14.3.1 Counter Setting

A. Use

- To set the counting method for the total counter, size counter and long length paper counter.
- To set the size regarded as the large size (2 counts.)
- Use to change the counting method for the counters.

B. Procedure

(1) Total Counter

Mode 1 : 1 count per 1 copy cycle (Default: Japan)
Mode 2 : Large size is double counts
(Default: US, Europe, Others 1, Others 2, Others 3, Others 4)

NOTE

- **The content of this setting is reflected in the count method with the key counter.**
- **"Others 1" to "Others 4" are setting items in [Marketing Area] available from Service Mode.**
See P.430

(2) Size Counter

- A3/11 x 17 : When it exceeds 279 mm in the main scan direction and 420 mm in the sub scan direction (exceeds 399 mm at fax scan), it is regarded as the large size.
- A3/B4/11 x 17/8 1/2 x 14 : When it exceeds 215 mm in the main scan direction and 355 mm in the sub scan direction (exceeds 337 mm at fax scan), it is regarded as the large size.
- A3/11 x 17/B4/8 1/2 x 14/Foolscap : When it exceeds 203 mm in the main scan direction and 330 mm in the sub scan direction (exceeds 313 mm at fax scan), it is regarded as the large size (However the size in the main scan direction changes according to the foolscap size setting.)
- Not counted (Default: Japan)
- A3 and 11 x 17 (Default: US)
- A3, B4, 11 x 17, and 8 1/2 x 14 (Default: Europe, Others 1, Others 2, Others 3, Others 4)
- A3, B4, Foolscap, 11 x 17, 11 x 14, and 8 1/2 x 14

NOTE

- **When the Size Counter setting is set to "Not counted", the machine operate with following conditions regardless of the each control panel settings.**
  Total Counter: Mode1
  Long Length Paper Count Mode: Mode1
  Banner Counter Double Count Mode: OFF

✻ Count-up table

Print mode	1-Sided				2-Sided			
Size	Sizes other than those specified		Specified sizes		Sizes other than those specified		Specified sizes	
Mode	Mode		Mode		Mode		Mode	
	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2
Total	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	4
Size	0	0	1	1	0	0	2	2
2-sided Total	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1

0: No count; 1: 1 count; 2: 2 counts; 3: 3 counts; 4: 4 counts

(3) Long Length Paper Counter Mode

- When printing on the long paper (457.2 mm or over), the counting value will be the total of the value set by the total counter mode and the value by this setting.
- The default setting is Mode 4.

Mode 1 : + 0 count
Mode 2 : + 1 count
Mode 3 : + 2 counts (457.2 to 915.0 mm will be + 1 count)
Mode 4 : + 3 counts (457.2 to 686.0 mm will be + 1 count,
and 686.1 to 915.0 mm will be + 2 count)

(4) Banner Counter Double Count Mode

- To set whether to use normal count or double count when printing long size paper.
- When “ON” is selected, double count is applied to only long size paper.
- The default setting is OFF.

ON “OFF”

* The count method used when printing long size paper depends on the combination of the above count mode settings: Settings in Long Length Paper Counter Mode and Banner Counter Double Count Mode. The following shows details on count methods that are the combination of each setting.

Total Counter	Long Length Paper Counter Mode	Banner Counter Double Count Mode	paper size	Count
Mode 1	Mode 1	OFF	Normal size	1 count
			Long size	1 count
		ON	Normal size	1 count
			Long size	2 counts
	Mode 2	OFF	Normal size	1 count
			Long size	2 counts
		ON	Normal size	1 count
			Long size	4 counts

Total Counter	Long Length Paper Counter Mode	Banner Counter Double Count Mode	paper size	Count
Mode 1	Mode 3	OFF	Normal size	1 count
			Long size 457.3 to 915.0 mm	2 counts
			Long size 915.1 mm or more	3 counts
		ON	Normal size	1 count
			Long size 457.3 to 915.0 mm	4 counts
			Long size 915.1 mm or more	6 counts
	Mode 4	OFF	Normal size	1 count
			Long size 457.3 to 686.0 mm	2 counts
			Long size 686.1 to 915.0 mm	3 counts
			Long size 915.1 mm or more	4 counts
		ON	Normal size	1 count
			Long size 457.3 to 686.0 mm	4 counts
			Long size 686.1 to 915.0 mm	6 counts
			Long size 915.1 mm or more	8 counts
Mode 2	Mode 1	OFF	Small size	1 count
			Large size	2 counts
			Long size	2 counts
		ON	Small size	1 count
			Large size	2 counts
			Long size	4 counts
	Mode 2	OFF	Small size	1 count
			Large size	2 counts
			Long size	3 counts
		ON	Small size	1 count
			Large size	2 counts
			Long size	6 counts
	Mode 3	OFF	Small size	1 count
			Large size	2 counts
			Long size 457.3 to 915.0 mm	3 counts
			Long size 915.1 mm or more	4 counts
		ON	Small size	1 count
			Large size	2 counts
			Long size 457.3 to 915.0 mm	6 counts
			Long size 915.1 mm or more	8 counts

Total Counter	Long Length Paper Counter Mode	Banner Counter Double Count Mode	paper size	Count
Mode 2	Mode 4	OFF	Small size	1 count
			Large size	2 counts
			Long size 457.3 to 686.0 mm	3 counts
			Long size 686.1 to 915.0 mm	4 counts
			Long size 915.1 mm or more	5 counts
		ON	Small size	1 count
			Large size	2 counts
			Long size 457.3 to 686.0 mm	6 counts
			Long size 686.1 to 915.0 mm	8 counts
			Long size 915.1 mm or more	10 counts

NOTE

- **When the Size Counter setting is set to "Not counted", the machine operate with following conditions regardless of the each control panel settings.**
  Total Counter: Mode1
  Long Length Paper Count Mode: Mode1
  Banner Counter Double Count Mode: OFF

14.3.2 Management Function Choice

- To set whether or not the following items are to be mounted.
  Key Counter, Management Device (Data controller), Authentication Device, or Vendor

NOTE

- **It will not be displayed when the following setting is set to "ON".**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security Mode]
- **When the setting shows that [Management Device 1], [Management Device 2] or [Vendor 2] is mounted, the following applications will be invalid.**
  PC FAX transmission / HDD TWAIN/PS Box Operator / PS Scan Direct / PS Job Spooler / Fiery: Scan to Box
  Also, the following setting will be set to "Disable".
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Setting] → [Management Function Setting] → [Network Function Setting]

14.3.3 Management Function Choice-Key Counter IF Vendor

- Not used

14.3.4 Management Function Choice-Authentication Device 1

A. Use

- To set whether or not the authentication device 1 is installed.
- Set when the authentication device 1 (PageACSES) is mounted.

B. Procedure

NOTE

- **The setting is available only when user authentication and account track are set "OFF" with [Administrator Settings] → [User Authentication/Account Track] → [General Setting].**
- **When the Authentication Device mount setting is set to "mount", make sure that the [IP Address Fax] and [Internet Fax] settings are set to "OFF" with [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Network Fax Settings].**

14.3.5 Management Function Choice-Authentication Device 2

A. Use

- To set whether or not the authentication device 2 is installed.
- Set when the authentication unit (biometric type or card type) is mounted.

  Card 1 : Uses IC card authentication system (AU-201)
  Card 2 : Uses loadable device card authentication system
  Bio1 : Uses biometrics (finger vein) authentication system (AU-101)
  Bio2 : Uses biometrics (finger vein) authentication system (AU-102)

- When selecting [Bio1], set a film timeout interval.
- When selecting [Bio2], set a film timeout interval, capture trial time and authentication trial time.
- When selecting [Card 1] or [Card 2], a response timeout interval is displayed. (The interval is unchangeable.)
- When the setting is set to Card 2, the main power switch must be turned OFF and ON to let the new setting take effect.
- Selecting Card 2, a loadable device driver allows to install.

B. Procedure

<Authentication Mode>

Card 1 Card 2 Bio1 Bio2

(1) Installing method of the loadable device driver

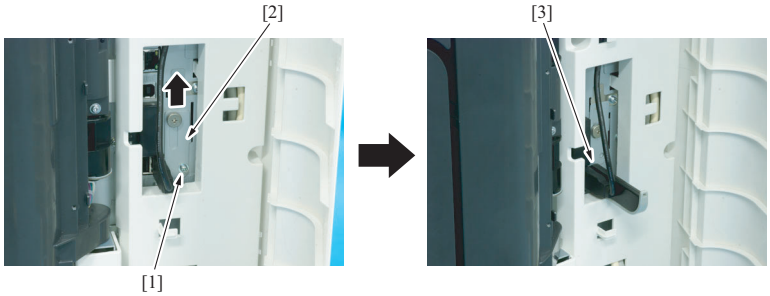
- The firmware is updated using the USB memory device.

NOTE

- **NEVER remove or insert the USB memory device with the machine power turned ON.**

1. Prepare a USB memory device on which the driver data of the loadable device to be used was written.
2. Turn OFF the main power switch.

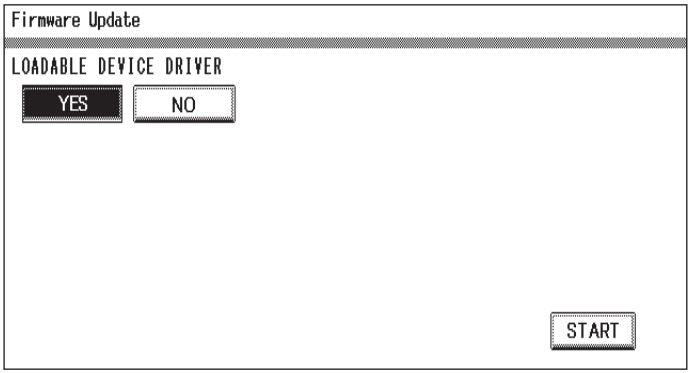
3. Remove the screw [1].
4. Lift up the cover [2] of the USB port.
5. Insert the USB memory device to the USB port [3] for service.



NOTE

- **USB memory must be connected with the main power switch/sub power switch off.**
- **When updating the firmware, use the USB port for the service. It cannot be updated when connected to another USB port.**

6. Turn ON the main power switch and the sub power switch.
7. Select [Yes] on the loadable device driver installation screen.



8. Press the [START] to start installing the driver.
   (At this time, the Start key starts blinking red.)
9. Check that the control panel shows the message indicating that the data has been installed correctly ([Downloading Completed]). Check also the check sum value ([Check Sum ####]) shown on the control panel. (The Start key lights blue.)
10. Turn OFF the main power switch.
11. Remove the USB memory device from the port.
12. Turn ON the main power switch and sub power switch.

14.3.6 Management Function Choice-Key Counter Only

A. Use

- To set whether or not the key counter is installed.
- Set when the key counter is mounted.
- Select [Color Mode] and [Message] when the key counter is mounted.

✻ Color Mode

- When [Mode 1] is set on [Total Counter Mode] after selecting [Billing Setting] → [Counter setting].
  Mode 1: 1 count per 1 print cycle
  Mode 2: 2 counts per 1 print cycle
  Mode 3: 3 counts per 1 print cycle
  Mode 4: 4 counts per 1 print cycle
  Mode 5: 5 counts per 1 print cycle

- When [Mode 2] is set on [Total Counter Mode] after selecting [Billing Setting] → [Counter setting] and large size is selected on [Large Size Counter Mode]
  Mode 1: 2 counts per 1 print cycle
  Mode 2: 4 counts per 1 print cycle
  Mode 3: 6 counts per 1 print cycle
  Mode 4: 8 counts per 1 print cycle
  Mode 5: 10 counts per 1 print cycle

- When [Mode 2] is set on [Total Counter Mode] after selecting [Billing Setting] → [Counter setting] and sizes other than large size are selected on [Large Size Counter Mode]
  Mode 1: 1 count per 1 print cycle
  Mode 2: 2 counts per 1 print cycle
  Mode 3: 3 counts per 1 print cycle
  Mode 4: 4 counts per 1 print cycle
  Mode 5: 5 counts per 1 print cycle

✻ Message

Select the message type when the administrative unit is mounted.
  Type 1: Message for key counter
  Type 2: Message for card scanning
  Type 3: Message for ID management
  Type 4: Message for remote SW

✻ Confirmation copy

- Set whether to allow a confirmation copy when a key counter is installed.
- The default setting is Ban.

License	“Ban”

✻ The next job reservation

- Set whether to allow the reservation of the next job when a key counter is installed.
- The default setting is Ban.

License	“Ban”

NOTE

- **The setting is available only when user authentication and account track are set “OFF” with [Administrator Settings] → [User Authentication/Account Track] → [General Setting].**

2 ✻ Count Setting
- To set the count timing used when the key counter is installed.
- The default setting is paper feed.

"Paper feed" Paper out

14.3.7 Management Function Choice-Management Device 1

A. Use
- To set whether or not the management device 1 is installed.

B. Procedure
NOTE
- **The setting is available only when user authentication is set "OFF" and account track is set "Off" or "Account Name + Password" with [Administrator Settings] → [User Authentication/Account Track] → [General Settings].**

14.3.8 Management Function Choice-Management Device 2

A. Use
- To set whether or not the management device 2 is installed.

B. Procedure
✻ Management Setting
- Select the Management Setting Mode
  Mode 1: Use contact type device (Logout with ID key is not allowed.)
  Mode 2: Use non-contact type device (Logout with ID key is allowed.)

NOTE
- **The setting is not available when either "External Server" of user authentication, "Password Only" of account track, "Do not synchronize" of user authentication and account track or "Allow" of public user access has been set with [Administrator Settings] → [User Authentication/Account Track] → [General Settings].**

14.3.9 Management Function Choice-Vendor 1

- Not used.

14.3.10 Management Function Choice-Vendor 2

A. Use

- To set whether or not the vendor 2 is installed.

NOTE

- **When using the vendor along with the key counter, inserting the key counter will set it to the "Key Counter Mode" and removing it will set it to the "Vendor Mode".**

B. Procedure

- Select color mode and message of key counter.
  (Only for key counter, the type of the color mode and message are same after mounting.)

✻ Confirmation copy

- Set whether to allow a confirmation copy when a key counter is installed.
- The default setting is Ban.

License	"Ban"

✻ The next job reservation

- Set whether to allow the reservation of the next job when a key counter is installed.
- The default setting is Ban.

License	"Ban"

- Select message of vendor.

✻ Message

Type 1: Message for key counter
Type 2: Message for card scanning
Type 3: Message for ID management

NOTE

- **The setting is available only when user authentication and account track are set "OFF" with [Administrator Settings] → [User Authentication/Account Track] → [General Setting].**

△2 ✻ Count Setting

- To set the count timing used when the key counter is installed.
- The default setting is paper feed.

"Paper feed"	Paper out

NOTE

- **Performing the setup for each unit to be mounted will internally change the setting values below. It needs resetting when cancelling the setting in order to set back to "not mounted" because the setting value will remain.**

<When the vendor2 or authentication device 1/2 is mounted>

Setting Item		Vendor 2	Authentication Device 1	Authentication Device 2
Utility	Default Copy Settings	Factory Default		—
	Default Scan/Fax Settings	Factory Default		—
	Copy Operating Screen	[Yes]		—
	Fax Active Screen	Tx/Rx Display [Yes]		—
	Scan/Fax Settings Default Tab	Direct Input	—	—
	Left Panel Display Default	[Job List]		—
Administrator Settings	Each Function Setting	Copy, PC print, Send Data, and Print others will be set to "ON".		
	Network Function Usage Settings	OFF	—	—
	Administrator Security Level	Prohibit		—
	Weekly Timer ON/OFF Setting	OFF	—	—
	Reset Setting	—	Reset Data After Job will be set to "ON".	—
	Application Key Settings	When Key 1 is set to My Panel, reset the setting and assign Key 1 to [FAX/SCAN]. When Key 2 is set to My Panel, reset the setting and assign Key 2 to [Copy].		—
	Restrict Access to Job Settings	Changing Job Priority, Deleting Other User's Jobs, Registering and Changing Addresses, Changing Zoom Ratio will be set to "Restrict".		—
	External Memory Function Settings	—	Save Document and Print Document will be set to "OFF".	
	Skip Job Operation Settings	All settings be set to "Yes".	—	—
	ID & Print Settings	—	—	ID & Print will be set to "ON".
	Forward TX Setting	OFF		—
	Memory RX Setting	Password for Memory RX Setting is set to the default value of the administrator password	—	—
	PC-Fax RX Setting	Restrict	—	—
	TSI User Box Setting	No	—	—
	OpenAPI Setting	Access Setting will be set to "Restrict" and Authentication will be changed to "OFF" setting.	Access Setting will be set to "Restrict".	—
	IPP Setting	—	IPP Setting will be set to "OFF", and Accept IPP job will be set to "OFF".	—
	AppleTalk Setting	—	OFF	—
	SMB Setting	—	Scan Setting, Print Setting will be set to "OFF".	—
	E-mail TX (SMTP)	—	E-mail TX Setting, Scan to E-mail, E-mail Notification, Meter Count Notification will be set to "Restrict".	—

Setting Item		Vendor 2	Authentication Device 1	Authentication Device 2
Administrator Settings	E-mail RX (POP)	—	E-mail RX Setting will be set to “OFF”.	—
	LDAP Settings	—	Enabling LDAP will be set to “OFF”.	—
	Prefix/Suffix Setting	—	Prefix/Suffix Setting will be set to “OFF”.	—
	WebDAV Client Settings	—	WebDAV Client Settings will be set to “OFF”.	—
	Web Service Settings Printer setting/Scanner setting	Printer Setting and Scanner setting will be set to “OFF”.		—
	Status Notification Setting Notification Item Setting	—	All setting items will be set to “OFF”.	—
	Image Log Transfer Settings	[No]	—	—
Service Mode	Software Switch Setting	SW No. 63 will be changed to 01 (HEX).	—	—
	Management function choice	Confirmation copy will be set to “Ban”.	—	—
	FAX	[System] → [Display Setting] → [Re-Transmission] will be set to “OFF”.	—	—

<When the key counter IF vendor or management device 1/2 is mounted>

Setting Item		Key counter IF Vendor	Management Device 1	Management Device 2
Utility	Default Copy Settings	Factory Default	—	—
	Default Scan/Fax Settings	Factory Default	—	—
	Copy Operating Screen	[Yes]	—	—
	Fax Active Screen	Tx/Rx Display [Yes]	—	—
	Scan/Fax Settings Default Tab	Direct Input	—	—
	Left Panel Display Default	[Job List]	—	—
Administrator Settings	Each Function Setting	Copy, PC print will be set to “ON”. Send Data, Print others will be set to “OFF”.	Copy will be set to “ON”. PC print, Send Data, and Print others will be set to “OFF”.	Copy, PC print, Send Data, and Print others will be set to “ON”.
	Network Function Usage Settings	OFF		
	Administrator Security Level	Prohibit	—	—
	Weekly Timer ON/OFF Setting	OFF	—	—
	Application Key Settings	—	—	When Key 1 is set to My Panel, reset the setting and assign Key 1 to [FAX/SCAN]. When Key 2 is set to My Panel, reset the setting and assign Key 2 to [Copy].
	Restrict Access to Job Settings	Changing Job Priority, Deleting Other User’s Jobs, Registering and Changing Addresses, Changing Zoom Ratio will be set to “Restrict”.	—	—
	External Memory Function Settings	—	—	—

Setting Item		Key counter IF Vendor	Management Device 1	Management Device 2
Administrator Settings	Forward TX Setting	OFF	—	—
	Memory RX Setting	Password for Memory RX Setting is set to the default value of the administrator password	—	—
	PC-Fax RX Setting	Restrict	—	—
	TSI User Box Setting	No	—	—
	OpenAPI Setting	Access Setting will be set to “Restrict” and Authentication will be changed to “OFF” setting.	—	—
	Apply Stamps/Stamp	No	—	—
	Apply Stamps/Copy Protect	No	—	—
	Apply Stamps/Stamp Repeat	No	—	—
	Apply Stamps/Copy Protect	No	—	—
	Apply Stamps/Page Number	No	—	—
	Apply Stamps/Date/Time	No	—	—
	Web Service Settings Printer setting/Scanner setting	Printer Setting and Scanner setting will be set to “OFF”.		
	Image Log Transfer Settings	[No]	—	—
Service Mode	Software Switch Setting	SW No. 63 will be changed to 01 (HEX).	—	—
	Management function choice	Confirmation copy will be set to “Ban”.	—	—
	FAX	[System] → [Display Setting] → [Re-Transmission] will be set to “OFF”.	—	—

14.3.11 Coverage Rate Clear

A. Use

- To clear the coverage rate.

B. Procedure

- The default setting is Unset.

Set “Unset”

- Touching [END] key will clear the coverage rate.

14.3.12 OpenAPI Authentication Management-Restriction Code

A. Use

- These are communication settings for the application which is developed by the third vendor.
  Do not set or change these settings without vendor's instructions.

14.3.13 OpenAPI Authentication Management-Region Code

A. Use

- These are communication settings for the application which is developed by the third vendor.
  Do not set or change these settings without vendor's instructions.

15. CONTENTS TO BE CLEARED BY RESET FUNCTION

Function for clearing / Contents to be cleared		Front door open/close	Main power switch OFF/ON	Trouble reset	Initialize						
							Clear All Data				
					System Error Clear	Clear All Data	Job Memory Setting Data	Address Registration Data	Fax Setting Data	All History Data	Network Setting Data
Jam display		❍	—	—	❍	❍	—	—	—	—	—
Malfunction display	Rank A	—	—	❍	❍	❍	—	—	—	—	—
	Rank B	❍	—	❍	❍	❍	—	—	—	—	—
	Rank C	—	❍	❍	❍	❍	—	—	—	—	—
Erratic operation / display		—	❍	—	❍	❍	—	—	—	—	—
Utility Mode (Except items on engine adjustment)		—	—	—	—	❍	—	—	—	—	—
Job memory setting data		—	—	—	—	❍	❍	—	—	—	—
Address registration data		—	—	—	—	❍	—	❍	—	—	—
Fax setting data (Excluding destination-related data)		—	—	—	—	❍	—	—	❍	—	—
History data (Job history, Journal history, Receive reject history, Destination history, Job secure counter)		—	—	—	—	❍	—	—	—	❍	—
Network setting data (Excluding destination-related data)		—	—	—	—	❍	—	—	—	—	❍
Service Mode (System 1/2)		—	—	—	—	❒ *1	—	—	—	—	—
Billing Setting	Management Function Choice	—	—	—	—	❍	—	—	—	—	—
Adjustment of the touch panel position		—	—	—	—	❍	—	—	—	—	—
⚠2 Toner counter		—	—	—	—	❍	—	—	—	—	—

❍ : Will be cleared (initialized)
— : Will not be cleared

❒ *1: Items to be cleared	
System 1	Marketing Area (Fax Target only)
System 2	HDD
	Image Controller Setting

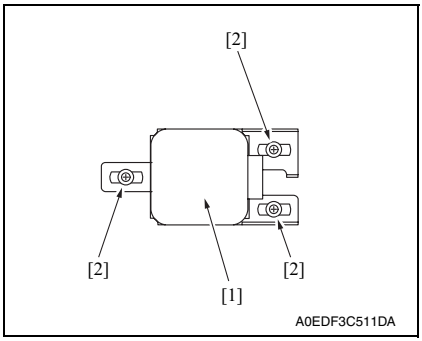
16. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

16.1 Mechanical adjustment of the scanner section

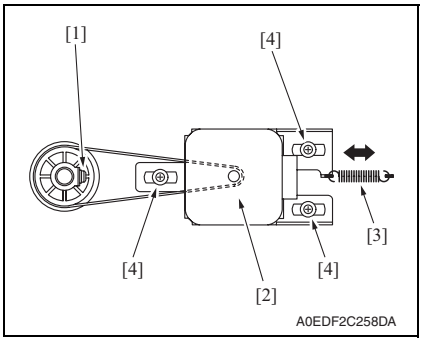
16.1.1 Adjustment of the scanner motor belt

This adjustment must be made in the following case:

- **The scanner motor assy has been removed.**
- **The scanner drive cables have been rewound.**



1. Temporarily secure the scanner motor assy [1] with three screws [2].



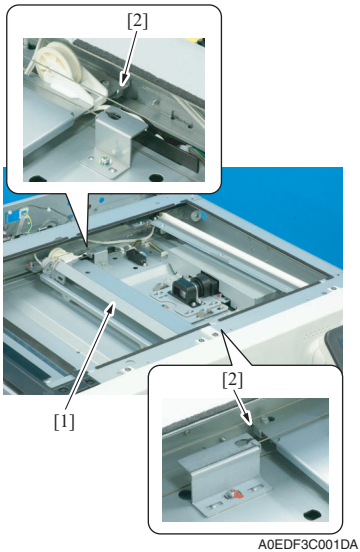
2. With the scanner drive gear set screw [1] located on the right-hand side as shown on the left, slide the scanner motor assy [2] to the left and check that it is returned to the original position by the tension of the spring [3].
Perform this step three times.

3. Tighten the three screws [4] to fix the scanner motor assy into position.

16.1.2 Positioning of the exposure unit and mirrors unit

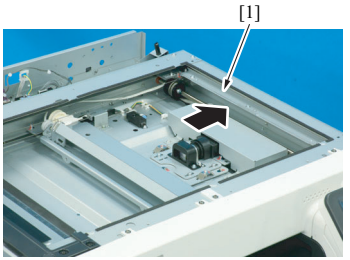
This adjustment must be made in the following case:

- **The scanner drive cables have been rewound**



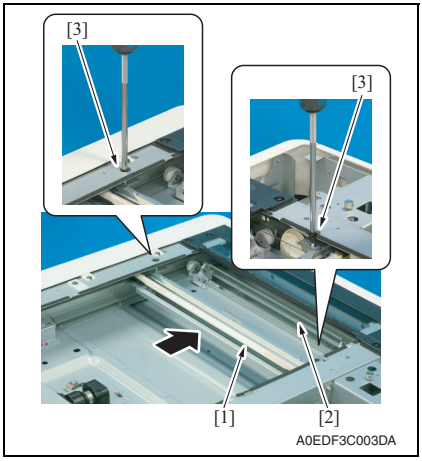
A0EDF3C001DA

1. While temporarily attaching the exposure unit to the scanner drive cables, move the mirrors unit [1] to the center and hit the mirrors unit against the side of the rails [2].



A0EDF3C002DA

2. While keeping the mirrors unit hit against the side of the rail, move the temporarily attached exposure unit [1] to the right on the scanner frame as far as the exposure unit will go.



3. Slowly move the exposure unit [1] and the mirrors unit [2] until they reach the position [3] where you can insert the screws into the exposure unit.

NOTE

- **Be careful so that the temporarily attached exposure unit and the mirrors unit do not become out of position.**

4. Tighten the screws to fix the exposure unit [1].

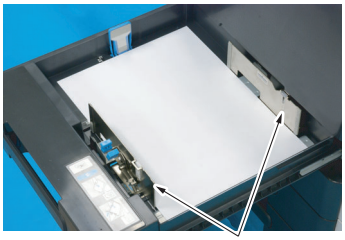
16.2 Mechanical adjustment of the paper feed section

16.2.1 Skew adjustment of the tray 1/2

This adjustment must be made in the following case:

- **To reduce paper skew that cannot be corrected by the registration loop adjustment when the tray 1 or 2 is within the specifications.**

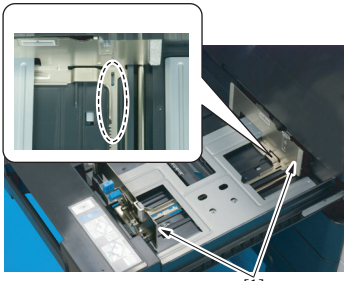
1. Pull out the tray where this adjustment is made.



A0EDF3C004DA

2. Load the tray with the paper.

3. Move the set of the paper guides [1] until no gap is produced between the both ends of paper and the paper guides.



A0EDF3C005DA

4. Remove the paper from the tray.

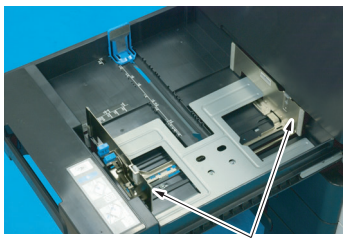
5. Secure the set of paper guides [1] on the tray using a screw (M3 x 8 mm: V121 0308 04).

16.2.2 Centering adjustment of the tray 1/2

This adjustment must be made in the following case:

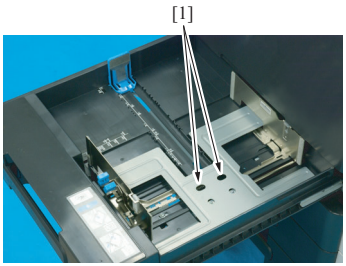
- **When an image printed on a copy is displaced from the correct position with the use of the tray1/2.**

1. Make a test print and check the amount of misalignment.
2. Pull out the tray where this adjustment is made.



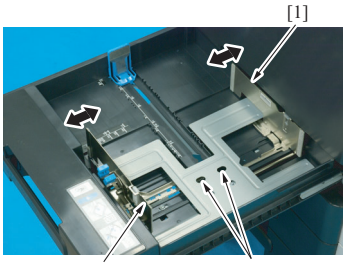
A0EDF3C006DA

3. Stretch the paper guides [1] to the maximum size position.



A0EDF3C007DA

4. Loosen two screws [1].



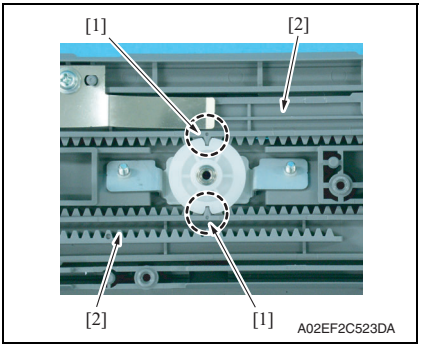
A0EDF3C008DA

5. Move the paper guides [1] complete according to the amount of the mis-centering you checked in step 1 and adjust the center position of it.
6. Tighten two screws [2].
7. Make another test print and check the amount of misalignment.

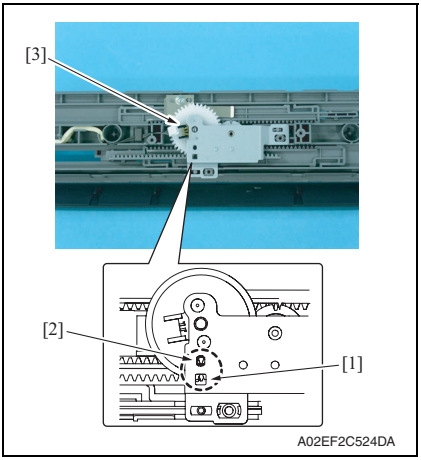
16.2.3 Adjustment of the bypass paper size unit

This adjustment must be made in the following case:

- **The bypass paper size unit has been removed.**



1. Align the match mark [1] on the bypass guide rack gear with the groove on the gear rim at two places and install two bypass guide rack gears [2].



2. When installing the manual CD size sensor assy [3], make sure that the part [1] (pointed by the arrow) on the bypass guide rack gear and the gear's hole [2] on the manual CD size sensor assy are placed in a straight line.
3. Secure the manual CD size sensor assy with two screws.
4. After the bypass paper size unit base has been mounted, check that the lever of the bypass paper size unit moves smoothly in a manner operatively connected to the bypass guide.
2 5. Call the Service Mode to the screen and select [Machine] → [Manual Bypass Tray Width Adj]. Then, carry out manual bypass tray width adjustment.
See P.388

TROUBLESHOOTING

17. JAM DISPLAY

- When the paper jam occurred, the message, the position jam occurred (number blinks), position of the remaining paper (number lights up), and the JAM code are displayed.

NOTE

- **JAM code is displayed on the jam warning screen only when the following setting is set to "Display."**
  [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [JAM Code Display Setting]



A0EDF4E510DA

17.1 List of JAM code

JAM code	JAM type	Detection timing	Misfeed processing location	Ref. page
10-01	Manual bypass feed section	• The leading edge of the paper does not unblocked the sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the manual bypass starts to feed paper.	Right door	P.554
10-02		• For paper fed from the manual bypass, loop forming has not been complete before a sheet enters the timing roller because the rise timing of load to perform registration is earlier than the rise timing of load to form a loop.		
10-40		• For paper fed from the manual bypass, the image write start signal permit continues to be disabled for a predetermined period of time after the timing of the image write start signal output.		
10-44		• At the start of paper feed retry, the sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1) has already detected paper passage.		

JAM code	JAM type	Detection timing	Misfeed processing location	Ref. page
—	Manual bypass feed section	• In case paper position is detected as locating properly after main power switch is turned ON, door and cover are opened / closed or jam/trouble reset is done, it is regarded as paper jam at manual bypass feed section.	Right door	P.554
11-01	Tray 1 feed section	• The leading edge of the paper does not unblocked the sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the tray1 starts to feed paper.	Right door Tray 1	P.555
11-02		• For paper fed from the tray1, due to a delay in paper arrival, loop forming in front of the timing roller is not complete before the rise timing of the registration motor.		
11-40		• For paper fed from the tray1, the image write start signal permit continues to be disabled for a predetermined period of time after the timing of the image write start signal output.		
11-44		• At the start of paper feed retry, the sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1) has already detected paper passage.		
—		• Paper feed tray 1 paper feed sensor (PS23) is turned ON when the main power switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset. (bizhub C360/C280 only)		
—		• In case paper position is detected as locating properly after main power switch is turned ON, door and cover are opened / closed or jam/trouble reset is done, it is regarded as paper jam at tray 1 feed section.		
12-01	Tray 2 feed section	• The leading edge of the paper does not turn ON the paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor (PS19) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the tray 2 starts to feed paper.	Right door Tray 2	P.555
12-40		• For paper fed from the tray 2, the image write start signal permit continues to be disabled for a predetermined period of time after the timing of the image write start signal output.		
—		• Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor (PS19) is turned ON when the main power switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.		

JAM code	JAM type	Detection timing	Misfeed processing location	Ref. page
—	Tray 2 feed section	• Paper feed tray 2 paper feed sensor (PS20) is turned ON when the main power switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset. (bizhub C360/C280 only)	Right door Tray 2	P.555
—		• In case paper position is detected as locating properly after main power switch is turned ON, door and cover are opened / closed or jam/trouble reset is done, it is regarded as paper jam at tray 2 feed section.		
13-01	Tray 3 feed section	• The leading edge of the paper does not block the tray3 vertical transport sensor (PS117) even after the set period of time has elapsed after the tray3 paper feed motor (M122) is energized.	Right door Tray 3	P.556
—		• The tray3 paper feed sensor (PS116) is blocked when the main power switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.		
13-40	Tray3 feed section image write start signal permit waiting jam	• For paper fed from the tray3, image write start signal permit continues to be disabled for a predetermined period of time after the timing of image write start signal output.		
14-01	Tray 4 feed section	• The leading edge of the paper does not block the tray4 vertical transport sensor (PS126) even after the set period of time has elapsed after the tray4 paper feed motor (M123) is energized.	Right door Tray 4	P.556
—		• The tray4 paper feed sensor (PS125) is blocked when the main power switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.		
14-40	Tray4 feed section image write start signal permit waiting jam	• For paper fed from the tray4, image write start signal permit continues to be disabled for a predetermined period of time after the timing of image write start signal output.		

JAM code	JAM type	Detection timing	Misfeed processing location	Ref. page
15-01	LCT feed section	• The leading edge of the paper does not block the paper feed sensor (PS1) or the vertical transport sensor (PS2) even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper feed motor (M1) is energized.	Right door	P.557
—		• The paper feed sensor (PS1) is blocked when the main power switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.		
15-40		• For paper fed from the LCT, image write start signal permit continues to be disabled for a predetermined period of time after the timing of image write start signal output.		
15-43		• There is no response to the paper feed command sent to the LCT even after the set period of time has elapsed.		
17-08	LCT vertical transport section	• The paper feed sensor (PS1) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after PS1 has been blocked by a paper.	Right door	P.557
—		• The vertical transport sensor (PS2) is blocked when the main power switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.		
17-21		• The vertical transport sensor (PS2) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the paper feed sensor (PS1) has been blocked by a paper.		
17-22		• The vertical transport sensor (PS2) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after PS2 has been blocked by a paper.		
20-01	Vertical transport section	• The sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the paper has turned ON the paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor (PS19).	Right door	P.557
20-02		• For paper fed from the tray 2, loop forming has not been complete before a sheet enters the timing roller because the rise timing of load to perform registration is earlier than the rise timing of load to form a loop.		
—		• Rise timing of load for registration is earlier than the one for making the loop at front of the timing roller at tray 3 paper feed.		P.556

JAM code	JAM type	Detection timing	Misfeed processing location	Ref. page
—	Vertical transport section	• Rise timing of load for registration is earlier than the one for making the loop at front of the timing roller at tray 4 paper feed.	Right door	P.556
—		• Rise timing of load for registration is earlier than the one for making the loop at front of the timing roller at LCT paper feed.		P.557
20-11		• The paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor (PS19) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the paper has been blocked the PS19.		P.557
20-12		• The tray3 vertical transport sensor (PS117) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after PS117 has been blocked by a paper.		P.556
20-13		• The tray4 vertical transport sensor (PS126) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after PS126 has been blocked by a paper.		P.556
20-21		• The paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor (PS19) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the tray3 vertical transport sensor (PS117) has been blocked by a paper.		P.556
20-22		• The tray3 vertical transport sensor (PS117) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the tray4 vertical transport sensor (PS126) has been blocked by a paper.		P.556
30-01	2nd image transfer section	• A sheet of paper does not block the sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1) after a predetermined period of time has elapsed since the sheet unblocks PS1.		P.558
30-03		• The leading edge of paper does not unblock the paper exit sensor (PS3) since the paper feeding is started.		
—		• The sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1) is unblocked when the main power switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.		
—		• The paper exit sensor (PS3) is turned ON when the main power switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.		
—		• In case paper position is detected as locating properly after main power switch is turned ON, door and cover are opened / closed or jam/trouble reset is done, it is regarded as paper jam at 2nd image transfer section.		

JAM code	JAM type	Detection timing	Misfeed processing location	Ref. page
32-05	Exit section	• The paper exit sensor (PS3) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the paper has unblocked PS3.	Right door	P.558
32-31		• The paper exit sensor (PS3) is blocked before the lapse of a given period of time after the paper has unblocked the PS3.		
—		• The paper exit sensor (PS3) is unblocked when the main power switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.		
—		• In case paper position is detected as locating properly after main power switch is turned ON, door and cover are opened / closed or jam/trouble reset is done, it is regarded as paper jam at exit section.		
66-01	ADF turnover section	• The before read sensor (PS9) is not turned ON after a lapse of a given time after the reverse registration motion is performed.	Left cover	P.559
66-11		• The reverse registration sensor (PS8) is not turned OFF after a lapse of a given time after the reverse registration motion is performed.		
66-21		• The reverse registration sensor (PS8) is not turned ON after a lapse of a given time after the before read sensor (PS9) is turned OFF.		
66-02	ADF paper feed section	• The after separate sensor (PS4) is not turned ON after a lapse of a given time after the take-up motor (M2) is turned ON.		P.559
66-12		• The size of the original on the tray detected by ADF does not match the size of the original detected by the main body.		
66-03	ADF transport section	• The after separate sensor (PS4) is not turn OFF after a lapse of a given time after PS4 is turned ON.		P.560
66-13		• The registration sensor (PS3) is not turned ON after a lapse of a given time after the after separate sensor (PS4) is turned ON.		
66-23		• The registration sensor (PS3) is not turned OFF after a lapse of given time after the after separate sensor (PS4) is turned OFF.		
66-33		• The before read sensor (PS9) is not turned OFF after a lapse of a given time after the registration sensor (PS3) is turned OFF.		

JAM code	JAM type	Detection timing	Misfeed processing location	Ref. page
66-04	ADF paper exit section	• The exit sensor (PS5) is not turned ON after a lapse of a given time after the before read sensor (PS9) is turned ON.	Left cover	P.560
66-14		• The exit sensor (PS5) is not turned OFF after a lapse of a given time after the before read sensor (PS9) is turned OFF.		
66-24		• The exit sensor (PS5) is not turned ON after a lapse of a given time after the before read sensor (PS9) is turned OFF.		
66-34		• The exit sensor (PS5) is not turned OFF after a lapse of a given time after the turn-over and paper exit motion is performed.		
66-05	ADF image reading section	• The before read sensor (PS9) is not turned ON after a lapse of a given time after the registration sensor (PS3) is turned ON.		P.561
66-15		• The before read sensor (PS9) is not turned OFF after a lapse of a given time after the reverse registration sensor (PS8) is turned OFF.		
66-06		• The before read sensor (PS9) is turned ON earlier than a given time after the before read sensor (PS9) is turned OFF during original transportation.		
66-07		• Due to a remaining sheet of paper that has not been detected by sensors, before the start of a job, a sensor detects the sheet at an unexpected timing.		
72-14	FS transport section	<When FS-527 is installed> • The saddle path sensor (PS11) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the lower path sensor (PS9) is turned ON by the paper.	Front door	P.561
72-15		<When FS-527 is installed> • The saddle path sensor (PS11) is not turn OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after it turns ON.		P.562
72-16		<When FS-527 is installed> • The paper passage sensor/1 (PS1) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the copier's exit sensor (PS3) is turned ON by the paper. • The paper passage sensor/1 (PS1) is not turned OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after it is turned ON by the paper.	Horizontal conveyance cover	P.562

JAM code	JAM type	Detection timing	Misfeed processing location	Ref. page
72-16	Job separator transport section	<When JS-505 is installed> • The lower tray exit sensor (PS1) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the copier's paper exit sensor (PS3) is turned ON by the paper. • The upper tray exit sensor (PS2) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the copier's paper exit sensor (PS3) is turned ON by the paper. • The lower tray exit sensor (PS1) is not turned OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the copier's paper exit sensor (PS3) is turned OFF by the paper. • The upper tray exit sensor (PS2) is not turned OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the copier's paper exit sensor (PS3) is turned OFF by the paper. • The paper exit sensor (PS25) is not turned OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the copier's paper exit sensor (PS3) is turned ON by the paper. • The lower tray exit sensor (PS1) is turned ON when the power switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset. • The upper tray exit sensor (PS2) is turned ON when the power switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.	Misfeed clearing cover	P.562
72-17	FS transport section	<When FS-527 is installed> • The paper passage sensor/2 (PS2) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper passage sensor/1 (PS1) is turned ON by the paper. • The paper passage sensor/2 (PS2) is not turn OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after it turns ON. <When FS-529 is installed> • The paper passage sensor/2 (PS10) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper passage sensor/1 (PS1) is turned ON by the paper. • The paper passage sensor/2 (PS10) is not turned OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper passage sensor/2 (PS10) is turned ON by the paper.	Horizontal conveyance cover Front door	P.563

JAM code	JAM type	Detection timing	Misfeed processing location	Ref. page
72-18	FS transport section	<When FS-527 is installed> • The registration sensor (PS10) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper passage sensor/2 (PS2) is turned ON by the paper. • The registration sensor (PS10) is not turn OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after it turns ON.	Horizontal convey-ance cover	P.564
72-19		<When FS-527 is installed> • The lower path sensor (PS9) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the registration sensor (PS10) is turned ON by the paper. • The lower path sensor (PS9) is not turn OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after it turns ON. • The upper path sensor (PS8) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the registration sensor (PS10) is turned ON by the paper. • The upper path sensor (PS8) is not turn OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after it turns ON. • The lower path sensor (PS9) is not turned ON by the paper even after the set period of time has elapsed after the switchback operation caused by the conveyance motor (M4) is completed. • After the switchback operation caused by the conveyance motor (M4) is completed, the lower path sensor (PS9) is not turned OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after PS9 is turn ON by the paper.	Front door	P.564
72-21		<When FS-527 is installed> • The tray2 paper detection sensor (PS16) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the lower path sensor (PS9) is turned ON by the paper. <When FS-529 is installed> • The paper empty sensor (PS7) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper passage sensor/2 (PS10) is turned ON by the paper. • The paper empty sensor (PS7) is not turned OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper empty sensor (PS7) is turned ON by the paper.	Front door	P.564

JAM code	JAM type	Detection timing	Misfeed processing location	Ref. page
72-22	FS transport section	<When FS-527 is installed> • The tray1 path sensor (PS6) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the registration sensor (PS10) is turned ON by the paper. • The tray1 path sensor (PS6) is not turn OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after it turns ON.	Front door	P.565
72-26	SD paper exit section	<When FS-527+SD-509 is installed> • The paper detection sensor/2 (PS44) is not turn OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after it turns ON.	Front door, stacker unit	P.565
72-43	PK JAM	<When FS-527+PK-517 is installed> • Though the punch home sensor/1 (PS100) is not turned ON after the punch motor/1 (M100) starts rotating forward, PS100 is turned ON after M100 starts rotating backward.	Front door	P.566
72-81	FS staple section	• Though the stapler sensor is not turned ON after the stapler motor starts rotating forward, the stapler sensor is turned ON after the stapler motor starts rotating backward.	Front door, Front cover	P.566
72-85	SD staple section	<When FS-527+SD-509 is installed> • Though the saddle stapler home sensor is not turned ON after the saddle stapler motor starts rotating forward, the saddle stapler home sensor is turned ON after the saddle stapler motor starts rotating backward.	Front door, stacker unit	P.566
72-86	SD transport section	<When FS-527+SD-509 is installed> • The paper detection sensor/1 (PS43) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the saddle path sensor (PS11) is turned ON by the paper.		P.567
72-87		<When FS-527+SD-509 is installed> • The paper detection sensor/2 (PS44) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the saddle path sensor (PS11) is turned ON by the paper.		P.567

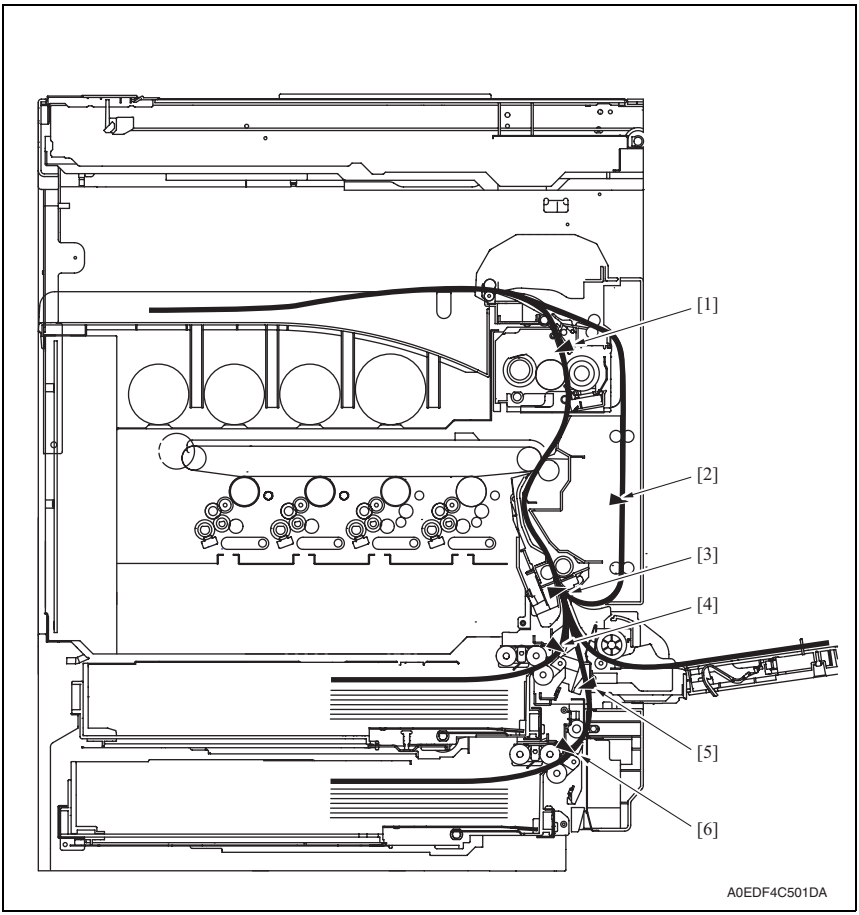
JAM code	JAM type	Detection timing	Misfeed processing location	Ref. page
92-01	Duplex pre-registration section	• The sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after a duplex paper feed sequence has been started.	Right door	P.568
92-02		• For the second-side feed of paper in the duplex mode, loop forming has not been complete before the second side of a sheet enters the timing roller because the rise timing of load to perform registration is earlier than the rise timing of load to form a loop.		
92-40		• For the second-side feed of paper in the duplex mode, the image write start signal permit continues to be disabled for a pre-determined period of time after the timing of the image write start signal output.		
93-01	Duplex transport section	• The duplex paper passage sensor (PS40) is not blocked even after lapse of a given period of time after starting of switch back.	Duplex door	P.568
93-10		• The paper does not unblock the duplex paper passage sensor (PS40) even after lapse of a given period of time after the paper has blocked the PS40.		
—		• In case the duplex paper passage sensor (PS40) is blocked after main power switch is turned ON, door and cover are opened / closed or jam/trouble reset is done, it is regarded as paper jam at duplex transport section.		
99-01	Controller JAM	• Forced stop command was sent from the controller to the printer engine due to the error in paper size, media, etc. • Media error has occurred in both sides printing.	—	—

17.1.1 Misfeed display resetting procedure

- Open the corresponding door, clear the sheet of paper misfed, and close the door.

17.2 Sensor layout

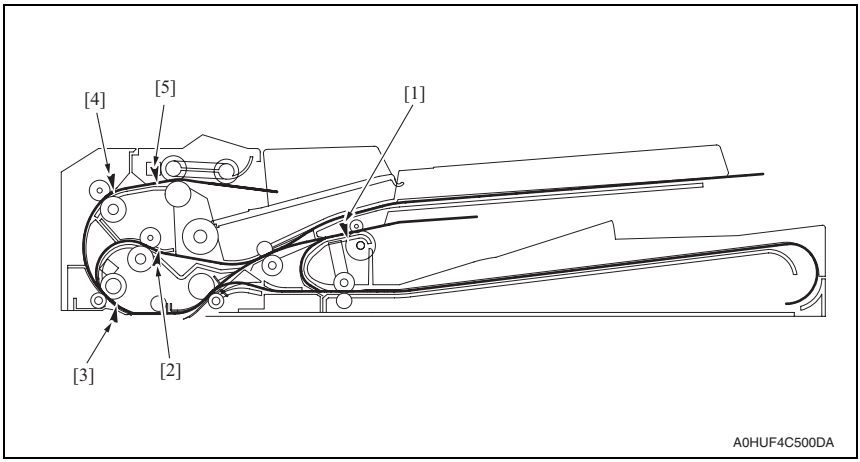
17.2.1 Main body



[1] Paper exit sensor (PS3)
[2] Duplex paper passage sensor (PS40)
[3] Sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1)
[4] Paper feed tray 1 paper feed sensor (PS23) *1
[5] Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor (PS19)
[6] Paper feed tray 2 paper feed sensor (PS20) *1

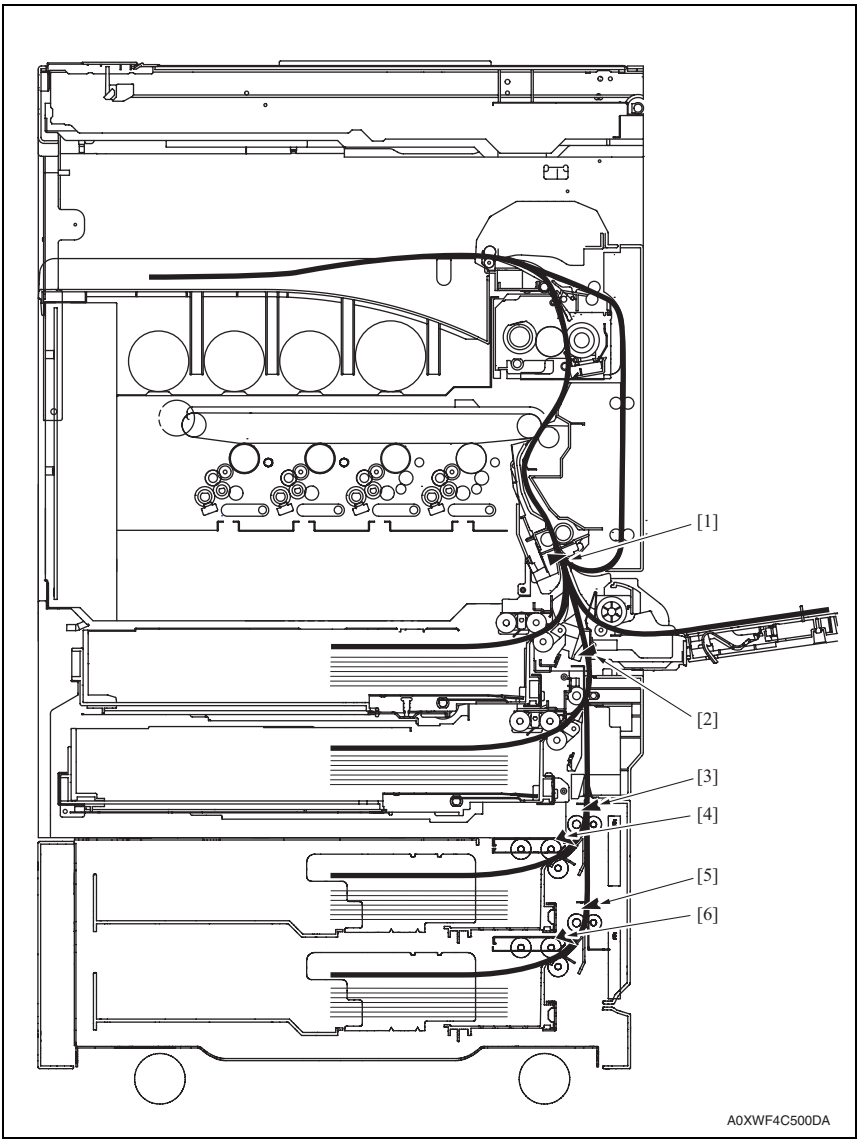
*1: bizhub C360/C280 only

17.2.2 DF-617



[1] Exit sensor (PS5)
[2] Reverse registration sensor (PS8)
[3] Before read sensor (PS9)
[4] Registration sensor (PS3)
[5] After separate sensor (PS4)

17.2.3 PC-107/PC-207



[1] Sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1)

[2] Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor (PS19)

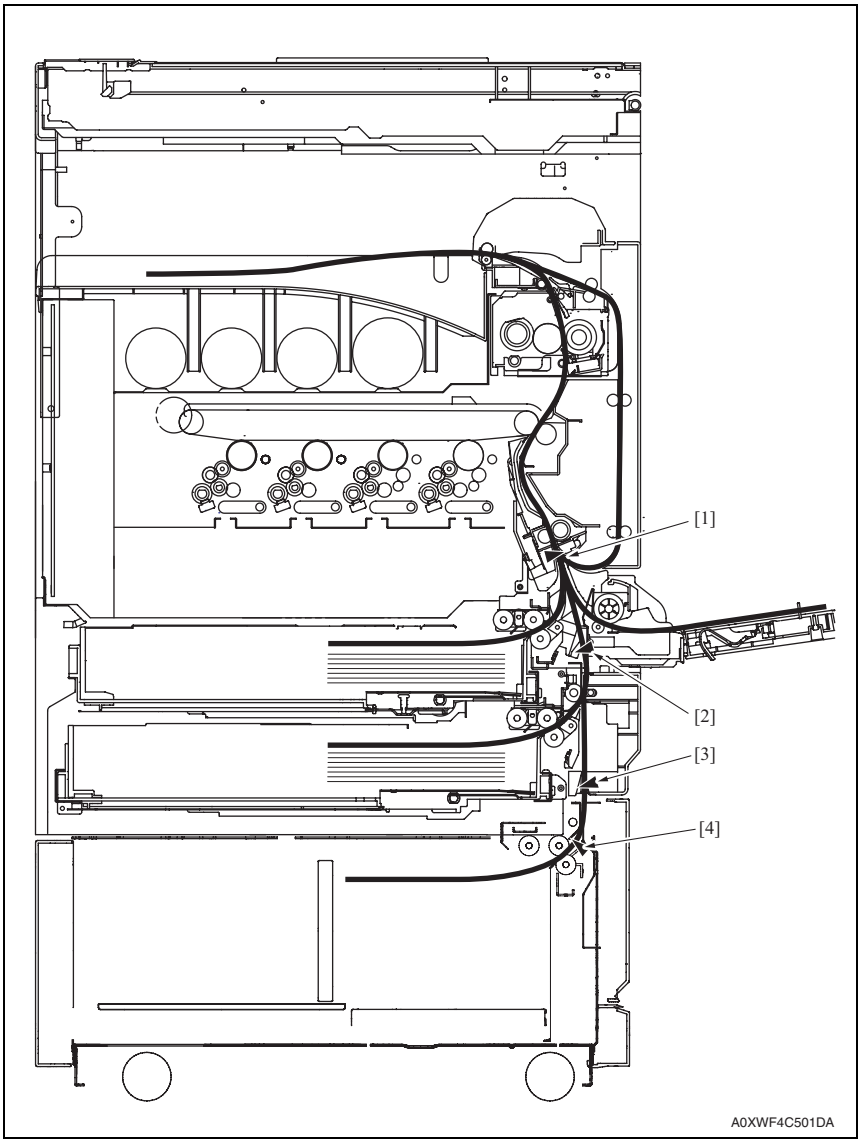
[3] Tray3 vertical transport sensor (PS117)

[4] Tray3 paper feed sensor (PS116)

[5] Tray4 vertical transport sensor (PS126)

[6] Tray4 paper feed sensor (PS125)

17.2.4 PC-408



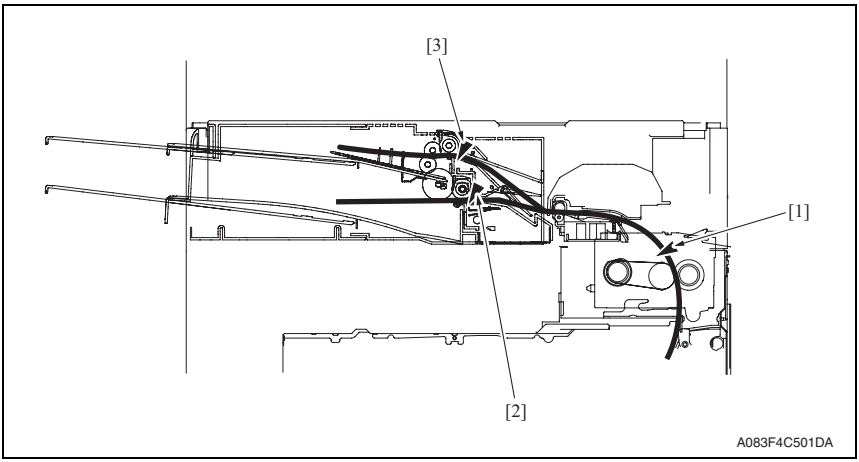
[1] Sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1)

[2] Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor (PS19)

[3] Vertical transport sensor (PS2)

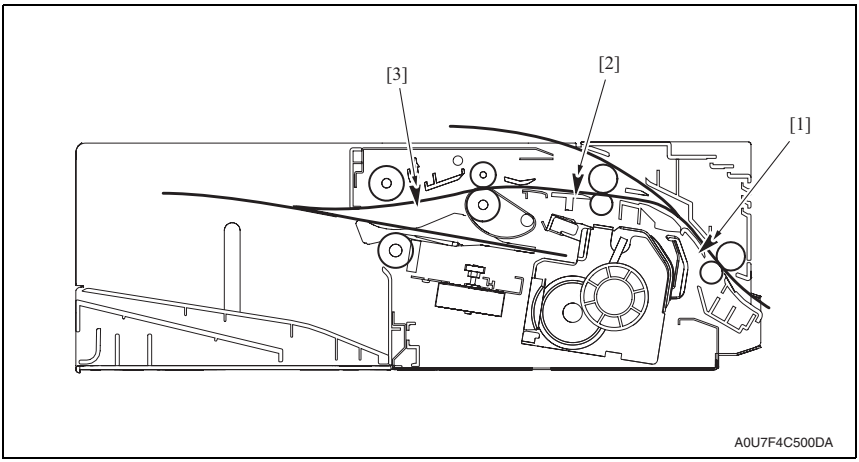
[4] Paper feed sensor (PS1)

17.2.5 JS-505



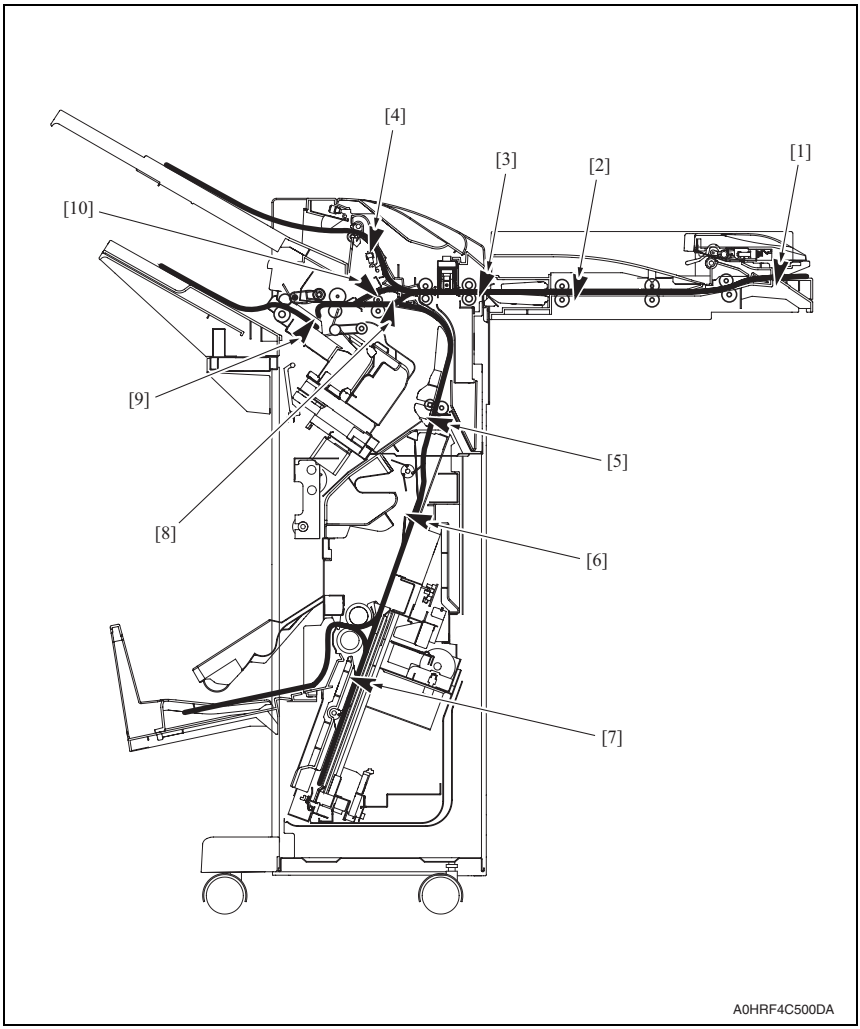
[1] Paper exit sensor (PS3)
[2] Lower tray exit sensor (PS1)
[3] Upper tray exit sensor (PS2)

17.2.6 FS-529



[1] Paper passage sensor/1 (PS1)
[2] Paper passage sensor/2 (PS10)
[3] Paper empty sensor (PS7)

17.2.7 FS-527/SD-509/PK-517/JS-603



[1] Paper passage sensor/1 (PS1)
[2] Paper passage sensor/2 (PS2)
[3] Registration sensor (PS10)
[4] Tray1 path sensor (PS6)
[5] Saddle path sensor (PS11)
[6] Paper detection sensor/1 (PS43)
[7] Paper detection sensor/2 (PS44)
[8] Lower path sensor (PS9)
[9] Tray2 paper detection sensor (PS16)
[10] Upper path sensor (PS8)

17.3 Solution

17.3.1 Initial check items

- When a paper misfeed occurs, first perform the following initial check items.

Check item	Action
Does paper meet product specifications?	Replace paper.
Is the paper curled, wavy, or damp?	Replace paper.
Is a foreign object present along the paper path, or is the paper path deformed or worn?	Clean the paper path and replace if necessary.
Are rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or replace the defective roll/roller.
Are the edge guide and trailing edge stop at the correct position to accommodate the paper?	Set as necessary.
Are the actuators operating correctly?	Correct or replace the defective actuator.

17.3.2 Misfeed at manual bypass feed section

Relevant parts	
Transport motor (M1) Manual paper feed clutch (CL7) Manual pick-up solenoid (SD1)	Front side relay board (FREYB) Printer control board (PRCB) Sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	FREYB CN13-3 (ON)	Q-17
3	CL7 operation check	PRCB CN15-2 (ON)	C-6
4	SD1 operation check	PRCB CN19-17 (ON)	C-10
5	M1 operation check	PRCB CN14-2 (REM) PRCB CN14-5 (LOCK)	C-2 to 5
6	PRCB ICP5 conduction check	—	—
7	Change FREYB	—	—
8	Change PRCB	—	—

17.3.3 Misfeed at tray 1 feed section

Relevant parts	
Transport motor (M1) Paper feed tray 1 paper feed clutch (CL3) Paper feed tray 1 paper feed sensor (PS23)	Front side relay board (FREYB) Printer control board (PRCB) Sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	FREYB CN13-3 (ON)	Q-17
3	PS23 I/O check, sensor check (bizhub C360/C280 only)	PRCB CN21-10 (ON)	C-21
4	CL3 operation check	PRCB CN21-8 (ON)	C-21
5	M1 operation check	PRCB CN14-2 (REM) PRCB CN14-5 (LOCK)	C-2 to 5
6	PRCB ICP5, 15 conduction check	—	—
7	Change FREYB	—	—
8	Change PRCB	—	—

17.3.4 Misfeed at tray 2 feed section

Relevant parts	
Transport motor (M1) Paper feed tray 2 paper feed clutch (CL1) Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport clutch (CL2)	Printer control board (PRCB) Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor (PS19) Paper feed tray 2 paper feed sensor (PS20)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS19 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN22-15 (ON)	C-25
3	PS20 I/O check, sensor check (bizhub C360/C280 only)	PRCB CN22-12 (ON)	C-25
4	CL1 operation check	PRCB CN22-10 (ON)	C-25
5	CL2 operation check	PRCB CN22-18 (ON)	C-24
6	M1 operation check	PRCB CN14-2 (REM) PRCB CN14-5 (LOCK)	C-2 to 5
7	PRCB ICP5, 15 conduction check	—	—
8	Change PRCB	—	—

17.3.5 Tray3 feed section/vertical transport section misfeed

Relevant parts	
Tray3 paper feed sensor (PS116) Tray3 vertical transport sensor (PS117) Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor (PS19) Tray3 paper feed motor (M122) Tray3 vertical transport motor (M120) Sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1)	PC Control board (PCCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	FREYB CN13-3 (ON)	C360/C280/C220 Q-17
3	PS116 I/O check, sensor check	PCCB CN6-8 (ON)	PC-207 B-2
4	PS117 I/O check, sensor check	PCCB CN6-11 (ON)	PC-207 B-2
5	PS19 I/O check, sensor check	RCB CN22-(ON)	C360/C280 C-25
6	M122 operation check	PCCB CN5-1 to 4	PC-207 B-3
7	M120 operation check	PCCB CN5-5 to 8	PC-207 B-3
8	PCCB ICP1, ICP3 conduction check	—	—
9	Change PCCB	—	—

17.3.6 Tray4 feed section/vertical transport section misfeed

Relevant parts	
Tray4 paper feed sensor (PS125) Tray4 vertical transport sensor (PS126) Tray3 vertical transport sensor (PS117) Tray4 paper feed motor (M123) Tray4 vertical transport motor (M121) Sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1)	PC Control board (PCCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	FREYB CN13-3 (ON)	C360/C280/C220 Q-17
3	PS125 I/O check, sensor check	PCCB CN10-8 (ON)	PC-207 G-4 to 5
4	PS126 I/O check, sensor check	PCCB CN11-2 (ON)	PC-207 G-5
5	PS117 I/O check, sensor check	PCCB CN6-11 (ON)	PC-207 B-2
6	M123 operation check	PCCB CN9-1 to 4	PC-207 G-5 to 6
7	M121 operation check	PCCB CN9-6 to 9	PC-207 G-6
8	PCCB ICP1, ICP2 conduction check	—	—
9	Change PCCB	—	—

17.3.7 LCT paper feed section/vertical transport section misfeed

Relevant parts	
Paper feed sensor (PS1) Vertical transport sensor (PS2) Paper feed motor (M1) Vertical transport motor (M2)	PC Control board (PCCB) MFP board (MFPB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	PCCB CN5-2 (ON)	PC-408 G-9
3	PS2 I/O check, sensor check	PCCB CN5-5 (ON)	PC-408 G-9
4	M1 operation check	PCCB CN6-1 to 4	PC-408 G-10
5	M2 operation check	PCCB CN6-5 to 8	PC-408 G-9
6	PCCB ICP1, ICP2 conduction check	—	—
7	Change PCCB	—	—
8	Change MFPB	—	—

17.3.8 Misfeed at vertical transport section

Relevant parts	
Transport motor (M1) Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport clutch (CL2) Registration roller clutch (CL4)	Front side relay board (FREYB) Printer control board (PRCB) Sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1) Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor (PS19)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	FREYB CN13-3 (ON)	Q-17
3	PS19 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN22-15 (ON)	C-25
4	CL2 operation check	PRCB CN22-18 (ON)	C-24
5	CL4 operation check	FREYB CN13-5 (REM)	Q-17
6	M1 operation check	PRCB CN14-2 (REM) PRCB CN14-5 (LOCK)	C-2 to 5
7	Change FREYB	—	—
8	PRCB ICP2 conduction check	—	—
9	PRCB ICP14 conduction check	—	—
10	Change PRCB	—	—

17.3.9 Misfeed at 2nd image transfer section

Relevant parts	
Transport motor (M1) Registration roller clutch (CL4) Paper exit sensor (PS3)	Front side relay board (FREYB) Printer control board (PRCB) Sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	FREYB CN13-3 (ON)	Q-17
3	PS3 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN19-15 (ON)	C-10
4	CL4 operation check	FREYB CN13-5 (REM)	Q-17
5	M1 operation check	PRCB CN14-2 (REM) PRCB CN14-5 (LOCK)	C-2 to 5
6	Change FREYB	—	—
7	Change PRCB	—	—

17.3.10 Misfeed at exit section

Relevant parts	
Transport motor (M1) Fusing motor (M3) Registration roller clutch (CL4)	Front side relay board (FREYB) Printer control board (PRCB) Paper exit sensor (PS3)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS3 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN19-15 (ON)	C-10
3	CL4 operation check	FREYB CN13-5 (REM)	Q-17
4	M1 operation check	PRCB CN14-2 (REM) PRCB CN14-5 (LOCK)	C-2 to 5
5	M3 operation check	PRCB CN11-9 (REM) PRCB CN11-12 (LOCK)	J-6
6	Change FREYB	—	—
7	Change PRCB	—	—

17.3.11 ADF turnover section

Relevant parts	
Reverse roller pressure/retraction motor (M5) Before read sensor (PS9) Reverse registration sensor (PS8)	DF control board (DFCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS9 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ14-8 (ON)	DF-617 B to C-7
3	PS8 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ12-2 (ON)	DF-617 I-4
4	M5 operation check	DFCB PJ6-10 to 13	DF-617 I-5
5	DFCB F10 conduction check	—	—
6	Change DFCB	—	—

17.3.12 ADF paper feed section

Relevant parts	
Take-up motor (M8) After separate sensor (PS4) Length sensor/1 (PS10) Length sensor/2 (PS11) Length sensor/3 (PS12)	DF control board (DFCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS4 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ11-5 (ON)	DF-617 B to C-6
3	PS10 I/O check, sensor check	REYB PJ5-12 (ON)	DF-617 L-5 to 6
4	PS11 I/O check, sensor check	REYB PJ5-8 (ON)	DF-617 L-6
5	PS12 I/O check, sensor check	REYB PJ5-6 (ON)	DF-617 L-6
6	M8 operation check	DFCB PJ9-5 to 8	DF-617 I-10
7	DFCB F4 conduction check	—	—
8	Change DFCB	—	—

17.3.13 ADF transport section

Relevant parts	
Registration motor (M2) Take-up motor (M8) Registration sensor (PS3) After separate sensor (PS4) Before read sensor (PS9)	DF control board (DFCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS3 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ10-11 (ON)	DF-617 B to C-4
3	PS4 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ11-5 (ON)	DF-617 B to C-6
4	PS9 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ14-8 (ON)	DF-617 B to C-7
5	M2 operation check	DFCB PJ8-5 to 10	DF-617 I-9
6	M8 operation check	DFCB PJ9-5 to 8	DF-617 I-10
7	DFCB F2, F9, F10 conduction check	—	—
8	Change DFCB	—	—

17.3.14 ADF paper exit section

Relevant parts	
Exit motor (M3) Before read sensor (PS9) Exit sensor (PS5)	DF control board (DFCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS9 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ14-8 (ON)	DF-617 B to C-7
3	PS5 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ13-3 (ON)	DF-617 I-9
4	M3 operation check	DFCB PJ8-1 to 4	DF-617 I-9 to 10
5	DFCB F1, F6 conduction check	—	—
6	Change DFCB	—	—

17.3.15 ADF image reading section

Relevant parts	
Reading motor (M1) Reading roller pressure/retraction motor (M4) Registration sensor (PS3) Reverse registration sensor (PS8) Before read sensor (PS9)	DF control board (DFCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	Make the adjustment of original stop position. See P.486	—	—
3	PS3 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ10-11 (ON)	DF-617 B to C-4
4	PS8 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ12-2 (ON)	DF-617 I-4
5	PS9 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ14-8 (ON)	DF-617 B to C-7
6	M1 operation check	DFCB PJ9-1 to 4	DF-617 I-10
7	M4 operation check	DFCB PJ6-5 to 6	DF-617 I-4
8	DFCB F3, F6 conduction check	—	—
9	Change DFCB	—	—

17.3.16 Code: 72-14

Relevant parts	
Lower path sensor (PS9) Saddle path sensor (PS11) Conveyance motor (M4)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS9 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ16-5 (ON)	FS-527 J-4
3	PS11 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ13-6 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-5
4	M4 operation check	FSCB PJ10-5 to 8	FS-527 B to C-3
5	FSCB F7 conduction check	—	—
6	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.17 Code: 72-15

Relevant parts	
Saddle path sensor (PS11)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS11 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ13-6 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-5
3	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.18 Code: 72-16

(1) When FS-527 is installed

Relevant parts	
Paper exit sensor (PS3) Paper passage sensor/1 (PS1) Paper passage motor/1 (M1) Paper passage motor/2 (M3)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS3 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN19-15 (ON)	bizhub C360/ 280/C220 C-10
3	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ11-2 (ON)	FS-527 I-11 to 12
4	M1 operation check	FSCB PJ28-1 to 4	FS-527 I-12
5	M3 operation check	FSCB PJ7-1 to 4	FS-527 C to B-3
6	FSCB F5, F6 conduction check	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

(2) When FS-529 is installed

Relevant parts	
Paper exit sensor (PS3) Paper passage sensor/1 (PS1)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS3 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN19-15 (ON)	bizhub C360/ 280/C220 C-10
3	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN3-3 (ON)	FS-529 B-3
4	Change FSCB	—	—

(3) When JS-505 is installed

Relevant parts	
Paper exit sensor (PS3) Lower tray exit sensor (PS1) Upper tray exit sensor (PS2) Transport motor (M1)	JS control board (JSCB) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS3 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN19-15 (ON)	bizhub C360/ 280/C220 C-10
3	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	JSCB PJ7-6 (ON)	JS-505 F-4 to 5
4	PS2 I/O check, sensor check	JSCB P7-9 (ON)	JS-505 F-4
5	M1 operation check	JSCB PJ5-1 to 4	JS-505 B-2 to 3
6	JSCB F7 conduction check	—	—
7	Change JSCB	—	—
8	Change PRCB	—	—

17.3.19 Code: 72-17

(1) When FS-527 is installed

Relevant parts	
Paper passage sensor/1 (PS1) Paper passage sensor/2 (PS2)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ11-2 (ON)	FS-527 I-11 to 12
3	PS2 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ11-8 (ON)	FS-527 I-11
4	Change FSCB	—	—

(2) When FS-529 is installed

Relevant parts	
Paper passage sensor/1 (PS1) Paper passage sensor/2 (PS10)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ11-2 (ON)	FS-529 B-3
3	PS10 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN7-3 (ON)	FS-529 B-4 to 5
4	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.20 Code: 72-18

Relevant parts	
Paper passage sensor/2 (PS2) Registration sensor (PS10)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS2 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ11-8 (ON)	FS-527 I-11
3	PS10 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ13-8 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-5
4	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.21 Code: 72-19

Relevant parts	
Conveyance motor (M4) Upper path sensor (PS8) Lower path sensor (PS9) Registration sensor (PS10)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS8 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ14-12 (ON)	FS-527 J-5
3	PS9 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ16-5 (ON)	FS-527 J-4
4	PS10 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ13-8 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-5
5	M4 operation check	FSCB PJ10-5 to 8	FS-527 B to C-3
6	FSCB F7 conduction check	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.22 Code: 72-21

(1) When FS-527 is installed

Relevant parts	
Lower path sensor (PS9) Tray2 paper detection sensor (PS16)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS9 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ16-5 (ON)	FS-527 J-4
3	PS16 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ17-8 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-8
4	Change FSCB	—	—

(2) When FS-529 is installed

Relevant parts	
Paper passage sensor/2 (PS10) Paper empty sensor (PS7)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS10 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN7-3 (ON)	FS-529 B-4 to 5
3	PS7 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN6-3 (ON)	FS-529 B-1 to 2
4	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.23 Code: 72-22

Relevant parts	
Registration sensor (PS10) Tray1 path sensor (PS6)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS10 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ13-8 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-5
3	PS6 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ14-9 (ON)	FS-527 J-5
4	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.24 Code: 72-26

Relevant parts	
Paper detection sensor/2 (PS44)	SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS44 I/O check, sensor check	SDDB PJ13-2 (ON)	SD-509 G-3
3	Change SDDB	—	—
4	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.25 Code: 72-43

Relevant parts	
Punch motor/1 (M100) Punch home sensor/1 (PS100)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS100 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ19-8 (ON)	FS-527 (PK-517) J-9
3	M100 operation check	FSCB PJ19-1 (CW) FSCB PJ19-3 (CCW)	FS-527 (PK-517) J-8
4	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.26 Code: 72-81

Relevant parts	
Stapler unit	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	Change stapler unit	—	—
3	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.27 Code: 72-85

Relevant parts	
Saddle stapler unit	SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	Change saddle stapler unit	—	—
3	Change SDDB	—	—
4	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.28 Code: 72-86

Relevant parts	
Saddle path sensor (PS11) Paper detection sensor/1 (PS43)	SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS11 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ13-6 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-5
3	PS43 I/O check, sensor check	SDDB PJ9-8 (ON)	SD-509 G-1
4	SDDB F1 conduction check	—	—
5	Change SDDB	—	—
6	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.29 Code: 72-87

Relevant parts	
Saddle path sensor (PS11) Paper detection sensor/2 (PS44)	SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS11 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ13-6 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-5
3	PS44 I/O check, sensor check	SDDB PJ13-2 (ON)	SD-509 G-3
4	SDDB F1 conduction check	—	—
5	Change SDDB	—	—
6	Change FSCB	—	—

17.3.30 Misfeed at duplex pre-registration section

Relevant parts	
Transport motor (M1) Duplex transport motor (M5)	Front side relay board (FREYB) Printer control board (PRCB) Sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS1 I/O check, sensor check	FREYB CN13-3 (ON)	Q-17
3	M1 operation check	PRCB CN14-2 (REM) PRCB CN14-5 (LOCK)	C-2 to 5
4	M5 operation check	PRCB CN15-9 to 12	C-7
5	Change FREYB	—	—
6	Change PRCB	—	—

17.3.31 Misfeed at duplex transport section

Relevant parts	
Switchback motor (M4) Duplex transport motor (M5)	Printer control board (PRCB) Duplex paper passage sensor (PS40)

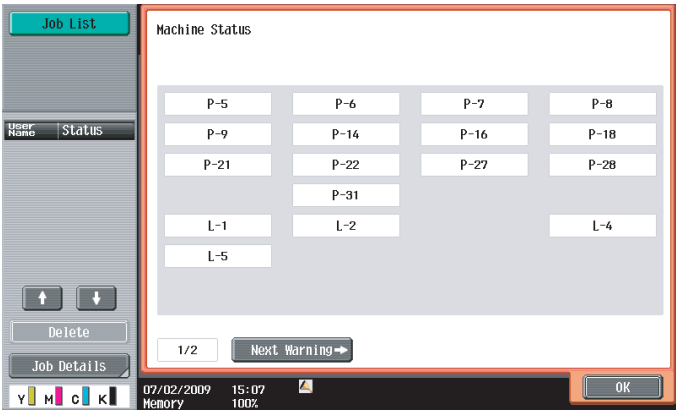
Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS40 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN15-15 (ON)	C-8
3	M4 operation check	PRCB CN13-8 to 11	J-20
4	M5 operation check	PRCB CN15-9 to 12	C-7
5	PRCB ICP8, 9 conduction check	—	—
6	Change PRCB	—	—

18. MALFUNCTION CODE

18.1 Display procedure

- The machine's CPU performs a self-diagnostics function that, on detecting a malfunction, gives the corresponding warning code and maintenance call mark on the control panel.
- Touching the maintenance call mark will display the corresponding warning code on the state confirm screen.





A0EDF4E511DA

18.2 List

- If an image stabilization or scanner fault occurs, the corresponding warning code appears.

Code	Item	Description
S-1	CCD gain adjustment failure	• It is detected that the CCD clamp gain adjustment value is faulty.
D-1	Split line detect	• When the main/sub power switches are turned ON or when the machine is recovering from the power save mode, if the original cover is not open, the cleaning brush rotates 360 degrees to detect whether or not stain exists in the original reading section. This warning will be displayed if the original is set to ADF when stain exist. • The thin line detection level and the warning display can be changed by the following setting. [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Split Line Detect. Setting]
P-5	IDC sensor (front) failure	• During IDC sensor light intensity correction, output voltage detected for all eight sample patterns are 3.25 V or more. • During IDC sensor light intensity correction, sensor output voltage for light intensity selected after the correction is under 0.7 V. • During IDC base surface detective control, sensor output voltage detected is under 0.7 V or over 3.25V. • During image stabilization (gamma correction control), detected output value for IDC sensor did not go below threshold (half the value of what is detected by IDC sensor on the belt surface) for three consecutive times (position of the pattern end is not detected). • During image stabilization (gamma correction control), sensor's output value of each color for hyper 0 gradation after the primary approximation is half the detection level on the belt surface or under.
P-28	IDC sensor (rear) failure	
P-6	Drum/Development unit (C) failure	• All density readings taken from the density pattern produced on the transfer belt are 1.0 g/m^2 (IDC sensor photo receiver output) or less during max. density adjustment (Vg/Vdc adjustment). • All density readings taken from the density pattern produced on the transfer belt are 5.0 g/m^2 (IDC sensor photo receiver output) and more during max. density adjustment (Vg/Vdc adjustment).
P-7	Drum/Development unit (M) failure	
P-8	Drum/Development unit (Y) failure	
P-9	Drum/Development unit (K) failure	
P-14	Skew correction trouble	• The difference between the skew default position setting value and the cumulative amount of skew adjustment values goes over the predetermined value.
P-21	Color regist test pattern failure	• During pre-pattern detection, pre-pattern edge (start/end point of effective area) is not detected within the pre-pattern search area. • During detection of regist pattern at vertical/horizontal direction, pattern edge (start/end point of effective area) is not detected within the pattern search area of each unit.

Code	Item	Description
P-22	Color regist adjust failure	• The gap between maximum and minimum value of deviations among each color (the values before averaging) is over 3.85 mm. • Average deviation exceeds 3.85 mm. • In case the final value of the deviation after stabilization exceeds 3.85mm, it is regarded as failure even if the average deviation is within tolerance.
P-27	Secondary transfer ATVC failure	• An abnormal average value is detected during an adjustment of the second image transfer ATVC value.
P-30	PC home sensor (color) malfunction	• Encoder pulse width error is detected consecutively for a given period after the color PC motor (m2) rotates stably with lock signal under active mode (LOW=0).
P-31	PC home sensor (K) malfunction	• While the transport motor (M1) is rotating at a stable pace and lock signals are in an active (LOW=0) condition, an abnormal encoder pulse width continues to be detected over the predetermined period of time.
L-1	Drum unit/C rotation time excess warning	• PC drum rotation time count value used for the life judgment of drum units (the value for PC drum rotation distance calculated into the rotation time) is above the threshold value for the excess warning. • Printing with this warning being displayed is not included in the image warranty.
L-2	Drum unit/M rotation time excess warning	
L-3	Drum unit/Y rotation time excess warning	
L-4	Drum unit/K rotation time excess warning	
L-5	Transfer belt unit accumulated rotation time excess warning	• Count value for the transfer belt rotation time used for judging the transfer belt unit life is above the threshold value for excess warning. • Printing with this warning being displayed is not included in the image warranty.

18.3 Solution

18.3.1 S-1: CCD gain adjustment failure

Relevant parts	
Exposure unit	CCD board (CCDB) MFP board (MFPB)

Step	Action
1	Correct the harness connection between CCDB and MFPB if faulty.
2	Check for possible extraneous light and correct as necessary.
3	Clean the lens, mirrors, CCD surface, and shading sheet if dirty.
4	Correct reflective mirror of the scanner if faulty, or change scanner.
5	Change CCD sensor unit.
6	Change MFPB.

18.3.2 D-1: Split line detect

Relevant parts	
Glass cleaning sensor (PS21) Glass cleaning motor (M9)	DF control board (DFCB)

Step	Action
1	Wipe clean the glass surface of the DF original glass.
2	Check the glass cleaning roller unit for proper installation and correct if necessary.
3	Select [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Split Line Detect. Setting], and change the setting.
4	Check the DFCB connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
5	M9 operation check.
6	Change glass cleaning roller unit.
7	Change DFCB.

18.3.3 P-5: IDC sensor (front) failure

18.3.4 P-28 IDC sensor (rear) failure

Relevant parts	
IDC registration sensor/MK (IDCS/MK) IDC registration sensor/YC (IDCS/YC) IDC registration sensor shutter solenoid (SD2)	Printer control board (PRCB) High voltage unit (HV) Transfer belt unit

Step	Action
1	Wipe clean the surface of the transfer belt with a soft cloth, if it is dirty.
2	Change the image transfer belt unit if the transfer belt is damaged.
3	Reinstall or reconnect IDCS/MK assy or IDCS/YC assy, sensor shutter or connector, if it is installed or connected improperly.
4	Clean IDCS/MK or IDCS/YC if it is dirty.
5	Check the HV connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
6	SD2 operation check.
7	Open/close the front door, run an image stabilization sequence, and select [State Confirmation] → [Level History 1] to check the IDC value. IDC1: IDCS/MK, IDC2: IDCS/YC If the value is 1.0 V or less, change IDCS/MK assy or IDCS/YC assy.
8	PRCB ICP2, 14 conduction check.
9	Change PRCB.

18.3.5 P-6: Drum/Development unit (C) failure

18.3.6 P-7: Drum/Development unit (M) failure

18.3.7 P-8: Drum/Development unit (Y) failure

18.3.8 P-9: Drum/Development unit (K) failure

Relevant parts	
Drum unit/Y,M,C,K Developing unit/Y,M,C,K IDC registration sensor/MK (IDCS/MK) IDC registration sensor/YC (IDCS/YC) IDC registration sensor shutter solenoid (SD2)	Printer control board (PRCB) High voltage unit (HV) Transfer belt unit

Step	Action
1	Select [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Max Image Density Adj] and, if the setting value is negative, readjust.
2	Check the drive transmission portion of the drum/developing unit and correct as necessary.
3	Clean the IDC/registration sensor/MK (IDCS/MK) or IDC/registration sensor/YC (IDCS/YC) window if dirty.
4	Clean the contact of the drum/developing unit connector if dirty.
5	Check the HV connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
6	SD2 operation check.
7	Change drum unit.
8	Change developing unit.
9	Change the transfer belt unit.
10	Change HV.
11	PRCB ICP14 conduction check.
12	Change PRCB.

18.3.9 P-14: Skew correction trouble

Relevant parts	
IDC registration sensor/MK (IDCS/MK) IDC registration sensor/YC (IDCS/YC) Drum unit/Y,M,C,K	PH relay board (PHREYB) Printer control board (PRCB) PH unit

Step	Action
1	Check the drive transmission portion of the drum unit and correct as necessary.
2	Clean the contact of the drum unit connector if dirty.
3	Reinstall or reconnect IDCS/MK assy or IDCS/YC assy, sensor shutter or connector, if it is installed or connected improperly.
4	Clean IDCS/MK or IDCS/YC if it is dirty.
5	Check the PHREYB connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
6	Check the PRCB connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
7	Change IDCS/MK assy or IDCS/YC assy.
8	Change drum unit.
9	Change PH unit.
10	Change PHREYB.
11	Change PRCB.

NOTE

- **After the PH unit is replaced, reset the skew default position for each color. Touch keys as follows for this setting.**
  [Service Mode] → [Machine] → [Skew adjustment] → [Skew adjustment]
  See P.386
- **When this alert code is displayed, according to the list, take actions to address the problem. After the problem is resolved, select [Service Mode] → [Machine] → [Skew adjustment] → [Skew adjustment reset] and perform the skew adjustment reset.**
  See P.387

18.3.10 P-21: Color regist test pattern failure

Relevant parts	
Transfer belt unit PH unit IDC registration sensor shutter solenoid (SD2)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action
1	Wipe clean the surface of the transfer belt with a soft cloth, if it is dirty.
2	Change the image transfer belt unit if the transfer belt is damaged.
3	SD2 operation check.
4	Change the PH unit.
5	PRCB ICP2 conduction check.
6	Change PRCB.

18.3.11 P-22: Color regist adjust failure

Relevant parts	
IDC registration sensor /MK (IDCS/MK) IDC registration sensor/YC (IDCS/YC) IDC registration sensor shutter solenoid (SD2)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action
1	Slide out the imaging unit and reinstall it in position.
2	Reinstall or reconnect IDCS/MK assy or IDCS/YC assy if it is installed or connected improperly.
3	Check the vertical transport guide for installed position and correct as necessary.
4	SD2 operation check.
5	PRCB ICP2 conduction check.
6	Change PRCB.

18.3.12 P-27: Secondary transfer ATVC failure

Relevant parts	
High voltage unit (HV) Printer control board (PRCB)	Image transfer entrance guide 2nd image transfer assy Transfer belt unit

Step	Action
1	Check roller opposed to the 2nd image transfer roller is grounded. Clean the joint or correct if necessary.
2	Check the image transfer entrance guide for proper installation and correct if necessary.
3	Check that the spring does not come off during the pressure operation of the 2nd transfer roller and correct if necessary.
4	Check the contact at the joint of the 2nd image transfer assy and HV. Clean the joint or correct if necessary.
5	Change the transfer belt unit.
6	Change HV.
7	Change PRCB.

18.3.13 P-30: PC home sensor (color) malfunction

Relevant parts	
Color PC main sensor (PC33) Color PC sub-sensor (PC35)	Main drive assy Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action
1	Perform the faulty sensor check procedure. *1
2	Check the sensor, for which a faulty condition has been checked, for installed position and proper connector connection.
3	Wipe the sensor, for which a faulty condition has been checked, clean of dirt if any.
4	If P-30 persists, change the main drive assy.
5	Change PRCB.

*1: Faulty sensor check procedure

1. Open the front door and turn ON the main power switch of the machine.
2. Call the [Sensor Check] screen to the screen by way of Service Mode.
See P.460
3. Close the front door and start [Stabilizer].
4. During the stabilizer sequence, check to see if the values of the phase detection sensors (Color PC main sensor and Color PC sub-sensor) change.
5. A sensor is faulty if its value does not change.

18.3.14 P-31: PC home sensor (K) malfunction

Relevant parts	
Monochrome PC main sensor (PC34) Monochrome PC sub-sensor (PC36)	Main drive assy Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action
1	Perform the faulty sensor check procedure. *1
2	Check the sensor, for which a faulty condition has been checked, for installed position and proper connector connection.
3	Wipe the sensor, for which a faulty condition has been checked, clean of dirt if any.
4	If P-31 persists, change the main drive assy.
5	Change PRCB.

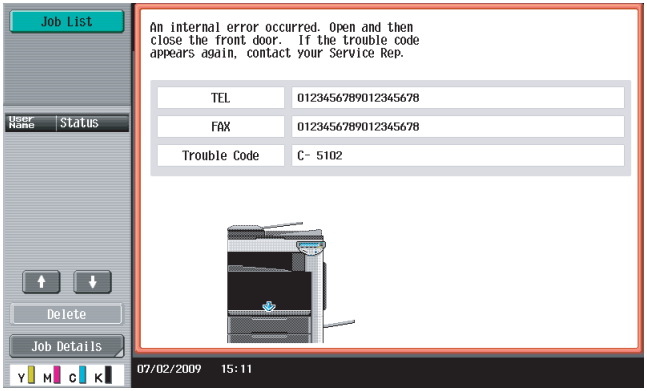
*1: Faulty sensor check procedure

1. Open the front door and turn ON the main power switch of the machine.
2. Call the [Sensor Check] screen to the screen by way of Service Mode.
See P.460
3. Close the front door and start [Stabilizer].
4. During the stabilizer sequence, check to see if the values of the phase detection sensors (Monochrome PC main sensor and monochrome PC sub-sensor) change.
5. A sensor is faulty if its value does not change.

19. TROUBLE CODE

19.1 Display procedure

- The machine's CPU performs a self-diagnostics function that, on detecting a malfunction, gives the corresponding malfunction code on the control panel.



A0EDF4E512DA

19.2 Trouble resetting procedure

- Different malfunction resetting procedures apply depending on the rank of the trouble code.

* List of malfunction resetting procedures

Trouble code rank	Resetting procedures
Rank A	• Trouble reset * Refer to the following procedure.
Rank B	• Opening/closing the front door
Rank C	• Turning main power switch OFF/ON

19.2.1 Trouble resetting procedure by Trouble Reset key

A. Use

- If the all troubles occur and the status would not be cleared by turning main power switch OFF and ON again, or opening and closing the front door, clear the status of the machine.
- To be used when the status would not be cleared by turning main power switch OFF and ON again, or opening and closing the front door in case of a trouble.

B. Procedure

1. Turn OFF the main power switch.
2. Turn main power switch ON while pressing the Utility/Counter key.
3. Touch [Trouble Reset].
4. Check to make sure that [OK] is displayed and the it has been reset.
5. After turning off the main power switch, turn it on again more than 10 seconds after and check if the machine starts correctly.

19.3 Trouble isolation function

- The trouble isolation function enables you to control MFP temporarily isolating faulty units and options where the trouble isolation function can be applied when trouble occurs. This allows you to continue using the other units that are not affected and reduce down time that continues until CE resolves the problem.
- This function can be selected for the following units and options.
  Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, Tray 4, LCT, manual, Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Center Stapling, Staple, Scanner, ADF
- If a problem occurs with the units where the trouble isolation function can be applied, the control panel displays a trouble code and a key with which you decide whether to continue using the MFP. When you press down the key, the control panel displays the units that will be isolated as well as the next confirmation key with which you decide to continue.
- When you press down the confirmation key, the message on the control panel asks you to turn OFF and ON the sub power switch. After turning OFF and ON the sub power switch, the MFP starts operating, isolating the faulty units. The message on the control panel also tells that the MFP is working, isolating the faulty units.
- To temporarily isolate faulty units and continue using the MFP with the trouble isolation function, be sure to make the above mentioned control panel operation. The faulty units cannot be automatically isolated.

NOTE

- **The malfunction detection mechanism is not applied to units and options that are being isolated.**

19.4 List

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C0001	LCT communication error	• Due to malfunctioning of the software or other causes, the watchdog timer triggers a reset when time is up.	—	B
C0202	Tray 1 feeder up/down abnormality	• The paper feed tray 1 upper limit sensor is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the lifting motion has been started.	Tray 1	B
C0204	Tray 2 feeder up/down abnormality	• The paper feed tray 2 upper limit sensor is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the lifting motion has been started.	Tray 2	B
C0206	Tray3 lift-up failure	• The lift-up upper sensor is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper lift-up operation for the drawer began.	Tray 3	B
C0208	Tray4 lift-up failure		Tray 4	B
C0209	LCT elevator motor failure	• The elevator motor pulse sensor (PS10) cannot detect both edges of H/L even after the set period of time has elapsed while the elevator motor (M5) is turning backward/forward (raise/lower).	LCT	B

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C0210	LCT lift failure	• The lift-up upper limit sensor (PS4) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper lift-up operation began. • The lift-up upper limit sensor (PS4) is not blocked even after the set pulse is detected by the elevator motor pulse sensor (PS10) after the paper lift-up operation began. • The lift-up lower sensor (PS13) is not unblocked even after the set pulse is detected by the elevator motor pulse sensor (PS10) after the paper lift-up operation began. • The lift-up upper limit sensor (PS4) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper lift-up operating. • The lift-up lower limit sensor (PS13) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper lift-down operation began. • The lift-up lower limit sensor (PS13) is not blocked even after the set pulse is detected by the elevator motor pulse sensor (PS10) after the paper lift-down operation began. • The lift-up upper limit sensor (PS4) is not unblocked even after the set pulse is detected by the elevator motor pulse sensor (PS10) after the paper lift-down operation began. • The lower limit over run sensor (PS7) is blocked while the paper lift-down operating.	LCT	B
C0211	Manual feed up/down abnormality	• Paper does not unblock the manual lift-up position sensor even after the transport motor rotates for a given period of time after the position is switched from stand by position at lift-up plate to the feed position. • The manual lift-up position sensor is not blocked even after the transport motor rotates for a given period of time after the position is switched from stand by position at lift-up plate to the feed position.	Manual	B
C0212	LCT ejection failure	• The drawer cannot be determined to be out of position even after the set period of time has elapsed after the tray lock solenoid (SD1) is energized after the lowering operation is finished.	LCT	B
C0213	LCT shift gate malfunction	• The division board position sensor (PS14) cannot be set to L even after the set period of time has elapsed after the operation of the division board position motor (M3) began with the division board position sensor (PS14) set to L.	LCT	B

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C0214	LCT shifting failure	• The shifter stop position sensor (PS11) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the shift operation began (shift to the right). • The shifter stop position sensor (PS11) is not blocked even after the set pulse is detected by the shift motor pulse sensor (PS8) after the shift operation began (shift to the right). • The shifter home position sensor (PS12) is not unblocked even after the set pulse is detected by the shift motor pulse sensor (PS8) after the shift operation began (shift to the right). • The shifter home position sensor (PS12) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the return operation began (shift to the left). • The shifter home position sensor (PS12) is not blocked even after the set pulse is detected by the shift motor pulse sensor (PS8) after the return operation began (shift to the left). • The shifter stop position sensor (PS11) is not unblocked even after the set pulse is detected by the shift motor pulse sensor (PS8) after the return operation began (shift to the left).	LCT	B
C0215	LCT shift motor malfunction	• The shift motor pulse sensor (PS8) cannot detect both edges of H/L even after the set period of time has elapsed while the shift motor (M4) is turning backward/forward (raise/lower).	LCT	B
C1004	FNS communication error	• When the FS control board (FSCB) is receiving data, a communication error is detected.	—	C
C1081	SD communication error	• When a communication error is detected between the FS control board (FSCB) and the SD control board (SDCB).	Half-Fold/ Tri-Fold/ Center Stapling	C
C1113	Center-staple lead edge stopper motor malfunction	<When FS-527+SD-509 is installed> • The leading edge stopper home sensor (PS45) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the leading edge stopper motor (M20) is turned ON.	Staple, Half-Fold/ Tri-Fold Center Stapling	B
C1114	Center-staple front adjust drive motor malfunction	<When FS-527+SD-509 is installed> • The center staple alignment home sensor/F (PS42) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the center staple alignment motor/F (M24) is turned ON.	Half-Fold/ Tri-Fold Center Stapling	B

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C1115	Center-staple knife drive motor malfunction	<When FS-527+SD-509 is installed> • The center fold plate home sensor (PS47) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the center fold plate motor (M26) is turned ON.	Half-Fold/ Tri-Fold Center Stapling	B
C1116	Center-staple transfer motor malfunction	<When FS-527+SD-509 is installed> • The center fold roller motor (M25) does not reach the specified speed even after the set period of time has elapsed after it starts to operate.	Half-Fold/ Tri-Fold Center Stapling	B
C1150	Center-staple rear adjust drive motor malfunction	<When FS-527+SD-509 is installed> • The center staple alignment home sensor/R (PS41) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the center staple alignment motor/R (M23) is turned ON.	Half-Fold/ Tri-Fold Center Stapling	B
C1156	Center-staple paddle roller motor malfunction (trailing edge)	<When FS-527+SD-509 is installed> • Even after the set period of time has elapsed after the upper paddle motor (M21) starts running, a change of motor lock signal is not detected and neither the paper detection sensor/1 (PS43) nor the paper detection sensor/2 (PS44) is turned ON.	Half-Fold/ Tri-Fold Center Stapling	B
C1158	Center-staple paddle roller motor malfunction (leading edge)	<When FS-527+SD-509 is installed> • Even after the set period of time has elapsed after the lower paddle motor (M22) starts running, a change of motor lock signal is not detected and neither the paper detection sensor/1 (PS43) nor the paper detection sensor/2 (PS44) is turned ON.	Half-Fold/ Tri-Fold Center Stapling	B
C1181	Malfunctioning of belt up/ down movement	<When FS-529 is installed> • The belt position sensor (PS13) is not turned OFF after the set period of time has elapsed after the belt retract solenoid (SD5) is turned ON. • The belt position sensor (PS13) is not turned ON after the set period of time has elapsed after the conveyance motor/1 (M5) is turned ON.	Staple	B

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C1182	Shift motor drive malfunction	<When JS-505 is installed> • The shift home sensor (PS6) is not blocked after the set period of time has elapsed after the shift motor (M2) is turned ON (start of moving to the home position.) • The shift home sensor (PS6) is not unblocked twice in a row after the set period of time has elapsed after the shift motor (M2) is turned ON (start of moving to the shift position.) <When FS-527 is installed> • When moving to the front (home) position: The tray 2 shift home sensor (PS25) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the tray 2 shift motor (M16) is turned ON. • When moving to the rear (shift) position: The tray 2 shift home sensor (PS25) is not turned OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the tray 2 shift motor (M16) is turned ON.	Staple	B
C1183	Elevate drive malfunction	<When FS-527 is installed> • During downward movement, the tray 2 upper limit sensor (PS24) is turned OFF and the tray 2 lower limit sensor (PS21) is turned ON. • The elevate motor (M15) lock signal remains set to H for a set period of time while the elevate motor (M15) is turning. • The tray2 upper position switch (SW2) is turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed while the elevate motor (M15) is energized. • The tray2 lower position switch (SW3) is turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed while the elevate motor (M15) is energized. <When FS-529 is installed> • When the exit tray is moving up: When the tray up/down motor (M2) starts rotating with the output of the tray lower limit sensor (PS6) being ON, PS6 is not turned OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed. • The paper surface detect sensor/1 (PS2) or the paper surface detect sensor/2 (PS3) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the tray up/down motor (M2) starts rotating. • When the exit tray is moving down: The tray lower limit sensor (PS6) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the tray up/down motor (M2) starts rotating.	—	B

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C1190	Alignment plate motor drive malfunction	<When FS-527 is installed> • The alignment plate home sensor (PS17) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the alignment plate motor (M13) is turned ON.	—	B
	Alignment plate R drive malfunction	<When FS-529 is installed> • The alignment plate home sensor/R (PS9) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the alignment motor/R (M4) is turned ON.	—	B
C1191	Alignment plate F drive malfunction	<When FS-529 is installed> • The alignment plate home sensor/F (PS8) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the alignment motor/F (M3) is turned ON.	—	B
C1194	Leading edge stopper motor drive malfunction	<When FS-527 is installed> • The leading edge stopper home sensor (PS20) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the leading edge stopper motor (M14) is turned ON. <When FS-529 is installed> • The leading edge stopper home sensor (PS14) is not turned OFF after the set period of time has elapsed after the stapler motor (M8) is turned ON.	Staple	B
C11A1	Tray 2 exit roller pressure/ retraction malfunction	<When FS-527 is installed> • The exit roller pressure sensor (PS12) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the exit roller retraction motor (M9) is turned ON.	—	B
	Exit roller pressure/ retraction malfunction	<When FS-529 is installed> • The pick up roller position sensor (PS12) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the pick up roller position motor (M1) is turned ON.	—	B
C11A2	Accommodation roller pressure/ retraction malfunction	<When FS-527 is installed> • The accommodation roller pressure sensor (PS13) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the accommodation roller retraction motor (M10) is turned ON.	—	B
C11A7	Tray 3 exit roller pressure/ retraction malfunction	<When JS-603 is installed> • The tray3 exit roller retraction sensor (PS35) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the tray3 exit roller retraction motor (M17) is turned ON.	—	B

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C11B0	Stapler movement drive malfunction	<When FS-527 is installed> • During home position search, neither the stapler home sensor/1 (PS18) nor the stapler home sensor/2 (PS19) is turned ON or OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the stapler movement motor (M11) is turned ON. <When FS-529 is installed> • During the home position search, the stapler home sensor (PS11) is not turned ON or OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the stapler movement motor (M7) is turned ON.	Staple	B
C11B2	Staple drive malfunction	<When FS-527 is installed> • The stapler home sensor is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the stapler motor is turned ON. <When FS-529 is installed> • During the initial operation, the stapler home sensor is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed after the stapler movement motor (M7) is turned ON. • The stapler home sensor is not turned ON after the set period of time has elapsed after the stapler motor (M8) is turned ON.	Staple	B
C11B5	Saddle stapler drive malfunction	<When FS-527+SD-509 is installed> • The center stapler home sensor is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the center stapler motor is turned ON.	Half-Fold/ Tri-Fold Center Stapling	B
C11C0	Punch motor drive malfunction	<When FS-527+PK-517 is installed> • The punch home sensor/1 (PS100) is not turned ON even after the set period of time has elapsed while the punch motor/1 (M100) is energized.	—	B
C11E0	Duplex path switching motor drive malfunction	<When FS-527 is installed> • The duplex path switching sensor (PS3) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the duplex path switching motor (M2) is turned ON.	—	B
	Finisher route change malfunction	<When JS-505 is installed> • The route change home sensor (PS4) is not blocked after the set period of time has elapsed after the route change motor (M3) is turned ON (start of shifting to the lower tray route.) • The route change home sensor (PS4) is not unblocked after the set period of time has elapsed after the route change motor (M3) is turned ON (start of shifting to the upper tray route.)	—	B

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C11E1	Upper lower path switching motor drive malfunction	<When FS-527 is installed> • The upper lower path switching sensor (PS26) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the upper lower path switching motor (M6) is turned ON.	—	B
C11E2	Tray1 path switching motor drive malfunction	<When FS-527 is installed> • The tray1 path switching home sensor (PS7) is turned neither ON nor OFF even after the set period of time has elapsed after the tray1 path switching motor (M8) is turned ON.	—	B
C1301	Fan motor drive malfunction	<When FS-529 is installed> • While the motor is rotating, the fan lock signal remains L for the set period of time.	—	B
C1402	FS NVRAM memory error	<When FS-529 is installed> • When the main power switch is turned ON, malfunctioning of the non-volatile memory on the FS control board (FSCB) is detected.	—	—
C2152	Transfer belt pressure welding alienation	• The transfer belt retraction sensor does not detect “switch from retraction to pressure” within a given period time after transfer belt retraction clutch has stared engagement. • The transfer belt retraction sensor does not detect “switch from pressure to retraction” within a given period time after transfer belt retraction clutch has stared engagement.	—	B
C2164	PC charge malfunction	• When electrostatic charge output is ON, electrostatic charge leak detection system continues to detect leaks for a predetermined period of time.	—	B
C2253	Color PC motor’s failure to turn	• The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the motor is turning.	—	B
C2254	Color PC motor’s turning at abnormal timing	• The motor lock signal remains LOW for a predetermined continuous period of time while the motor remains stationary.	—	B
C225D	Color developing unit de-engagement failure	• Engagement is not completed in a given period time after the color dev. unit engaged motor has started engagement operation. • De-engagement is not completed in a given period time after the color dev. unit engaged motor has started de-engagement operation.	—	B
C2355	Transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor’s failure to turn	• The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the motor is turning.	—	B

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C2411	Developing unit (C) new article release	• The status with the new unit is not cleared after the new developing unit is set.	—	B
C2412	Developing unit (M) new article release		—	B
C2413	Developing unit (Y) new article release		—	B
C2414	Developing unit (K) new article release		—	B
C2551	Abnormally low toner density detected cyan TCR sensor	• When sampling data is determined in TC ratio calculation control, TCR sensor output is higher than a predetermined value for a predetermined number of times in a row even though there is toner in the sub hopper.	—	B
C2552	Abnormally high toner density detected cyan TCR sensor	• TC ratio in the developing unit which is determined by toner replenishing amount control mechanism, is a predetermined value or more for a given number of times consecutively.	—	B
C2553	Abnormally low toner density detected magenta TCR sensor	• When sampling data is determined in TC ratio calculation control, TCR sensor output is higher than a predetermined value for a predetermined number of times in a row even though there is toner in the sub hopper.	—	B
C2554	Abnormally high toner density detected magenta TCR sensor	• TC ratio in the developing unit, which is determined by toner replenishing amount control mechanism, is a predetermined value or more for a given number of times consecutively.	—	B
C2555	Abnormally low toner density detected yellow TCR sensor	• When sampling data is determined in TC ratio calculation control, TCR sensor output is higher than a predetermined value for a predetermined number of times in a row even though there is toner in the sub hopper.	—	B
C2556	Abnormally high toner density detected yellow TCR sensor	• TC ratio in the developing unit, which is determined by toner replenishing amount control mechanism, is a predetermined value or more for a given number of times consecutively.	—	B
C2557	Abnormally low toner density detected black TCR sensor	• When sampling data is determined in TC ratio calculation control, TCR sensor output is higher than a predetermined value for a predetermined number of times in a row even though there is toner in the sub hopper.	—	B
C2558	Abnormally high toner density detected black TCR sensor	• TC ratio in the developing unit, which is determined by toner replenishing amount control mechanism, is a predetermined value or more for a given number of times consecutively.	—	B

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C2559	Cyan TCR sensor adjustment failure	• TCR sensor automatic adjustment does not function properly, failing to adjust to an appropriate value.	—	B
C255A	Magenta TCR sensor adjustment failure		—	B
C255B	Yellow TCR sensor adjustment failure		—	B
C255C	Black TCR sensor adjustment failure		—	B
C2561	Cyan TCR sensor failure	• Alarm signals for a TCR sensor are detected more than the predetermined number of times. This detection is used for detecting disconnection of TCR sensor connector.	—	B
C2562	Magenta TCR sensor failure		—	B
C2563	Yellow TCR sensor failure		—	B
C2564	Black TCR sensor failure		—	B
C2650	Main backup media access error	• Contact the responsible people of KMBT before taking some countermeasures.	—	C
C2A11	Drum unit/C new release failure	• The status with the new unit is not cleared after the new drum unit is set.	—	B
C2A12	Drum unit/M new release failure		—	B
C2A13	Drum unit/Y new release failure		—	B
C2A14	Drum unit/K new release failure		—	B
C3101	Fusing roller separation failure	• With the fusing roller being retracted, the pulse of the encoder sensor does not change even after the specified period of time has passed after the fusing pressure roller retraction motor started rotating. • With the fusing roller being pressed, the encoder pulse sensor does not change even after the specified period of time has passed after the fusing pressure roller retraction motor started rotating. • With the pressure roller being pressed, the fusing pressure roller home sensor did not turn ON (pressed) even after the fusing pressure roller retraction sensor counted up the specified number of pulse after the fusing pressure roller retraction motor started rotating.	—	B
C3201	Fusing motor failure to turn	• The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the motor remains stationary.	—	B
C3202	Fusing motor turning at abnormal timing	• The motor lock signal remains LOW for a predetermined continuous period of time while the motor remains stationary.	—	B
C3302	Fusing cooling fan motor/ 2,3 failure to turn	• The fan motor lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the motor remains stationary.	—	B

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C3421	Fusing heaters trouble (Heating side)	• Detected temperature of the heating roller thermistor/C does not go up a given range of temperature even after a lapse of given period of time at warm up. • Detected temperature of the heating roller thermistor/C does not reach to a given temperature even after a lapse of given period of time after warm up is completed.	—	A
C3423	Fusing heaters trouble (Pressurizing side)	• Detected temperature of the pressure roller thermistor does not go up a given range of temperature even after a lapse of given period of time at warm up. • Detected temperature of the pressure roller thermistor does not reach to a given temperature even after a lapse of given period of time after warm up is completed.	—	A
C3721	Fusing abnormally high temperature detection (Center of the heating side)	• Detected temperature of the heating roller thermistor/C goes beyond a given temperature for a given period of time consecutively. • Detected temperature of the heating roller thermistor/M goes beyond a given temperature for a given period of time consecutively. • The hard protector signal error is detected for a given period of time consecutively.	—	A
C3722	Fusing abnormally high temperature detection (Edge of the heating side)	• Detected temperature of the heating roller thermistor/S goes beyond a given temperature for a given period of time consecutively.	—	A
C3723	Fusing abnormally high temperature detection (Pressurizing side)	• Detected temperature of the pressure roller thermistor goes beyond a given temperature for a given period of time consecutively.	—	A
C3821	Fusing abnormally low temperature detection (Heating side)	• Detected temperature of the heating roller thermistor/C goes below a given temperature for a given period of time consecutively after warm up is completed. • Detected temperature of the heating roller thermistor/M goes below a given temperature for a given period of time consecutively after warm up is completed.	—	A
C3823	Fusing abnormally low temperature detection (Pressurizing side)	• Detected temperature of the pressure roller thermistor goes below a given temperature for a given period of time consecutively after warm up is completed.	—	A
C3921	Fusing sensor wire breaks detection (Heating side)	• The maximum value and minimum value of detected temperature of the heating roller thermistor/C, M and S are compared after a lapse of given time from starting of warm up and the gap between the value of maximum and minimum of either thermistor is below or over a given temperature. • The detected temperature gap between the heating roller thermistor /C and the heating roller thermistor/M surpasses a given temperature.	—	A

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C3923	Fusing sensor wire breaks detection (Pressurizing side)	• The maximum value and minimum value of detected temperature of the pressure roller thermistor are compared after a lapse of given time from starting of warm up and the gap between the value of maximum and minimum is below or over a given temperature. • The pressure heater lights up for a given period of time consecutively.	—	A
C4101	Polygon motor rotation trouble	• The polygon motor fails to turn stably even after the lapse of a given period of time after activating the polygon motor. • Motor lock signal detects HIGH for a given period time consecutively during the polygon motor is rotating.	—	B
C4501	Laser malfunction	• SOS signal is not detected even after the lapse of a given period of time after staring the laser output. • SOS signal is not detected for a given period of time during printing or IDC sensor adjustment.	—	B
C5102	Transport motor's failure to turn	• The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the motor remains stationary.	—	B
C5103	Transport motor's turning at abnormal timing	• The motor lock signal remains LOW for a predetermined continuous period of time while the motor remains stationary.	—	B
C5351	Power supply cooling fan motor's failure to turn	• The fan lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the motor remains stationary.	—	B
C5352	Undetectable			
C5353	Undetectable			
C5354	Exhaust fan motor's failure to turn	• The fan lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the motor remains stationary.	—	B
C5355	Cooling fan motor/3's failure to turn	• The fan lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the motor remains stationary.	—	B
C5357	Undetectable			
2 C5370	MFP control board cooling fan motor's failure to turn	• The fan lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the motor remains stationary.	—	C
2 C5372	MFP control board CPU temperature failure	• Temperature failure of CPU on the MFP board was detected.	—	C
C5501	AC signal abnormality	• Signal is not detected for a given period of interval when AC frequency is measured with the power switch ON or when fusing heater is turned ON/OFF.	—	C
C5601	Engine control malfunction	• Engine control malfunction is detected with port monitor control.	—	C

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C6102	Drive system home sensor malfunction	• The scanner home sensor is unable to detect the scanner located at its home position. • The scanner home sensor is unable to detect a scanner even when the scanner motor has been driven to move the scanner over the maximum travelling distance. • The scanner home sensor detects the scanner when the scanner has moved the maximum travelling distance from the position, at which it blocks the scanner home sensor.	Scanner	B
C6103	Slider over running	• The scanner home sensor detects the scanner at its home position during a period of time that begins with the time when a prescan command and a scan preparation command are executed and ends when a home return command is executed.	Scanner	B
C6301	Undetectable			
C6704	Image input time out	• Image data is not input from the CCD board (CCDB) to the MFP board (MFPB).	Scanner	C
C6751	CCD clamp/gain adjustment failure	• The adjustment value is 0 or 255 during a CCD clamp adjustment. • The peak value of the output data is 64 or less during a CCD gain adjustment.	Scanner	B
C6752	ASIC clock input error (front side)	• When starting the scanner, verification on reading and writing the predetermined value for image processing ASIC on CCD board was conducted, and verification failure was detected.	—	C
C6753	ASIC clock input error (back side)		—	C
C6901	DSC board mount failure 1	• When MFP detects that DSC board is not properly installed.	—	C
C6902	DSC Bus check NG1-1	• When DSC bus check detects an error.	—	C
C6903	DSC Bus check NG1-2		—	C
C6911	Undetectable			
C6912				
C6913				
C6F01	Scanner sequence trouble 1	• The original transport interval becomes shorter than the designed value due to an original transport control error in original reading in ADF.	Scanner	C
C6F02	Reserved			
C6F03	Reserved			
C6F04	Reserved			
C6F05	Reserved			
C6F06	Reserved			
C6F07	Reserved			
C6F08	Reserved			
C6F09	Reserved			

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
C6F0A	Reserved			
C6FDC	Reserved			
C8101	Before reading pressure welding alienation mechanism	• During a pressure motion being performed, the read roller sensor (PS6) output does not change from H to L. • During a retraction motion being performed, the read roller sensor (PS6) output does not change from L to H.	—	B
C8102	Turn around pressure welding alienation trouble	• During a pressure motion being performed, the reverse roller sensor (PS7) output does not change from H to L. • During a retraction motion being performed, the reverse roller sensor (PS7) output does not change from L to H.	—	B
C8103	Lift up mechanism trouble (Upward movement)	• The lift up upper sensor (PS16) is not turned ON after a lapse of a given time after the lift-up motor (M7) moves up (is turned forward).	—	B
C8105	Undetectable			
C8106	Lift up mechanism failure (Downward movement)	• The lift up lower sensor (PS15) is not turned ON after a lapse of a given time after the lift-up motor (M7) goes down (is turned backward).	—	B
C8107	Glass cleaning mechanism trouble	• The glass cleaning sensor (PS21) is not turned ON after the set period of time has elapsed after the glass cleaning motor (M9) is turned ON.	—	B
C8302	Cooling fan trouble	• The lock signal continues to detect H during a given time while the cooling fan (FM1) is spinning • The lock signal continues to detect L during a given time while the cooling fan (FM1) is during halts.	—	B
C8401	EEPROM failure	• EEPROM does not access normally	—	C
C9401	Exposure turning on the lamp trouble detection	• The output from the CCD sensor is a predetermined value or less during CCD sensor gain adjustment.	Scanner	A
C9402	Exposure turning on the lamp abnormally detection	• The average output value of the CCD sensor with the scanner at its standby position is a predetermined value or more at the end of a scan job.	Scanner	A
CA051	Standard controller configuration failure	• The controller of the MFP board (MFPB) is faulty.	—	C
CA052	Controller hardware error	• A controller hardware error is detected in the network I/F.	—	C
CA053	Controller start failure	• A controller start failure is detected in the controller interface.	—	C

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
CB001	FAX board error 1	See the FK-502 Service Manual.	—	C
CB002	FAX board error 2		—	C
CB003	FAX board error 3		—	C
CB051	FAX board mount failure line 1		—	C
CB052	FAX board mount failure line 2		—	C
CB110	FAX driver error: Instance generation error or observer registration error		—	C
CB111	FAX driver error: Configuration space initialization NG		—	C
CB112	FAX driver error: Semaphore acquisition, release error		—	C
CB113	FAX driver error: Sequence error among main body tasks		—	C
CB114	FAX driver error: Message queue control error		—	C
CB115	FAX driver error: Main body - sequence error among FAX boards		—	C
CB116	FAX driver error: FAX board nonresponse (Nonresponse after initialization)		—	C
CB117	FAX driver error: ACK waiting timeout error		—	C
CB118	FAX driver error: Receiving undefined frame		—	C
CB119	FAX driver error: DMA transfer error		—	C
CB120	JC soft error		—	C
CB122	Device error (GA LOCAL SRAM)		—	C
CB123	Device error (DRAM)		—	C
CB125	Device error (GA)		—	C
CB126	Timeout error due to nonresponse from DC during suspension process		—	C
CB127	Timeout error due to nonresponse from CC during suspension process		—	C
CB128	Timeout error due to nonresponse from LINE during suspension process		—	C

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
CB129	Timeout error due to non-response from file system/ file driver during suspension process	See the FK-502 Service Manual.	—	C
CB130	MIF driver error: Driver soft error		—	C
CB131	MIF driver error: Reception frame length error from main		—	C
CB132	MIF driver error: Reception frame header error from main		—	C
CB133	MIF driver error: 232C i/f sequence error		—	C
CB134	MIF driver error: DPRAM i/f sequence error		—	C
CB135	MIF driver error: DPRAM CTL/STL register error		—	C
CB136	MIF driver error: AKC waiting timeout		—	C
CB137	MIF driver error: DPRAM RESET reception		—	C
CB140	MSG I/F Error with JC		—	C
CB141	I/F error with main: I/F error with driver		—	C
CB142	I/F error with main: Undefined command reception		—	C
CB143	I/F error with main: Command frame length error		—	C
CB144	I/F error with main: Command parameter length error		—	C
CB145	I/F error with main: Undefined parameter		—	C
CB146	I/F error with main: Command/response sequence error		—	C
CB150	Line control: External class instance acquisition error		—	C
CB151	Line control: Job start error (Starting job parameter error/child job generation error)		—	C
CB152	Line control: Doc access error (Report buf access error)		—	C

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
CB153	Line control: Response wait timeout from external task	See the FK-502 Service Manual.	—	C
CB154	Line control: Internal que table control error (create/enque/deque)		—	C
CB160	1 destination control: Instance generation error		—	C
CB161	1 destination control: Timeout error		—	C
CB162	1 destination control: Interface error		—	C
CB163	1 destination control: Message que control error		—	C
CB164	1 destination control: Semaphore acquisition release error		—	C
CB165	1 destination control: Observer registration error		—	C
CB166	1 destination control: Reception resource check error		—	C
CB167	1 destination control: Deployment error of sending image information		—	C
CB168	1 destination control: Serialization error of receiving image		—	C
CB169	1 destination control: Access error to quick memory data		—	C
CB170	Page control: Internal que table control error (create/enque/deque)		—	C
CB171	Page control: Instance generation error		—	C
CB172	Page control: Timeout error		—	C
CB173	Page control: Interface error		—	C
CB174	Page control: Semaphore acquisition release error		—	C
CB175	Page control: Observer registration error		—	C
CB176	Page control: Unable to check TTI domain		—	C
CB177	Page control: Error return from TTI rasterizer		—	C

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
CB178	Page control: Receiving job generation error	See the FK-502 Service Manual.	—	C
CB185	Page control: Receiving data size logic error (Receiving data are not multiples of dotline)		—	C
CB186	Page control: Image buf acquisition (alloc) error		—	C
CB187	Page control: Error return from compressor		—	C
CB188	Page control: BandBuf control error (newInstance/get/free)		—	C
CC001	Vendor connection failure	• It is detected that communications with the vendor are interrupted for a given period of time or more with “Installed” selected for the setting of vendor installation.	—	C
CC151	ROM contents error upon startup (MSC)	• A fault is detected in a sequence of ROM contents check of the MFPB during starting	—	C
CC152	ROM contents error upon startup (scanner)	• A fault is detected in a sequence of ROM contents check of the MFPB during starting.	—	C
CC153	ROM contents error upon startup (PRT)	• A fault is detected in a sequence of ROM contents check of the PRCB during starting.	—	C
CC155	Finisher ROM error	• Data of flash ROM of the finishing options is determined to be faulty when the power is turned ON.	—	C
CC156	ADF ROM error	• Upgrade of the firmware has not been successful.	—	C
CC159	ROM contents error upon startup (DSC1)	• A fault is detected in a sequence of ROM contents check of the DSC board during starting.	—	C
CC15A	ROM contents error upon startup (DSC2)		—	C
CC15B	Flash ROM error (saddle)	• Data of flash ROM of the saddle is determined to be faulty when the power is turned ON.	—	C
CC163	ROM contents error (PRT)	• The wrong model of firmware is detected in the engine during the initial connection to the engine is being checked.	—	C
CC164	ROM contents error (MSC)	• The wrong model of firmware is detected in the MFP board when the main power switch is turned ON.	—	C
CC165	ROM contents error (ADF)	• When the power is turned ON, DF control board or firmware error is detected.	—	C

	Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
	CC170	Dynamic link error during starting (AP0)	• A dynamic link error occurs in the program on the MFP board due to an insufficient memory space available, a ROM fault, or other reason when the main power switch is turned ON.	—	C
	CC171	Dynamic link error during starting (AP1)		—	C
	CC172	Dynamic link error during starting (AP2)		—	C
	CC173	Dynamic link error during starting (AP3)		—	C
	CC174	Dynamic link error during starting (AP4)		—	C
	CC180	Dynamic link error during starting (LDR)		—	C
	CC181	Dynamic link error during starting (IBR)		—	C
	CC182	Dynamic link error during starting (IID)		—	C
	CC183	Dynamic link error during starting (IPF)		—	C
	CC184	Dynamic link error during starting (IMY)		—	C
	CC185	Dynamic link error during starting (SPF)		—	C
	CC186	Dynamic link error during starting (OAP)		—	C
	CC190	Outline font load error	• An error occurred while loading the outline font.	—	C
	CC191	Setting parameter load error (LDR)	• Upon startup, the processing of the loadable device driver setting data file failed. - RAM disk file creation failed. - Reading from the flash ROM failed. - An error occurred in API of the authentication module.	—	C
⚠2	CC211	Authentication device general error	• When using the authentication device, authentication data is not to meet the specifications.	—	C
⚠2	CC212	User validation error	• An error occurred while validating the user authentication information.	—	C
⚠2	CC213	User registration error/ card information setting error	• IC card advanced settings data or authentication information data is not correct when starting-up the authentication device, setting the IC card advanced settings or registering/ editing the authentication information.	—	C
⚠2	CC214	User information deletion error	• The deletion of the user information is uncompleted.	—	C
⚠2	CC216	Acquisition failure of the number of trials/Initialize error of number of authentication	• An error occurred during user authentication using optional authentication unit AU-102.	—	C

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
CD002	JOB RAM save error	• The error in save of job data to the memory/hard disk and its read error are detected.	—	C
CD004	Hard disk access error (connection failure)	• Unable to communicate between the hard disk and printer control board (PRCB).	—	C
CD00F	Hard disk data transfer error	• Data transfer from the hard disk is faulty.	—	C
CD010	Hard disk unformat	• Unformatted hard disk is connected.	—	C
CD011	Hard disk out of specifications mounted	• A hard disk that falls outside the specifications is connected.	—	C
CD020	Hard disk verify error	• The data abnormality is detected by the HDD verify check.	—	C
CD030	Hard disk management information reading error	• The machine fails to read administrative information data saved in the hard disk.	—	C
CD041	HDD command execution error Address Mark Not Found	• The error occurred inside the hard disk.	—	C
CD042			—	C
CD043			—	C
CD044			—	C
CD045			—	C
CD046			—	C
CD047	HDD SCSI library error	• The error occurred inside the hard disk.	—	C
CD048			—	C
CD049			—	C
CD04A			—	C
CD04B			—	C
CD201	File memory mounting error	• The file memory is not mounted. • The file has any abnormality.	—	C
CD202	Memory capacity discrepancy	• File memory capacity on the MFP board (MFPB) is not enough. • File memory capacity necessary for duplex printing is not enough during duplex unit mounting.	—	C
CD203	Memory capacity discrepancy 2	• File memory capacity on the MFP board (MFPB) is not enough.	—	C
CD211	PCI-SDRAM DMA operation failure	• Hardware related to the transfer of memory image of the MFP board (MFPB) fails to respond.	—	C
CD212	Compression/extraction timeout detection	• Hardware related to the BTC compression function of the MFP board (MFPB) fails to respond.	—	C
CD231	No FAX memory at FAX board mounting	• The DIMM for FAX is not mounted during the FAX board is mounting. • The FAX board is not mounted when the FAX board mounting is set ON at Service Mode.	—	C
CD241	Encryption ASIC error	• Initialization error of the encrypted ASIC is detected during the machine is starting.	—	C

Code	Item	Detection timing	Trouble isolation	Rank
CD242	Encryption ASIC mounting error	• The faulty of the installation of encrypted ASIC is detected during the machine is starting.	—	C
CD251	Undetectable			
CD252	No relay circuit boards for IC-412 mounting at IC-412 mount setting	• Relay circuit boards (VI-505) are not mounted when the IC-412 is set to mount setting at Service Mode.	—	C
CD261	USB host board failure	• When a failure is detected in USB host board included in the local interface kit. • Non-standard USB device is connected.	—	C
CD271	i-Option activated and additional memory not installed	• While the i-Option is activated, the additional memory included in UK-203 is not installed.	—	C
CD272	i-Option activated and additional memory and HDD not installed	• While the i-Option is activated, the additional memory included in UK-203 and the HDD are not installed.	—	C
CD3##	NVRAM data error	• Abnormality is detected by the abnormal check of each NVRAM data.	—	—
CD370	NVRAM data multiple errors	• Multiple errors (Over 5) are detected by the abnormal check of each NVRAM data.	—	—
CD401	NACK command incorrect	• When abnormality is found in the communication of controller.	—	C
CD402	ACK command incorrect		—	C
CD403	Checksum error		—	C
CD404	Receiving packet incorrect		—	C
CD405	Receiving packet analysis error		—	C
CD406	ACK receiving timeout		—	C
CD407	Retransmission timeout		—	C
CDC##	Trouble related to security	• Contact the responsible people of KMBT before taking some countermeasures.	—	—
CE001	Abnormal message queue	• MFP board (MFPB) is faulty.	—	C
CE002	Message and method parameter failure		—	C
CE003	Task error		—	C
CE004	Event error		—	C
CE005	Memory access error		—	C
CE006	Header access error		—	C
CE007	DIMM initialize error		—	C
CEEE1	MFP board malfunction	• MFP board (MFPB) is faulty.	—	C
CEEE2	Scanner section malfunction	• A scanner part is faulty.	—	A
CEEE3	Printer control board malfunction	• Printer control board (PRCB) is faulty.	—	A

- The machine displays an abort code (CF###) on the control panel as it becomes unable to process tasks properly through its software control.
- When the system program is aborted, check the electrical component, unit, option, and connection relating to the specific type of the abort condition.

Code	Item		Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CF001	CT_singleList table abnormal	An exceptional instance occurred due to the unexpected parameter in the system F/W.	• MFP board (MFPB)	C
CF004	CT_queue full abnormal			C
CF011	Array link abnormal			C
CF012	FAT link abnormal			C
CF013	File size abnormal			C
CF021	setDelayMessage Table OverFlow			C
CF023	MsgQue OverFlow			C
CF033	setDivTbl() limitation over			C
CF112	Compress table OverFlow	Compression malfunctions		C
CF113	Compress table check			C
CF211	setParameterBandColorPlane() Table OverFlow	An exceptional instance occurred due to the unexpected parameter in the system F/W.		C
CF300	IR Bus Check Timeout	Image transfer error on IR input bus		C
CF411	Parity error	Communication error (between IR-systems)		C
CF421	Overrun error			C
CF431	Parity error + Overrun error			C
CF441	Framing error			C
CF451	Parity error + Framing error			C
CF461	Overrun error + Framing error			C
CF471	Parity error + Overrun error + Framing error			C
CF412	Parity error			C
CF422	Overrun error			C
CF432	Parity error + Overrun error			C
CF442	Framing error			C
CF452	Parity error + Framing error			C
CF462	Overrun error + Framing error			C
CF472	Parity error + Overrun error + Framing error			C
CF510	Parity error			C

Code	Item		Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CF520	Framing error	Communication error (IR detected)	• MFP board (MFPB)	C
CF530	Parity error + Framing error			C
CF540	Overrun error			C
CF550	Parity error + Overrun error			C
CF560	Overrun error + Framing error			C
CF570	Parity error + Overrun error + Framing error			C
CF580	Frame distortion of ADF			C
CF600	Report receiving of print start that is out of sequence		• MFP board (MFPB)/ Engine	C
CF601	Report receiving of paper feeding that is out of sequence			C
CF604	Outside IF/Command queue		• MFP board (MFPB)	C
CF614	“Output sequence” queue	An exceptional instance occurred due to the unexpected parameter in the system F/W.		C
CF624	Panel LCD date queue			C
CF704	Common data “Delete-waiting HDD accumulated job ID” queue			C
CF714	IRC/Command queue			C
CF724	Engine/Command queue		• MFP board (MFPB)/ Engine	C
CF734	Panel/Command queue		• MFP board (MFPB)/ Control Panel	C
CF744	File memory transfer start-waiting command queue		• MFP board (MFPB)	C
CF754	File memory compression requesting command queue			C
CF764	Panel instruction delete job queue			C
CF774	Warning delete job queue			C
CF784	Application instruction delete job queue			C
CF794	Output page information for duplex back side queue			C
CF7A4	Paper feed completion output pate information queue			C
CF7B4	Exposure compaction output page information queue			C
CF7C4	Pre-discharge completion output page information queue			C
CF7D4	Touch panel coordinate data queue			C
CF7E4	Direct key data queue			C
CF7F4	Scan sequence queue			C
CF802	SIO sending port...ENG		• MFP board (MFPB)/ Engine	C

Code	Item		Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CF806	SIO sending port...IRC		• MFP board (MFPB)	C
CF807	SIO sending port...ADF			C
CF808	Unsupported option trouble			
CF809				
CF812	SIO sending port...Fiery		• MFP board (MFPB)/External controller I/F board	C
CF815	SIO sending port...PIC/PIC terminal		• MFP board (MFPB)	C
CF8ED	SIO sending port...EPNet			C
CF902	SIO receiving port...ENG		• MFP board (MFPB)/ Engine	C
CF906	SIO receiving port...IRC		• MFP board (MFPB)	C
CF907	SIO receiving port...ADF			C
CF908	Unsupported option trouble			
CF909				
CF912	SIO receiving port...Fiery		• MFP board (MFPB)/External controller I/F board	C
CF915	SIO receiving port...PIC/PIC terminal		• MFP board (MFPB)	C
CF9ED	SIO receiving port...EPNet			C
CFA01	getOneImgTransInfoFromTh() No applied thread	An exceptional instance occurred due to the unexpected parameter in the system F/W.		C
CFA03	setTransBandAndRepeatNum() error			C
CFA06	getOneImgIndexNumFromTh() No applied thread			C
CFA11	cancelTransExec() No applied thread			C
CFA12	ImgTransInfo No space			C
CFA13	Clear Buffer Sequence error			C
CFA14	Thread software error		• Whole electrical components, units, and options	C
CFA15	Global semaphore time out (ten seconds)		• MFP board (MFPB)	C
CFA16	Thread software error (upper parameter error)			C
CFA50	IGC control error	DB error		C
CFA51		IGC internal error		C
CFB00	ASIC200 first sheet DMA00		• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFB01	ASIC200 first sheet DMA01			C
CFB02	ASIC200 first sheet DMA02			C
CFB03	ASIC200 first sheet DMA03			C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFB04	ASIC200 first sheet DMA04	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFB05	ASIC200 first sheet DMA05		C
CFB06	ASIC200 first sheet DMA06		C
CFB07	ASIC200 first sheet DMA07		C
CFB08	ASIC200 first sheet DMA08		C
CFB09	ASIC200 first sheet DMA09		C
CFB0A	ASIC200 first sheet DMA10		C
CFB0B	ASIC200 first sheet DMA11		C
CFB0C	ASIC200 first sheet DMA12		C
CFB0D	ASIC200 first sheet DMA13		C
CFB0E	ASIC200 first sheet DMA14		C
CFB0F	ASIC200 first sheet DMA15		C
CFB10	ASIC200 first sheet DMA16		C
CFB11	ASIC200 first sheet DMA17		C
CFB12	ASIC200 first sheet DMA18		C
CFB13	ASIC200 first sheet DMA19		C
CFB14	ASIC200 first sheet DMA20		C
CFB15	ASIC200 first sheet DMA21		C
CFB16	ASIC200 first sheet DMA22		C
CFB17	ASIC200 first sheet DMA23		C
CFB18	ASIC200 first sheet DMA24		C
CFB19	ASIC200 first sheet DMA25		C
CFB1A	ASIC200 first sheet DMA26		C
CFB1B	ASIC200 first sheet DMA27		C
CFB1C	ASIC200 first sheet DMA28		C
CFB1D	ASIC200 first sheet DMA29		C
CFB1E	ASIC200 first sheet DMA30		C
CFB1F	ASIC200 first sheet DMA31		C
CFB20	ASIC200 second sheet DMA00		C
CFB21	ASIC200 second sheet DMA01		C
CFB22	ASIC200 second sheet DMA02		C
CFB23	ASIC200 second sheet DMA03		C
CFB24	ASIC200 second sheet DMA04		C
CFB25	ASIC200 second sheet DMA05		C
CFB26	ASIC200 second sheet DMA06		C
CFB27	ASIC200 second sheet DMA07		C
CFB28	ASIC200 second sheet DMA08		C
CFB29	ASIC200 second sheet DMA09		C
CFB2A	ASIC200 second sheet DMA10		C
CFB2B	ASIC200 second sheet DMA11		C
CFB2C	ASIC200 second sheet DMA12		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFB2D	ASIC200 second sheet DMA13	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFB2E	ASIC200 second sheet DMA14		C
CFB2F	ASIC200 second sheet DMA15		C
CFB30	ASIC200 second sheet DMA16		C
CFB31	ASIC200 second sheet DMA17		C
CFB32	ASIC200 second sheet DMA18		C
CFB33	ASIC200 second sheet DMA19		C
CFB34	ASIC200 second sheet DMA20		C
CFB35	ASIC200 second sheet DMA21		C
CFB36	ASIC200 second sheet DMA22		C
CFB37	ASIC200 second sheet DMA23		C
CFB38	ASIC200 second sheet DMA24		C
CFB39	ASIC200 second sheet DMA25		C
CFB3A	ASIC200 second sheet DMA26		C
CFB3B	ASIC200 second sheet DMA27		C
CFB3C	ASIC200 second sheet DMA28		C
CFB3D	ASIC200 second sheet DMA29		C
CFB3E	ASIC200 second sheet DMA30		C
CFB3F	ASIC200 second sheet DMA31		C
CFB40	ASIC200 third sheet DMA00		C
CFB41	ASIC200 third sheet DMA01		C
CFB42	ASIC200 third sheet DMA02		C
CFB43	ASIC200 third sheet DMA03		C
CFB44	ASIC200 third sheet DMA04		C
CFB45	ASIC200 third sheet DMA05		C
CFB46	ASIC200 third sheet DMA06		C
CFB47	ASIC200 third sheet DMA07		C
CFB48	ASIC200 third sheet DMA08		C
CFB49	ASIC200 third sheet DMA09		C
CFB4A	ASIC200 third sheet DMA10		C
CFB4B	ASIC200 third sheet DMA11		C
CFB4C	ASIC200 third sheet DMA12		C
CFB4D	ASIC200 third sheet DMA13		C
CFB4E	ASIC200 third sheet DMA14		C
CFB4F	ASIC200 third sheet DMA15		C
CFB50	ASIC200 third sheet DMA16		C
CFB51	ASIC200 third sheet DMA17		C
CFB52	ASIC200 third sheet DMA18		C
CFB53	ASIC200 third sheet DMA19		C
CFB54	ASIC200 third sheet DMA20		C
CFB55	ASIC200 third sheet DMA21		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFB56	ASIC200 third sheet DMA22	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFB57	ASIC200 third sheet DMA23		C
CFB58	ASIC200 third sheet DMA24		C
CFB59	ASIC200 third sheet DMA25		C
CFB5A	ASIC200 third sheet DMA26		C
CFB5B	ASIC200 third sheet DMA27		C
CFB5C	ASIC200 third sheet DMA28		C
CFB5D	ASIC200 third sheet DMA29		C
CFB5E	ASIC200 third sheet DMA30		C
CFB5F	ASIC200 third sheet DMA31		C
CFB60	ASIC7 DMA A		C
CFB71	ASIC200 second sheet interruption		C
CFB72	ASIC200 third sheet interruption		C
CFB80	ASIC200 first sheet common register setting		C
CFB81	ASIC200 second sheet common register setting		C
CFB82	ASIC200 third sheet common register setting		C
CFBA0	ASIC200 first sheet BTC compression/extension unit		C
CFBA1	ASIC200 second sheet BTC compression/extension unit		C
CFBA2	ASIC200 third sheet BTC compression/extension unit		C
CFC00	ASIC200 first sheet DMA00 error interruption		C
CFC01	ASIC200 first sheet DMA01 error interruption		C
CFC02	ASIC200 first sheet DMA02 error interruption		C
CFC03	ASIC200 first sheet DMA03 error interruption		C
CFC04	ASIC200 first sheet DMA04 error interruption		C
CFC05	ASIC200 first sheet DMA05 error interruption		C
CFC06	ASIC200 first sheet DMA06 error interruption		C
CFC07	ASIC200 first sheet DMA07 error interruption		C
CFC08	ASIC200 first sheet DMA08 error interruption		C
CFC09	ASIC200 first sheet DMA09 error interruption		C
CFC0A	ASIC200 first sheet DMA10 error interruption		C
CFC0B	ASIC200 first sheet DMA11 error interruption		C
CFC0C	ASIC200 first sheet DMA12 error interruption		C
CFC0D	ASIC200 first sheet DMA13 error interruption		C
CFC0E	ASIC200 first sheet DMA14 error interruption		C
CFC0F	ASIC200 first sheet DMA15 error interruption		C
CFC10	ASIC200 first sheet DMA16 error interruption		C
CFC11	ASIC200 first sheet DMA17 error interruption		C
CFC12	ASIC200 first sheet DMA18 error interruption		C
CFC13	ASIC200 first sheet DMA19 error interruption		C
CFC14	ASIC200 first sheet DMA20 error interruption		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFC15	ASIC200 first sheet DMA21 error interruption	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFC16	ASIC200 first sheet DMA22 error interruption		C
CFC17	ASIC200 first sheet DMA23 error interruption		C
CFC18	ASIC200 first sheet DMA24 error interruption		C
CFC19	ASIC200 first sheet DMA25 error interruption		C
CFC1A	ASIC200 first sheet DMA26 error interruption		C
CFC1B	ASIC200 first sheet DMA27 error interruption		C
CFC1C	ASIC200 first sheet DMA28 error interruption		C
CFC1D	ASIC200 first sheet DMA29 error interruption		C
CFC1E	ASIC200 first sheet DMA30 error interruption		C
CFC1F	ASIC200 first sheet DMA31 error interruption		C
CFC20	ASIC200 watchdog timer error interruption		C
CFC21	ASIC200 first sheet image output interface 1 had under-run		C
CFC22	ASIC200 first sheet image input interface had overflow		C
CFC23	ASIC200 first sheet LCD output interface had underrun		C
CFC24	ASIC200 first sheet JBIG core detected unknown marker		C
CFC25	ASIC200 first sheet JBIG core detected SC count overflow		C
CFC26	ASIC200 first sheet SDC slave illegal access error occurred		C
CFC27	ASIC200 first sheet memory master access had Completer Abort		C
CFC28	ASIC200 first sheet memory master access had Unsupported Request		C
CFC29	ASIC200 first sheet memory master access had Completion Timeout		C
CFC2A	ASIC200 first sheet memory master access had Poisoned TLP		C
CFC2B	ASIC200 first sheet memory target access had Unsupported Request		C
CFC2C	ASIC200 first sheet memory target access had Poisoned TLP		C
CFC2D	ASIC200 first sheet config target access had Unsupported Request		C
CFC2E	ASIC200 first sheet config target access had Poisoned TLP		C
CFC30	ASIC200 second sheet DMA00 error interruption		C
CFC31	ASIC200 second sheet DMA01 error interruption		C
CFC32	ASIC200 second sheet DMA02 error interruption		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFC33	ASIC200 second sheet DMA03 error interruption	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFC34	ASIC200 second sheet DMA04 error interruption		C
CFC35	ASIC200 second sheet DMA05 error interruption		C
CFC36	ASIC200 second sheet DMA06 error interruption		C
CFC37	ASIC200 second sheet DMA07 error interruption		C
CFC38	ASIC200 second sheet DMA08 error interruption		C
CFC39	ASIC200 second sheet DMA09 error interruption		C
CFC3A	ASIC200 second sheet DMA10 error interruption		C
CFC3B	ASIC200 second sheet DMA11 error interruption		C
CFC3C	ASIC200 second sheet DMA12 error interruption		C
CFC3D	ASIC200 second sheet DMA13 error interruption		C
CFC3E	ASIC200 second sheet DMA14 error interruption		C
CFC3F	ASIC200 second sheet DMA15 error interruption		C
CFC40	ASIC200 second sheet DMA16 error interruption		C
CFC41	ASIC200 second sheet DMA17 error interruption		C
CFC42	ASIC200 second sheet DMA18 error interruption		C
CFC43	ASIC200 second sheet DMA19 error interruption		C
CFC44	ASIC200 second sheet DMA20 error interruption		C
CFC45	ASIC200 second sheet DMA21 error interruption		C
CFC46	ASIC200 second sheet DMA22 error interruption		C
CFC47	ASIC200 second sheet DMA23 error interruption		C
CFC48	ASIC200 second sheet DMA24 error interruption		C
CFC49	ASIC200 second sheet DMA25 error interruption		C
CFC4A	ASIC200 second sheet DMA26 error interruption		C
CFC4B	ASIC200 second sheet DMA27 error interruption		C
CFC4C	ASIC200 second sheet DMA28 error interruption		C
CFC4D	ASIC200 second sheet DMA29 error interruption		C
CFC4E	ASIC200 second sheet DMA30 error interruption		C
CFC4F	ASIC200 second sheet DMA31 error interruption		C
CFC50	ASIC200 second sheet watchdog time error interruption		C
CFC51	ASIC200 second sheet image output interface 1 had underrun		C
CFC52	ASIC200 second sheet image input interface had overflow		C
CFC53	ASIC200 second sheet LCD output interface had underrun		C
CFC54	ASIC200 second sheet JBIG core detected unknown marker		C
CFC55	ASIC200 second sheet JBIG core detected SC counter overflow		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFC56	ASIC200 second sheet SDC slave had illegal access error	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFC57	ASIC200 second sheet memory master access had Completer Abort		C
CFC58	ASIC200 second sheet memory master access had Unsupported Request		C
CFC59	ASIC200 second sheet memory master access had Completion Timeout		C
CFC5A	ASIC200 second sheet memory master access had Poisoned TLP		C
CFC5B	ASIC200 second sheet memory target access had Unsupported Request		C
CFC5C	ASIC200 second sheet memory target access had Poisoned TLP occurred		C
CFC5D	ASIC200 second sheet config target access had Unsupported Request		C
CFC5E	ASIC200 second sheet config target access had Poisoned TLP		C
CFC60	ASIC200 third sheet DMA00 error interruption		C
CFC61	ASIC200 third sheet DMA01 error interruption		C
CFC62	ASIC200 third sheet DMA02 error interruption		C
CFC63	ASIC200 third sheet DMA03 error interruption		C
CFC64	ASIC200 third sheet DMA04 error interruption		C
CFC65	ASIC200 third sheet DMA05 error interruption		C
CFC66	ASIC200 third sheet DMA06 error interruption		C
CFC67	ASIC200 third sheet DMA07 error interruption		C
CFC68	ASIC200 third sheet DMA08 error interruption		C
CFC69	ASIC200 third sheet DMA09 error interruption		C
CFC6A	ASIC200 third sheet DMA10 error interruption		C
CFC6B	ASIC200 third sheet DMA11 error interruption		C
CFC6C	ASIC200 third sheet DMA12 error interruption		C
CFC6D	ASIC200 third sheet DMA13 error interruption		C
CFC6E	ASIC200 third sheet DMA14 error interruption		C
CFC6F	ASIC200 third sheet DMA15 error interruption		C
CFC70	ASIC200 third sheet DMA16 error interruption		C
CFC71	ASIC200 third sheet DMA17 error interruption		C
CFC72	ASIC200 third sheet DMA18 error interruption		C
CFC73	ASIC200 third sheet DMA19 error interruption		C
CFC74	ASIC200 third sheet DMA20 error interruption		C
CFC75	ASIC200 third sheet DMA21 error interruption		C
CFC76	ASIC200 third sheet DMA22 error interruption		C
CFC77	ASIC200 third sheet DMA23 error interruption		C
CFC78	ASIC200 third sheet DMA24 error interruption		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFC79	ASIC200 third sheet DMA25 error interruption	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFC7A	ASIC200 third sheet DMA26 error interruption		C
CFC7B	ASIC200 third sheet DMA27 error interruption		C
CFC7C	ASIC200 third sheet DMA28 error interruption		C
CFC7D	ASIC200 third sheet DMA29 error interruption		C
CFC7E	ASIC200 third sheet DMA30 error interruption		C
CFC7F	ASIC200 third sheet DMA31 error interruption		C
CFC80	ASIC200 third sheet watchdog timer error interruption		C
CFC81	ASIC200 third sheet image output interface 1 had underrun		C
CFC82	ASIC200 third sheet image input interface had overflow		C
CFC83	ASIC200 third sheet LCD output interface had underrun		C
CFC84	ASIC200 third sheet JBIG core detected unknown marker		C
CFC85	ASIC200 third sheet JBIG core had SC count overflow		C
CFC86	ASIC200 third sheet SDC slave had illegal access error		C
CFC87	ASIC200 third sheet memory master access had Completer Abort		C
CFC88	ASIC200 third sheet memory master access had Unsupported Request		C
CFC89	ASIC200 third sheet memory master access had Completion Timeout		C
CFC8A	ASIC200 third sheet memory master access had Poisoned TLP		C
CFC8B	ASIC200 third sheet memory target access had Unsupported Request		C
CFC8C	ASIC200 third sheet memory target access had Poisoned TLP		C
CFC8D	ASIC200 third sheet config target access had Unsupported Request		C
CFC8E	ASIC200 third sheet config target access had Poisoned TLP		C
CFCC4	CPS2007 slave read data parity error occurred		C
CFCD0	PIC2007 PCI slave illegal access error occurred		C
CFCD1	PIC2007 address parity error occurred		C
CFCD2	PIC2007 slave write data parity error occurred		C
CFCD3	PIC2007 slave read data parity error occurred		C
CFCE0	ASIC22 watchdog timer error occurred		C
CFCE1	ASIC22 local bus error occurred		C
CFCE2	ASIC22 another type of error occurred		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFD00	ASIC200 first sheet DMA00 time out	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFD01	ASIC200 first sheet DMA01 time out		C
CFD02	ASIC200 first sheet DMA02 time out		C
CFD03	ASIC200 first sheet DMA03 time out		C
CFD04	ASIC200 first sheet DMA04 time out		C
CFD05	ASIC200 first sheet DMA05 time out		C
CFD06	ASIC200 first sheet DMA06 time out		C
CFD07	ASIC200 first sheet DMA07 time out		C
CFD08	ASIC200 first sheet DMA08 time out		C
CFD09	ASIC200 first sheet DMA09 time out		C
CFD0A	ASIC200 first sheet DMA10 time out		C
CFD10	ASIC200 first sheet DMA16 time out		C
CFD11	ASIC200 first sheet DMA17 time out		C
CFD12	ASIC200 first sheet DMA18 time out		C
CFD13	ASIC200 first sheet DMA19 time out		C
CFD14	ASIC200 first sheet DMA20 time out		C
CFD15	ASIC200 first sheet DMA21 time out		C
CFD16	ASIC200 first sheet DMA22 time out		C
CFD17	ASIC200 first sheet DMA23 time out		C
CFD18	ASIC200 first sheet DMA24 time out		C
CFD19	ASIC200 first sheet DMA25 time out		C
CFD1A	ASIC200 first sheet DMA26 time out		C
CFD1B	ASIC200 first sheet DMA27 time out		C
CFD1C	ASIC200 first sheet DMA28 time out		C
CFD1D	ASIC200 first sheet DMA29 time out		C
CFD1E	ASIC200 first sheet DMA30 time out		C
CFD1F	ASIC200 first sheet DMA31 time out		C
CFD20	ASIC200 second sheet DMA00 time out		C
CFD21	ASIC200 second sheet DMA01 time out		C
CFD22	ASIC200 second sheet DMA02 time out		C
CFD23	ASIC200 second sheet DMA03 time out		C
CFD24	ASIC200 second sheet DMA04 time out		C
CFD25	ASIC200 second sheet DMA05 time out		C
CFD26	ASIC200 second sheet DMA06 time out		C
CFD27	ASIC200 second sheet DMA07 time out		C
CFD28	ASIC200 second sheet DMA08 time out		C
CFD29	ASIC200 second sheet DMA09 time out		C
CFD2A	ASIC200 second sheet DMA10 time out		C
CFD2B	ASIC200 second sheet DMA11 time out		C
CFD2C	ASIC200 second sheet DMA12 time out		C
CFD2D	ASIC200 second sheet DMA13 time out		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFD2E	ASIC200 second sheet DMA14 time out	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFD2F	ASIC200 second sheet DMA15 time out		C
CFD30	ASIC200 second sheet DMA16 time out		C
CFD31	ASIC200 second sheet DMA17 time out		C
CFD32	ASIC200 second sheet DMA18 time out		C
CFD33	ASIC200 second sheet DMA19 time out		C
CFD34	ASIC200 second sheet DMA20 time out		C
CFD35	ASIC200 second sheet DMA21 time out		C
CFD36	ASIC200 second sheet DMA22 time out		C
CFD37	ASIC200 second sheet DMA23 time out		C
CFD38	ASIC200 second sheet DMA24 time out		C
CFD39	ASIC200 second sheet DMA25 time out		C
CFD3A	ASIC200 second sheet DMA26 time out		C
CFD3B	ASIC200 second sheet DMA27 time out		C
CFD3C	ASIC200 second sheet DMA28 time out		C
CFD3D	ASIC200 second sheet DMA29 time out		C
CFD3E	ASIC200 second sheet DMA30 time out		C
CFD3F	ASIC200 second sheet DMA31 time out		C
CFD40	ASIC200 third sheet DMA00 time out		C
CFD41	ASIC200 third sheet DMA01 time out		C
CFD42	ASIC200 third sheet DMA02 time out		C
CFD43	ASIC200 third sheet DMA03 time out		C
CFD44	ASIC200 third sheet DMA04 time out		C
CFD45	ASIC200 third sheet DMA05 time out		C
CFD46	ASIC200 third sheet DMA06 time out		C
CFD47	ASIC200 third sheet DMA07 time out		C
CFD48	ASIC200 third sheet DMA08 time out		C
CFD49	ASIC200 third sheet DMA09 time out		C
CFD4A	ASIC200 third sheet DMA10 time out		C
CFD4B	ASIC200 third sheet DMA11 time out		C
CFD4C	ASIC200 third sheet DMA12 time out		C
CFD4D	ASIC200 third sheet DMA13 time out		C
CFD4E	ASIC200 third sheet DMA14 time out		C
CFD4F	ASIC200 third sheet DMA15 time out		C
CFD50	ASIC200 third sheet DMA16 time out		C
CFD51	ASIC200 third sheet DMA17 time out		C
CFD52	ASIC200 third sheet DMA18 time out		C
CFD53	ASIC200 third sheet DMA19 time out		C
CFD54	ASIC200 third sheet DMA20 time out		C
CFD55	ASIC200 third sheet DMA21 time out		C
CFD56	ASIC200 third sheet DMA22 time out		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFD57	ASIC200 third sheet DMA23 time out	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFD58	ASIC200 third sheet DMA24 time out		C
CFD59	ASIC200 third sheet DMA25 time out		C
CFD5A	ASIC200 third sheet DMA26 time out		C
CFD5B	ASIC200 third sheet DMA27 time out		C
CFD5C	ASIC200 third sheet DMA28 time out		C
CFD5D	ASIC200 third sheet DMA29 time out		C
CFD5E	ASIC200 third sheet DMA30 time out		C
CFD5F	ASIC200 third sheet DMA31 time out		C
CFDA0	ASIC7 DMA_A time out		C
CFDA1	ASIC7 DMA_C time out		C
CFDA2	ASIC7 DMA_D time out		C
CFE00	ASIC200 first sheet DMA00 time out		C
CFE01	ASIC200 first sheet DMA01 time out		C
CFE02	ASIC200 first sheet DMA02 time out		C
CFE03	ASIC200 first sheet DMA03 time out		C
CFE04	ASIC200 first sheet DMA04 time out		C
CFE05	ASIC200 first sheet DMA05 time out		C
CFE06	ASIC200 first sheet DMA06 time out		C
CFE07	ASIC200 first sheet DMA07 time out		C
CFE08	ASIC200 first sheet DMA08 time out		C
CFE09	ASIC200 first sheet DMA09 time out		C
CFE0A	ASIC200 first sheet DMA10 time out		C
CFE0B	ASIC200 first sheet DMA11 time out		C
CFE0C	ASIC200 first sheet DMA12 time out		C
CFE0D	ASIC200 first sheet DMA13 time out		C
CFE0E	ASIC200 first sheet DMA14 time out		C
CFE0F	ASIC200 first sheet DMA15 time out		C
CFE10	ASIC200 first sheet DMA16 time out		C
CFE11	ASIC200 first sheet DMA17 time out		C
CFE12	ASIC200 first sheet DMA18 time out		C
CFE13	ASIC200 first sheet DMA19 time out		C
CFE14	ASIC200 first sheet DMA20 time out		C
CFE15	ASIC200 first sheet DMA21 time out		C
CFE16	ASIC200 first sheet DMA22 time out		C
CFE17	ASIC200 first sheet DMA23 time out		C
CFE18	ASIC200 first sheet DMA24 time out		C
CFE19	ASIC200 first sheet DMA25 time out		C
CFE1A	ASIC200 first sheet DMA26 time out		C
CFE1B	ASIC200 first sheet DMA27 time out		C
CFE1C	ASIC200 first sheet DMA28 time out		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFE1D	ASIC200 first sheet DMA29 time out	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFE1E	ASIC200 first sheet DMA30 time out		C
CFE1F	ASIC200 first sheet DMA31 time out		C
CFE20	ASIC200 second sheet DMA00 time out		C
CFE21	ASIC200 second sheet DMA01 time out		C
CFE22	ASIC200 second sheet DMA02 time out		C
CFE23	ASIC200 second sheet DMA03 time out		C
CFE24	ASIC200 second sheet DMA04 time out		C
CFE25	ASIC200 second sheet DMA05 time out		C
CFE26	ASIC200 second sheet DMA06 time out		C
CFE27	ASIC200 second sheet DMA07 time out		C
CFE28	ASIC200 second sheet DMA08 time out		C
CFE29	ASIC200 second sheet DMA09 time out		C
CFE2A	ASIC200 second sheet DMA10 time out		C
CFE2B	ASIC200 second sheet DMA11 time out		C
CFE2C	ASIC200 second sheet DMA12 time out		C
CFE2D	ASIC200 second sheet DMA13 time out		C
CFE2E	ASIC200 second sheet DMA14 time out		C
CFE2F	ASIC200 second sheet DMA15 time out		C
CFE30	ASIC200 second sheet DMA16 time out		C
CFE31	ASIC200 second sheet DMA17 time out		C
CFE32	ASIC200 second sheet DMA18 time out		C
CFE33	ASIC200 second sheet DMA19 time out		C
CFE34	ASIC200 second sheet DMA20 time out		C
CFE35	ASIC200 second sheet DMA21 time out		C
CFE36	ASIC200 second sheet DMA22 time out		C
CFE37	ASIC200 second sheet DMA23 time out		C
CFE38	ASIC200 second sheet DMA24 time out		C
CFE39	ASIC200 second sheet DMA25 time out		C
CFE3A	ASIC200 second sheet DMA26 time out		C
CFE3B	ASIC200 second sheet DMA27 time out		C
CFE3C	ASIC200 second sheet DMA28 time out		C
CFE3D	ASIC200 second sheet DMA29 time out		C
CFE3E	ASIC200 second sheet DMA30 time out		C
CFE3F	ASIC200 second sheet DMA31 time out		C
CFE40	ASIC200 third sheet DMA00 time out		C
CFE41	ASIC200 third sheet DMA01 time out		C
CFE42	ASIC200 third sheet DMA02 time out		C
CFE43	ASIC200 third sheet DMA03 time out		C
CFE44	ASIC200 third sheet DMA04 time out		C
CFE45	ASIC200 third sheet DMA05 time out		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFE46	ASIC200 third sheet DMA06 time out	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFE47	ASIC200 third sheet DMA07 time out		C
CFE48	ASIC200 third sheet DMA08 time out		C
CFE49	ASIC200 third sheet DMA09 time out		C
CFE4A	ASIC200 third sheet DMA10 time out		C
CFE4B	ASIC200 third sheet DMA11 time out		C
CFE4C	ASIC200 third sheet DMA12 time out		C
CFE4D	ASIC200 third sheet DMA13 time out		C
CFE4E	ASIC200 third sheet DMA14 time out		C
CFE4F	ASIC200 third sheet DMA15 time out		C
CFE50	ASIC200 third sheet DMA16 time out		C
CFE51	ASIC200 third sheet DMA17 time out		C
CFE52	ASIC200 third sheet DMA18 time out		C
CFE53	ASIC200 third sheet DMA19 time out		C
CFE54	ASIC200 third sheet DMA20 time out		C
CFE55	ASIC200 third sheet DMA21 time out		C
CFE56	ASIC200 third sheet DMA22 time out		C
CFE57	ASIC200 third sheet DMA23 time out		C
CFE58	ASIC200 third sheet DMA24 time out		C
CFE59	ASIC200 third sheet DMA25 time out		C
CFE5A	ASIC200 third sheet DMA26 time out		C
CFE5B	ASIC200 third sheet DMA27 time out		C
CFE5C	ASIC200 third sheet DMA28 time out		C
CFE5D	ASIC200 third sheet DMA29 time out		C
CFE5E	ASIC200 third sheet DMA30 time out		C
CFE5F	ASIC200 third sheet DMA31 time out		C
CFF00	ASIC200 first sheet DMA00 time out		C
CFF01	ASIC200 first sheet DMA01 time out		C
CFF02	ASIC200 first sheet DMA02 time out		C
CFF03	ASIC200 first sheet DMA03 time out		C
CFF04	ASIC200 first sheet DMA04 time out		C
CFF05	ASIC200 first sheet DMA05 time out		C
CFF06	ASIC200 first sheet DMA06 time out		C
CFF07	ASIC200 first sheet DMA07 time out		C
CFF08	ASIC200 first sheet DMA08 time out		C
CFF09	ASIC200 first sheet DMA09 time out		C
CFF0A	ASIC200 first sheet DMA10 time out		C
CFF0B	ASIC200 first sheet DMA11 time out		C
CFF0C	ASIC200 first sheet DMA12 time out		C
CFF0D	ASIC200 first sheet DMA13 time out		C
CFF0E	ASIC200 first sheet DMA14 time out		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFF0F	ASIC200 first sheet DMA15 time out	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFF10	ASIC200 first sheet DMA16 time out		C
CFF11	ASIC200 first sheet DMA17 time out		C
CFF12	ASIC200 first sheet DMA18 time out		C
CFF13	ASIC200 first sheet DMA19 time out		C
CFF14	ASIC200 first sheet DMA20 time out		C
CFF15	ASIC200 first sheet DMA21 time out		C
CFF16	ASIC200 first sheet DMA22 time out		C
CFF17	ASIC200 first sheet DMA23 time out		C
CFF18	ASIC200 first sheet DMA24 time out		C
CFF19	ASIC200 first sheet DMA25 time out		C
CFF1A	ASIC200 first sheet DMA26 time out		C
CFF1B	ASIC200 first sheet DMA27 time out		C
CFF1C	ASIC200 first sheet DMA28 time out		C
CFF1D	ASIC200 first sheet DMA29 time out		C
CFF1E	ASIC200 first sheet DMA30 time out		C
CFF1F	ASIC200 first sheet DMA31 time out		C
CFF20	ASIC200 second sheet DMA00 time out		C
CFF21	ASIC200 second sheet DMA01 time out		C
CFF22	ASIC200 second sheet DMA02 time out		C
CFF23	ASIC200 second sheet DMA03 time out		C
CFF24	ASIC200 second sheet DMA04 time out		C
CFF25	ASIC200 second sheet DMA05 time out		C
CFF26	ASIC200 second sheet DMA06 time out		C
CFF27	ASIC200 second sheet DMA07 time out		C
CFF28	ASIC200 second sheet DMA08 time out		C
CFF29	ASIC200 second sheet DMA09 time out		C
CFF2A	ASIC200 second sheet DMA10 time out		C
CFF2B	ASIC200 second sheet DMA11 time out		C
CFF2C	ASIC200 second sheet DMA12 time out		C
CFF2D	ASIC200 second sheet DMA13 time out		C
CFF2E	ASIC200 second sheet DMA14 time out		C
CFF2F	ASIC200 second sheet DMA15 time out		C
CFF30	ASIC200 second sheet DMA16 time out		C
CFF31	ASIC200 second sheet DMA17 time out		C
CFF32	ASIC200 second sheet DMA18 time out		C
CFF33	ASIC200 second sheet DMA19 time out		C
CFF34	ASIC200 second sheet DMA20 time out		C
CFF35	ASIC200 second sheet DMA21 time out		C
CFF36	ASIC200 second sheet DMA22 time out		C
CFF37	ASIC200 second sheet DMA23 time out		C

Code	Item	Relevant electrical components, units, and options	Rank
CFF38	ASIC200 second sheet DMA24 time out	• MFP board (MFPB)/ DIMM0/DIMM1/EIF board (IC-412)	C
CFF39	ASIC200 second sheet DMA25 time out		C
CFF3A	ASIC200 second sheet DMA26 time out		C
CFF3B	ASIC200 second sheet DMA27 time out		C
CFF3C	ASIC200 second sheet DMA28 time out		C
CFF3D	ASIC200 second sheet DMA29 time out		C
CFF3E	ASIC200 second sheet DMA30 time out		C
CFF3F	ASIC200 second sheet DMA31 time out		C
CFF40	ASIC200 third sheet DMA00 time out		C
CFF41	ASIC200 third sheet DMA01 time out		C
CFF42	ASIC200 third sheet DMA02 time out		C
CFF43	ASIC200 third sheet DMA03 time out		C
CFF44	ASIC200 third sheet DMA04 time out		C
CFF45	ASIC200 third sheet DMA05 time out		C
CFF46	ASIC200 third sheet DMA06 time out		C
CFF47	ASIC200 third sheet DMA07 time out		C
CFF48	ASIC200 third sheet DMA08 time out		C
CFF49	ASIC200 third sheet DMA09 time out		C
CFF4A	ASIC200 third sheet DMA10 time out		C
CFF4B	ASIC200 third sheet DMA11 time out		C
CFF4C	ASIC200 third sheet DMA12 time out		C
CFF4D	ASIC200 third sheet DMA13 time out		C
CFF4E	ASIC200 third sheet DMA14 time out		C
CFF4F	ASIC200 third sheet DMA15 time out		C
CFF50	ASIC200 third sheet DMA16 time out		C
CFF51	ASIC200 third sheet DMA17 time out		C
CFF52	ASIC200 third sheet DMA18 time out		C
CFF53	ASIC200 third sheet DMA19 time out		C
CFF54	ASIC200 third sheet DMA20 time out		C
CFF55	ASIC200 third sheet DMA21 time out		C
CFF56	ASIC200 third sheet DMA22 time out		C
CFF57	ASIC200 third sheet DMA23 time out		C
CFF58	ASIC200 third sheet DMA24 time out		C
CFF59	ASIC200 third sheet DMA25 time out		C
CFF5A	ASIC200 third sheet DMA26 time out		C
CFF5B	ASIC200 third sheet DMA27 time out		C
CFF5C	ASIC200 third sheet DMA28 time out		C
CFF5D	ASIC200 third sheet DMA29 time out		C
CFF5E	ASIC200 third sheet DMA30 time out		C

19.5 Solution

19.5.1 C0001: LCT communication error

Relevant electrical parts	
PC control board (PCCB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
2	PCCB replacement	—	—

19.5.2 C0202: Tray 1 feeder up/down abnormality

Relevant parts	
Paper feed tray 1 lift-up motor (M12) Paper feed tray 1 upper limit sensor (PS25)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M12-PRCB CN18 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector of M12 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS25-relay CN106-PRCB CN21 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS25 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN21-3 (ON)	C-20
5	M12 operation check	PRCB CN18-7 (REM)	C-20
6	Change M12	—	—
7	PRCB ICP7 conduction check	—	—
8	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.3 C0204: Tray 2 feeder up/down abnormality

Relevant parts	
Paper feed tray 2 lift-up motor (M13) Paper feed tray 2 upper limit sensor (PS22)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M13-PRCB CN18 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector of M13 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS22-relay CN113-PRCB CN22 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS22 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN22-3 (ON)	C-24
5	M13 operation check	PRCB CN18-9 (REM)	C-20
6	Change M13	—	—
7	PRCB ICP7 conduction check	—	—
8	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.4 C0206: Tray3 lift-up failure

19.5.5 C0208: Tray4 lift-up failure

Relevant parts	
Tray3 lift-up motor (M124) Tray4 lift-up motor (M125) Tray3 upper limit sensor (PS114) Tray4 upper limit sensor (PS123)	PC Control board (PCCB) MFP board (MFPB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M124-PCCB CN4 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between M125-PCCB CN8 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS114-PCCB CN6 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector between PS123-PCCB CN10 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	Check the connector of each motor for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
6	PS114 I/O check, sensor check	PCCB CN6-3 (ON)	PC-207 B-1
7	PS123 I/O check, sensor check	PCCB CN10-3 (ON)	PC-207 G-4
8	M124 operation check	PCCB CN4-4 (ON)	PC-207 B-4
9	M125 operation check	PCCB CN8-12 (ON)	PC-207 G-1
10	Change PRCB	—	—
11	Change MFPB	—	—

19.5.6 C0209: LCT elevator motor failure

Relevant parts	
Elevator motor (M5) Elevator motor pulse sensor (PS10)	Relay board (REYB) PC control board (PCCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M5-REYB CN2 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS10-REYB CN2 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of each motor for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS10 I/O check, sensor check	REYB CN2<A>-5 (ON)	PC-408 K-5
5	M5 operation check	REYB CN2<B>-6 to 7	PC-408 K-6
6	Change REYB	—	—
7	Change PCCB	—	—

19.5.7 C0210: LCT lift failure

Relevant parts	
Lift-up upper limit sensor (PS4) Lift-up lower limit sensor (PS13) Elevator motor pulse sensor (PS10)	Lower limit over run sensor (PS7) PC control board (PCCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between PS4-PCCB CN5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS13-PCCB CN2 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS10-PCCB CN2 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector between PS7-PCCB CN2 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	PS4 I/O check, sensor check	PCCB CN5-12 (ON)	PC-408 G-8
6	PS13 I/O check, sensor check	REYB CN2<A>-9 (ON)	PC-408 K-3 to 4
7	PS10 I/O check, sensor check	REYB CN2<A>-5 (ON)	PC-408 K-5
8	PS7 I/O check, sensor check	REYB CN2<A>-2 (ON)	PC-408 K-6
9	Change PCCB	—	—

19.5.8 C0211: Manual feed up/down abnormality

Relevant parts	
Transport motor (M1) Manual pick-up solenoid (SD1) Manual lift-up position sensor (PS26)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M1-PRCB CN14 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector of M1 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS26-relay CN93-PRCB CN19 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector between SD1-relay CN99-relay CN93-PRCB CN19 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	PS26 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN19-20 (ON)	C-10
6	SD1 operation check	PRCB CN19-17 (ON)	C-10
7	M1 operation check	PRCB CN14-2 (REM) PRCB CN14-5 (LOCK)	C-2 to 5
8	Change M1	—	—
9	PRCB ICP5 conduction check	—	—
10	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.9 C0212: LCT lock release failure

Relevant parts	
Tray lock solenoid (SD1)	PC control board (PCCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between SD1-PCCB CN7 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	SD1 operation check	PCCB CN7-4 (ON)	PC-408 G-10
3	Change PCCB	—	—

19.5.10 C0213: LCT shift gate operation failure

Relevant parts	
Division board position sensor (PS14) Division board position motor (M3)	PC control board (PCCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between PS14-PCCB CN2<B> for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between M3-PCCB CN2<B> for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of each motor for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS14 I/O check, sensor check	REYB CN2<B>-1 (ON)	PC-408 K-7
5	M3 operation check	REYB CN2<B>-2 to 3	PC-408 K-7
6	Change PCCB	—	—

19.5.11 C0214: LCT shift failure

Relevant parts	
Shift motor pulse sensor (PS8) Shifter stop position sensor (PS11) Shifter home position sensor (PS12)	PC control board (PCCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between PS8-PCCB CN2<A> for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS11-PCCB CN2<A> for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS12-PCCB CN2<A>for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS8 I/O check, sensor check	REYB CN2<A>-3 (ON)	PC-408 K-6
5	PS11 I/O check, sensor check	REYB CN2<A>-7 (ON)	PC-408 K-4
6	PS12 I/O check, sensor check	REYB CN2<A>-8 (ON)	PC-408 K-4
7	Change PCCB	—	—

19.5.12 C0215: LCT shift motor failure

Relevant parts	
Shift motor (M4) Shift motor pulse sensor (PS8)	PC control board (PCCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M4-PCCB CN2<B> for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS8-PCCB CN2<A> for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of each motor for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS8 I/O check, sensor check	REYB CN2<A>-3 (ON)	PC-408 K-6
5	M4 operation check	REYB CN2<B>-4 to 5 (ON)	PC-408 K-7
6	Change PCCB	—	—

19.5.13 C1004: FNS communication error

Relevant parts	
FS control board (FSCB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Disconnect and then connect the power cord. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
2	Rewrite the firmware.	—	—
3	JSCB F1 conduction check	—	—
4	JSCB F2 conduction check	—	—
5	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.14 C1081: SD communication error

Relevant parts	
SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Disconnect and then connect the power cord. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
2	Rewrite the firmware.	—	—
3	Change SDDB	—	—
4	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.15 C1113: Center-staple lead edge stopper motor malfunction

Relevant parts	
Leading edge stopper motor (M20) Leading edge stopper home sensor (PS45)	SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M20-SDDB PJ8 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS45-SDDB PJ10 for proper connection and correct as necessary.		
3	Check the connector of M20 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS45 I/O check, sensor check	SDDB PJ10-3 (ON)	SD-509 G-6
5	M20 operation check	SDDB PJ8-1 to 4	SD-509 B-5
6	Change M20	—	—
7	Change SDDB	—	—
8	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.16 C1114: Center-staple front adjust drive motor malfunction

Relevant parts	
Center staple alignment motor/F (M24) Center staple alignment home sensor/F (PS42)	SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M24-SDDB PJ7 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS42-SDDB PJ9 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M24 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS42 I/O check, sensor check	SDDB PJ9-6 (ON)	SD-509 G-2
5	M24 operation check	SDDB PJ7-1 to 4	SD-509 G-3
6	Change M24	—	—
7	Change SDDB	—	—
8	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.17 C1115: Center-staple knife drive motor malfunction

Relevant parts	
Center fold plate motor (M26) Center fold plate home sensor (PS47)	SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M26-SDDB PJ2 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS47-SDDB PJ10 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M26 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS47 I/O check, sensor check	SDDB PJ10-6 (ON)	SD-509 G-6
5	M26 operation check	SDDB PJ2-1 (CW) SDDB PJ2-3 (CCW)	SD-509 B-4
6	Change M26	—	—
7	Change SDDB	—	—
8	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.18 C1116: Center-staple transfer motor malfunction

Relevant parts	
Center fold roller motor (M25)	SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M25-SDDB PJ4 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector of M25 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	M25 operation check	SDDB PJ4-1 to 11	SD-509 B-3
4	Change M25	—	—
5	Change SDDB	—	—
6	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.19 C1150: Center-staple rear adjust drive motor malfunction

Relevant parts	
Center staple alignment motor/R (M23) Center staple alignment home sensor/R (PS41)	SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M23-SDDB PJ7 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS41-SDDB PJ9 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M23 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS41 I/O check, sensor check	SDDB PJ9-3 (ON)	SD-509 G-2
5	M23 operation check	SDDB PJ7-5 to 8	SD-509 G-2
6	Change M23	—	—
7	Change SDDB	—	—
8	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.20 C1156: Center-staple paddle roller motor malfunction (trailing edge)

Relevant parts	
Upper paddle motor (M21) Paper detection sensor/1 (PS43) Paper detection sensor/2 (PS44)	SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M21-SDDB PJ5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS43-SDDB PJ9 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS44-SDDB PJ13 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector of M21 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	PS43 I/O check, sensor check	SDDB PJ9-8 (ON)	SD-509 G-1
6	PS44 I/O check, sensor check	SDDB PJ13-2 (ON)	SD-509 G-3
7	M21 operation check	SDDB PJ5-6 to 10	SD-509 B-3
8	Change M21	—	—
9	Change SDDB	—	—
10	Change FSCB	—	—

⚠ 19.5.21 C1158: Center-staple paddle roller motor malfunction (leading edge)

Relevant parts	
lower paddle motor (M22) Paper detection sensor/1 (PS43) Paper detection sensor/2 (PS44)	SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the motor and sensor connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector of M22 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	PS43 I/O check, sensor check	SDDB PJ9-8 (ON)	SD-509 G-1
4	PS44 I/O check, sensor check	SDDB PJ13-2 (ON)	SD-509 G-3
5	M22 operation check	SDDB PJ5-1 to 5	SD-509 B-4
6	Change M22	—	—
7	Change SDDB	—	—
8	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.22 C1181: Malfunctioning of belt up/down movement

Relevant parts	
Conveyance motor/1 (M5) Belt retract solenoid (SD5) Belt position sensor (PS13)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M5-FSCB CN17 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between SD5-FSCB CN19 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS13-FSCB CN7 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector of M5 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	PS13 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN7-12 (ON)	FS-529 B-5 to 6
6	M5 operation check	FSCB CN17-3 to 6	FS-529 G-6
7	Change M5	—	—
8	SD5 operation check	FSCB CN19-5 (ON)	FS-529 G-4
9	Change SD5	—	—
10	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.23 C1182: Shift motor drive malfunction

(1) When JS-505 is installed

Relevant parts	
Shift motor (M2) Shift home sensor (PS6)	JS control board (JSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M2-JSCB PJ4 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS6-JSCB PJ7 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M2 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS6 I/O check, sensor check	JSCB PJ7-18 (ON)	JS-505 F-3
5	M2 operation check	JSCB PJ4-1 to 4	JS-505 F-6
6	Change M2	—	—
7	JSCB F6 conduction check	—	—
8	Change JSCB	—	—

(2) When FS-527 is installed

Relevant parts	
Tray2 shift motor (M16) Tray2 shift home sensor (PS25)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M16-FSCB PJ5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS25-FSCB PJ21 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M16 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS25 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ21-6 (ON)	FS-527 J-3
5	M16 operation check	FSCB PJ5-5 (REM)	FS-527 B to C-9
6	Change M16	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.24 C1183: Elevate drive malfunction

(1) When FS-527 is installed

Relevant parts	
Elevate motor (M15) Tray1 lower position sensor (PS21) Tray1 upper position sensor (PS24) Tray1 upper position switch (SW2) Tray1 lower position switch (SW3)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M15-FSCB PJ4 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS21-FSCB PJ21 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS24-FSCB PJ16 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector between SW2-FSCB PJ3 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	Check the connector between SW3-FSCB PJ3 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
6	Check the connector of M15 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
7	PS21 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ21-3 (ON)	FS-527 J-3
8	PS24 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ16-9 (ON)	FS-527 J-4
9	SW2 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ3-2 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-10
10	SW3 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ3-2 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-10
11	M15 operation check	FSCB PJ4-1 to 11	FS-527 B to C-4
12	Change M15	—	—
13	Change FSCB	—	—

(2) When FS-529 is installed

Relevant parts	
Tray up/down motor (M2) Tray lower limit sensor (PS6) Paper surface detect sensor/1 (PS2) Paper surface detect sensor/2 (PS3)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M2-FSCB CN12 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS6-FSCB CN5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS2-FSCB CN4 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector between PS3-FSCB CN4 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	Check the connector of M2 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
6	PS6 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN5-9 (ON)	FS-529 B-2
7	PS2 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN4-3 (ON)	FS-529 B-3
8	PS3 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN4-6 (ON)	FS-529 B-2
9	M2 operation check	FSCB CN12-1 to 2	FS-529 G-2
10	Change M2	—	—
11	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.25 C1190: Alignment plate motor drive malfunction / Alignment plate R drive malfunction

(1) When FS-527 is installed

Relevant parts	
Alignment plate motor (M13) Alignment plate home sensor (PS17)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M13-FSCB PJ8 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS17-FSCB PJ17 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M13 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS17 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ17-3 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-8
5	M13 operation check	FSCB PJ8-1 to 4	FS-527 B to C-7
6	Change M13	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

(2) When FS-529 is installed

Relevant parts	
Alignment motor/R (M4) Alignment plate home sensor/R (PS9)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M4-FSCB CN14 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS9-FSCB CN6 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M4 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS9 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN6-9 (ON)	FS-529 B-1
5	M4 operation check	FSCB CN14-5 to 8	FS-529 G-3
6	Change M4	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.26 C1191: Alignment plate F drive malfunction

(1) When FS-529 is installed

Relevant parts	
Alignment motor/F (M3) Alignment plate home sensor/F (PS8)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M3-FSCB CN14 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS8-FSCB CN6 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M3 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS8 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN6-6 (ON)	FS-529 B-1
5	M3 operation check	FSCB CN14-1 to 4	FS-529 G-2
6	Change M3	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.27 C1194: Leading edge stopper motor drive malfunction

(1) When FS-527 is installed

Relevant parts	
Leading edge stopper motor (M14) Leading edge stopper home sensor (PS20)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M14-FSCB PJ8 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS20-FSCB PJ17 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M14 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS20 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ17-6 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-8
5	M14 operation check	FSCB PJ8-9 to 12	FS-527 B to C-6
6	Change M14	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

(2) When FS-529 is installed

Relevant parts	
Stapler motor (M8) Leading edge stopper home sensor (PS14)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M8-FSCB CN20 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS14-FSCB CN8 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M8 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS14 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN8-3 (ON)	FS-529 B-6
5	M8 operation check	—	—
6	Change stapler unit	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.28 C11A1: Tray 2 exit roller pressure/ retraction malfunction / Exit roller pressure/ retraction malfunction

(1) When FS-527 is installed

Relevant parts	
Exit roller retraction motor (M9) Exit roller pressure sensor (PS12)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M9-FSCB PJ9 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS12-FSCB PJ16 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M9 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS12 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ16-12 (ON)	FS-527 J-4
5	M9 operation check	FSCB PJ9-5 (REM)	FS-527 J-1
6	Change M9	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

(2) When FS-529 is installed

Relevant parts	
Pick up roller position motor (M1) Pick up roller position sensor (PS12)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M9-FSCB CN11 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS12-FSCB CN7 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M1 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS12 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN7-9 (ON)	FS-529 B-5
5	M1 operation check	FSCB CN11-3 to 6	FS-529 G-1
6	Change M1	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.29 C11A2: Accommodation roller pressure/ retraction malfunction

Relevant parts	
Accommodation roller retraction motor (M10) Accommodation roller pressure sensor (PS13)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M10-FSCB PJ9 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS13-FSCB PJ16 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M10 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS13 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ16-15 (ON)	FS-527 J-3
5	M10 operation check	FSCB PJ9-8 (REM)	FS-527 J-1
6	Change M10	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.30 C11A7: Tray 3 exit roller pressure/ retraction malfunction

Relevant parts	
Tray3 exit roller retraction motor (M17) Tray3 exit roller retraction sensor (PS35)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M17-FSCB PJ30 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS35-FSCB PJ12 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M17 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS35 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ12-6 (ON)	FS-527 (JS-603) L-10
5	M17 operation check	FSCB PJ30-2 (REM)	FS-527 (JS-603) L-9
6	Change M17	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.31 C11B0: Stapler movement drive malfunction

(1) When FS-527 is installed

Relevant parts	
Stapler home sensor/1 (PS18) Stapler home sensor/2 (PS19)	FS control board (FSCB) Stapler movement motor (M11)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M1-FSCB PJ8 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS18-FSCB PJ17 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS19-FSCB PJ17 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector of M11 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	PS18 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ17-12 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-7
6	PS19 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ17-15 (ON)	FS-527 B to C-7
7	M11 operation check	FSCB PJ8-5 to 8	FS-527 B to C-6
8	Change M11	—	—
9	Change FSCB	—	—

(2) When FS-529 is installed

Relevant parts	
Stapler movement motor (M7) Stapler home sensor (PS11)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M7-FSCB CN18 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS11-FSCB CN7 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M7 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS11 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB CN7-6 (ON)	FS-529 B-5
5	M7 operation check	FSCB CN18-1 to 4	FS-529 G-5
6	Change M7	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.32 C11B2: Staple drive malfunction

Relevant parts	
Stapler unit	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the motor and sensor connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Change stapler unit	—	—
3	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.33 C11B5: Saddle stapler drive malfunction

Relevant parts	
Saddle stapler unit	SD drive board (SDDB) FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the motor and sensor connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Change saddle stapler unit	—	—
3	Change SDDB	—	—
4	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.34 C11C0: Punch motor drive malfunction

Relevant parts	
Punch motor/1 (M100) Punch home sensor/1 (PS100)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M100-FSCB PJ19 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS100-FSCB PJ19 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M100 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS100 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ19-8 (ON)	FS-527 (PK-517) J-9
5	M100 operation check	FSCB PJ19-1 (CW) FSCB PJ19-3 (CCW)	FS-527 (PK-517) J-8
6	Change M100	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.35 C11E0: Duplex path switching motor drive malfunction / Finisher route change malfunction

(1) When FS-527 is installed

Relevant parts	
Duplex path switching motor (M2) Duplex path switching sensor (PS3)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M2-FSCB PJ29 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS3-FSCB PJ11 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M2 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS3 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ11-6 (ON)	FS-527 I-11
5	M2 operation check	FSCB PJ29-1 to 3	FS-527 I-12
6	Change M2	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

(2) When JS-505 is installed

Relevant parts	
Route change motor (M3) Route change home sensor (PS4)	JS control board (JSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M3-JSCB PJ6 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS4-JSCB PJ7 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M3 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS4 I/O check, sensor check	JSCB PJ7-15 (ON)	JS-505 F-4
5	M3 operation check	JSCB PJ6-1 to 2	JS-505 F-6
6	Change M3	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.36 C11E1: Upper lower path switching motor drive malfunction

Relevant parts	
Upper lower path switching motor (M6) Upper lower path switching sensor (PS26)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M6-FSCB PJ9 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS26-FSCB PJ21 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M6 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS26 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ21-9 (ON)	FS-527 J-2
5	M6 operation check	FSCB PJ9-1 (REM)	FS-527 J-2
6	Change M6	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.37 C11E2: Tray1 path switching motor drive malfunction

Relevant parts	
Tray1 path switching motor (M8) Tray1 path switching home sensor (PS7)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M8-FSCB PJ9 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS7-FSCB PJ16 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M8 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS7 I/O check, sensor check	FSCB PJ16-3 (ON)	FS-527 J-5
5	M8 operation check	FSCB PJ9-4 (REM)	FS-527 J-2
6	Change M8	—	—
7	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.38 C1301: Fan motor drive malfunction

Relevant parts	
Fan motor (FM1)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between FM1-FSCB CN19 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector of FM1 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	FM1 operation check	FSCB CN19-2 (LOCK)	FS-529 G-4
4	Change FM1	—	—
5	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.39 C1402: FS NVRAM memory error

Relevant parts	
FS control board (FSCB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Disconnect and then connect the power cord. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
2	Rewrite the firmware.	—	—
3	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.40 C2152: Transfer belt pressure welding alienation

Relevant parts	
Transport motor (M1) Transfer belt retraction clutch (CL5) Transfer belt retraction sensor (PS39)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M1-PRCB CN14 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector of M1 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS39-relay CN124-PRCB CN3 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector between CL5-relay CN103-PRCB CN24 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	PS39 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN3-15 (ON)	C-13
6	CL5 operation check	PRCB CN24-4 (ON)	C-11
7	M1 operation check	PRCB CN14-2 (REM) PRCB CN14-5 (LOCK)	C-2 to 5
8	Change M1	—	—
9	PRCB ICP5 conduction check	—	—
10	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.41 C2164: PC charge malfunction

Relevant parts	
Drum unit	High voltage unit (HV) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the drum unit for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the HV CN1HV, CN2HV connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the PRCB CN17, CN20 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Change drum unit	—	—
5	Change HV	—	—
6	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.42 C2253: Color PC drum motor's failure to turn

19.5.43 C2254: Color PC drum motor's turning at abnormal timing

Relevant parts	
Color PC motor (M2)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M2-PRCB CN14 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the M2 connector for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	M2 operation check	PRCB CN14-8 (REM) PRCB CN14-10 (LOCK)	C-2 to 5
4	Change M2	—	—
5	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.44 C225D: Color developing unit de-engagement failure

Relevant parts	
Color dev. unit engaged motor (M10) Color dev. unit engaged position sensor (PS37) Developing clutch/K (CL6)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M10-PRCB CN8 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the M10 connector for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between PS37-PRCB CN8 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector between CL6-relay CN102-PRCB CN24 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	PS37 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN8-15 (ON)	C-18
6	CL6 operation check	PRCB CN24-2 (ON)	C-11
7	M10 operation check	PRCB CN8-16 to 17	C-19
8	Change M10	—	—
9	PRCB ICP5, 7 conduction check	—	—
10	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.45 C2355: Transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor's failure to turn

Relevant parts	
Transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor (FM6)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between FM6-relay CN127-relay CN126-PRCB CN3 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	FM6 operation check	PRCB CN3-17 (REM) PRCB CN3-18 (LOCK)	C-14
4	Change FM6	—	—
5	PRCB ICP2 conduction check	—	—
6	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.46 C2411: Developing unit (C) new article release

19.5.47 C2412: Developing unit (M) new article release

19.5.48 C2413: Developing unit (Y) new article release

19.5.49 C2414: Developing unit (K) new article release

Relevant parts	
Developing unit/Y,M,C,K	Front side relay board (FREYB) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Reinstall developing unit	—	—
2	Check the connector between developing unit-FREYB CN4, CN6, CN8, CN10 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between FREYB CN1, CN2-PRCB CN4, CN5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Change toner developing unit	—	—
6	Change FREYB	—	—
6	PRCB ICP12 conduction check	—	—
7	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.50 C2551: Abnormally low toner density detected cyan TCR sensor

19.5.51 C2553: Abnormally low toner density detected magenta TCR sensor

19.5.52 C2555: Abnormally low toner density detected yellow TCR sensor

19.5.53 C2557: Abnormally low toner density detected black TCR sensor

Relevant parts	
Developing unit/Y,M,C,K	Toner cartridge motor/YM (M6)
Toner cartridge/Y,M,C,K	Toner cartridge motor/CK (M7)
Toner near empty switch/Y (RS4)	Toner supply motor/YM (M8)
Toner near empty switch/M (RS5)	Toner supply motor/CK (M9)
Toner near empty switch/C (RS6)	Front side relay board (FREYB)
Toner near empty switch/K (RS7)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Perform image troubleshooting procedure if image density is low.	—	—
2	Reinstall developing unit	—	—
3	Reinstall toner cartridge	—	—
4	Check the connector between developing unit-FREYB CN4, CN6, CN8, CN10 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	Check the connector between FREYB CN1, CN2-PRCB CN4, CN5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
6	M6, M7 operation check	PRCB CN13-12 to 15 (M6) PRCB CN13-16 to 19 (M7)	J-21
7	M8, M9 operation check	PRCB CN12-9 to 12 (M8) PRCB CN12-13 to 16 (M9)	J-10
8	If the toner empty sensor and its surroundings inside the sub hopper are dirtied with toner, clean them.	—	—
9	Change developing unit	—	—
10	Change FREYB	—	—
11	PRCB ICP3,4 conduction check	—	—
12	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.54 C2552: Abnormally high toner density detected cyan TCR sensor

19.5.55 C2554: Abnormally high toner density detected magenta TCR sensor

19.5.56 C2556: Abnormally high toner density detected yellow TCR sensor

19.5.57 C2558: Abnormally high toner density detected black TCR sensor

Relevant parts	
Developing unit/Y,M,C,K Toner cartridge/Y,M,C,K	Front side relay board (FREYB) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Reinstall developing unit	—	—
2	Reinstall toner cartridge	—	—
3	Check the connector between developing unit-FREYB CN4, CN6, CN8, CN10 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector between FREYB CN1, CN2-PRCB CN4, CN5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	Change developing unit	—	—
6	Change FREYB	—	—
7	PRCB ICP12 conduction check	—	—
8	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.58 C2559: Cyan TCR sensor adjustment failure

19.5.59 C255A: Magenta TCR sensor adjustment failure

19.5.60 C255B: Yellow TCR sensor adjustment failure

19.5.61 C255C: Black TCR sensor adjustment failure

Relevant parts	
Developing unit/Y,M,C,K Toner supply motor/YM (M8) Toner supply motor/CK (M9)	Toner cartridge motor/YM (M6) Toner cartridge motor/CK (M7) Front side relay board (FREYB) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Reinstall developing unit	—	—
2	Check the connector between developing unit-FREYB CN4, CN6, CN8, CN10 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between FREYB CN1, CN2-PRCB CN4, CN5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	M6, M7 operation check	PRCB CN13-12 to 15 (M6) PRCB CN13-16 to 19 (M7)	J-21
5	M8, M9 operation check	PRCB CN12-9 to 12 (M8) PRCB CN12-13 to 16 (M9)	J-10
6	Change developing unit	—	—
7	Change FREYB	—	—
8	PRCB ICP3,4,12 conduction check	—	—
9	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.62 C2561: Cyan TCR sensor failure

19.5.63 C2562: Magenta TCR sensor failure

19.5.64 C2563: Yellow TCR sensor failure

19.5.65 C2564: Black TCR sensor failure

Relevant parts	
Developing unit/Y,M,C,K	Front side relay board (FREYB) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Reinstall developing unit	—	—
2	Check the connector between developing unit-FREYB CN4, CN6, CN8, CN10 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between FREYB CN1, CN2-PRCB CN4, CN5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Change developing unit	—	—
5	Change FREYB	—	—
6	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.66 C2650: Main backup media access error

Relevant parts	
Service EEPROM board (SV ERB)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector (CN23) on PRCB, the connector (CN1) on SV ERB, and the harness between the boards for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Change PRCB *1.* Turn OFF the main power switch and replace the current PRCB with a new one. (When using a PRCB of another machine in service, be sure to use a PRCB installed in the same model.) See P.98 *2.* Update the PRCB firmware. *3.* After completing the firmware update, turn OFF and ON the main power switch and check to see that warm-up is started. Make sure that malfunction codes other than C2650 or improper IU/TC placement is not detected. *4.* When the trouble cannot be solved, reinstall the removed PRCB to the original board. **NOTE** • **When taking the above steps, check whether PRCB is defective or not without replacing the SV ERB.**	—	—
3	Change SV ERB *1.* Replace the current SV ERB with a new one. See P.99 *2.* Turn ON the main power switch and check to see that warm-up is started. (One minute is spent to prepare the new SV ERB for use. During the period, the control panel backlight stays off.) Make sure that malfunction codes other than C2650 or improper IU/TC placement is not detected. *3.* Make the specified readjustments. See P.99	—	—
4	If the above actions do not solve the problem, contact KMBT.	—	—

19.5.67 C2A11: Drum unit/C new article release

19.5.68 C2A12: Drum unit/M new article release

19.5.69 C2A13: Drum unit/Y new article release

19.5.70 C2A14: Drum unit/K new article release

Relevant parts	
Drum unit/Y,M,C,K	Front side relay board (FREYB) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Clean the connection between the drum unit and the machine if dirty.	—	—
2	Reinstall drum unit	—	—
3	Check the connector between drum unit-FREYB CN5, CN7, CN9, CN11 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector between FREYB CN1, CN2-PRCB CN4, CN5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	Change drum unit	—	—
6	Change FREYB	—	—
7	PRCB ICP12 conduction check	—	—
8	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.71 C3101: Fusing roller separation failure

Relevant parts	
Fusing pressure roller retraction motor (M11) Fusing pressure roller home sensor (PS32) Fusing pressure roller retraction sensor (PS38)	Printer control board (PRCB) Fusing unit

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M11-PRCB CN3 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS32-PRCB CN3 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between fusing unit-PRCB CN12 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS32 I/O check, sensor check	PRCB CN3-9 (ON)	C-13
5	M11 operation check	PRCB CN3-5 to 6	C-13
6	Change M11	—	—
7	Change fusing unit	—	—
8	PRCB ICP6 conduction check	—	—
9	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.72 C3201: Fusing motor failure to turn

19.5.73 C3202: Fusing motor turning at abnormal timing

Relevant parts	
Fusing motor (M3)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M3-PRCB CN11 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the loading status of the fusing unit drive, and correct the error as necessary.	—	—
3	M3 operation check	PRCB CN11-9 (REM) PRCB CN11-12 (LOCK)	J-6
4	Change M3	—	—
5	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.74 C3302: Fusing cooling fan motor/2, 3 failure to turn

Relevant parts	
Fusing cooling fan motor/2 (FM5)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between FM5-relay CN11-relay CN9-PRCB CN9 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	FM5 operation check	PRCB CN9-17 (LOCK)	J-12
4	Change FM5	—	—
5	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.75 C3421: Fusing heaters trouble (Heating side)

19.5.76 C3423: Fusing heaters trouble (Pressurizing side)

Relevant parts	
Fusing unit	DC power supply (DCPU) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the fusing unit for correct installation (whether it is secured in position).	—	—
2	Check the open/close operation of the right door.	—	—
3	Check the fusing unit, DCPU and PRCB for proper connection and correct or change as necessary.	—	—
4	Change fusing unit	—	—
6	Change PRCB	—	—
7	Change DCPU	—	—

19.5.77 C3721: Fusing abnormally high temperature detection (Center of the heating side)

19.5.78 C3722: Fusing abnormally high temperature detection (Edge of the heating side)

19.5.79 C3723: Fusing abnormally high temperature detection (Pressurizing side)

Relevant parts	
Fusing unit	DC power supply (DCPU) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the fusing unit for correct installation (whether it is secured in position).	—	—
2	Check the open/close operation of the right door.	—	—
3	Check the fusing unit, DCPU and PRCB for proper connection and correct or change as necessary.	—	—
4	Change fusing unit	—	—
5	Change PRCB	—	—
6	Change DCPU	—	—

19.5.80 C3821: Fusing abnormally low temperature detection (Heating side)

19.5.81 C3823: Fusing abnormally low temperature detection (Pressurizing side)

Relevant parts	
Fusing unit	DC power supply (DCPU) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the fusing unit for correct installation (whether it is secured in position).	—	—
2	Check the open/close operation of the right door.	—	—
3	Check the fusing unit, DCPU and PRCB for proper connection and correct or change as necessary.	—	—
4	Change fusing unit	—	—
5	Change PRCB	—	—
6	Change DCPU	—	—

19.5.82 C3921: Fusing sensor wire breaks detection (Heating side)

19.5.83 C3923: Fusing sensor wire breaks detection (Pressurizing side)

Relevant parts	
Fusing unit	DC power supply (DCPU) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the fusing unit for correct installation (whether it is secured in position).	—	—
2	Check the open/close operation of the right door.	—	—
3	Check the fusing unit, DCPU and PRCB for proper connection and correct or change as necessary.	—	—
4	Change fusing unit	—	—
5	Change PRCB	—	—
6	Change DCPU	—	—

19.5.84 C4101: Polygon motor rotation trouble

Relevant parts	
PH unit	PH relay board (PHREYB) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between PH unit-PHREYB CN6 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PHREYB CN3-PRCB CN26 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Change PH unit	—	—
4	PHREYB ICP1 conduction check	—	—
5	Change PHREYB	—	—
6	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.85 C4501: Laser malfunction

Relevant parts	
PH unit	PH relay board (PHREYB) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between PH unit-PHREYB CN5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PHREYB CN2-PRCB CN25 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Change PH unit	—	—
4	PRCB ICP12 conduction check	—	—
5	Change PHREYB	—	—
6	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.86 C5102: Transport motor's failure to turn

19.5.87 C5103: Transport motor's turning at abnormal timing

Relevant parts	
Transport motor (M1)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M1-PRCB CN14 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check M1 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	M1 operation check	PRCB CN14-2 (REM) PRCB CN14-5 (LOCK)	C-2 to 5
4	Change M1	—	—
5	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.88 C5351: Power supply cooling fan motor/1's failure to turn

Relevant parts	
Power supply cooling fan motor (FM1)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between FM1-PRCB CN13 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	FM1 operation check	PRCB CN13-3 (LOCK)	J-20
4	Change FM1	—	—
5	PRCB ICP3 conduction check	—	—
6	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.89 C5354: Exhaust fan motor's failure to turn

Relevant parts	
Exhaust fan motor (FM3)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between FM3-relay CN88-PRCB CN15 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	FM3 operation check	PRCB CN15-8 (LOCK)	C-7
4	Change FM3	—	—
5	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.90 C5355: Cooling fan motor/3's failure to turn

Relevant parts	
Cooling fan motor/3 (FM2)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between FM2-relay CN18-PRCB CN13 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	FM2 operation check	PRCB CN13-6 (LOCK)	J-20
4	Change FM2	—	—
5	Change PRCB	—	—

⚠2 19.5.91 C5370: MFP control board cooling fan motor's failure to turn

Relevant parts	
MFP board cooling fan motor (FM7)	MFP board (MFPB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the FM7 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	FM7 operation check	MFPB PJ26-3 (LOCK)	L-22
4	Change FM17	—	—
5	Change MFPB	—	—

⚠2 19.5.92 C5372: MFP control board CPU temperature failure

Relevant parts	
CPU cooling fan motor	MFP board (MFPB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Reboot the machine.	—	—
2	Check the fan connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Fan motor operation check	MFPB PJ20	L-24
5	Change MFPB	—	—

19.5.93 C5501: AC signal abnormality

Relevant parts	
Fusing unit	DC power supply (DCPU) Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the fusing unit for correct installation (whether it is secured in position).	—	—
2	Check the fusing unit, DCPU and PRCB for proper connection and correct or change as necessary.	—	—
3	Change fusing unit	—	—
4	Change PRCB	—	—
5	Change DCPU	—	—

19.5.94 C5601: Engine control malfunction

Relevant parts	
Printer control board (PRCB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connectors on the PRCB for proper connection and correct or change as necessary.	—	—
2	Rewrite the firmware.	—	—
3	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.95 C6102: Drive system home sensor malfunction

19.5.96 C6103: Slider over running

Relevant parts	
Scanner home sensor (PS201) Scanner motor (M201)	Scanner relay board (REYB/SCAN) MFP board (MFPB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Correct or change the scanner drive (cable, pulley, gear, belt) if it is faulty.	—	—
2	Correct the scanner motor set screw if loose.	—	—
3	Adjust [Image Position Leading Edge] and [Feed Direction Adjustment].	—	—
4	Check the connector between M201-REYB/SCAN PJ5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	Check the connector between PS201-REYB/SCAN PJ8 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
6	Check the connector between REYB/SCAN PJ2-MFPB PJ14 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
7	PS201 I/O check, sensor check	REYB/SCAN PJ8-3 (ON)	T-9
8	M201 operation check	REYB/SCAN PJ5-1 to 4	T-12
9	Change REYB/SCAN.	—	—
10	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.97 C6704: Image input time out

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	CCD board (CCDB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Select [Service Mode] → [State Confirmation] → [Memory/HDD Adj.] → [Memory Bus Check] → [Scanner→Memory], and conduct the memory bus function.	—	—
2	Check the connectors between scanner section and MFPB for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Change MFPB	—	—
4	Change CCDB	—	—

19.5.98 C6751: CCD clamp/gain adjustment failure

Relevant parts	
Exposure unit	CCD board (CCDB) MFP board (MFPB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between CCDB PJ2-MFPB PJ01 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check for possible extraneous light and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Clean the lens, mirrors, CCD surface, and shading sheet if dirty	—	—
4	Correct reflective mirror of the scanner if faulty, or change scanner.	—	—
5	Change CCDB	—	—
6	Change MFPB	—	—

19.5.99 C6752: ASIC clock input error (front side)

19.5.100 C6753: ASIC clock input error (back side)

Relevant parts	
Exposure unit CCD board (CCDB)	Printer control board (PRCB) MFP board (MFPB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Correct the harness connection of CCDB if faulty.	—	—
2	Change CCDB	—	—
3	PRCB ICP11 conduction check	—	—
4	Change PRCB	—	—
5	Change MFPB	—	—

19.5.101 C6901: DSC board mount failure 1

19.5.102 C6902: DSC board bus check NG1-1

19.5.103 C6903: DSC board bus check NG1-2

Relevant parts	
DSC board (SC-507)	MFP board (MFPB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Correct the harness connection of DSC board if faulty.	—	—
2	Change DSC board	—	—
3	Change MFPB	—	—

19.5.104 C6F01: Scanner sequence trouble 1

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	DF control board (DFCB) Scanner relay board (REYB/SCAN)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Correct the harness connection between main body and ADF if faulty.	—	—
2	Change REYB/SCAN	—	—
3	Change DFCB	—	—
4	Change MFPB	—	—

19.5.105 C8101: Before reading pressure welding alienation mechanism trouble

Relevant parts	
Reading roller pressure/retraction motor (M4) Read roller sensor (PS6)	DF control board (DFCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M4-DFCB PJ6 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS6-DFCB PJ6 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M4 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS6 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ6-3 (ON)	DF-617 I-4 to 5
5	M4 operation check	DFCB PJ6-5 to 6	DF-617 I-4
6	Change M4	—	—
7	DFCB PS3 conduction check	—	—
⚠2 8	Change DFCB	—	—

19.5.106 C8102: Turn around pressure welding alienation trouble

Relevant parts	
Reverse roller pressure/retraction motor (M5) Reverse roller sensor (PS7)	DF control board (DFCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M5-DFCB PJ5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS7-REYB PJ3 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M5 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS7 I/O check, sensor check	REYB PJ3-3 (ON)	DF-617 L-7
5	DFCB F9 conduction check	—	—
6	M5 operation check	DFCB PJ5-10 to 13	DF-617 I-5
7	Change M5	—	—
8	DFCB PS2 conduction check	—	—
⚠2 9	Change DFCB	—	—

19.5.107 C8103: Lift up mechanism trouble (Upward movement)

Relevant parts	
Lift-up motor (M7) Lift up upper sensor (PS16)	DF control board (DFCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M7-DFCB PJ5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS16-DFCB PJ11 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M7 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS16 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ11-3 (ON)	DF-617 B to C-7
5	M7 operation check	DFCB PJ5-6 to 9	DF-617 I-5
6	Change M7	—	—
7	Change DFCB	—	—

19.5.108 C8106: Lift up mechanism trouble (Downward movement)

Relevant parts	
Lift-up motor (M7) Lift up lower sensor (PS15)	DF control board (DFCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M7-DFCB PJ5 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS15-REYB PJ3 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M7 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS15 I/O check, sensor check	REYB PJ3-6 (ON)	DF-617 L-7
5	DFCB F9 conduction check	—	—
6	M7 operation check	DFCB PJ5-6 to 9	DF-617 I-5
7	Change M7	—	—
8	DFCB PS1 conduction check	—	—
9	Change DFCB	—	—

19.5.109 C8107: Glass cleaning mechanism trouble

Relevant parts	
Glass cleaning motor (M9) Glass cleaning sensor (PS21)	DF control board (DFCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between M9-DFCB PJ17 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between PS21-DFCB PJ17 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector of M9 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	PS21 I/O check, sensor check	DFCB PJ17-7 (ON)	DF-617 I-3
5	M9 operation check	DFCB PJ17-1 to 4	DF-617 I-3
6	Change M9	—	—
7	Change DFCB	—	—

19.5.110 C8302: Cooling fan trouble

Relevant parts	
Cooling fan (FM1)	DF control board (DFCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between FM1-DFCB PJ7 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	FM1 operation check	DFCB PJ7-1 (ON)	DF-617 B to C-4
4	Change FM1	—	—
5	DFCB F7 conduction check	—	—
6	Change DFCB	—	—

19.5.111 C8401: EEPROM failure

Relevant parts	
DF control board (DFCB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Disconnect and then connect the power cord. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
2	Rewrite the firmware.	—	—
3	Change DFCB	—	—

19.5.112 C9401: Exposure turning on the lamp trouble detection

19.5.113 C9402: Exposure turning on the lamp abnormally detection

Relevant parts	
Exposure unit Flat cable	Inverter board (INVB) CCD board (CCDB) Scanner relay board (REYB/SCAN) MFP board (MFPB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connection between the lamp harness and the inverter board, and correct if necessary.	—	—
2	Check the connector between INVB CN1-REYB/SCAN PJ7 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check the connector between REYB/SCAN PJ2-MFPB PJ14 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check the connector between CCDB PJ2-MFPB PJ01 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	Change INVB	—	—
6	Change exposure unit	—	—
7	Change CCDB	—	—
8	Change REYB/SCAN	—	—

19.5.114 CA051: Standard controller configuration failure

19.5.115 CA052: Controller hardware error

19.5.116 CA053: Controller start failure

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check to see if the following setting has been correctly made: [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Image Controller Setting]. If changing the setting, turn OFF the main power switch and turn it ON again after 10 seconds or more.	—	—
2	Check the connectors of the MFP board (MFPB) for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Change MFPB	—	—

19.5.117 CC001: Vendor connection failure

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Coin vendor (Japan) Coin vendor kit (North America, Europe)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between vendor CN34-MFPB PJ24 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Change PRCB	—	—
3	Change vendor	—	—

19.5.118 CC151: ROM contents error upon startup (MSC)

19.5.119 CC152: ROM contents error upon startup (Scanner)

19.5.120 CC153: ROM contents error upon startup (PRT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the ROM version.	—	—
2	Rewrite the firmware.	—	—
3	Replace the appropriate board.	—	—

19.5.121 CC155: Finisher ROM error

Relevant parts	
⚠ FS control board (FSCB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Disconnect and then connect the power cord. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
2	Rewrite firmware.	—	—
3	Change FSCB	—	—

19.5.122 CC156: ADF ROM error

Relevant parts	
DF control board (DFCB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Disconnect and then connect the power cord. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
2	Rewrite the firmware.	—	—
3	Change DFCB	—	—

19.5.123 CC159: ROM contents error upon startup (DSC1)

19.5.124 CC15A: ROM contents error upon startup (DSC2)

Relevant parts	
DSC board (SC-507)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the DSC board connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Disconnect and then connect the power cord. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
3	Rewrite the firmware.	—	—
4	Change DSC board	—	—

19.5.125 CC163: ROM contents error (PRT)

Relevant parts	
Service EEPROM board (SV ERB)	Printer control board (PRCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Rewrite the firmware.	—	—
2	PRCB ICP12 conduction check	—	—
3	Change PRCB *1.* Turn OFF the main power switch and replace the current PRCB with a new one. (When using a PRCB of another machine in service, be sure to use a PRCB installed in the same model.) See P.98 *2.* Update the PRCB firmware. *3.* After completing the firmware update, turn OFF and ON the main power switch and check to see that warm-up is started. *4.* When the trouble cannot be solved, reinstall the removed PRCB to the original board. **NOTE** • **When taking the above steps, check whether PRCB is defective or not without replacing the SV ERB.**	—	—
4	Change SV ERB *1.* Replace the current SV ERB with a new one. See P.99 *2.* Turn ON the main power switch and check to see that warm-up is started. (One minute is spent to prepare the new SV ERB for use. During the period, the control panel backlight stays off.) *3.* Make the specified readjustments. See P.99	—	—
5	If the above actions do not solve the problem, contact KMBT.	—	—

19.5.126 CC164: ROM contents error (MSC)

Relevant parts	
Printer control board (PRCB)	MFP board (MFPB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the ROM version.	—	—
2	Rewrite the firmware.	—	—
3	Replace the corresponding board.	—	—
4	When not reviving even if the above-mentioned procedure is done, contact the responsible people of KMBT.	—	—

19.5.127 CC165: ROM contents error (ADF)

Relevant parts	
DF control board (DFCB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Disconnect and then connect the power cord. Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
2	Rewrite the firmware.	—	—
3	Change DFCB	—	—

19.5.128 CC170: Dynamic link error during starting (AP0)

19.5.129 CC171: Dynamic link error during starting (AP1)

19.5.130 CC172: Dynamic link error during starting (AP2)

19.5.131 CC173: Dynamic link error during starting (AP3)

19.5.132 CC174: Dynamic link error during starting (AP4)

19.5.133 CC180: Dynamic link error during starting (LDR)

19.5.134 CC181: Dynamic link error during starting (IBR)

19.5.135 CC182: Dynamic link error during starting (IID)

19.5.136 CC183: Dynamic link error during starting (IPF)

19.5.137 CC184: Dynamic link error during starting (IMY)

19.5.138 CC185: Dynamic link error during starting (SPF)

19.5.139 CC186: Dynamic link error during starting (OAP)

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	NVRAM board (NRB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	If the malfunction code “C-C172” has occurred, access [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Image Controller Setting] and check to see if “Controller 2,” “Controller 3,” or “Others” is set for [Image Controller Setting]. If any of these is set, according to the kind of controller, select “Controller 0” or “Controller 1.”	—	—
2	Change MFPB.	—	—
3	When not reviving even if the above-mentioned procedure is done, contact the responsible people of KMBT.	—	—

19.5.140 CC190: Outline font load error

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Hard disk

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between hard disk-MFPB PJ11 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Format hard disk.	—	—
3	Change hard disk	—	—
4	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.141 CC191: Setting parameter load error

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
2	Reinstall the loadable device driver.	—	—
3	Rewrite the firmware.	—	—
4	Change MFPB.	—	—

⚠ 19.5.142 CC211: Authentication device general error

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Authentication device

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the USB cable for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—

⚠ 19.5.143 CC212: User validation error

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Authentication device

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the USB cable for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
3	Re-register the user authentication information.	—	—
4	Change authentication device.	—	—

19.5.144 CC213: User registration error/card information setting error

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Authentication device

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the USB cable for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
3	Reset the authentication settings. (card type, IC card advanced settings, and etc.)	—	—
4	Re-register the user authentication information.	—	—

19.5.145 CC214: User information deletion error

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Authentication device

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the USB cable for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—

19.5.146 CC216: Acquisition failure of the number of trials/Initialize error of number of authentication

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Authentication device

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the USB cable for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main power switch.	—	—
3	Reset the number of authentication trials.	—	—

19.5.147 CD002: JOB RAM save error

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Hard disk

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between hard disk-MFPB PJ11 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Format hard disk.	—	—
3	Change hard disk.	—	—
4	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.148 CD004: Hard disk access error (connection failure)

19.5.149 CD00F: Hard disk data transfer error

19.5.150 CD020: Hard disk verify error

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Hard disk

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connector between hard disk-MFPB PJ11 for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Reinstall the hard disk.	—	—
3	Change hard disk.	—	—
4	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.151 CD010: Hard disk unformat

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Hard disk

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Select [Service Mode] → [State Confirmation] → [Memory/HDD Adj.] → [HDD Format], and conduct the HDD format function.	—	—
2	Change hard disk.	—	—
3	Change MFPB	—	—

19.5.152 CD011: Hard disk out of specifications mounted

Relevant parts	
Hard disk	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the hard disk specifications.	—	—
2	Change the hard disk.	—	—

19.5.153 CD041 to CD046: HDD command execution error Address Mark Not Found

Relevant parts	
Hard disk	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the hard disk specifications.	—	—
2	Format hard disk.	—	—
3	Change the hard disk.	—	—

19.5.154 CD047 to CD04B: HDD SCSI library error

Relevant parts	
Hard disk	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the hard disk specifications.	—	—
2	Format hard disk.	—	—
3	Change the hard disk.	—	—

19.5.155 CD201: File memory mounting error

19.5.156 CD202: Memory capacity discrepancy

19.5.157 CD203: Memory capacity discrepancy 2

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Memory

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check to see if the memory on MFPB is installed correctly.	—	—
2	Change the memory on MFPB.	—	—
3	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.158 CD211: PCI-SDRAM DMA operation failure

19.5.159 CD212: Compression/extraction timeout detection

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.160 CD231: No Fax memory at FAX board mounting

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	FAX board

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check to see if the FAX board is installed correctly.	—	—
2	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.161 CD241: Encryption ASIC setting error

19.5.162 CD242: Encryption ASIC mounting error

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the MFP board connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Change MFPB	—	—

19.5.163 CD252: No relay circuit boards for IC-412 mounting at IC-412 mount setting

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Relay circuit boards (VI-505)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	If the IC-412 is not mounted, access [Service Mode] → [System 2] → [Image Controller Setting] and check to see if “Controller 0” is set for [Image Controller Setting].	—	—
2	Check the relay board (VI-505) connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Change relay board (VI-505).	—	—
4	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.164 CD261: USB host board failure

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	USB host board (EK-604)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the operation with another USB device.	—	—
2	Check the USB host board connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Change USB host board.	—	—
4	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.165 CD271: i-Option activated and additional memory not installed

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Memory for i-Option (UK-203)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the memory (UK-203) for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Change memory (UK-203).	—	—
3	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.166 CD272: i-Option activated and additional memory and HDD not installed

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB) Hard disk	Memory for i-Option (UK-203)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the memory (UK-203) for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the HDD for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Change memory (UK-203).	—	—
4	Change HDD	—	—
5	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.167 CD401: NACK command incorrect

19.5.168 CD402: ACK command incorrect

19.5.169 CD403: Checksum error

19.5.170 CD404: Receiving packet incorrect

19.5.171 CD405: Receiving packet analysis error

19.5.172 CD406: ACK receiving timeout

19.5.173 CD407: Retransmission timeout

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check whether there is an strong electromagnetic noise source near the main body.	—	—
2	Check the connectors on MFPB for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.174 CE001: Abnormal message queue

19.5.175 CE003: Task error

19.5.176 CE004: Event error

19.5.177 CE005: Memory access error

19.5.178 CE006: Header access error

19.5.179 CE007: DIMM initialize error

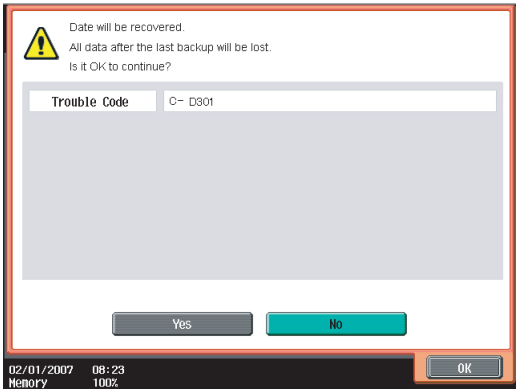
Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connectors on MFPB for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.180 CD3##: NVRAM data error

- When the data stored due to the NVRAM trouble is lost, backup data can be used for restoration.
- Trouble code [C-D370] will be displayed when multiple errors (over 5) of NVRAM data are detected, which can be restored with one restoration command.
- Data backup will be automatically performed every hour. Backup can also be performed manually with the following setting.
  [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [NVRAM Data Back Up]
  See P.512

1. When a trouble caused by NVRAM data error occurs, the screen below appears.



A00JF4E517DA

2. Select [Yes] and touch [OK].
3. The screen will be shifted to the data restoration screen to perform data restoration.

NOTE

- **When the restoration is performed in a short time, data restoration screen may not be displayed.**

4. Check the message which indicates that the data restoration was successfully conducted. Turn OFF the main power switch and turn it ON again more than 10 seconds after.

NOTE

- **In case it failed to restore data, return to the trouble code screen.**

19.5.181 CE002: Message and method parameter failure

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	Hard disk

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Turn OFF the main power switch and turn it ON again, and conduct the following setting. [Service Mode] → [System 1] → [Initialization] → [Data Clear]. See P.433	—	—
2	Format hard disk.	—	—
3	Change hard disk.	—	—
4	Change MFPB.	—	—

19.5.182 CEEE1: MFP board malfunction

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the connectors on MFPB for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Change MFPB	—	—

19.5.183 CEEE2: Scanner section malfunction

Relevant parts	
Exposure unit	CCD board (CCDB) Scanner relay board (REYB/SCAN)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Correct the connector connection between CCDB and REYB/SCAN if faulty.	—	—
2	Change REYB/SCAN	—	—
3	Change CCDB	—	—

19.5.184 CEEE3: Printer control board malfunction

Relevant parts	
Printer control board (PRCB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the PRCB connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Change PRCB	—	—

19.5.185 CFB00 to CFFA0: Abort code

Relevant parts	
MFP board (MFPB)	DIMM0/DIMM1 EIF board (IC-412)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the MFPB connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Conduct the following setting. [Service Mode] → [Memory/HDD Adj.] → [Memory Check] → [Detail Check]. When “NG” is displayed, replace the appropriate memory or PWB. WORK0: DIMM0 WORK1: DIMM1 FILE0,1: MFP board FILE2,3: EIF board	—	—
3	Change MFPB	—	—

20. NETWORK ERROR CODE

20.1 Display procedure

- It displays the error code when a network error occurred.
- Network error code is displayed only when the following setting is in "Display."
  [Administrator Settings] → [Network Settings] → [Detail Settings] → [Error Code Display Setting]

20.2 List

Function	Code	Description
IEEE802.1X	1	• Connection has already been established.
	2	• Parameter error.
	3	• Unable to find the destination AP (SSID).
	4	• The authentication mode does not match the AP (IEEE8021X/WPA-EAP/ WPA-PSK/NONE).
	5	• Negotiation of the EAP method failed.
	6	• The EAP authentication failed (user ID, password, certificate, etc.)
	7	• Encryption negotiation with the AP failed (TKIP/CCMP).
	8	• Failed to retrieve the client certificate.
	9	• The client certificate has expired.
	10	• Verification error of the server certificate (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	11	• Although the WPA-PSK mode is selected, the Pre-Shared Key is not specified.
	12	• An authentication error occurred in the WPA-PSK mode (un-matched Pre-Shared Key).
	13	• The phase 2 method is not specified (PEAP).
	14	• Negotiation of the phase 2 method failed (PEAP).
	15	• Response from the server has timed out.
	16	• Failed to allocate memory.
	17	• Failed to start the supplicant task.
	18	• The driver does not work.
	19	• The server certificate has expired (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	20	• CA verification error of the server certificate (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/ PEAP).
	21	• Server ID verification error of the server certificate (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/ PEAP).
	22	• The CA certificate is not specified (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	23	• The server ID is not specified (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	24	• The setting combination is correct.
	25	• Connection and authentication are complete.
	26	• The server certificate does not have the expected usage (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	27	• The server certificate has expired (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	28	• Access to the server to check for expiration of the server certificate is rejected (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).

Function	Code	Description
IEEE802.1X	29	• Access to the server to check for expiration of the server certificate has timed out (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	30	• Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size that has been retrieved to check for the expiration of the server certificate exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB) (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	31	• Incorrect format of the server certificate (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	32	• Verification of the server certificate is invalid (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	33	• Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform verification because the HDD path has not been specified (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	34	• Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20) (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	35	• Parameter error of the certificate (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	36	• Internal error of the certificate verification (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
LDAP	1	• An invalid operation occurred.
	4	• The number of search results has exceeded the maximum number of items allowed.
	7	• The LDAP server does not support SASL.
	10	• Unable to trace the link although Referral is specified.
	32	• Cannot find the search route.
	49	• Failed to log in to the LDAP server.
	80	• An unexpected error occurred.
	85	• The connection has timed out.
	86	• The supported SASL does not match the LDAP server side.
	88	• Cancelled by the user.
	90	• A memory shortage occurred.
	91	• Unable to connect to the LDAP server.
	92	• The supported LDAP version does not match the LDAP server side.
	128	• Failed to resolve the LDAP server name using the DNS server.
	129	• The certificate of the LDAP server has expired.
	130	• Mutual authentication using GSS-SPNEGO (Kerberos v5) failed.
	131	• The search result remains.
	2238	• The CN field of the LDAP server certificate does not match the server address.
	2239	• The LDAP server certificate does not have the expected usage for a server.
	2240	• The LDAP server certificate is not trusted. • To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	2241	• The LDAP server certificate has expired.
	2242	• The CA server rejected the connection.
	2243	• The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.

Function	Code	Description
LDAP	2244	• Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	2261	• The format of the LDAP server certificate is invalid.
	2263	• Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform verification because the HDD path has not been specified.
	2264	• Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	2266	• Internal error of the certificate verification.
	2267	• The device certificate does not exist.
	2268	• No certificate is sent from the server.
E-Mail/ Internet Fax	1	• Failed to log in to the E-mail server.
	2	• An internal error occurred.
	3	• Failed to connect to the server.
	4	• The connection has timed out.
	5	• Decoding failed due to invalid MIME format or S/MIME format.
	6	• Available free memory is insufficient. Reception is not possible.
	9	• Failed to delete an E-mail message.
	10	• The mail box is full.
	11	• Failed to search the certificate.
	12	• Failed to retrieve the device certificate or private key.
	13	• An I/O error occurred. • An HDD operation error occurred, or memory capacity of the computer may be insufficient.
	14	• The S/MIME function is disabled.
	15	• The HDD is disabled.
	16	• The format of the certificate from the E-mail sender is invalid.
	2236	• The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	2238	• The CN field of the certificate does not match the server address.
	2239	• The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	2240	• The certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	2241	• The certificate has expired.
	2242	• The CA server rejected the connection.
	2243	• The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	2244	• Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	2261	• The format of the certificate is invalid.
	2263	• Failed to initialize the certificate verification.
	2264	• Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	2266	• Internal error of the certificate verification.
	2267	• The device certificate does not exist.

Function	Code	Description
E-Mail/ Internet Fax	2268	• No certificate is sent from the server.
FTP transmission	22	• Parameter error (e.g. the file name is NULL).
	27	• Parameter is invalid.
	42	• The specified protocol is unavailable.
	52	• The process is cancelled by a device reset.
	55	• A buffer shortage occurred.
	56	• The FTP connection is already open.
	57	• Failed to connect to the server.
	60	• The connection has timed out.
	61	• The connection has been interrupted.
	62	• The device is not connected to the network.
	70	• The network connection is busy.
	450	• The file has not been deleted.
	451	• The file transfer failed (e.g. due to insufficient server capacity).
	452	• The file transfer failed (e.g. due to insufficient server capacity).
	530	• Incorrect login name or password.
	550	• The specified folder does not exist.
	552	• The file operation failed (e.g. due to insufficient server capacity).
SMB transmission	42	• The specified protocol is unavailable.
	52	• The process is cancelled by a device reset.
	55	• A buffer shortage occurred.
	57	• Failed to connect to the server.
	62	• The device is not connected to the network. • The connection has been interrupted.
	70	• The network connection is busy.
	4096	• The host name is not specified. • The specified host name does not exist on the network.
	4097	• The user name is not specified. • Unable to log in with the specified user name and password. • The user does not have write permission to the folder. • Failed to log in due to an SMB protocol error.
	4098	• The folder name is not specified. • The specified folder does not exist.
	4099	• The user name is not specified. • Unable to log in with the specified user name and password. • The user does not have write permission to the folder. • Failed to log in due to an SMB protocol error.
	4100	• The specified file name is invalid.
	4101	• The specified file already exists and is write-protected. • The folder and the disk are write-protected.
	4102	• The specified media to be written is not formatted. • The file system of the specified media to be written is faulty.
	4103	• The server capacity is full.
	4104	• The server capacity has become full while writing data.

Function	Code	Description
SMB transmission	4105	• Other errors to which an error code is not assigned.
	10000	• Failed in authentication using a PKI card.
	12236	• The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	12239	• The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	12240	• The certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	12241	• The certificate has expired.
	12242	• The CA server rejected the connection.
	12243	• The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	12244	• Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1 MB).
	12263	• Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform verification because the HDD path has not been specified.
	12264	• Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	12266	• Internal error of the certificate verification.
	12267	• The device certificate does not exist.
	12268	• No certificate is sent from the server.
SMTP transmission	22	• Invalid argument.
	27	• The file size is too large.
	28	• Insufficient memory of the device.
	32	• The pipe is broken.
	42	• The specified protocol is unavailable.
	51	• Unable to reach the destination network.
	52	• The connection aborted by the network.
	55	• A buffer shortage occurred.
	57	• The socket is not connected.
	58	• The connection has been interrupted.
	60	• The operation has timed out.
	61	• The connection is rejected.
	62	• The device is not connected to the network.
	67	• The host is shut down.
	70	• The operation is expected to be blocked.
	421	• SMTP server error. Since the service is unavailable, the transfer channel is closed.
	432	• SMTP server error. The password must be changed.
	450	• SMTP server error. Unable to access to the mail box.
	451	• SMTP server error. The requested action has been cancelled because an error occurred while processing a job.
	452	• SMTP server error. Shortage of the system storage capacity.
	453	• SMTP server error. No E-mail massage.

Function	Code	Description
SMTP transmission	454	• SMTP server error. Temporary authentication failure.
	458	• SMTP server error. Unable to queue a message to the node.
	459	• SMTP server error. The node is not permitted.
	499	• SMTP server error. An unsupported SMTP error code of 400s is received from the SMTP server.
	500	• SMTP server error. Syntax error (command unrecognized).
	501	• SMTP server error. Syntax error in parameters or arguments.
	502	• SMTP server error. The command is not implemented.
	503	• SMTP server error. Bad sequence of commands.
	504	• SMTP server error. The command parameter is not implemented.
	521	• SMTP server error. The server does not receive E-mail messages.
	530	• SMTP server error. The access is rejected.
	534	• SMTP server error. The authentication mechanism is too weak.
	535	• SMTP server error. Authentication error.
	538	• SMTP server error. The requested authentication mechanism requires encryption.
	550	• SMTP server error. The requested action is not executed.
	551	• SMTP server error. The user is not connected locally.
	552	• SMTP server error. The requested E-mail action is cancelled.
	553	• SMTP server error. The requested action is not accepted.
	554	• An SMTP server error, or an internal error when sending data. The transaction failed.
	555	• SMTP server error. MAIL/RCPT parameter error.
	599	• SMTP server error. An unsupported SMTP error code of 500s is received from the SMTP server.
	2236	• The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	2238	• The CN field of the certificate does not match the server address.
	2239	• The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	2240	• The certificate is not trusted. • To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	2241	• The certificate has expired.
	2242	• The CA server rejected the connection.
	2243	• The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	2244	• Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	2261	• The format of the certificate is invalid.
	2263	• Failed to initialize the certificate verification.
	2264	• Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	2266	• Internal error of the certificate verification.
	2267	• The device certificate does not exist.

Function	Code	Description
SMTP transmission	2268	• No certificate is sent from the server.
	3000	• An unexpected error occurred.
	3001	• An unexpected error occurred within the library being used.
	3002	• An invalid channel is specified.
	3003	• SMTP server address is invalid.
	3004	• Parameter error (MIMEBodyHeader).
	3005	• Parameter error (DisplayName).
	3006	• Parameter error (character set).
	3007	• Parameter error (From address).
	3008	• Parameter error (To address).
	3009	• Parameter error (CC address).
	3010	• Parameter error (BCC address).
	3011	• Parameter error (pEmailSet is NULL).
	3012	• Parameter error (destination certificate is NULL).
	3013	• Parameter error (E-mail body).
	3014	• The HDD is disabled.
	3015	• The S/MIME function is disabled.
	3016	• The device certificate cannot be used in S/MIME (e.g. self-signed certificate error, the private key type is not RSA).
	3018	• An invalid encryption algorithm is specified.
	3019	• An invalid signature algorithm is specified.
	3020	• The E-mail address included in the destination certificate does not match the destination address (To/Cc/Bcc).
	3021	• The E-mail address included in the certificate does not match the sender (From) address.
	3022	• Format error of the certificate.
	3023	• Parameter error (Disposition-Notification-To).
	3024	• Message syntax error of the receiver side.
	3025	• The SMTP server does not support the STARTTLS command.
WebDAV transmission	22	• The format of the URL of the target resource is invalid. • Parameter error.
	27	• Attempted to send data that exceeds the maximum transferrable size for transfer coding.
	42	• The specified protocol is unavailable.
	52	• The process is cancelled by a device reset.
	55	• A buffer shortage occurred.
	56	• The connection has already been established.
	57	• The connection to the WebDAV server failed (including connection time out).
	62	• The device is not connected to the network.
	70	• The network connection is busy.
	72	• The connection has been interrupted with the condition that is insufficient to the specified size.
	401	• Authentication error.

Function	Code	Description
WebDAV transmission	407	• Proxy authentication error.
	1001	• The server does not support WebDAV. • Unable to upload data to the server.
	1002	• The intermediate resource is not a collection (directory) (e.g. the specified folder does not exist).
	1003	• The target resource is a collection (directory).
	1011	• Although “https” is specified for the resource URL, it is unavailable because the SSL library is not included for the modularity.
	1012	• Although “https” is specified for the resource URL, the connection is interrupted because the WebDAV server certificate has expired.
	1013	• The CONNECT method is issued to the proxy server to establish an SSL connection via a proxy, but it is rejected.
	1017	• A communication error occurred while sending a request.
	1018	• A communication error occurred while receiving a response.
	1027	• nContentLength exceeds the maximum transferable size.
	1030	• Although use of a proxy has been specified, the proxy setting information is unavailable.
	1031	• The connection to the proxy server failed (including connection time out).
	1098	• Failed in chunk TX to SharePoint Server.
	1099	• Other internal error occurred (e.g. memory shortage).
	2236	• The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	2238	• The CN field of the certificate does not match the server address.
	2239	• The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	2240	• The certificate is not trusted. • To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	2241	• The certificate has expired.
	2242	• The CA server rejected the connection.
	2243	• The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	2244	• Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	2261	• The format of the certificate is invalid.
	2263	• Failed to initialize the certificate verification.
	2264	• Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	2266	• Internal error of the certificate verification.
	2267	• The device certificate does not exist.
	2268	• No certificate is sent from the server.

Function	Code	Description
SMB browsing	32	• The connection has been interrupted.
	42	• The specified protocol is unavailable.
	57	• Failed to connect to the server.
	62	• The device is not connected to the network. • The internal channel detected an error immediately before establishing communication.
	67	• The host is shut down.
	4096	• The group name/host name is not specified. • The specified group name/host name does not exist on the network.
	4097	• The user name is not specified. • Unable to log in with the specified user name and password. • Failed to log in due to an SMB protocol error.
	4098	• Administrative shares do not exist. • The shared resource name is not specified. • The shared resource does not exist.
	4099	• The user name is not specified. • Unable to log in with the specified user name and password. • Failed to log in due to an SMB protocol error.
	4102	• The specified media to be written is not formatted. • The file system of the specified media to be written is faulty.
	4105	• Other errors to which an error code is not assigned.
	4352	• The browser machine (master browser/backup browser) is not found.
	4353	• Unable to log in to the browser machine (master browser/backup browser).
	4354	• The sub folder does not exist.
	4355	• The request is not accepted due to an invalid call sequence etc.
	4368	• The number of groups is too large.
	4369	• The number of host PCs is too large.
	4370	• The number of shared resources is too large.
	10000	• Failed in authentication using a PKI card.
	12236	• The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	12239	• The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	12240	• The certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	12241	• The certificate has expired.
	12242	• The CA server rejected the connection.
	12243	• The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	12244	• Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1 MB).
	12263	• Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform verification because the HDD path has not been specified.
	12264	• Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	12266	• Internal error of the certificate verification.

Function	Code	Description
SMB browsing	12267	• The device certificate does not exist.
	12268	• No certificate is sent from the server.
User authentication	1	• Invalid parameter (e.g. the number of characters exceeds the limit, blank). • The authentication function setting is disabled.
	2	• Failed to resolve the name using the DNS server.
	3	• Unable to find the authentication server.
	4	• Failed to authenticate.
	5	• Failed to allocate memory. • An unexpected error occurred (which does not occur under normal usage conditions).
	6	• An authentication request is received while an internal task of the user authentication client is being performed.
	7	• The connection was interrupted while the user authentication was being performed.
	10000	• Failed in authentication using a PKI card.
	12236	• The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	12239	• The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	12240	• The certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	12241	• The certificate has expired.
	12242	• The CA server rejected the connection.
	12243	• The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	12244	• Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1 MB).
	12261	• The format of the certificate is invalid.
	12263	• Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform verification because the HDD path has not been specified.
	12264	• Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	12266	• Internal error of the certificate verification.
WebDAV client	2	• The ID of the client that is not opened is specified.
	3	• The reception has timed out.
	4	• A reception error occurred. • An invalid request URL is specified.
	5	• Content-Length or the received data size exceeds the maximum transferable size. • The size of the message body is too large.
	6	• The process is cancelled by a device reset. • The size of the message body exceeds the maximum transferable size.
	7	• An internal error occurred. • The process is cancelled by an internal reset.
	8	• Failed to connect to the WebDAV server.
	9	• An error occurred while sending data to the WebDAV server.

Function	Code	Description
WebDAV client	10	• A timeout occurred while sending data to the WebDAV server.
	11	• Failed to connect to the proxy server.
	12	• The proxy server rejected the connection request.
	13	• Although use of a proxy has been specified, the proxy setting in-formation is unavailable.
	14	• Failed to authenticate the proxy server.
	15	• Other error was returned from the proxy server.
	16	• An internal error occurred.
	17	• The process is cancelled because MIO_REQBODY_ERROR is specified by the device application.
	2236	• The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	2238	• The CN field of the certificate does not match the server address.
	2239	• The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	2240	• The certificate is not trusted. • To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	2241	• The certificate has expired.
	2242	• The CA server rejected the connection.
	2243	• The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	2244	• Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	2261	• The format of the certificate is invalid.
	2263	• Failed to initialize the certificate verification.
	2264	• Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	2266	• Internal error of the certificate verification.
	2267	• The device certificate does not exist.
	2268	• No certificate is sent from the server.
WS scan	1	• The specified client is not registered.
	2	• Parameter is invalid.
	3	• The Web service or WS scan function is disabled.
	4	• The device is not connected to the network.
	5	• Waiting for connection from CP.
	6	• The certificate of the destination computer is not valid when the validity period of a certificate is checked.
	22	• Invalid argument.
	42	• The specified protocol is unavailable.
	52	• The connection aborted by the network.
	53	• The connection has been interrupted.
	55	• A buffer shortage occurred.
	57	• The socket is not connected.
	60	• The operation has timed out.
	70	• The operation is expected to be blocked.

Function	Code	Description
WS scan	72	• The RetrieveImage waiting period has timed out.
	2236	• The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	2238	• The CN field of the certificate does not match the server address.
	2239	• The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	2240	• The certificate is not trusted. • To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	2241	• The certificate has expired.
	2242	• The CA server rejected the connection.
	2243	• The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	2244	• Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	2261	• The format of the certificate is invalid.
	2263	• Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform verification because the HDD path has not been specified.
	2264	• Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	2265	• Parameter of the certificate verification is invalid.
	2266	• Internal error of the certificate verification.
	2267	• The device certificate does not exist.
	2268	• No certificate is sent from the server.

21. Open API Related Trouble

21.1 Outline

- Through the Certification Management System provided by OpenAPI, if error is found in communication between the machine and interacting applications developed by company other than KMBT, an error message is displayed.

21.2 Supported Version

- The Certification Management System provided by OpenAPI supports function version 3 of the machine.
  Confirm that Function Version is “version 3” from [Utility] → [Device Information] in the machine.

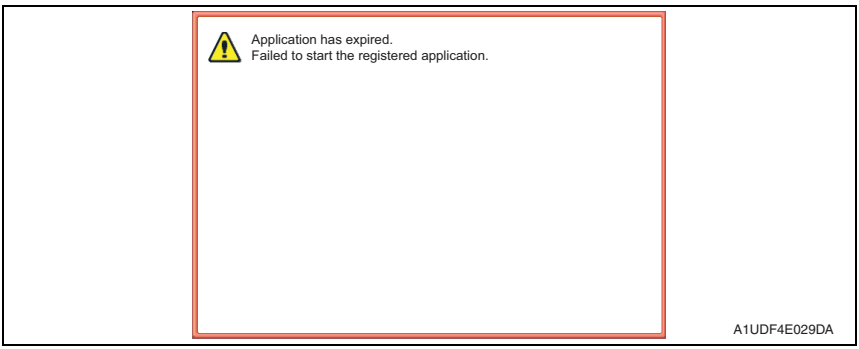
21.3 Types of Trouble

- The Certification Management System provided by OpenAPI certificates and manages communication between MFP and non-KMBT applications that run on the computer connected to the machine. If trouble is detected, the trouble message is displayed on the control panel of the machine or the screen of the computer on which the applications run. Trouble messages displayed on the control panel of the machine and actions are described below.

NOTE

- **A message that appears on the computer screen may be different depending on the appliaction being used for communication. The corresponding action may be different, so contact the application vendor for an appropriate action.**

<Examples of trouble messages>



21.4 Solution

- The below describes the OpenAPI certification related trouble messages displayed on the control panel of the machine and actions, dividing them by possible situation.

A. When using an application

No.	Symptom and message	Action
1	When starting an application, the following message is displayed: Application has expired. Failed to start the registered application. When starting the machine, the following message is displayed: The Enhanced Server Authentication application has expired. Change the User Authentication method to one other than Enhanced Server Authentication.	*1.* In [Administrator Settings] → [System Settings] → [Date/Time Settings], check that the date and time that is set is same as the actual date and time. If a wrong date and time is set, correct it. *2.* Contact the application vendor and obtain a new Solution Key (or the application software itself). Using it, perform the steps below. 1) Delete the application. 2) Using the Solution Key (or the application software itself), register the application again.
2	When starting an application, the following message is displayed: Failed to start the registered application. Please contact your service representative. When starting the machine, the following message is displayed: The enhanced server authentication application cannot be used. Please contact your service representative.	• In [System1] → [Marketing Area], change the marketing area of the machine to the one that was selected when the application was registered.
3	In the screen saver application, after a time set, the screen saver does not work.	*1.* In [Administrator Settings] → [System Settings] → [Date/Time Settings], check that the date and time that is set is same as the actual date and time. If a wrong date and time is set, correct it. *2.* Contact the application vendor and obtain a new Solution Key (or the application software itself). Using it, perform the steps below. 1) Delete the application. 2) Using the Solution Key (or the application software itself), register the application again. *3.* In [System1] → [Marketing Area], change the marketing area of the machine to the one that was selected when the application was registered.

B. After rewriting the firmware of the machine

No.	Symptom and message	Action
1	When starting an application, the following message is displayed: Failed to start the registered application. Please contact your service representative. When starting the machine, the following message is displayed: The enhanced server authentication application cannot be used. Please contact your service representative. In the screen saver application, after a time set, the screen saver does not work.	• After deleting the application in question, register the application again.

22. POWER SUPPLY TROUBLE

22.1 Machine is not energized at all (DCPU operation check)

Relevant parts	
Main power switch (SW1) Printer control board (PRCB)	DC power supply (DCPU)

Step	Check item	WIRING DIAGRAM (Location)	Result	Action
1	Is a power voltage supplied across CN001-1 and 2 on DCPU?	S to T-4	NO	Check the WIRING from the wall outlet to SW1 CN001.
2	Are the fuses on DCPU conducting?	—	NO	Change DCPU.
3	Is DC24 V being output from CN007-1, 3 on DCPU?	Q-2	NO	Change DCPU.
4	Is DC5 V being input to CN006-5 to 7 on DCPU?	Q-6	NO	Change DCPU.
5	Is DC5 V being input to CN2-10, 11 on PRCB? (LED on PRCB does not blink.)	E-15	NO	Change DCPU.
			YES	Change PRCB.

22.2 Fusing heaters do not operate

Relevant parts	
Main power switch (SW1) ⚠ Right door switch (MS2) Fusing unit	DC power supply (DCPU)

Step	Check item	WIRING DIAGRAM (Location)	Result	Action
1	Is the power source voltage applied across CN008-3 on DCPU? During this time, the right door should be closed.	Q-3	NO	Check wiring from power outlet to SW1 to CN008 to MS2.
2	Is the power source voltage applied across CN8-1 and 10?	K-13	YES	Fusing unit
			NO	Change DCPU.

22.3 Power is not supplied to option

22.3.1 DF-617

Step	Check item	WIRING DIAGRAM (Location)	Result	Action
1	Is DC24 V being output from CN1DFL on DF-617?	Y-7	YES	Malfunction in DF-617
2	Is DC24 V being output from CN004-1 on DCPU?	Q-3 to 4	NO	Check wiring from DCPU to DF-617.
3	Is the fuse on DCPU conducting?	—	YES	Change DCPU.
			NO	Malfunction in DF-617

22.3.2 PC-107/207/408

Step	Check item	WIRING DIAGRAM (Location)	Result	Action
1	Is DC24 V being applied to CN75?	J-8	NO	Malfunction in cabinet
2	Is DC24 V being output from CN17-2 on PRCB?	H-7	NO	Check wiring from PRCB to CN17 to cabinet.
3	Is the fuse on DCPU conducting?	—	YES	Change DCPU.
			NO	Malfunction in cabinet

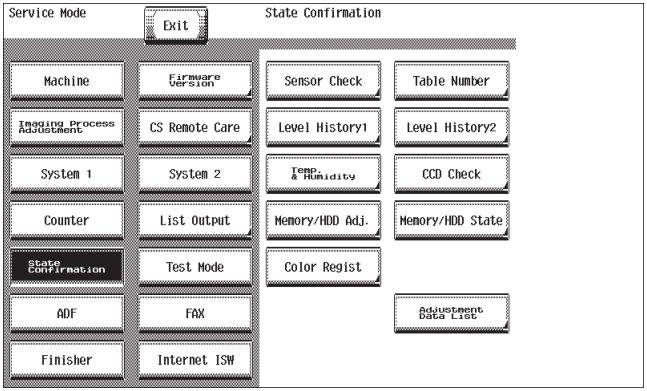
22.3.3 FS-527/529

Step	Check item	WIRING DIAGRAM (Location)	Result	Action
1	Are DC24 V being applied to CN1L?	I-18	NO	Malfunction in finisher.
2	Are DC24 V being applied to CN004-3 on DCPU?	Q-4	NO	Check wiring from DCPU to finisher.
3	Is the fuse on DCPU conducting?	—	YES	Change DCPU.
			NO	Malfunction in finisher.

23. IMAGE QUALITY PROBLEM

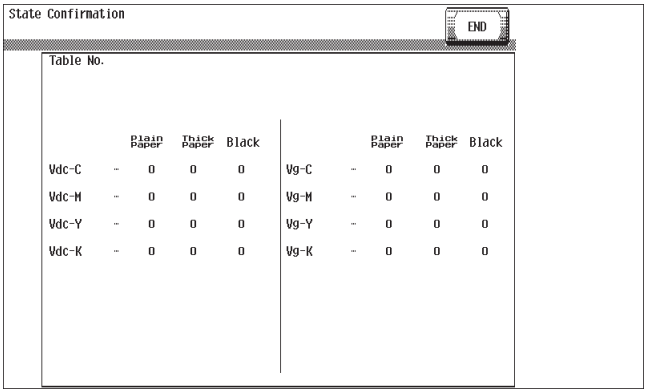
23.1 How to read element data

- As part of troubleshooting procedures, the numeric values set for “State Confirmation” available from “Service Mode” can be used to isolate the cause of the image problem.



A0EDF4E521DA

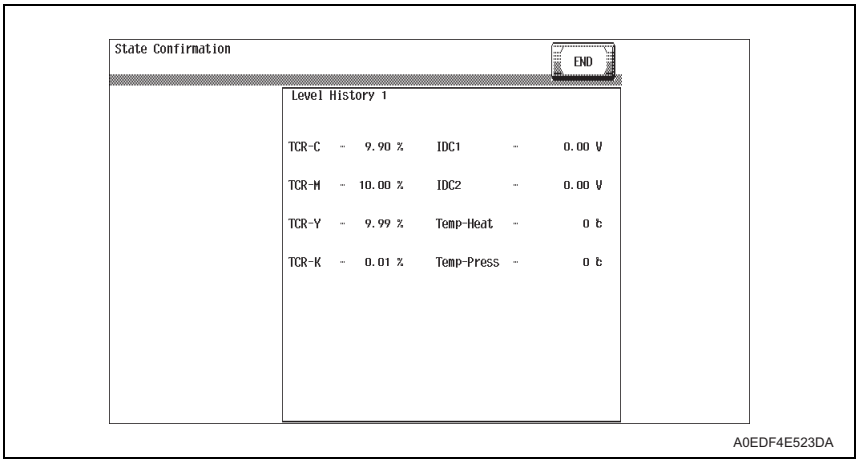
23.1.1 Table number



A0EDF4E522DA

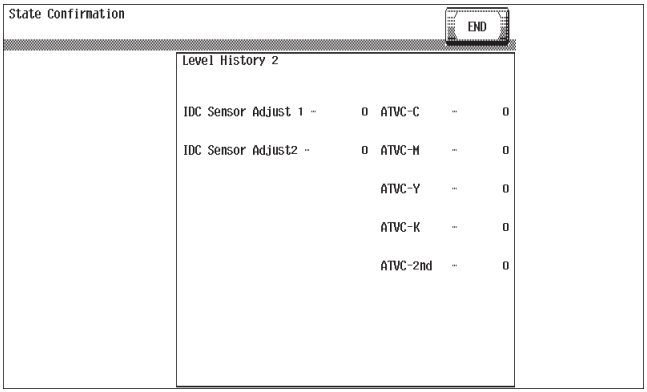
Vdc-C Vdc-M Vdc-Y Vdc-K	• Shows the developing bias value of each color of toner when an image is produced. • Standard values: around 400 V (200 V to 800 V) • A correction is made to make the image lighter when the numeric value is greater. • A correction is made to make the image darker when the numeric value is smaller. • Relevant components: Developing unit, drum unit, high voltage unit (HV)
Vg-C Vg-M Vg-Y Vg-K	• Shows the grid voltage value of each color of toner when an image is produced. • Standard values: around 500 V (200 V to 800 V) • A correction is made to make the image lighter when the numeric value is greater. • A correction is made to make the image darker when the numeric value is smaller. • Relevant components: Developing unit, drum unit, high voltage unit (HV)

23.1.2 Level history 1



TCR-C TCR-M TCR-Y TCR-K	• Shows the T/C ratio (in 0.01 % increments). • Standard value: 6 to 8 % • Relevant components: TCR sensor
IDC1 IDC2	• Shows the IDC bare surface output value (in 0.01 V increments). • It should normally be around 4.3 V. • The output range is 0 V to 5 V. • Relevant components: IDC sensor, transfer belt unit
Temp-Heat Temp-Press	• Shows the temperature of the each part of the fusing unit (in 1 °C increments). • Relevant components: Fusing unit

23.1.3 Level history 2



A0EDF4E524DA

IDC Sensor Adjust 1 IDC Sensor Adjust 2	• Shows the IDC intensity adjustment value. • It should normally be around 40 and can range from 0 to 255. • The value becomes greater as the transfer belt unit has been used more. • Relevant components: IDC sensor, transfer belt unit
ATVC -C ATVC -M ATVC -Y ATVC -K ATVC -2nd	• Shows the latest ATVC level (which varies according to the paper type). • 10 μA to 100 μA (ATVC-C/-M/-Y/-K) • 300 V to 5000 V (ATVC-2nd) • Relevant components: Transfer belt unit, High voltage unit (HV), 2nd transfer roller

23.2 How to identify problematic part

- This chapter is divided into two parts: “Initial check items” and “Troubleshooting procedure by a particular image quality problem.”
- When an image quality problem occurs, first go through the “Initial check items” and, if the cause is yet to be identified, go to “Troubleshooting procedure by a particular image quality problem.”

23.2.1 Initial check items

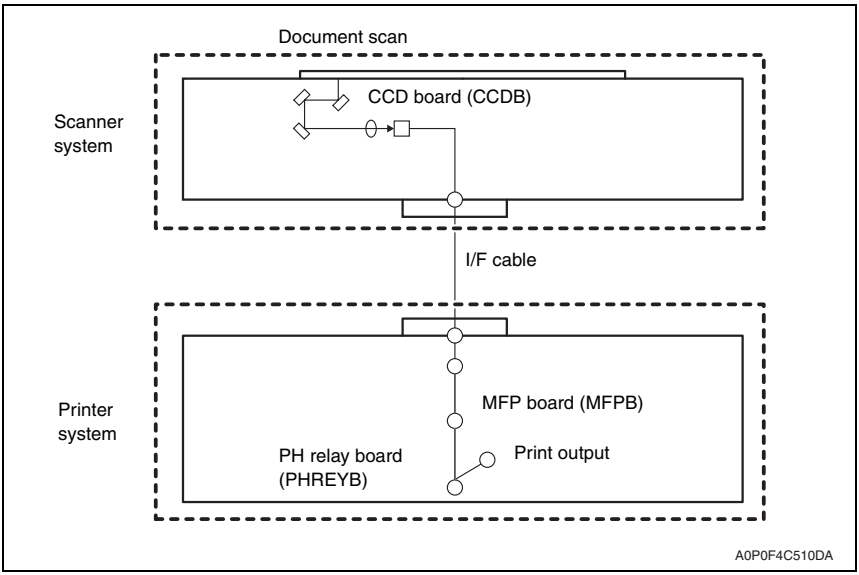
A. Initial check items 1

- Check first to see if image data is properly transmitted between scanner and memory, and between memory and printer.

Action	Result	Next Step
Enter the Service Mode, select [State Confirmation] → [Memory/HDD Adj.] → [Memory Bus Check], and select and carry out [Scanner→Memory] and [Memory→PRT] checks. **NOTE** • **For the bus check as the internal process between the scanner and the memory, there are two types, “scanner internal check” and “check for the scanner and the memory.” NG1 or NG2 is displayed depending on the type of NG detected.**	OK	Initial check items 2
	NG	P.660 (action as instructed)

B. Initial check items 2

- Let the machine produce a test print and determine whether the image problem is attributable to the scanner or printer system.

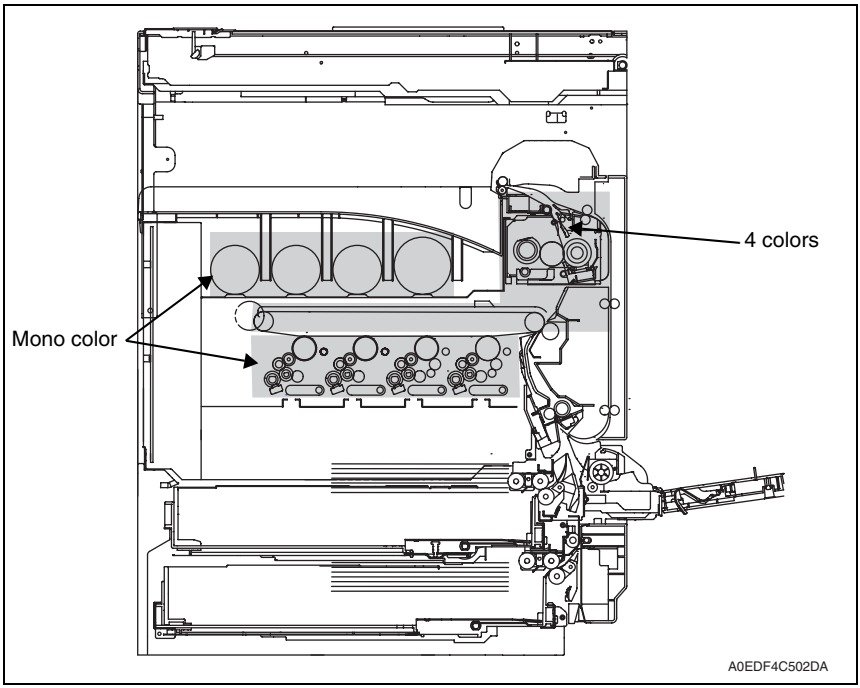


- Evaluation procedure

Image problem	Action	Result	Cause	Next step
Lines, bands	From [Service Mode], select [Test Mode] → [Halftone Pattern] → [SINGLE] → [HYPER] → [Gradation] → [C→M→Y→K] → [Density 64], and produce a test print. Is image problem evident?	YES	Printer	Initial check items 3
		NO	Scanner	P.704

C. Initial check items 3

- If the printer is responsible for the image problem, let the machine produce a test print and determine whether the image problem occurs in a specific single color or four colors



- Evaluation procedure

Image problem	Action	Result	Cause	Next step
Lines, bands	From [Service Mode], select [Test Mode] → [Halftone Pattern] → [SINGLE] → [HYPER] → [Gradation] → [C→M→Y→K] → [Density 64], and produce a test print. Is image problem evident in each of all four colors?	YES	Printer, 4 colors	P.733
		NO	Printer, single color	P.719

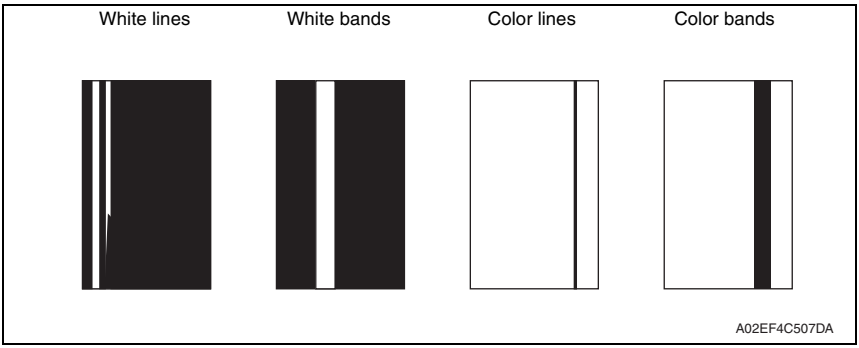
23.3 Solution

NOTE

- **Typical faulty image samples shown in the following are all printed with A3 setting.**

23.3.1 Scanner system: white lines, white bands, colored lines and colored bands in sub scan direction

A. Typical faulty images



B. Troubleshooting procedure

(1) When the original glass is used

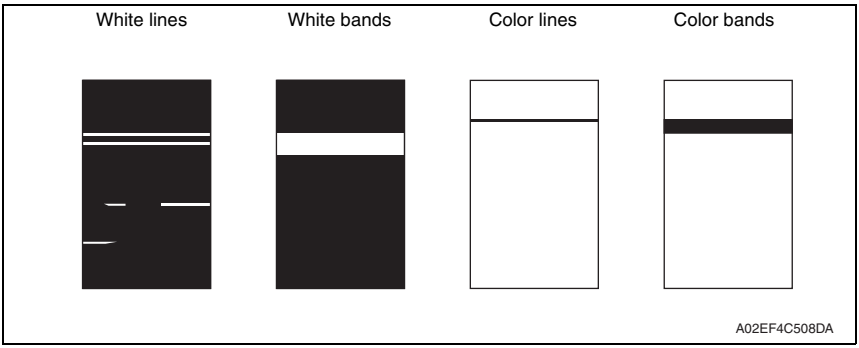
Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Original	Original is damaged or dirty.	YES	Change original.
2	ADF	Original pad is dirty.	YES	Clean.
3	Original glass	Original glass is dirty.	YES	Wipe the surface clean with a soft cloth.
4	Shading sheet	Shading sheet is dirty.	YES	Wipe the surface clean with a soft cloth.
5	Mirror, lens, exposure Lamp, and reflectors	Mirror is dirty	YES	Clean.
		Lens is dirty	YES	Clean.
		Exposure lamp is dirty	YES	Clean.
		Reflectors are dirty	YES	Clean.
6	Machine → Scan Area → Image Position: Centering (Service Mode)	The adjustment value for [Image Position: Centering] falls within the specified range.	NO	Readjust.
7		The white lines/bands or colored lines/bands are blurry.	YES	Change exposure unit. Change CCD unit.

(2) When the ADF is used

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Original	Original is damaged or dirty.	YES	Change original.
2	ADF reading section	Glass is dirty.	YES	Clean.
3	ADF scanning guide	ADF scanning guide is damaged or dirty.	YES	Clean.
4	Shading sheet	Shading sheet is dirty.	YES	Wipe the surface clean with a soft cloth.
5	Mirror, lens, exposure lamp, and reflectors	Mirror is dirty	YES	Clean.
		Lens is dirty	YES	Clean.
		Exposure lamp is dirty	YES	Clean.
		Reflectors are dirty	YES	Clean.
6	ADF → Original Stop Position (Service Mode)	The adjustment value for [Main Scanning Direction] falls within the specified range.	NO	Readjust.
7	ADF read position	The white lines/bands or colored lines/bands occurs when reading the original from ADF.	YES	Readjust.
8		The white lines/bands or colored lines/bands are blurry.	YES	Change exposure unit. Change CCD unit.

23.3.2 Scanner system: white lines, white bands, colored lines and colored bands in main scan direction

A. Typical faulty images



B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Original	Original is damaged or dirty.	YES	Change original.
2	ADF	Original pad is dirty.	YES	Clean.
3	Original glass	Original glass is dirty.	YES	Wipe the surface clean with a soft cloth.
4	Machine → Scan Area → Image Position: Top Edge (Service Mode)	The adjustment value for [Image Position: Leading Edge] falls within the specified range.	NO	Readjust.
5		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 4.	NO	Change exposure unit. Change CCD unit.

23.3.3 Scanner system: color spots

A. Typical faulty images



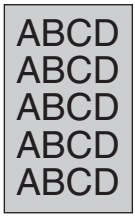
A02EF4C509DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Original	Original is damaged or dirty.	YES	Change original.
2	ADF	Original pad is dirty.	YES	Clean.
3	Original glass	Original glass is dirty.	YES	Wipe the surface clean with a soft cloth.
4		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 3.	NO	Change exposure unit. Change CCD unit.

23.3.4 Scanner system: fog

A. Typical faulty images



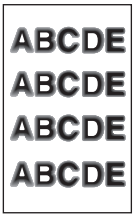
A02EF4C510DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Original	Original is damaged or dirty.	YES	Change original.
2	ADF	Original pad is dirty.	YES	Clean.
3		ADF does not lie flat.	YES	Change ADF if it is deformed or hinges are broken.
4	Original glass	Original glass is dirty.	YES	Wipe the surface clean with a soft cloth.
5	Shading sheet	Shading sheet is dirty.	YES	Wipe the surface clean with a soft cloth.
6	Mirror, lens, exposure lamp, and reflectors	Mirror is dirty.	YES	Clean.
7		Lens is dirty.	YES	Clean.
8		Exposure lamp is dirty.	YES	Clean.
9		Reflectors are dirty.	YES	Clean.
10	Basic screen Quality/Density	The problem is eliminated when the image is produced in the manual exposure setting.	NO	Try another exposure level in manual.
11		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 10.	NO	Change exposure unit. Change CCD unit.

23.3.5 Scanner system: blurred image, blotchy image

A. Typical faulty images



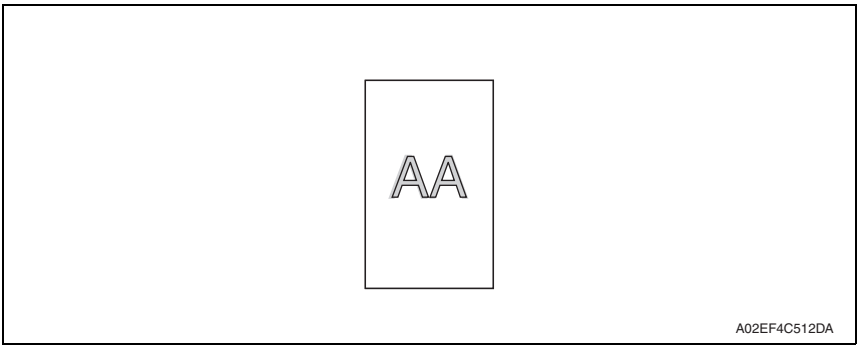
A02EF4C511DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Original	Original does not lie flat.	YES	Change original.
2	ADF	ADF does not lie flat.	YES	Change ADF if it is deformed or hinges are broken.
3	Original glass	Original glass tilts.	YES	Position original glass correctly. Check original loading position.
4	2nd/3rd mirrors carriage	Exposure unit is not aligned with the 2nd/3rd mirrors carriage.	YES	Perform “Focus Positioning of the scanner and 2nd/3rd mirrors carriage” and “Scanner Position Adjustment.”
5		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 4.	NO	Change exposure unit. Change CCD unit.

23.3.6 Scanner system: incorrect color image registration, sync shift (lines in main scan direction)

A. Typical faulty images

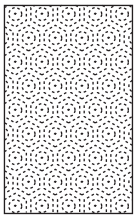


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Original	Original does not lie flat.	YES	Change original.
2	ADF	ADF does not lie flat.	YES	Change ADF if it is deformed or hinges are broken.
3	Scanner rails	Foreign matter on rails.	YES	Clean and apply lubricant.
4	Drive cables	Cable kinks or is damaged.	YES	Correct or change.
5	Exposure unit	Scanner moves smoothly.	NO	Adjust the scanner motor timing belt. → Change bushing. → Change scanner motor. → Change scanner relay board.
6		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 5.	NO	Change CCD unit.

23.3.7 Scanner system: moire

A. Typical faulty images



A02EF4C513DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Original	Moire distortions recur even after the orientation of original has been changed.	NO	Change the original mode (select one other than that resulted in moire).
2	Basic screen Quality/Density	Moire distortions recur even after the original mode has been changed.	YES	Select “Text Mode” or “Photo Mode”.
3	Basic screen Zoom	The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 2.	NO	Change the zoom ratio.

23.3.8 Scanner system: skewed image

A. Typical faulty images



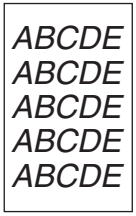
A02EF4C514DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Original	Original is skew.	YES	Reposition original.
2	Original glass	Original glass is in positive contact with the flat spring without being tilt.	NO	Reinstall the glass. Check the original loading position.
3	2nd/3rd mirrors carriage	Exposure unit is not properly aligned with 2nd/3rd mirrors carriage.	YES	Perform “Focus Positioning of the scanner and 2nd/3rd mirrors carriage” and “Scanner Position Adjustment.”
4		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 3.	NO	Change exposure unit. Change CCD unit.

23.3.9 Scanner system: distorted image

A. Typical faulty images



A02EF4C515DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Installation	Machine is installed on a level surface.	NO	Reinstall.
2	2nd/3rd mirrors carriage	Exposure unit is not properly aligned with 2nd/3rd mirrors carriage.	YES	Perform “Focus positioning of the scanner and 2nd/3rd mirrors carriage” and “Scanner Position Adjustment.”
3		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 2.	NO	Change exposure unit. Change CCD unit.

23.3.10 Scanner system: low image density, rough image

A. Typical faulty images



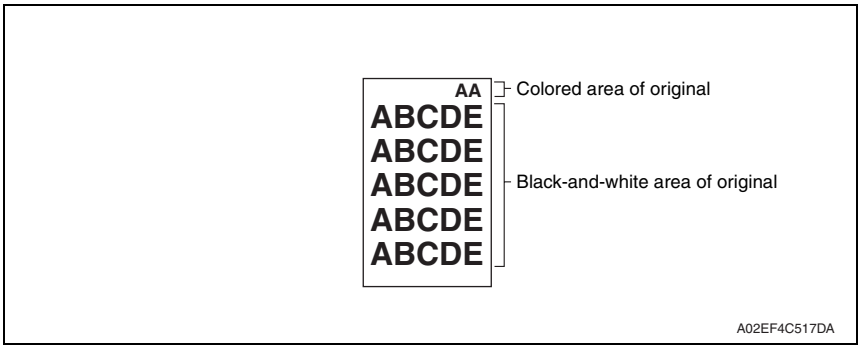
A02EF4C516DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Original glass	Original Glass is dirty.	YES	Wipe the surface clean with a soft cloth.
2	Shading sheet	Shading sheet is dirty.	YES	Wipe the surface clean with a soft cloth.
3	Mirror, lens, exposure lamp, and reflectors	Mirror is dirty.	YES	Clean.
4		Lens is dirty.	YES	Clean.
5		Exposure lamp is dirty.	YES	Clean.
6		Reflectors are dirty.	YES	Clean.
7		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 6.	NO	Clean exposure lamp. → Change exposure unit. → Change CCD unit.

23.3.11 Scanner system: defective ACS

A. Typical faulty images

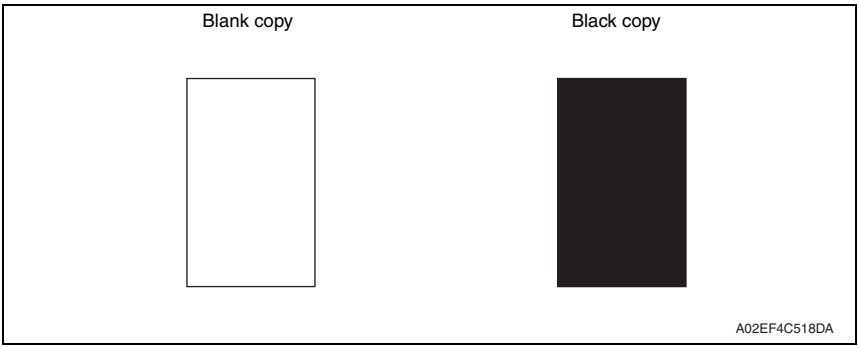


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Auto Color Level Adjustment [User Setting]	The problem persists even after the ACS determination level adjust function has been changed.	YES	Change the original loading direction. Make manual settings according to the type of original. (If the original contains a colored area in one of its corners, the machine may fail to properly detect the colored area.)

23.3.12 Scanner system: blank copy, black copy

A. Typical faulty images

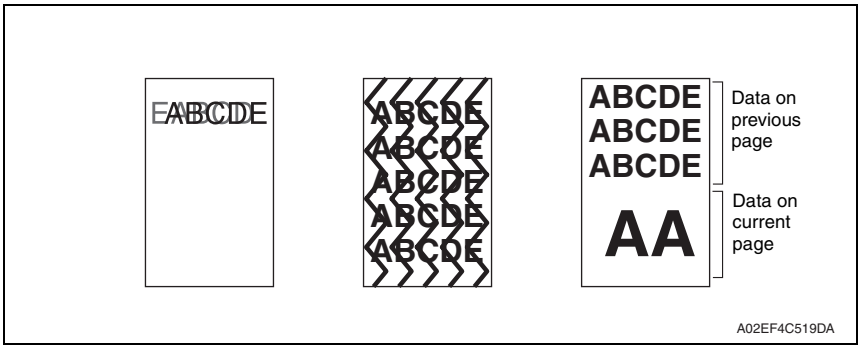


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Cable connecting scanner and printer	Connector is connected properly with no pins bent.	NO	Reconnect.
2	CCD Unit	Connectors of the CCD unit are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
3	Test Mode [Service Mode]	The problem is eliminated as checked with the image on a test pattern produced.	NO	Change I/F connection cable.
4	MFP board (MFPB)	The problem is eliminated after the I/F connection cable has been changed.	NO	Change CCD board. Change MFP board.

23.3.13 Scanner system: abnormal image

A. Typical faulty images

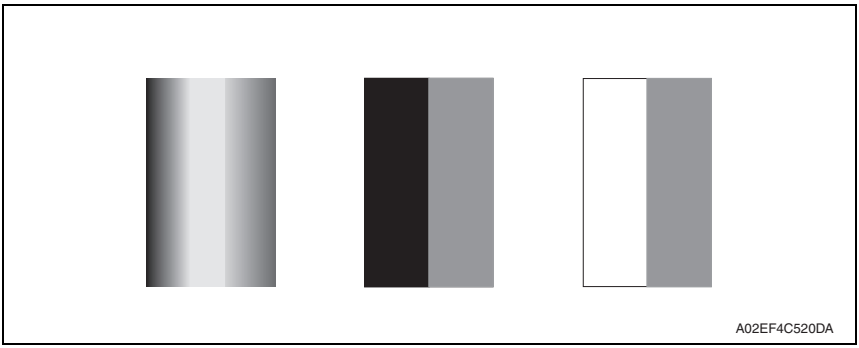


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Cable connecting scanner and printer	Connector is connected properly with no pins bent.	NO	Reconnect.
2	MFP board (MFPB)	Connectors on the MFP board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
3	MFP board (MFPB)	Data on previous page is mixed with data on current page.	NO	Reinstall the memory.
4	Test Mode [Service Mode]	The problem is eliminated as checked with the image on a test pattern produced.	NO	Change I/F connection cable.
5	MFP board (MFPB)	The problem is eliminated after the interface connection cable has been changed.	NO	Change MFP board.
6	Printer control board (PRCB) PH relay board (PHREYB)	Check the connection of connectors, harness, and flat cables between PRCB and PHREYB, and correct if necessary.	NO	Change printer control board. Change PH relay board.

23.3.14 Scanner system: uneven density

A. Typical faulty images

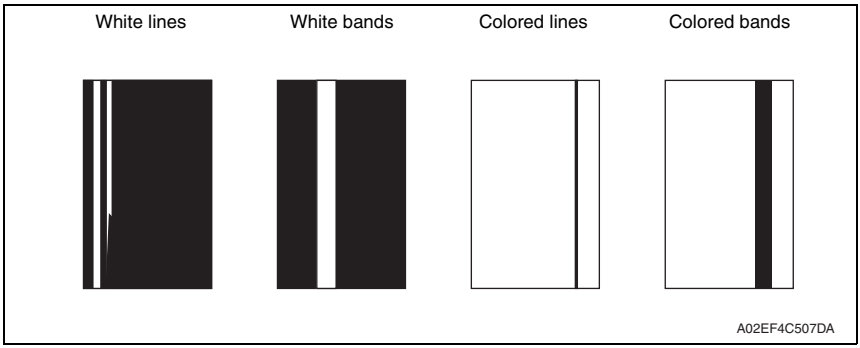


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	ADF read position	The uneven density occurs when reading the original from ADF.	YES	Readjust.
2	2nd/3rd mirrors carriage	Exposure unit is not properly aligned with 2nd/3rd mirrors carriage.	YES	Perform “Focus positioning of the scanner and 2nd/3rd mirrors carriage” and “Scanner Position Adjustment.”
3	Scanner motor	Scanner motor turns smoothly.	NO	Change belt. Change scanner motor.
4		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 3.	NO	Change exposure unit. Change CCD unit.

23.3.15 Printer monocolor: white lines, white bands, colored lines and colored bands in sub scan direction

A. Typical faulty images

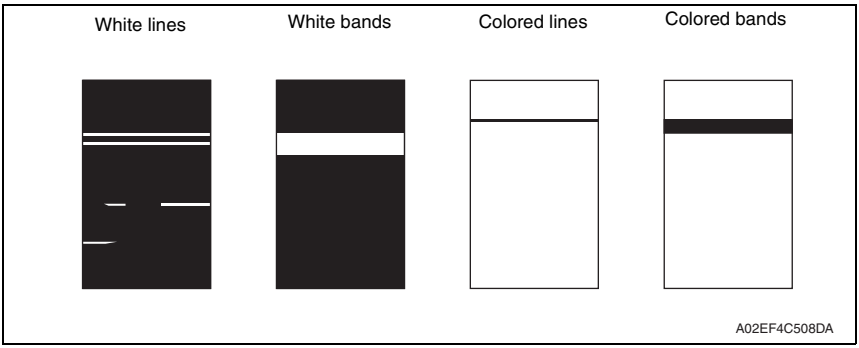


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Image check	A white line or black line in sub scan direction is sharp.	YES	Clean the electrostatic charger wire.
2		When printing thick paper, black lines appear.	YES	Select [Service Mode] → [Machine] → [Thick Paper Mode] and set [Image Quality].
3	Drum unit/ developing unit	The surface of the PC drum is scratched.	YES	Change drum unit.
4		Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
5		Contact terminals make good connection between each drum unit and machine.	NO	Clean contact terminals.
6		Developing bias contact terminal makes good connection.	NO	Clean contact terminal and check terminal position.
7	PH unit	The surface of the PH window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
8		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 7.	NO	Change developing unit. → Change image transfer belt unit. → Change PH unit.

23.3.16 Printer monocolor: white lines, white bands, colored lines and colored bands in main scan direction

A. Typical faulty images

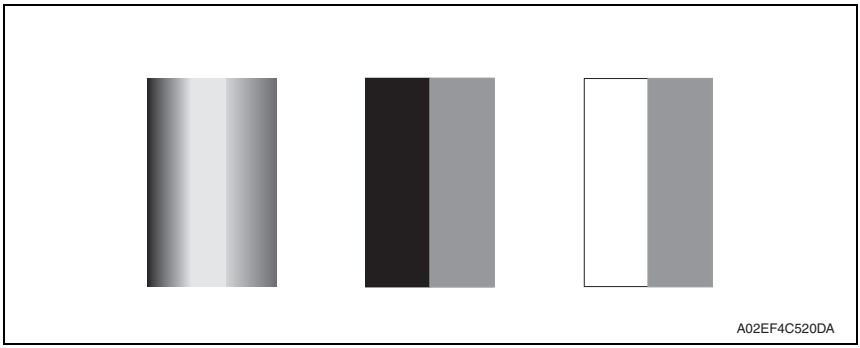


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Image check	A white line or black line in main scan direction is sharp.	NO	Clean the electrostatic charger wire.
2	Drum unit/ developing unit	The surface of the PC drum is scratched.	YES	Change drum unit.
3		Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
4		Contact terminals make good connection between each drum unit and machine.	NO	Clean contact terminals.
5		Developing bias contact terminal makes good connection.	NO	Clean contact terminal and check terminal position.
6	PH unit	The surface of the PH window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
7		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 6.	NO	Change developing unit. → Change image transfer belt unit. → Change PH unit.

23.3.17 Printer monocolor: uneven density in sub scan direction

A. Typical faulty images

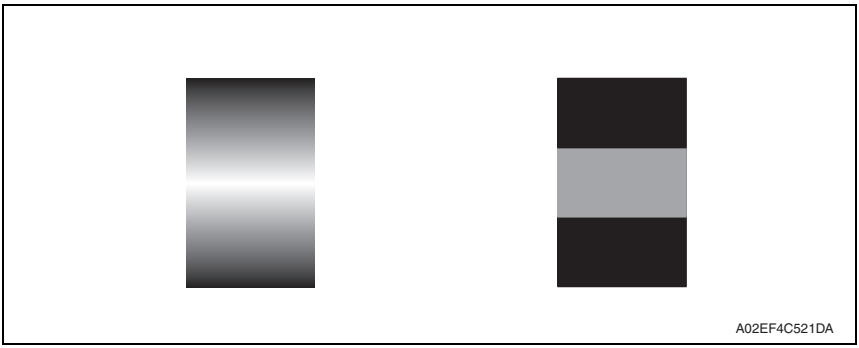


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	High image density original	Uneven density in sub scan direction occurs at a pitch of 40 mm to 50 mm when a multi-copy cycle is run using an original with high image density (50% or more).	YES	Feed 10 to 20 blank sheets of paper with no originals placed, as the developing unit fails to keep up with a high demand for toner.
2	Drum unit/ developing unit	The surface of the PC drum is scratched.	YES	Change drum unit.
3		Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
4	PH unit	The surface of the PH window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
5	Transfer roller unit	Image transfer roller is installed properly.	NO	Reinstall.
6		Image transfer roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change transfer roller unit.
7	Transfer belt unit	Is abnormality found in the cam gear?	YES	Change transfer belt unit.
8		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 7.	NO	Change developing unit. → Change PH unit. → Change High voltage unit. → Printer control board.

23.3.18 Printer monocolor: uneven density in main scan direction

A. Typical faulty images



B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Drum unit/ developing unit	The surface of the PC drum is scratched.	YES	Change drum unit.
2		Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
3	PH unit	The surface of the PH window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
4	Transfer roller	Check that the spring does not come off during the pressure operation of the transfer roller.	NO	Correct. Change transfer roller unit.
5	Transfer belt unit	Transfer belt unit makes positive contact with plates on rails.	NO	Check and correct contacts.
6		Is abnormality found in the cam gear?	YES	Change image transfer belt unit.
7		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 6.	NO	Change developing unit. → Change PH unit. → Change high voltage unit.

23.3.19 Printer monocolor: low image density

A. Typical faulty images



A02EF4C516DA

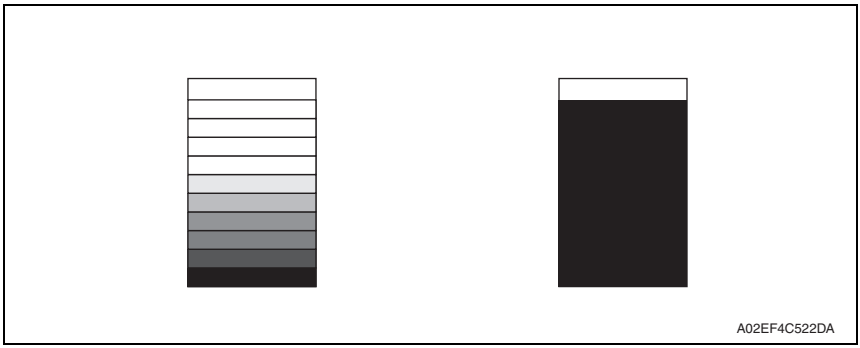
B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Warning display	The maintenance call mark is displayed on the panel.	YES	Take action according to the warning code shown on the state confirm screen.
2	State Confirm → Table Number (Service Mode)	Check data for Vg and Vdc. Color Vdc: around 400 V Vg : around 500 V Black Vdc: around 400 V Vg : around 500 V	—	Go to next step.
3	State Confirmation → Level History 1 (Service Mode)	Check TCR data. (specified rang: 6 to 8 %)	NO	Go to next step.
4		IDC output value is around 4.3 V.	NO	Clean IDC sensor and execute the image stabilization. Check image transfer belt for damage and correct as necessary.
5	Level history data check results	Low TCR and low Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 10.
6		Low TCR and high Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 14.
7		TCR falling within specified range and low Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 10.
8		TCR falling within specified range and high Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 14.
9		The situations other than the above-mentioned.	YES	Go to step 10.
10	PH unit	The surface of the PH window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
11	Transfer belt unit	Transfer belt unit makes positive contact with plates on rails.	NO	Check and correct contacts.
12		Is abnormality found in the cam gear?	YES	Change image transfer belt unit.
13	Hopper unit	Connectors are loose.	YES	Reconnect.
14		Gear is cracked.	YES	Change gear.

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
15	Image Process Adjustment → Manual Toner Add (Service Mode)	Toner is properly supplied when Manual Toner Add is run.	NO	Go to next step.
16	Image Process Adjustment →Gradation Adjust (Service Mode)	"Conv. Value" falls within the specified range as checked through gradation adjust. Dark: 0 ± 100 Highlight: 0 ± 60	YES	Go to step 19.
17	Image Process Adjustment → Max Image Density Adj (Service Mode)	The problem has been eliminated through the adjust of Max Image Density Adj.	NO	Go to next step.
18	Image Process Adjustment → Stabilizer → Initialize + Image Stabilization (Service Mode)	After the Initialize + Image Stabilization sequence has been completed, run gradation adjust.	NO	Go to next step.
19		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 18.	NO	Change drum unit. →Change developing unit. → Change printer control board →Change PH unit. →Change high voltage unit.

23.3.20 Printer monocolor: gradation reproduction failure

A. Typical faulty images

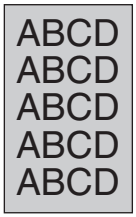


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Warning display	The maintenance call mark is displayed on the panel.	YES	Take action according to the warning code shown on the state confirm screen.
2	Photo/density	Original type and screen pattern are selected properly.	NO	Change screen pattern.
3	PH unit	The surface of the PH window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
4	State Confirmation → Level History 1 (Service Mode)	IDC output value is around 4.3 V.	NO	Clean IDC sensor and execute the image stabilization. Check image transfer belt for damage and correct as necessary.
5	Image Process Adjustment →Gradation Adjust (Service Mode)	"Conv. Value" falls within the specified range as checked through gradation adjust. Dark: 0 ± 100 Highlight: 0 ± 60	YES	Go to step 8.
6	Image Process Adjustment → Max Image Density Adj (Service Mode)	The problem has been eliminated through the adjust of Max Image Density.	NO	Go to next step.
7	Image Process Adjustment → Stabilizer → Initialize + Image Stabilization (Service Mode)	After the Initialize + Image Stabilization sequence has been completed, run gradation adjust;	NO	Go to next step.
8		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 7.	NO	Change drum unit. → Change printer control board → Change PH unit. → Change high voltage unit.

23.3.21 Printer monocolor: foggy background

A. Typical faulty images



A02EF4C510DA

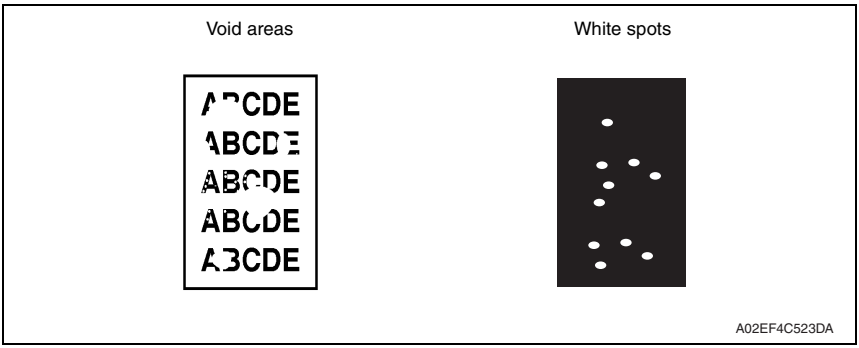
B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Warning display	The maintenance call mark is displayed on the panel.	YES	Take action according to the warning code shown on the state confirm screen.
2	State Confirmation → Table Number (Service Mode)	Check data for Vg and Vdc. Color Vdc: around 400 V Vg : around 500 V Black Vdc: around 400 V Vg : around 500 V	NO	Go to next step.
3	State Confirmation → Level History 1 (Service Mode)	Check TCR data. (specified rang: 6 to 8 %)	NO	Go to next step.
4		IDC output value is around 4.3 V.	NO	Clean IDC sensor and execute the image stabilization. Check image transfer belt for damage and correct as necessary.
5	Level history data check results	Low TCR and low Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 10.
6		Low TCR and high Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 12.
7		TCR falling within specified range and low Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 10.
8		TCR falling within specified range and high Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 12.
9		The situations other than the above-mentioned.	YES	Go to step 10.
10	Imaging unit	Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
11	PH unit	The surface of the PH window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
12	Image Process Adjustment → Image Background Adj (Service Mode)	The problem is eliminated after Image Background Adj has been adjusted.	NO	Go to next step.

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
13	Image Process Adjustment →Gradation Adjust (Service Mode)	"Conv. Value" falls within the specified range as checked through gradation adjust. Dark: 0 ± 100 Highlight: 0 ± 60	YES	Go to step 17.
14	Image Process Adjustment → Max Image Density Adj (Service Mode)	The problem has been eliminated through the adjust of Max Image Density.	NO	Go to next step.
15	Image Process Adjustment → Stabilizer → Initialize + Image Stabilization (Service Mode)	After the Initialize + Image Stabilization sequence has been completed, run gradation adjust.	NO	Go to next step.
16	Printer control board (PRCB) PH relay board (PHREYB)	Check the connection of connectors, harness, and flat cables between PRCB and PHREYB, and correct if necessary.	NO	Change printer control board. Change PH relay board.
17		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 16.	NO	Change drum unit. → Change PH unit. → Change high voltage unit.

23.3.22 Printer monocolor: void areas, white spots

A. Typical faulty images



B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Image Check	There are void areas at the front side or high density section.	YES	See P.723
2		There is void area at the rear side section.	YES	Perform [Transfer Voltage Fine Adj-Secondary transfer adj.] of [Image Process Adjustment] under Service Mode.
3	Drum unit	The surface of the PC drum is scratched.	YES	Change drum unit.
4	Toner cartridge	Foreign matter or caked toner in the toner cartridge.	YES	Remove foreign matter.
5	Installation environment	Is the atmospheric pressure at the installation site low?	YES	Make the following adjustment: [Service Mode] → [Image Process Adjustment] → [Grad/Dev AC Bias V Selection].

23.3.23 Printer monocolor: colored spots

A. Typical faulty images



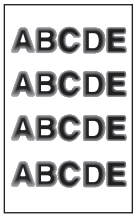
A02EF4C524DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Drum unit/ developing unit	Developing bias contact terminal makes good connection.	NO	Clean contact terminal and check terminal position.
2		The surface of the PC drum is scratched.	YES	Change drum unit.
3		Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.

23.3.24 Printer monocolor: blurred image

A. Typical faulty images



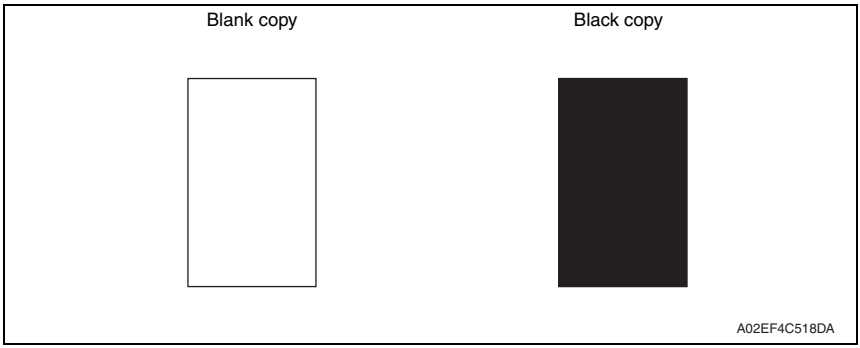
A02EF4C511DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	PH unit	The surface of the PH window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
2	Drum unit	Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
3		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 2.	NO	Change imaging unit. → Change PH unit.

23.3.25 Printer monocolor: blank copy, black copy

A. Typical faulty images



B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Image check	A blank copy occurs.	YES	Check PH unit connector for proper connection.
2	Drum unit	Coupling of drum unit drive mechanism is installed properly.	NO	Check and correct drive transmitting coupling. Change drum unit.
3		The PC drum charge corona voltage contact or PC drum ground contact of the imaging unit is connected properly.	NO	Check, clean, or correct the contact.
4	High voltage unit/	Connector is connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
5		The problem has been eliminated through the check of step 4.	NO	Change high voltage unit. → Change printer control board → Change PH unit.

23.3.26 Printer monocolor: uneven image

A. Typical faulty images



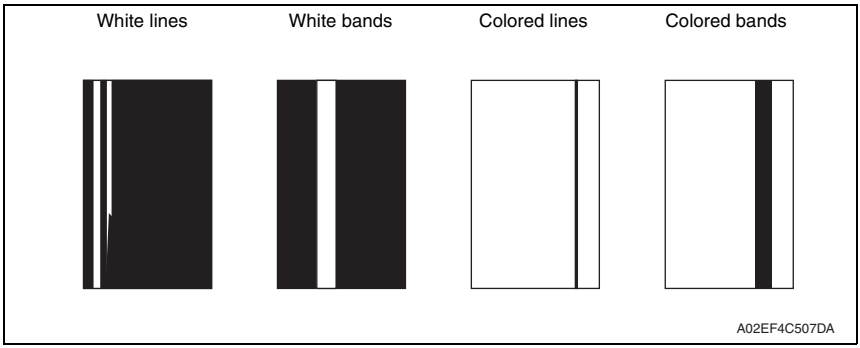
A02EF4C525DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Toner cartridge	The toner cartridge of every color is surely installed.	NO	Re-install it.
2	PH unit	The PH unit is surely installed.	NO	Re-install it.
3	Toner cartridge	There is any stain or breakage on the drive section of the toner cartridge.	YES	Clean/replace the toner cartridge.
4	Drum unit	There is any stain, damage or abrasion on the PC drum.	YES	Replace the drum unit.
5	Transfer roller	There is any stain, damage, deformation or abrasion on the transfer roller.	YES	Replace the transfer roller.
6	Fusing unit	There is any stain, damage, deformation or abrasion on the roller and drive section of the fusing unit.	YES	Replace the fusing unit.
7		The problem has been eliminated through the check of step 6.	NO	Replace the image transfer belt unit.

23.3.27 Printer 4-color: white lines, white bands, colored lines and colored bands in sub scan direction

A. Typical faulty images

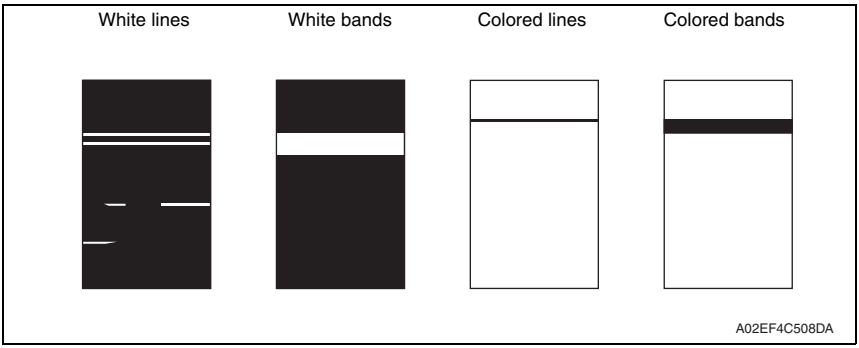


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Image check	A white line or colored line in sub scan direction.	YES	Clean the comb electrode.
2	Transfer belt unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the transfer belt.	YES	Clean with specified solvent. (See Maintenance.)
3		Transfer belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change transfer belt unit if belt is damaged.
4		Cleaning blade is not effective in removing toner completely.	YES	Change transfer belt unit.
5	Transfer roller unit	Transfer roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change transfer roller unit.
6	Paper path	There is foreign matter on paper path.	YES	Remove foreign matter.
7		Image transfer paper separator fingers are damaged or dirty.	YES	Clean or change.
8	Fusing unit	Fusing entrance guide plate is dirty or damaged.	YES	Clean. Change fusing unit.
9		Fusing paper separator fingers are dirty.	YES	Clean.
10		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 9.	NO	Change printer control board

23.3.28 Printer 4-color: white lines, white bands, colored lines and colored bands in main scan direction

A. Typical faulty images

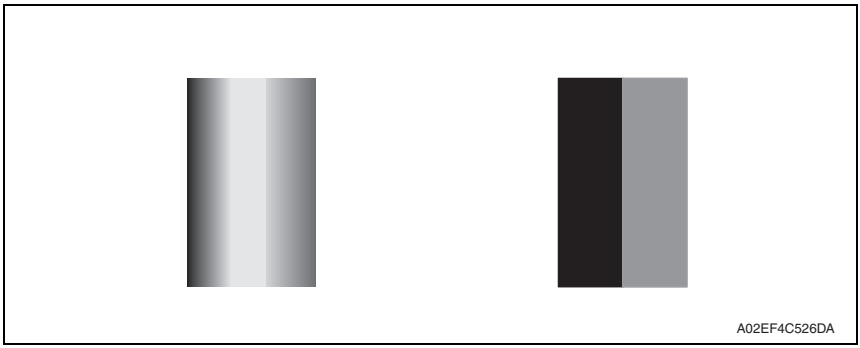


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Transfer belt unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the transfer belt.	YES	Clean with specified solvent. (See Maintenance.)
2		Transfer belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change transfer belt unit if belt is damaged.
3		Cleaning brush is not effective in removing toner completely.	YES	Clean cleaning brush. Change transfer belt unit.
4	Transfer roller unit	Transfer roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change transfer roller unit.
5	Paper path	There is foreign matter on paper path.	YES	Remove foreign matter.
6		Image transfer paper separator fingers are damaged or dirty.	YES	Clean or change.
7	Fusing unit	Fusing entrance guide plate is dirty or damaged.	YES	Clean. Change fusing unit.
8		Fusing paper separator fingers are dirty.	YES	Clean.
9	Neutralizing brush	The resistance values between the neutralizing brush and the ground terminal is not ∞.	NO	Check the contact. Change neutralizing brush.
10		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 9.	NO	Change printer control board

23.3.29 Printer 4-color: uneven density in sub scan direction

A. Typical faulty images

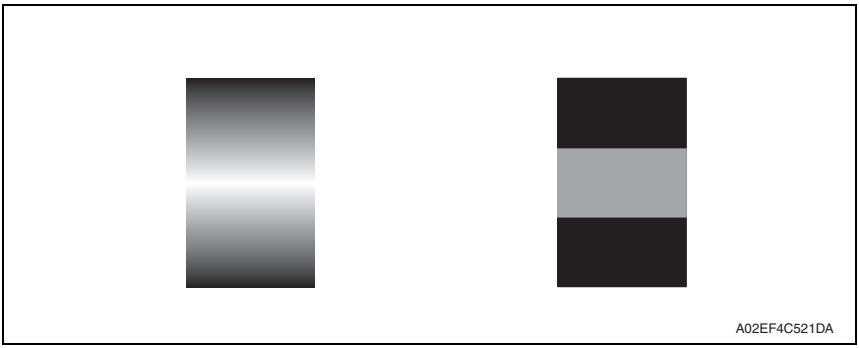


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Transfer belt unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the transfer belt.	YES	Clean it with the tender cloth or paper which is dusted with the toner.
2		Transfer belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change transfer belt unit if belt is damaged.
3		Terminal is dirty.	YES	Clean.
4	Transfer roller unit	Image transfer roller is installed properly.	NO	Reinstall.
5		Image transfer roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change transfer roller unit.
6		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 5.	NO	Change transfer belt unit.

23.3.30 Printer 4-color: uneven density in main scan direction

A. Typical faulty images



B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Transfer belt unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the transfer belt.	YES	Clean it with the tender cloth or paper which is dusted with the toner.
2		Transfer belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change transfer belt unit if belt is damaged.
3		Terminal is dirty.	YES	Clean.
4	Transfer roller unit	Image transfer roller is installed properly.	NO	Reinstall.
5		Image transfer roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change transfer roller unit.
6		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 5.	NO	Change transfer belt unit. → Change high voltage unit.

23.3.31 Printer 4-color: low image density

A. Typical faulty images



A02EF4C516DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Paper	Paper is damp.	YES	Change paper to one just unwrapped from its package.
2	Transfer belt unit	Terminal is dirty.	YES	Clean.
3	Transfer roller unit	Transfer roller is installed properly.	NO	Reinstall.
4		Charge neutralizing needle is not separated and ground terminal is connected properly.	NO	Correct or change.
5	IDC sensor	Sensor is dirty.	YES	Clean IDC sensor and execute the image stabilization.
6	Image Process Adjustment →Gradation Adjust (Service Mode)	"Conv. Value" falls within the specified range as checked through gradation adjust. Dark: 0 ± 100 Highlight: 0 ± 60	YES	Go to step 9.
7	Image Process Adjustment → Max Image Density Adj (Service Mode)	The problem has been eliminated through the adjust of Max Image Density.	NO	Go to next step.
8	Image Process Adjustment → Stabilizer → Reset + Stabilizer (Service Mode)	After the Initialize + Image Stabilization sequence has been completed, run gradation adjust.	NO	Go to next step.
9		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 8.	NO	Change image transfer belt unit. → Change printer control board → Change high voltage unit.

23.3.32 Printer 4-color: poor color reproduction

A. Typical faulty images



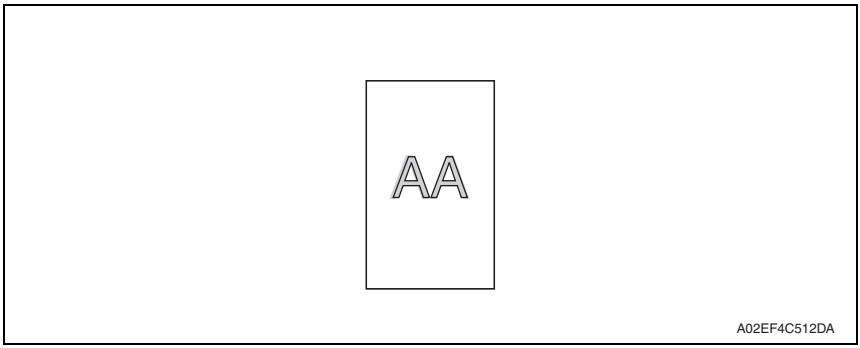
A02EF4C527DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Paper	Paper is damp.	YES	Change paper to one just unwrapped from its package.
2	Transfer belt unit	Terminal is dirty.	YES	Clean.
3	Transfer roller unit	Transfer roller is installed properly.	NO	Reinstall.
4		Charge neutralizing needle is not separated and ground terminal is connected properly.	NO	Correct or change.
5	IDC sensor	Sensor is dirty.	YES	Clean IDC sensor and execute the image stabilization.
6	Image Process Adjustment → Gradation Adjust (Service Mode)	"Conv. Value" falls within the specified range as checked through gradation adjust. Dark: 0 ± 100 Highlight: 0 ± 60	YES	Go to step 9.
7	Image Process Adjustment → Max Image Density Adj (Service Mode)	The problem has been eliminated through the adjust of Max Image Density.	NO	Go to next step.
8	Image Process Adjustment → Stabilizer → Reset + Stabilizer (Service Mode)	After the Reset + Stabilizer sequence has been completed, run gradation adjust.	NO	Go to next step.
9		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 8.	NO	Change transfer belt unit. → Change printer control board → Change high voltage unit.

23.3.33 Printer 4-color: incorrect color image registration

A. Typical faulty images



B. Troubleshooting procedure

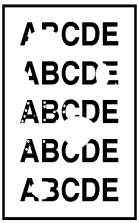
Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Warning display	The maintenance call mark is displayed on the panel.	YES	Take action according to the warning code shown on the state confirm screen.
2	Machine condition	Vibration is given to the machine after main power switch has been turned ON.	YES	Turn off the main power switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.
3	Transfer belt unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the transfer belt.	YES	Clean it with the tender cloth or paper which is dusted with the toner.
4		Transfer belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change transfer belt unit if belt is damaged.
5		Drive coupling to the machine is dirty.	YES	Clean.
6	Drum unit	The surface of the PC drum is scratched.	YES	Change drum unit.
7	Transfer roller unit	Transfer roller is installed properly.	NO	Reinstall.
8		Transfer roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change transfer roller unit.
9	Machine → Fusing Transport Speed (Service Mode)	Brush effect or blurred image occurs.	YES	Readjust fusing transport speed.
10	Machine → Color registration Adjustment (Service Mode)	Check the specific color in which color shift occurs.	YES	Perform “Color registration Adjustment.” If color shift is not corrected even with a correction of ± 1 dot, go to next step.
11	Skew correction motor	• Skew correction motor/C, M, Y functions correctly.	NO	Change skew correction motor.
12	PH relay board	REYB/PH ICP2, 3, 4 conduction check	NO	Change PH relay board. Change PH unit.

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
13		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 12.	NO	Change transfer belt unit. Change printer control board.

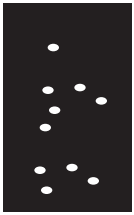
23.3.34 Printer 4-color: void areas, white spots

A. Typical faulty images

Void areas



White spots



A02EF4C523DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Image check	There are void areas at the front side or high density section.	YES	See P.738
2		There are void areas in the trailing edge.	YES	Perform [Transfer Adjust] of [Image Process Adjustment] under Service Mode.
3	Transfer belt unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the transfer belt.	YES	Clean it with the tender cloth or paper which is dusted with the toner.
4		Transfer belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change transfer belt unit if belt is damaged.
5	Transfer roller unit	Transfer roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change 2nd image transfer roller unit.
6		Charge neutralizing needle is not separated and ground terminal is connected properly.	NO	Correct or change.
7	Paper path	There is foreign matter on paper path.	YES	Remove foreign matter.
8		Pre-image transfer guide plate is damaged or dirty.	YES	Clean or change.
9		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 8.	NO	Change transfer belt unit.

23.3.35 Printer 4-color: colored spots

A. Typical faulty images



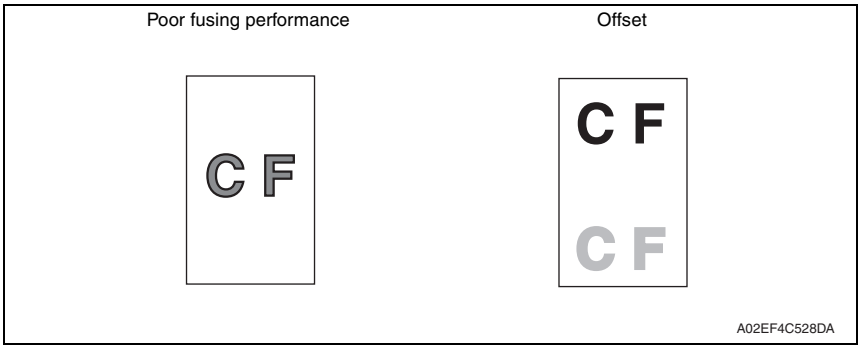
A02EF4C509DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Drum unit	The surface of the PC drum is scratched.	YES	Change drum unit.
2	Transfer belt unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the image transfer belt.	YES	Clean it with the tender cloth or paper which is dusted with the toner.
3		Transfer belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change transfer belt unit if belt is damaged.
4	Transfer roller unit	Transfer roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change transfer roller unit.
5	Paper path	There is foreign matter on paper path.	YES	Remove foreign matter.
6	Fusing unit	Fusing belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change fusing unit.
7		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 6.	NO	Change transfer belt unit.

23.3.36 Printer 4-color: poor fusing performance, offset

A. Typical faulty images

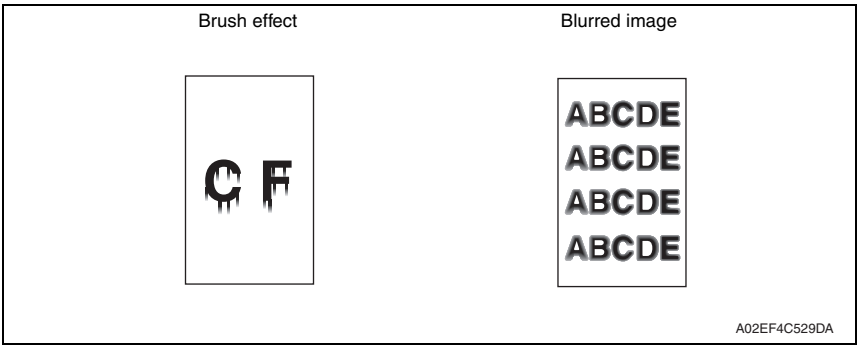


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Paper	Paper type does not match.	YES	Change the setting.
2	Machine→ Fusing Temperature (Service Mode)	Changing fusing temperature eliminates the problem of poor fusing performance and offset.	YES	Readjust fusing temperature.
3		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 2.	NO	Change fusing unit.

23.3.37 Printer 4-color: brush effect, blurred image

A. Typical faulty images

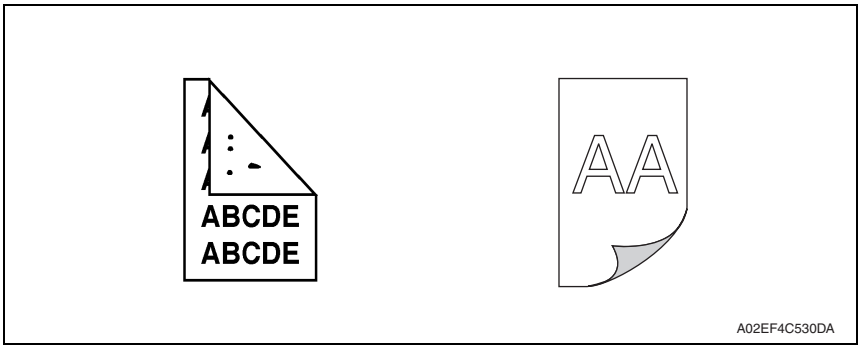


B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Paper	Paper is damp.	YES	Change paper to one just unwrapped from its package.
2		Paper type does not match.	YES	Change the setting.
3	Fusing unit	Fusing unit is installed properly.	NO	Reinstall.
4		Fusing entrance guide plate is dirty.	YES	Clean.
5		Fusing belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change fusing unit.
6	Machine → Fusing Transport Speed (Service Mode)	Changing fusing speed eliminates the problem of brush effect and blurred image.	YES	Readjust fusing transport speed.

23.3.38 Printer 4-color: back marking

A. Typical faulty images



B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Transfer roller unit	Transfer roller is scratched or dirty.	YES	Change transfer roller unit.
2	Paper path	There is foreign matter on paper path.	YES	Remove foreign matter.
3	Fusing unit	Fusing entrance guide plate is scratched or dirty.	YES	Clean or change.
4		Lower fusing roller is scratched or dirty.	YES	Change fusing unit.
5	Transfer belt unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the transfer belt.	YES	Clean it with the tender cloth or paper which is dusted with the toner.
6		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 5.	NO	Change transfer belt unit. → Change high voltage unit.

23.3.39 Printer 4-color: uneven image

A. Typical faulty images



A02EF4C525DA

B. Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Toner cartridge	The toner cartridge of every color is surely installed.	NO	Re-install it.
2	PH unit	The PH unit is surely installed.	NO	Re-install it.
3	Toner cartridge	There is any stain or breakage on the drive section of the toner cartridge.	YES	Clean/replace the toner cartridge.
4	Drum unit	There is any stain, damage or abrasion on the PC drum.	YES	Replace the drum unit.
5	Transfer roller unit	There is any stain, damage, deformation or abrasion on the transfer roller.	YES	Replace the transfer roller unit.
6	Fusing unit	There is any stain, damage, deformation or abrasion on the roller and drive section of the fusing unit.	YES	Replace the fusing unit.
7		The problem has been eliminated through the check of step 6.	NO	Replace the transfer belt unit.

24. IC protector

24.1 Outline

- To increase product safety, this MFP has an IC protector (ICP) installed in each board. ICP is a component that protects IC. If the amount of the current supplied to the electrical parts such as motor exceeds the set level, ICP trips to protect IC from over current. The following list contains ICP installed in each board, related devices, and symptoms that occur when ICP trips.

24.2 IC protector list

24.2.1 Main body

A. Printer control board

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
ICP1	—	LCC, cabinet	No function	—
ICP2	EL/Y	Erase lamp/Y	No change (No light up. Accidental image or stain on image may occur)	—
	EL/M	Erase lamp/M		—
	EL/C	Erase lamp/C		—
	EL/K	Erase lamp/K		—
	CL4	Registration roller clutch	Misfeed at vertical transport section	—
	SD2	IDC registration sensor shutter solenoid	IDC sensor failure Color regist failure	P5/P28/P6/ P7/P8/P9/ P21/P22
	FM6	Transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor	Transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor's failure to turn	C2355
ICP3	M6	Toner cartridge motor/YM	TCR sensor/Y,M abnormally low toner/adjustment failure	C2555/ C255B/ C2553/C255A
	M7	Toner cartridge motor/CK	TCR sensor/C,K abnormally low toner/adjustment failure	C2551/C2559/ C2557/C255C
	FM1	Power supply cooling fan motor	Power supply cooling fan motor's failure to turn	C5351
ICP4	M8	Toner supply motor/YM	TCR sensor/Y,M abnormally low toner/adjustment failure	C2555/ C255B/ C2553/C255A
	M9	Toner supply motor/CK	TCR sensor/C,K abnormally low toner/adjustment failure	C2551/C2559/ C2557/C255C

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
ICP5	CL5	Transfer belt retraction clutch	Transfer belt pressure welding alienation	C2152
	CL6	Developing clutch/K	Color developing unit de-engagement failure	C225D
	CL3	Paper feed tray 1 paper feed clutch	Misfeed at tray 1 feed section	—
	CL1	Paper feed tray 2 paper feed clutch	Misfeed at tray 2 feed section	—
	CL2	Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport clutch	Misfeed at tray 2 feed section	—
	CL7	Manual paper feed clutch	Misfeed at manual bypass feed section	—
	SD1	Manual pick-up solenoid	Manual feed up/down abnormality	C0211
	—	Dehumidifier heater	Misfeed at tray 3/4 feed section	—
ICP6	M11	Fusing pressure roller retraction motor	Fusing roller separation failure	C3101
ICP7	M10	Color dev. unit engaged motor	Color developing unit de-engagement failure	C225D
	M12	Paper feed tray 1 lift-up motor	Tray 1 feeder up/down abnormality	C0202
	M13	Paper feed tray 2 lift-up motor	Tray 2 feeder up/down abnormality	C0204
ICP8	M5	Duplex transport motor	Misfeed at duplex transport section	—
ICP9	M4	Switchback motor	Misfeed at duplex transport section	—

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
ICP11	PS3	Paper exit sensor	No power supply for both CPU and ASIC	C6752
	PS2	Fusing loop detect sensor		
	PS37	Color dev. unit engaged position sensor		
	PS39	Transfer belt retraction sensor		
	PS33	Color PC main sensor		
	PS34	Monochrome PC main sensor		
	PS35	Color PC sub-sensor		
	PS36	Monochrome PC sub-sensor		
	SE2	Manual CD size sensor		
	PS27	Manual paper empty sensor		
	PS26	Manual lift-up position sensor		
	PS28	Manual multi FD sensor /1		
	PS29	Manual multi FD sensor /2		
	PS30	Manual multi FD sensor /3		
	PS40	Duplex paper passage sensor		
	PS38	Fusing pressure roller retraction sensor		
	PS32	Fusing pressure roller home sensor		
	PS25	Paper feed tray 1 upper limit sensor		
	PS15	Paper feed tray 1 device detection sensor		
	PS11	Paper feed tray 1 near empty sensor		
	PS24	Paper feed tray 1 paper empty sensor		
	PS13	Paper feed tray 1 paper CD size detect sensor/1		
	PS14	Paper feed tray 1 paper CD size detect sensor/2		
	PS22	Paper feed tray 2 upper limit sensor		
	PS18	Paper feed tray 2 device detection sensor		

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
ICP11	PS12	Paper feed tray 2 near empty sensor	No power supply for both CPU and ASIC	C6752
	PS21	Paper feed tray 2 paper empty sensor		
	PS16	Paper feed tray 2 paper CD size detect sensor/1		
	PS17	Paper feed tray 2 paper CD size detect sensor/2		
	PEIB/1	Tray 3 paper empty indicator board		
	PEIB/2	Tray 4 paper empty indicator board		
	RS4	Toner near empty switch/Y		
	RS5	Toner near empty switch/M		
	RS6	Toner near empty switch/C		
	RS7	Toner near empty switch/K		
	PH REYB	PH relay board (to the index board into the PH unit)		
ICP12	PH REYB	PH relay board (to the index board into the PH unit)	Laser malfunction	C4501
	TCRSB	TCR sensor board/Y,M,C,K	TCR sensor abnormally high toner/ adjustment failure	C2556/ C255B/ C2554/ C255A/ C2552/C2559/ C2558/C255C
			Developing unit new article release failure	C2413/C2412/ C2411/C2414
			ROM contents error (PRT)	CC163
	DR NDTB	Drum unit new article detect board/Y,M,C,K	Drum unit new release failure	C2A13/ C2A12/ C2A11/C2A14
			ROM contents error (PRT)	CC163
ICP14	LEDB1	Paper feed tray 1 LED board	No light up of tray 1 LED	—
	LEDB2	Paper feed tray 2 LED board	No light up of tray 2 LED	—
	PS1	Sensor in front of tim. roller	Misfeed at vertical transport section	—
	—	Dispose toner box set sensor	Waste toner box set is continuously detected	—
	—	Waste toner full sensor	Waste toner full is continuously detected	—
	IDCS/ MK	IDC registration sensor/MK	IDC sensor failure	P5/P28
	IDCS/ YC	IDC registration sensor/YC		
	TEM/ HUM	Temperature/humidity sensor	No change (Panel display 0° C 10% Risk of image failure)	—

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
ICP15	PS23	Paper feed tray 1 paper feed sensor	Misfeed at tray 1 feed section	—
	PS20	Paper feed tray 2 paper feed sensor	Misfeed at tray 2 feed section	—
	PS19	Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor	Misfeed at tray 2 feed section	—

B. PH relay board

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
ICP1	M14	Polygon motor	Polygon motor rotation trouble	C4101
ICP2	M15	Skew correction motor/Y	No function of skew correction regist failure	—
ICP3	M16	Skew correction motor/M	No function of skew correction regist failure	—
ICP4	M17	Skew correction motor/C	No function of skew correction regist failure	—

24.2.2 DF-617

A. DF control board

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
F8	—	DC to DC converter input section 24V line	Unable to produce DC5V in ADF and MFP unable to detect ADF	—
F6	SD1	Reverse path switching solenoid	ADF paper exit/image reading section JAM	—
	SD2	Exit reverse path switching solenoid	ADF image reading section JAM	—
F7	SD3	Stamp solenoid	Unable to place a stamp	—
	FM1	Cooling fan	Cooling fan failure	C-8302
F10	PS3	Registration sensor	ADF transport section JAM	—
	PS8	Reverse registration sensor	ADF turnover section JAM	—
	PS4	After separate sensor	ADF transport section JAM	—
F9	PS7	Reverse roller sensor	Turn around pressure welding alienation trouble	C-8102
	PS9	Before read sensor	ADF transport section JAM	—
	PS10	Length sensor/1	Wrong original size detection	—
	PS11	Length sensor/2	Wrong original size detection	—
	PS12	Length sensor/3	Wrong original size detection	—
	PS15	Lift up lower sensor	Lift up mechanism failure	C-8106
F11	PS20	Original set sensor	Original reset indication	—

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
F2	M2	Registration motor	ADF transport section JAM	—
F3	M1	Reading motor	ADF image reading section JAM	—
F1	M3	Exit motor	ADF paper exit section JAM	—
F4	M8	Take-up motor	ADF paper feed section JAM	—
F5	M9	Glass cleaning motor	Glass cleaning motor mechanism failure	C-8107
PS1	M7	Lift-up motor	Lift up mechanism failure	C-8106
PS2	M5	Reverse roller pressure/retraction motor	Turn around pressure welding alienation trouble	C-8102
PS3	M4	Reading roller pressure/retraction motor	Before reading pressure welding alienation mechanism	C-8101

24.2.3 PC-107/PC-207

A. PC Control board

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
ICP1	M122 M123	Tray3 paper feed motor Tray4 paper feed motor	Paper feed drive malfunction, paper feed JAM	—
ICP2	M121	Tray4 vertical transport motor	Paper feed drive malfunction, paper feed JAM	—
ICP3	M120	Tray3 vertical transport motor	Paper feed drive malfunction, paper feed JAM	—
ICP5	—	DC to DC converter for 5V power supply	Unable to be detected	—
ICP6	M124 M125	Tray3 lift-up motor Tray4 lift-up motor	Lift up mechanism failure	C-0206 C-0208

24.2.4 PC-408

A. PC Control board

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
ICP1	M1	Paper feed motor	Paper feed drive malfunction, paper feed JAM	—
ICP2	M2	Vertical transport motor	Paper feed drive malfunction, paper feed JAM	—
ICP3	M3	Division board position motor	Paper feed drive malfunction, Division board position motor malfunction	C-0213
ICP4	M4	Shift motor	Paper feed drive malfunction, Shift motor malfunction	C-0214, C-0215
ICP5	M5	Elevator motor	Paper feed drive malfunction, Elevator motor malfunction	C-0209, C-0210
ICP6	—	DC to DC converter for 5V power supply	Unable to be detected	—

24.2.5 JS-505

A. JS control board

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
F1	—	FN main power switch	Unable to supply 24V to FN and MFP unable to detect FN	C-1004
F2	—	DC to DC converter input section 24 V line	Unable to produce DC5V in FN and MFP unable to detect FN	C-1004
F3	CL1	Roller pressure/retraction clutch	Exit roller pressure/ retraction malfunction	C-11A1
F4	T1FDTB/LED	Lower tray paper full detect board/PR	Continuous tray 1 full detection	—
	T2FDTB/LED	Upper tray paper full detect board/PR	Continuous tray 2 full detection	
F6	M2	Shift motor	Shift motor drive failure	C-1182
F7	M1	Transport motor	Transport section JAM	—

24.2.6 FS-527

A. FS control board

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
F1	—	Between connection with MFP and 24V power line	No operation (Due to no power supply to CPU, FS connection not detected)	—
F3	—	24V to 5V DC to DC converter		—
F4	—	5V to 3.3V DC to DC converter		—
F5	M1	Paper passage motor/1	JAM between MFP and the paper receiving section	—
F6	M3	Paper passage motor/2	JAM between RU and the intermediate section	—
F7	M4	Conveyance motor	JAM between the intermediate and lower path sections	—
F8	M5	Exit motor	JAM or multiple sheets/sets ejection JAM between the accommodation and exit sections.	—
F9	M11	Stapler movement motor	Stapler movement drive failure	C-11B0
F10	M13	Alignment plate motor	Alignment plate motor drive malfunction	C-1190
F11	M14	Leading edge stopper motor	Leading edge stopper motor drive malfunction	C-1194
F12	SD1	Accommodation paddle solenoid	Accommodation section JAM	—
F13	M16	Tray2 shift motor	Shift motor drive failure	C-1182
F14	M2	Duplex path switching motor	Duplex path switching motor drive malfunction (Paper may be fed in the mode where this motor does not operate)	C-11E0
F15	M6	Upper lower path switching motor	Upper lower path switching motor drive malfunction (Paper may be fed when no finishing options are selected.)	C-11E1
F16	M8	Tray1 path switching motor	Tray1 path switching motor drive malfunction (Paper may be fed when it is not ejected to the tray 1.)	C-11E2
F17	M17	Tray3 exit roller retraction motor	Tray 3 exit roller pressure/ retraction failure (Only when JS is installed)	C-11A7
F18	M9	Exit roller retraction motor	Tray 2 exit roller pressure/ retraction failure	C-11A1
F19	M10	Accommodation roller retraction motor	Accommodation roller pressure/ retraction failure	C-11A2
F20	M100	Punch motor/1	Punch motor drive malfunction (Only during the initial operation or the punch operation in punch mode)	C-11C0
F21	M18	Stapler motor	Staple drive failure (Paper may be fed when stapling is not selected)	C-11B2
F22	M15	Elevate motor	Elevate drive malfunction	C-1183

ICP No.	Sym-bol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
F23	M12	Accommodation paddle motor	Accommodation section JAM (Depending on conditions, paper may be ejected when no finishing options are selected.)	—
F25	M15	Elevate motor	Elevate drive malfunction	C-1183
F26	PS200	Punch cam position sensor	Punch motor drive malfunction	C-11C0
	PS300	Punch pulse sensor/1		
	PS100	Punch home sensor/1		
F27	—	Stapler home sensor	Staple drive failure (Likely to staple repeatedly depending on conditions)	C-11B2
	—	Stapler self-priming sensor		
	—	Staple empty sensor		
F29	PS1	Paper passage sensor/1	JAM	—
	PS2	Paper passage sensor/2		
	PS10	Registration sensor		
	PS30	Punch hole full sensor		
F30	PS9	Lower path sensor	JAM	—
	PS16	Tray2 paper detection sensor		

24.2.7 SD-509

A. SD drive board

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
F1	PS43	Paper detection sensor/1	Saddle section JAM	—
	PS44	Paper detection sensor/2		
F2	—	24V to 5V DC to DC converter	No operation (Due to no power supply to CPU, SD connection is not detected)	—
F3	M24	Center staple alignment motor/F	Center-staple front adjust drive motor malfunction	C-1114
F4	M23	Center staple alignment motor/R	Center-staple rear adjust drive motor malfunction	C-1150
F5	M20	Leading edge stopper motor	Center-staple lead edge stopper motor malfunction	C-1113
F7	M26	Center fold plate motor	Center-staple knife drive motor malfunction	C-1115
F8	—	Saddle stapler	Saddle stapler drive failure	C-11B5
F9	SD3	Leading edge grip solenoid	Misalignment, misalignment of sheets in a copy set, and misaligned saddle stitch and fold positions	—
F10	—	Stapler home sensor	Center-stapler drive failure or staple empty indication	C-11B5
	—	Staple empty sensor 1		
	—	Staple empty sensor 2		

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
F11	M25	Center fold roller motor	Center-staple transfer motor malfunction	C-1116
F12	M25	Center fold roller motor	Center-staple transfer motor malfunction	C-1116
F13	M21	Upper paddle motor	Center-staple paddle roller motor malfunction (trailing edge)	C-1156
F14	M22	Lower paddle motor	Center-staple paddle roller motor malfunction (Leading edge)	C-1158

24.2.8 FS-529

A. FS control board

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
R1	—	24V to 5V DC to DC converter	Not functioning	—
CP1	—	24V to 3.3V DC to DC converter	Not functioning	—
	PS1	Paper passage sensor/1		—
	PS2	Paper surface detect sensor/1		—
	PS3	Paper surface detect sensor/2		—
	PS4	Tray up/down operation sensor		—
	PS6	Tray lower limit sensor		—
	PS7	Paper empty sensor		—
	PS8	Alignment plate home sensor/F		—
	PS9	Alignment plate home sensor/R		—
	PS10	Paper passage sensor/2		—
	PS11	Stapler home sensor		—
	PS12	Pick up roller position sensor		—
	PS13	Belt position sensor		—
	PS14	Leading edge stopper home sensor		—
	—	Staple home position sensor		—
	—	Staple self prime sensor		—
	—	Staple empty sensor		—

ICP No.	Symbol	Target part name	When ICP trips	
			Symptom in each load	Trouble code and others
CP2	PS1	Paper passage sensor/1	Not functioning	—
	PS2	Paper surface detect sensor/1		—
	PS3	Paper surface detect sensor/2		—
	PS4	Tray up/down operation sensor		—
	PS6	Tray lower limit sensor		—
	PS7	Paper empty sensor		—
	PS8	Alignment plate home sensor/F		—
	PS9	Alignment plate home sensor/R		—
	PS10	Paper passage sensor/2		—
	PS11	Stapler home sensor		—
	PS12	Pick up roller position sensor		—
	PS13	Belt position sensor		—
	PS14	Leading edge stopper home sensor		—
CP3	M1	Pick up roller position motor	Exit roller pressure/ retraction mal-function	C-11A1
CP10	M1	Pick up roller position motor	Exit roller pressure/ retraction mal-function	C-11A1
CP4	M3	Alignment motor/F	Alignment plate F drive malfunction	C-1191
CP5	M2	Tray up/down motor	Elevate drive malfunction	C-1183
CP6	M4	Alignment motor/R	Alignment plate R drive malfunction	C-1190
CP7	SD3	Alignment stopper solenoid	Leading edge stopper motor drive malfunction	C-1194
CP12	SD2	Paddle solenoid	Paper exit failure, JAM	—
CP15	SD1	Paper surface detect solenoid	Elevate drive malfunction	C-1183
F2	SW1	Front door switch	"There is an open component." appears.	—
CP8	M5	Conveyance motor/1	Conveyance JAM	—
CP9	M6	Conveyance motor/2	Conveyance JAM	—
CP17	M7	Stapler movement motor	Stapler movement drive malfunction	C-11B0
CP19	SD5	Belt retract solenoid	Belt movement malfunction	C-1181
	FM1	Fan motor	Fan motor drive malfunction	C-1301
CP20	SD4	Flapper solenoid	JAM upon duplex printing	—
F1	M8	Stapler motor	Staple drive malfunction	C-11B2

25. TROUBLESHOOTING OF i-Option

25.1 Outline

25.1.1 Structure of license management

- The functions available with i-Option can be activated by entering “License code” to the MFP.
- License code is issued and controlled by License Management System (LMS).
  To prevent unauthorized use of the license code, each MFP is identified individually so that the license code cannot be activated unless it matches with the authorized MFP.

25.1.2 License management information

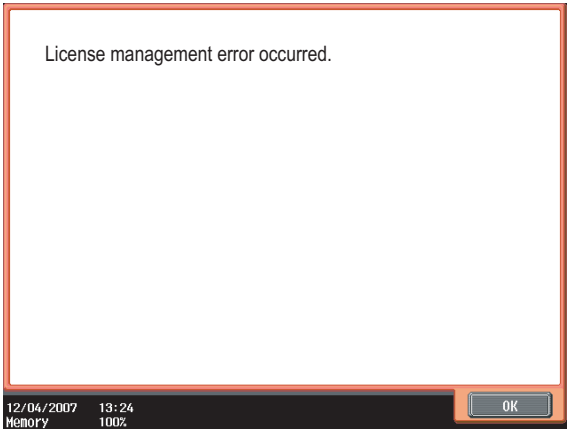
- Since license code needs to identify each MFP, it is issued using the serial number of MFP and “unique value” that is generated inside MFP.
- The “unique value” is stored to the NVRAM board on the MFP board and at the same time some parts of it are memorized by service EEPROM board. The activated function cannot be used unless the both figures conform.
  Since these figures are out of target of NVRAM data back, when any trouble occurs at either nonvolatile memory or either of them is replaced with new one, “license management error” is generated due to discordance of the figures.

25.2 Error message

25.2.1 License management error

- When abnormal value is detected in the license management information that is stored to the NVRAM board or service EEPROM board, or some values are detected cleared, warning is issued to let the user know the abnormality.
- The abnormality is detected at the timing of start-up or restart due to any condition.
- When the abnormality is detected, the corresponding i-Option function cannot be used, other ordinal functions, however, such as copy, scanning, print or etc, can be used without interruption.

A. Example of error message



A0PDF4E502DA

B. Main reasons of trouble

- The following shows the possible trouble factors and their countermeasure.

Board replacement	Countermeasure
• When NVRAM board on MFP board is replaced with new one.	Repair ⇒ Activation
• When service EEPROM board is replaced with new one.	Repair
• When NVRAM board and service EEPROM board are replaced with the new ones at the same time.	Initialize ⇒ Activation
• When mounting the NVRAM board of the machine whose function(s) have already been activated.	Initialize ⇒ Activation
• When mounting the service EEPROM board of the machine whose function(s) have already been activated.	Initialize ⇒ Activation
• When mounting the NVRAM board and the service EEPROM board of the machine whose function(s) have already been activated.	Initialize ⇒ Activation

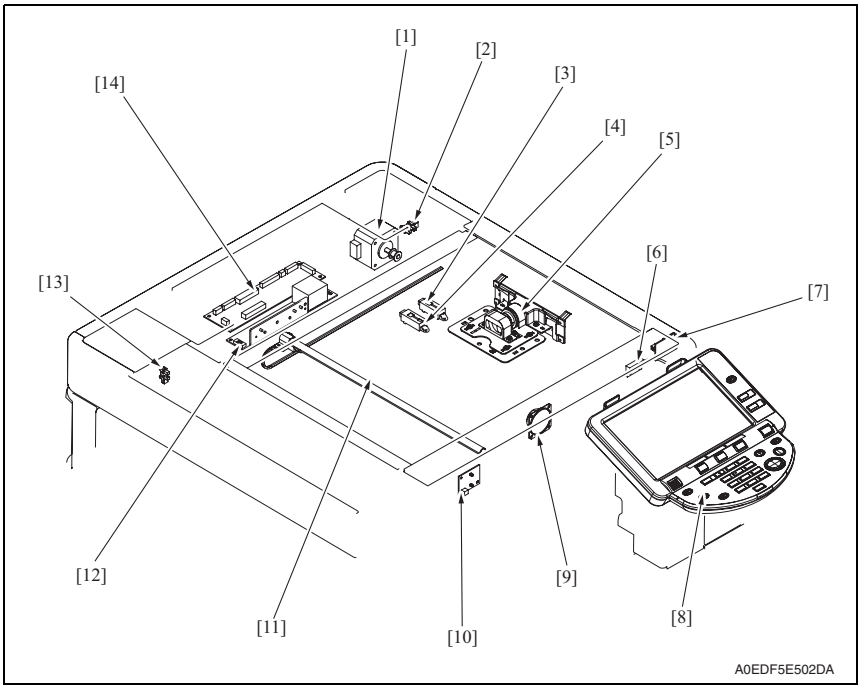
Blank Page

APPENDIX

26. PARTS LAYOUT DRAWING

26.1 Main body

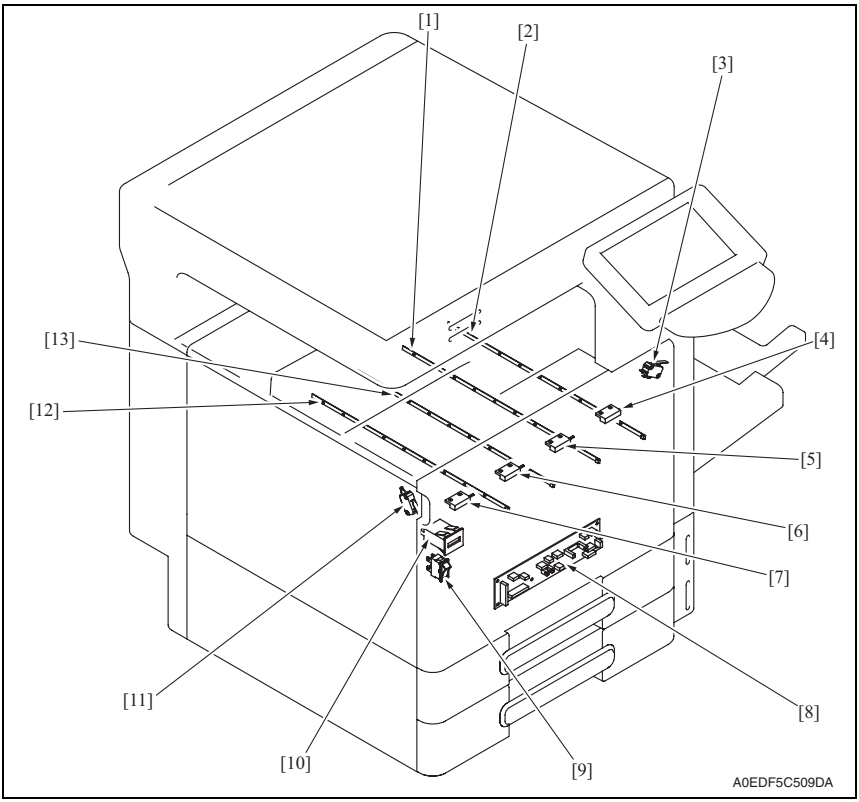
26.1.1 Scanner section



[1] Scanner motor (M201)
[2] Angle sensor (PS202)
[3] Original size detection sensor/1 (PS204)
[4] Original size detection sensor/2 (PS205)
[5] CCD board (CCDB)
[6] Original cover sensor (RS201)
[7] USB board (UB)
[8] Control panel assy
[9] Fax speaker (SP)
[10] Machine condition monitor board (MCMB)
[11] Exposure lamp (FL201)
[12] Inverter board (INVB)
[13] Scanner home sensor (PS201)
[14] Scanner relay board (REYB/SCAN)

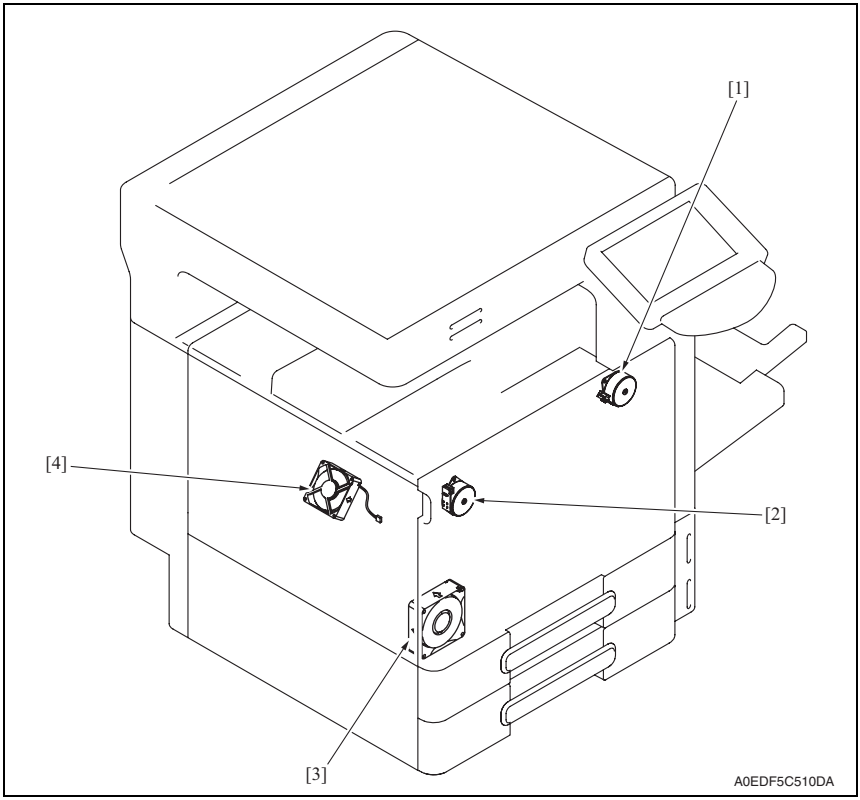
26.1.2 Front side

A. Board/switch/sensor/others



[1] Erase lamp/C (EL/C)
[2] Erase lamp/K (EL/K)
[3] Right door switch (MS2)
[4] Toner near empty switch/K (RS7)
[5] Toner near empty switch/C (RS6)
[6] Toner near empty switch/M (RS5)
[7] Toner near empty switch/Y (RS4)
[8] Front side relay board (FREYB)
[9] Main power switch (SW1)
[10] Total counter (TCT)
[11] Front door switch (MS1)
[12] Erase lamp/Y (EL/Y)
[13] Erase lamp/M (EL/M)

B. Load



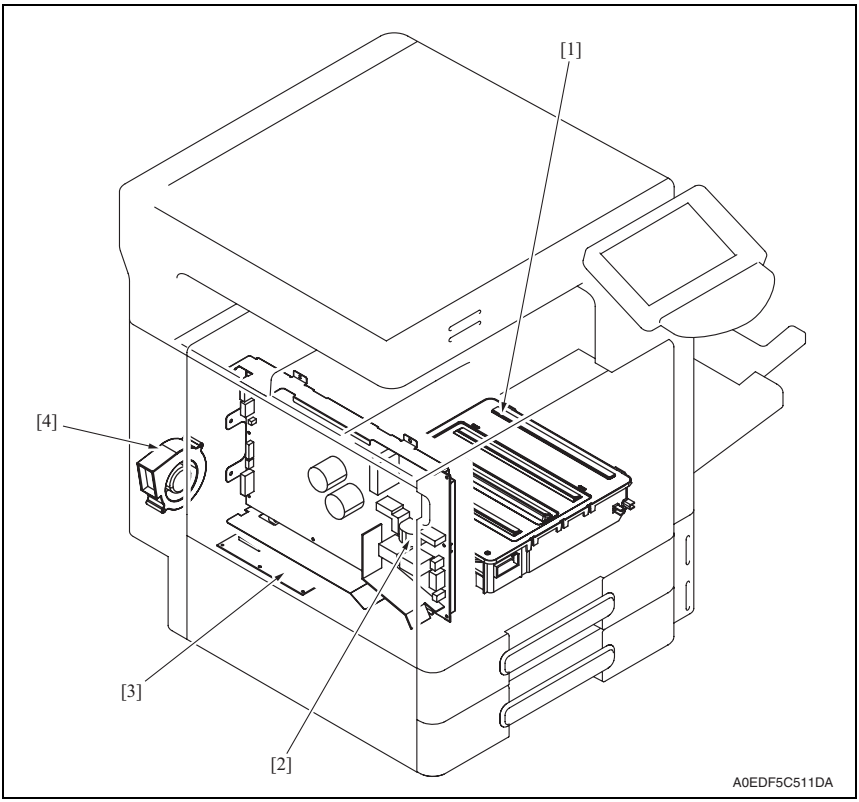
[1] Toner supply motor/CK (M9)

[2] Toner supply motor/YM (M8)

[3] Power supply cooling fan motor (FM1)

[4] Transfer belt cleaner cooling fan motor (FM6)

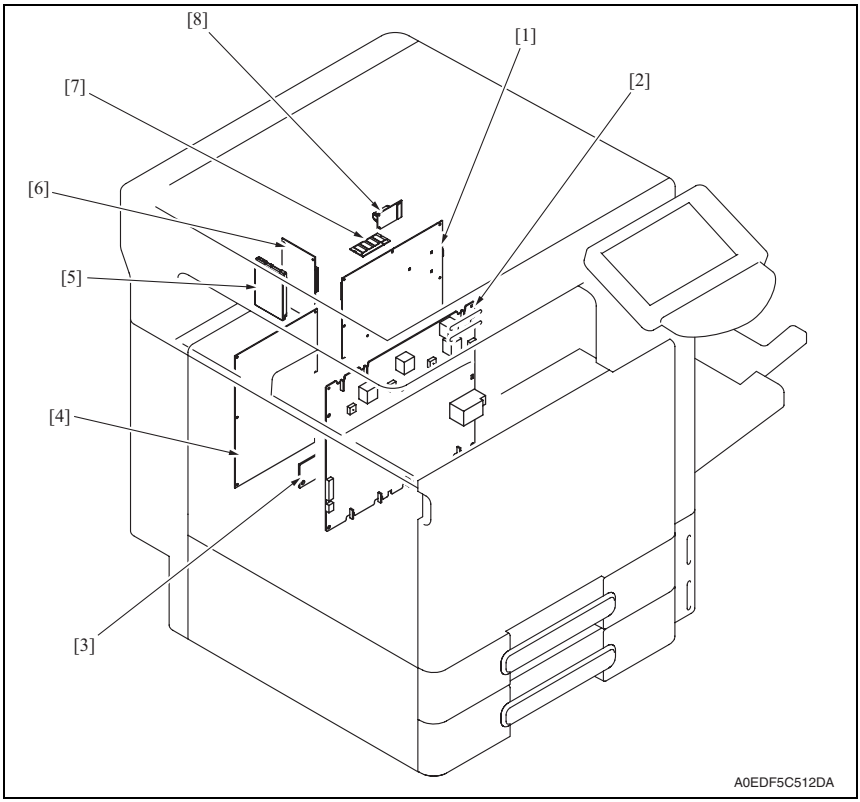
26.1.3 Left side



[1] PH unit
[2] DC power supply (DCPU)
[3] PH relay board (PHREYB)
[4] Exhaust fan motor (FM3)

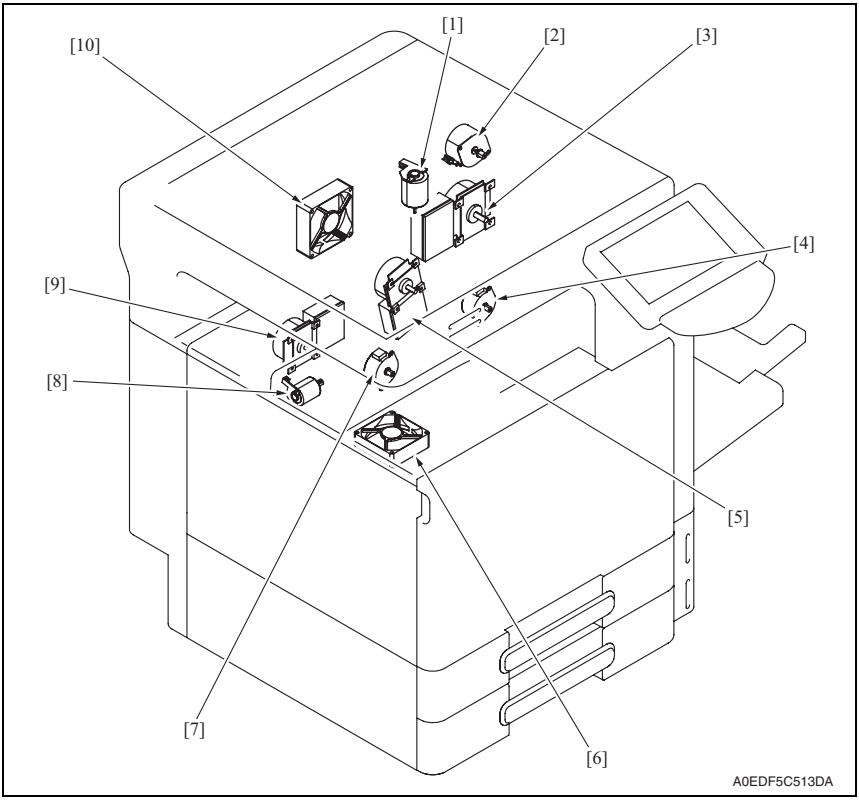
26.1.4 Back side

A. Board



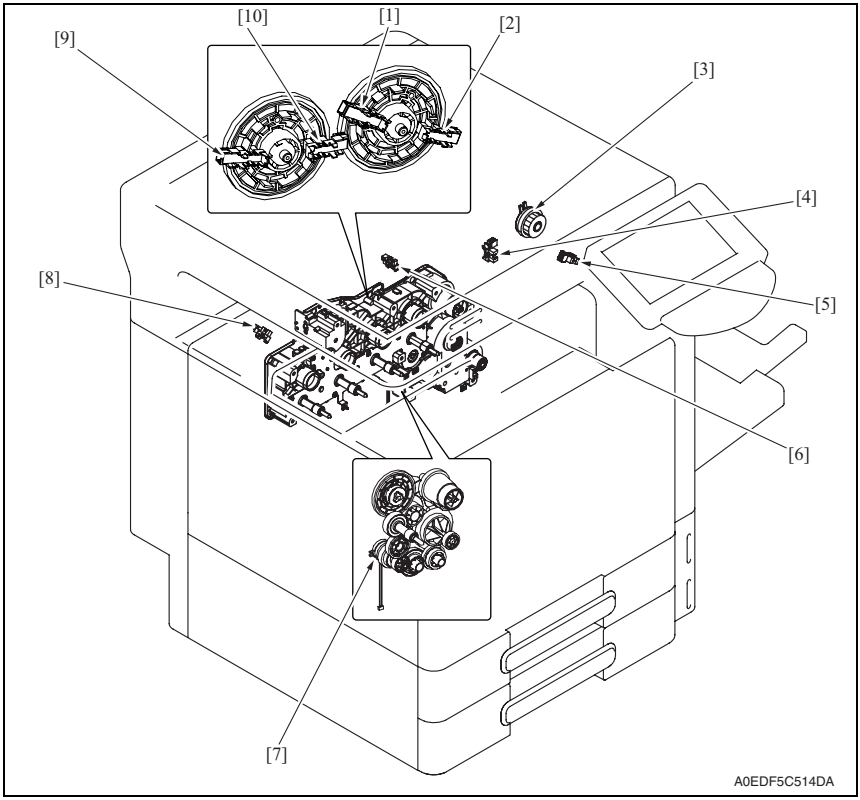
[1]	MFP board (MFPB)	[5]	Hard disk (HDD)
[2]	High voltage unit (HV)	[6]	PCI board (PCIB)
[3]	Service EEPROM board (SVERB)	[7]	SODIMM (DIMM)
[4]	Printer control board (PRCB)	[8]	NVRAM board (NRB)

B. Load



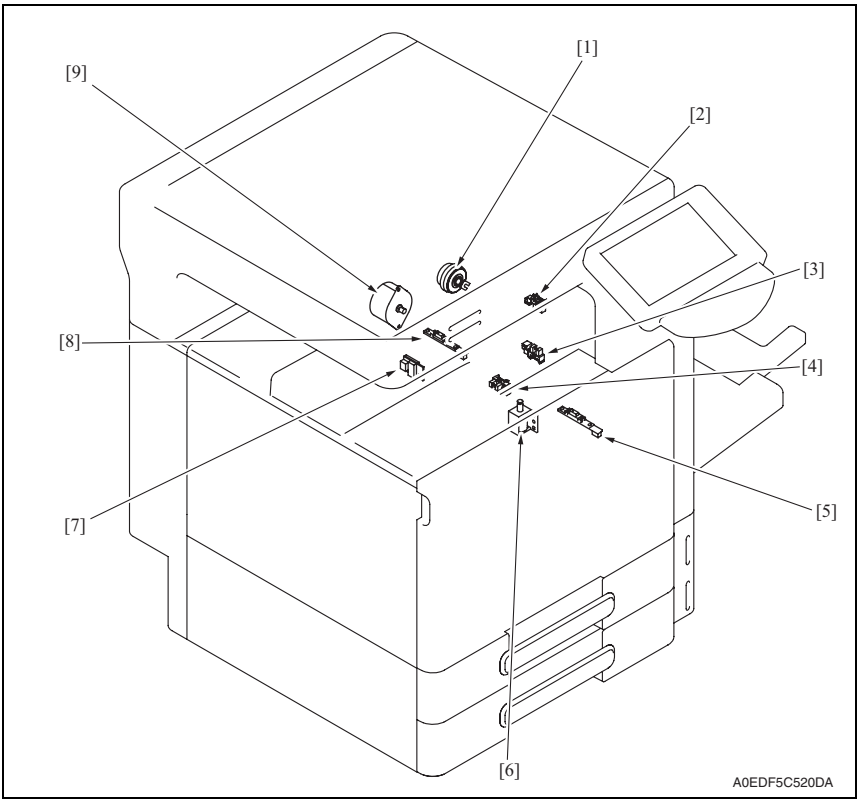
[1] Fusing pressure roller retraction motor (M11)
[2] Switchback motor (M4)
[3] Fusing motor (M3)
[4] Toner cartridge motor/CK (M7)
[5] Transport motor (M1)
[6] MFP board cooling fan motor (FM7)
[7] Toner cartridge motor/YM (M6)
[8] Color dev. unit engaged motor (M10)
[9] Color PC motor (M2)
[10] Cooling fan motor/3 (FM2)

C. Switch/sensor/others



[1] Color PC sub-sensor (PS35)
[2] Color PC main sensor (PS33)
[3] Transfer belt retraction clutch (CL5)
[4] Transfer belt retraction sensor (PS39)
[5] Fusing pressure roller retraction sensor (PS38)
[6] USB cover sensor (PS47)
[7] Developing clutch/K (CL6)
[8] Color dev. unit engaged position sensor (PS37)
[9] Monochrome PC sub-sensor (PS36)
[10] Monochrome PC main sensor (PS34)

26.1.5 Right side



[1] Registration roller clutch (CL4)

[2] Duplex paper passage sensor (PS40)

[3] Fusing loop detect sensor (PS2)

[4] Sensor in front of tim. roller (PS1)

[5] IDC registration sensor/MK (IDCS/MK)

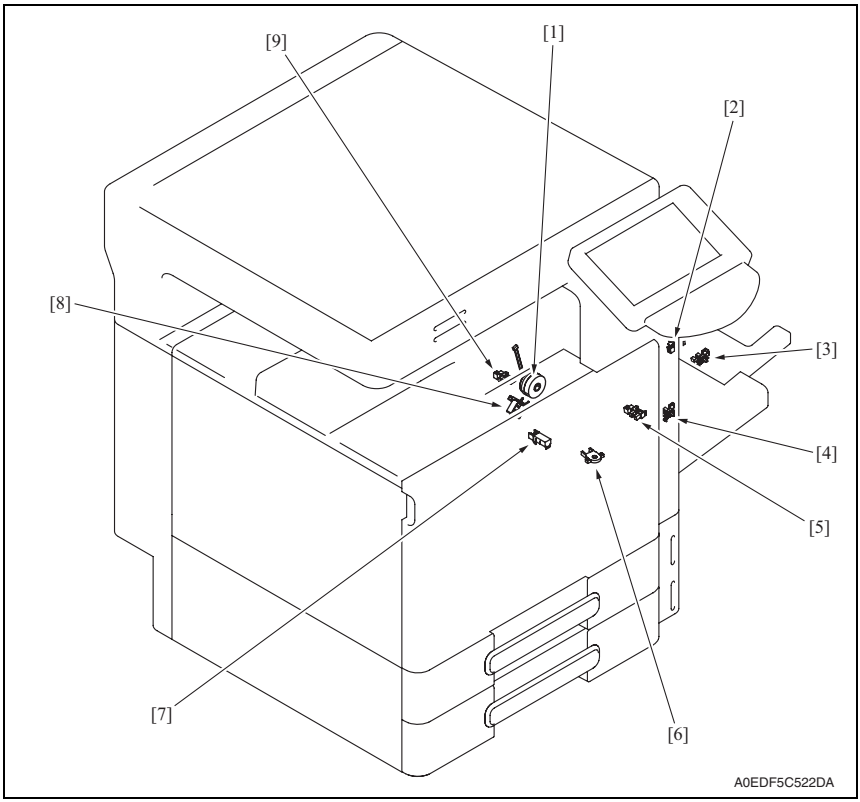
[6] IDC registration sensor shutter solenoid (SD2)

[7] Temperature/humidity sensor (TEM/HUM)

[8] IDC registration sensor/YC (IDCS/YC)

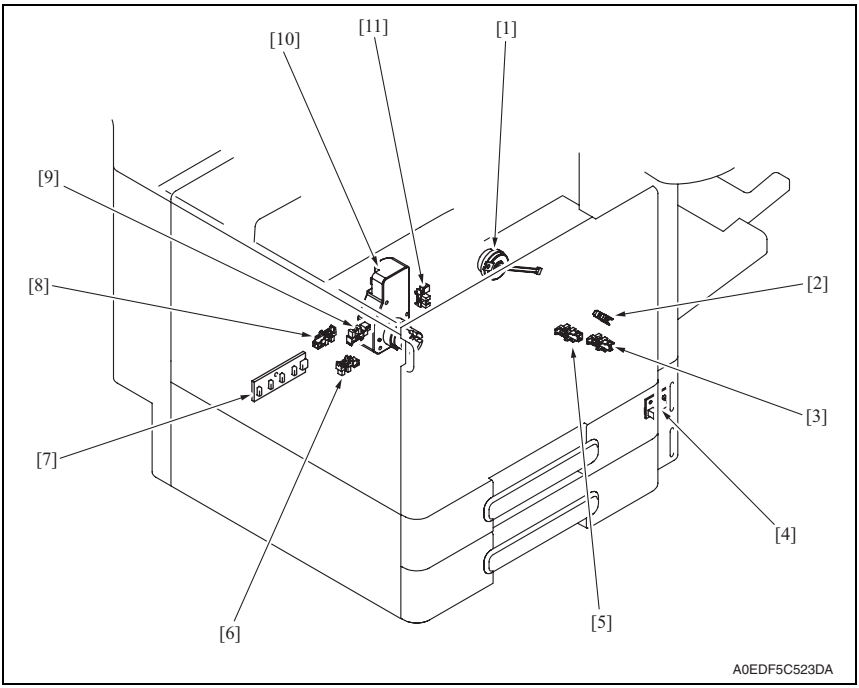
[9] Duplex transport motor (M5)

26.1.6 Manual bypass tray



[1] Manual paper feed clutch (CL7)
[2] Manual multi FD sensor/3 (PS30)
[3] Manual multi FD sensor/2 (PS29)
[4] Manual multi FD sensor/1 (PS28)
[5] Manual paper empty sensor (PS27)
[6] Manual CD size sensor (SE2)
[7] Manual paper detection sensor (PS31)
[8] Manual pick-up solenoid (SD1)
[9] Manual lift-up position sensor (PS26)

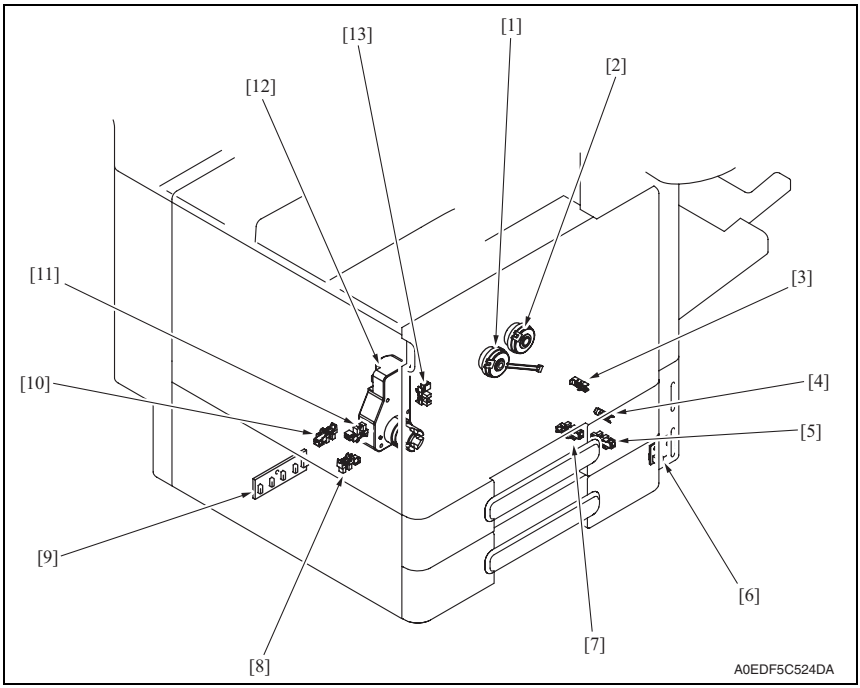
26.1.7 Tray 1



	[1]	Paper feed tray 1 paper feed clutch (CL3)	[7]	Paper feed tray 1 paper FD sensor board (PSDB/1)
2	[2]	Paper feed tray 1 paper feed sensor (PS23) *1	[8]	Paper feed tray 1 device detection sensor (PS15)
	[3]	Paper feed tray 1 paper empty sensor (PS24)	[9]	Paper feed tray 1 paper CD size detect sensor/1 (PS13)
	[4]	Paper feed tray 1 LED board (LEDB1)	[10]	Paper feed tray 1 lift-up motor (M12)
	[5]	Paper feed tray 1 upper limit sensor (PS25)	[11]	Paper feed tray 1 near empty sensor (PS11)
	[6]	Paper feed tray 1 paper CD size detect sensor/2 (PS14)		

2 *1: bizhub C360/C280 only

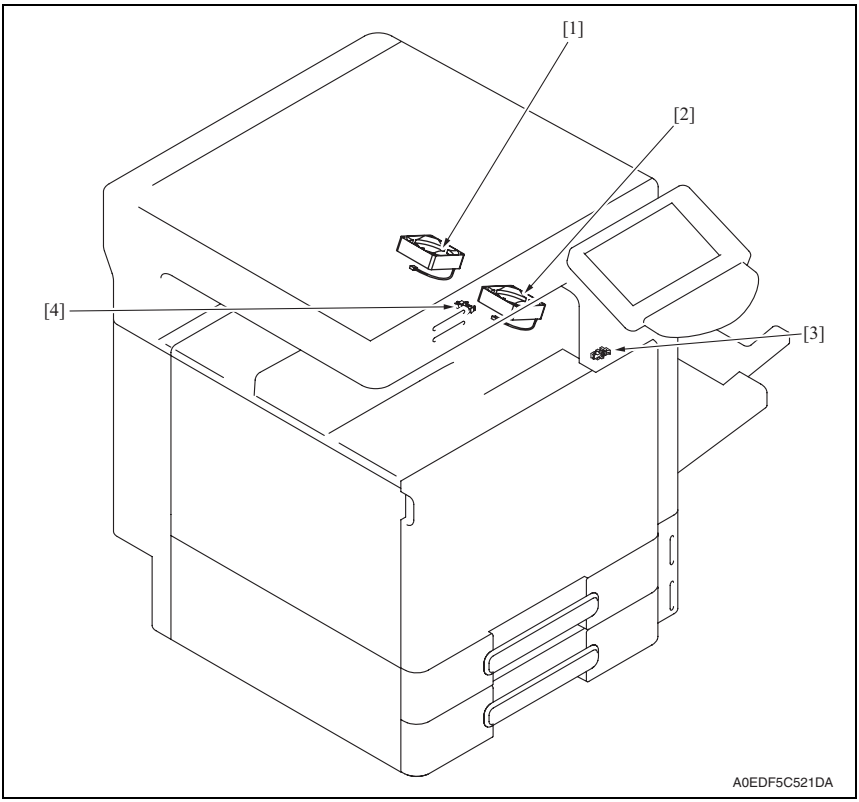
26.1.8 Tray 2



	[1]	Paper feed tray 2 paper feed clutch (CL1)	[8]	Paper feed tray 1 paper CD size detect sensor/2 (PS17)
	[2]	Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport clutch (CL2)	[9]	Paper feed tray 2 paper FD sensor board (PSDB/2)
	[3]	Paper feed tray 2 vertical transport sensor (PS19)	[10]	Paper feed tray 2 device detection sensor (PS18)
2	[4]	Paper feed tray 2 paper feed sensor (PS20) *1	[11]	Paper feed tray 1 paper CD size detect sensor/1 (PS16)
	[5]	Paper feed tray 2 paper empty sensor (PS21)	[12]	Paper feed tray 2 lift-up motor (M13)
	[6]	Paper feed tray 2 LED board (LEDB2)	[13]	Paper feed tray 2 near empty sensor (PS12)
	[7]	Paper feed tray 2 upper limit sensor (PS22)		

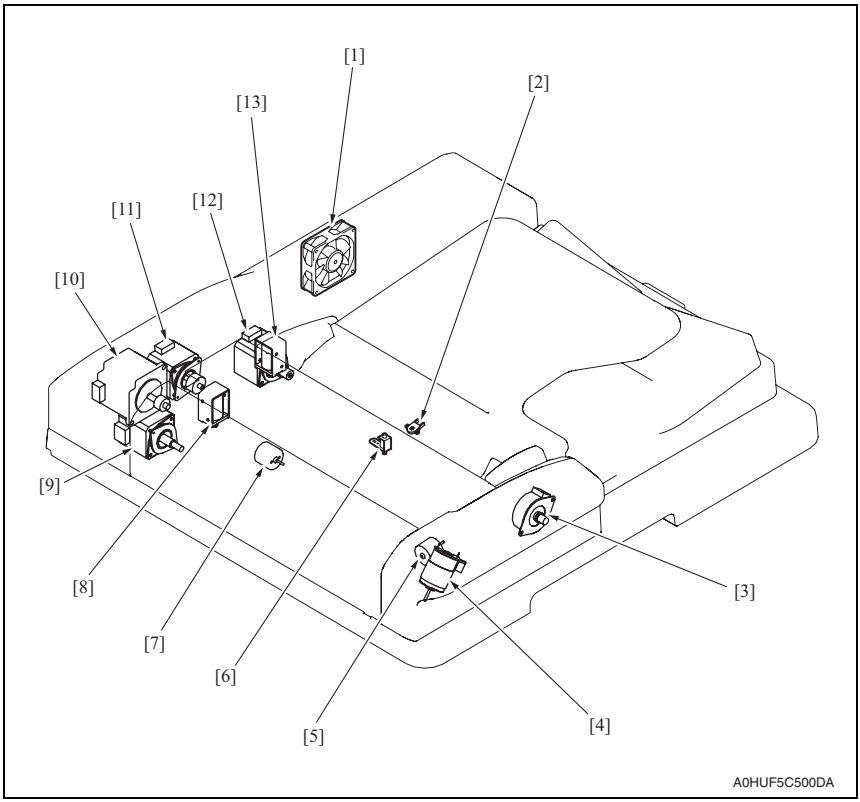
2 *1: bizhub C360/C280 only

26.1.9 Fusing/paper exit section



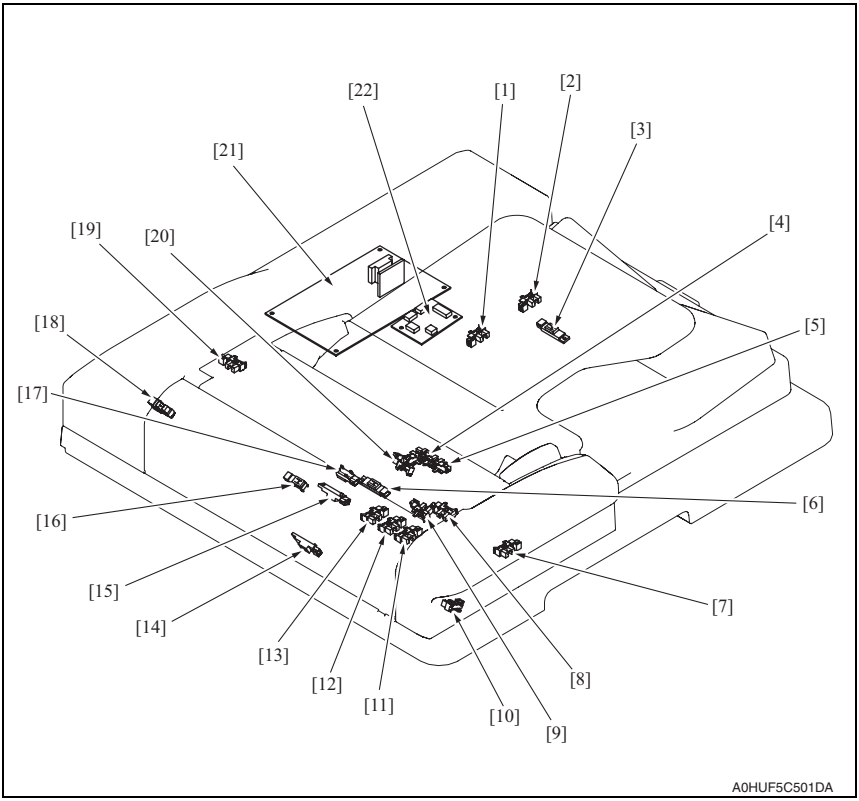
[1] Fusing cooling fan motor/2 (FM5)
[2] Fusing cooling fan motor/1 (FM4)
[3] Fusing pressure roller home sensor (PS32)
[4] Paper exit sensor (PS3)

26.2 DF-617/SP-501



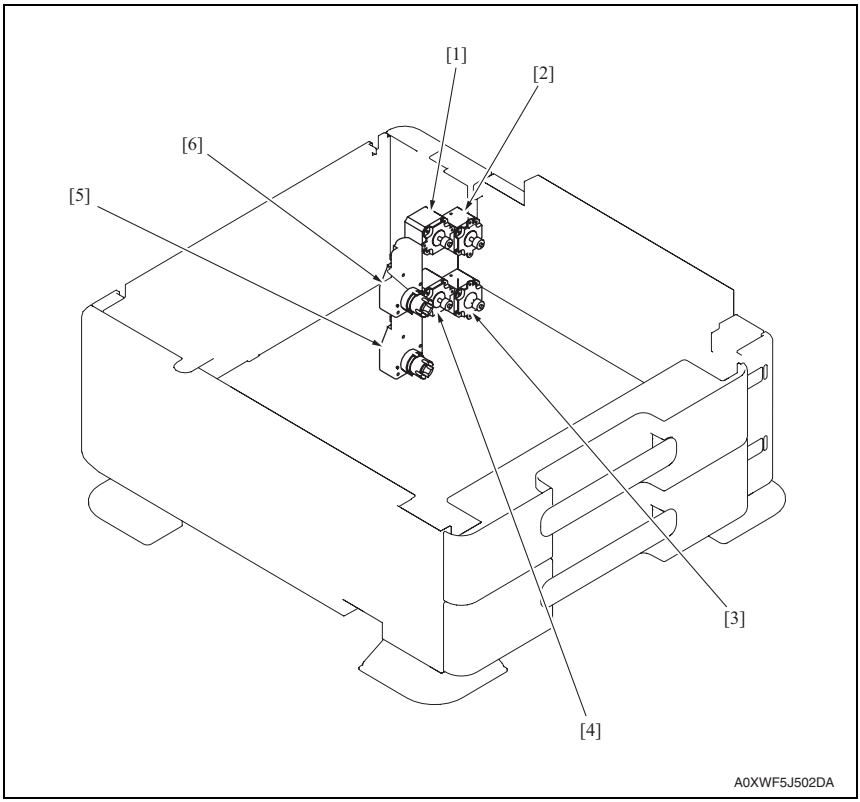
[1]	Cooling fan (FM1)	[8]	Exit reverse path switching solenoid (SD2)
[2]	Restriction plate positional volume (VR1)	[9]	Reading motor (M1)
[3]	Glass cleaning motor (M9)	[10]	Registration motor (M2)
[4]	Reading roller pressure/retraction motor (M4)	[11]	Take-up motor (M8)
[5]	Reverse roller pressure/retraction motor (M5)	[12]	Exit motor (M3)
[6]	Stamp solenoid (SD3) *	[13]	Reverse path switching solenoid (SD1)
[7]	Lift-up motor (M7)		

*: Option

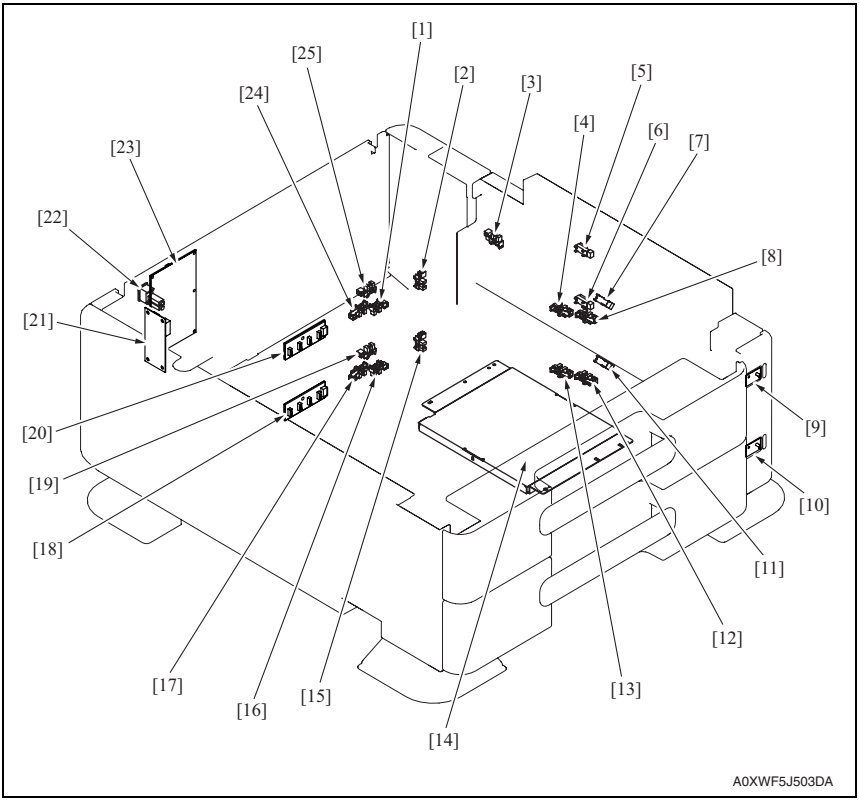


[1] Length sensor/1 (PS10)
[2] Length sensor/3 (PS12)
[3] Length sensor/2 (PS11)
[4] Lift up upper sensor (PS16)
[5] Empty sensor (PS14)
[6] Original set sensor (PS20)
[7] Glass cleaning sensor (PS21)
[8] Reverse roller sensor (PS7)
[9] Lift up lower sensor (PS15)
[10] Read roller sensor (PS6)
[11] Consolidation sensor/3 (PS17)
[12] Consolidation sensor/2 (PS18)
[13] Consolidation sensor/1 (PS19)
[14] Before read sensor (PS9)
[15] Reverse registration sensor (PS8)
[16] Registration sensor (PS3)
[17] After separate sensor (PS4)
[18] Read open/close sensor (PS2)
[19] Feed open/close sensor (PS1)
[20] Exit sensor (PS5)
[21] DF control board (DFCB)
[22] Relay board (REYB)

26.3 PC-107/PC-207 (Option)



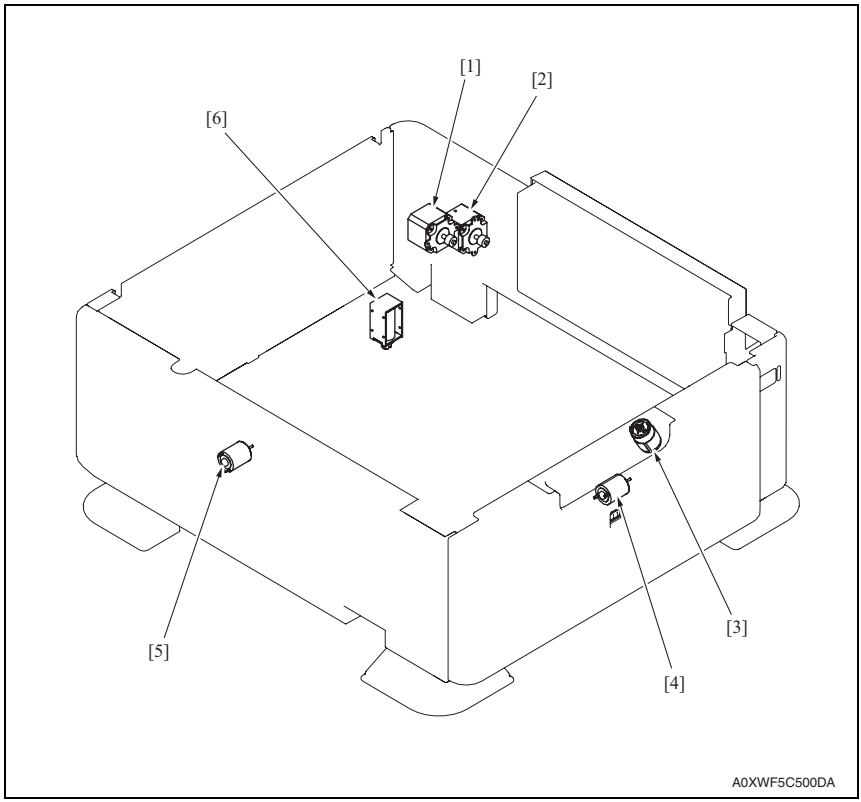
[1] Tray3 paper feed motor (M122)
[2] Tray3 vertical transport motor (M120)
[3] Tray4 vertical transport motor (M121)
[4] Tray4 paper feed motor (M123)
[5] Tray4 lift-up motor (M125)
[6] Tray3 lift-up motor (M124)



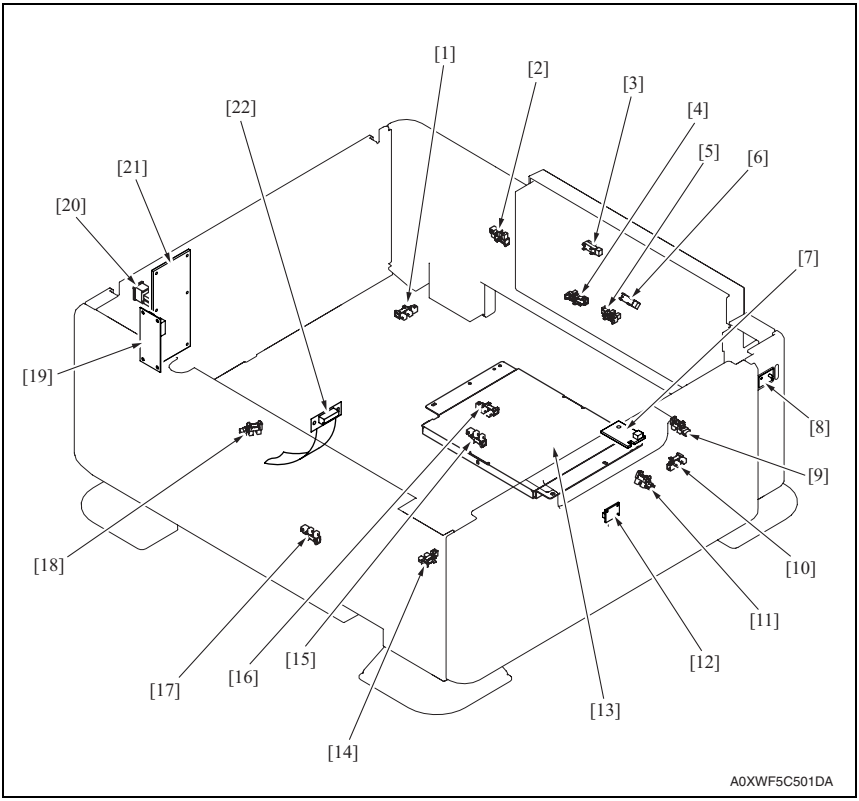
[1] Tray3 CD paper size sensor/2 (PS119)
[2] Tray3 near empty sensor (PS113)
[3] Tray3 door set sensor (PS111)
[4] Tray3 upper limit sensor (PS114)
[5] Tray3 vertical transport sensor (PS117)
[6] Tray4 vertical transport sensor (PS126)
[7] Tray3 paper feed sensor (PS116)
[8] Tray3 empty sensor (PS115)
[9] Tray3 paper empty indicator board (PEIB/1)
[10] Tray4 paper empty indicator board (PEIB/2)
[11] Tray4 paper feed sensor (PS125)
[12] Tray4 empty sensor (PS124)
[13] Tray4 upper limit sensor (PS123)
[14] Dehumidification heater (DH) *
[15] Tray4 near empty sensor (PS122)
[16] Tray4 CD paper size sensor/2 (PS128)
[17] Tray4 CD paper size sensor/1 (PS127)
[18] Tray4 paper size detect board/2 (PSDTB/2)
[19] Tray4 device detection sensor (PS121)
[20] Tray3 paper size detect board/1 (PSDTB/1)
[21] Dehumidification heater relay board (HREYB) *
[22] Dehumidification heater switch (SW1) *
[23] PC Control board (PCCB)
[24] Tray3 CD paper size sensor/1 (PS118)
[25] Tray3 device detection sensor (PS112)

*: Option

26.4 PC-408 (Option)



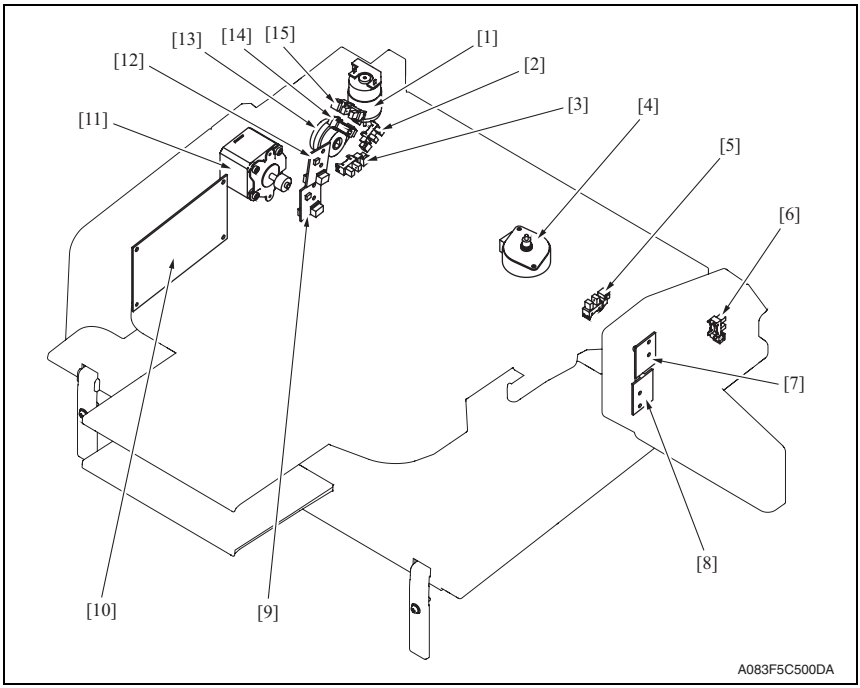
[1] Paper feed motor (M1)
[2] Vertical transport motor (M2)
[3] Elevator motor (M5)
[4] Shift motor (M4)
[5] Division board position motor (M3)
[6] Tray lock solenoid (SD1)



[1]	Cassette open sensor (PS6)	[12]	Manual down control board (UN1)
[2]	Door sensor (PS5)	[13]	Dehumidification heater (DH) *
[3]	Vertical transport sensor (PS2)	[14]	Shift tray empty sensor (PS9)
[4]	Lift-up upper limit sensor (PS4)	[15]	Shifter stop position sensor (PS11)
[5]	Paper empty sensor (PS3)	[16]	Lift-up lower limit sensor (PS13)
[6]	Paper feed sensor (PS1)	[17]	Shifter home position sensor (PS12)
[7]	Main tray paper empty board (MTPEB)	[18]	Division board position sensor (PS14)
[8]	Tray3 paper empty indicator board (PEIB/1)	[19]	Dehumidification heater relay board (HREYB) *
[9]	Elevator motor pulse sensor (PS10)	[20]	Dehumidification heater switch (SW1) *
[10]	Lower limit over run sensor (PS7)	[21]	PC control board (PCCB)
[11]	Shift motor pulse sensor (PS8)	[22]	Relay board (REYB)

*: Option

26.5 JS-505 (Option)



[1] Route change motor (M3)

[2] Route change home sensor (PS4)

[3] Pressure/retraction home sensor (PS5)

[4] Shift motor (M2)

[5] Shift home sensor (PS6)

[6] Front door sensor (PS3)

[7] Upper tray paper full detect board/LED (T2FDTB/LED)

[8] Lower tray paper full detect board/LED (T1FDTB/LED)

[9] Lower tray paper full detect board/PR (T1FDTB/PR)

[10] JS control board (JSCB)

[11] Transport Motor (M1)

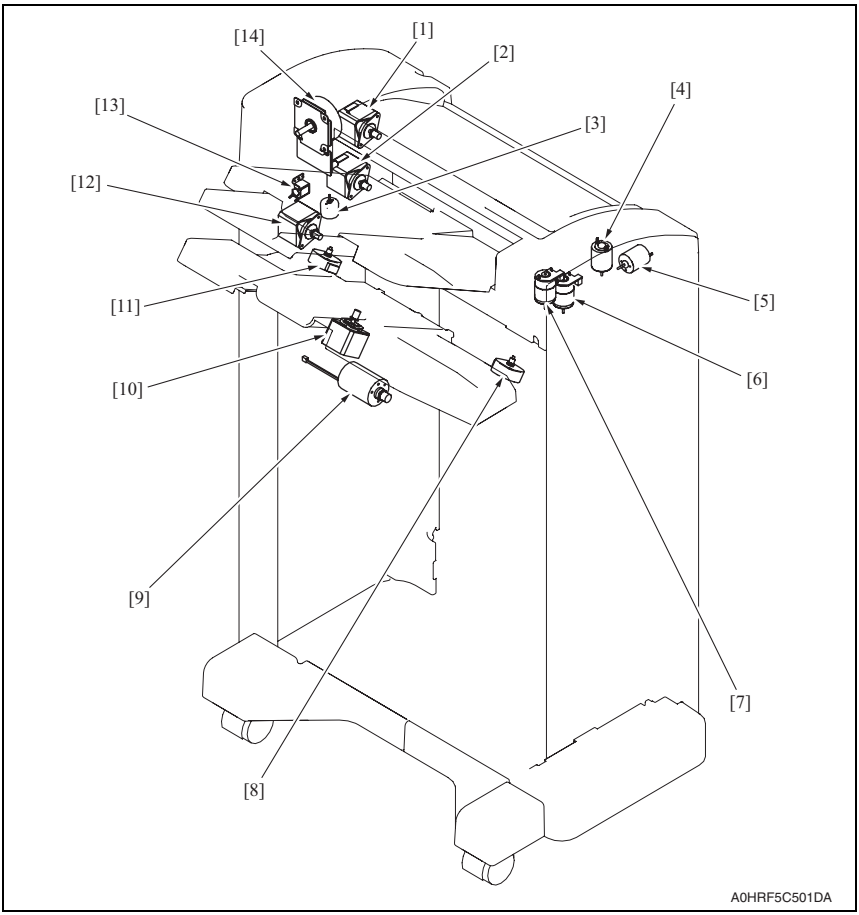
[12] Upper tray paper full detect board/PR (T2FDTB/PR)

[13] Roller pressure/retraction clutch (CL1)

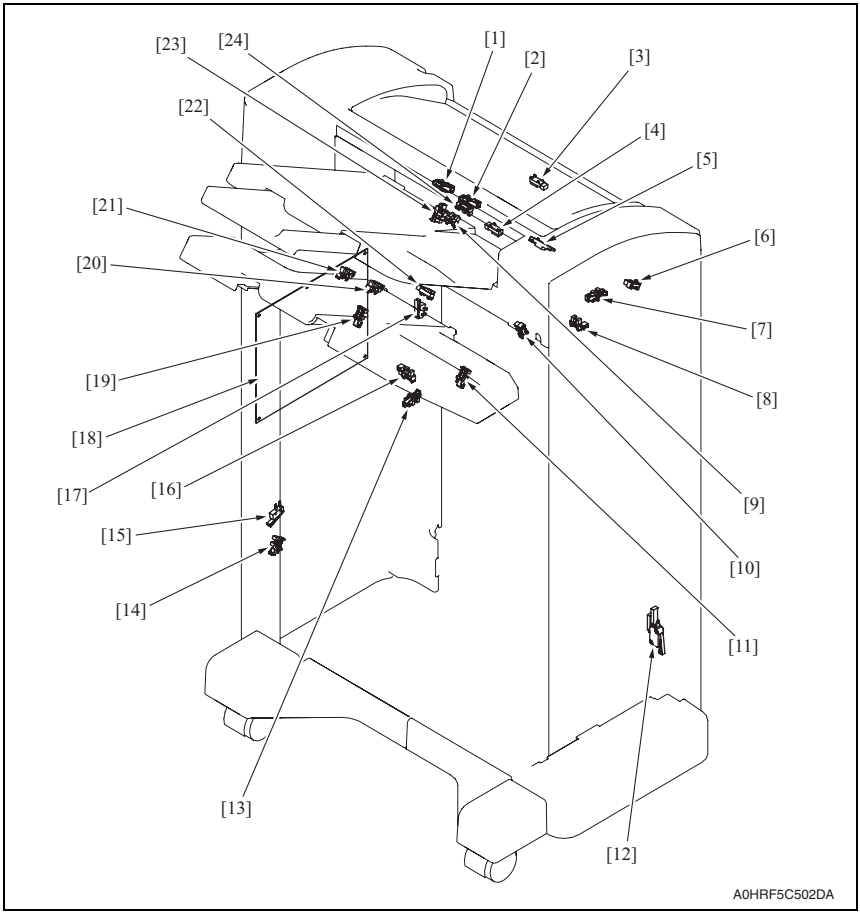
[14] Lower tray exit sensor (PS1)

[15] Upper tray exit sensor (PS2)

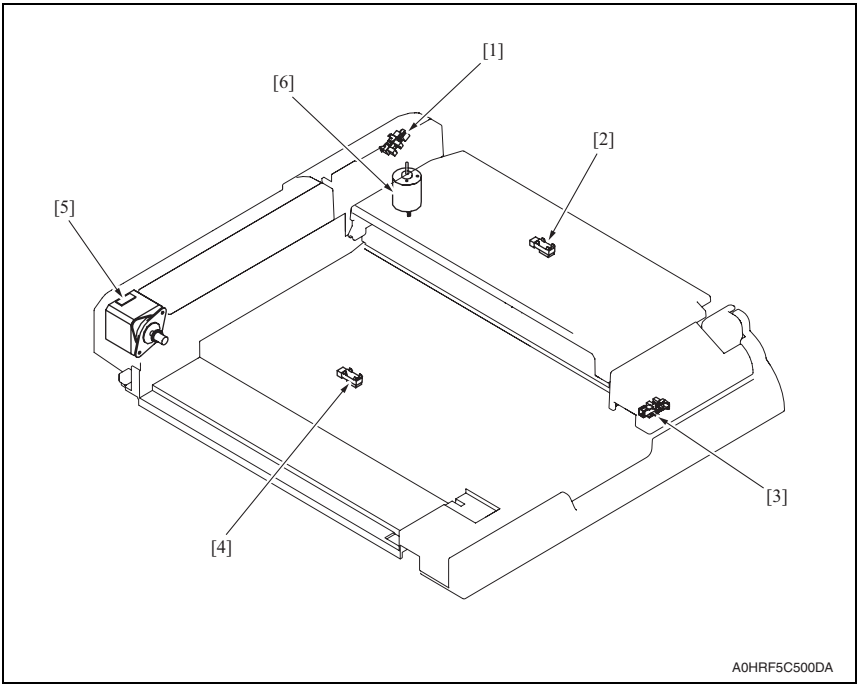
26.6 FS-527 (Option)



[1] Paper passage motor/2 (M3)
[2] Conveyance motor (M4)
[3] Accommodation paddle motor (M12)
[4] Tray1 path switching motor (M8)
[5] Upper lower path switching motor (M6)
[6] Accommodation roller retraction motor (M10)
[7] Exit roller retraction motor (M9)
[8] Leading edge stopper motor (M14)
[9] Tray2 shift motor (M16)
[10] Stapler movement motor (M11)
[11] Alignment plate motor (M13)
[12] Exit motor (M5)
[13] Accommodation paddle solenoid (SD1)
[14] Elevate motor (M15)

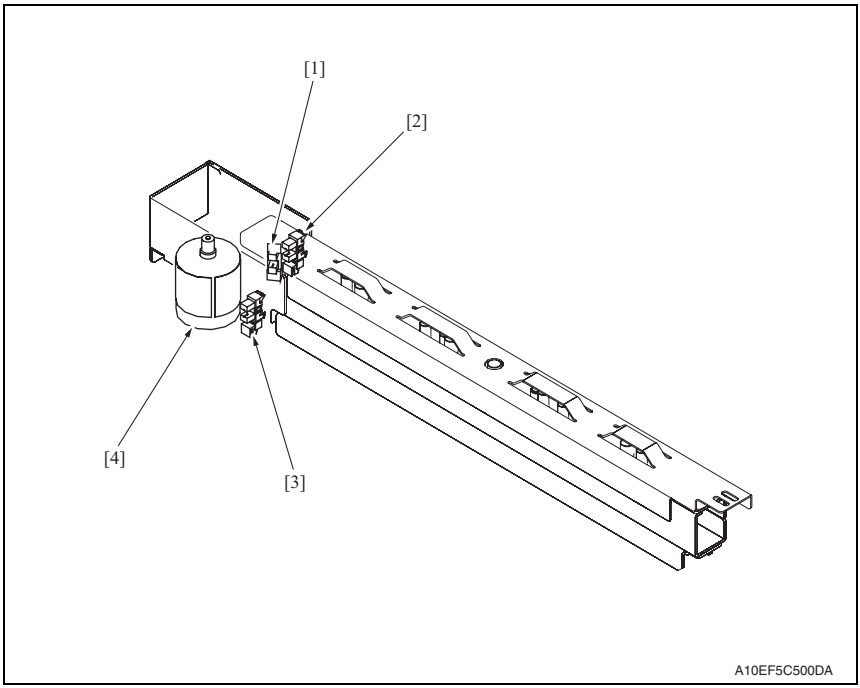


[1] Tray1 full sensor (PS22)
[2] Upper door sensor (PS14)
[3] Registration sensor (PS10)
[4] lower path sensor (PS9)
[5] Punch hole full sensor (PS30)
[6] Upper lower path switching sensor (PS26)
[7] Tray1 path switching home sensor (PS7)
[8] Accommodation roller pressure sensor (PS13)
[9] Upper path sensor (PS8)
[10] Exit roller pressure sensor (PS12)
[11] Stapler home sensor/2 (PS19)
[12] Front door switch (SW1)
[13] Tray2 shift home sensor (PS25)
[14] Tray2 lower position sensor (PS21)
[15] Tray2 lower position switch (SW3)
[16] Tray2 upper position sensor (PS24)
[17] Tray2 upper position switch (SW2)
[18] FS control board (FSCB)
[19] Stapler home sensor/1 (PS18)
[20] Leading edge stopper home sensor (PS20)
[21] Alignment plate home sensor (PS17)
[22] Tray2 paper detection sensor (PS16)
[23] Saddle path sensor (PS11)
[24] Tray1 path sensor (PS6)



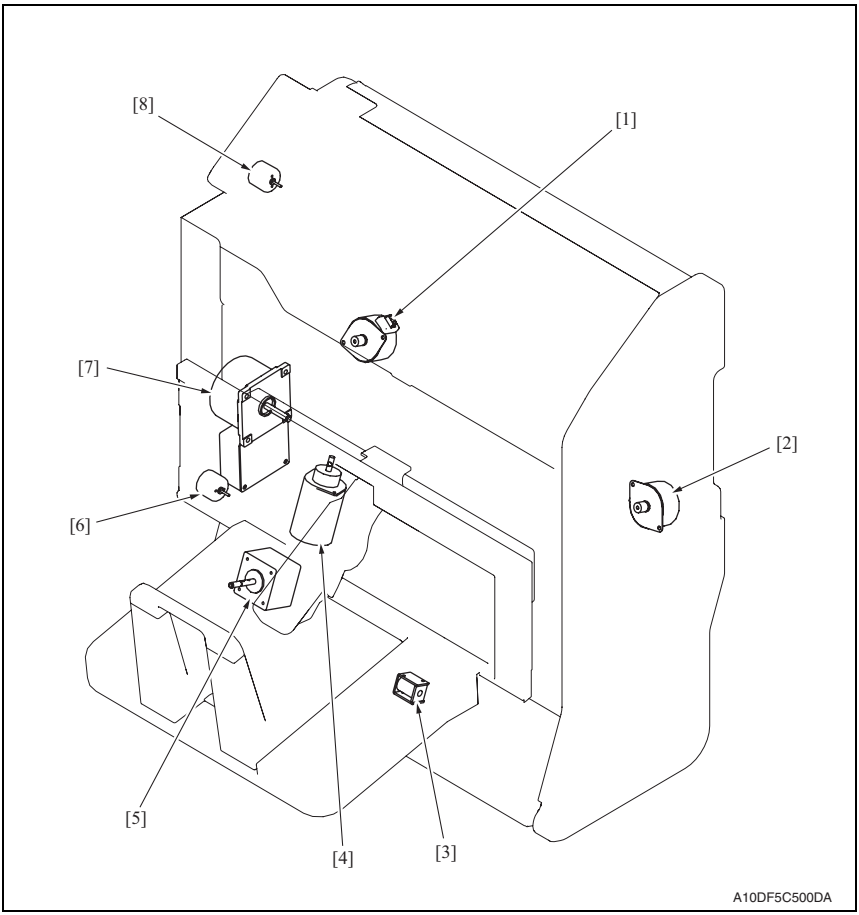
[1] Duplex path switching sensor (PS3)
[2] Paper passage sensor/1 (PS1)
[3] Horizontal conveyance cover sensor (PS5)
[4] Paper passage sensor/2 (PS2)
[5] Paper passage motor/1 (M1)
[6] Duplex path switching motor (M2)

26.7 PK-517 (Option)

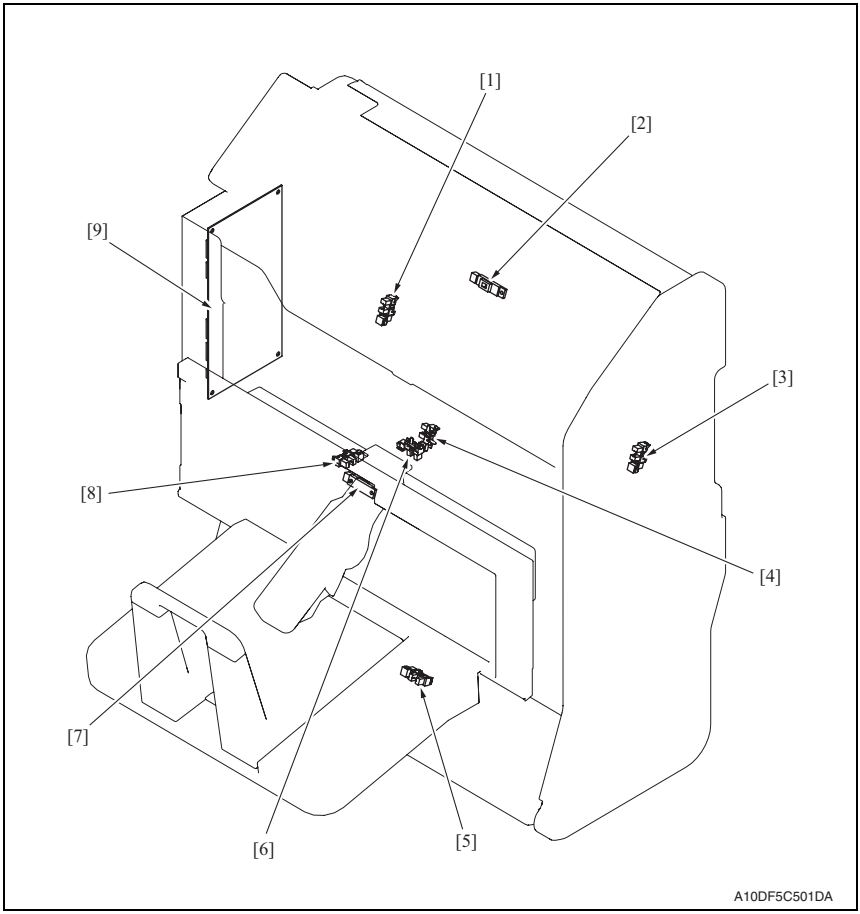


[1] Punch cam position sensor (PS200)
[2] Punch home sensor/1 (PS100)
[3] Punch pulse sensor/1 (PS300)
[4] Punch motor/1 (M100)

26.8 SD-509 (Option)



[1] Center staple alignment motor/R (M23)
[2] Center staple alignment motor/F (M24)
[3] Leading edge grip solenoid (SD3)
[4] Center fold plate motor (M26)
[5] Leading edge stopper motor (M20)
[6] Lower paddle motor (M22)
[7] Center fold roller motor (M25)
[8] Upper paddle motor (M21)



[1] Center staple alignment home sensor/R (PS41)

[2] Paper detection sensor/1 (PS43)

[3] Center staple alignment home sensor/F (PS42)

[4] Center fold plate home sensor (PS47)

[5] Leading edge stopper home sensor (PS45)

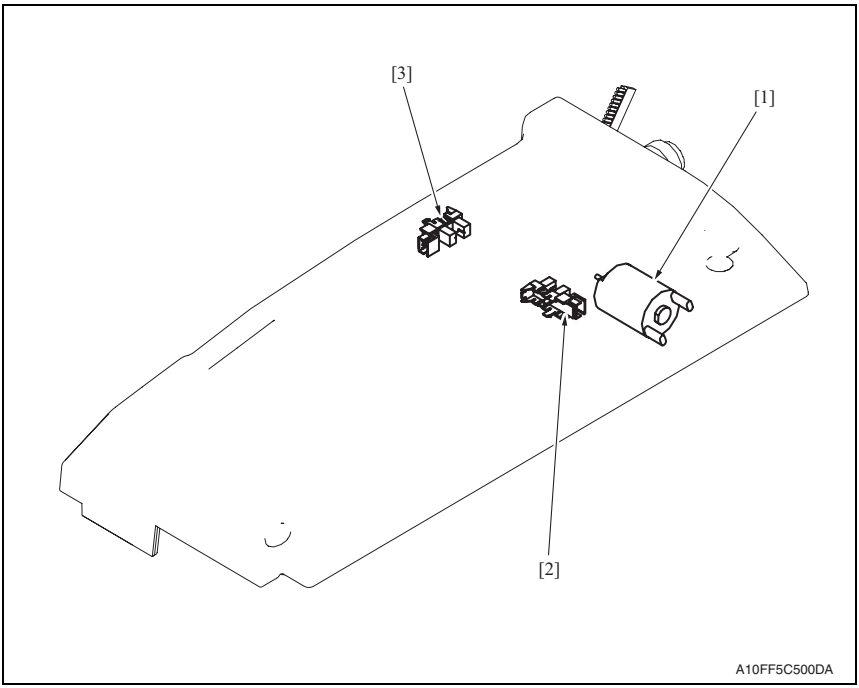
[6] Booklet tray full sensor (PS50)

[7] Paper detection sensor/2 (PS44)

[8] Booklet tray near full sensor (PS48)

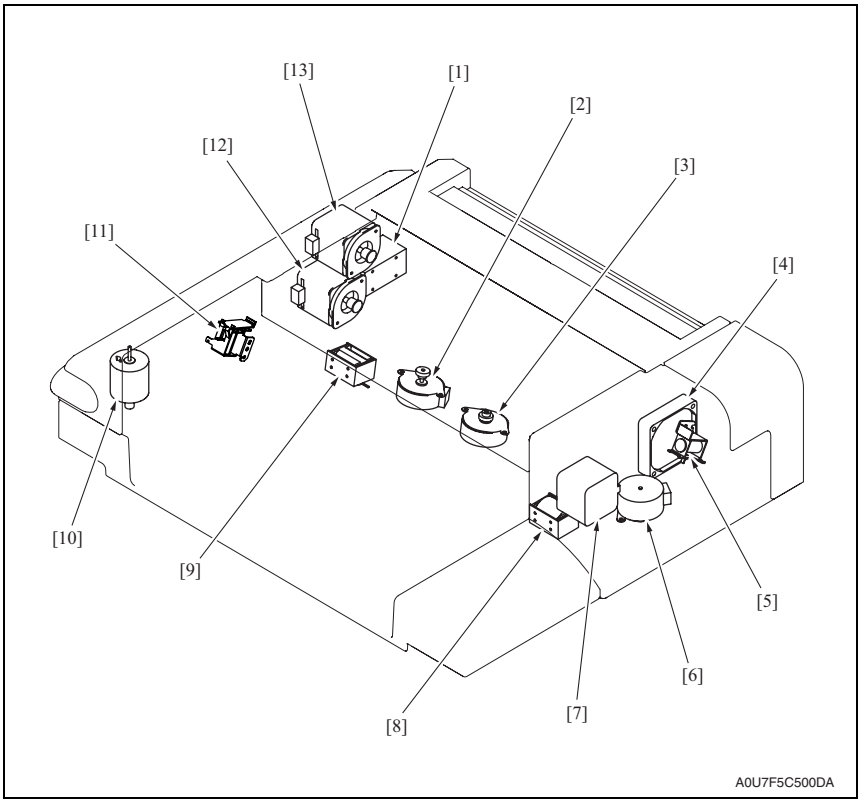
[9] SD drive board (SDDB)

26.9 JS-603 (Option)

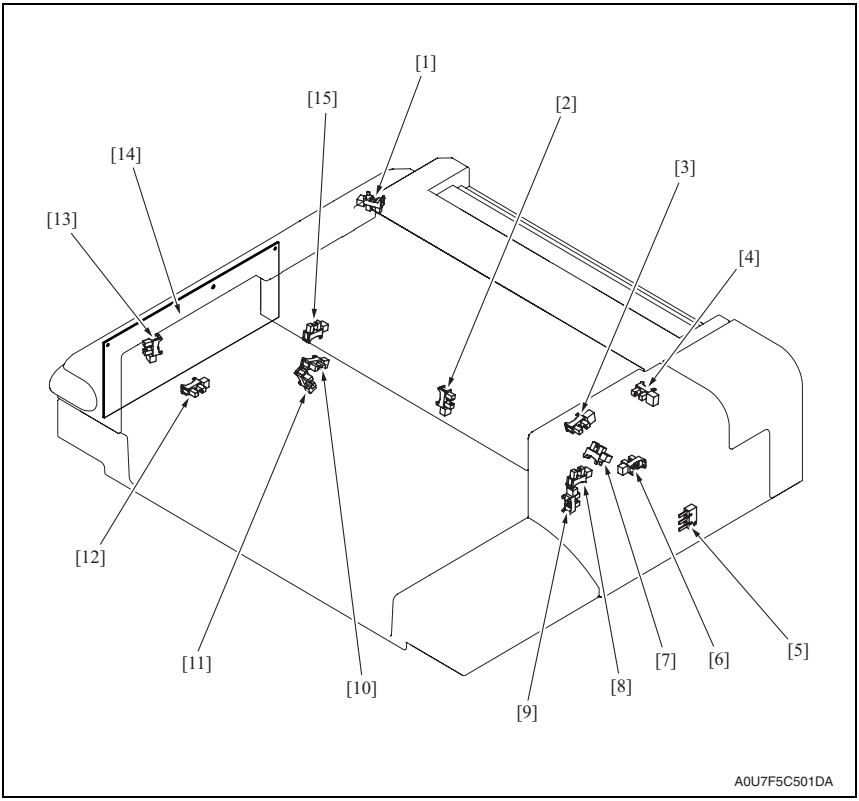


[1] Tray3 exit roller retraction motor (M17)
[2] Tray3 exit roller retraction sensor (PS35)
[3] Tray3 full sensor (PS36)

26.10 FS-529 (Option)



[1] Flapper solenoid (SD4)
[2] Alignment motor/R (M4)
[3] Alignment motor/F (M3)
[4] fan motor (FM1)
[5] Belt retract solenoid (SD5)
[6] Stapler movement motor (M7)
[7] Pick up roller position motor (M1)
[8] Paper surface detect solenoid (SD1)
[9] Alignment stopper solenoid (SD3)
[10] Tray up/down motor (M2)
[11] Paddle solenoid (SD2)
[12] Conveyance motor/2 (M6)
[13] Conveyance motor/1 (M5)

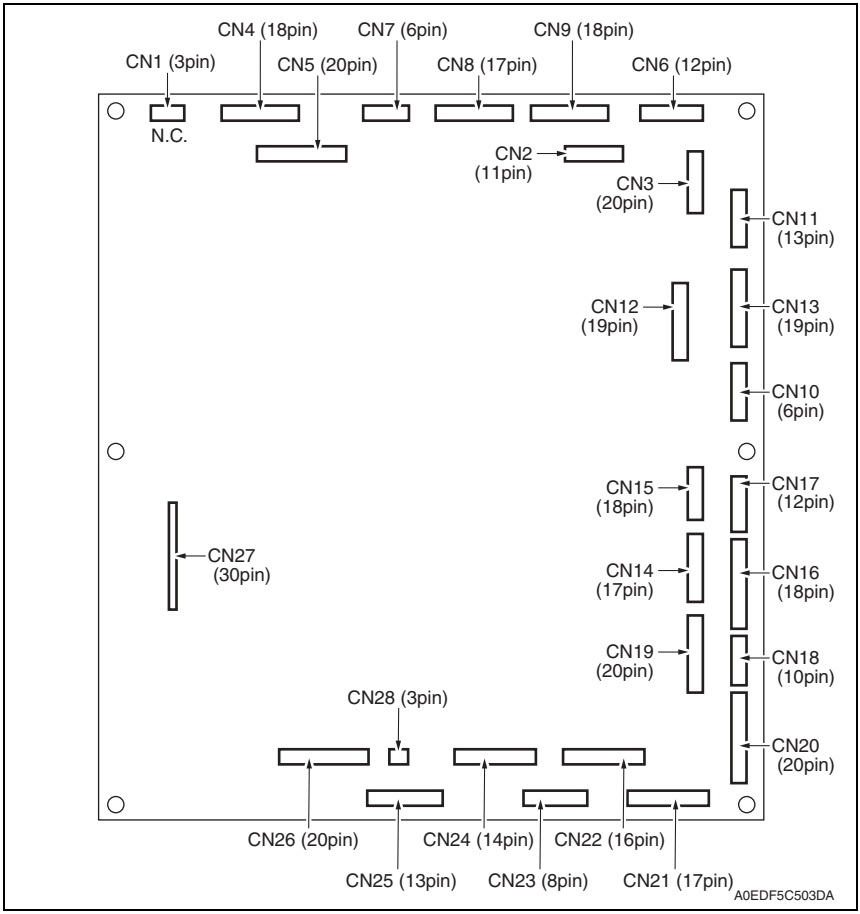


[1] Paper passage sensor/1 (PS1)
[2] Paper empty sensor (PS7)
[3] Leading edge stopper home sensor (PS14)
[4] Paper passage sensor/2 (PS10)
[5] Front door switch (SW1)
[6] Belt position sensor (PS13)
[7] Pick up roller position sensor (PS12)
[8] Alignment plate home sensor/F (PS8)
[9] Stapler home sensor (PS11)
[10] Paper surface detect sensor/1 (PS2)
[11] Paper surface detect sensor/2 (PS3)
[12] Tray lower limit sensor (PS6)
[13] Tray up/down operation sensor (PS4)
[14] FS control board (FSCB)
[15] Alignment plate home sensor/R (PS9)

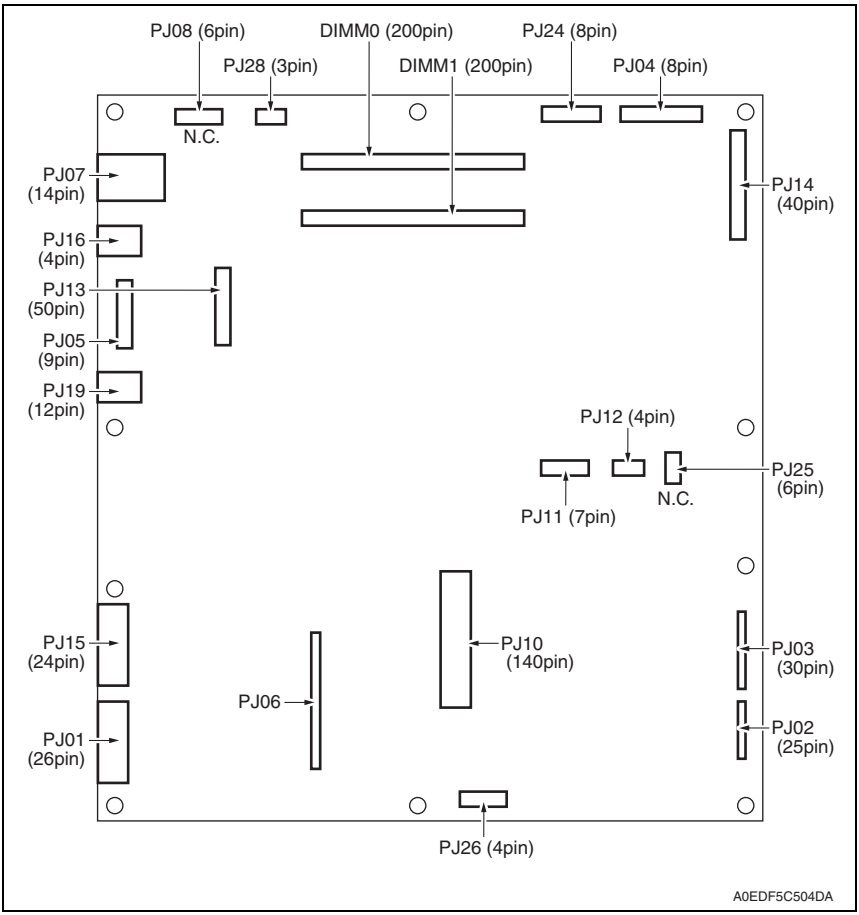
27. CONNECTOR LAYOUT DRAWING

27.1 Main body

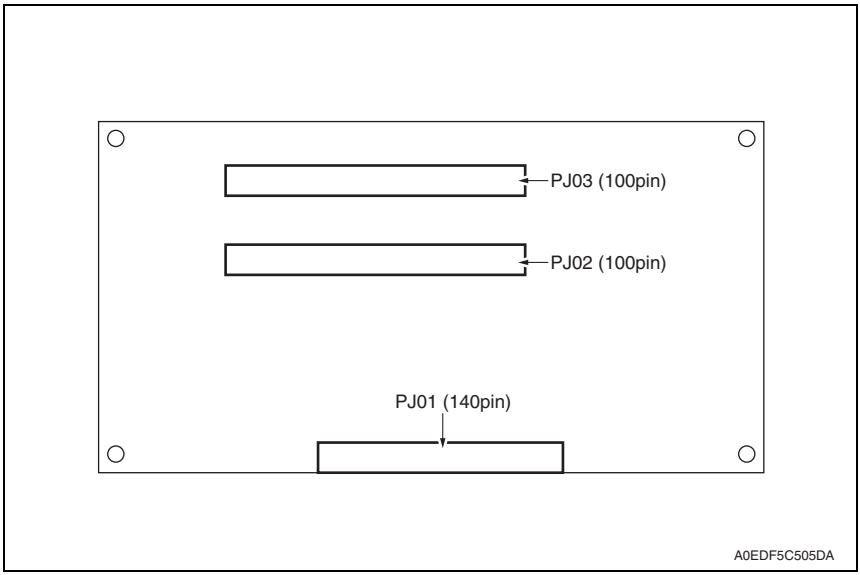
27.1.1 Printer control board (PRCB)



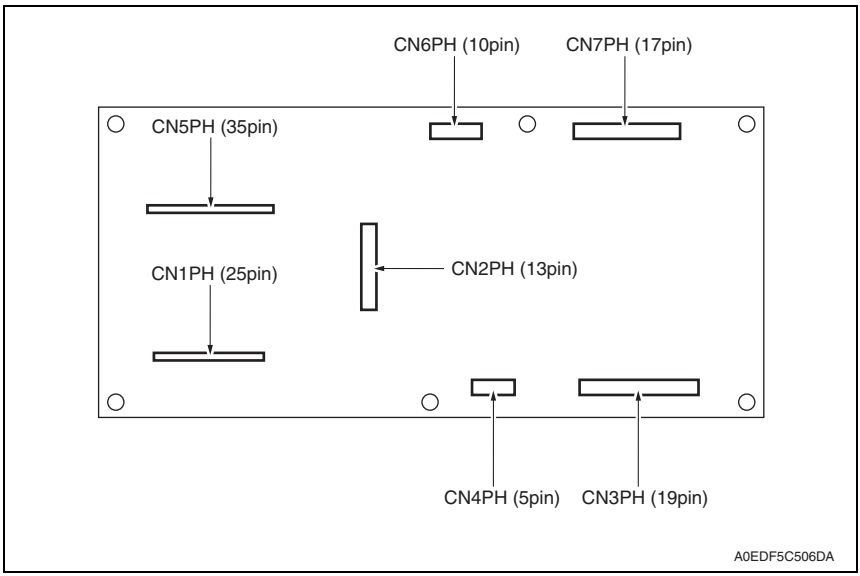
27.1.2 MFP board (MFPB)



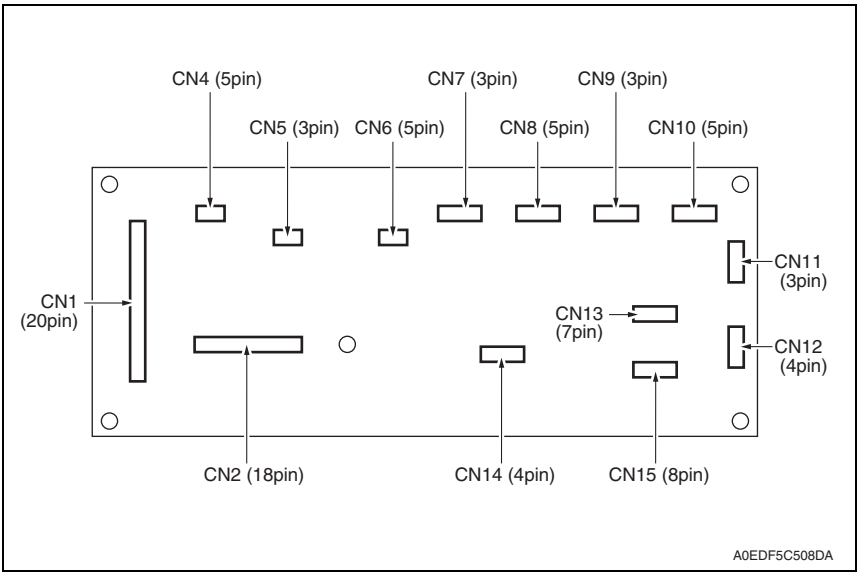
27.1.3 PCI board (PCIB)



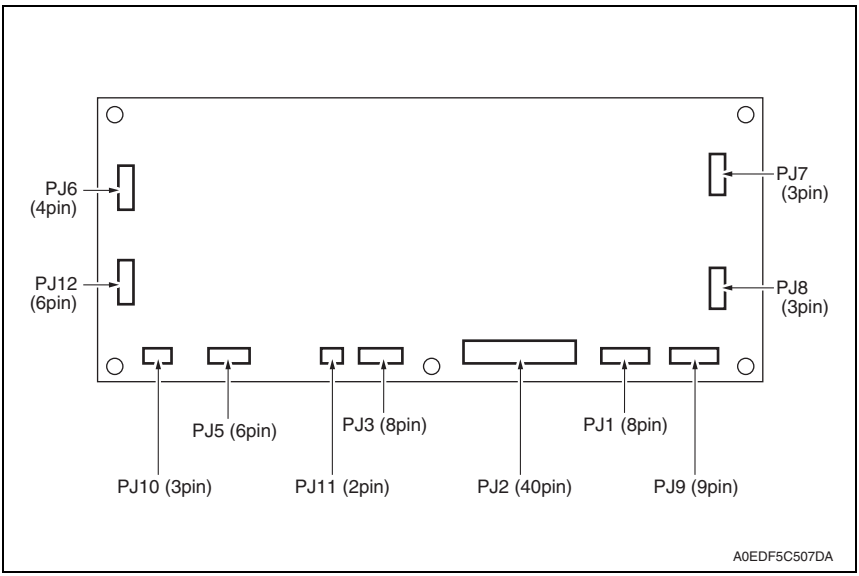
27.1.4 PH relay board (PHREYB)



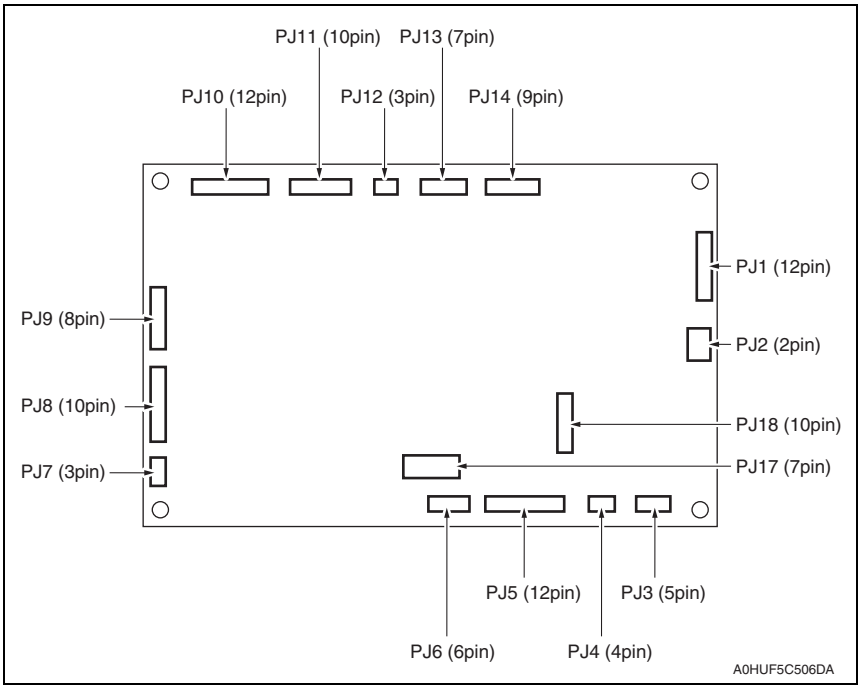
27.1.5 Front side relay board (FREYB)



27.1.6 Scanner relay board (REYB/SCAN)

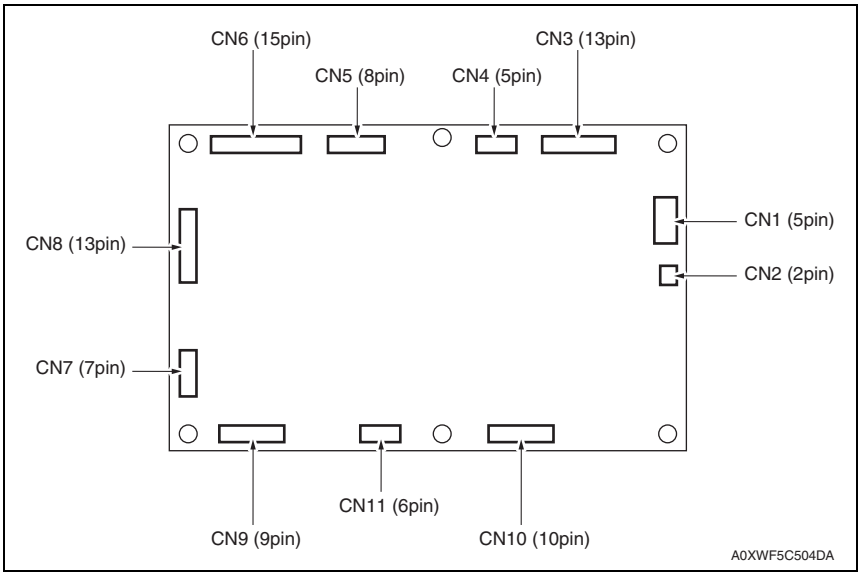


27.1.7 DF control board (DFCB)

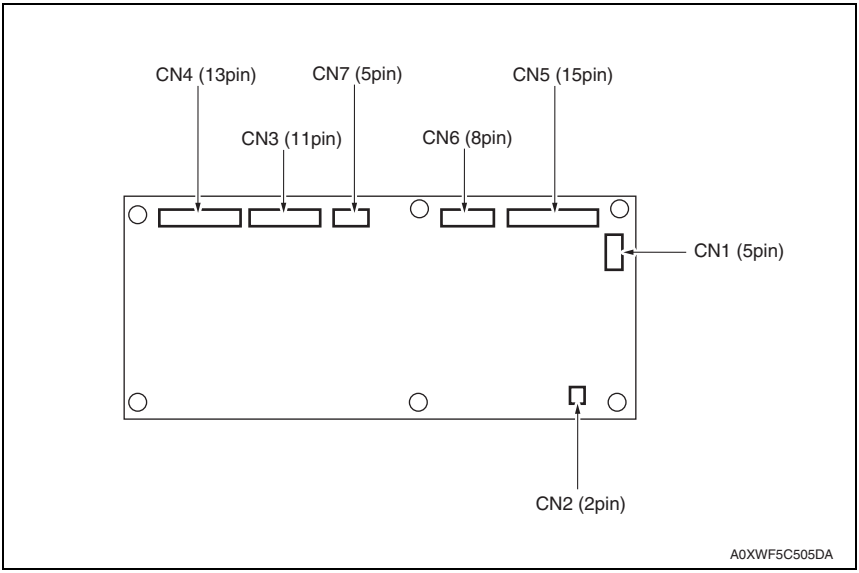


27.1.8 PC Control board (PCCB)

(1) PC-107/PC-207

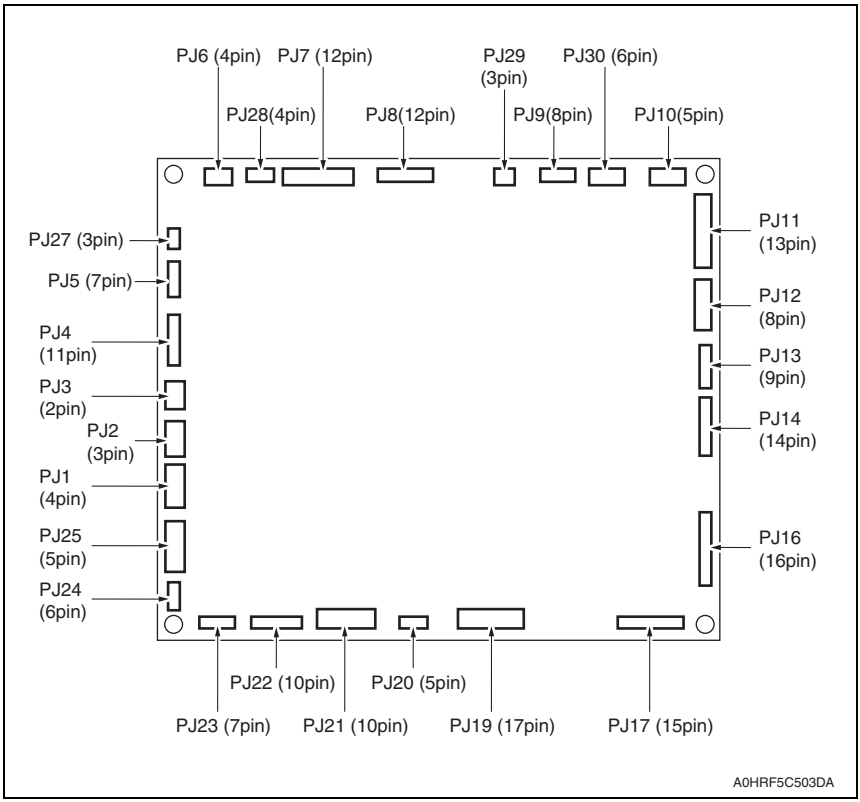


(2) PC-408

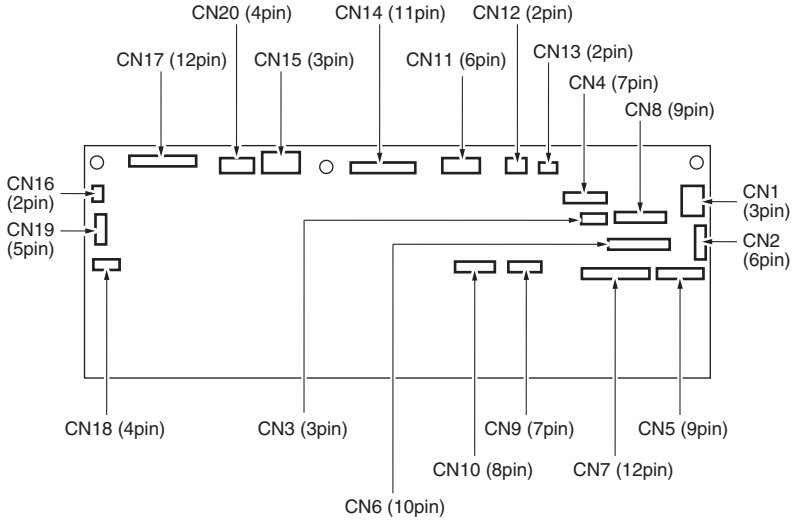

CN4 (13pin)
CN7 (5pin)
CN5 (15pin)
CN3 (11pin)
CN6 (8pin)
CN1 (5pin)
CN2 (2pin)
A0XWF5C505DA

27.1.9 FS control board (FSCB)

(1) FS-527

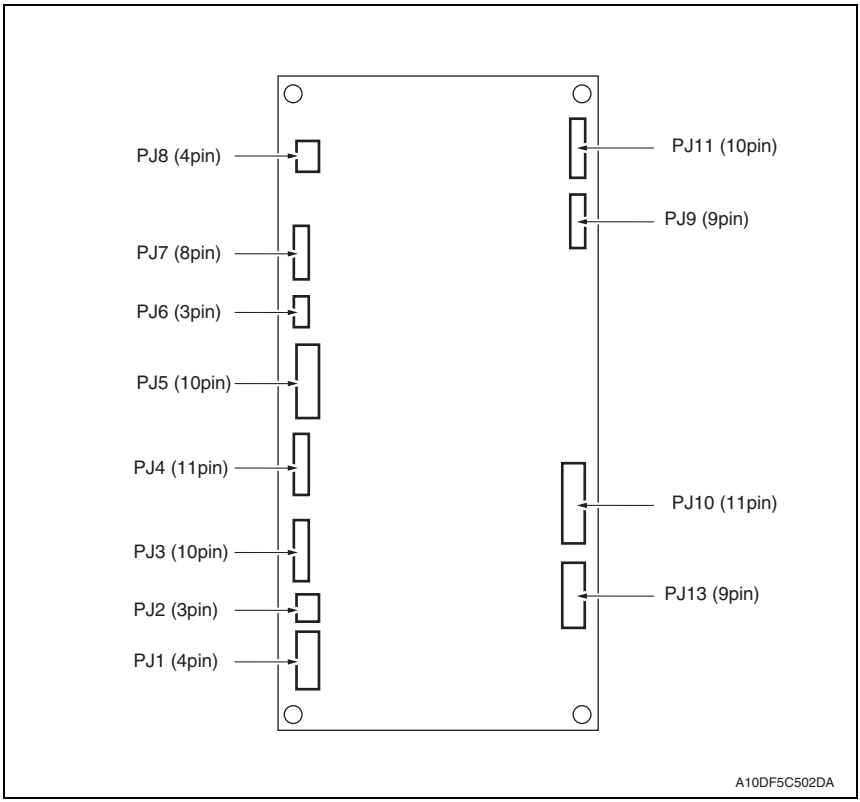


(2) FS-529


CN20 (4pin)
CN14 (11pin)
CN12 (2pin)
CN17 (12pin)
CN15 (3pin)
CN11 (6pin)
CN13 (2pin)
CN4 (7pin)
CN8 (9pin)
CN16 (2pin)
CN19 (5pin)
CN1 (3pin)
CN2 (6pin)
CN18 (4pin)
CN3 (3pin)
CN9 (7pin)
CN5 (9pin)
CN10 (8pin)
CN7 (12pin)
CN6 (10pin)
A0U7F5C503DA

27.1.10 SD drive board (SDDB)

(1) SD-509

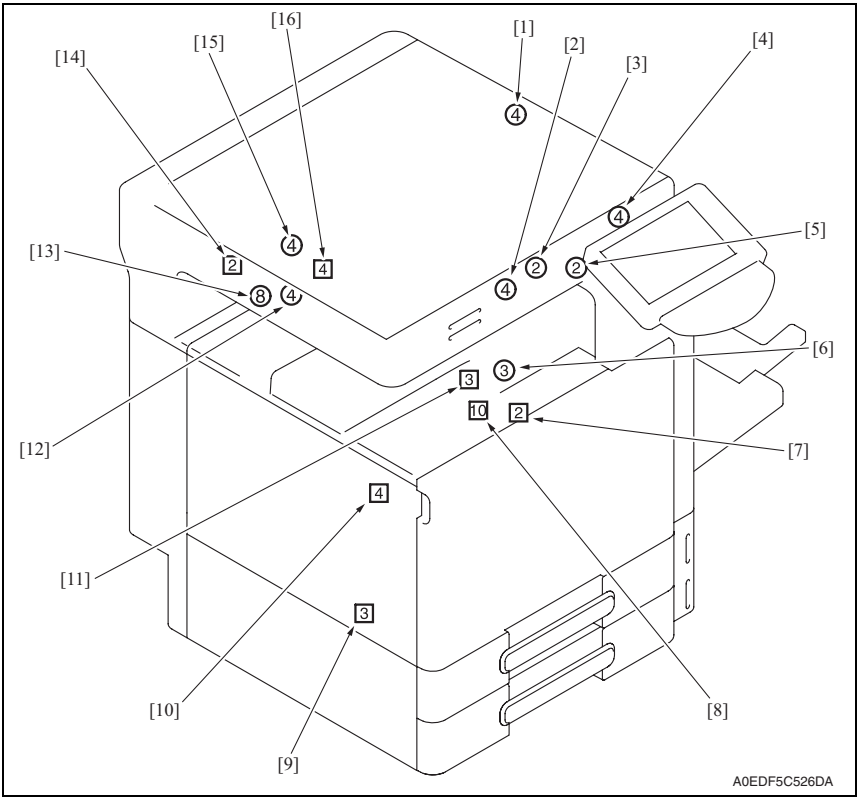


28. RELAY CONNECTOR LAYOUT DRAWING

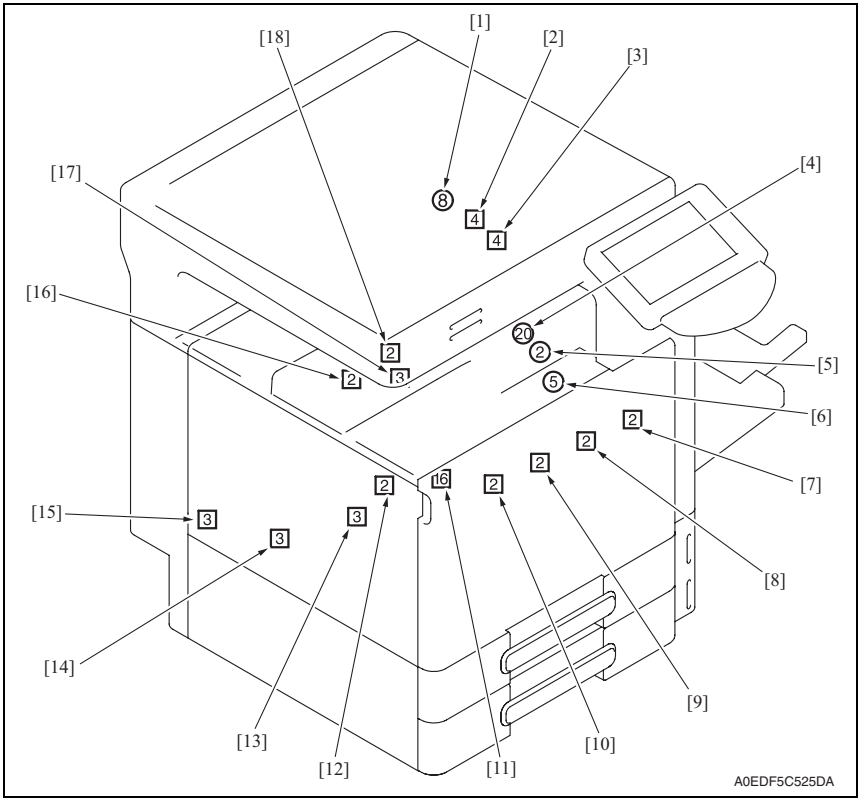
28.1 How to read the relay connector layout drawing

Number of pin → ① Possible to confirm by removing external cover.
→ [1] Not possible to confirm by removing external cover.

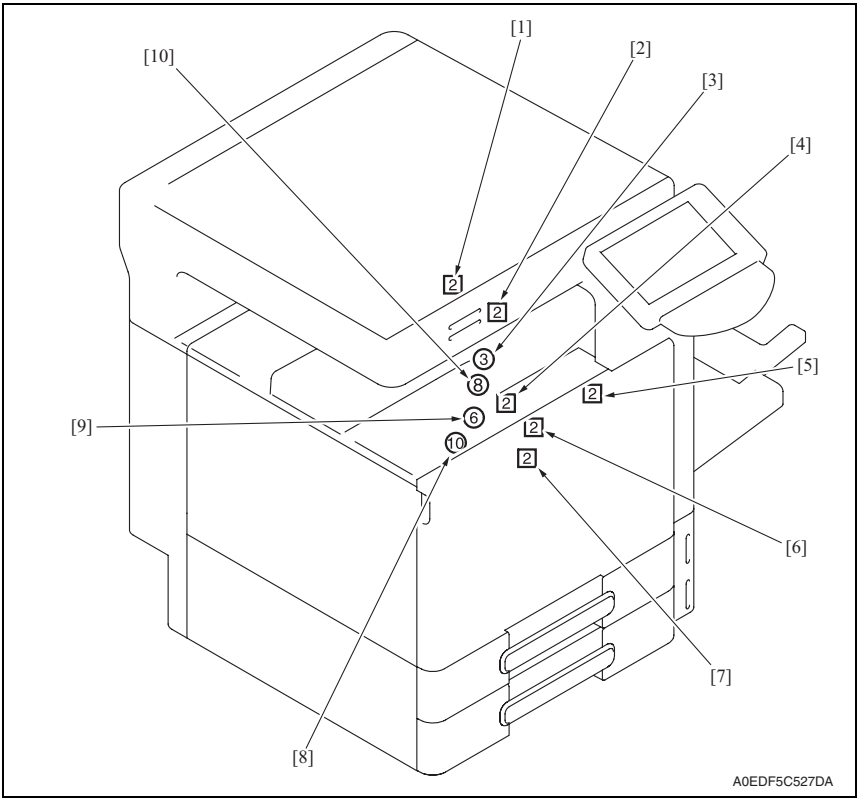
28.2 Main body



No.	CN No.	Location	No.	CN No.	Location
[1]	CN7	D-15	[9]	CN17	I-20
[2]	CN616	T-10	[10]	CN32	L-22
[3]	CN602	T-9	[11]	CN143	C-8
[4]	CN606	T-11	[12]	CN21	I-21
[5]	CN604	T-9	[13]	CN34	L-24
[6]	CN144	D-6	[14]	CN612	P-5
[7]	CN99	C-10	[15]	CN18	I-20
[8]	CN89	D-7	[16]	CN20	I-21



No.	CN No.	Location	No.	CN No.	Location
[1]	CN9	I-12	[10]	CN23	I-12
[2]	CN11	I-12	[11]	CN22	I-10 to11
[3]	CN10	I-12	[12]	CN147	C-14
[4]	CN93	D-9	[13]	CN127	C-14
[5]	CN86	C-6	[14]	CN126	D-14
[6]	CN100	D-6	[15]	CN88	D-7
[7]	CN26	I-11	[16]	CN102	C-11
[8]	CN25	I-11	[17]	CN124	C-13
[9]	CN24	I-11	[18]	CN103	C-11



No.	CN No.	Location	No.	CN No.	Location
[1]	CN56	R-17	[6]	CN116	C-27
[2]	CN57	R-18	[7]	CN117	C-25
[3]	CN110 *1	D-21	[8]	CN113	D-24
[4]	CN109	C-23	[9]	CN118	D-25
[5]	CN140	U-25	[10]	CN106	D-20

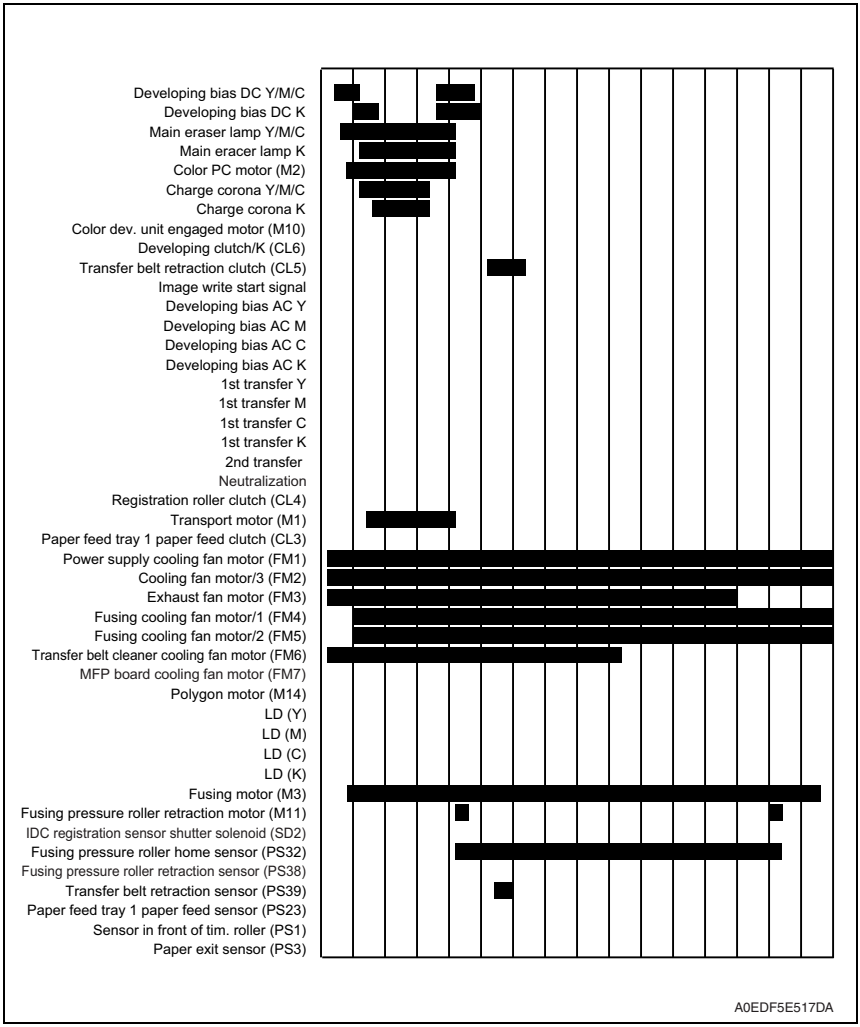
*1: bizhub C360/C280 only

29. TIMING CHART

29.1 Main body

29.1.1 Timing chart when the main power switch is turned ON

A. Timing chart

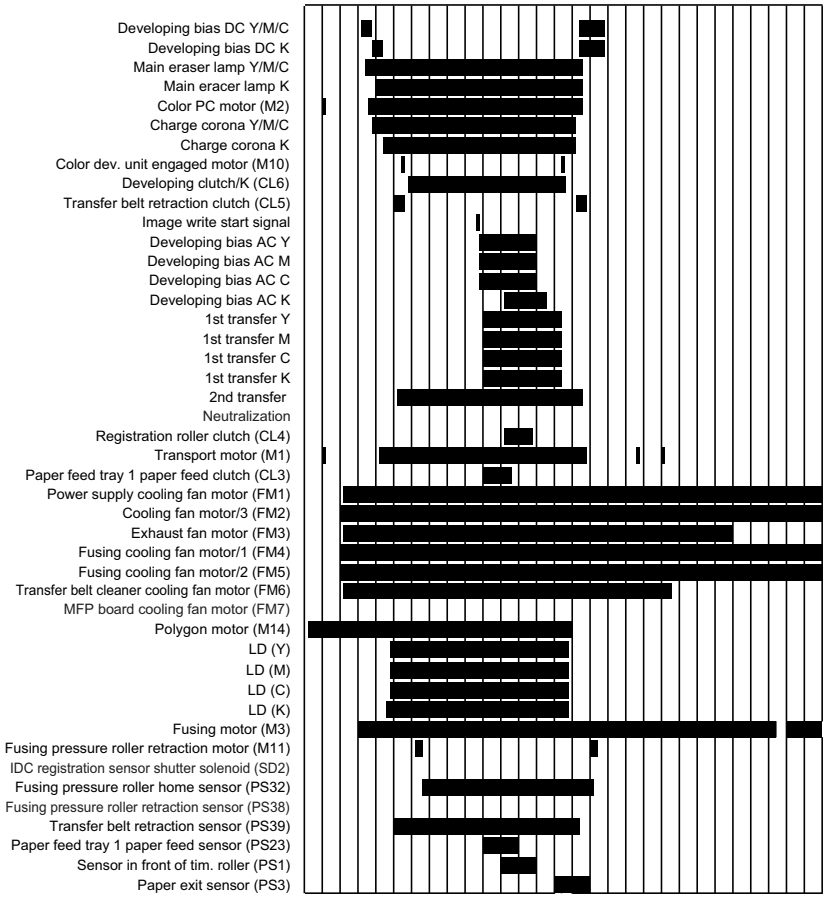


29.1.2 Timing chart in color mode

A. Operating conditions

- Color mode/A4 or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11/tray1

B. Timing chart



A0EDF5E519DA

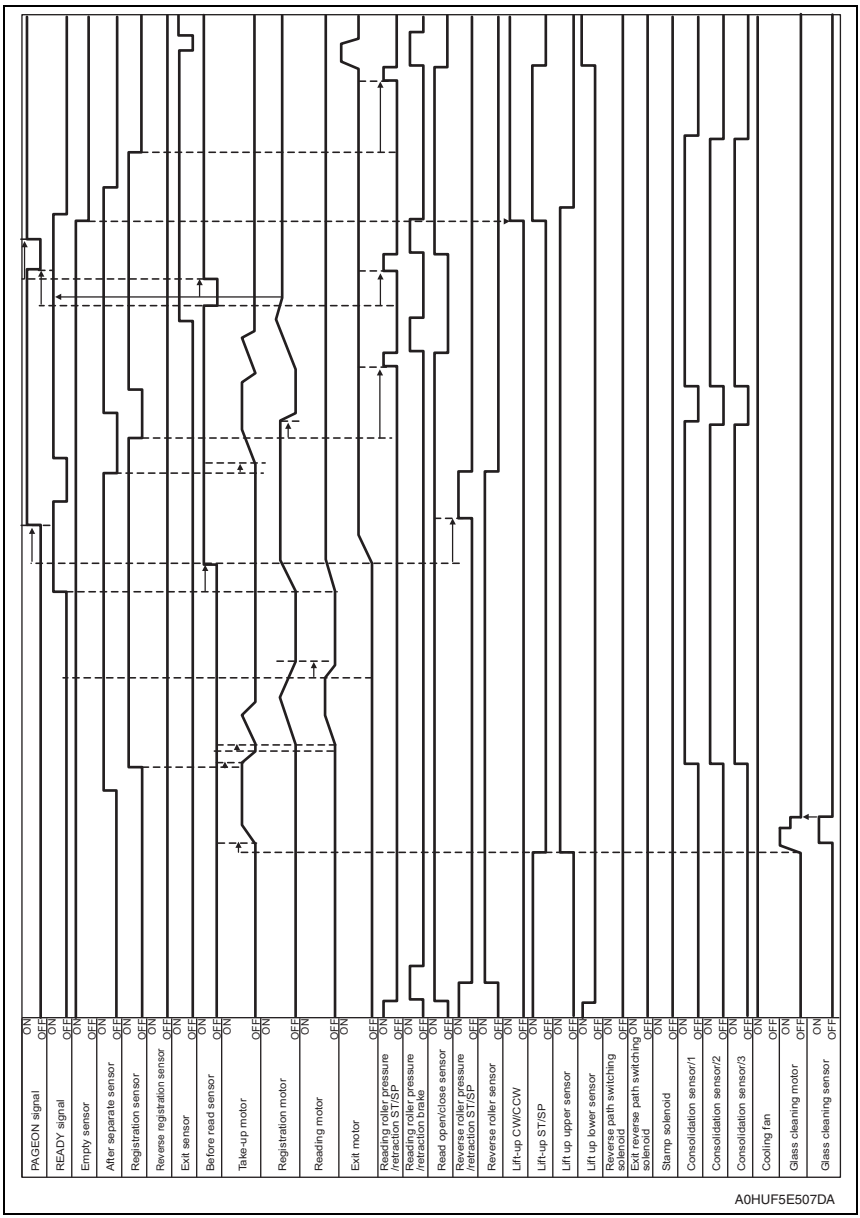
29.2 DF-617

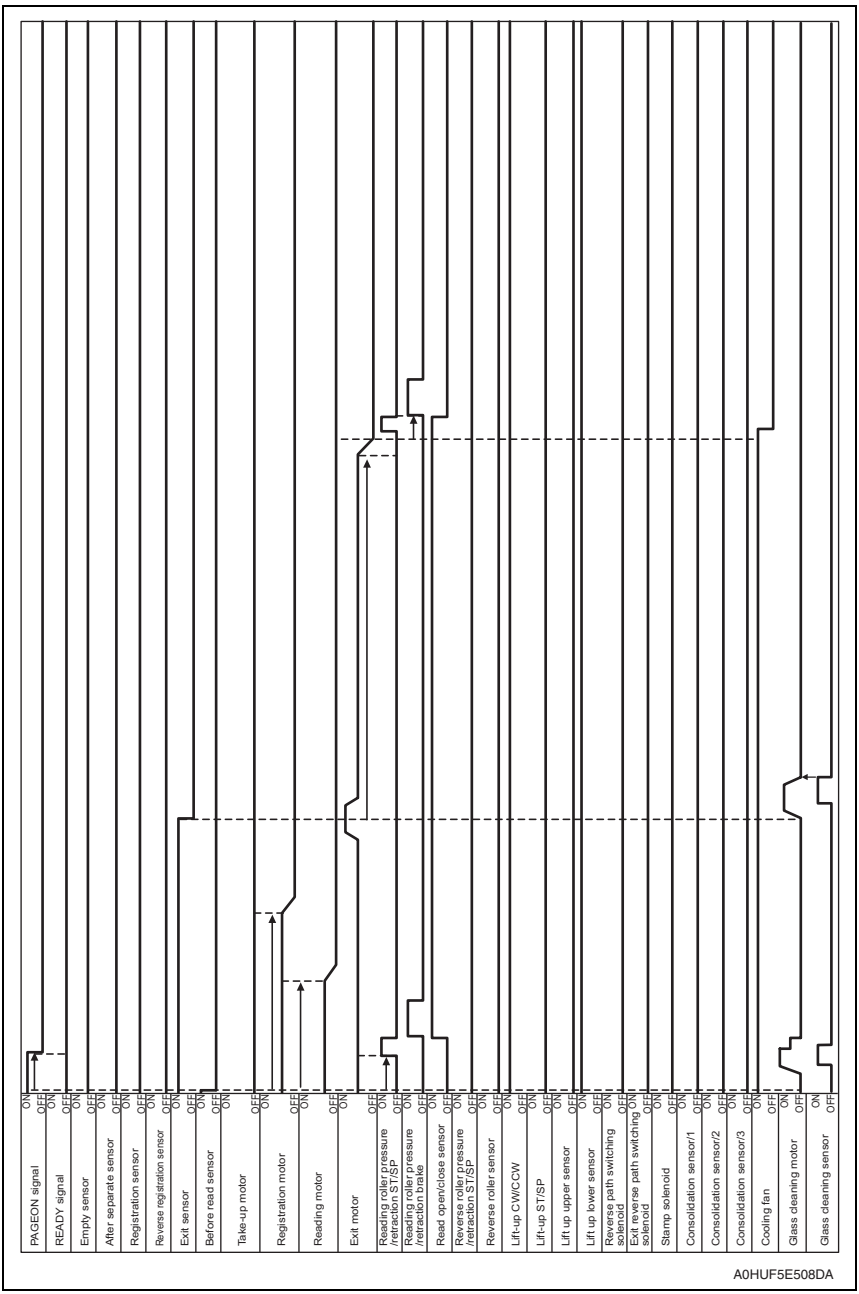
29.2.1 1-sided mode

A. Operating conditions

- Color mode/A4 or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11/full size/2 originals

B. Timing chart



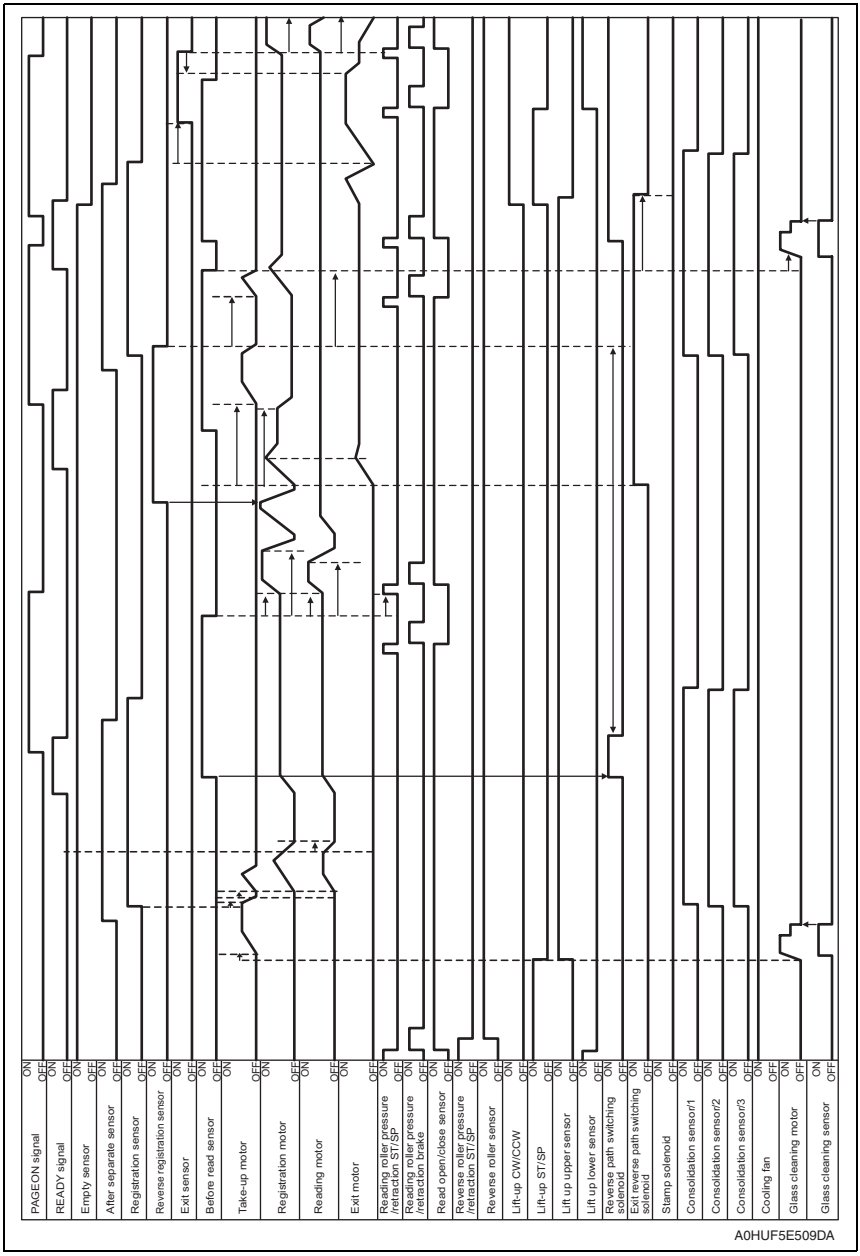

PAGEON signal
READY signal
Empty sensor
After separate sensor
Registration sensor
Reverse registration sensor
Exit sensor
Before read sensor
Take-up motor
Registration motor
Reading motor
Exit motor
Reading roller pressure /retraction ST/SP
Reading roller pressure /retraction brake
Read open/close sensor
Reverse roller pressure /retraction ST/SP
Reverse roller sensor
Lift-up CW/CCW
Lift-up ST/SP
Lift up upper sensor
Lift up lower sensor
Reverse path switching solenoid
Exit reverse path switching solenoid
Stamp solenoid
Consolidation sensor/1
Consolidation sensor/2
Consolidation sensor/3
Cooling fan
Glass cleaning motor
Glass cleaning sensor
ON
OFF
A0HUF5E508DA

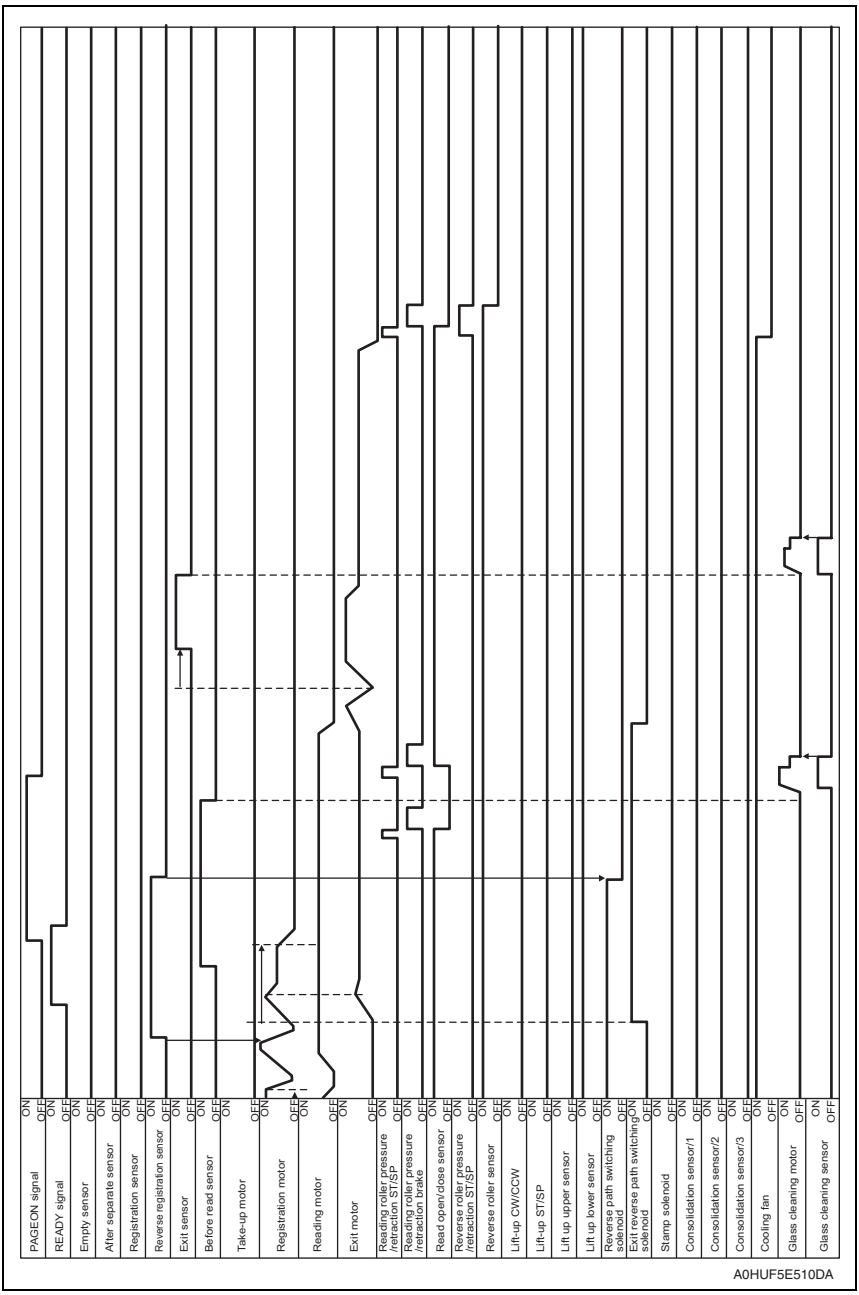
29.2.2 2-sided mode

A. Operating conditions

- Color mode/A4 or 8 $^1/_2$ x 11/full size/2 originals

B. Timing chart




PAGEON signal
READY signal
Empty sensor
After separate sensor
Registration sensor
Reverse registration sensor
Exit sensor
Before read sensor
Take-up motor
Registration motor
Reading motor
Exit motor
Reading roller pressure /retraction ST/SP
Reading roller pressure /retraction brake
Read open/close sensor
Reverse roller pressure /retraction ST/SP
Reverse roller sensor
Lift-up CW/CCW
Lift-up ST/SP
Lift up upper sensor
Lift up lower sensor
Reverse path switching solenoid
Exit reverse path switching solenoid
Stamp solenoid
Consolidation sensor/1
Consolidation sensor/2
Consolidation sensor/3
Cooling fan
Glass cleaning motor
Glass cleaning sensor
ON
OFF
A0HUF5E510DA

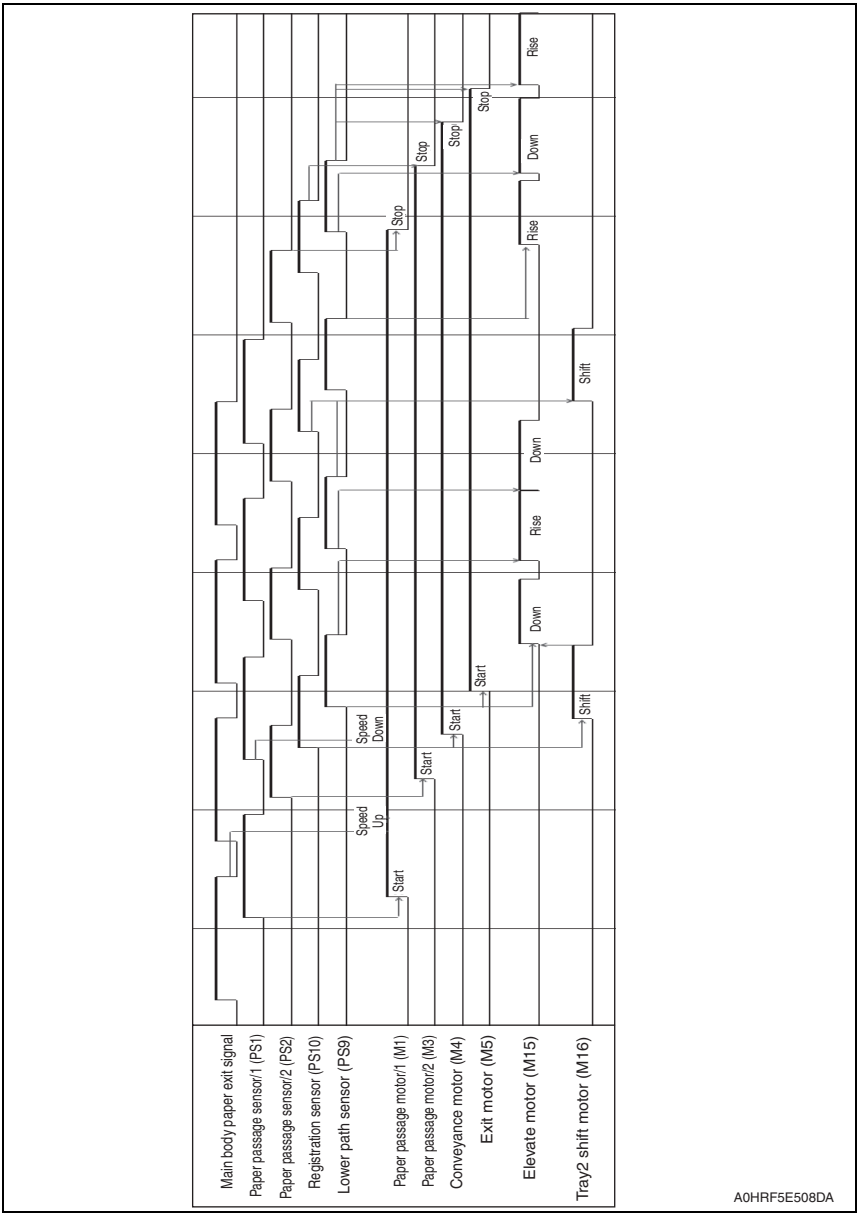
29.3 FS-527/SD-509/PK-517

29.3.1 Shift mode

A. Operating conditions

- Color mode/A4 or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11/2 originals/1-side

B. Timing chart

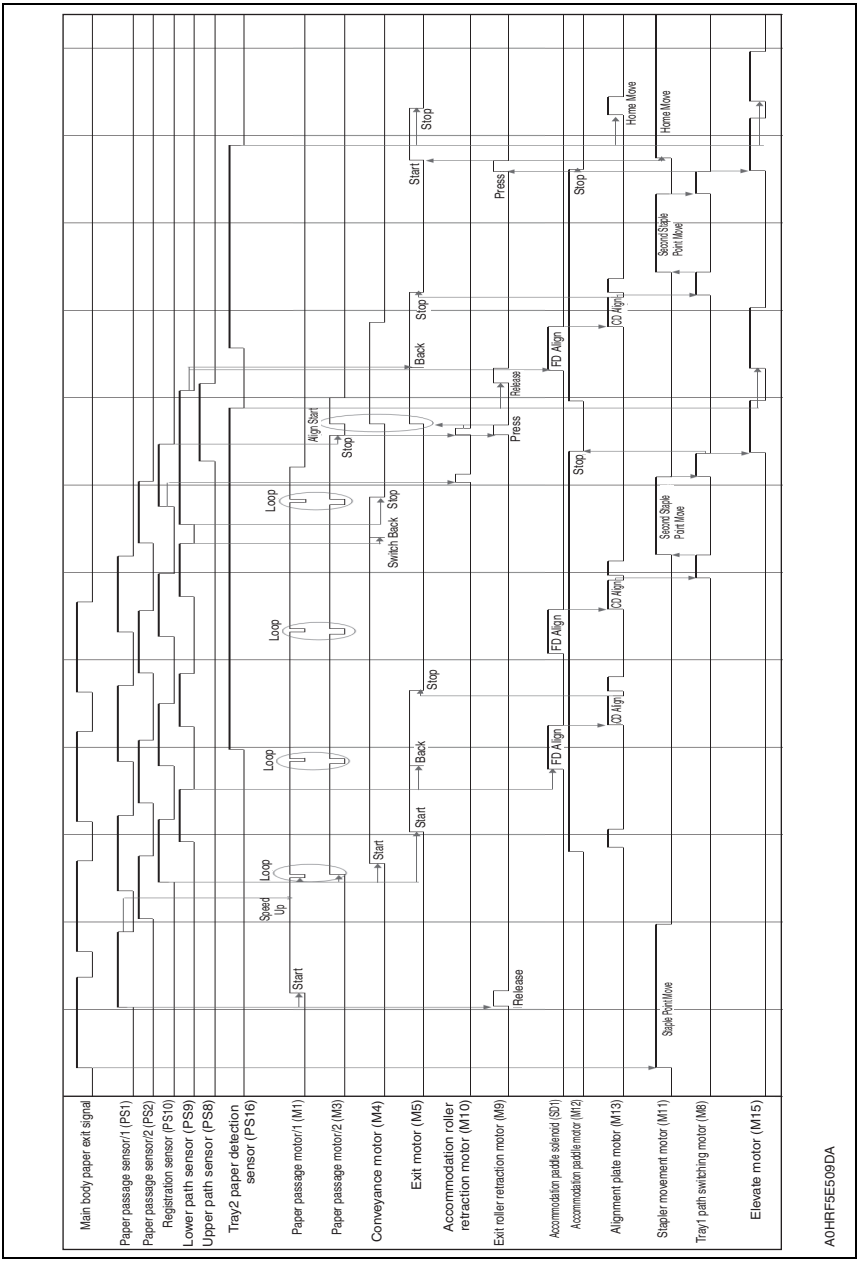


29.3.2 2 flat stitching staples mode

A. Operating conditions

- Color mode/A4 or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11/2 originals/1-side

B. Timing chart

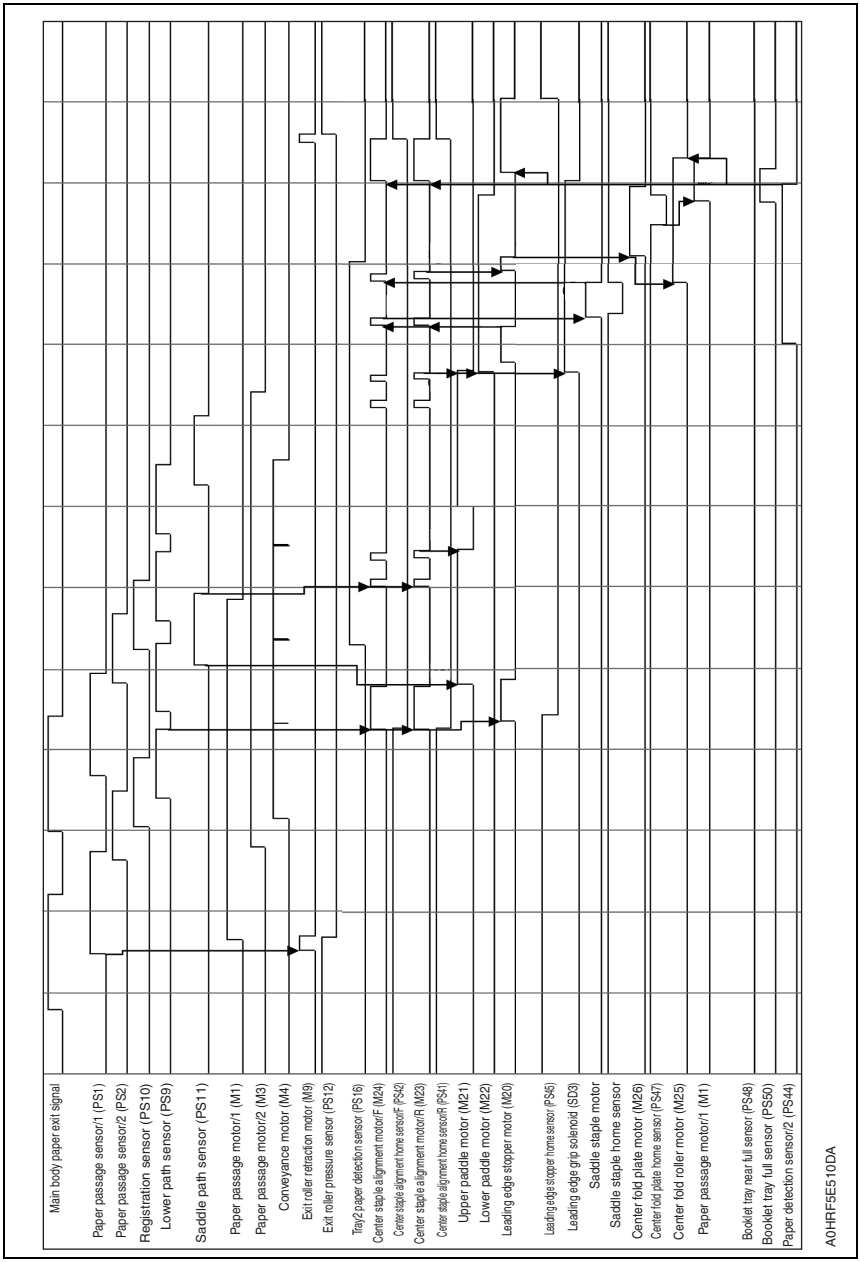


29.3.3 Center staples mode

A. Operating conditions

- Color mode/A4S or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11S/2 originals/1-side

B. Timing chart

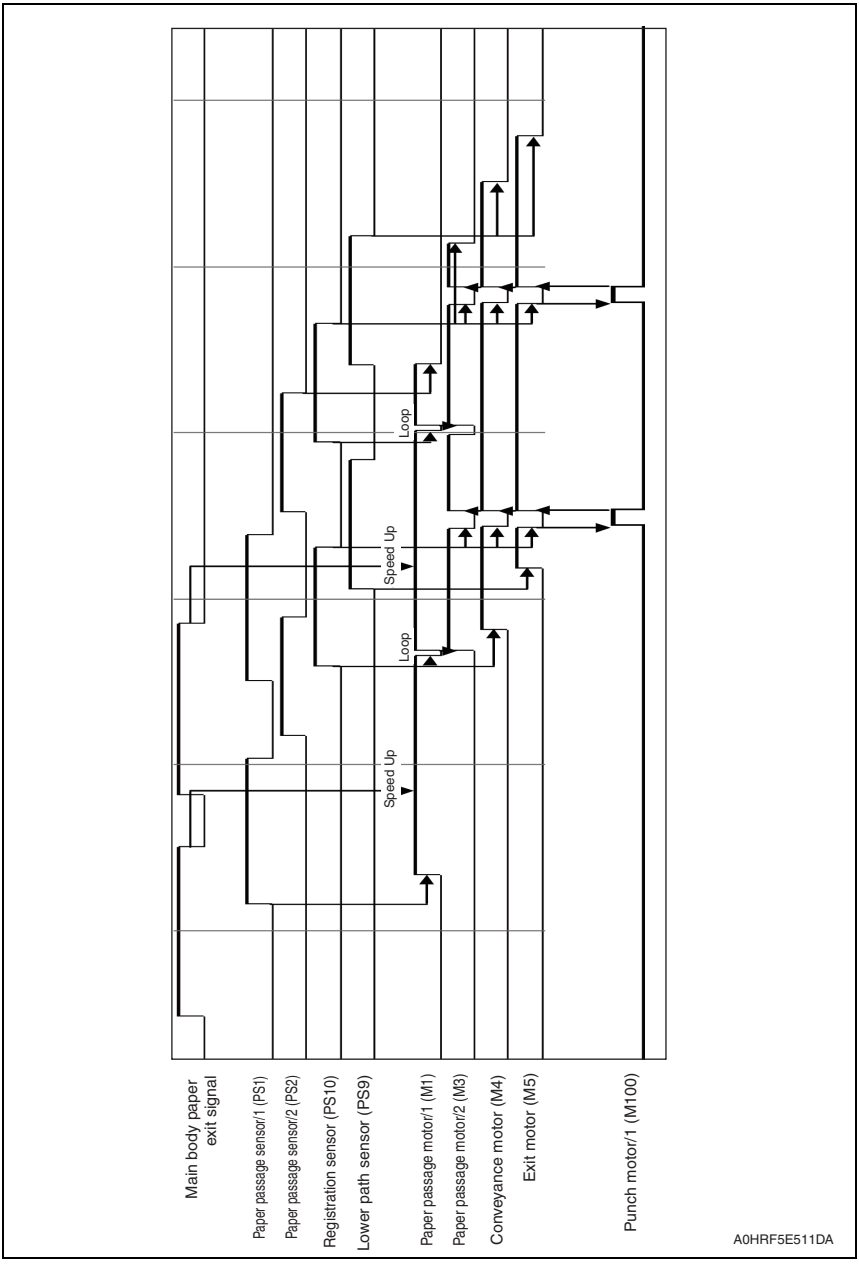


29.3.4 Punch mode

A. Operating conditions

- Color mode/A4S or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11S/2 originals/1-side

B. Timing chart



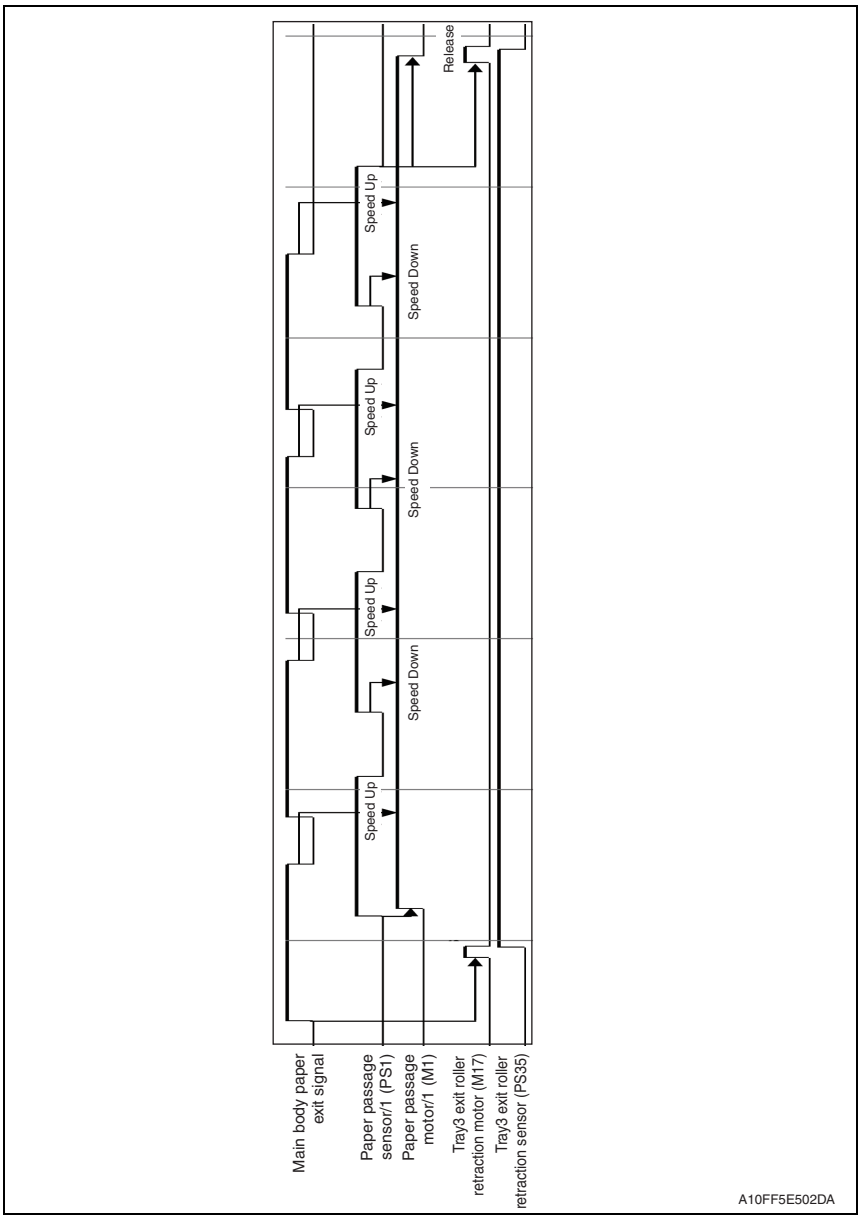
29.4 JS-603

29.4.1 Tray3 paper exit mode

A. Operating conditions

- Color mode/A4S or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11S/2 originals/1-side

B. Timing chart



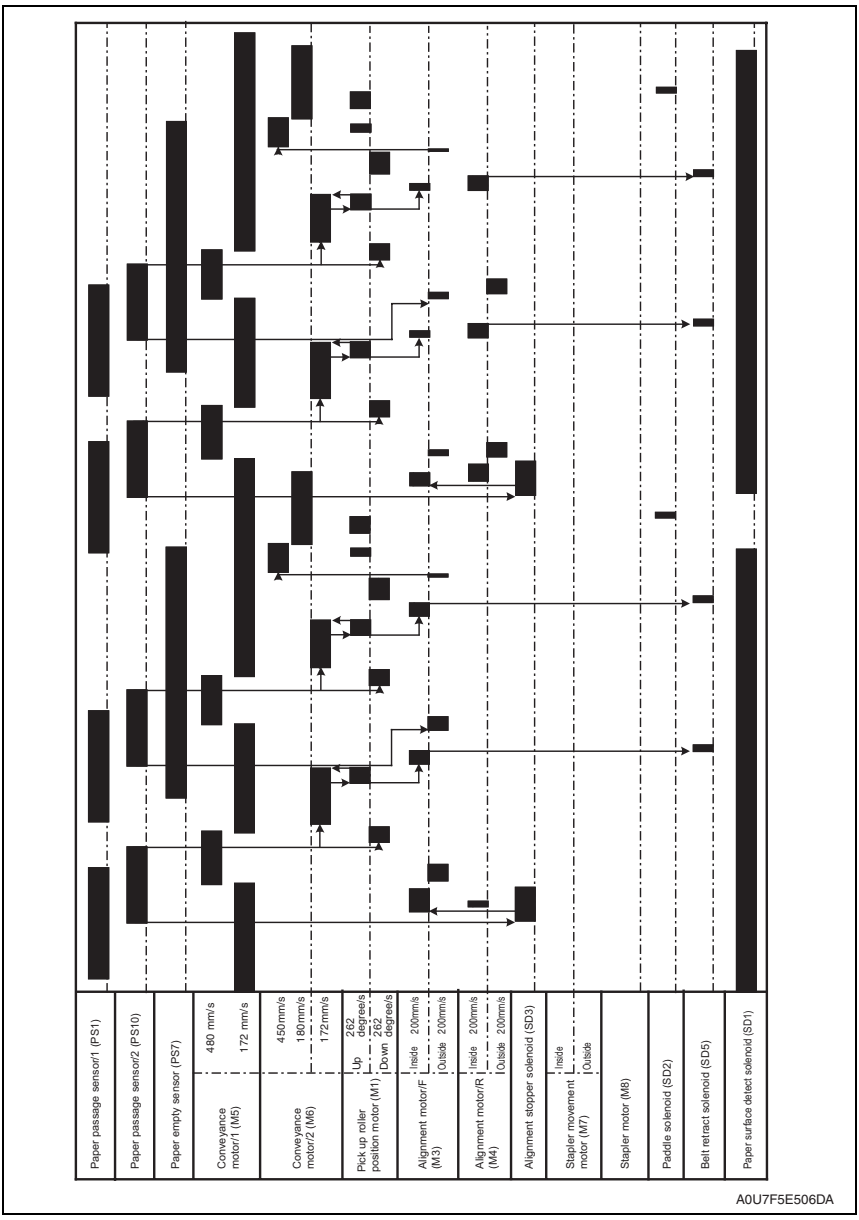
29.5 FS-529

29.5.1 Shift mode

A. Operating conditions

- Color mode/A4S or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11S/Sort (shift)/2 originals/1-side

B. Timing chart

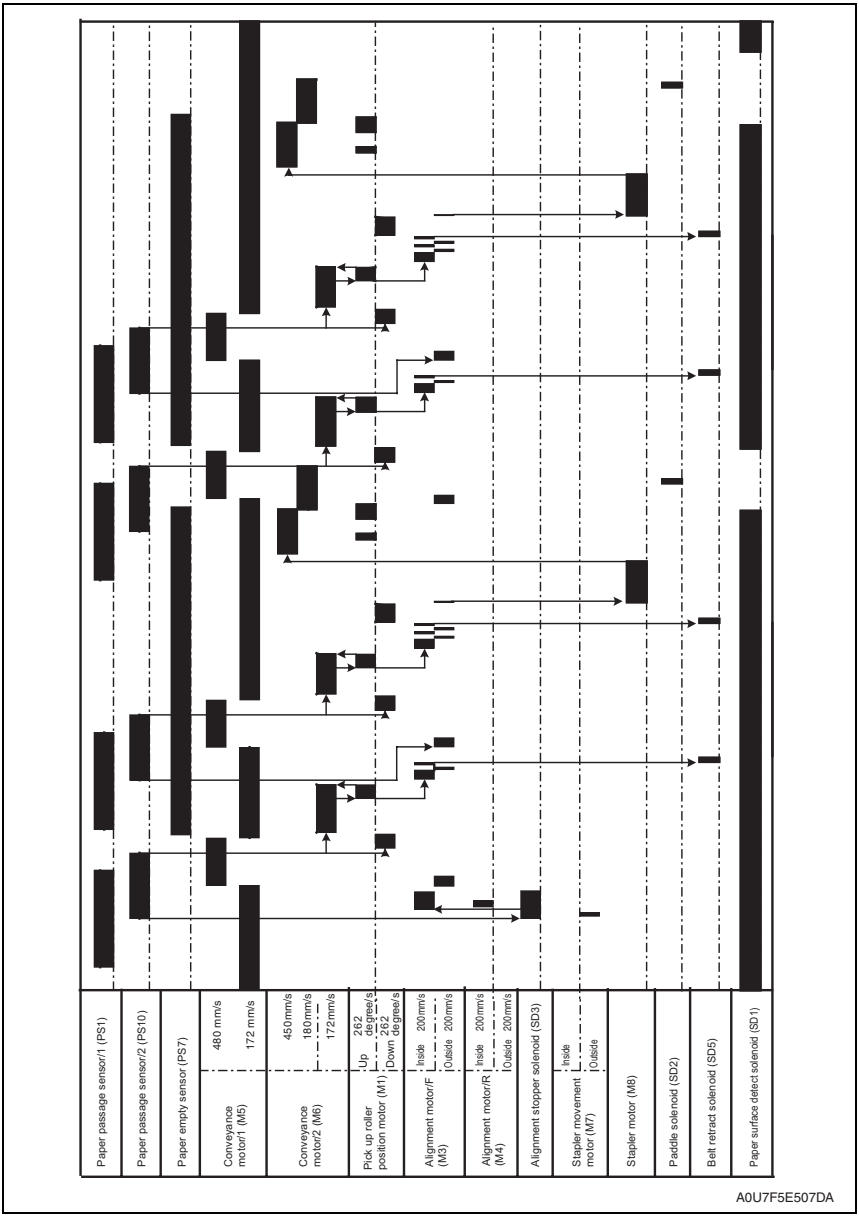


29.5.2 1 flat stitching staple mode

A. Operating conditions

- Color mode/A4S or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11S/Sort (shift)/2 originals/1-side

B. Timing chart

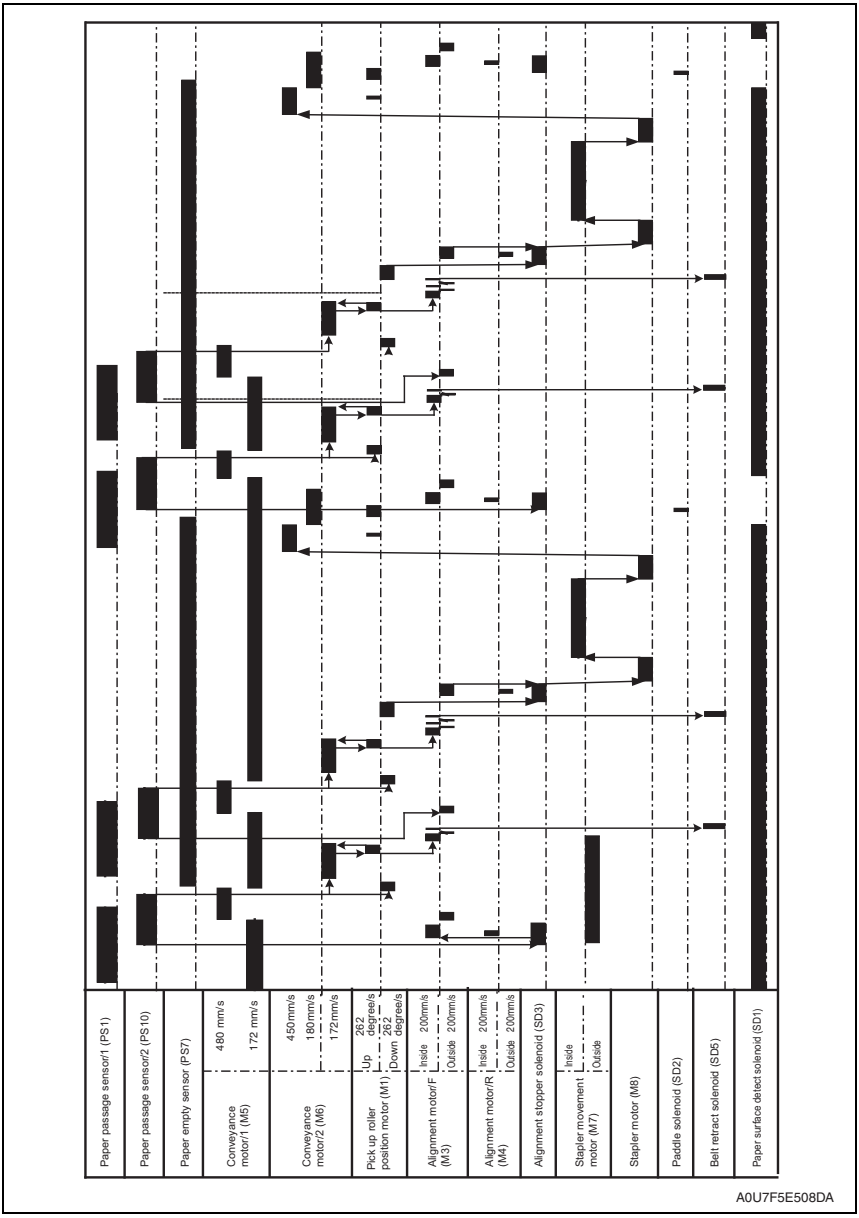


29.5.3 2 flat stitching staples mode

A. Operating conditions

- Color mode/A4S or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11S/Sort (shift)/2 originals/1-side

B. Timing chart



KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

i-Option LK-101 v2 /102 /103 v2/105

2012.02

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.1

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.
Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, ⚠1 is shown at the left margin of the revised section.
  The number inside ⚠1 represents the number of times the revision has been made.

- To indicate clearly a specific page that contains a revision or revisions, the page number appearing at the left or right bottom of the specific page is marked with ❗1 .
  The number inside ❗1 represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision
2012/02	1.1	⚠1	Error corrections
2009/07	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition

CONTENTS

i-Option LK-101 v2/102/103 v2/105

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT OUTLINE 1
1.1 Available function for i-Option 1
1.2 Product specification 2
1.2.1 Web browser function 2
1.2.2 Photo registration function 2

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

2. HOW TO USE THE ADJUSTMENT/SETTING SECTION 3
3. SERVICE MODE 4
3.1 Billing Setting function setting procedure 4
3.2 Billing Setting function tree 5
3.3 Settings in the License management 6
3.3.1 Activation 6
3.3.2 Deactivation 6
3.3.3 Repair 6
3.3.4 Initialize 6
3.3.5 Request Code 6
3.3.6 List 7
3.3.7 Function List 7
3.4 License Management function setting procedure 8
3.4.1 Activation 8
3.4.2 Deactivation 13
3.4.3 Repair 19
3.4.4 Initialize 25

Blank Page

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT OUTLINE

1.1 Available function for i-Option

- The functions available for i-Option LK-101 v2/102/103 v2/105 are as follows.

Function	Overview	Application			
		LK-101 v2	LK-102	LK-103 v2	LK-105
Web browser	• From the control panel, access content on the Internet or Intranet, in order to display or print this content. Additionally, you can operate PageScope Web Connection to use documents saved in user boxes.	✓		✓	
Image panel	• This is a new control panel user interface. It enables the whole operation workflow to be easily grasped.	✓		✓	
Photo registration	• You can add photo data to a registered address book entry. Registered photos are reflected in the Destination List of the Image Panel.	✓		✓	
Assignment of application keys	• Enhanced function can be assigned to the application key.	✓	✓	✓	
PDF processing	• When transmitting documents in PDF format, you can encrypt PDF file with password or digital ID, add a digital signature, and specify properties.		✓	✓	
Searchable PDF	• You can create a text searchable PDF file by pasting transparent text data on the area of a document in which characters are recognized through an OCR process. You can create a searchable PDF file when saving or sending an original in the PDF format using the scan or User Box functions.				✓

1.2 Product specification

1.2.1 Web browser function

- Main specifications of the web browser installed are as follows.

Browser engine	NetFront
Supported protocols	HTTP, HTTPS, TCP/IP
Supported markup/script languages	HTML, CSS, JavaSrcript, Ajax
Supported image formats	JPEG, BMP, PNG, GIF, Animation GIF, PDF, XPS, Flash
Supported SSL/TLS versions	SSL2.0, SSL3.0, TLS1.0
Supported character codes	Western (ISO-8859-1), Unicode (UTF-8), Simplified Chinese (GB2312), Traditional Chinese (Big5), Japanese (Shift-JIS), Japanese (ISO-2022-JP), Japanese (EUC-JP)
Display modes	Normal, Just-Fit Rendering, Smart-Fit Rendering
PDF viewer	Adobe® Reader® LE
Flash player	Adobe® Flash® Player 7

NOTE

The Flash player installed on the MFP does not support the following:

- **The function to trigger an event caused by a key operation.**
- **The function to paste or acquire data such as character strings from the clipboard.**
- **The context menu.**
- **The Flash printing function.**
- **The function to execute JavaScript from Flash or to operate Flash by JavaScript.**
- **A screen that has no window (pop-up).**
- **The Flash bookmark function.**
- **The function to send/receive data in real time using the Flash Media Server.**
- **The function to communicate via the XMLSocket.**

1.2.2 Photo registration function

- Specifications of the photo data to be registered are as follows.

File type	BMP format, 24-bit color, uncompressed
Image size	48 x 48 pixels
Data size	6,966 Byte

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

2. HOW TO USE THE ADJUSTMENT/SETTING SECTION

- "Adjustment/Setting" contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this "Adjustment/Setting," the default settings are indicated by " ".

Advance checks
Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The original glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

⚠ CAUTION
- **To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the scanner cables or gears of the exposure unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the fusing unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The developing unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

3. SERVICE MODE

- When using i-Option LK-101 v2/102/103 v2/105, license management is done with the following procedures. [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [License Management]
- [License Management] can set Activation/Deactivation of each i-Option functions, Repair/Initialize of functions for troubleshooting, or etc.

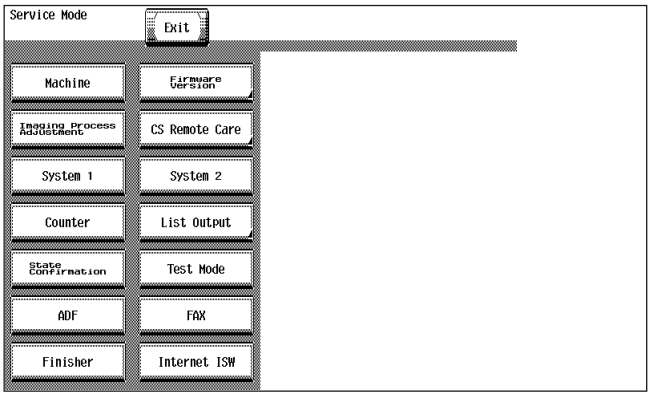
3.1 Billing Setting function setting procedure

1. Press the Utility/Counter key.
2. Touch [Check Details] on meter count display.
3. Press the following keys in this order.; Stop → 0 → 0 → Stop → 0 → 1

NOTE

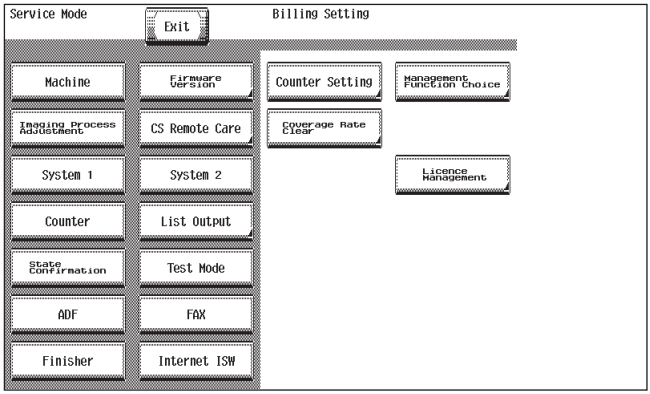
- **When selecting [CE Authentication] under [Enhanced Security] available from Service Mode, authentication by CE password is necessary.**
  Enter the 8 digits CE password, and touch [END].
  (The initial setting for CE password is "92729272.")
- **When the following setting is set to "ON", CE password authentication is necessary.**
  [Administrator Settings] → [Security Settings] → [Enhanced Security Mode]
- **If a wrong CE password is entered, re-enter the right password. The machine will not enter Service Mode unless the CE password is entered correctly. To return to the Basic screen, turn OFF the sub power switch and turn it ON again.**
  When the following setting is set to "Mode 2", operation will be prohibited since it indicates authentication failure by failing to enter the correct CE password within the specified number of times.
  if the access lock is activated, the lock release timer starts to operate by input the Stop → 0 → 9 → 3 → 1 → 7 in [Meter Count] → [Check Details] → [Coverage Rate] after the main power switch is turned OFF and On. When the timer reaches the time specified in this setting, the access lock is released.
- **The service code entered is displayed as "∗."**

4. The Service Mode menu will appear.



A00JF3E534DA

5. Press the following keys in this order.
   Stop → 9
6. Billing Setting menu will appear.



A00JF3E536DB

3.2 Billing Setting function tree

Service Mode			Ref. Page
Billing Setting	Counter Setting		*1
	Management Function Choice		
	Coverage Rate Clear		
	License Management *2	Activation *2	P.6
		Deactivation *2	P.6
		Repair *2, 3	P.6
		Initialize *2	P.6
		Request Code *2	P.6
		List *2	P.7
		Function list *2	P.7

*1: For details, see the main body service manual.
*2: It is displayed only when the expanded memory furnished with the optional upgrade kit UK-203 is mounted.
*3: It is displayed only when “license management error” occurs.

See P.759 of the main body service manual.

3.3 Settings in the License management

3.3.1 Activation

Functions	• To activate i-Option functions.
Use	• To activate i-Option functions with CE. • The functions can be activated by selecting the desired function and enter the appropriate license code and function code. • Administrators also can activate i-Option functions through Administrator Settings.
Setting/ Procedure	See P.8

3.3.2 Deactivation

Functions	• To deactivate i-Option functions.
Use	• To deactivate i-Option functions due to registration error, expiration of lease term, change to other MFP or etc. • The functions can be deactivated by selecting the desired function and enter the appropriate deactivation code.
Setting/ Procedure	See P.13

3.3.3 Repair

Functions	• To repair license management information.
Use	• To be used when license management information is lost due to replacement of NVRAM board or service EEPROM board or any other trouble. • License management information can be repaired by acquiring repair code with repair request code, and entering the repair code.
Setting/ Procedure	See P.19

3.3.4 Initialize

Functions	• To initialize license management information.
Use	• To be used when license management information cannot be repaired. • License management information should be initialized when the machine fails to generate request code or repair request code due to any trouble and the information cannot be repaired.
Setting/ Procedure	See P.25

3.3.5 Request Code

- When the license management error is occurred, it will not be displayed until the repair code is input.

Functions	• To display and print request code and serial number.
Use	• To check the request code and serial number.
Setting/ Procedure	• Set A4S or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11S paper to the tray, and press start key at request code screen to print.

3.3.6 List

Functions	• To display and print deactivation complete code and serial number.
Use	• To display and print deactivation complete code and serial number.
Setting/ Procedure	• Set A4S or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11S paper to the tray, and press start key at deactivation complete code screen to print.

3.3.7 Function List

Functions	• To display activated functions.
Use	

3.4 License Management function setting procedure

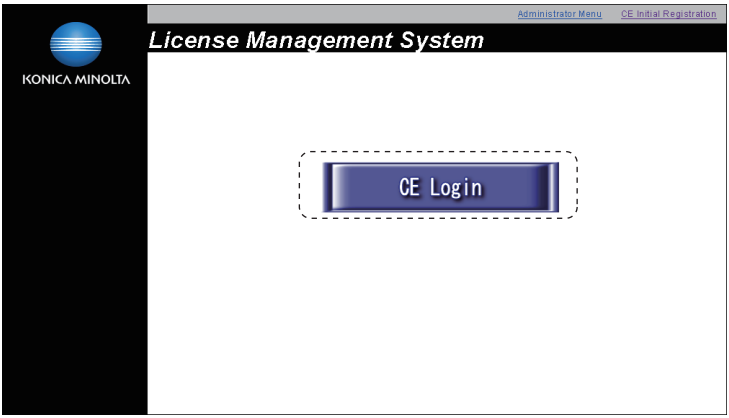
- Each setting procedure of License Management function is as follows.
- You need to access License Management System (LMS) to implement each function setting.

NOTE

- **Before accessing the LMS, CE are required to register the E-mail address and the password in the LMS. To register, click [CE Initial Registration] that is located in the upper right of CE Login screen.**

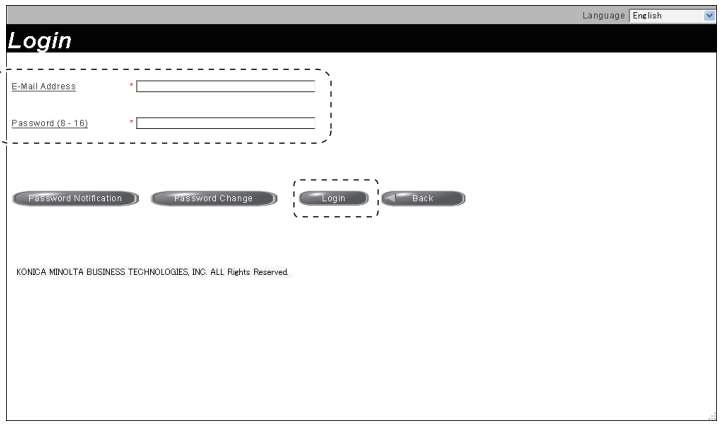
3.4.1 Activation

1. Prepare “token certification.”
2. Access the following URL using the PC connected to the Internet.
   https://lms.konicaminolta.com/license/KM/support.aspx
3. Click [CE Login].



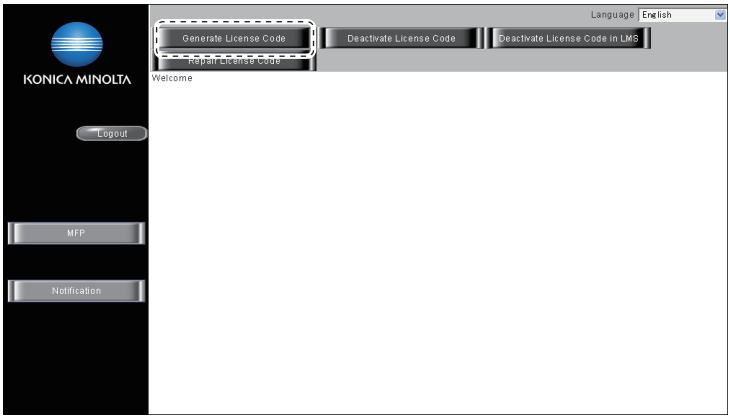
A0EDF3C551DA

4. Enter [E-Mail Address] and [Password], and click [Login].



A0EDF3E562DA

5. Click [Generate License Code].

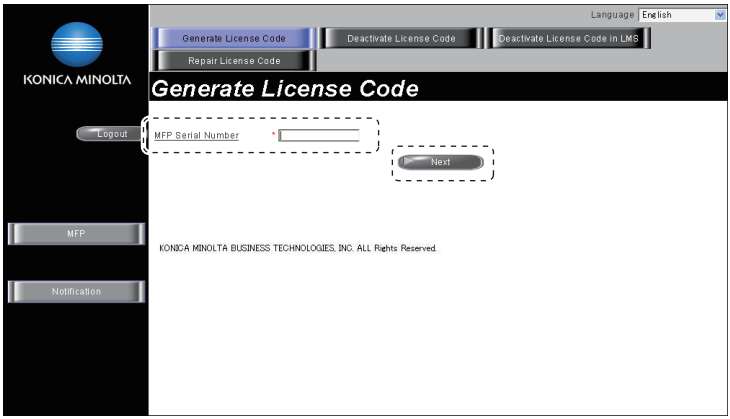


A0EDF3E563A

6. Enter the serial number of the target MFP, and click [Next].

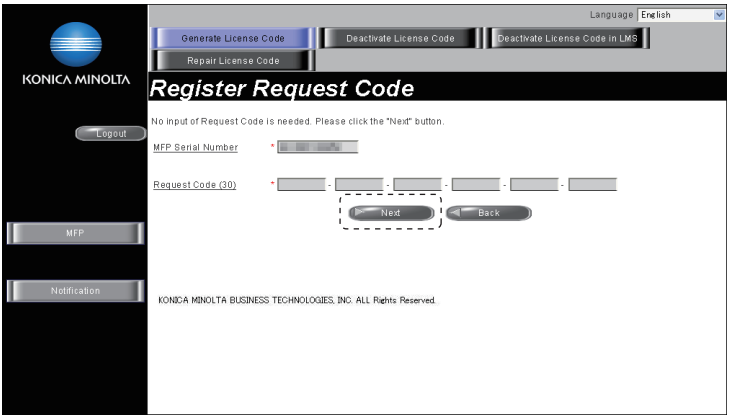
NOTE

- **Make sure to enter alphabet letters of the serial number in all capital letters.**



A0EDF3E564A

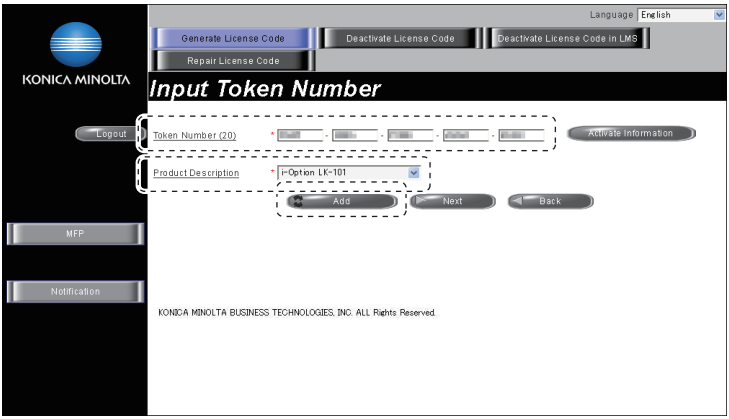
7. Click [Next].



A0EDF3E565A

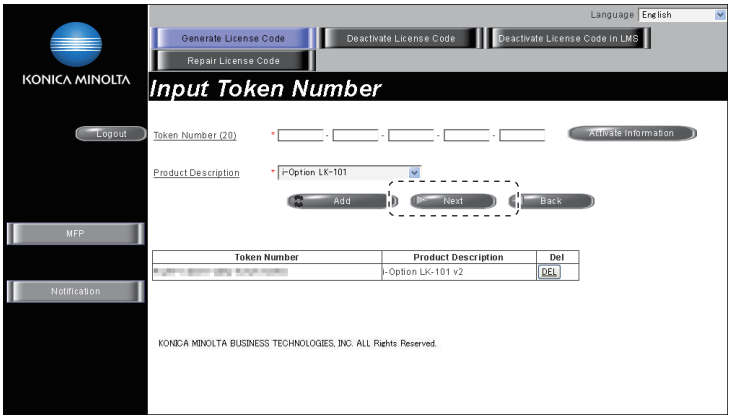
8. Enter the token number written in the token certification, and select the product description.

9. Click [Add].



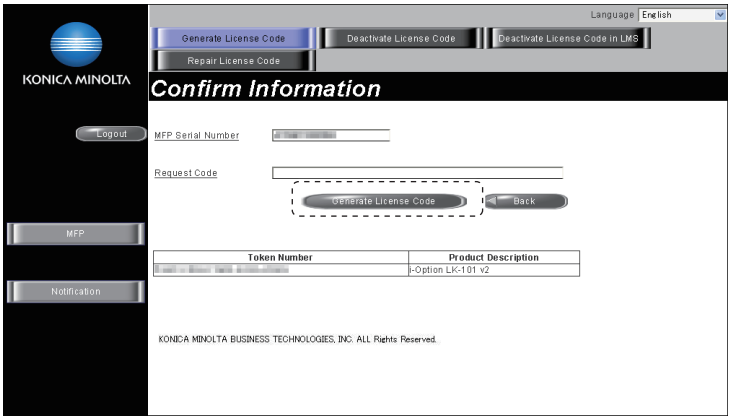
A0EDF3E566A

10. Confirm the registered items, and click [Next].



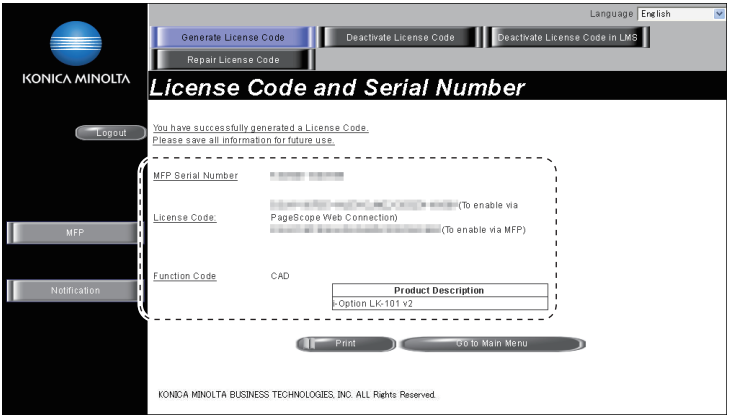
A0EDF3E567DA

11. Click [Generate license Code].



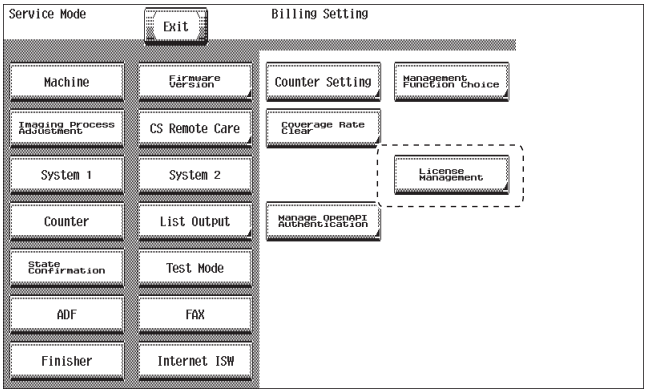
A0EDF3E568DA

12. LMS issues license code and function code.
13. Write down the serial number, license code and function code.



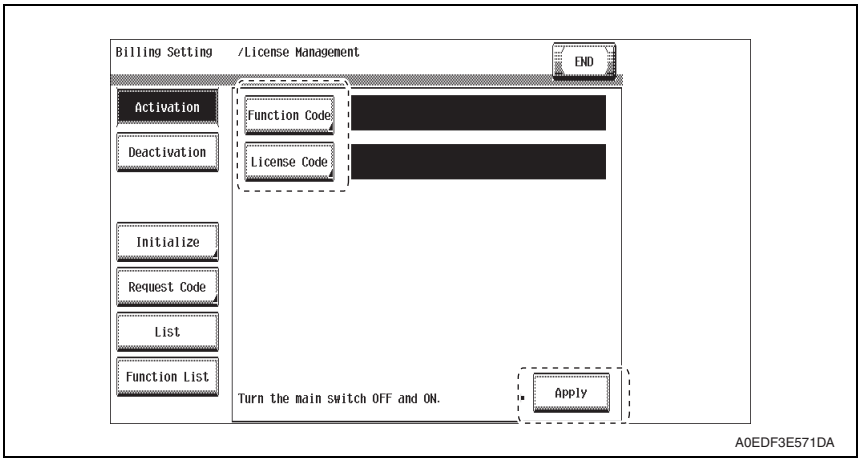
A0EDF3E569DA

14. Select [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [License Management].



A0EDF3E570DA

15. Select [Activation] → [Function Code] or [License Code], and enter the function code and the license code confirmed at Step13.
16. Touch [Apply].

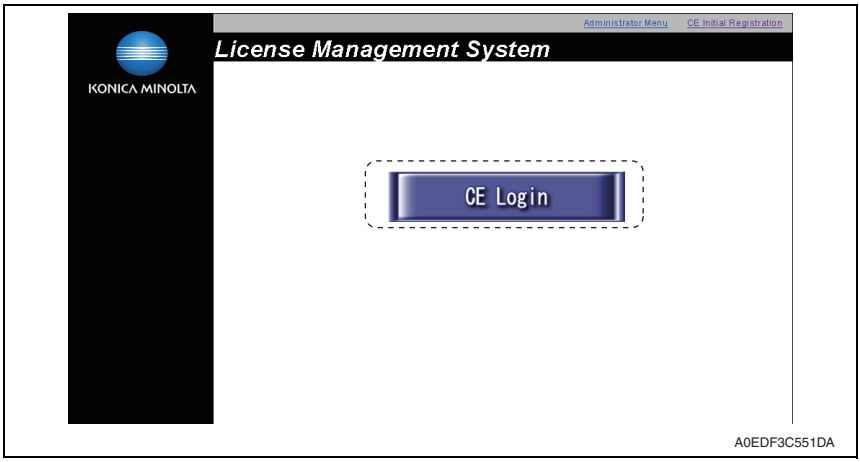


A0EDF3E571DA

17. Follow the massage appearing on the screen and turn OFF and ON the main power switch and the sub power switch.
18. Select [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [License Management] → [Function List], and confirm that the activated function is displayed at the list.

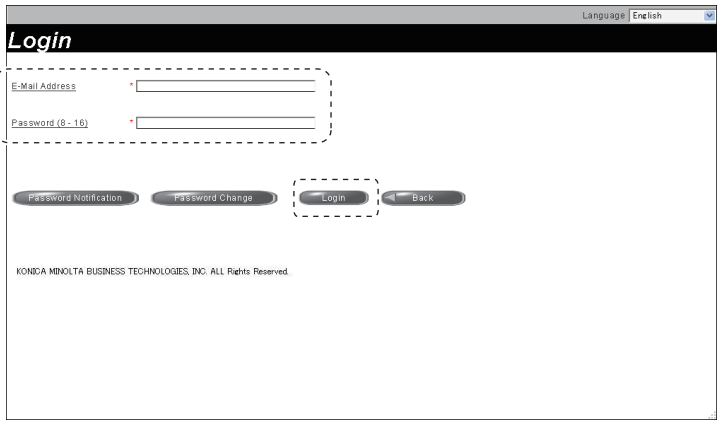
3.4.2 Deactivation

1. Check the serial number of the target MFP.
2. Access the following URL using the PC connected to the Internet.
   https://lms.konicaminolta.com/license/KM/support.aspx
3. Click [CE Login].



A0EDF3C551DA

4. Enter [E-Mail Address] and [Password], and click [Login].



A0EDF3E562DA

5. Click [Deactivate License Code].

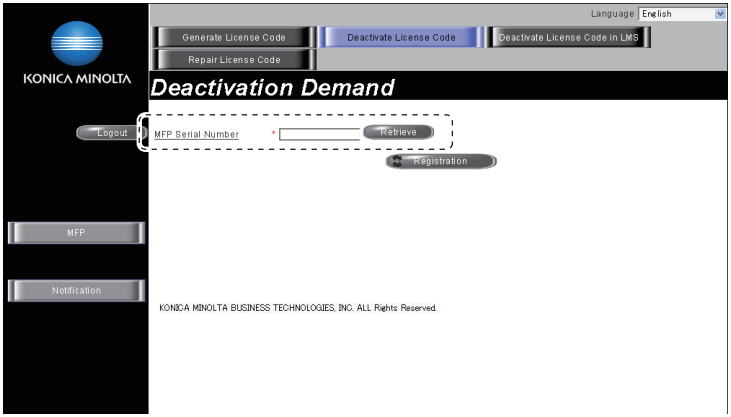


A0EDF3E580DA

6. Enter the serial number of the target MFP, and click [Retrieve].

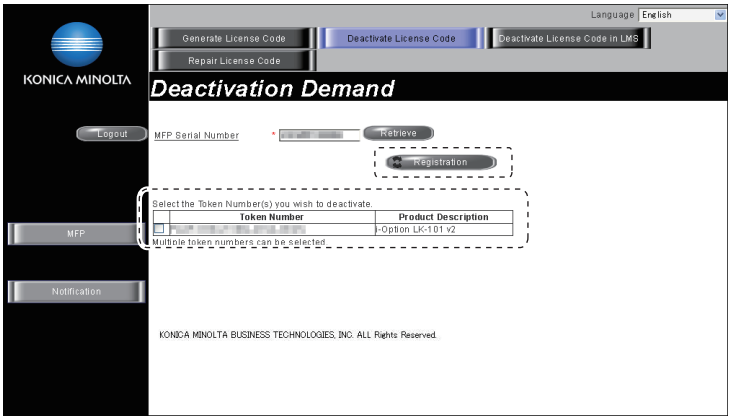
NOTE

- **Make sure to enter alphabet letters of the serial number in all capital letters.**



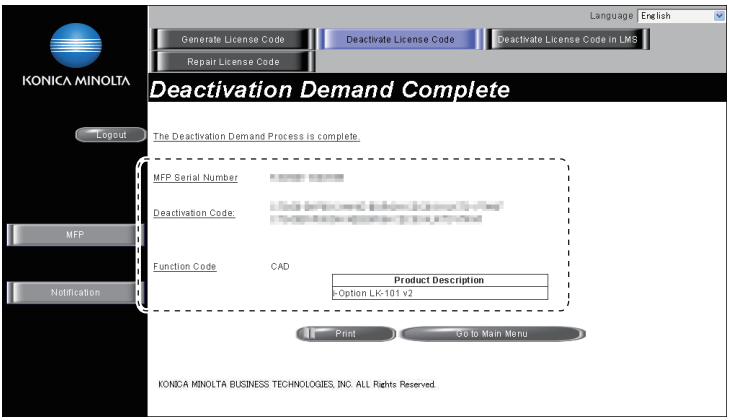
A0EDF3E581DA

7. Select the token to be deactivated, and click [Registration].



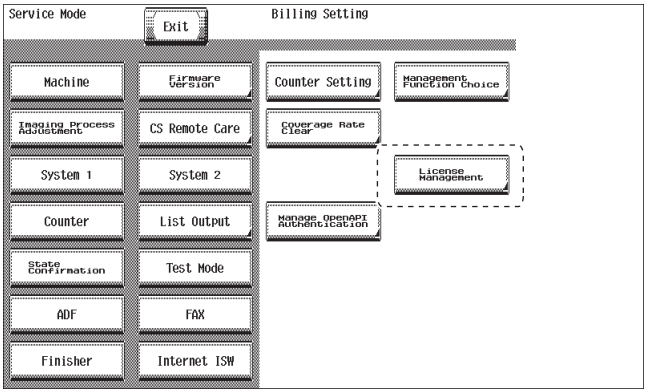
A0EDF3E582DA

8. LMS issues deactivation code and function code.
9. Write down the serial number, deactivation code and function code.



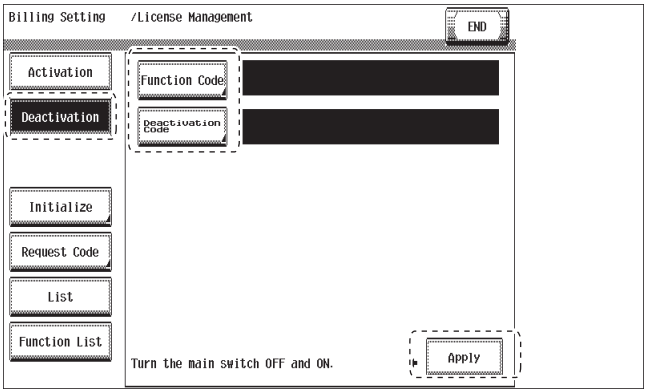
A0EDF3E583DA

10. Select [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [License Management].



A0EDF3E570DA

11. Select [Deactivation] → [Function Code] or [Deactivation Code], and enter the function code and the deactivation code confirmed at Step9.
12. Touch [Apply].

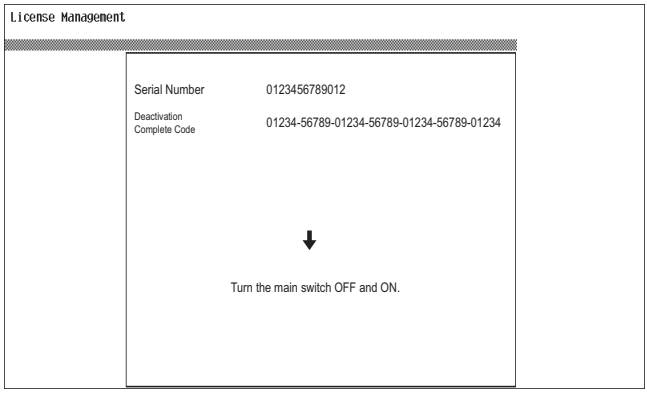


A0EDF3E584DA

13. Write down or print out the serial number and deactivation complete code.

NOTE

- **When A4S or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11S is set to the paper feed tray, the above-mentioned serial number and deactivation complete code can be printed out by pressing the start key.**
- **Serial number and deactivation complete code can be confirmed in [List] available from [License Management].**

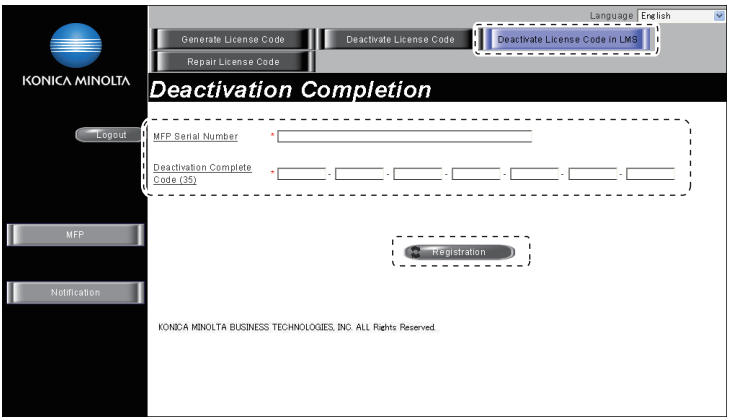


A0EDF3E585DA

14. Follow the message appearing on the screen and turn OFF and ON the main power switch and the sub power switch.
15. Access to the LMS and login again.
For detail of the login method, refer to step 2 to step4.
16. Click [Deactivate License Code in LMS].
17. Enter the serial number and the deactivation complete code confirmed at step13.

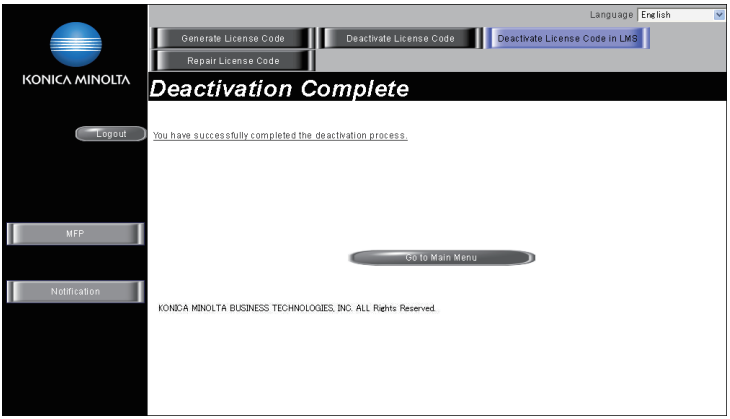
NOTE

- **Make sure to enter alphabet letters of the serial number in all capital letters.**



A0EDF3E586DA

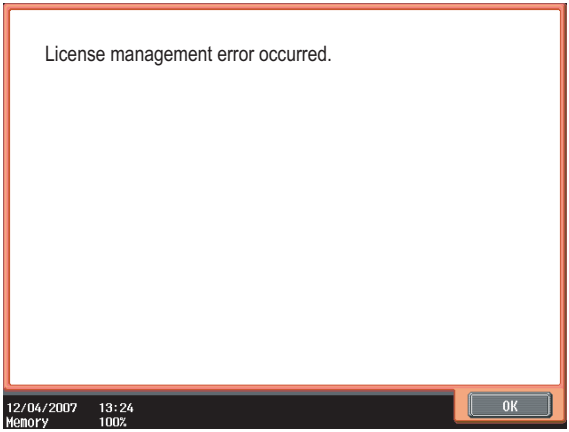
18. "Deactivation Complete" message will be displayed.
The license become invalid at both MFP and LMS, and deactivated token number can be used for another MFP.



A0EDF3E587DA

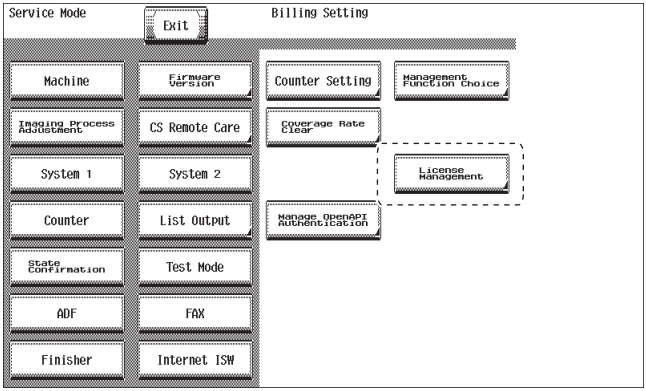
3.4.3 Repair

- When the message “License management error occurred.” is displayed, carry out the repair operation with the following steps.



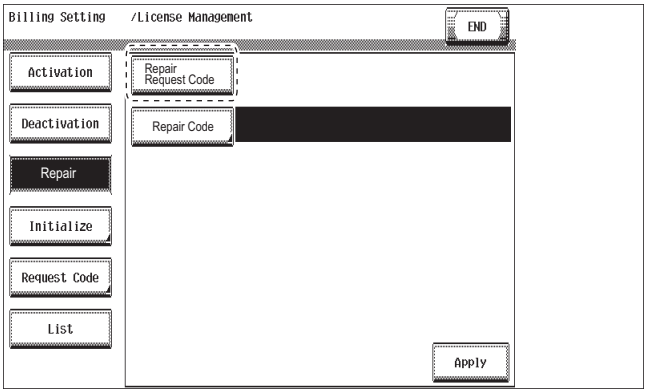
A0PDF4E502DA

1. Select [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [License Management].



A0EDF3E570DA

2. Select [Repair] → [Repair Request Code].

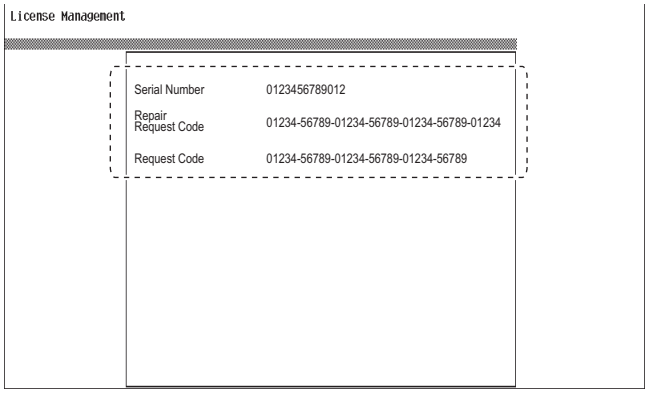


A0EDF3E599DA

3. Write down or print out the serial number, repair request code and request code.

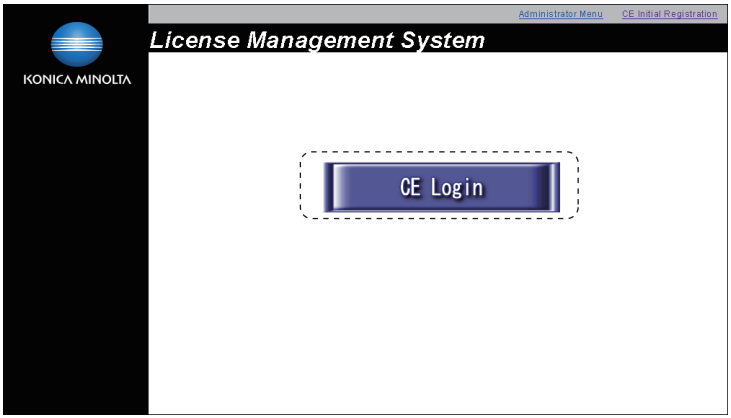
NOTE

- **When A4S or 8 $^{1}/_{2}$ x 11S is set to the paper feed tray, the above-mentioned serial number and repair request code can be printed out by pressing the start key.**



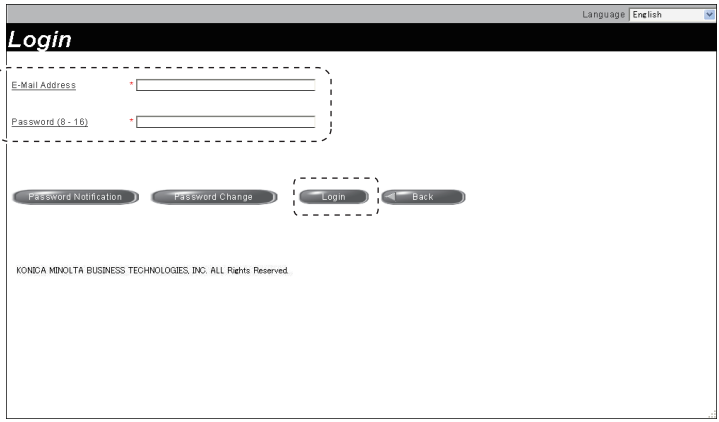
A0EDF3E600DA

4. Access the following URL using the PC connected to the Internet.
   https://lms.konicaminolta.com/license/KM/support.aspx
5. Click [CE Login].



A0EDF3C551DA

6. Enter [E-Mail Address] and [Password], and click [Login].

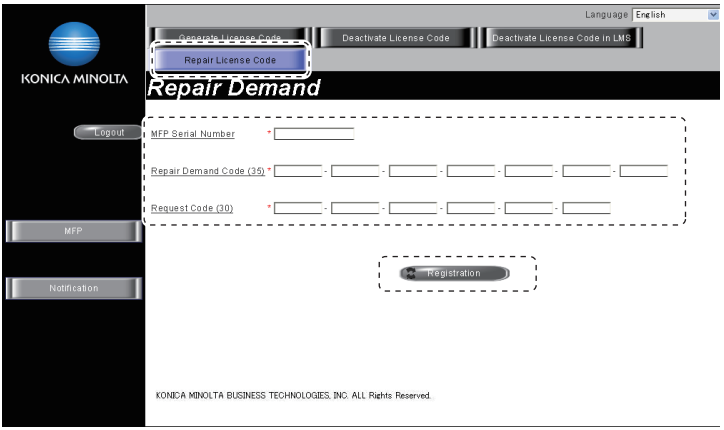


A0EDF3E562DA

7. Click [Repair License Code].
8. Enter the serial number, repair request code and request code confirmed at step3, and click [Registration].

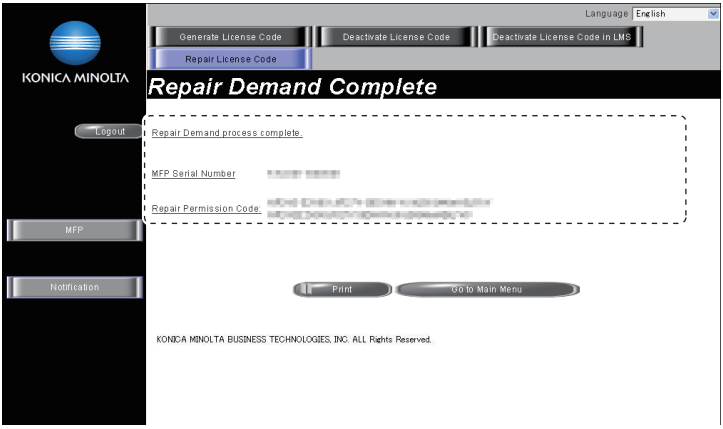
NOTE

- **Make sure to enter alphabet letters of the serial number in all capital letters.**



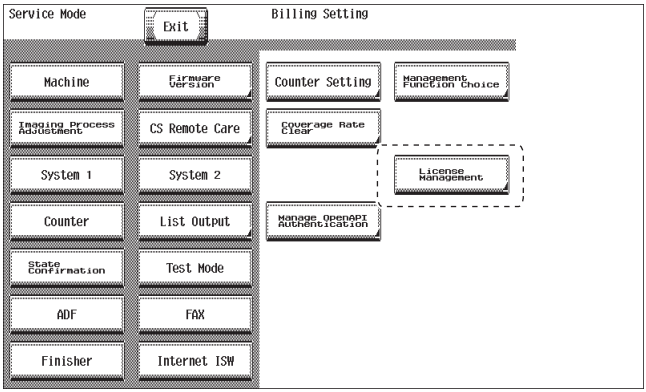
A0EDF3E601DA

9. LMS issues repair permission code.
10. Write down the serial number and repair permission code.



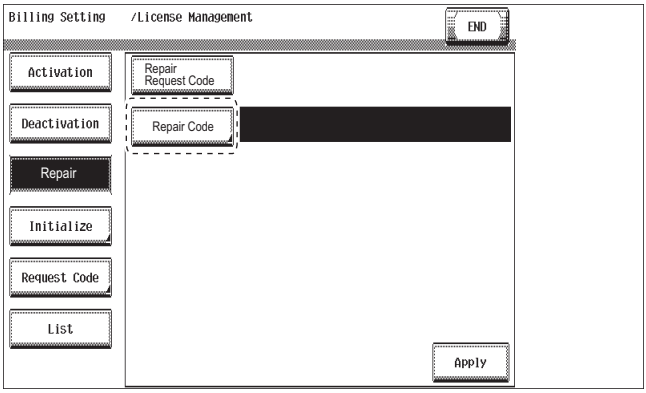
A0EDF3E602DA

11. Select [Service Mode] → [Billing Setting] → [License Management].



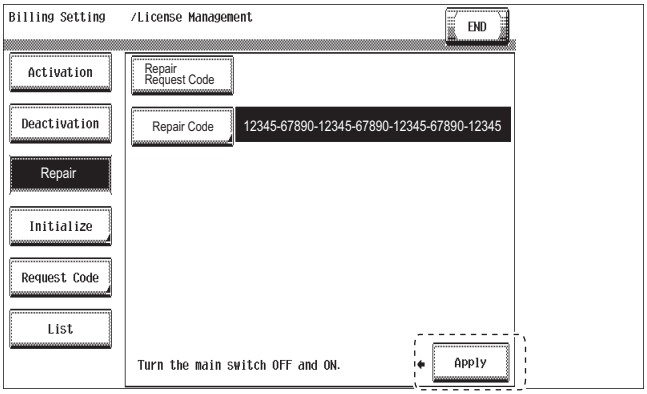
A0EDF3E570DA

12. Select [Repair] → [Repair Code], and enter the repair code confirmed at step10.



A0EDF3E603DA

13. Touch [Apply].



A0EDF3E604DA

14. Follow the massage appearing on the screen and turn OFF and ON the main power switch and the sub power switch.

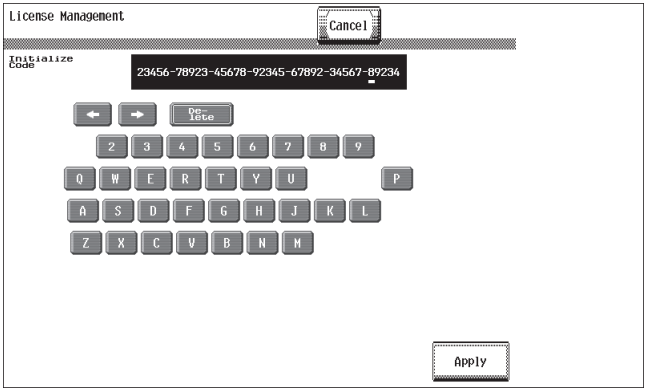
NOTE

- **When carrying out the repair operation after NVRAM board replacement, it is necessary to reactivate the i-Option license.**
  See P.8

3.4.4 Initialize

- When license management information cannot be repaired, initialize the information with the following procedure.

1. Contact the license management section of sales company to report the information necessary to issue the initialize code.
2. The license management section of sales company supplies the initialize code.
3. Call the Billing Setting to the screen.
See P.4
4. Touch [License Management] → [Initialize].
5. Enter the initialize code issued by call center using the keyboard on the screen, and touch [Apply].



A0PDF3E541DA

6. After completing the initialization, follow the message appearing on the screen and turn OFF and ON the main power switch.

Blank Page

KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

DF-617/SP-501

2009.07
KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.
Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised,  is shown at the left margin of the revised section.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

- To indicate clearly a page that contains the revision, is shown near the page number of the corresponding page.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2009/07	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

DF-617/SP-501

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS 1

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE 5
2.1 Take-up section 5
2.1.1 Cleaning of the pick-up roller/feed roller 5
2.1.2 Cleaning of the separation roller 5
2.1.3 Replacing the pick-up roller / feed roller 6
2.1.4 Replacing the separation roller 7
2.2 Transport section 9
2.2.1 Cleaning of the miscellaneous rolls 9
2.2.2 Cleaning of the miscellaneous rollers 10
2.3 Scanning section 12
2.3.1 Cleaning of the scanning guide 12
2.3.2 Cleaning of the reflective sensor section 12
3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM 14
3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted 14
3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list 15
3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure 15
3.3.1 Feed cover 15
3.3.2 Front cover 17
3.3.3 Rear cover 17
3.3.4 Document feed tray front cover 18
3.3.5 Reverse automatic document feeder 19
3.3.6 Glass cleaning roller unit 20
3.3.7 DF control board (DFCB) 22
3.3.8 Restriction plate positional volume (VR1) 23
3.3.9 Switch back solenoid (SD1) 25
3.3.10 Exit switch back solenoid (SD2) 26
3.3.11 Reading motor (M1) 27
3.3.12 Registration motor (M2) 28
3.3.13 Exit motor (M3) 29
3.3.14 Reading roller pressure/retraction motor (M4) 30

3.3.15 Take-up motor (M8) 31
3.3.16 Glass cleaning motor (M9) 32
3.3.17 Cooling fan (FM1) 33
3.3.18 Replacing the stamp unit 33
3.3.19 Spare TX Marker Stamp 2 35
4. SERVICE TOOL 35
4.1 CE tool list 35

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

5. HOW TO USE THE ADJUSTMENT SECTION 37
6. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT 38
6.1 Mechanical adjustment of the original document feed section 38
6.1.1 Adjusting the height 38
6.1.2 Adjusting skew feed 39

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Name	Reverse automatic document feeder	
Type	Paper feed section	Paper feed from top of stack
	Image reading section	Sheet-through system
	Turnover section	Switchback system
	Exit section	Straight exit system
Installation	Screw cramp to the main body	
Document alignment	Center	
Document loading	Face up	

B. Functions

Modes	Standard mode / Mixed original detection mode / FAX mode

C. Paper type

Type of document	Standard mode	1-sided mode 35 to 210 g/m² (9.25 to 55.75 lb)
		2-sided mode 50 to 128 g/m² (13.25 to 34 lb)
	Mixed original detection mode	1-sided / 2-sided mode 50 to 128 g/m² (13.25 to 34 lb)
	FAX mode	1-sided mode 35 to 210 g/m² (9.25 to 55.75 lb)
		2-Sided Mode 50 to 128 g/m² (13.25 to 34 lb)
Detectable document size*1	Standard mode/FAX mode	Metric area: B6S to A3 Inch area: 5 $^1/_2$ x 8 $^1/_2$ to 11 x 17
Capacity	100 sheets (80 g/m²) or stack of 14 mm and below	

*1: For the combined original detection mode, refer to the mixed original feed chart.

D. Paper feed prohibited originals

- If fed, trouble occurrence will be highly possible.

Type of original	Possible trouble
Sheets stapled or clipped together	Paper feed failure, damaged sheet, defective drive mechanism due to jammed staples or clips
Sheets glued together	Paper feed failure, damaged sheet
Book original	Paper feed failure, damaged sheet
Original weighting less than 35 g/m^2 (9.25 lb) or 210 g/m^2 (55.75 lb) or more	Paper feed failure, transport failure
Sheets folded, torn or wrinkled	Paper feed failure, damaged sheet, transport failure
Sheets severely curled	Sheets misfed due to being dog-eared or fed in askew
OHP film (Transparency film)	Paper feed failure, transport failure
Label paper	Paper feed failure, transport failure
Offset master paper	Paper feed failure, transport failure
Glossy photographic paper or glossy enamel paper	Transport failure, damaged sheet
Sheets clipped or notched	Damaged sheet, transport failure
Sheets patched	Patched part folded or torn sheet

E. Paper feed not guaranteed originals

- If fed, paper feed will be possible to some extent but trouble occurrence will be possible.

Type of Original	Possible Trouble
Sheets lightly curled (Curled amount: 10 to 15 mm)	Dog-eared, exit failure, transport failure
Heat sensitive paper	Edge folded, exit failure, transport failure
Ink jet paper	Paper feed failure, transport failure
Sheets with smooth surface (Coated paper)	Paper feed failure, transport failure
Intermediate paper	Paper feed failure, transport failure
Paper immediately after paper exit from the main unit	Paper feed failure, transport failure
Paper with many punched holes (e.g., loose leaf) limited to vertical feeding	Multi-page feed due to flashes from holes
Sheets with 2 to 4 holes	Transport failure
Sheets two-folded or Z-folded	Transport failure, image deformation
Sheets with rough surface (e.g., letterhead)	Paper feed failure

F. Mixed original feed chart

For metric

	Max. original size	297 mm		257 mm		210 mm		182 mm	148 mm	128 mm
Mixed original size		A3	A4	B4	B5	A4S	A5	B5S	A5S	B6S
297 mm	A3	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A4	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
257 mm	B4	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-
	B5	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-
210 mm	A4S	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-
	A5	NG	NG	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-
182 mm	B5S	NG	NG	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-
148 mm	A5S	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG	OK	OK	-
128 mm	B6S	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG	OK	OK

For inch

	Max. original size	11		8 1/2			5 1/2
Mixed original size		11 x 17	8 1/2 x 11	8 1/2 x 14	8 1/2 x 11S	5 1/2 x 8 1/2	5 1/2 x 8 1/2S
11	11 x 17	OK	OK	-	-	-	-
	8 1/2 x 11	OK	OK	-	-	-	-
8 1/2	8 1/2 x 14	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	-
	8 1/2 x 11S	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	-
	5 1/2 x 8 1/2	NG	NG	OK	OK	OK	-
5 1/2	5 1/2 x 8 1/2S	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG	OK

OK	Mixed original feed available (Tilted with in 1.5% or less)
NG	No. mixed original feed
-	Can not set original

G. Machine specifications

Power requirements	DC 24 V (supplied from the main body)
	DC 5 V
Max. power consumption	60 W or less
Dimensions	600 mm (W) x 575 mm (D) x 130 mm (H) 23.62 inch (W) x 22.64 inch (D) x 5.12 inch (H)
Weight	16.7 kg (36.81 lb)

H. Operating environment

Conforms to the operating environment of the main body.

NOTE

- **These specifications are subject to change without notice.**

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE

NOTE

- **The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure of maintenance represents the isopropyl alcohol.**

2.1 Take-up section

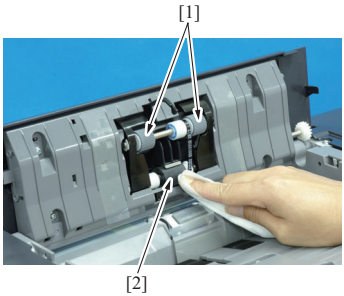
2.1.1 Cleaning of the pick-up roller/feed roller

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Pick-up roller: Every 50,000 counts
- Feed roller: Every 50,000 counts

B. Procedure

1. Open the feed cover.
See P.15



2. Using a cleaning pad with alcohol, wipe the pick-up roller [1] / feed roller [2] clean of dirt.

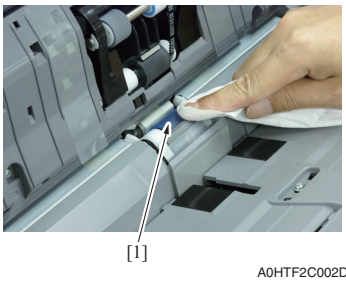
2.1.2 Cleaning of the separation roller

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Separation roller: Every 50,000 counts

B. Procedure

1. Open the feed cover.
See P.15



2. Using a cleaning pad with alcohol, wipe the separation roller [1] clean of dirt.

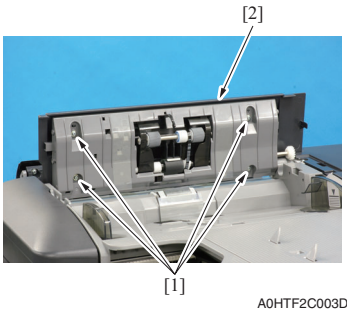
2.1.3 Replacing the pick-up roller / feed roller

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

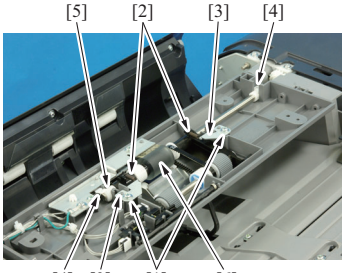
- Pick-up roller: Every 200,000 counts
- Feed roller: Every 200,000 counts

B. Procedure

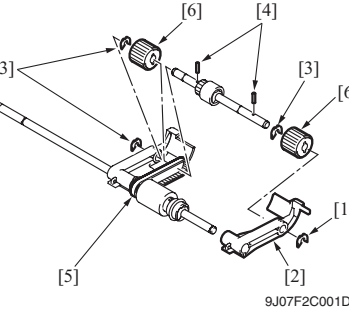
1. Open the feed cover.
See P.15



2. Remove four screws [1] and remove the cover [2].



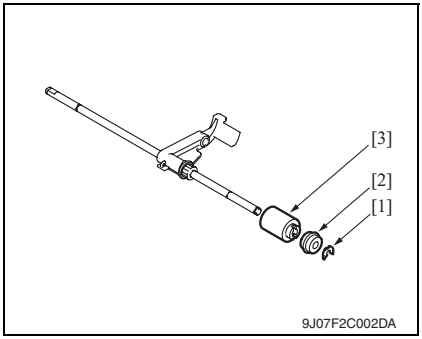
3. Remove two screws [1], two springs [2], and two pieces of fixation metals [3].
Remove two C-clips [4], the bushing [5], and the pick-up/feed roller assy [6].



4. Remove the C-ring [1] and the lever [2].
5. Remove three C-rings [3].
6. Remove two pins [4].
7. Remove the belt [5].
8. Remove two pick-up rollers [6].

NOTE

- **Be careful not to lose the pin.**



9. Remove the C-ring [1] and the bushing [2].
10. Remove the feed roller [3].

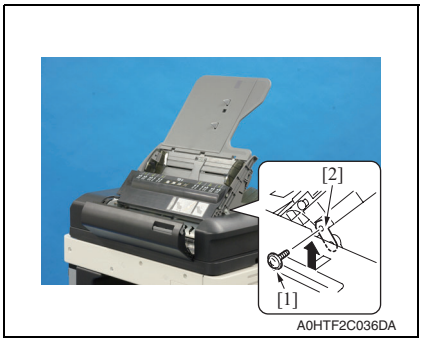
2.1.4 Replacing the separation roller

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Separation roller: Every 200,000 counts

B. Procedure

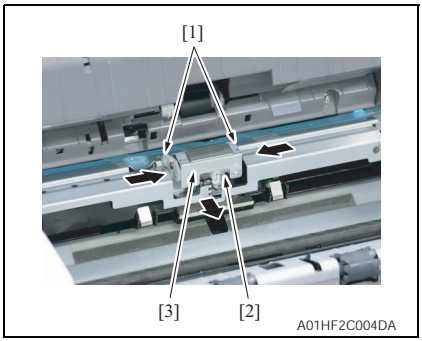
1. Open the left cover.
2. Lift up the document feed tray.



3. Remove the screw [1] and the mounting plate [2].

NOTE

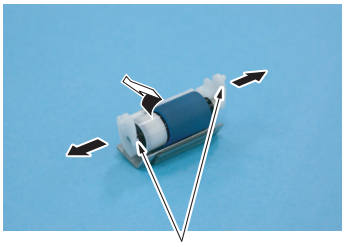
- **Be sure to hold the document feed tray to prevent the tray from falling down while removing the mounting plate.**



4. Hold the two sides [1] between your fingertips to unhook the spring [2] and remove the separation roller assy [3].

NOTE

- **When reinstalling the separation roller assy, be sure to hook the spring onto the assy.**

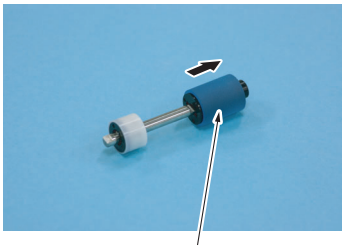


A01HF2C005DA

5. While opening up the holder [1], remove the shaft.

NOTE

- **Opening the holder too much can break the holder.**



A01HF2C006DA

6. Remove the separation roller [1] from the shaft.

NOTE

- **Be careful not to lose the pin.**

2.2 Transport section

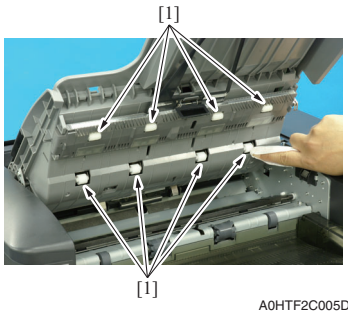
2.2.1 Cleaning of the miscellaneous rolls

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

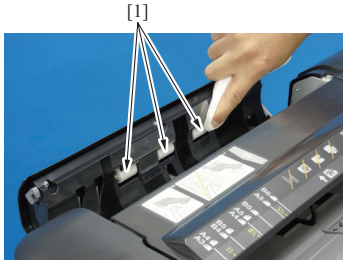
- Miscellaneous rolls: Every 50,000 counts

B. Procedure

1. Lift up the document feed tray.

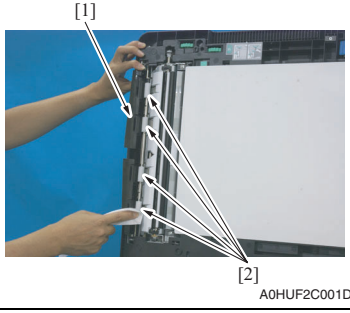


2. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the roll [1] clean of dirt.



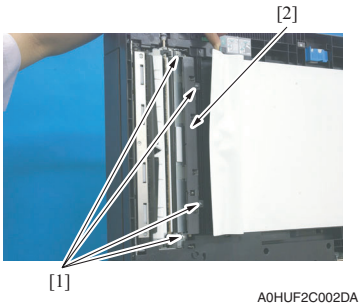
3. Open the left cover.

4. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the roll [1] clean of dirt.

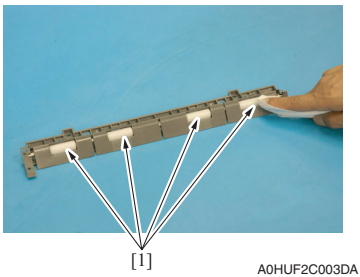


5. Open the reverse automatic document feeder.

6. While opening the before scanning film assy [1], wipe the roll [2] using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol.



7. While opening the processing guide, remove four screws [1] and remove the transport roll assy [2].



8. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the roll [1] clean of dirt.

2.2.2 Cleaning of the miscellaneous rollers

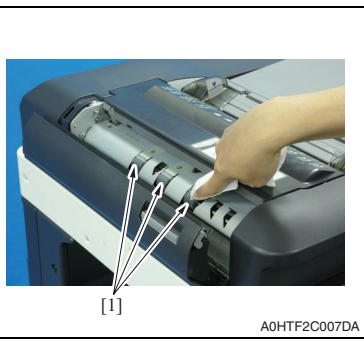
A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Miscellaneous rollers: Every 50,000 counts

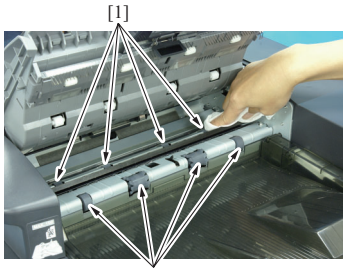
B. Procedure

1. Open the left cover.

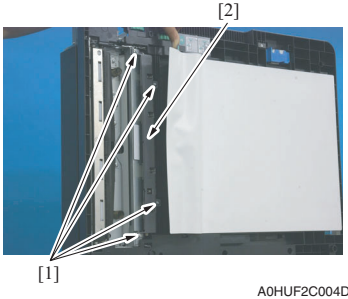
2. Remove the glass cleaning roller unit.
See P.20



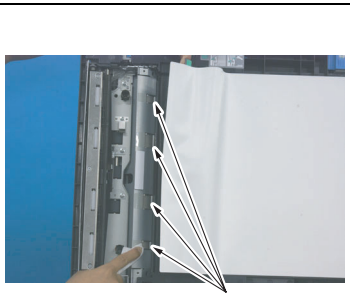
3. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller [1] clean of dirt.



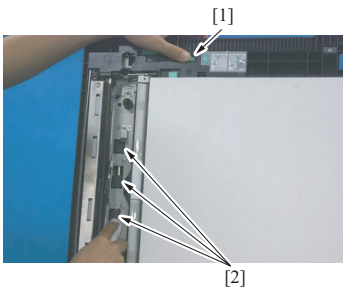
4. Lift up the document feed tray.
5. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller [1] clean of dirt.



6. While opening the processing guide, remove four screws [1] and remove the transport roll assy [2].



7. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller [1] clean of dirt.



8. While turning processing knob [1], wipe the roller [2] using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol.

2.3 Scanning section

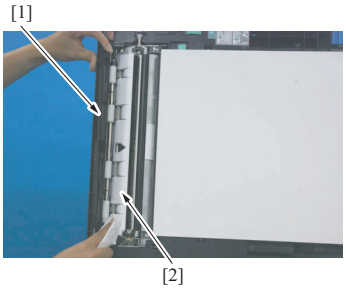
2.3.1 Cleaning of the scanning guide

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Scanning guide: Every 50,000 counts

B. Procedure

1. Open the reverse automatic document feeder.



2. Open the before scanning film assy [1].
3. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the scanning guide [2] clean of dirt.

NOTE

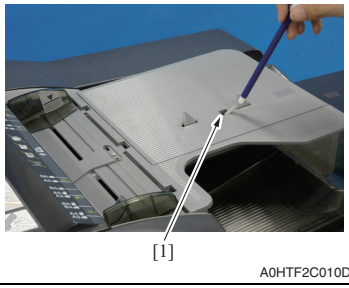
- **Be careful not to damage the film.**

2.3.2 Cleaning of the reflective sensor section

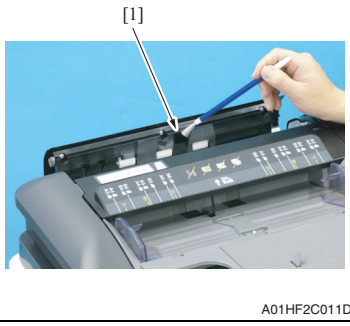
A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Reflective sensor section: Every 50,000 counts

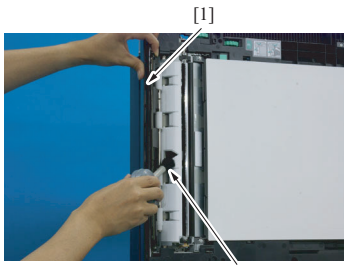
B. Procedure



1. Clean the sensor [1] using a brush or other similar tools.



2. Open the left cover.
3. Clean the cloth [1] using a brush or other similar tools.



4. Open the reverse automatic document feeder.
5. While opening the before scanning film assy [1], clean the cloth [2] using a brush or other similar tools.

3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

A. Paint-locked screws

NOTE

- **To prevent loose screws, a screw lock in blue or green series color is applied to the screws.**
- **The screw lock is applied to the screws that may get loose due to the vibrations and loads created by the use of machine or due to the vibrations created during transportation.**
- **If the screw lock coated screws are loosened or removed, be sure to apply a screw lock after the screws are tightened.**

B. Red-painted screws

NOTE

- **The screws which are difficult to be adjusted in the field are painted in red in order to prevent them from being removed by mistake.**
- **Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.**

C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE

- **Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.**

D. Removal of PWBs

⚠ CAUTION

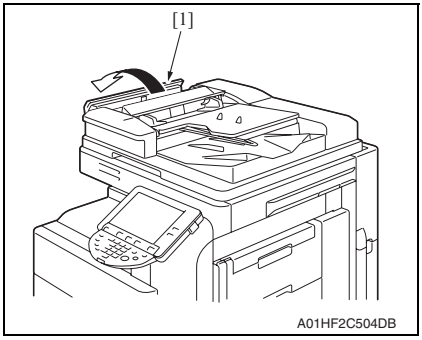
- **When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.**
- **The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.**
- **Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.**

3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list

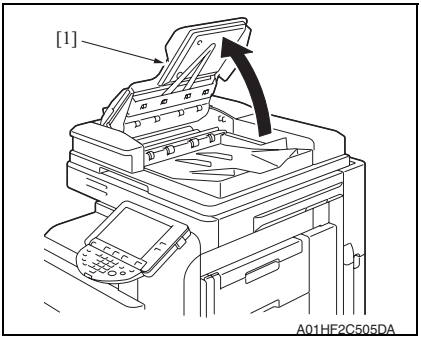
Section	Part name	Ref. page
Exterior parts	Feed cover	P.15
	Front cover	P.17
	Rear cover	P.17
	Document feed tray front cover	P.18
Units	Reverse automatic document feeder	P.19
	Glass cleaning roller unit	P.20
Board and etc.	DF control board (DFCB)	P.22
	Restriction plate positional volume (VR1)	P.23
Others	Switch back solenoid (SD1)	P.25
	Exit switch back solenoid (SD2)	P.26
	Reading motor (M1)	P.27
	Registration motor (M2)	P.28
	Exit motor (M3)	P.29
	Reading roller pressure/retraction motor (M4)	P.30
	Take-up motor (M8)	P.31
	Glass cleaning motor (M9)	P.32
	Cooling fan (FM1)	P.33
	Stamp unit	P.33
	Spare TX Marker Stamp 2	P.35

3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure

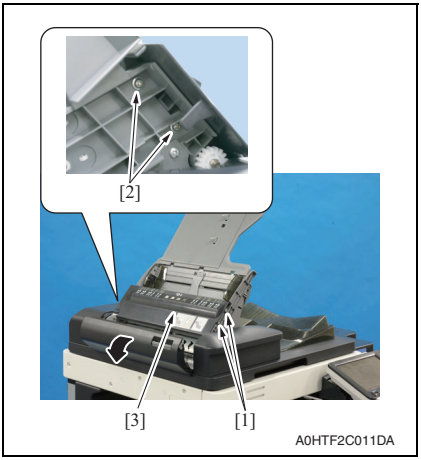
3.3.1 Feed cover



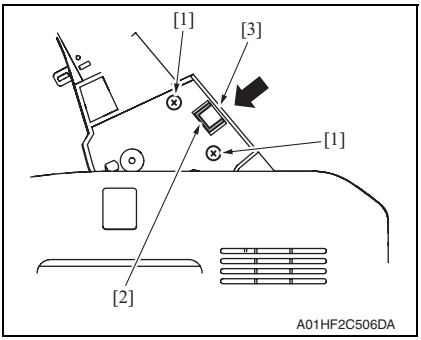
1. Open the left cover [1].



2. Lift up the document feed tray [1].



3. Remove two shoulder screws [1] and two screws [2].
4. Open the feed cover [3].

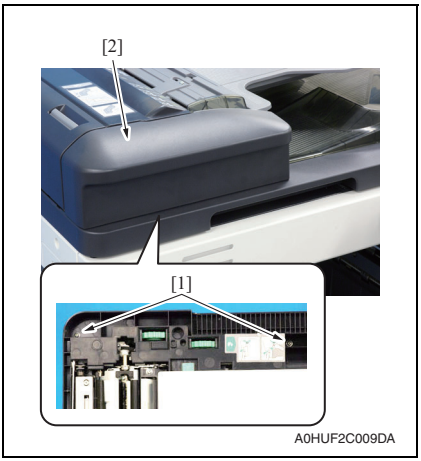


NOTE

- **In the reinstallation steps, when tightening two screws [1], press the feed cover [3] in the direction of the arrow so as not to leave a clearance between the top of the protrusion from the surface of the feed cover and the bottom of the indentation [2].**

5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.2 Front cover

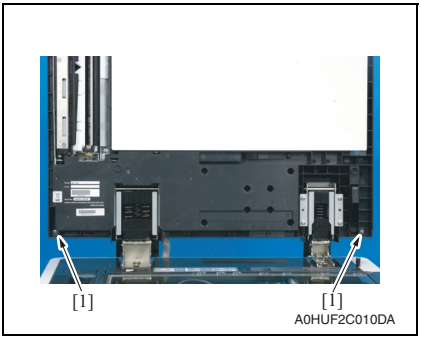


1. Open the reverse automatic document feeder.
2. Remove two screws [1] and remove the front cover [2].

3.3.3 Rear cover

A. Removal

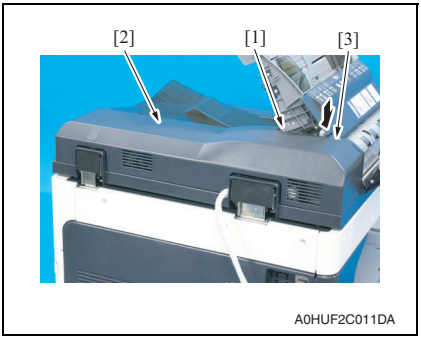
1. Open the reverse automatic document feeder.



NOTE

- **If the reverse automatic document feeder is set to be lifted up at angles up to 60 degrees due to the set position of the stopper for the hinge, change the set position to the lower side so that the reverse automatic document feeder can be opened completely.**

2. Remove two screws [1].

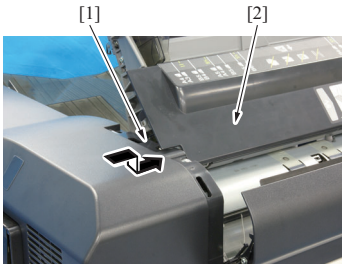


3. Open the left cover.
4. Lift up the document feed tray.
5. Remove the screw [1] and remove the rear cover [2].

NOTE

- **Be sure to press down part [3] in the picture to prevent any damage when removing the rear cover.**

B. Reinstallation procedure



A0HTF2C015DA

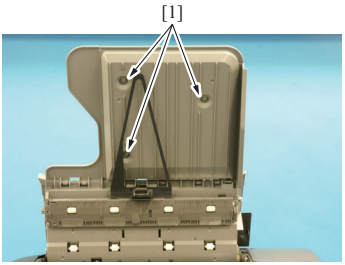
1. Open the left cover.
2. Lift up the document feed tray.
3. Press down part [1] in the picture until it slides under the feed cover [2].

NOTE

- **Be careful not to damage the rear cover.**

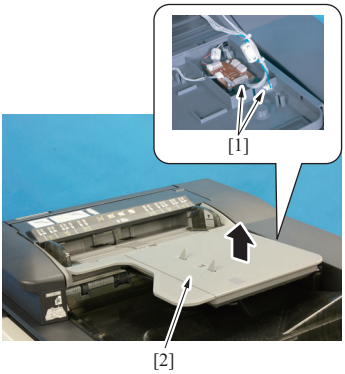
4. Install the rear cover tightening three screws.

3.3.4 Document feed tray front cover



A0HTF2C016DA

1. Lift up the document feed tray.
2. Remove three screws [1].

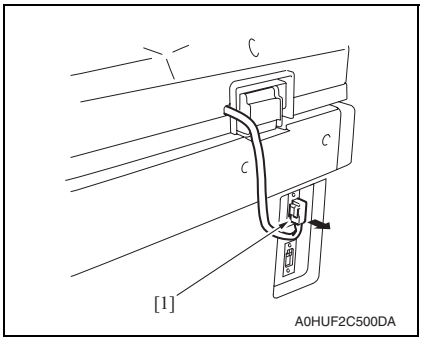


A0HTF2C017DA

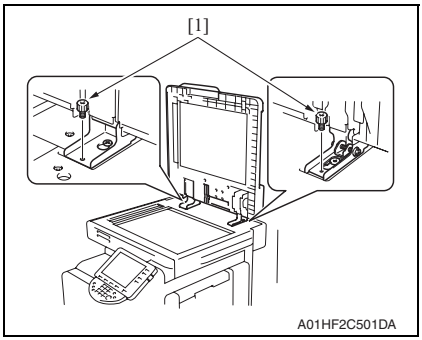
3. Disconnect two connectors [1] and remove the document feed tray front cover [2].

4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.5 Reverse automatic document feeder



1. Remove the relay connector [1].

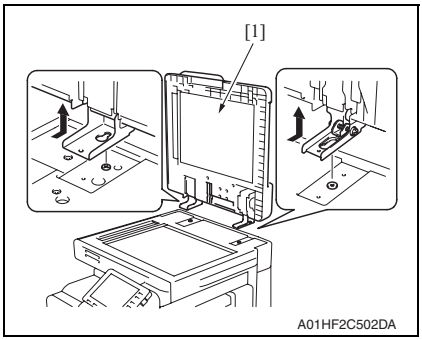


2. Open the reverse automatic document feeder.

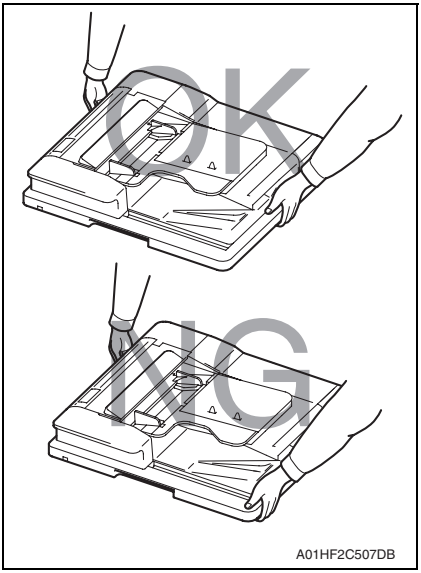
NOTE

- **If the reverse automatic document feeder is set to be lifted up at angles up to 60 degrees due to the set position of the stopper for the hinge, change the set position to the lower side so that the reverse automatic document feeder can be opened completely.**

3. Remove two screws [1].



4. Remove the reverse automatic document feeder [1].



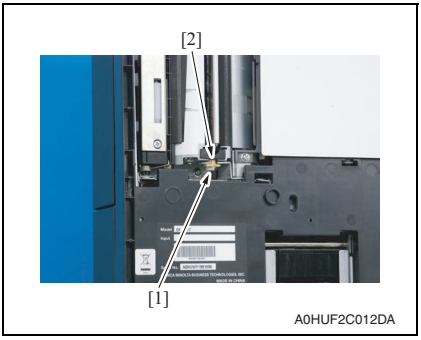
NOTE

- **When carrying the reverse automatic document feeder, be sure to hold onto the specified positions. The feeder main body can be distorted if held at inappropriate positions.**

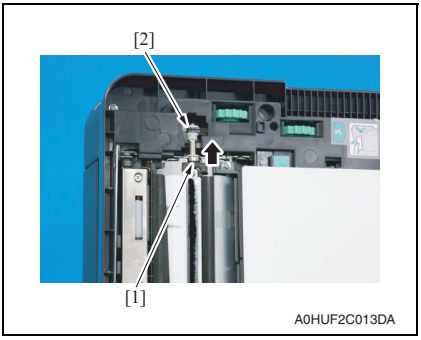
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.6 Glass cleaning roller unit

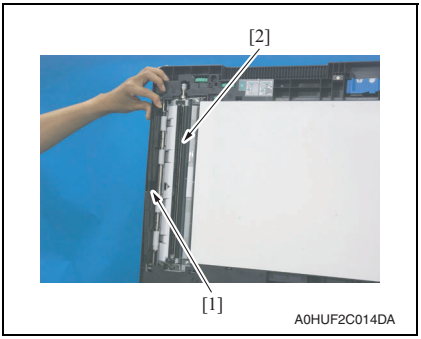
1. Open the reverse automatic document feeder.



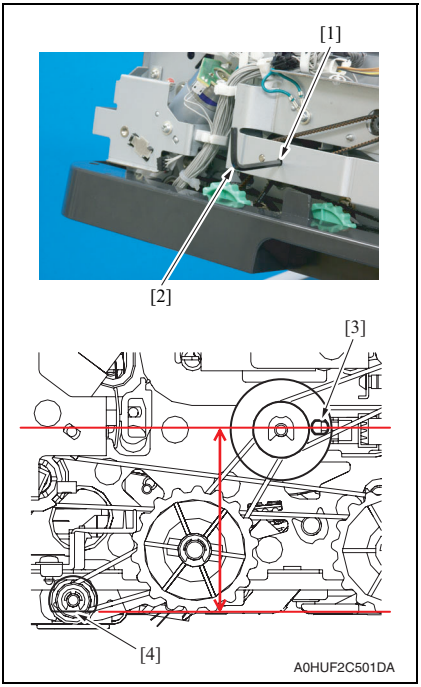
2. Remove the C-clip [1] and the bushing [2].



3. Shift the bushing [1] and remove the belt [2].



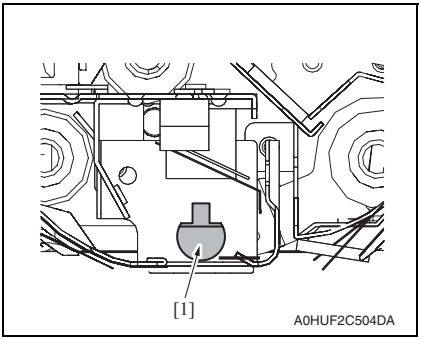
4. While opening the before read film assy [1], remove the glass cleaning roller unit [2].



NOTE

When installing the glass cleaning roller unit, the following adjustment is necessary.

5. Pass the wrench [2] through the hole [1] of the plate and align the wrench and the oval hole of the pulley. Position the cleaning roller so that the flat milled surface [4] of the cleaning roller faces directly downward, and then install the belt.

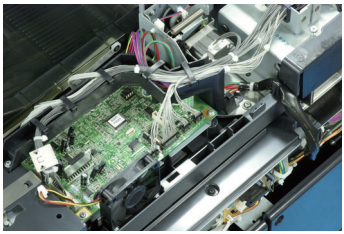


NOTE

- **After completing the above adjustment, when you turn ON the main power switch, make sure that the shaft [1] is at the correct position (home position).**

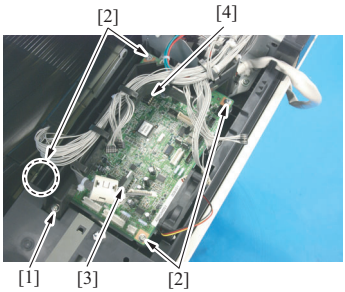
3.3.7 DF control board (DFCB)

1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.17



A0HTF2C020DA

2. Disconnect all the fifteen connectors from the DF control board.



A0HUF2C016DA

3. Remove the screw [1].
4. Remove four screws [2] and remove the DF control board [3].

NOTE

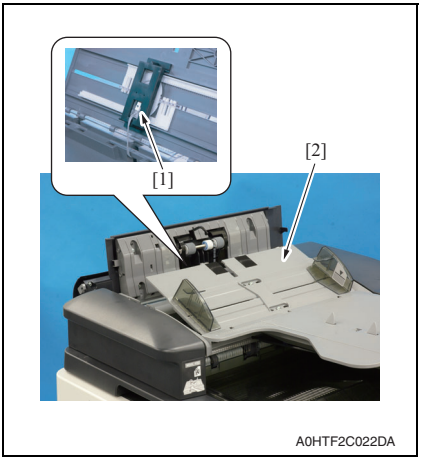
- **Be sure to perform the following operation when the DF control board is replaced.**

5. Replace the EEPROM [4].
6. Upgrade the firmware.
7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

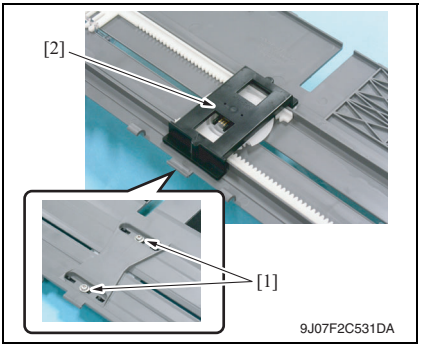
3.3.8 Restriction plate positional volume (VR1)

A. Remove procedure

1. Open the feed cover.
See P.15

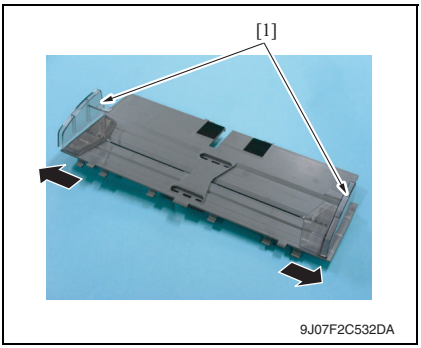


2. Disconnect the connector [1] and remove the restriction plate positional volume cover [2].

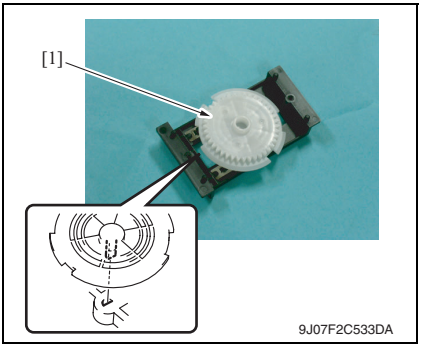


3. Remove two screws [1] and remove the restriction plate positional volume [2].

B. Reinstallation procedure



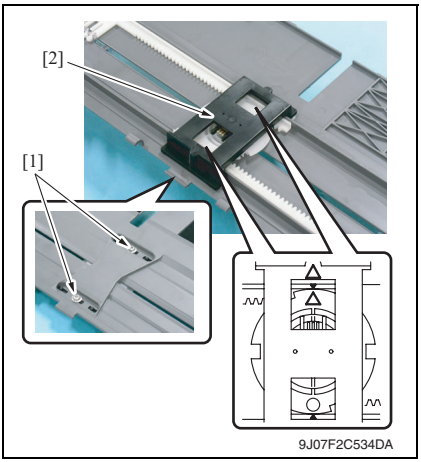
1. Open the side edge stop [1] of the original feed tray.



2. Reinstall the gear [1].

NOTE

- **Note the mounting position of the gear and the restriction plate positional volume.**



3. Use two screws [1] to install the restriction plate positional volume [2].

NOTE

- **Install the gear and rack gear by aligning the arrows.**

4. Connect the connector.

5. Install the restriction plate positional volume cover and turn on the main power switch.

NOTE

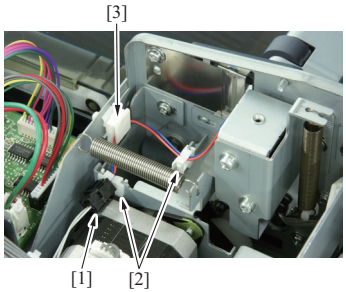
- **Be sure to perform the following operation when the restriction plate positional volume is replaced.**

6. Perform document width detection adjustment.

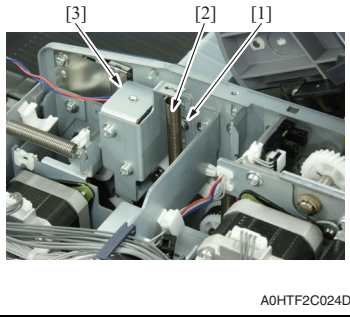
7. Turn OFF the main power switch and turn it ON again and check whether size detection operates normally.

3.3.9 Switch back solenoid (SD1)

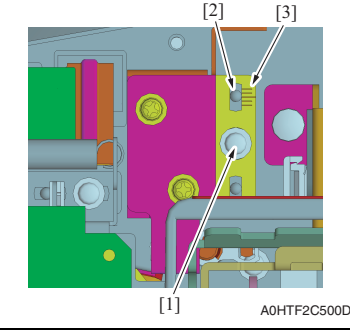
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.17



2. Disconnect the connector [1].
3. Remove the harness from two edge covers [2] and the wire saddle [3].



4. Remove the screw [1] and the spring [2], and remove the switch back solenoid [3].



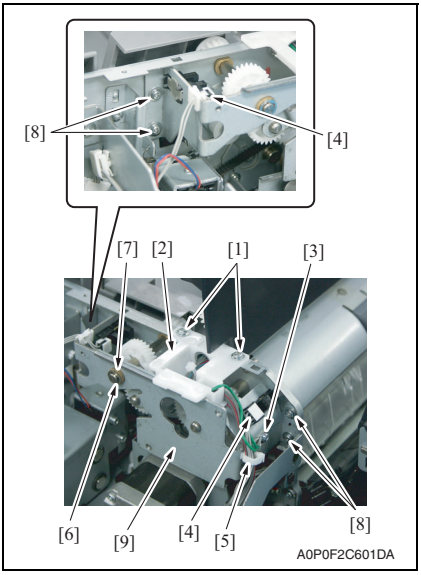
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

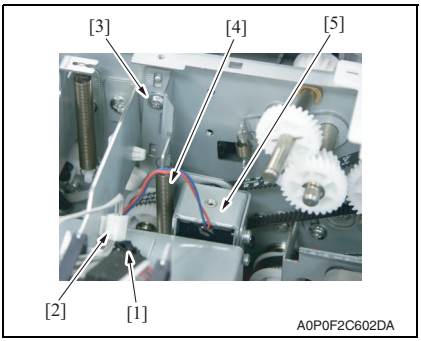
- **When installing the screw [1], align the dowel [2] with the scale [3] with which the dowel was aligned before the screw was removed and then tighten the screw.**

3.3.10 Exit switch back solenoid (SD2)

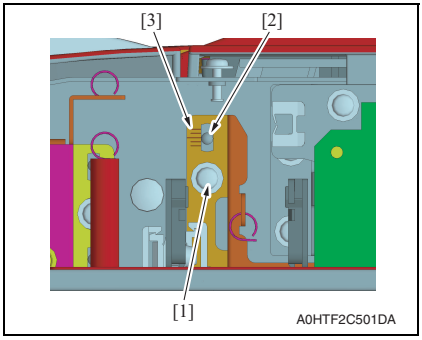
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.17
2. Remove the take-up motor.
See P.31
3. Remove the registration motor.
See P.28



4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the harness guide [2].
5. Remove the screw [3], and remove the ground terminal.
6. Disconnect two connectors [4] of the sensor.
7. Remove the harness from the wire saddles [5].
8. Remove the E-ring [6] and bushing [7].
9. Remove four screws [8], and remove the plate [9].



10. Disconnect the connector [1].
11. Remove the harness from the wire saddles [2].
12. Remove the screw [3] and spring [4], and remove the exit switch back solenoid [5].



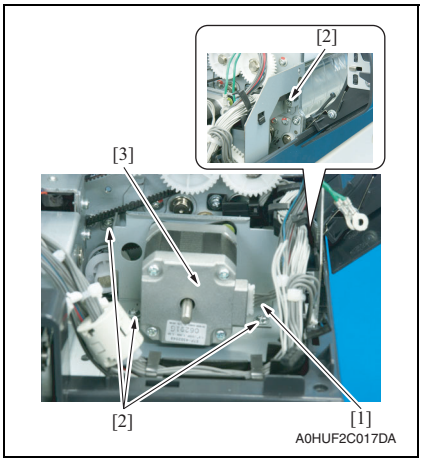
13. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

- **When installing the screw [1], align the dowel [2] with the scale [3] with which the dowel was aligned before the screw was removed and then tighten the screw.**

3.3.11 Reading motor (M1)

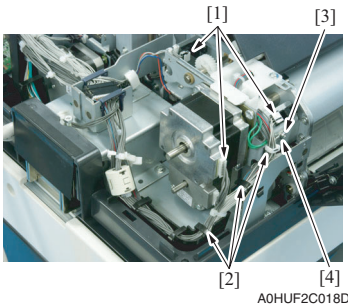
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.17
2. Remove the take-up motor.
See P.31
3. Remove the registration motor.
See P.28



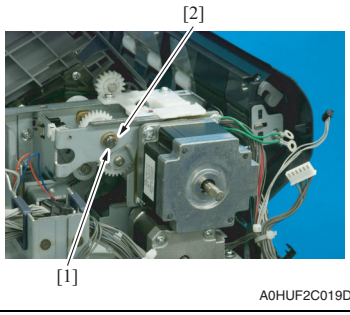
4. Disconnect the connector [1].
5. Remove four screws [2], and remove the reading motor assy [3].

3.3.12 Registration motor (M2)

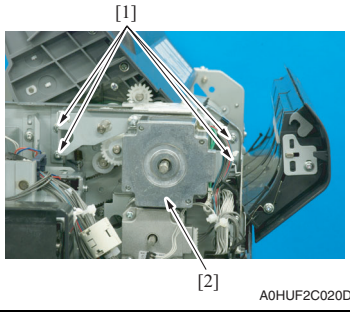
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.17
2. Remove the take-up motor.
See P.31



3. Disconnect three connectors [1].
4. Remove the harness from three wire saddles [2].
5. Remove the screw [3], remove the ground terminal [4].



6. Remove the E-ring [1] and the bushing [2].

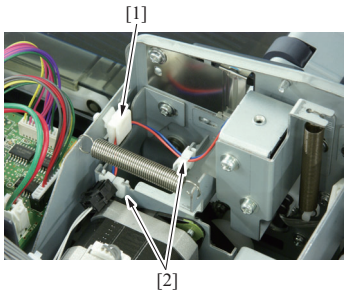


7. Remove four screws [1], and remove the registration motor assy [2].

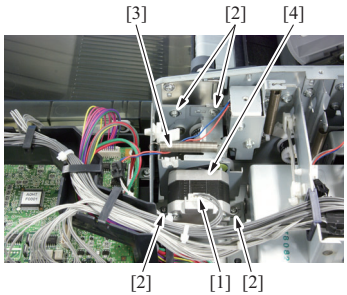
8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.13 Exit motor (M3)

1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.17



2. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [1] and two edge covers [2].
3. Disconnect the connector [1].

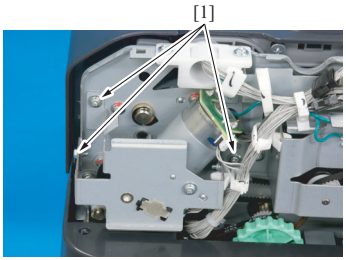


4. Disconnect the connector [1].
5. Remove four screws [2] and the spring [3], and remove the exit motor assy [4].

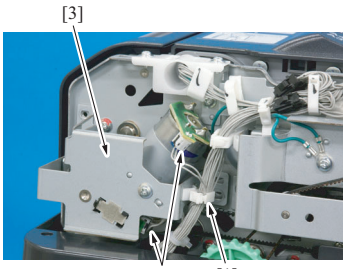
6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.14 Reading roller pressure/retraction motor (M4)

1. Remove the front cover.
See P.17



2. Remove three screws [1].

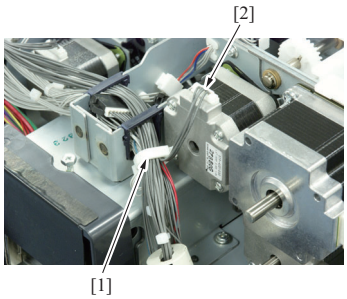


3. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [1].
4. Disconnect two connectors [2].
5. Remove the reading roller pressure/ retraction motor assy [3].

6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

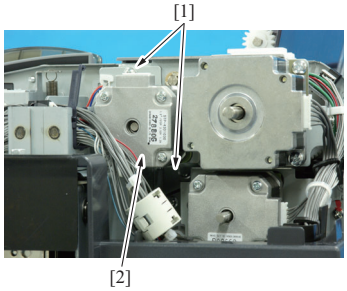
3.3.15 Take-up motor (M8)

1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.17



A0HTF2C025DA

2. Remove the harness from the edge cover [1].
3. Disconnect the connector [2].



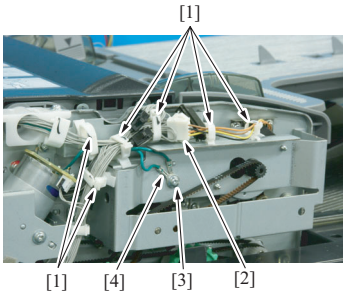
A0HTF2C026DA

4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the take-up motor assy [2].

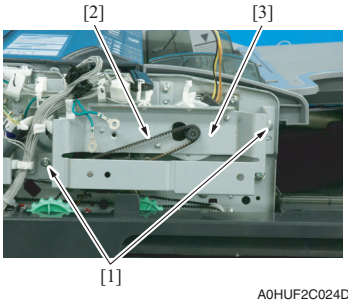
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.16 Glass cleaning motor (M9)

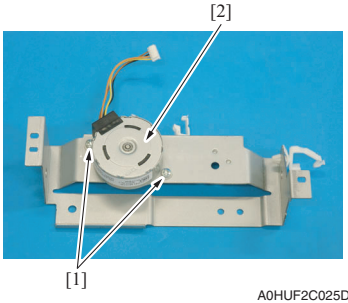
1. Remove the front cover.
See P.17



2. Remove the harness from six wire saddles [1].
3. Disconnect the connector [2].
4. Remove the screw [3], remove the ground terminal [4].



5. Remove two screws [1] and the belt [2], and remove the glass cleaning motor assy [3].

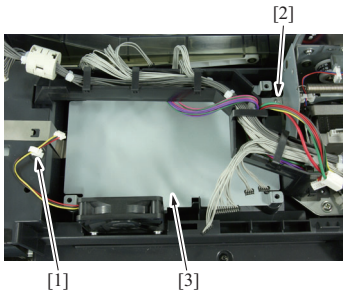


6. Remove two screws [1], and remove the glass cleaning motor [2].

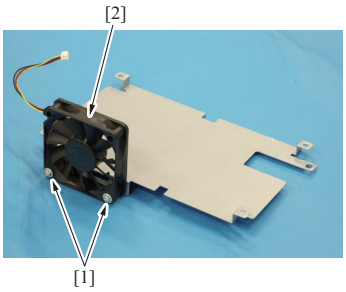
7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.17 Cooling fan (FM1)

1. Remove the DF control board.
See P.22



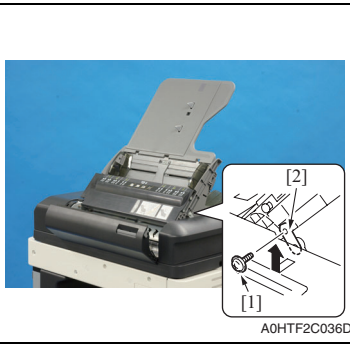
2. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [1].
3. Remove the screw [2], and remove the cooling fan mounting plate [3].



4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the cooling fan [2].

5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

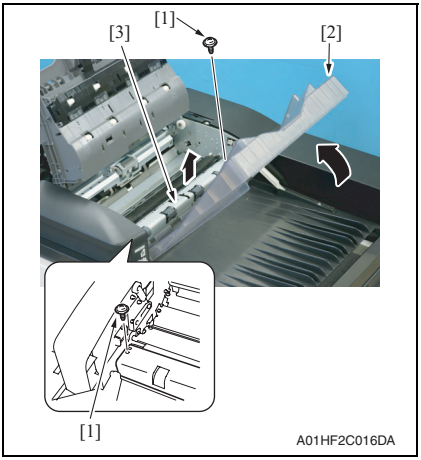
3.3.18 Replacing the stamp unit



1. Open the left cover.
2. Lift up the document feed tray.
3. Remove the screw [1] and the mounting plate [2].

NOTE

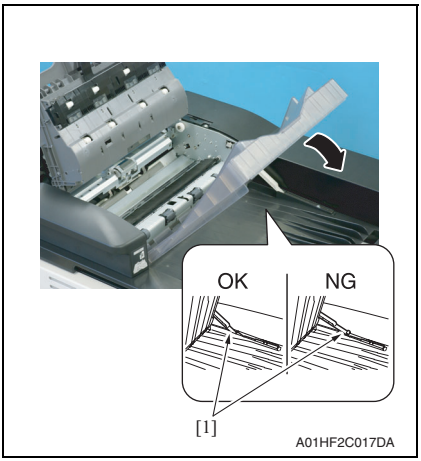
- **Be sure to hold the document feed tray to prevent the tray from falling down while removing the mounting plate.**



4. Remove two screws [1] and remove the plate cover [3] while holding up the exit tray [2].

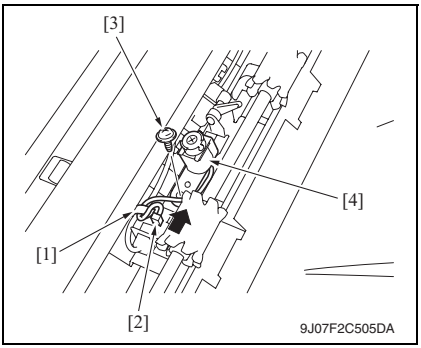
NOTE

- **Take care not to raise the exit tray too much. The stopper may come off.**



NOTE

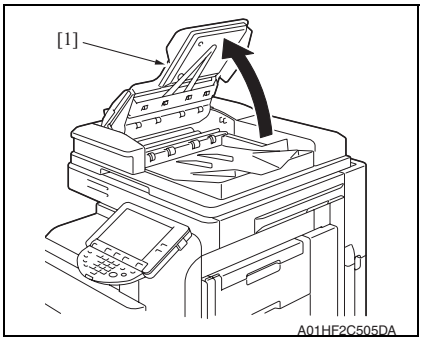
- **When lowering the exit tray, check that the stopper [1] fits under the plate spring.**



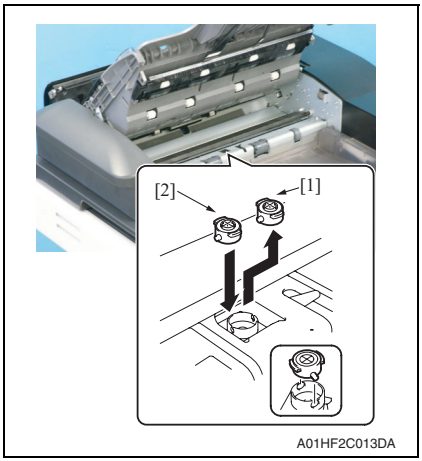
5. Remove the wire saddle [1] and disconnect the connector [2].

6. Remove the screw [3] and remove the stamp unit [4].

3.3.19 Spare TX Marker Stamp 2



1. Lift up the document feed tray [1].



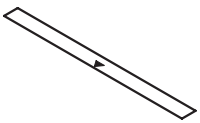
2. Remove the used stamp [1] and install the new stamp of replacement [2].

NOTE

- **Align the round pin of the stamp with the slit in the stamp unit side.**

4. SERVICE TOOL

4.1 CE tool list

Tool name	Shape	Personnel	Parts No.	Remarks
ADF reading chart	 9J07F2C003DA	1	9J06 PJG1 XX	

Blank Page

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

5. HOW TO USE THE ADJUSTMENT SECTION

- "Adjustment/Setting" contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this "Adjustment/Setting," the default settings are indicated by " ".

Advance checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The original glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

⚠ CAUTION

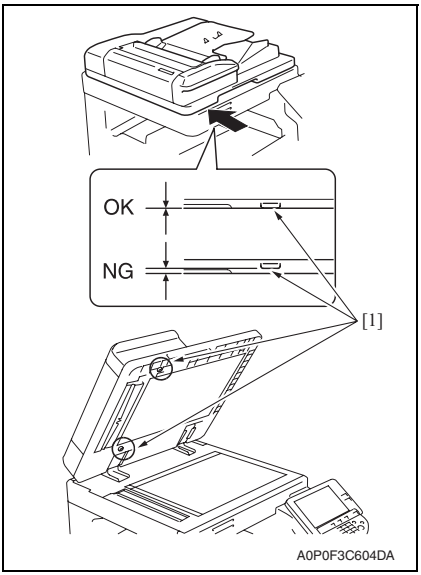
- **Be sure to unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the scanner cables or gears of the exposure unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the fusing unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The developing unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

6. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

6.1 Mechanical adjustment of the original document feed section

6.1.1 Adjusting the height

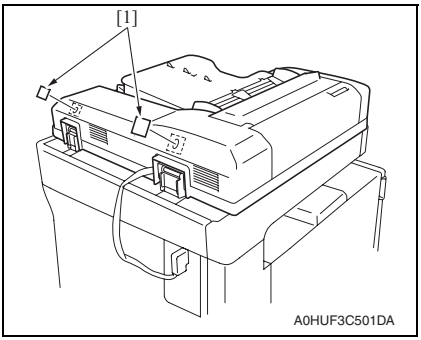
Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.
- **When the reverse automatic document feeder has been reinstalled.**



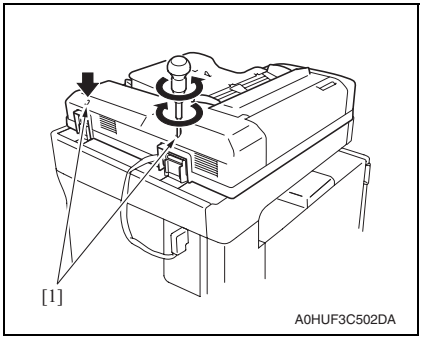
1. Check the clearance between the upper face of scanner and the protrusion [1] on the reverse automatic document feeder side (2 spots, front/back).

NOTE
- **There must be no clearance between the protrusion [1] on the reverse automatic document feeder and the upper face of scanner.**

2. If there is any clearance, the following adjustment is needed.

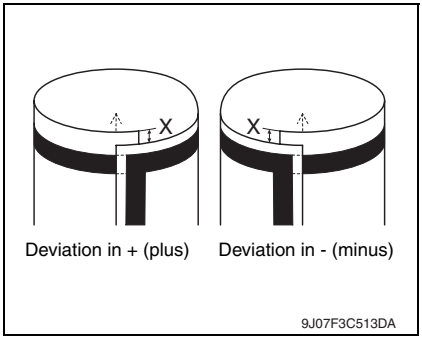


3. Remove the label [1].

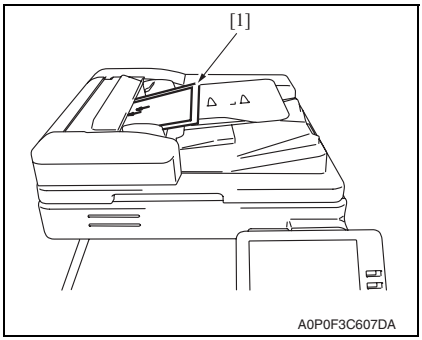


4. Remove the clearance by turning the adjusting screw [1].
   Clockwise rotation: Lifting up the rear side
   Counterclockwise rotation: Lowering the rear side
5. Use the adjusting screw [1] when further adjustment is needed.
   Clockwise rotation: Lifting up the rear side
   Counterclockwise rotation: Lowering the rear side
6. Affix again the labels removed in step 3.

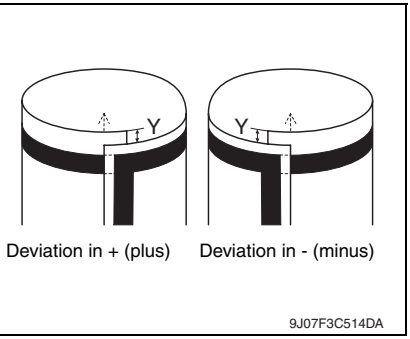
6.1.2 Adjusting skew feed



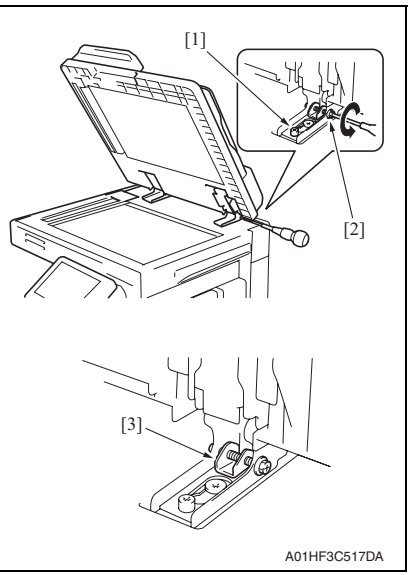
1. Check how the edges of the chart are misaligned.
   The amount of the deviation of the chart will be X.



2. Place the chart [1] in the document feed tray (with the side having an arrow facing up).



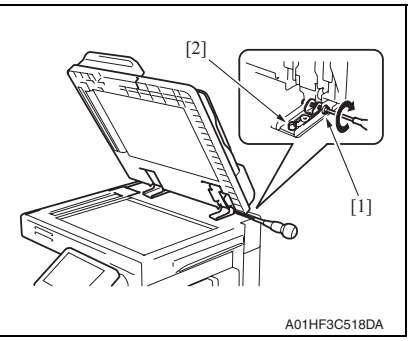
3. Make copies 5 times repeatedly in single side mode.
4. Fold all 5 sample copies as illustrated and check for any deviation. Deviation on the sample will be Y.
5. Obtain the difference between the deviation of the chart and the deviation of the sample.
   Difference of the deviation = Y - X
   Specifications: 0 ± 2 mm
6. If the difference of the deviation does not fall within the specified range, perform the following adjustment.



7. Loosen the mounting screw [1] on the right hinge viewed from the front.
8. When the difference of the deviation is + (plus), turn the screw [2] counterclockwise to adjust.

NOTE

- **When turning the screw, be sure not to raise the reverse automatic document feeder until in an upright position.**
- **When the adjusting plate [3] is set far left, do not tighten any further.**
- **To prevent the adjustment screw [2] breakage, be sure to follow the above instructions.**



9. When the difference of the deviation is - (minus), turn the screw [1] clockwise to adjust.
10. After the adjustment is completed, tighten the mounting screw [2] on right side hinge securely with screwdriver.

KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

PC-107/PC-207

2009.07

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.
Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised,  is shown at the left margin of the revised section.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

- To indicate clearly a page that contains the revision, is shown near the page number of the corresponding page.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2009/07	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

PC-107/PC-207

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS 1

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE 3
2.1 Paper feed section 3
2.1.1 Replacing the separation roller 3
2.1.2 Replacing the feed roller 5
2.1.3 Replacing the pick-up roller 8
3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM 10
3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted 10
3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list 11
3.3 Cleaning parts list 11
3.4 Disassembly/reassembly procedure 12
3.4.1 Right door/Rear right cover/Lower right cover/Front right cover 12
3.4.2 Rear cover/Left cover 12
3.4.3 PC Control board (PCCB) 13
3.4.4 Tray3 lift-up motor (M124) / Tray4 lift-up motor (M125) 13
3.4.5 Tray3 paper feed motor (M122) / Tray3 vertical transport motor (M120)
Tray4 paper feed motor (M123) / Tray4 vertical transport motor (M121) 14
3.5 Cleaning point 16
3.5.1 Separation roller 16
3.5.2 Feed roller 17
3.5.3 Pick-up roller 17
3.5.4 Vertical transport roller 18

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. How to use the adjustment section 19
5. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT 20
5.1 Adjusting the paper reference position 20

Blank Page

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Name	1 way paper feed cabinet / 2 way paper feed cabinet
Type	Front loading type 1 way paper feed device / 2 way paper feed device
Installation	Desk type
Document alignment	Center

B. Paper

Type	Size	Capacity	
		Tray 3	Tray 4
Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m², 16 to 24 lb)	A5S (Metric area only), B5, B5S, A4, A4S, B4, A3, 5-1/2 x 8-1/2S (Inch area only), 8-1/2 x 11, 8-1/2 x 11S, 8-1/2 x 14, 11 x 17 8K, 16K	500 sheets	500 sheets
Thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m², 24.25 to 40 lb)		150 sheets	150 sheets
Thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m², 40 to 55.5 lb)			
Thick paper 3 *1 (210 to 256 g/m², 55.75 to 68 lb)			
Copy paper dimensions	Width	139.7 to 297 mm 5.5 to 11.7 inch	
	Length	182 to 431.8 mm 7.2 to 17 inch	

*1: Image is not guaranteed when thick paper 3 is used.

C. Machine specifications

Power requirements	DC 24 V ± 10 % (supplied from the main body)
	DC 5 V ± 5 %
Max. power consumption	15 W or less
Dimensions	600 mm (W) x 705 mm (D) x 302 mm (H) 23.7 inch (W) x 27.8 inch (D) x 11.9 inch (H)
Weight	PC-107: 28.5 kg (62.9 lb) PC-207: 30.5 kg (67.3 lb)

D. Operating environment

Conforms to the operating environment of the main body.

NOTE

- **These specifications are subject to change without notice.**

Blank Page

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE

2.1 Paper feed section

2.1.1 Replacing the separation roller

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

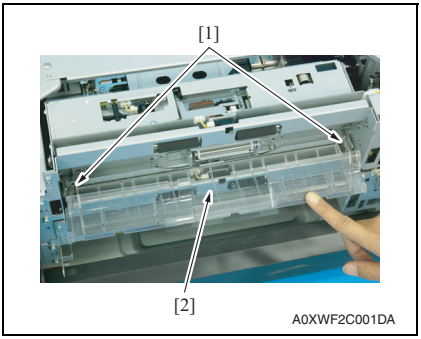
- Separation roller assy: Every 300,000 feed

NOTE

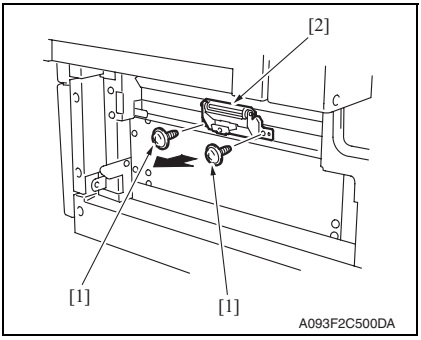
- **Replace the separation roller assy, feed roller and pick-up roller at the same time.**

B. Procedure

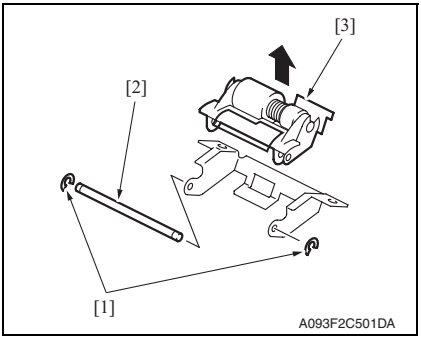
1. Remove the right door.
See P.12



2. Remove two springs [1].
3. Remove the jam clearing cover [2].



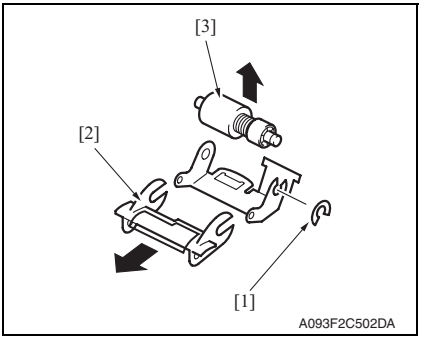
4. Remove two screws [1] and remove the paper separation roller mounting bracket assy [2].



5. Remove two C-rings [1] and the shaft [2], and remove the paper separation roller fixing bracket assy [3].

NOTE

- **Be careful not to lose spring at this time.**

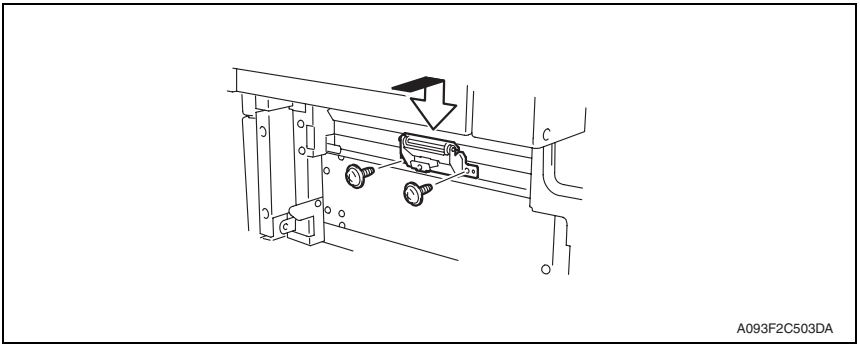


6. Remove the C-ring [1] and the guide [2], and remove the separation roller assy [3].

7. Repeat steps 1 to 6 similarly for the 4th drawer.

NOTE

- **Install the separation roller assy while pressing the holder down so that it aligns to the metal bracket of the machine.**
- **Make sure that the separation roller assy is not tilted to the right or left when installed.**



2.1.2 Replacing the feed roller

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

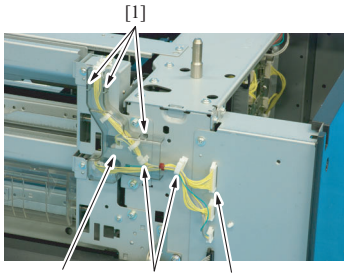
- Feed roller: Every 300,000 feed

NOTE

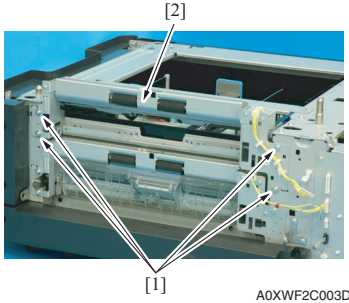
- **Replace the separation roller assy, feed roller and pick-up roller at the same time.**

B. Procedure

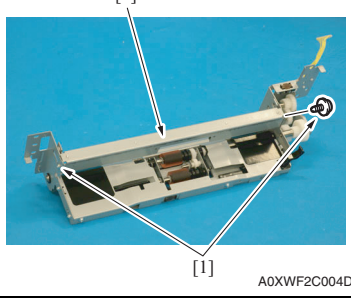
1. Remove the rear right cover. (Remove the right lower cover for 4th row.)
See P.12
2. Remove the tray3. (Remove the tray4 from 4th row.)
3. Remove the paper separation roller mounting bracket assy.
See the procedures 1 to 4 in P.3 “Separation roller assy.”



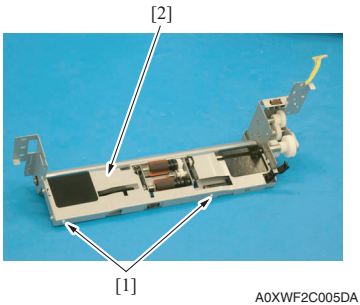
4. Remove three tabs [1], and remove the harness cover [2].
5. Remove the harness from two wire saddles [3].
6. Disconnect the connector [4].



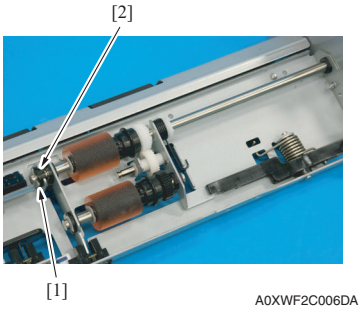
7. Remove four screws [1] and remove the feed unit [2].



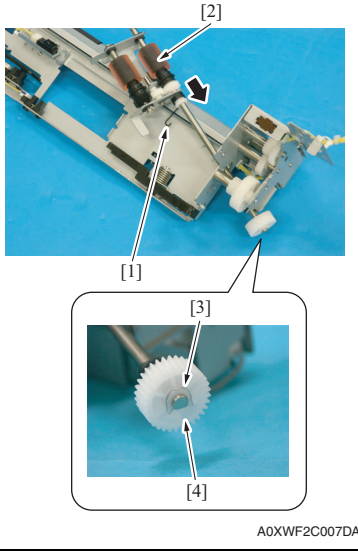
8. Remove two screws [1] and remove the mounting frame [2] for the paper separation roller mounting bracket assy.



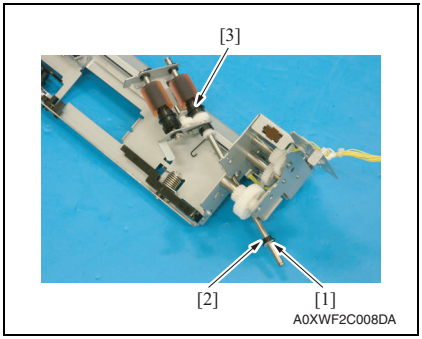
9. Remove two screws [1] and remove the feed roller cover [2].



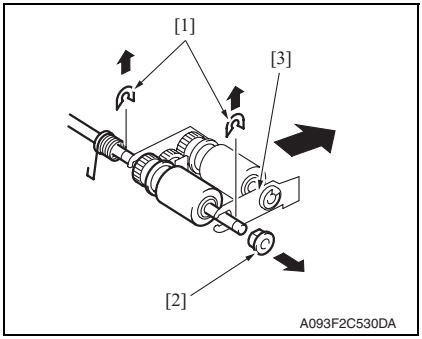
10. Remove the C-ring [1] and remove the bushing [2].



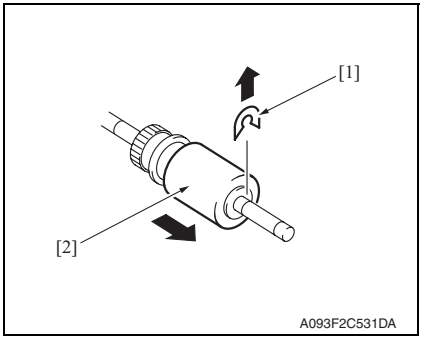
11. Detach the hook [1] of the spring and shift the shaft assy [2] in the direction shown in the illustration.
12. Remove the C-ring [3] and the gear [4].



13. Remove the C-ring [1] and the bushing [2], and remove the shaft assy [3].



14. Remove two C-rings [1] and the bushing [2], and remove the pick-up roller fixing bracket assy [3].



15. Remove the C-ring [1] and remove the feed roller [2].

16. Repeat steps 1 to 15 similarly for the 4th drawer.

2.1.3 Replacing the pick-up roller

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

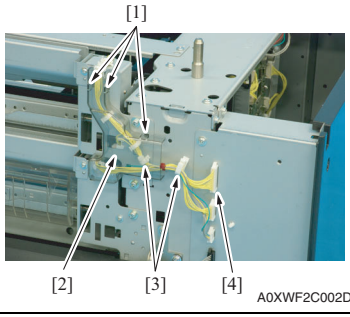
- Pick-up roller: Every 300,000 feed

NOTE

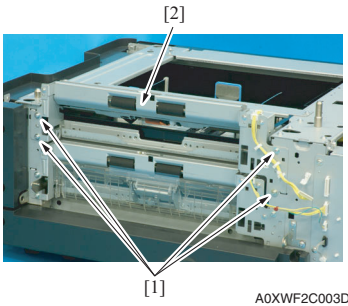
- **Replace the separation roller assy, feed roller and pick-up roller at the same time.**

B. Procedure

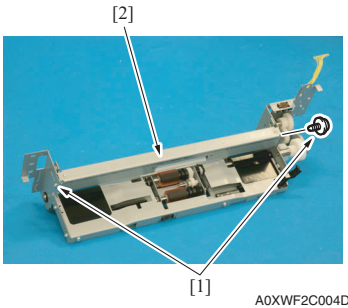
1. Remove the rear right cover. (Remove the right lower cover for 4th row.)
See P.12
2. Remove the tray3. (Remove the tray4 from 4th row.)
3. Remove the separation roller mounting bracket assy.
See the procedures 1 to 4 in P.3 “Separation roller assy.”



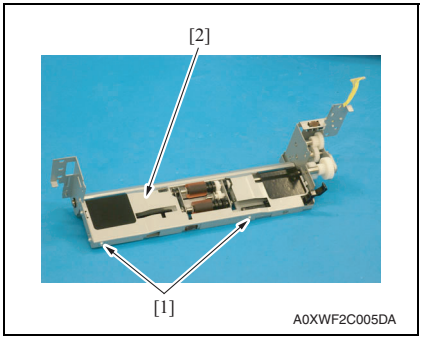
4. Remove three tabs [1], and remove the harness cover [2].
5. Remove the harness from two wire saddles [3].
6. Disconnect the connector [4].



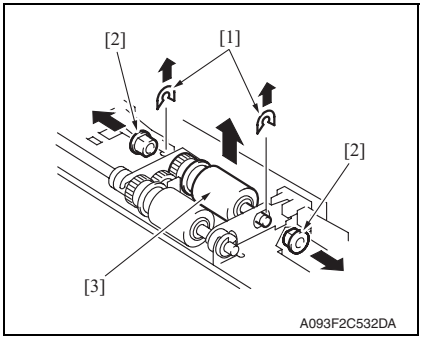
7. Remove four screws [1] and remove the feed unit [2].



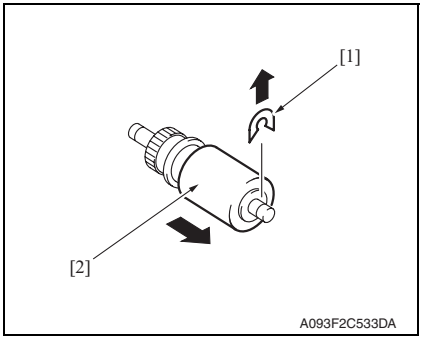
8. Remove two screws [1] and remove the mounting frame [2] for the paper separation roller mounting bracket assy.



9. Remove two screws [1] and remove the feed roller cover [2].



10. Remove two C-rings [1] and two bushings [2], and remove the pick-up roller assy [3].



11. Remove the C-ring [1] and remove the pick-up roller [2].

12. Repeat steps 1 to 11 similarly for the 4th drawer.

3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

A. Paint-locked screws

NOTE

- **To prevent loose screws, a screw lock in blue or green series color is applied to the screws.**
- **The screw lock is applied to the screws that may get loose due to the vibrations and loads created by the use of machine or due to the vibrations created during transportation.**
- **If the screw lock coated screws are loosened or removed, be sure to apply a screw lock after the screws are tightened.**

B. Red-painted screws

NOTE

- **The screws which are difficult to be adjusted in the field are painted in red in order to prevent them from being removed by mistake.**
- **Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.**

C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE

- **Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.**

D. Removal of PWBs

⚠ CAUTION

- **When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.**
- **The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.**
- **Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.**

3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list

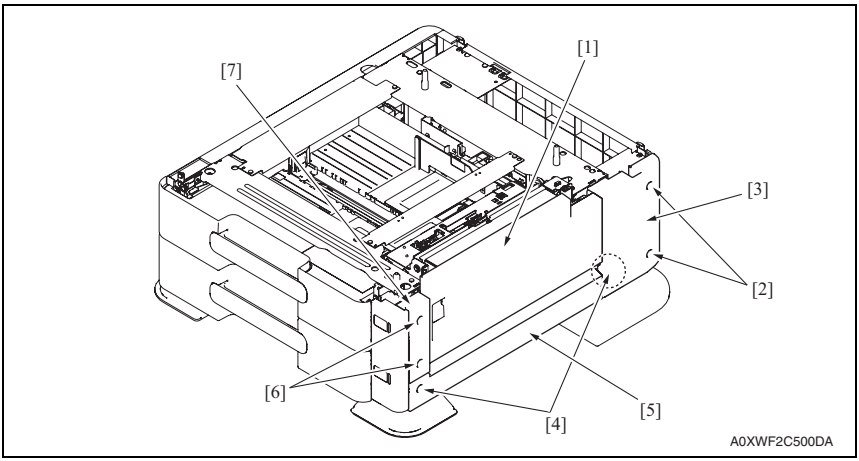
Section	Part name	Ref. page
Exterior parts	Right door	P.12
	Rear right cover	P.12
	Lower right cover	P.12
	Front right cover	P.12
	Rear cover	P.12
	Left cover	P.12
Board and etc.	PC Control board (PCCB)	P.13
Others	Tray3 vertical transport motor (M120)	P.14
	Tray3 paper feed motor (M122)	
	Tray4 vertical transport motor (M121)	
	Tray4 paper feed motor (M123)	
	Tray3 lift-up motor (M124)	P.13
	Tray4 lift-up motor (M125)	

3.3 Cleaning parts list

Section	Part name	Ref. page
Feed section	Separation roller	P.16
	Feed roller	P.17
	Pick-up roller	P.17
Transport section	Vertical transport roller	P.18

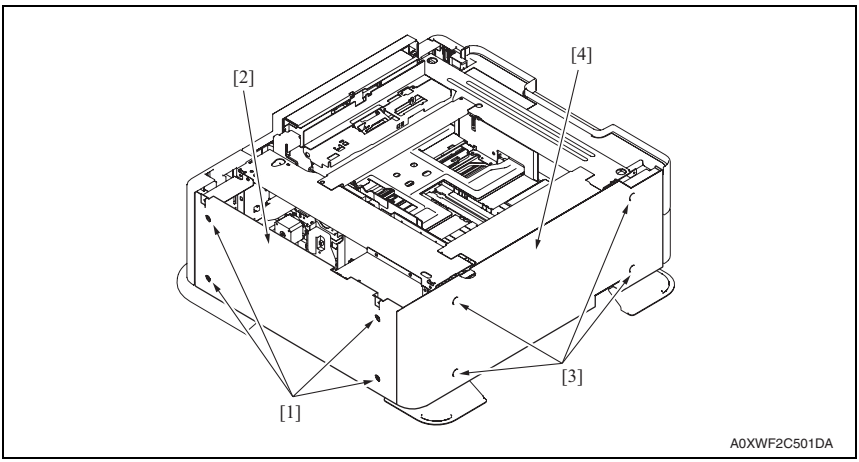
3.4 Disassembly/reassembly procedure

3.4.1 Right door/Rear right cover/Lower right cover/Front right cover



1. Open the right door [1].
2. Remove the right door [1].
3. Remove two screws [2] and remove the rear right cover [3].
4. Remove two screws [4] and remove the lower right cover [5].
5. Remove two screws [6] and remove the front right cover [7].

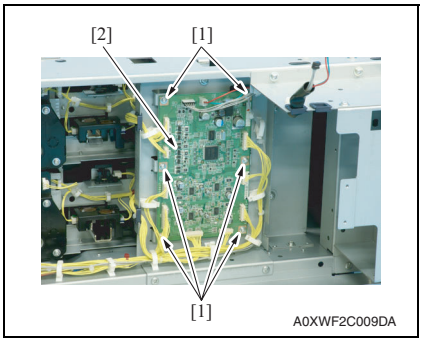
3.4.2 Rear cover/Left cover



1. Remove four screws [1] and remove the rear cover [2].
2. Remove four screws [3] and remove the left cover [4].

3.4.3 PC Control board (PCCB)

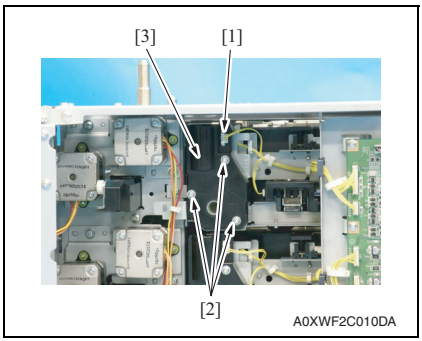
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.12



2. Disconnect all connectors of the PC control board.
3. Remove six screws [1], and remove the PC control board [2].
4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.4.4 Tray3 lift-up motor (M124) / Tray4 lift-up motor (M125)

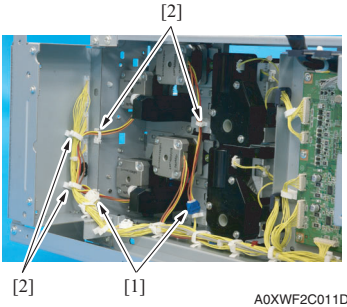
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.12



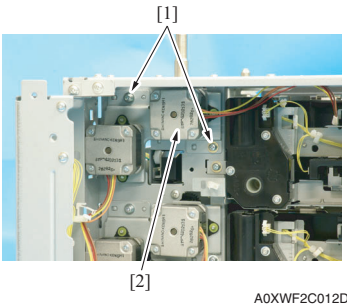
2. Disconnect the connector [1].
3. Remove three screws [2], and remove the tray3 lift-up motor [3].
4. Follow the same procedure as the above to remove the tray4 lift-up motor.
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.4.5 Tray3 paper feed motor (M122) / Tray3 vertical transport motor (M120) Tray4 paper feed motor (M123) / Tray4 vertical transport motor (M121)

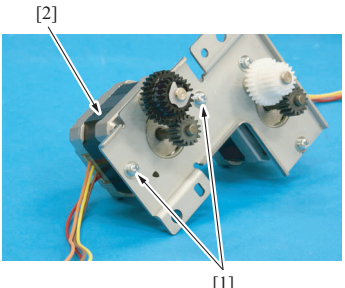
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.12



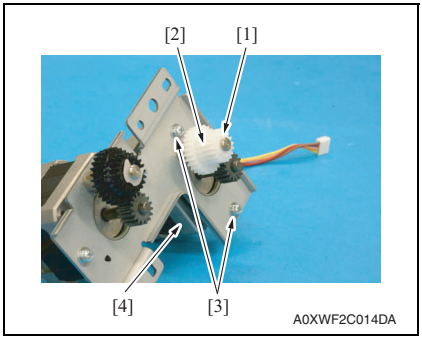
2. Disconnect two connectors [1].
3. Remove the harness from four wire saddles [2].



4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the motor assy [2].



5. Remove two screws [1], and remove the tray3 paper feed motor [2].



6. Remove the C-ring [1] and the gear [2].
7. Remove two screws [3], and remove the tray3 vertical transport motor [4].
8. Follow the same procedure as the above to remove the tray4 paper feed motor/tray4 vertical transport motor.
9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

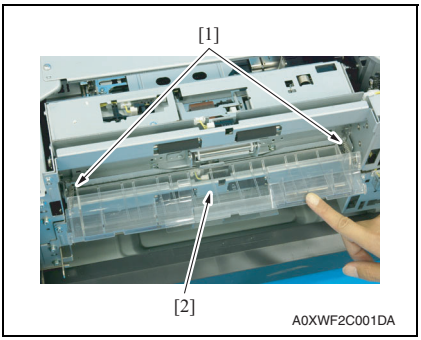
3.5 Cleaning point

NOTE

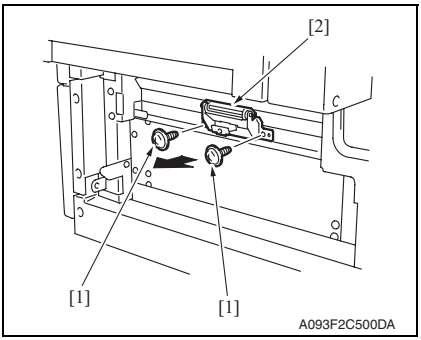
- **The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure of maintenance represents the isopropyl alcohol.**

3.5.1 Separation roller

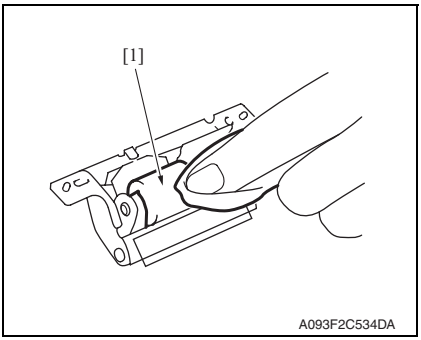
1. Remove the right door.
See P.12



2. Remove two springs [1].
3. Remove the jam clearing cover [2].



4. Remove two screws [1] and remove the separation roller mounting bracket assy [2].

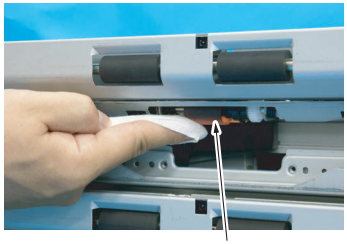


5. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the separation roller [1] clean of dirt.

6. Repeat steps 1 to 5 similarly for the 4th drawer.

3.5.2 Feed roller

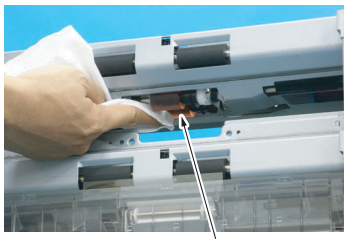
1. Remove the tray3. (remove the tray4 from 4th row.)
2. Remove the separation roller mounting bracket assy.
See the procedures 1 to 4 in P.16 “Cleaning of the separation roller.”



3. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the feed roller [1] clean of dirt.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 similarly for the 4th drawer.

3.5.3 Pick-up roller

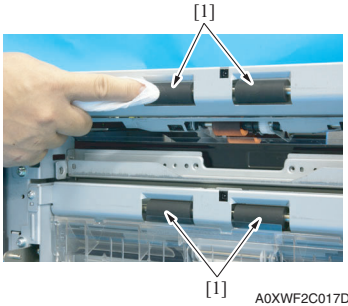
1. Remove the tray3. (remove the tray4 from 4th row.)
2. Remove the separation roller mounting bracket assy.
See the procedures 1 to 4 in P.16 “Cleaning of the separation roller.”



3. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the pick-up roller [1] clean of dirt.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 similarly for the 4th drawer.

3.5.4 Vertical transport roller

1. Open the right door.



2. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the vertical transport roller [1] clean of dirt.

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. How to use the adjustment section

- "Adjustment/Setting" contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this "Adjustment/Setting," the default settings are indicated by " ".

Advance checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The original glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

⚠ CAUTION

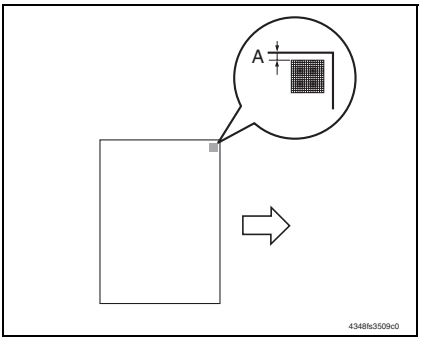
- **Be sure to unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the scanner cables or gears of the exposure unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the fusing unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The developing unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

5. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

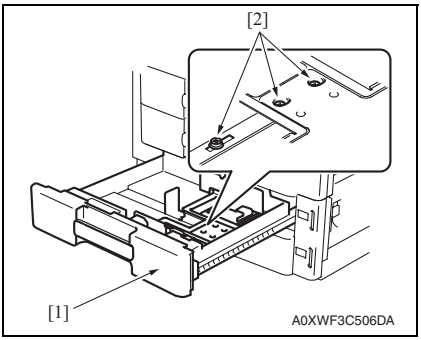
5.1 Adjusting the paper reference position

NOTE

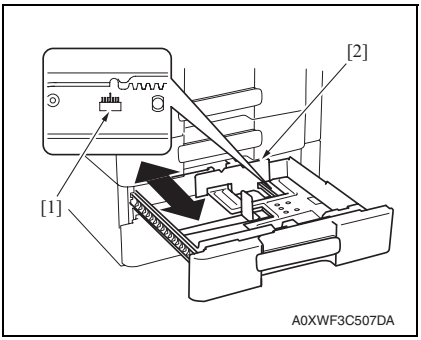
- **Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.**
  When the PH unit has been replaced.
  When the image on the print is offset in the main scan direction.
  When adjustment in the following screen does not resolve a problem.
  [Service Mode] - [Machine] - [Printer Area] - [Centering].



1. Measure the width of printed reference line A.
Specification: 3.0 mm ± 1.0 mm



2. Slide out the drawer [1] and unload paper from it.
3. Loosen two screws [2] at the center of the paper lifting plate.



4. Watching the graduations [1] provided in the drawer, move the edge guide [2] in the rear.

- If width A is greater than the specified value, move the edge guide toward the front.
- If width A is smaller than the specified value, move the edge guide toward the rear.

5. Perform another test print and check the reference deviation.

KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

PC-408

2009.07

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.
Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised,  is shown at the left margin of the revised section.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

- To indicate clearly a page that contains the revision, is shown near the page number of the corresponding page.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2009/07	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

PC-408

OUTLINE

1. Product specification 1

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE 3
2.1 Paper feed section 3
2.1.1 Replacing the separation roller 3
2.1.2 Replacing the feed roller 5
2.1.3 Replacing the pick-up roller 9
3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM 12
3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted 12
3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list 13
3.3 Cleaning parts list 13
3.4 Disassembly/reassembly parts list 14
3.4.1 Right door/Rear right cover/Lower right cover/Front right cover 14
3.4.2 Rear cover/Left cover 14
3.4.3 PC Control board (PCCB) 15
3.4.4 Paper feed motor (M1) / Vertical transport motor (M2) 15
3.4.5 Division board position motor (M3) 17
3.4.6 Shift motor (M4) 18
3.4.7 Tray lock solenoid (SD1) 19
3.4.8 Drawer 20
3.4.9 Wire 21
3.5 Cleaning point 25
3.5.1 Separation roller 25
3.5.2 Feed roller 25
3.5.3 Pick-up roller 26
3.5.4 Vertical transport roller 27

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. How to use the adjustment section 29
5. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT 30
5.1 Adjusting the paper reference position 30
5.2 Shifter movement timing belt adjustment 32

Blank Page

OUTLINE

1. Product specification

A. Type

Name	Large capacity cabinet
Type	Front loading type LCC
Installation	Desk type
Document alignment	Center

B. Paper

Type	Size	Capacity
Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m² (16 to 24 lb))	Metric area: A4, Inch area: 8 1/2 x 11	2,500 sheets
Thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m² (24.25 to 40 lb))		1,000 sheets
Thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m² (40 to 55.5 lb))		
Thick paper 3 *1 (210 to 256 g/m² (55.75 to 68 lb))		

*1: Image is not guaranteed when thick paper 3 is used.

C. Machine specifications

Power requirements	DC 24 V ± 10% (supplied from the main body)
	DC 5 V ± 5%
Max. power consumption	45 W or less
Dimensions	600 mm (W) x 702 mm (D) x 302 mm (H) 23.7 inch (W) x 27.6 inch (D) x 11.9 inch (H)
Weight	28.0 kg (61.8 lb)

D. Operating environment

Conforms to the operating environment of the main body.

NOTE

- **These specifications are subject to change without notice.**

Blank Page

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE

2.1 Paper feed section

2.1.1 Replacing the separation roller

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

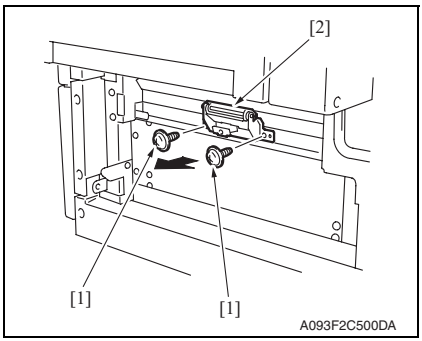
- Separation roller assy: Every 300,000 feed

NOTE

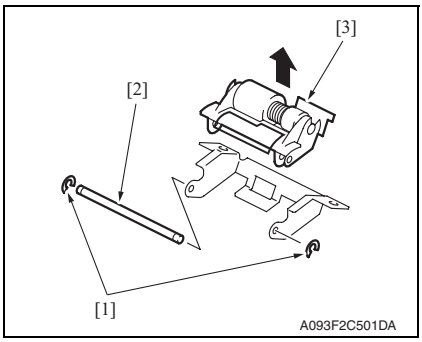
- **Replace the separation roller assy, feed roller and pick-up roller at the same time.**

B. Procedure

1. Remove the right door.
See P.14



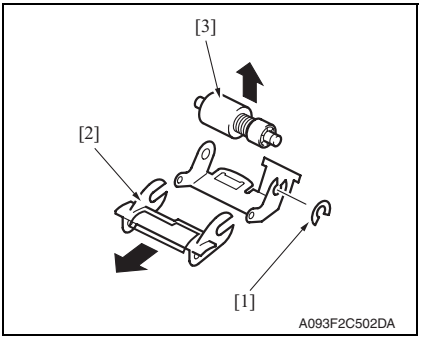
2. Remove two screws [1] and remove the separation roller mounting bracket assy [2].



3. Remove two C-rings [1] and the shaft [2], and remove the separation roller fixing bracket assy [3].

NOTE

- **Be careful not to lose spring at this time.**

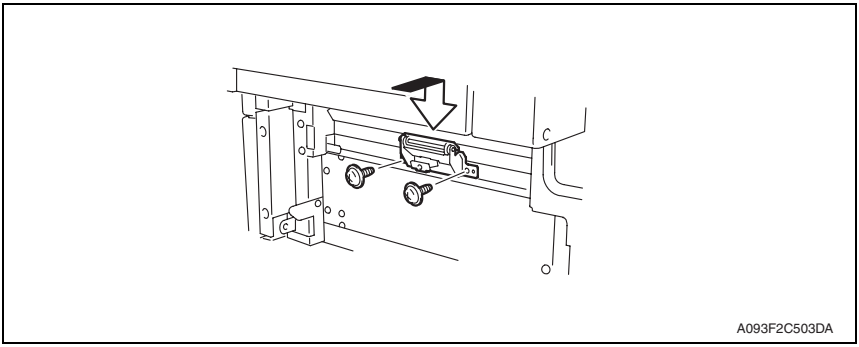


4. Remove the C-ring [1] and the guide [2], and remove the separation roller assy [3].

5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

- **Install the separation roller assy while pressing the holder down so that it aligns to the metal bracket of the machine.**
- **Make sure that the separation roller assy is not tilted to the right or left when installed.**



2.1.2 Replacing the feed roller

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

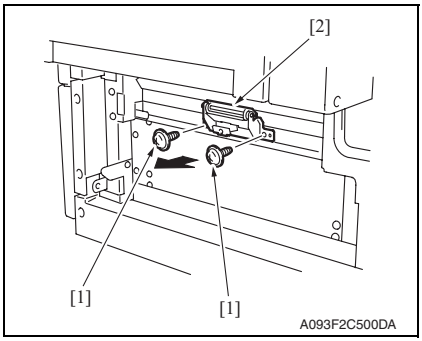
- Feed roller: Every 300,000 feed

NOTE

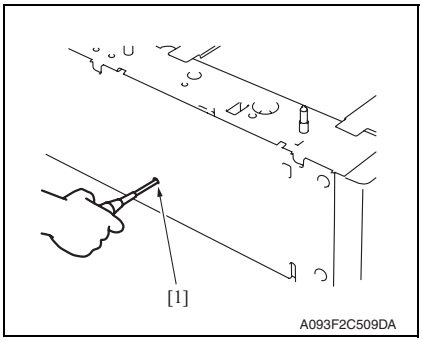
- **Replace the separation roller assy, feed roller and pick-up roller at the same time.**

B. Procedure

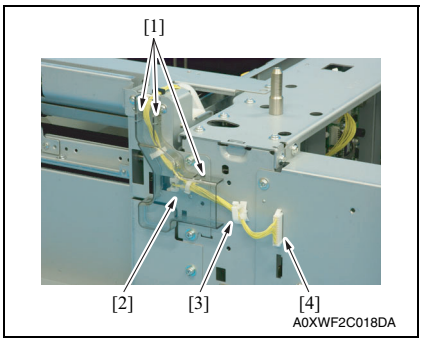
1. Remove the right door.
See P.14
2. Remove the rear right cover.
See P.14



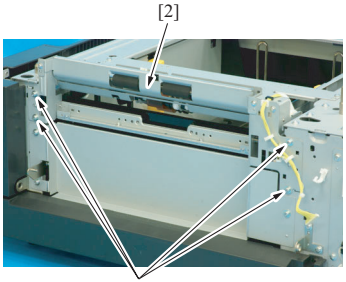
3. Remove two screws [1] and separation roller mounting bracket assy [2].



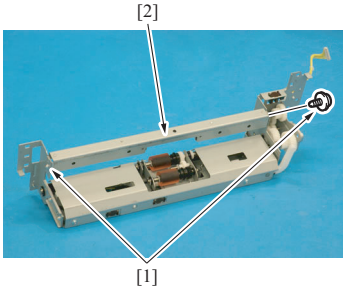
4. Insert a driver into the hole [1] at the rear of the feed tray and pull out the paper feed tray.



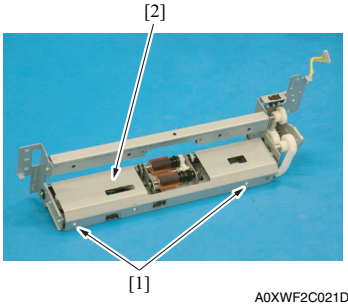
5. Remove three tabs [1], and remove the harness cover [2].
6. Remove the harness from two wire saddles [3].
7. Disconnect the connector [4].



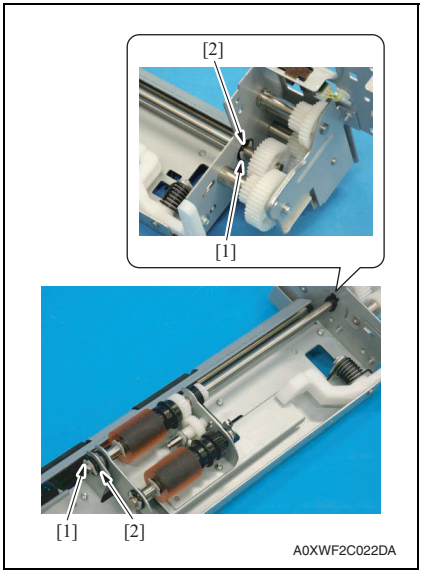
8. Remove four screws [1] and remove the feed unit [2].



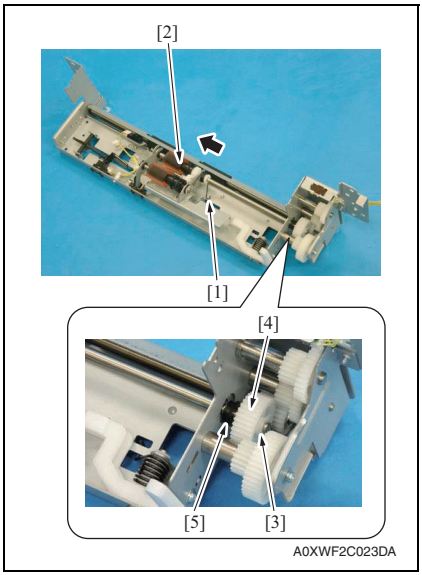
9. Remove two screws [1] and remove the mounting frame [2] for the paper separation roller mounting bracket assy.



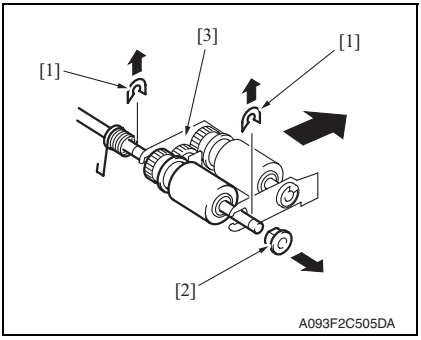
10. Remove two screws [1] and remove the feed roller cover [2].



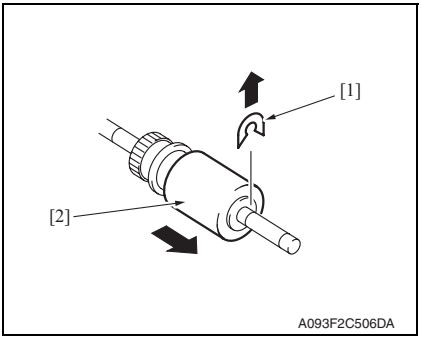
11. Remove two C-rings [1] and remove two bushings [2].



12. Detach the hook [1] of the spring and shift the shaft assy [2] in the direction shown in the illustration.
13. Remove the C-ring [3], the gear [4] and the bushing [5].
14. Remove the shaft assy [2].



15. Remove two C-rings [1] and the bushing [2], and remove the pick-up roller fixing bracket assy [3].



16. Remove the C-ring [1] and remove the feed roller [2].

17. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

2.1.3 Replacing the pick-up roller

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

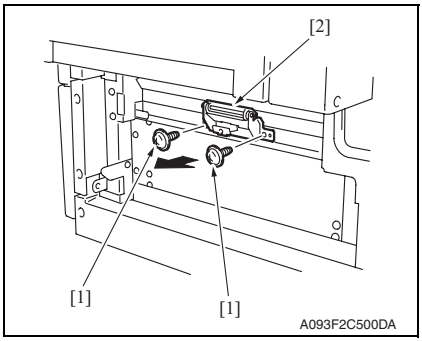
- Pick-up roller: Every 300,000 feed

NOTE

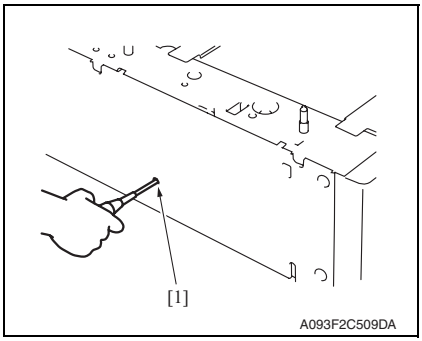
- **Replace the separation roller assy, feed roller and pick-up roller at the same time.**

B. Procedure

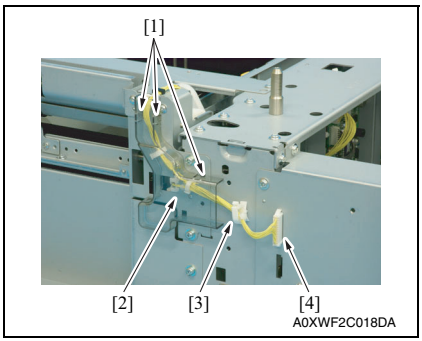
1. Remove the right door.
See P.14
2. Remove the rear right cover.
See P.14



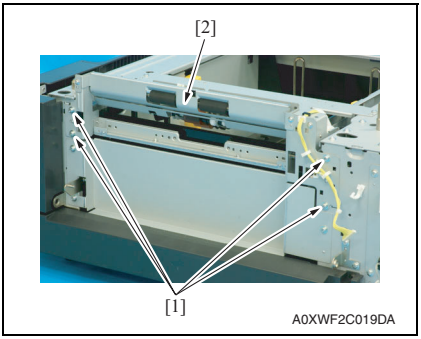
3. Remove two screws [1] and separation roller mounting bracket assy [2].



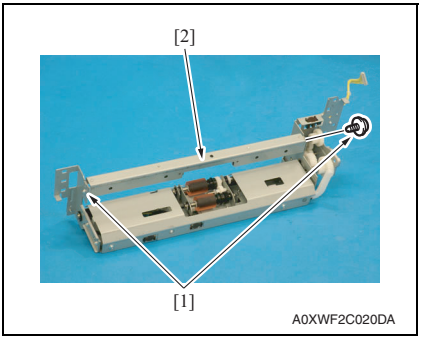
4. Insert a driver into the hole [1] at the rear of the feed tray and pull out the paper feed tray.



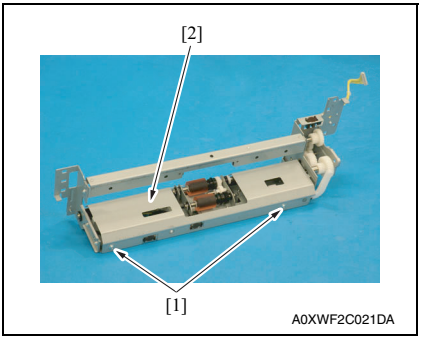
5. Remove three tabs [1], and remove the harness cover [2].
6. Remove the harness from two wire saddles [3].
7. Disconnect the connector [4].



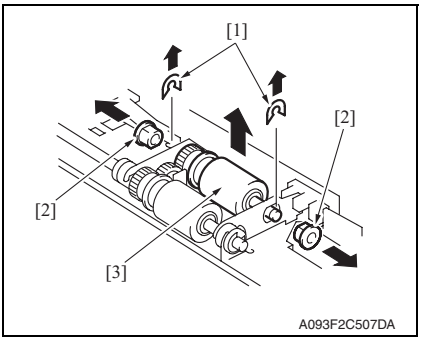
8. Remove four screws [1] and remove the feed unit [2].



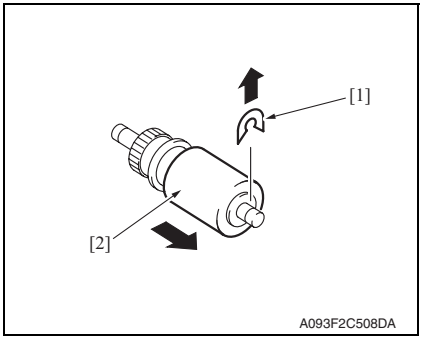
9. Remove two screws [1] and remove the mounting frame [2] for the paper separation roller mounting bracket assy.



10. Remove two screws [1] and remove the feed roller cover [2].



11. Remove two C-rings [1], two bushings [2], and the pick-up roller assy [3].



12. Remove the C-ring [1] and remove the pick-up roller [2].

13. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

A. Paint-locked screws

NOTE

- **To prevent loose screws, a screw lock in blue or green series color is applied to the screws.**
- **The screw lock is applied to the screws that may get loose due to the vibrations and loads created by the use of machine or due to the vibrations created during transportation.**
- **If the screw lock coated screws are loosened or removed, be sure to apply a screw lock after the screws are tightened.**

B. Red-painted screws

NOTE

- **The screws which are difficult to be adjusted in the field are painted in red in order to prevent them from being removed by mistake.**
- **Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.**

C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE

- **Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.**

D. Removal of PWBs

⚠ CAUTION

- **When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.**
- **The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.**
- **Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.**

3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list

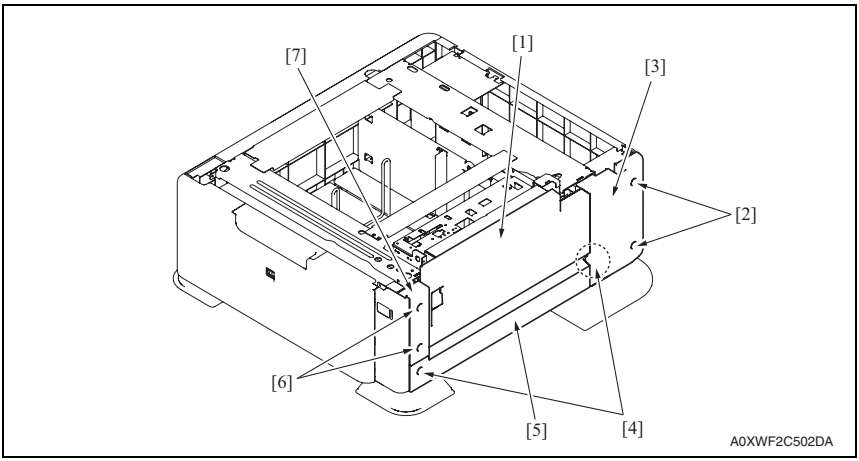
Section	Part name	Ref. page
Exterior parts	Right door	P.14
	Rear right cover	P.14
	Lower right cover	P.14
	Front right cover	P.14
	Rear cover	P.14
	Left cover	P.14
Unit	Drawer	P.20
Board and etc.	PC control board (PCCB)	P.15
	Paper feed motor (M1)	P.15
	Vertical transport motor (M2)	P.15
	Division board position motor (M3)	P.17
	Shift motor (M4)	P.18
	Tray lock solenoid (SD1)	P.19
Others	Wire	P.21

3.3 Cleaning parts list

Section	Part name	Ref. page
Feed section	Separation roller	P.25
	Feed roller	P.25
	Pick-up roller	P.26
Transport section	Vertical transport roller	P.27

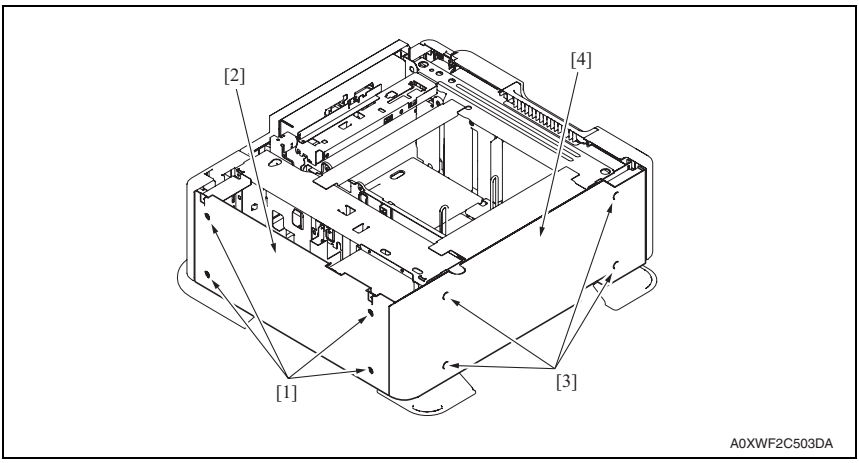
3.4 Disassembly/reassembly parts list

3.4.1 Right door/Rear right cover/Lower right cover/Front right cover



1. Open the right door [1].
2. Remove the right door [1].
3. Remove two screws [2] and remove the rear right cover [3].
4. Remove two screws [4] and remove the lower right cover [5].
5. Remove two screws [6] and remove the front right cover [7].

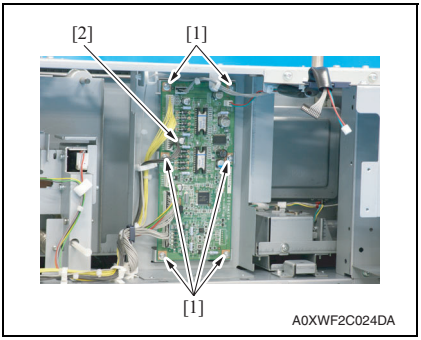
3.4.2 Rear cover/Left cover



1. Remove four screws [1] and remove the rear cover [2].
2. Remove four screws [3] and remove the left cover [4].

3.4.3 PC Control board (PCCB)

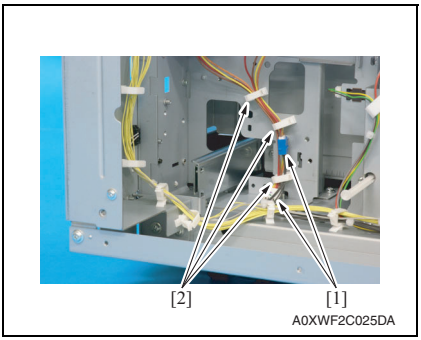
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.14



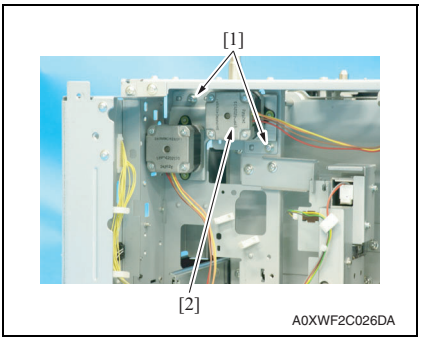
2. Disconnect all connectors of the PC control board.
3. Remove six screws [1], and remove the PC control board [2].
4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.4.4 Paper feed motor (M1) / Vertical transport motor (M2)

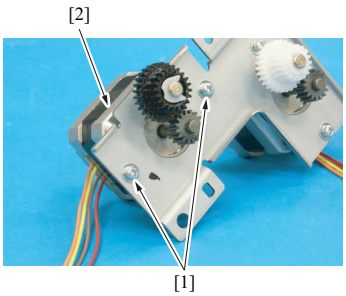
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.14



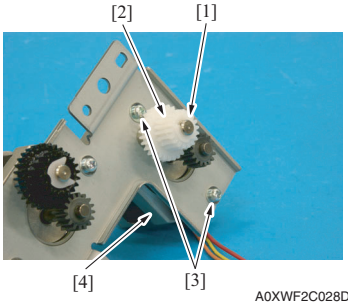
2. Disconnect two connectors [1].
3. Remove the harness from three wire saddles [2].



4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the motor assy [2].



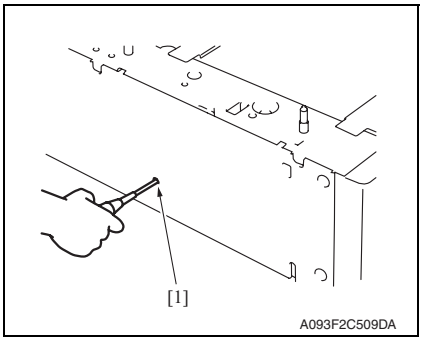
5. Remove two screws [1], and remove the paper feed motor [2].



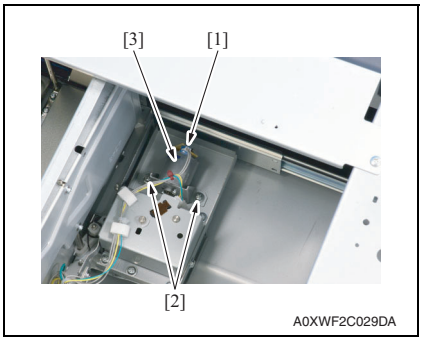
6. Remove the C-ring [1] and the gear [2].
7. Remove two screws [3], and remove the vertical transport motor [4].

8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

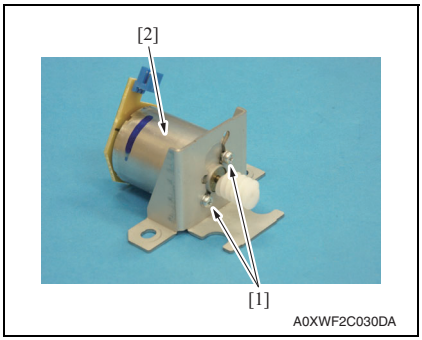
3.4.5 Division board position motor (M3)



1. Insert a driver into the hole [1] at the rear of the feed tray and pull out the paper feed tray.



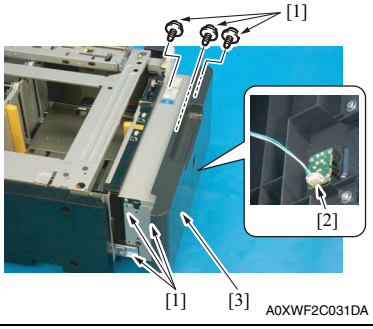
2. Disconnect the connector [1].
3. Remove two screws [2], and remove the division board position motor assy [3].



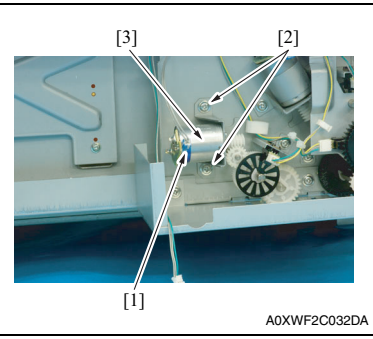
4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the division board position motor [2].

5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

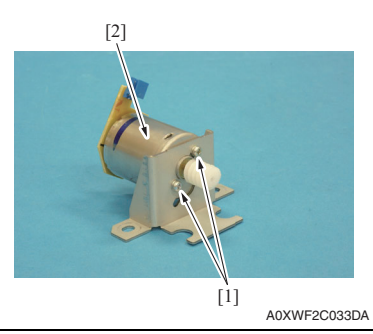
3.4.6 Shift motor (M4)



1. Remove six screws [1].
2. Disconnect the connector [2], and remove the front cover assy [3].



3. Disconnect the connector [1].
4. Remove two screws [2], and remove the shift motor assy [3].

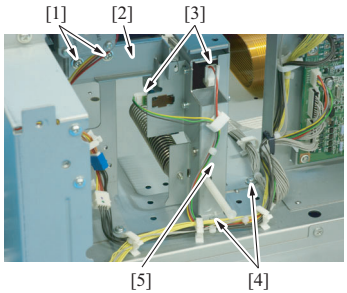


5. Remove two screws [1], and remove the shift motor [2].

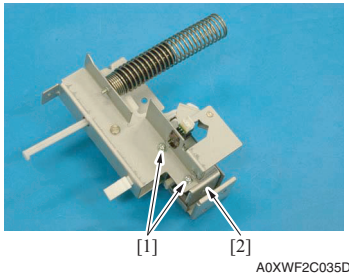
6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.4.7 Tray lock solenoid (SD1)

1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.14



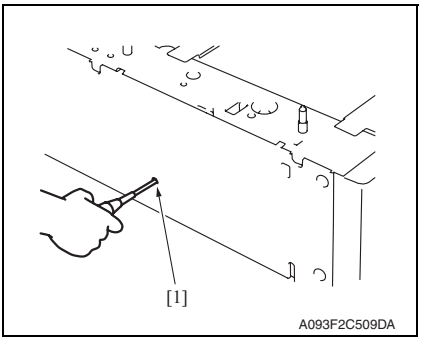
2. Remove two screws [1], and remove the plate [2].
3. Disconnect two connectors [3].
4. Remove two screws [4], and remove the tray lock solenoid assy [5].



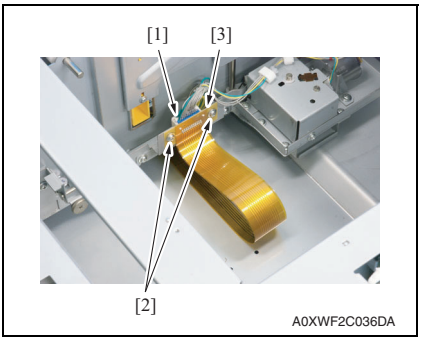
5. Remove two screws [1], and remove the tray lock solenoid [2].

6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

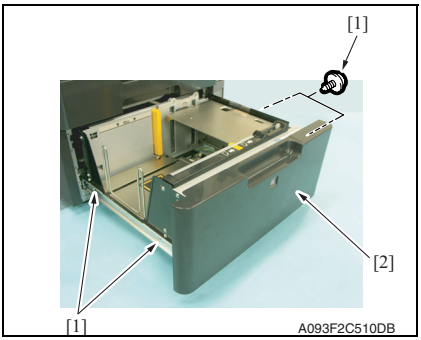
3.4.8 Drawer



1. Insert a driver into the hole [1] at the rear of the feed tray and pull out the paper feed tray.
2. Remove the paper.



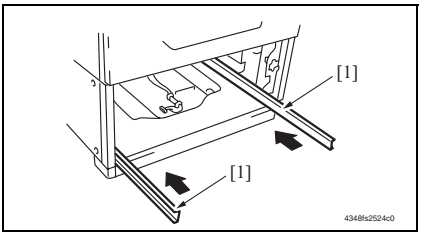
3. Disconnect the connector [1].
4. Remove two screws [2], and remove the connector board [3].



5. Remove four screws [1] and remove the drawer [2].

NOTE

- **When removing the drawer, be careful not to drop the drawer from the guide rails.**



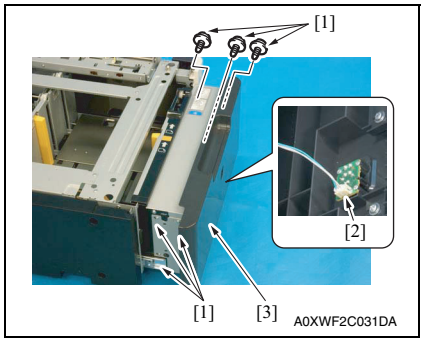
⚠ CAUTION

- **To prevent injuries, slide the guide rail [1] into the machine.**

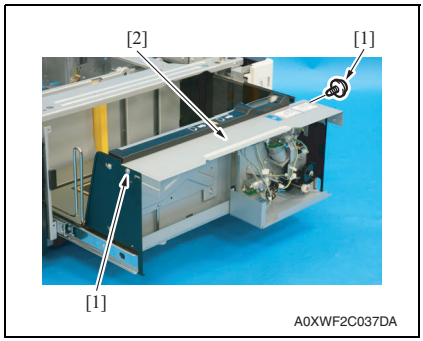
6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.4.9 Wire

1. Remove the drawer.
See P.20



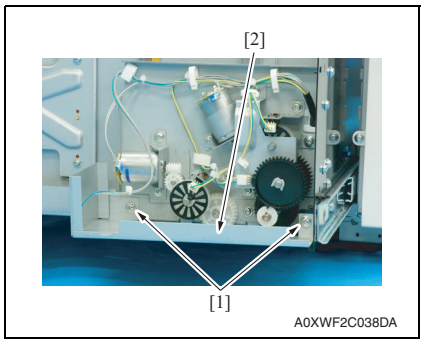
2. Remove six screws [1].
3. Disconnect the connector [2], and remove the front cover assy [3].



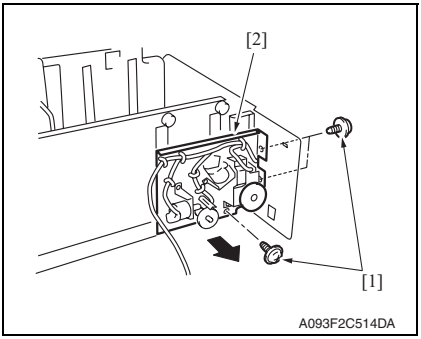
4. Remove two screws [1] and the inner cover assy [2].

NOTE

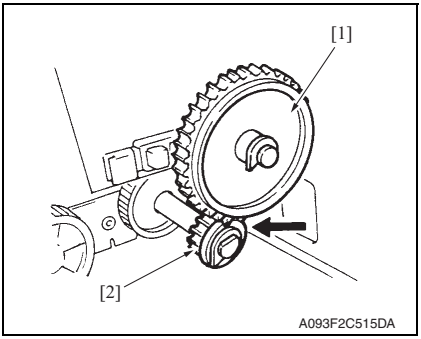
- **Do not peel off pulley protective mylar sheet.**



5. Remove two screws [1] and remove the driver cover [2].

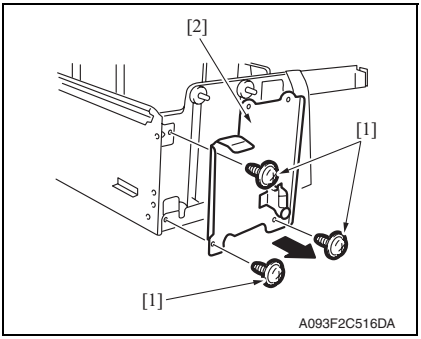


6. Remove three screws [1] and remove the driver mounting plate assy [2].

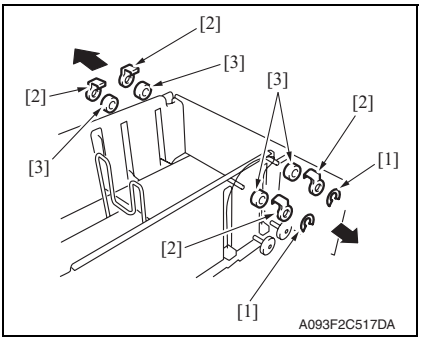


NOTE

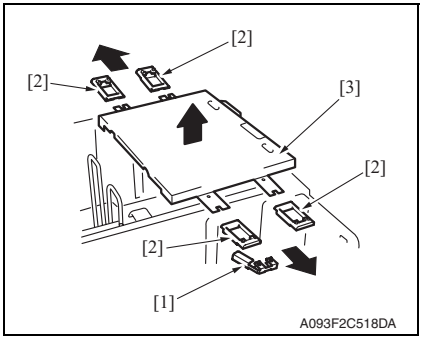
- **When assembling, be sure to engage rib of gear 1 [1] with convex section of gear 2 [2].**



7. Remove three screws [1] and remove the reinforcement bracket assy [2].



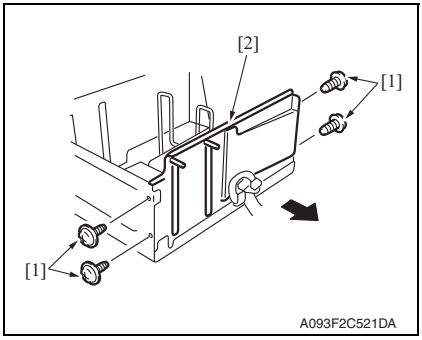
8. Remove two C-clips [1].
9. Remove four pulley covers [2].
10. Unhook four pulleys [3].



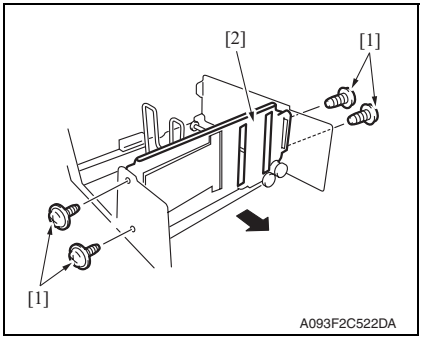
11. Remove the ground plate [1].
12. Remove four cable holding jigs [2] and remove the main drawer [3].

NOTE

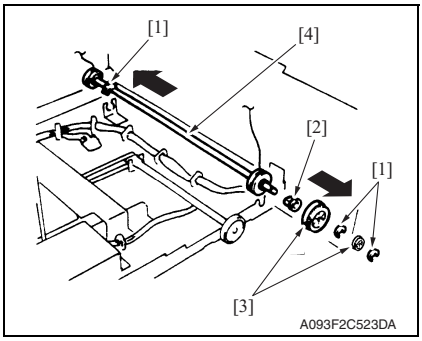
- **Use care not to bend the wires.**



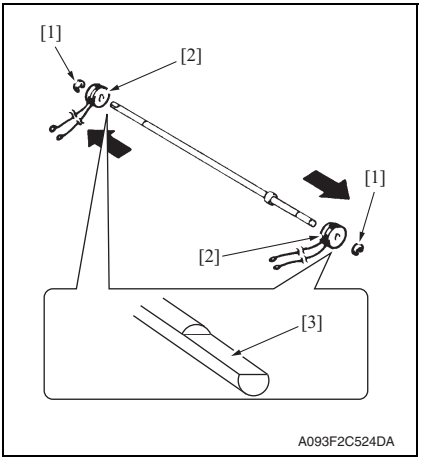
13. Remove four screws [1] and remove the rear trailing edge assy [2].



14. Remove four screws [1] and remove the front trailing edge assy [2].



15. Remove three C-rings [1], the bushing [2], and two gears [3].
16. Remove the feed drum assy [4].



17. Remove two C-rings [1] and the feed drum [2].

NOTE

- **Take care not to lose fixing pins.**
- **When reinstalling the feed drum, check that the direction of the wire coming from both feed drums are the same.**
- **Install so that cut parts [3] at both ends of shaft face up.**

18. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

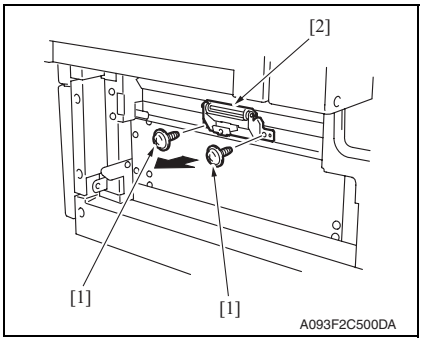
3.5 Cleaning point

NOTE

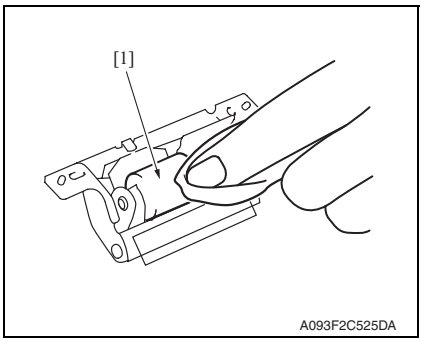
- **The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure represents the isopropyl alcohol.**

3.5.1 Separation roller

1. Remove the right door.
See P.14

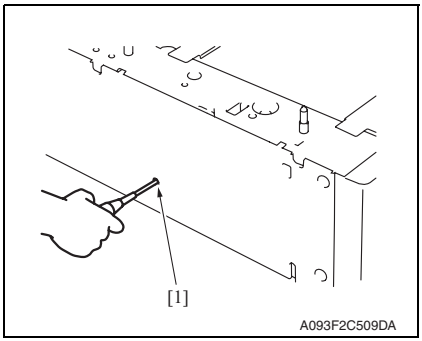


2. Remove two screws [1] and separation roller mounting bracket assy [2].

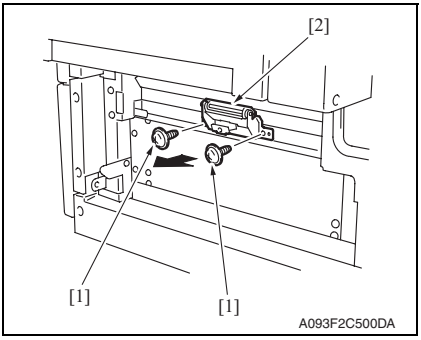


3. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the separation roller [1] clean of dirt.

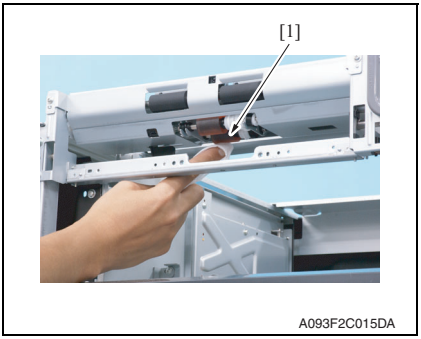
3.5.2 Feed roller



1. Insert a driver into the hole [1] at the rear of the feed tray and pull out the paper feed tray.

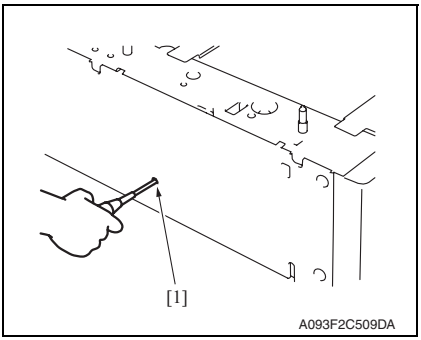


2. Remove two screws [1] and separation roller mounting bracket assy [2].

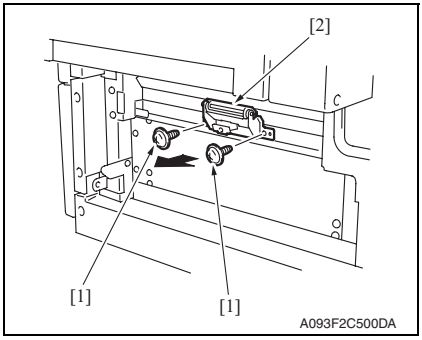


3. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the feed roller [1] clean of dirt.

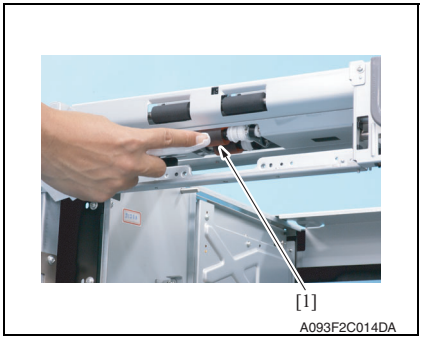
3.5.3 Pick-up roller



1. Insert a driver into the hole [1] at the rear of the feed tray and pull out the paper feed tray.



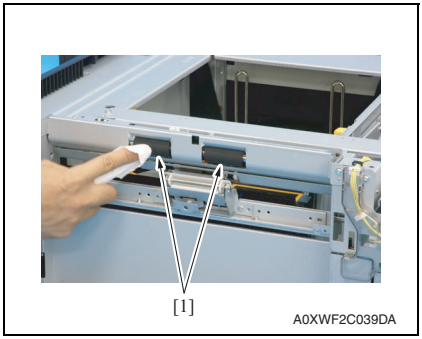
2. Remove two screws [1] and separation roller mounting bracket assy [2].



3. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the pick-up roller [1] clean of dirt.

3.5.4 Vertical transport roller

1. Open the right door.



2. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the vertical transport roller [1] clean of dirt.

Blank Page

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. How to use the adjustment section

- "Adjustment/Setting" contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this "Adjustment/Setting," the default settings are indicated by " ".

Advance checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The original glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

⚠ CAUTION

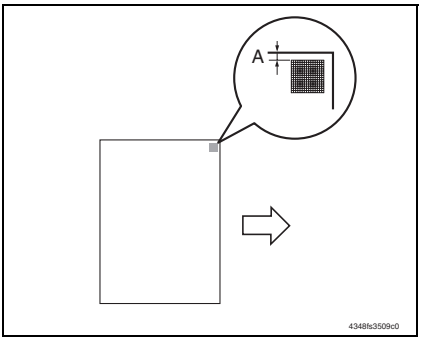
- **Be sure to unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the scanner cables or gears of the exposure unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the fusing unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The developing unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

5. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

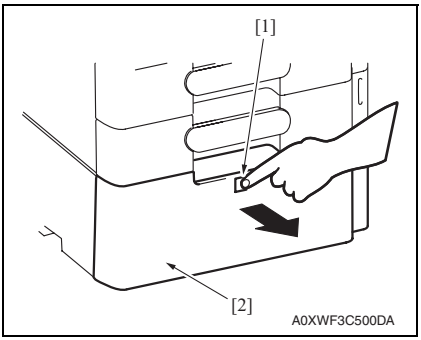
5.1 Adjusting the paper reference position

NOTE

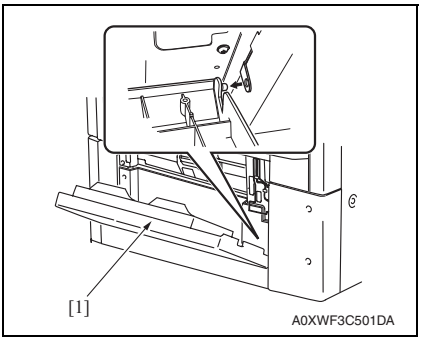
- **Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.**
  When the PH unit has been replaced.
  When the image on the print is offset in the main scan direction.
  When adjustment in the following screen does not resolve a problem.
  [Service Mode] - [Machine] - [Printer Area] - [Centering].



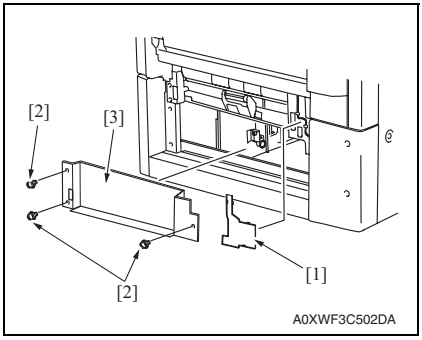
1. Measure the width of printed reference line A.
Specification: 3.0 mm ± 1.0 mm



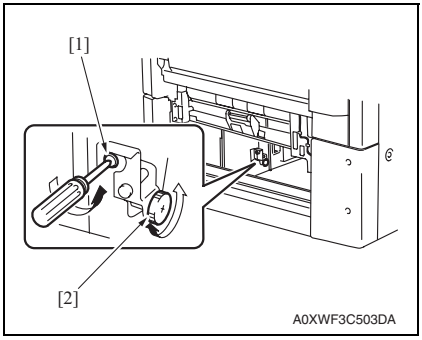
2. Press the drawer release button [1] and then slide out the drawer [2] from the paper feed cabinet.



3. Remove the right door [1].



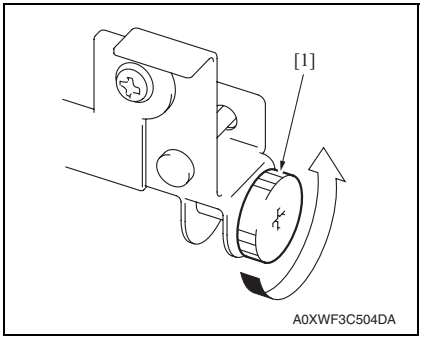
4. Remove the harness cover [1].
5. Remove three screws [2], and remove the plate [3].



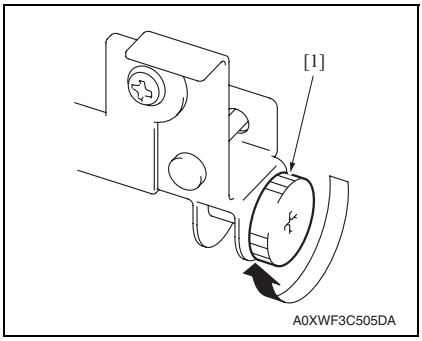
6. Loosen the adjustment screw [1] and turn screw [2] to make the adjustment.

NOTE

- **Do not damage the passage surface of the right door.**



- If width A is greater than the specified value:
  Turn screw [1] counterclockwise.

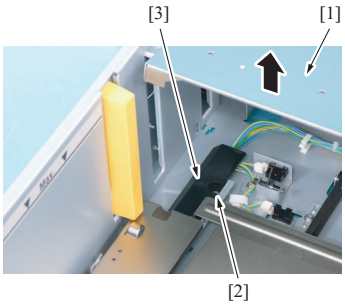


- If width A is smaller than the specified value:
  Turn screw [1] clockwise.

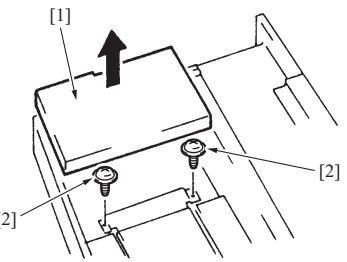
7. Perform another test print and check the reference deviation.

5.2 Shifter movement timing belt adjustment

1. Remove the drawer.
See P.20



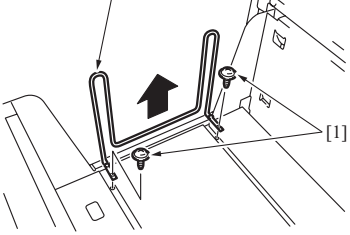
2. While raising the main tray [1], remove the screw [2] and the connector cover [3].



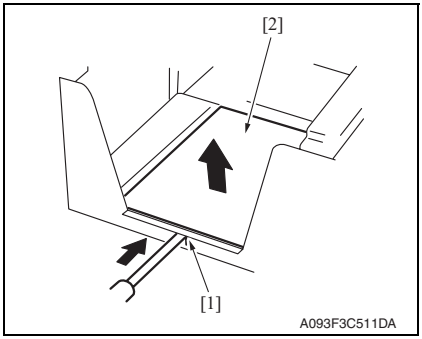
3. While raising the main tray [1], remove two screws [2] that hold the shift tray in position.

NOTE

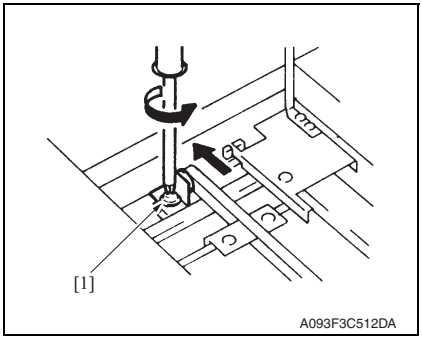
- **When reinstalling, use caution because the wire of the main tray [1] comes off easily.**



4. Remove two screws [1] and remove the shifter [2].



5. Push the tab [1] of the shift tray [2] as shown on the left and release the lock.
6. Remove the shift tray [2].



7. Loosen the screw [1] fixing the tension pulley assy as shown on the left and move it in the direction of the arrow.
8. After moving the shifter, tighten the fixing screw [1].

Blank Page

KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

JS-505

2009.07

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.
Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a specific section revised within text,  is shown at the left margin of the corresponding revised section.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

- To indicate clearly a specific page that contains a revision or revisions, the page number appearing at the left or right bottom of the specific page is marked with  .
  The number inside  represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2009/07	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

JS-505

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS 1

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE 3
2.1 Paper exit section 3
2.1.1 Cleaning of the roller and roll 3
3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM 4
3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted 4
3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list 5
3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure 5
3.3.1 Separator 5
3.3.2 Front cover 6
3.3.3 Rear left cover 7
3.3.4 Rear right cover 7
3.3.5 Upper tray 8
3.3.6 Paper guide plate 8
3.3.7 JS control board (JSCB) 9
3.3.8 Transport motor (M1) 9
3.3.9 Route change motor (M3) 10
3.3.10 Shift motor (M2) 11
3.3.11 Roller pressure/retraction clutch (CL1) 14

Blank Page

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Type	Built-in type 2-bin stacker
Installation	Installed in main body
Document alignment	Center

B. Functions

Modes	Sort, group, sort offset, group offset

C. Paper

Exit tray	Size	Type		Capacity
Lower tray	A6S, A5S/A5, B6S, B5S/B5, A4S/A4, B4, A3, A3 Wide, Post card S 5-1/2 X 8-1/2S/5-1/2 X 8-1/2, 8-1/2 X 11S/8-1/2 X 11, 8-1/2 X 14, 11 X 17, 12-1/4 X 18 Max.: 311.1 mm X 1200 mm 12.25 inch X 47.25 inch Min.: 90 mm X 139.7 mm 3.5 inch X 5.5 inch	Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m²) (16 to 24 lb)		150 sheets
		Special paper	Thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m²) (24.25 to 40 lb)	20 sheets
			Thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m²) (40.25 to 55.5 lb)	
			Thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m²) (55.75 to 68 lb)	
			Thick paper 4 (257 to 271 g/m²) (68.25 to 72 lb)	
			OHP film	
			Post card	
			Label	
			Envelope	10 sheets
			Long size paper	1 sheet
Upper tray	A5S, B5S/B5, A4S/A4, B4, A3 8-1/2 X 11S/8-1/2 X 11, 8-1/2 X 14, 11 X 17 Max.: 297 mm X 431.8 mm 11.75 inch X 17 inch Min.: 148 mm X 210 mm 5.75 inch X 8.25 inch	Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m²) (16 to 24 lb)		50 sheets

D. Offset function

Exit tray	Lower tray
Shift amount	30 mm
Types of paper to be used	Plain paper, Thick paper 1/2/3/4
Size	B5S/B5, A4S/A4, B4, A3 8-1/2 X 11S/8-1/2 X 11, 8-1/2 X 14, 11 X 17

E. Machine specifications

Power requirements	DC 24 V ± 10 % (supplied from the main body)
	DC5 V ± 5 %
Max. power consumption	40 W or less
Dimensions	423 mm (W) X 477 mm (D) X 129.5 mm (H) 16.75 inch (W) X 18.75 inch (D) X 5 inch (H) 543 mm (W) X 477 mm (D) X 129.5 mm (H) *1 21.5 inch (W) X 18.75 inch (D) X 5 inch (H) *1
Weight	5.0 kg (11 lb)

*1: Size when the paper exit tray is pulled out

F. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main body.

NOTE

- **These specifications are subject to change without notice.**

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE

2.1 Paper exit section

NOTE

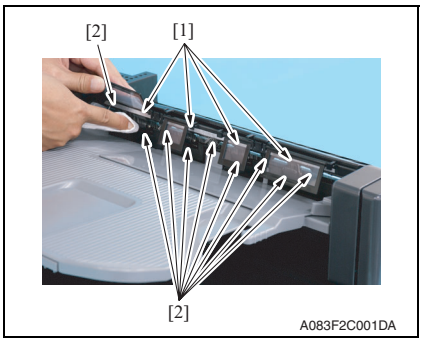
- **The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure of maintenance represents the isopropyl alcohol.**

2.1.1 Cleaning of the roller and roll

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

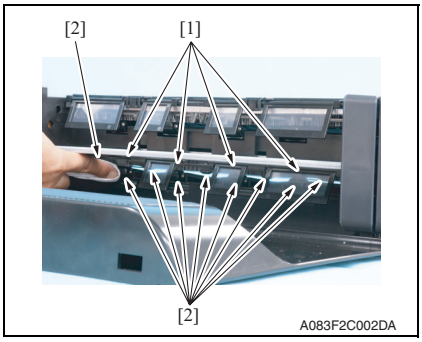
- Roller and roll: Every 300,000 prints

1. Remove the separator.
See P.5



2. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller [1] and roll [2].

3. Remove the upper tray.
See P.8



4. Using a cleaning pad dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller [1] and roll [2].

3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

A. Paint-locked screws

NOTE

- **To prevent loose screws, a screw lock in blue or green series color is applied to the screws.**
- **The screw lock is applied to the screws that may get loose due to the vibrations and loads created by the use of machine or due to the vibrations created during transportation.**
- **If the screw lock coated screws are loosened or removed, be sure to apply a screw lock after the screws are tightened.**

B. Red-painted screws

NOTE

- **The screws which are difficult to be adjusted in the field are painted in red in order to prevent them from being removed by mistake.**
- **Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.**

C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE

- **Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.**

D. Removal of PWBs

⚠ CAUTION

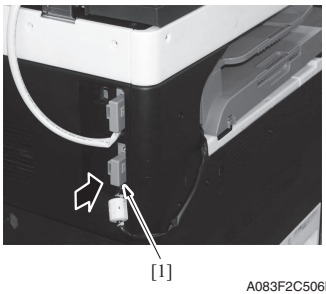
- **When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.**
- **The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.**
- **Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.**

3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list

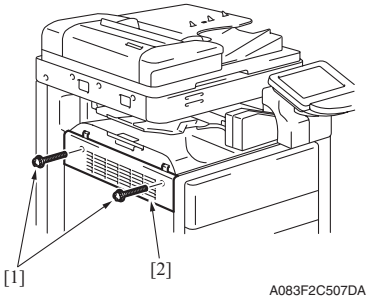
Section	Part name	Ref. page
Unit	Separator	P.5
Exterior parts	Front cover	P.6
	Rear left cover	P.7
	Rear right cover	P.7
	Upper tray	P.8
	Paper guide plate	P.8
Board	JS control board (JSCB)	P.9
Motors	Transport motor (M1)	P.9
	Route change motor (M3)	P.10
	Shift motor (M2)	P.11
Clutch	Roller pressure/retraction clutch (CL1)	P.14

3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure

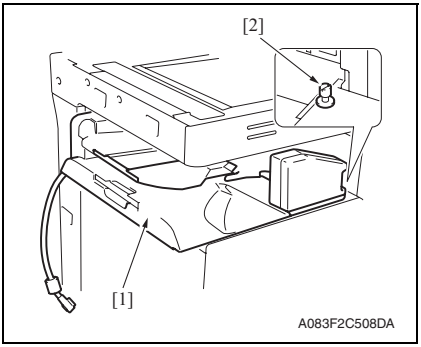
3.3.1 Separator



1. Disconnect the relay connector [1].



2. Remove two screws [1] and remove the mounting cover [2].



3. Remove the separator [1].

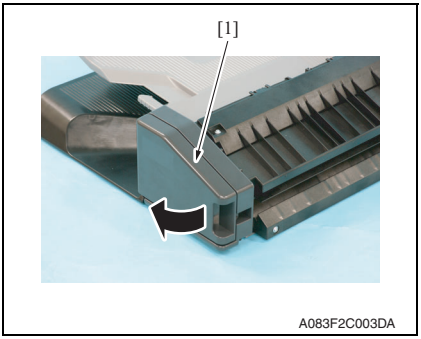
NOTE

- **When installing the job separator, align the U-groove on the job separator with the shoulder screw [2].**

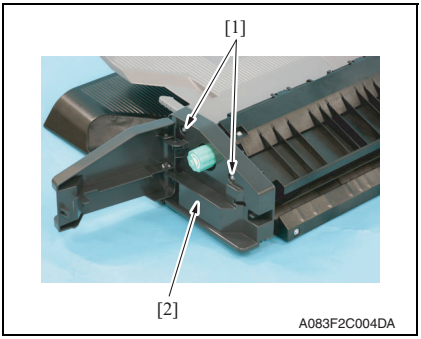
4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.2 Front cover

1. Remove the separator.
See P.5



2. Open the misfeed clearing cover [1].

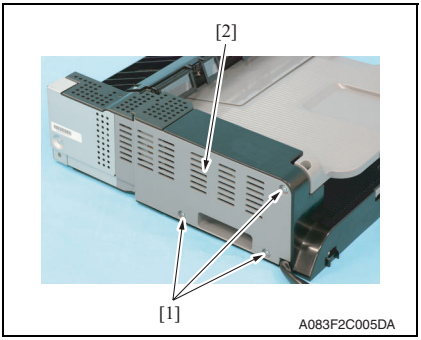


3. Remove two screws [1] and remove the front cover [2].

4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.3 Rear left cover

1. Remove the separator.
See P.5

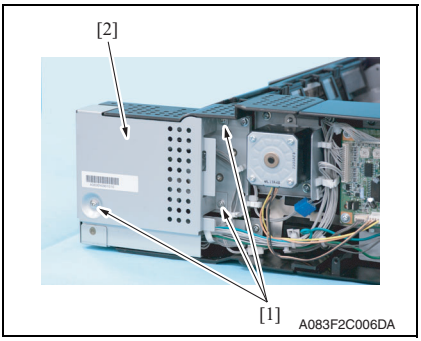


2. Remove three screws [1] and remove the rear left cover [2].

3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.4 Rear right cover

1. Remove the separator.
See P.5
2. Remove the rear left cover.
See P.7

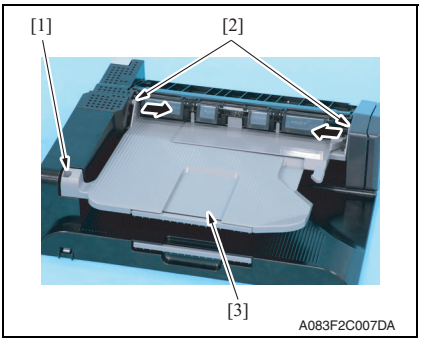


3. Remove three screws [1] and remove the rear right cover [2].

4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.5 Upper tray

1. Remove the separator.
See P.5

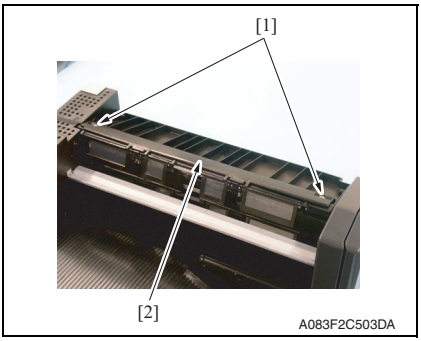


2. Remove the screw [1]. Push two protrusions [2] in the directions of the arrows and remove the upper tray [3].

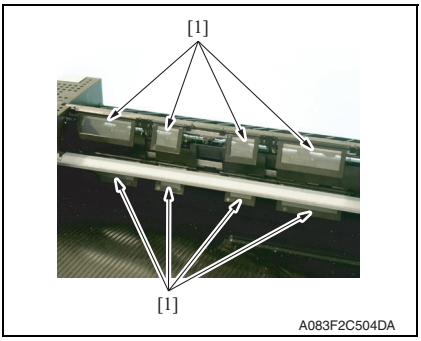
3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.6 Paper guide plate

1. Remove the separator.
See P.5
2. Remove the upper tray.
See P.8



3. Remove two screws [1] and remove the paper guide plate cover [2].



4. Remove eight paper guide plates [1].

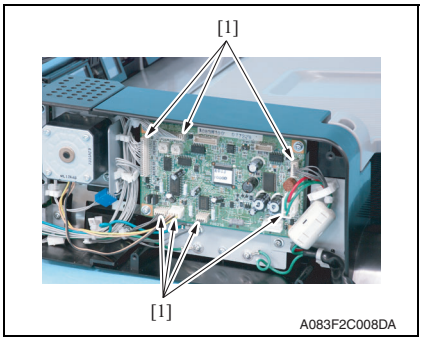
NOTE

- **When reinstalling the paper guide plates [1], make sure that the film side must face the roller.**

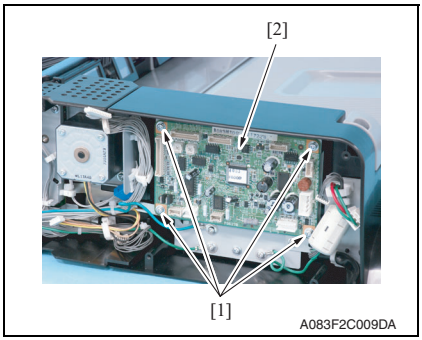
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.7 JS control board (JSCB)

1. Remove the separator.
See P.5
2. Remove the rear left cover.
See P.7



3. Disconnect all seven connectors [1] from the JS control board.

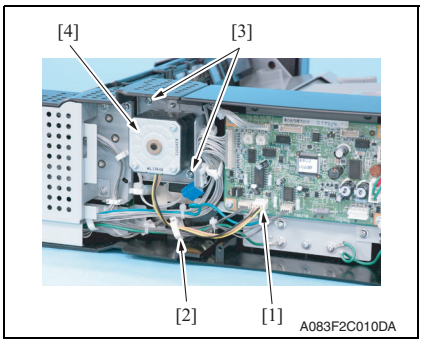


4. Remove four screws [1] and remove the JS control board [2].

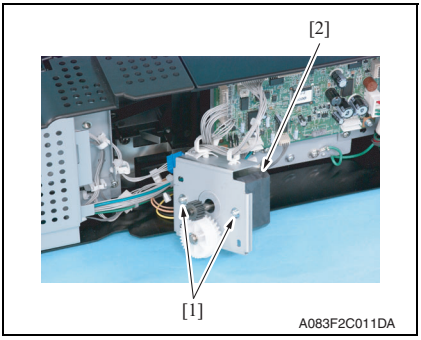
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.8 Transport motor (M1)

1. Remove the separator.
See P.5
2. Remove the rear left cover.
See P.7



3. Disconnect the connector [1] and remove the wire saddle [2].
4. Remove two screws [3] and remove the transport motor assy [4].

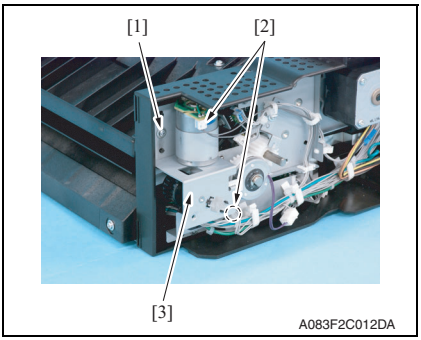


5. Remove two screws [1] and remove the transport motor [2].

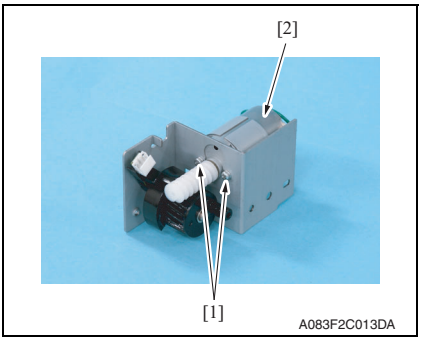
6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.9 Route change motor (M3)

1. Remove the separator.
See P.5
2. Remove the rear left cover.
See P.7
3. Remove the rear right cover.
See P.7



4. Remove the screw [1] and disconnect two connectors [2], and remove the route change motor assy [3].

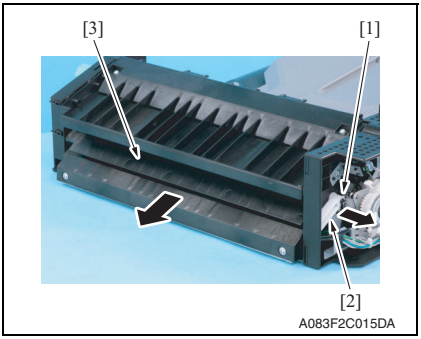


5. Remove two screws [1] and remove the route change motor [2].

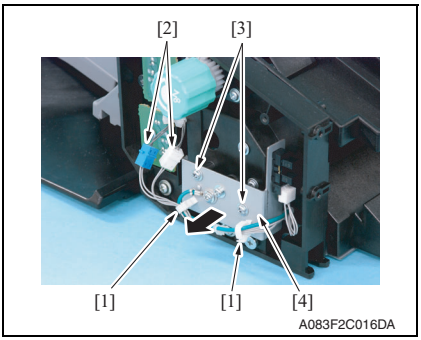
6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.10 Shift motor (M2)

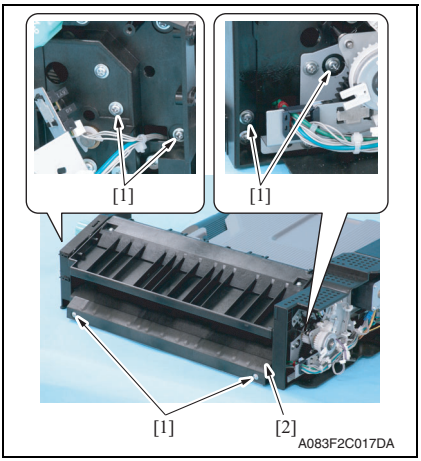
1. Remove the separator.
See P.5
2. Remove the front cover.
See P.6
3. Remove the route change motor.
See P.10



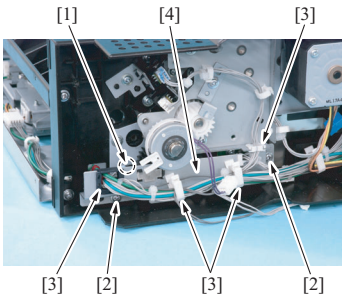
4. Remove the C-clip [1] and the lever [2], and remove the route change guide [3].



5. Remove two wire saddles [1], disconnect two connectors [2], and remove two screws [3]. Pull out the sensor assy [4] in the direction of the arrow.

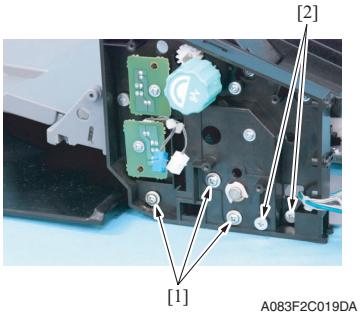


6. Remove six screws [1] and remove the transport guide/lower [2].



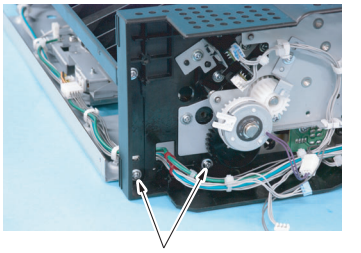
A083F2C018DA

7. Disconnect the connector [1], remove two screws [2], and remove the harness from four wire saddles [3]. Remove the sensor mounting plate assy [4].



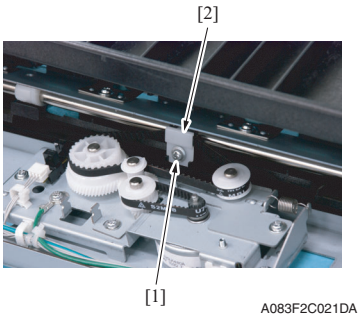
A083F2C019DA

8. Remove three screws [1] and two shoulder screws [2].



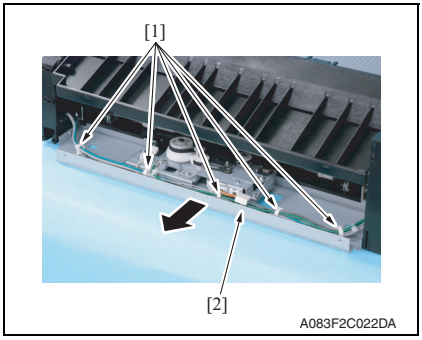
A083F2C020DA

9. Remove two screws [1].

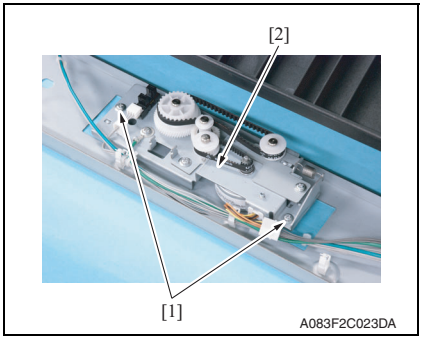


A083F2C021DA

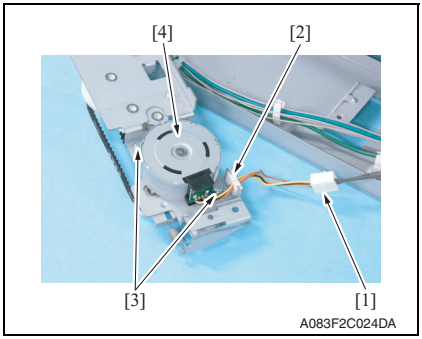
10. Remove the screw [1] and remove the belt fixed plate [2].



11. Remove five wire saddles [1] and pull out the shift drive section assy [2] in the direction of the arrow.



12. Remove two screws [1] and remove the shift motor assy [2].

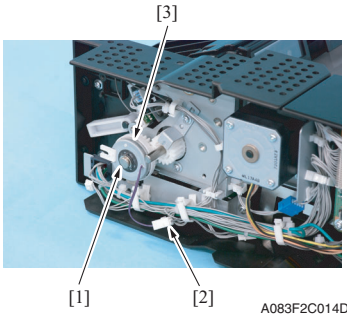


13. Disconnect the connector [1], remove wire saddle [2] and two screws [3], and remove the shift motor [4].

14. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.11 Roller pressure/retraction clutch (CL1)

1. Remove the route change motor.
See P.10



2. Remove the E-ring [1] and disconnect the connector [2], and remove the roller pressure/retraction clutch [3].

3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

FS-527

2009.07

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.
Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised,  is shown at the left margin of the revised section.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

- To indicate clearly a page that contains the revision, is shown near the page number of the corresponding page.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision
2009/07	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition

CONTENTS

FS-527

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS 1

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE 5
2.1 Paper exit section 5
2.1.1 Cleaning procedure for each parts 5
2.1.2 Replacing the upper paddles 6
2.1.3 Replacing the lower paddles 7
3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM 9
3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted 9
3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list 10
3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure 11
3.3.1 Upper cover 11
3.3.2 Rear cover 11
3.3.3 Front door 12
3.3.4 Front upper cover 12
3.3.5 Front lower cover 13
3.3.6 Finisher 14
3.3.7 Horizontal transport unit 15
3.3.8 Stapler unit 16
3.3.9 FS control board (FSCB) 17
3.3.10 Paper passage motor/1 (M1) 18
3.3.11 Duplex path switching motor (M2) 19
3.3.12 Exit motor (M5) 20
3.3.13 Paper passage motor/2 (M3) 22
3.3.14 Conveyance motor (M4) 23
3.3.15 Upper lower path switching motor (M6) 25
3.3.16 Tray1 path switching motor (M8) 25
3.3.17 Exit roller retraction motor (M9) 26
3.3.18 Accommodation roller retraction motor (M10) 27
3.3.19 Stapler movement motor (M11) 27
3.3.20 Accommodation paddle motor (M12) 28

3.3.21 Elevate motor (M15) 29
3.3.22 Tray2 shift motor (M16) 30
3.3.23 Accommodation paddle solenoid (SD1) 31

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Name	Multi staple finisher
Type	Freestanding
Document alignment	Center
Consumables	Staples

B. Functions

Modes	Sort, group, offset, group offset, sort staple

C. Paper type

(1) Non sort/sort/group

Type	Size	Weight	Max. capacity		
Plain paper Recycled paper	A6S, A5S/A5, B5S/B5, B6S, A4S/A4, B4, A3, A3Wide 5 1/2 x 8 1/2S/5 1/2 x 8 1/2, 8 1/2 x 11S/8 1/2 x 11, 8 1/2 x 14, 11 x 17, 12 1/4 x 18	60 to 90 g/m² 16 to 24 lb	Exit tray1	200 sheets	
			Exit tray2	A4S, 8 1/2 x 11S or less	3,000 sheets
				B4, 8 1/2 x 14 or greater	1,500 sheets
				A5S, 5 1/2 x 8 1/2S or less	500 sheets
Envelope	Tray1 (Sub tray) Max. 311.15 mm x 1200 mm 12.25 x 47.24 inch Min. 90 mm x 139.7 mm 3.54 x 5.5 inch Tray2 (Main tray) Max. 311.15 mm x 457.2 mm 12.25 x 18 inch Min. 100 mm x 139.7 mm 3.94 x 5.5 inch	—	20 sheets		
OHP transparencies		—			
Label		—			
Letterhead		—			
Thick paper 1		91 to 150 g/m² 24.25 to 40 lb			
Thick paper 2		151 to 209 g/m² 40.25 to 55.5 lb			
Thick paper 3		210 to 256 g/m² 55.75 to 68 lb			
Thick paper 4		257 to 271 g/m² 68.25 to 72 lb			
Long size paper *	210 mm to 297 mm x 457.2 mm to 1200 mm	127 to 160 g/m² 33.75 to 42.5 lb	—		

*: Long size paper is available only for non-sort mode.

(2) Sort offset/group offset

Type	Size	Weight	Max. capacity		
Plain paper Recycled paper	A5, B5S/B5, A4S/A4, B4, A3, A3Wide 8 1/2 x 11S/8 1/2 x 11, 8 1/2 x 14, 11 x 17, 12 1/4 x 18 Max. 311.15 mm x 457.2 mm 12.25 x 18 inch	60 to 90 g/m² 16 to 24 lb	Exit tray2	A4S, 8 1/2 x 11S or less	3,000 sheets *
				B4, 8 1/2 x 14 or greater	1,500 sheets
				A5	500 sheets
Thick paper	Min. 182 mm x 148.5 mm 7.17 x 5.85 inch	91 to 271 g/m² 24.25 to 72 lb	—		

*: 2,000 sheets when SD-509 is mounted

(3) Sort staple

Type	Size	Weight	No. of sheets to be stapled		Max. capacity		Max. No. of sheets to be stapled
					A4S, 8-1/2 X 11S or less	B4, 8-1/2 X 14 or greater	
Plain paper Recycled paper	A5, B5S/B5, A4S/A4, B4, A3 8 1/2 x 11S/8 1/2 x 11, 8 1/2 x 14, 11 x 17 Max. 297 mm x 431.8 mm 11.75 x 17 inch Min. 182 mm x 148.5 mm 7.25 x 5.75 inch	60 to 90 g/m² 16 to 24 lb	Exit tray2	2 to 9 sheets	100 copies	50 copies	50 sheets
				10 to 20 sheets	50 copies	50 copies	
				21 to 30 sheets	30 copies	30 copies	
				31 to 40 sheets	25 copies	25 copies	
				41 to 50 sheets	20 copies	20 copies	
Thick paper 1		91 to 209 g/m² 24.25 to 55.5 lb	—				30 sheets
Thick paper 2			—				15 sheets

D. Stapling

Staple filling mode	Dedicated staple cartridge (5000 staples)	
Stapling position	Back/Front of the corner (45 degree)	A4, A3 8 1/2 x 11, 11 x 17
	Back/Front of the corner (35 degree)	B5, B4
	Back/Front of the corner (Parallel)	A4S, B5S, A5 8 1/2 x 11S, 8 1/2 x 14
	Side: Parallel 2 point	A4S/A4, A3, B5S/B5, B4, A5 8 1/2 x 11S/8 1/2 x 11, 8 1/2 x 14, 11 x 17
Manual staple	None	

E. Machine specifications

Power requirements	DC 24 V ± 10 % (supplied from the main body)
Max. power consumption	56 W or less
Dimensions	528 (W) x 641 (D) x 1,025 (H) mm 20.79 (W) x 25.24 (D) x 40.35 (H) inch 658 (W) x 641 (D) x 1,087 (H) mm * 25.91 (W) x 25.24 (D) x 42.8 (H) inch *
Weight	42 kg (92.59 lb)

*: Size when the paper output tray is pulled out

F. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main body.

Blank Page

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE

2.1 Paper exit section

NOTE

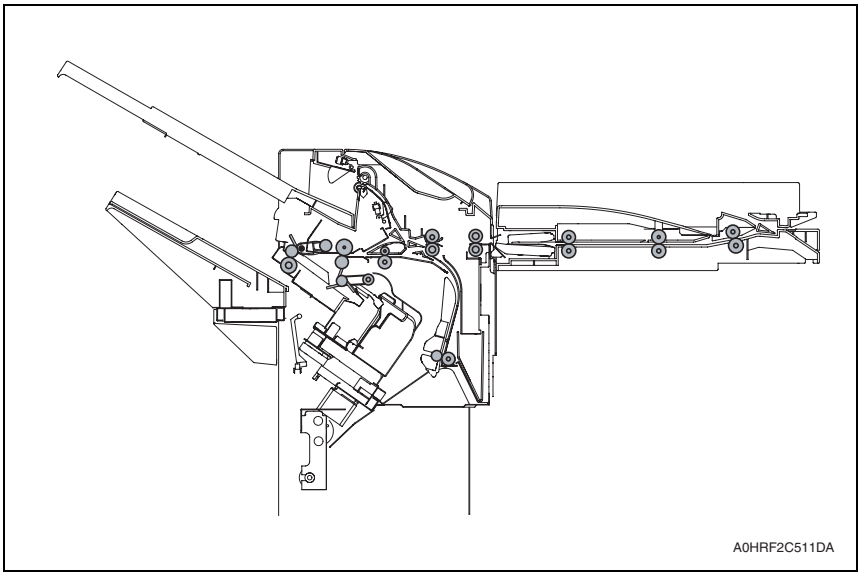
- **The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure of maintenance represents the isopropyl alcohol.**

2.1.1 Cleaning procedure for each parts

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Each rollers/Each rolls: Every 300,000 counts
- Paddle: Every 300,000 counts

B. Cleaning point



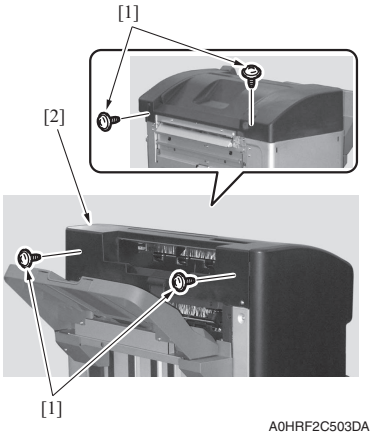
2.1.2 Replacing the upper paddles

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

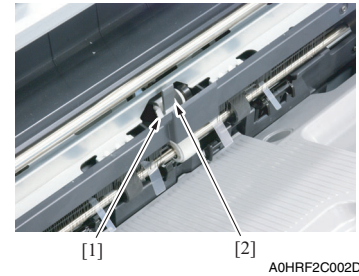
- Upper paddles: Every 800,000 counts

B. Procedure

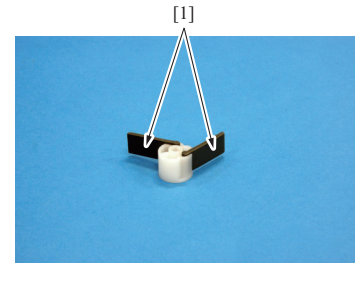
1. Open the front door of the finisher.



2. Remove four screws [1], and remove the upper cover [2].



3. Remove the C-clip [1], and remove the upper paddle assy [2].



4. Remove two paddles [1].

NOTE

- **When installing the paddles, use alcohol to moisten the surface of the paddles that are inserted into the grooves.**

5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

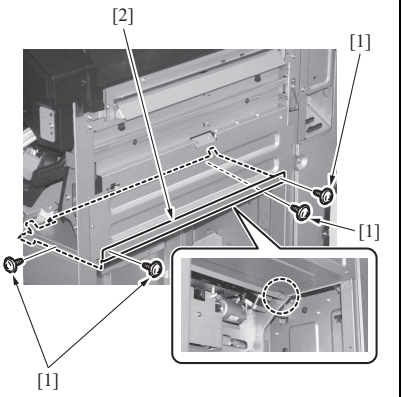
2.1.3 Replacing the lower paddles

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Lower paddles: Every 800,000 counts

B. Procedure

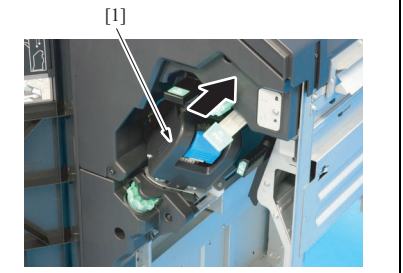
1. Remove the finisher.
See P.14
2. Open the front door of the finisher.



A0HRF2C504DA

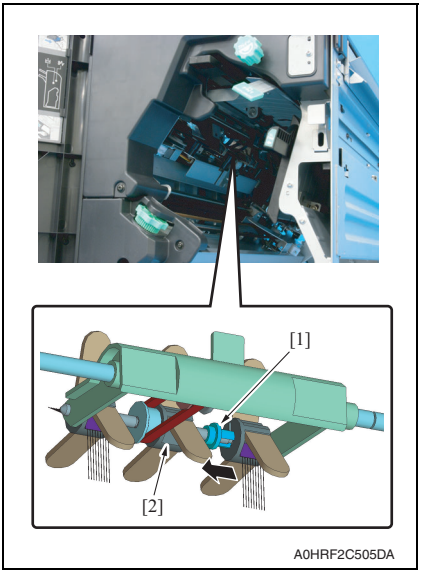
NOTE

- **In case SD-509 is not mounted, remove the four screws [1] and take out the plate [2].**

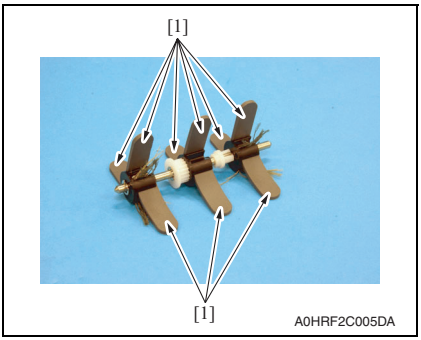


A0HRF2C004DA

3. Slide the stapler unit [1] backward.



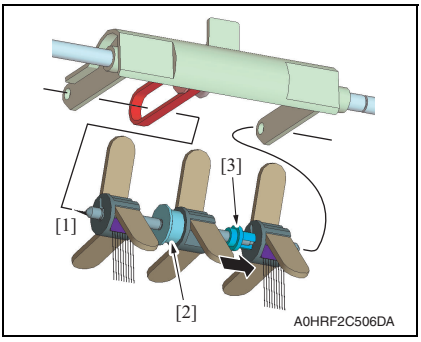
4. Move the stopper [1] forward, and release the lock.
5. Remove the lower paddle assy [2].



6. Remove nine paddles [1].

NOTE

- **When installing the paddles, use alcohol to moisten the surface of the paddles that are inserted into the grooves.**



7. Put the front side of the lower paddle Assy [1] through the belt.
8. Attach the lower paddle Assy to the arm and put the belt on the gear [2].
9. Move the stopper [3] to secure.

10. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

A. Paint-locked screws

NOTE

- **To prevent loose screws, a screw lock in blue or green series color is applied to the screws.**
- **The screw lock is applied to the screws that may get loose due to the vibrations and loads created by the use of machine or due to the vibrations created during transportation.**
- **If the screw lock coated screws are loosened or removed, be sure to apply a screw lock after the screws are tightened.**

B. Red-painted screws

NOTE

- **The screws which are difficult to be adjusted in the field are painted in red in order to prevent them from being removed by mistake.**
- **Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.**

C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE

- **Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.**

D. Removal of PWBs

⚠ CAUTION

- **When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.**
- **The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.**
- **Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.**

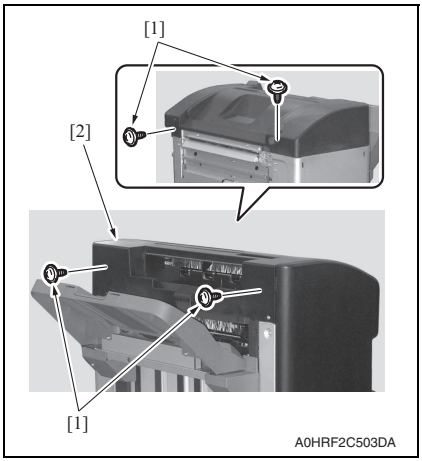
3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list

Section	Part name	Ref. page
Exterior parts	Upper cover	P.11
	Rear cover	P.11
	Front door	P.12
	Front upper cover	P.12
	Front lower cover	P.13
Units	Finisher	P.14
	Horizontal transport unit	P.15
	Stapler unit	P.16
Other	FS control board (FSCB)	P.17
	Paper passage motor/1 (M1)	P.18
	Duplex path switching motor (M2)	P.19
	Paper passage motor/2 (M3)	P.22
	Conveyance motor (M4)	P.23
	Exit motor (M5)	P.20
	Upper lower path switching motor (M6)	P.25
	Tray1 path switching motor (M8)	P.25
	Exit roller retraction motor (M9)	P.26
	Accommodation roller retraction motor (M10)	P.27
	Stapler movement motor (M11)	P.27
	Accommodation paddle motor (M12)	P.28
	Elevate motor (M15)	P.29
	Tray2 shift motor (M16)	P.30
	Accommodation paddle solenoid (SD1)	P.31

3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure

3.3.1 Upper cover

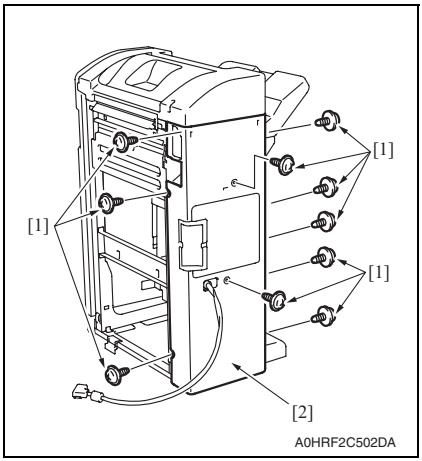
1. Open the front door.



2. Remove four screws [1], and remove the upper cover [2].

3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.2 Rear cover



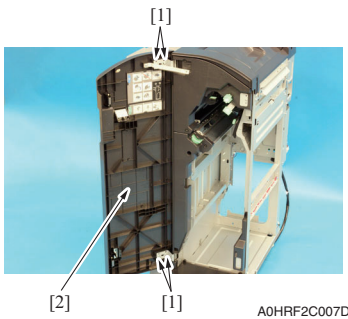
1. Remove ten screws [1], and remove the rear cover [2].

2. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.3 Front door



1. Remove the screw [1] and the plate [2].

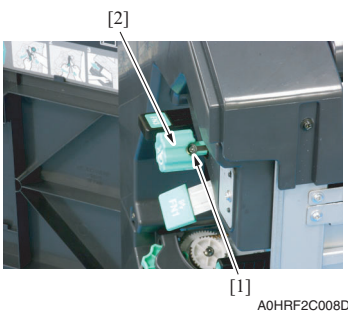


2. Remove four screws [1], and remove the front door [2].

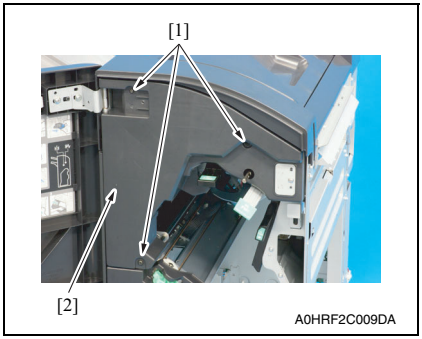
3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.4 Front upper cover

1. Remove the front door.
See P.12



2. Loosen the screw [1], and remove the dial (F2) [2].

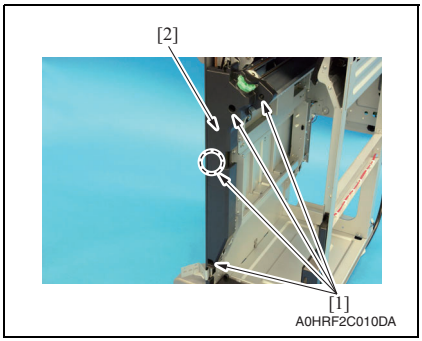


3. Remove three screws [1], and remove the front upper cover [2].

4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.5 Front lower cover

1. Remove the front door.
See P.12
2. Remove the front upper cover.
See P.12

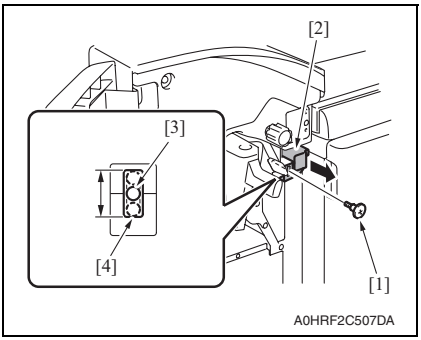


3. Remove four screws [1], and remove the front lower cover [2].

4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.6 Finisher

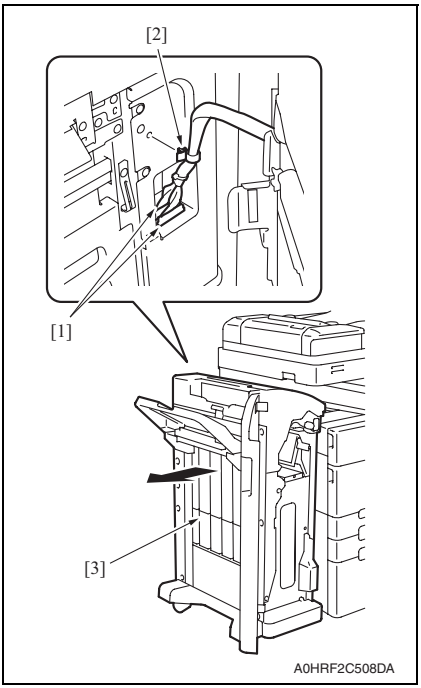
1. Open the front door.



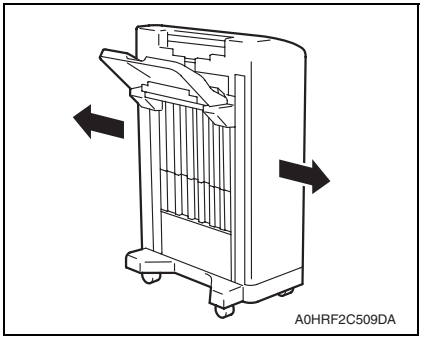
2. Remove the screw [1], and pull out the lever [2].

NOTE

- **At the time of the finisher installation, make sure that the screw hole [3] locates within the scope of the mounting hole of the lever [4].**



3. Disconnect two connectors [1].
4. Remove the cord clamp [2].
5. Remove the finisher [3] from the main body.



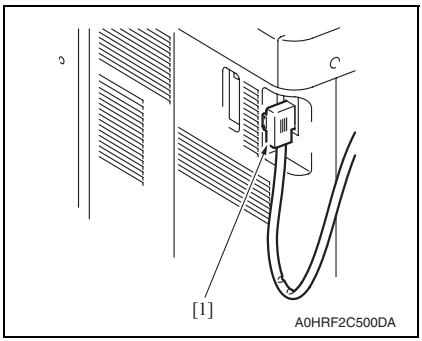
⚠ CAUTION

- **When transporting the finisher, make sure to push it to the direction as shown in the illustration. (to prevent turnover during transportation).**

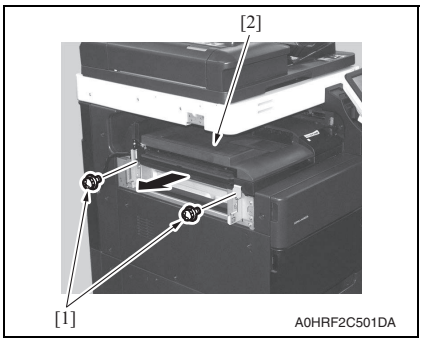
6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.7 Horizontal transport unit

1. Remove the finisher from the main body.
See P.14



2. Remove the relay connector [1].

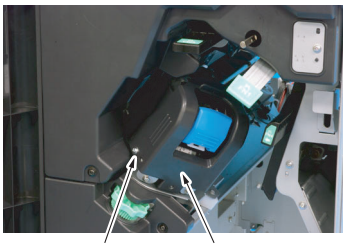


3. Remove two screws [1], and remove the horizontal transport unit [2].

4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

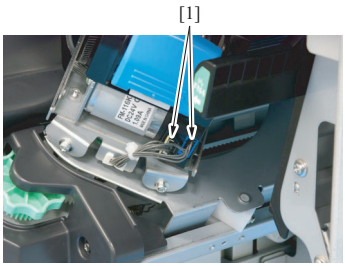
3.3.8 Stapler unit

1. Open the front door.



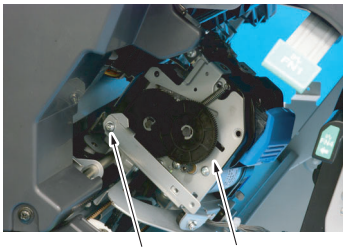
A0HRF2C011DA

2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the stapler unit cover [2].



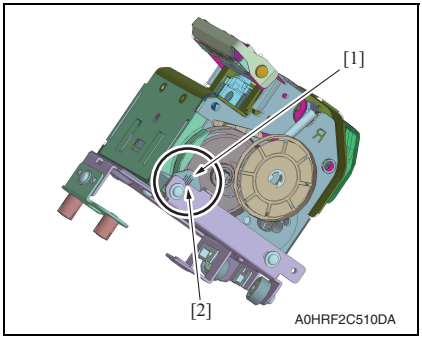
A0HRF2C012DA

3. Disconnect two connectors [1].



A0HRF2C013DA

4. Remove the screw [1], and remove the stapler unit [2].



NOTE

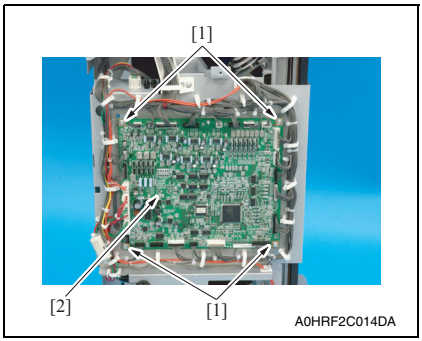
- **When installing the staple unit, make sure to adjust the mark-off line [1] with the notch [2].**

5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.9 FS control board (FSCB)

1. Remove the finisher from the main body.
See P.14

2. Remove the rear cover.
See P.11



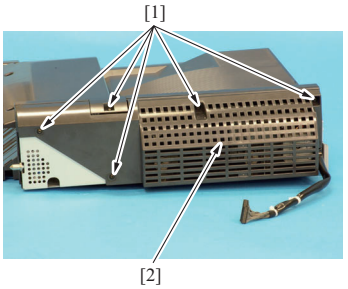
3. Remove all connectors from the FS control board.

4. Remove four screws [1], and remove the FS control board [2].

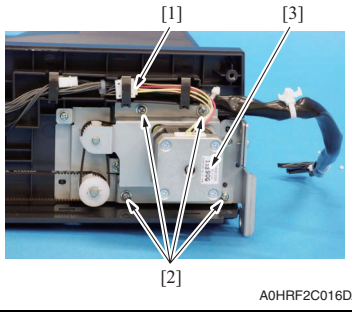
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.10 Paper passage motor/1 (M1)

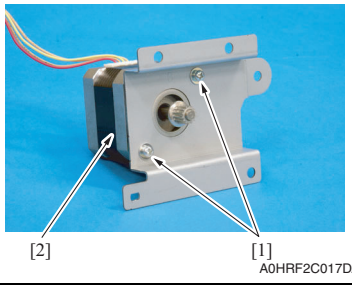
1. Remove the finisher from the main body.
See P.14
2. Remove the horizontal transport unit.
See P.15



3. Remove five screws [1], and remove the rear cover [2] of the horizontal transport unit.



4. Disconnect the connector [1].
5. Remove four screws [2], and remove the paper passage motor assy [3].

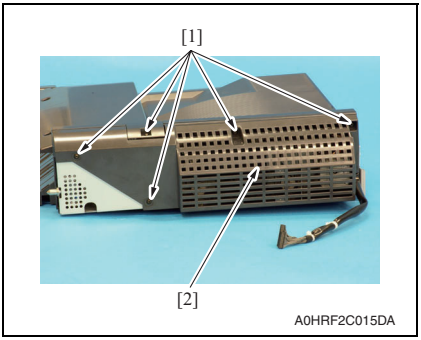


6. Remove two screws [1], and remove the paper passage motor/1 [2].

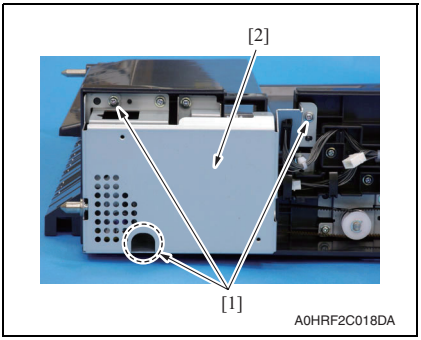
7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.11 Duplex path switching motor (M2)

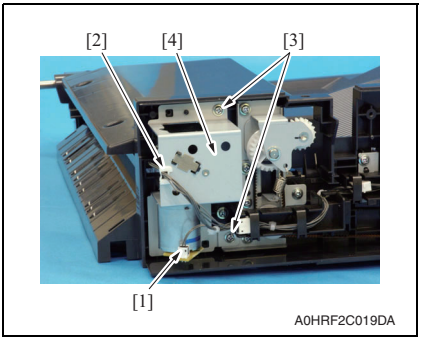
1. Remove the finisher from the main body.
See P.14



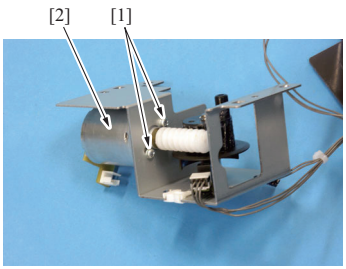
2. Remove five screws [1], and remove the rear cover [2] of the horizontal transport unit.



3. Remove three screws [1], and remove the plate [2].



4. Disconnect the connector [1].
5. Remove the harness from the edge cover [2].
6. Remove two screws [3], and remove the duplex path switching motor assy [4].

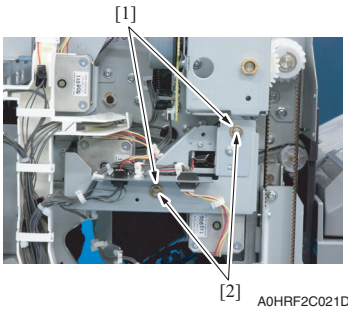


7. Remove two screws [1], and remove the duplex path switching motor [2].

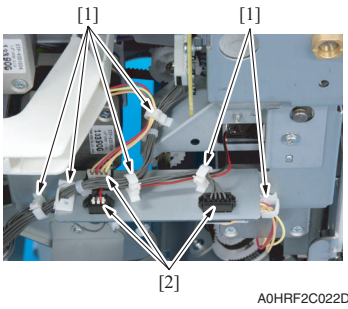
8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.12 Exit motor (M5)

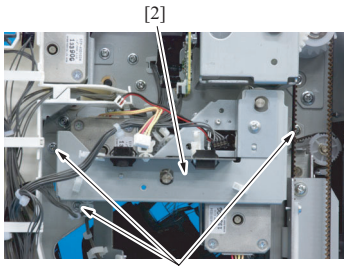
1. Remove the finisher from the main body.
See P.14
2. Remove the upper cover.
See P.11
3. Remove the rear cover.
See P.11
4. Remove the accommodation paddle motor.
See P.28



5. Remove two E-rings [1] and two bushings [2].

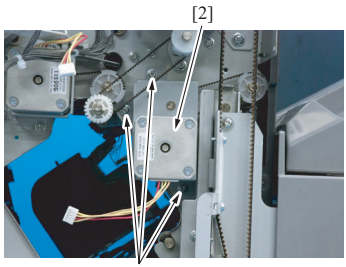


6. Remove the harness from six wire saddles [1].
7. Disconnect three connectors [2].



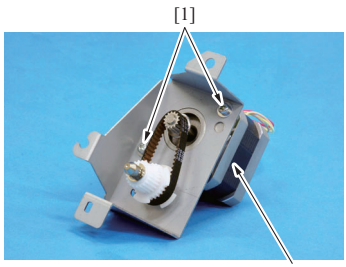
A0HRF2C023DA

8. Remove three screws [1], and remove the plate [2].



A0HRF2C024DA

9. Remove three screws [1], and remove the exit motor assy [2].



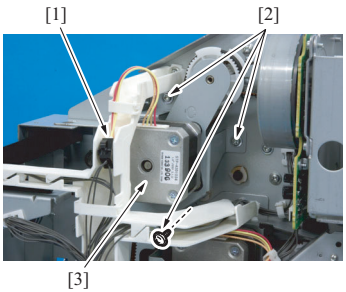
A0HRF2C025DA

10. Remove two screws [1], and remove the exit motor [2].

11. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

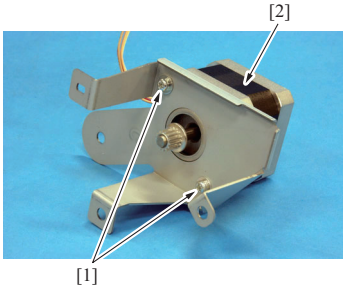
3.3.13 Paper passage motor/2 (M3)

1. Remove the finisher from the main body.
See P.14
2. Remove the upper cover.
See P.11
3. Remove the rear cover.
See P.11



A0HRF2C026DA

4. Disconnect the connector [1].
5. Remove three screws [2], and remove the paper passage motor/2 assy [3].



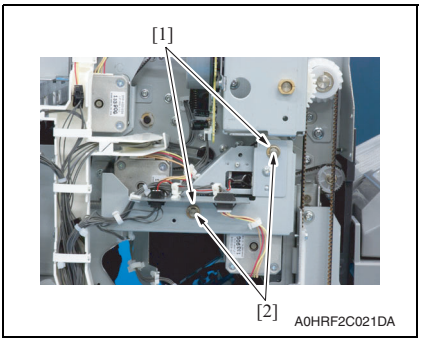
A0HRF2C027DA

6. Remove two screws [1], and remove the paper passage motor/2 [2].

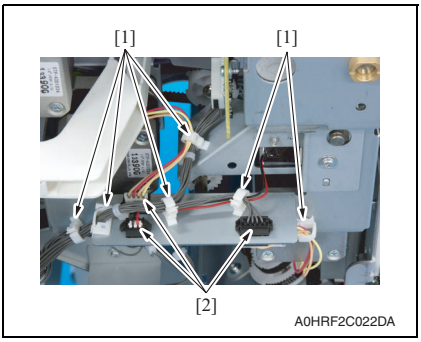
7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.14 Conveyance motor (M4)

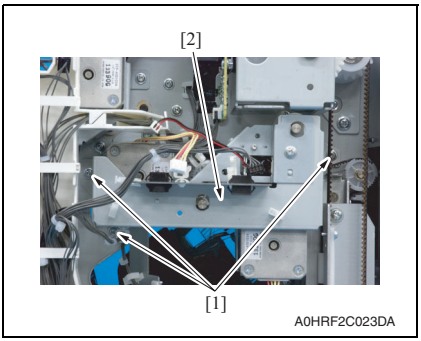
1. Remove the finisher from the main body.
See P.14
2. Remove the upper cover.
See P.11
3. Remove the rear cover.
See P.11
4. Remove the accommodation paddle motor.
See P.28



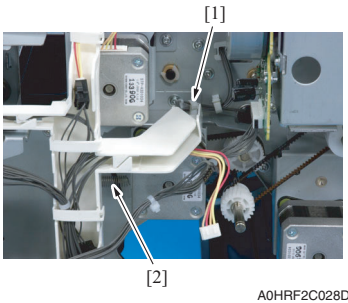
5. Remove two E-rings [1] and two bushings [2].



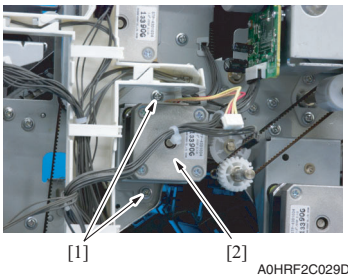
6. Remove the harness from six wire saddles [1].
7. Disconnect three connectors [2].



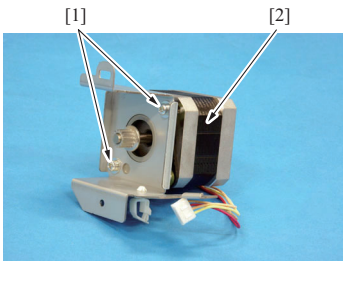
8. Remove three screws [1], and remove the plate [2].



9. Remove the harness from the wire saddles [1].
10. Remove the spring [2].



11. Remove two screws [1], and remove the conveyance motor assy [2].

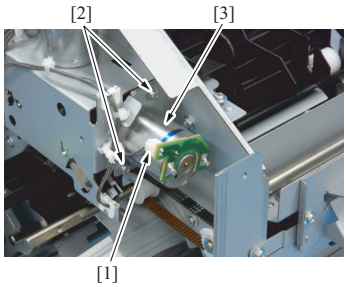


12. Remove two screws [1], and remove the conveyance motor [2].

13. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.15 Upper lower path switching motor (M6)

1. Remove the upper cover.
See P.11
2. Remove the front upper cover.
See P.12

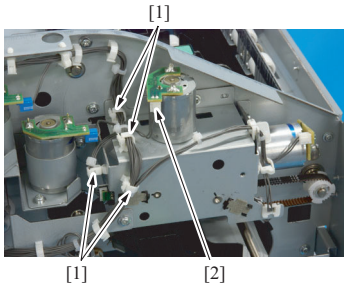


3. Disconnect the connector [1].
4. Remove two screws [2], and remove the upper lower path switching motor [3].

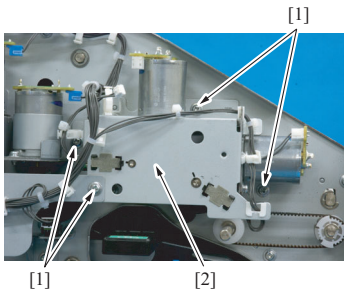
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.16 Tray1 path switching motor (M8)

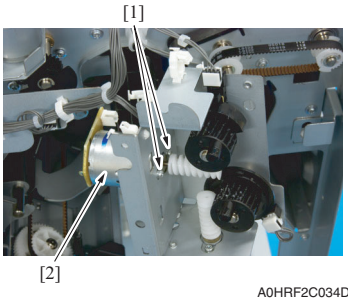
1. Remove the upper cover.
See P.11
2. Remove the front upper cover.
See P.12



3. Remove the harness from four wire saddles [1].
4. Disconnect the connector [2].



5. Remove four screws [1], and remove the tray1 path switching motor assy [2].

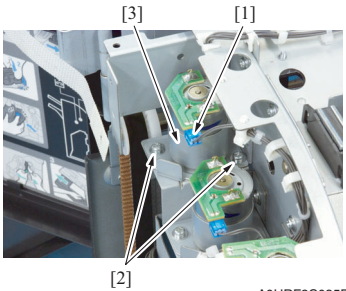


6. Remove two screws [1], and remove the tray1 path switching motor [2].

7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.17 Exit roller retraction motor (M9)

1. Remove the upper cover.
See P.11
2. Remove the front upper cover.
See P.12

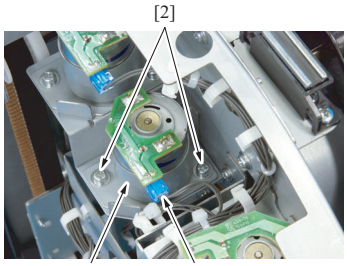


3. Disconnect the connector [1].
4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the exit roller retraction motor [2].

5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.18 Accommodation roller retraction motor (M10)

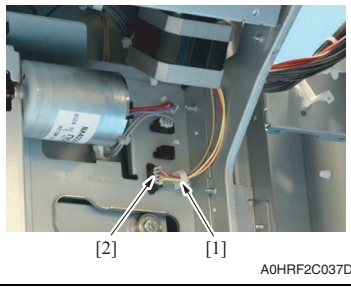
1. Remove the upper cover.
See P.11
2. Remove the front upper cover.
See P.12



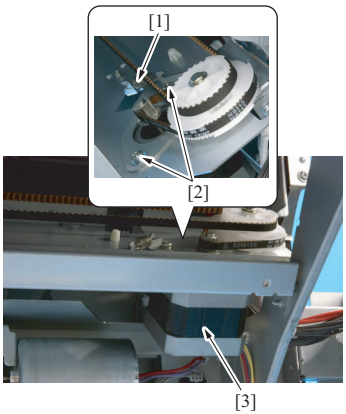
3. Disconnect the connector [1].
4. Remove two screws [2], and remove the accommodation roller retraction motor [3].
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.19 Stapler movement motor (M11)

1. Remove the finisher from the main body.
See P.14
2. Remove the upper cover.
See P.11
3. Remove the rear cover.
See P.11



4. Remove the harness from four wire saddles [1].
5. Disconnect the connector [2].

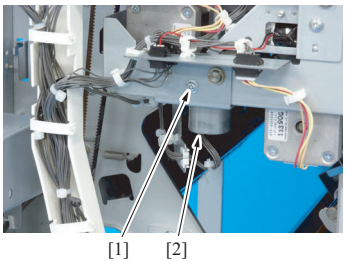


6. Remove the spring [1].
7. Remove two screws [2], and remove the stapler movement motor [3].

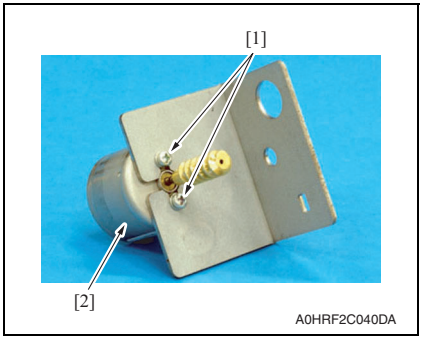
8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.20 Accommodation paddle motor (M12)

1. Remove the finisher from the main body.
See P.14
2. Remove the upper cover.
See P.11
3. Remove the rear cover.
See P.11



4. Remove the screw [1].
5. Disconnect the connector [2].

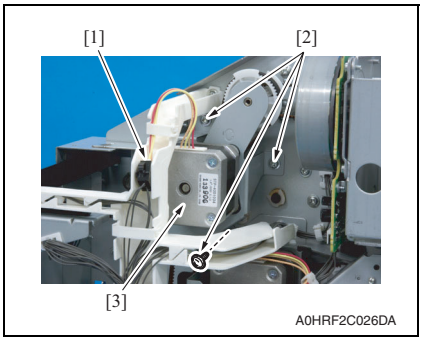


6. Remove two screws [1], and remove the accommodation paddle motor [2].

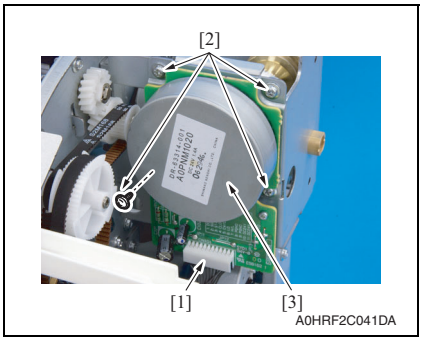
7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.21 Elevate motor (M15)

1. Remove the finisher from the main body.
See P.14
2. Remove the upper cover.
See P.11
3. Remove the rear cover.
See P.11



4. Disconnect the connector [1].
5. Remove three screws [2], and remove the elevate motor assy [3].

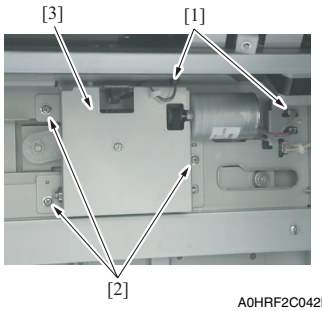


6. Disconnect the connector [1].
7. Remove four screws [2], and remove the elevate motor [3].

8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

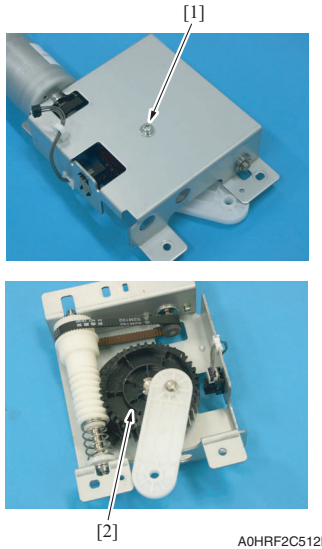
3.3.22 Tray2 shift motor (M16)

1. Remove the finisher from the main body.
See P.14



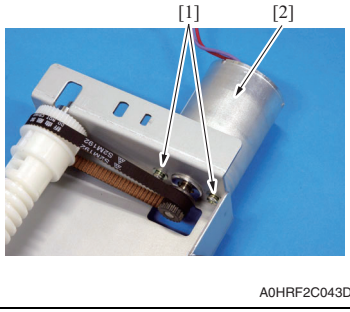
A0HRF2C042DA

2. Disconnect two connectors [1].
3. Remove three screws [2], and remove the tray2 shift motor assy [3].



A0HRF2C512DA

4. Remove the screw [1], and remove the gear assy [2].

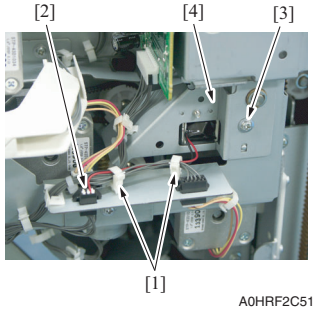


A0HRF2C043DA

5. Remove two screws [1], and remove the tray2 shift motor [2].
6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

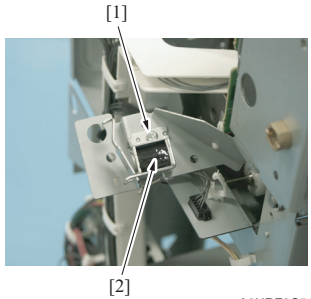
3.3.23 Accommodation paddle solenoid (SD1)

1. Remove the finisher from the main body.
See P.14
2. Remove the upper cover.
See P.11
3. Remove the rear cover.
See P.11



A0HRF2C513DA

4. Remove the harness from two wire saddles [1].
5. Disconnect the connector [2].
6. Remove the screw [3], and remove the plate [4].



A0HRF2C514DA

7. Remove the screw [1], and remove the accommodation paddle solenoid [2].

8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

Blank Page

KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

PK-517

2009.07

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.
Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised,  is shown at the left margin of the revised section.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

- To indicate clearly a page that contains the revision, is shown near the page number of the corresponding page.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision
2009/07	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition

CONTENTS

PK-517

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS 1

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE 3
3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM 4
3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted 4
3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list 5
3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure 5
3.3.1 Punch kit 5

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. HOW TO USE THE ADJUSTMENT SECTION 7
5. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT 8
5.1 Mechanical adjustment of the punch section 8
5.1.1 Punch hole deviation correction 8

Blank Page

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Name	Punch kit
Type	FS-integrated type punching operation device

B. Functions

Punching method	Stops and punches every paper
No. of holes	2-3 holes / 4 holes / Sweden 4 holes
Hole diameter/pitch	2 holes / ϕ 8.0 mm / 70 mm pitch - 3 holes / ϕ 8.0 mm / 108 mm pitch 4 holes / ϕ 6.5 mm / 80 mm pitch Sweden 4 holes / ϕ 6.5 mm / 70 mm, 21 mm pitch
Supported mode	Punch mode
Applicable post processing mode	Sort, group, staple

C. Paper type

Size	2 hole punch setting: 11 x 17, 8-$^1/_2$ x 14, 8-$^1/_2$ x 11/8-$^1/_2$ x 11S 3 hole punch setting: 11 x 17, 8-$^1/_2$ x 11 4 hole punch setting: A3, B4, A4, B5 Sweden 4 hole punch setting: A3, B4, A4/A4S, B5
Supported paper	Plain paper, bond paper, thick paper 1/2/3 (Main unit specifications prioritized)
Weight	60 to 256 g/m^2
Punch prohibited paper	Label paper, tab paper, transparency film, 2nd base paper, holed paper, and the other paper that may interfere with the operation of the punch kit or the punch blade

D. Machine specifications

Power requirements	DC 24 V (supplied from the main body)
	DC 5 V (supplied from the main body)
Max. power consumption	30 W or less
Dimensions	58 mm (W) x 470 mm (D) x 135 mm (H) 2.28 inch (W) x 18.50 inch (D) x 5.31 inch (H)
Weight	1.8 kg (3.97 lb)

E. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main body.

NOTE

- **These specifications are subject to change without notice.**

Blank Page

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE

- Periodically replaced parts are not employed.

3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

A. Paint-locked screws

NOTE

- **To prevent loose screws, a screw lock in blue or green series color is applied to the screws.**
- **The screw lock is applied to the screws that may get loose due to the vibrations and loads created by the use of machine or due to the vibrations created during transportation.**
- **If the screw lock coated screws are loosened or removed, be sure to apply a screw lock after the screws are tightened.**

B. Red-painted screws

NOTE

- **The screws which are difficult to be adjusted in the field are painted in red in order to prevent them from being removed by mistake.**
- **Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.**

C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE

- **Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.**

D. Removal of PWBs

⚠ CAUTION

- **When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.**
- **The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.**
- **Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.**

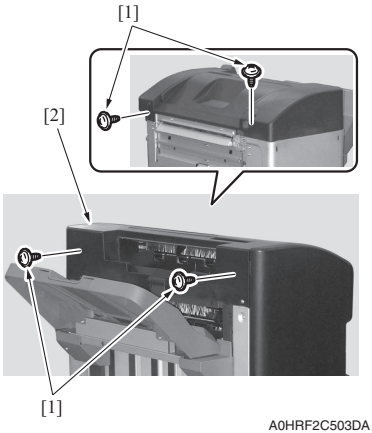
3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list

Section	Part name	Ref. page
Unit	Punch kit	P.5

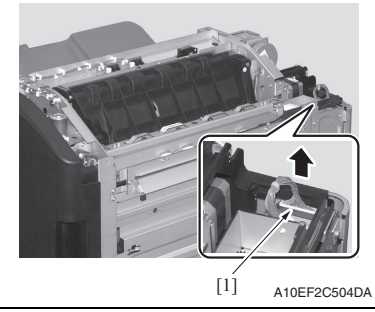
3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure

3.3.1 Punch kit

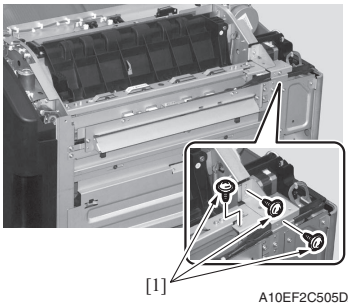
1. Remove the finisher from the main body.



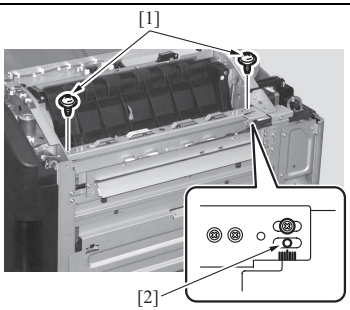
2. Remove four screws [1], and remove the finisher upper cover [2].



3. Disconnect the connector [1].



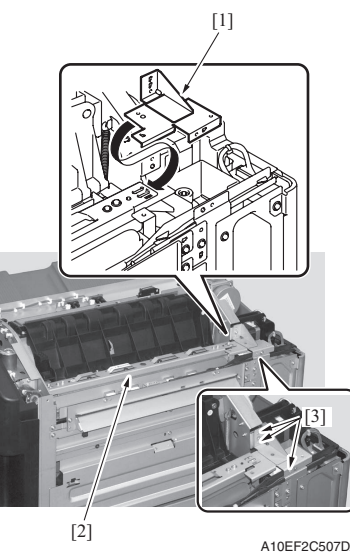
4. Remove three screws [1].



5. Remove two screws [1].

NOTE

- **At the time of installation, secure it by adjusting the plate dowel [2] to the center of the stamp mark.**



6. Remove the plate [1], and remove the punch kit [2].

NOTE

- **At the time of installation, align the position of the three dowel holes of the plate [3].**

7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. HOW TO USE THE ADJUSTMENT SECTION

- "Adjustment/Setting" contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this "Adjustment/Setting," the default settings are indicated by " ".

Advance checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The original glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

⚠ CAUTION

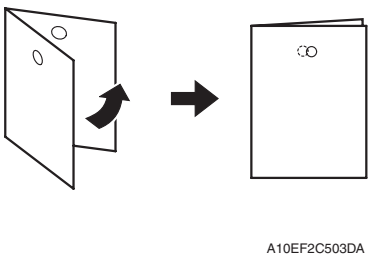
- **Be sure to unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the scanner cables or gears of the exposure unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the fusing unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The developing unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

5. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

5.1 Mechanical adjustment of the punch section

5.1.1 Punch hole deviation correction

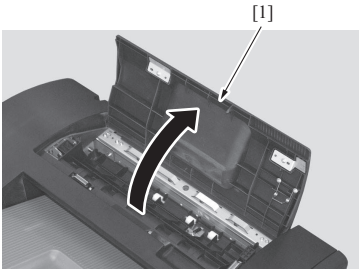
- **This adjustment must be made in the following case:**
  The punch holes are on a slanted line.



A10EF2C503DA

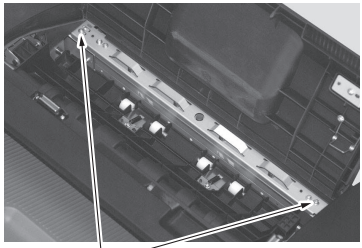
1. Set the mode to Punch mode for printing.
2. Hold the output paper half and check the displacement of the punch hole.
   Standard value: 0 ± 2.0 mm

3. In case the figure exceeds the above mentioned standard value, follow the procedures shown below.



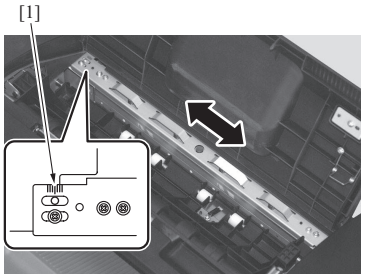
A10EF2C502DA

4. Open the upper cover [1].



A10EF2C500DA

- Loosen two screws [1].



A10EF2C501DA

- Move the punch unit forward or backward for adjustment referring the mark-off line [1].

Blank Page

KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

SD-509

2010.01

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 2.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.
Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised,  is shown at the left margin of the revised section.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

- To indicate clearly a page that contains the revision, is shown near the page number of the corresponding page.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision
2010/01	2.0		Error correction
2009/07	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition

CONTENTS

SD-509

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS 1

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE 3
3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM 4
3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted 4
3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list 5
3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure 5
3.3.1 Front cover 5
3.3.2 Right cover 6
3.3.3 Staple unit cover 6
3.3.4 Saddle unit 7
3.3.5 Paper exit tray 10
3.3.6 Staple unit 11
3.3.7 SD drive board (SDDB) 12
3.3.8 Leading edge stopper motor (M20) 13
3.3.9 Upper paddle motor (M21) 14
3.3.10 Lower paddle motor (M22) 15
3.3.11 Center staple alignment motor/R (M23) 16
3.3.12 Center staple alignment motor/F (M24) 17
3.3.13 Center fold roller motor (M25) 18
3.3.14 Center fold plate motor (M26) 18
3.3.15 Leading edge grip solenoid (SD3) 19

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. HOW TO USE THE ADJUSTMENT SECTION 21
5. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT 22
5.1 Mechanical adjustment of the paper exit section 22
5.1.1 Half-fold skew adjustment 22

Blank Page

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Name	Saddle sticher SD-509
Type	Built into the finisher
Installation	Screwed to the finisher
Document alignment	Center
Stapling function	Center parallel two points

B. Paper

(1) Saddle stitching

Type	Plain paper, Thick paper 1, Thick paper 2
Size	A3, B4, A4S, A3 Wide, 11 x 17, 8-$^1/_2$ x 14, 8-$^1/_2$ x 11S Min: 210 mm x 279.4 mm, 8.27 inch X 11 inch Max: 311.15 mm x 457.2 mm, 12.25 inch X 18 inch
Max. saddle stitching capacity	15 sheets (60 g/m^2 to 90 g/m^2 , 16 to 24 lb)
	14 sheets (60 g/m^2 to 90 g/m^2 , 16 to 24 lb) + 1 sheet (60 g/m^2 to 209 g/m^2 , 16 to 55.5 lb)

(2) Folding

Type	Plain paper
Size	A3, B4, A4S, A3 Wide, 11 x 17, 8-$^1/_2$ x 14, 8-$^1/_2$ x 11S Min: 210 mm x 279.4 mm, 8.27 inch X 11 inch Max: 311.15 mm x 457.2 mm, 12.25 inch X 18 inch
Max. number of sheets folded together	3 sheets (60 g/m^2 to 90 g/m^2 , 16 to 24 lb)

C. Machine specifications

Dimensions	239 mm (W) x 579 mm (D) x 534 mm (H) 9.41 inch (W) x 22.80 inch (D) x 21.02 inch (H)
Weight	24 kg (52.91 lb)

D. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main body.

E. Consumables

- Staples 5,000 (SK-602: Staple kit)

NOTE

- **These specifications are subject to change without notice.**

Blank Page

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE

- Periodically replaced parts are not employed.

3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

A. Paint-locked screws

NOTE

- **To prevent loose screws, a screw lock in blue or green series color is applied to the screws.**
- **The screw lock is applied to the screws that may get loose due to the vibrations and loads created by the use of machine or due to the vibrations created during transportation.**
- **If the screw lock coated screws are loosened or removed, be sure to apply a screw lock after the screws are tightened.**

B. Red-painted screws

NOTE

- **The screws which are difficult to be adjusted in the field are painted in red in order to prevent them from being removed by mistake.**
- **Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.**

C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE

- **Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.**

D. Removal of PWBs

⚠ CAUTION

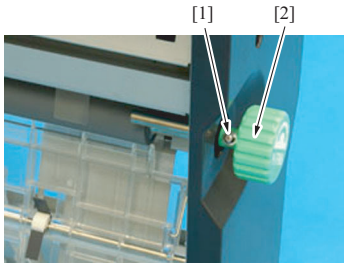
- **When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.**
- **The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.**
- **Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.**

3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list

Section	Part name	Ref. page
Exterior parts	Front cover	P.5
	Right cover	P.6
	Staple unit cover	P.6
Units	Saddle unit	P.7
	Paper exit tray	P.10
	Staple unit	P.11
Board and etc.	SD drive board (SDDB)	P.12
	Leading edge stopper motor (M20)	P.13
	Upper paddle motor (M21)	P.14
	Lower paddle motor (M22)	P.15
	Center staple alignment motor/R (M23)	P.16
	Center staple alignment motor/F (M24)	P.17
	Center fold roller motor (M25)	P.18
	Center fold plate motor (M26)	P.18
	Leading edge grip solenoid (SD3)	P.19

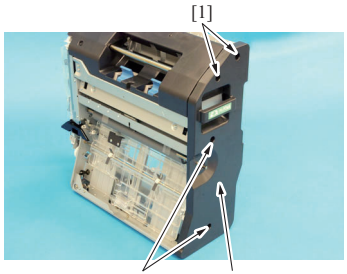
3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure

3.3.1 Front cover



A10DF2C001DA

1. Remove the screw [1], and remove the jam clearing dial [2].

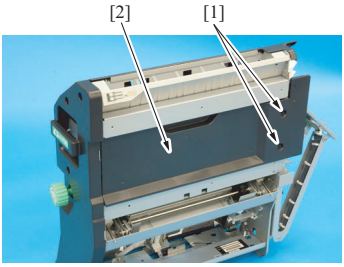


A10DF2C002DA

2. Remove four screws [1], and remove the front cover [2].
3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.2 Right cover

1. Remove the saddle unit.
See P.7



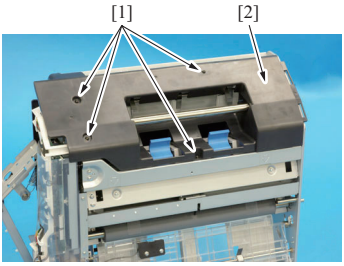
A10DF2C003DA

2. Remove two screws [1], and remove the right cover [2].

3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.3 Staple unit cover

1. Remove the saddle unit.
See P.7
2. Remove the front cover.
See P.5



A10DF2C004DA

3. Remove four screws [1], and remove the staple unit cover [2].

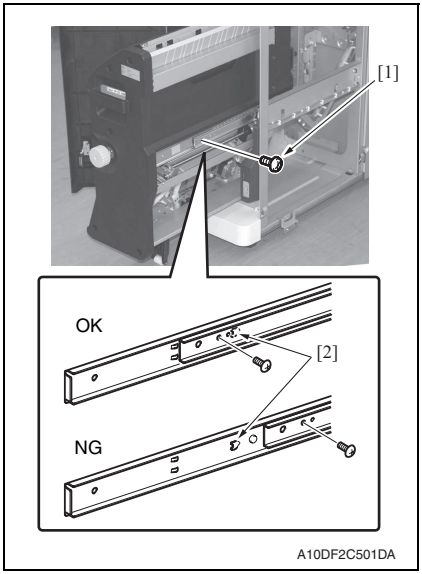
4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.4 Saddle unit

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be careful not to catch your finger in the edge of the rail when mounting the saddle unit on the right rail for the saddle unit installation.**
- **Be careful not to jam your finger in the connecting section of the pantograph.**

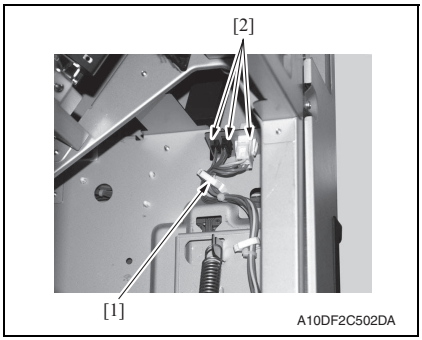
1. Remove the finisher.
See P.15 of the FS-527 service manual.



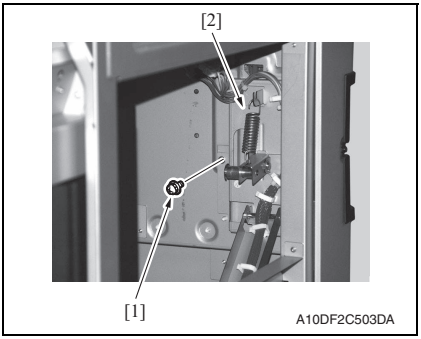
2. Open the front door of the finisher.
3. Pull out the saddle unit.
4. Remove the screw [1].

NOTE

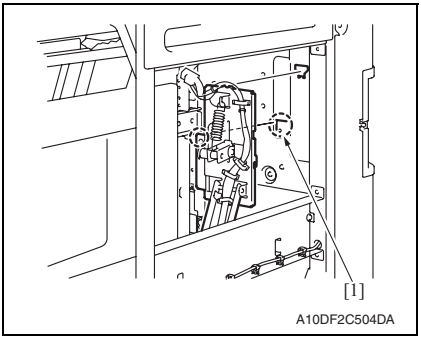
- **For installation of the saddle unit, install the screw after confirming that the protruding portion of the rail [2] locates behind the screw hole.**



5. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [1].
6. Disconnect three connectors [2].

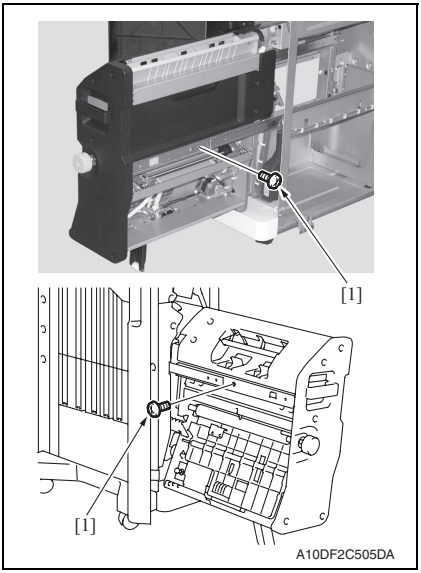


7. Remove the screw [1], and remove the pantograph [2].

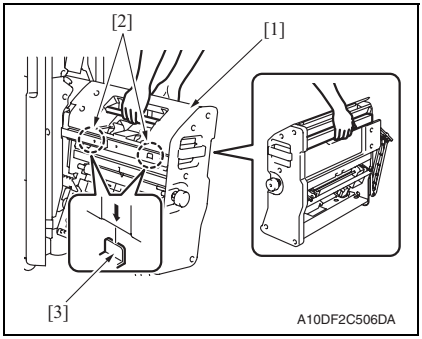


NOTE

- **For installation of the pantograph, insert two hooks on the pantograph of the saddle unit into the back holes inside the finisher referring the punch mark [1].**



8. Remove two screws [1].

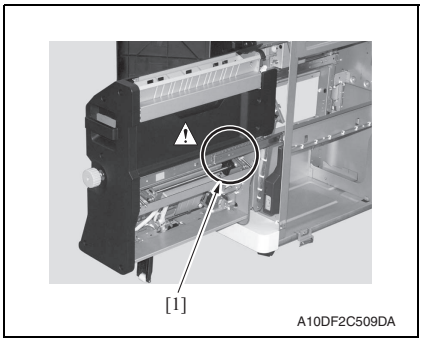


9. Grip the portion as shown in the illustration [1] to raise the saddle unit and take it out.

NOTE

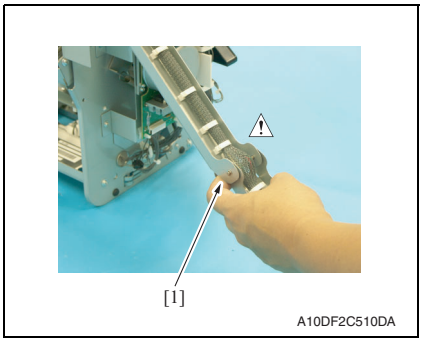
- **For installation of the saddle unit, insert two hooks on the left rail [3] into the two holes of the saddle unit [2].**

10. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.



⚠ CAUTION

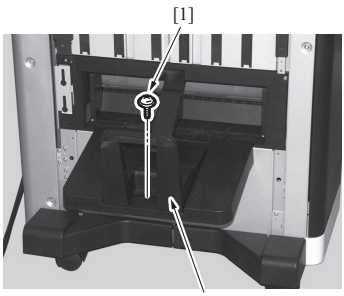
- **Be careful not to catch your finger in the edge of the rail [1] when mounting the saddle unit on the right rail for the saddle unit installation.**



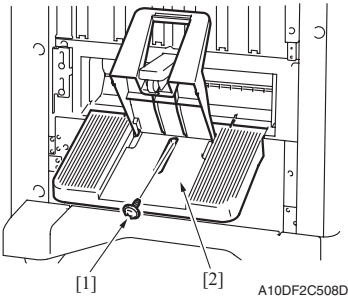
⚠ CAUTION

- **Be careful not to jam your finger in the connecting section of the pantograph [1].**

3.3.5 Paper exit tray



1. Remove the screw [1], and unlock the stopper [2].

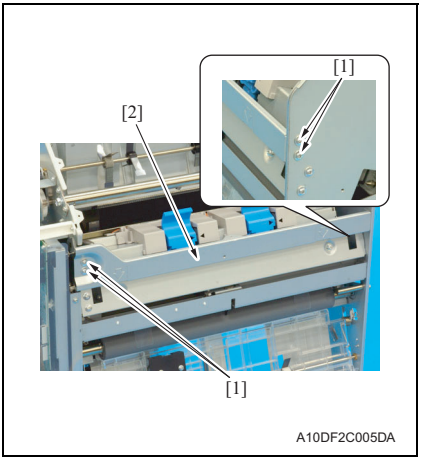


2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the paper exit tray [2].

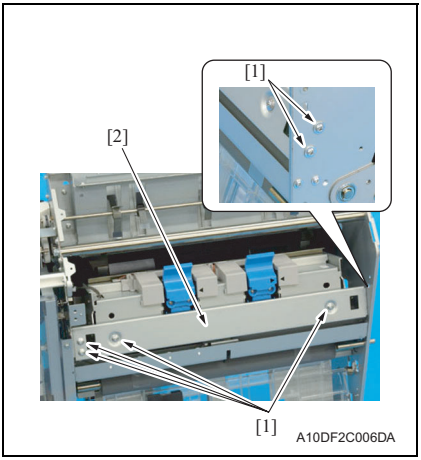
3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.6 Staple unit

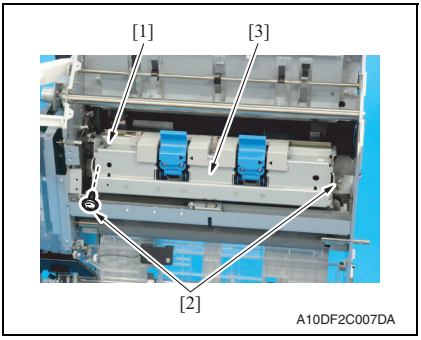
1. Remove the front cover.
See P.5
2. Remove the staple unit cover.
See P.6



3. Remove four screws [1], and remove the plate [2].



4. Remove six screws [1], and remove the plate [2].

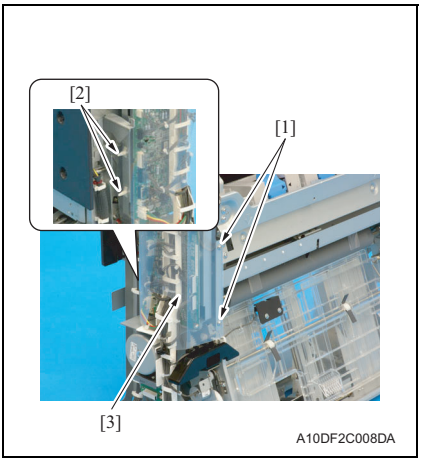


5. Disconnect the connector [1].
6. Remove two screws [2], and remove the staple unit [3].

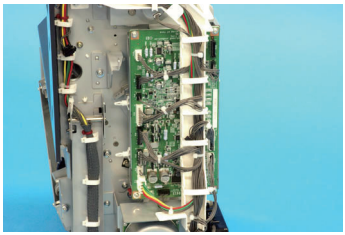
7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.7 SD drive board (SDDB)

1. Remove the saddle unit.
See P.7
2. Remove the front cover.
See P.5
3. Remove the staple unit cover.
See P.6

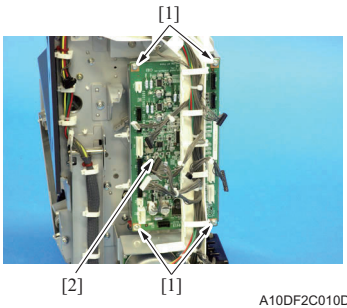


4. Remove two screws [1].
5. Remove the board support film [3] from two spacer [2].



A10DF2C009DA

6. Disconnect all the twelve connectors from the SD drive board.



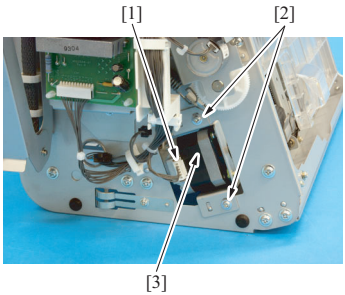
A10DF2C010DA

7. Remove four screws [1], and remove the SD drive board [2].

8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

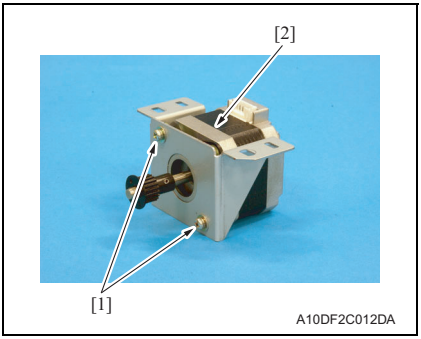
3.3.8 Leading edge stopper motor (M20)

1. Remove the saddle unit.
See P.7



A10DF2C011DA

2. Disconnect the connector [1].
3. Remove two screws [2], and remove the leading edge stopper motor assy [3].

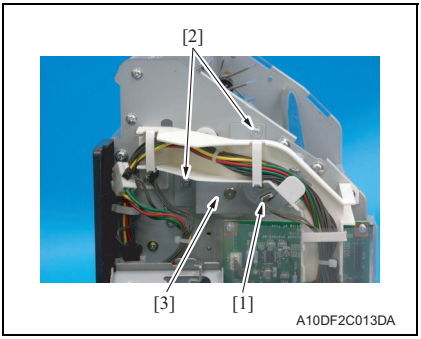


4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the leading edge stopper motor [2].

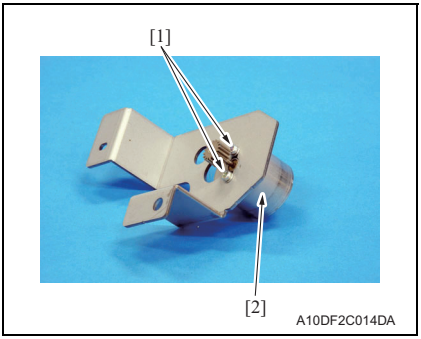
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.9 Upper paddle motor (M21)

1. Remove the saddle unit.
See P.7



2. Disconnect the connector [1].
3. Remove two screws [2], and remove the upper paddle motor assy [3].

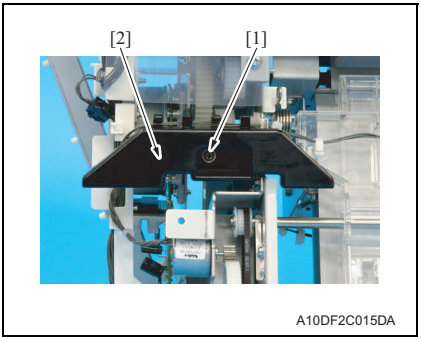


4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the upper paddle motor [2].

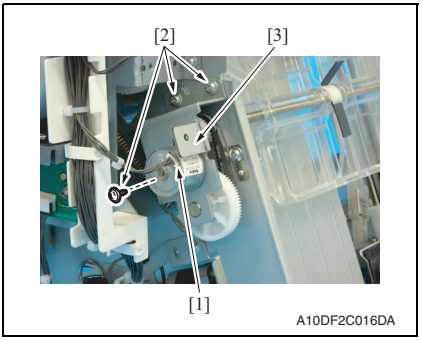
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.10 Lower paddle motor (M22)

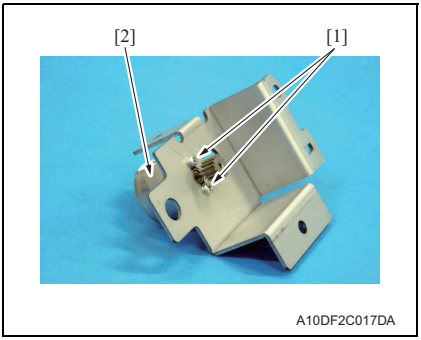
1. Remove the saddle unit.
See P.7



2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the paper exit tray guide [2].



3. Disconnect the connector [1].
4. Remove three screws [2], and remove the lower paddle motor assy [3].

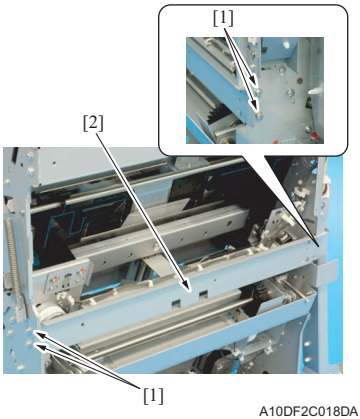


5. Remove two screws [1], and remove the lower paddle motor [2].

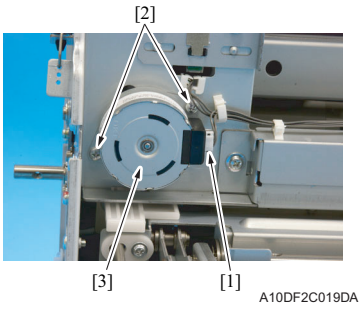
6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.11 Center staple alignment motor/R (M23)

1. Remove the saddle unit.
See P.7
2. Remove the right cover.
See P.6



3. Remove four screws [1], and remove the plate [2].

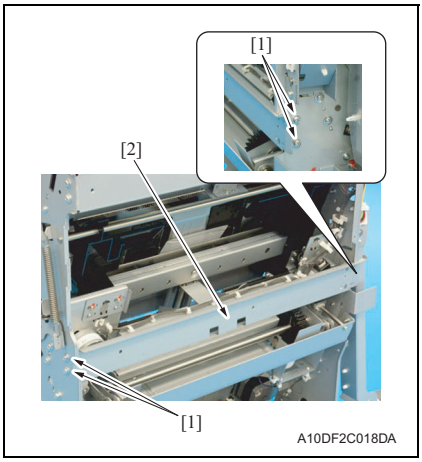


4. Disconnect the connector [1].
5. Remove two screws [2], and remove the center staple alignment motor/R [3].

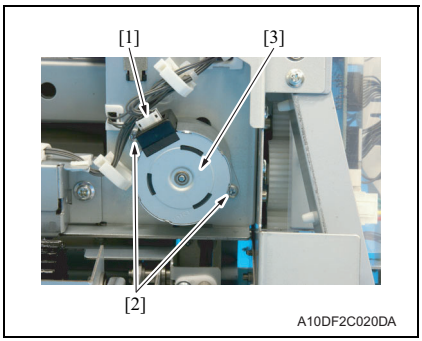
6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.12 Center staple alignment motor/F (M24)

1. Remove the saddle unit.
See P.7
2. Remove the right cover.
See P.6



3. Remove four screws [1], and remove the plate [2].

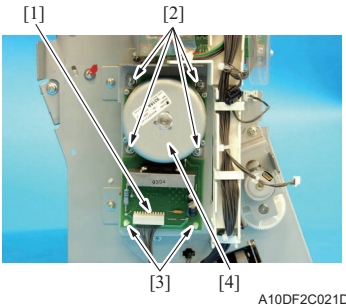


4. Disconnect the connector [1].
5. Remove two screws [2], and remove the center staple alignment motor/F [3].

6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.13 Center fold roller motor (M25)

1. Remove the saddle unit.
See P.7

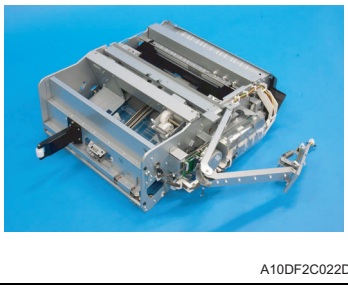


2. Disconnect the connector [1].
3. Remove four screws [2] and two card spacers [3], and remove the center fold roller motor [4].

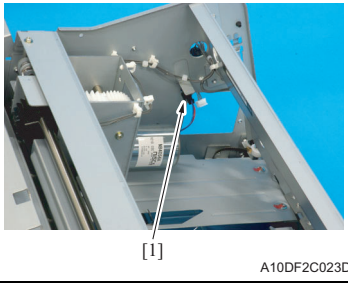
4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.14 Center fold plate motor (M26)

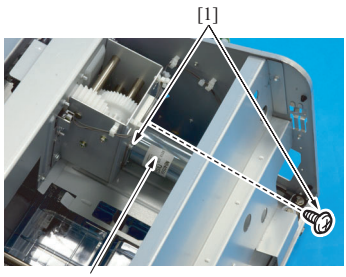
1. Remove the saddle unit.
See P.7
2. Remove the leading edge stopper motor.
See P.13



3. Lay down the saddle unit as shown in the illustration.



4. Disconnect the connector [1].

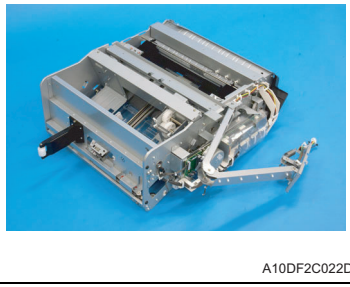


5. Remove two screws [1], and remove the center fold plate motor [2].

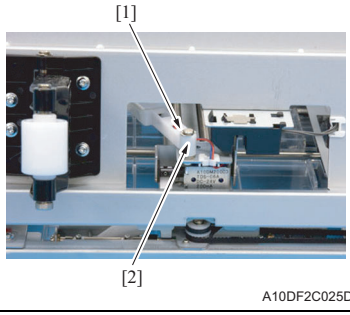
6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.15 Leading edge grip solenoid (SD3)

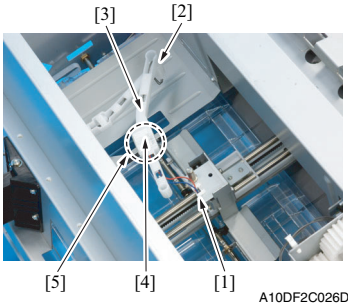
1. Remove the saddle unit.
See P.7



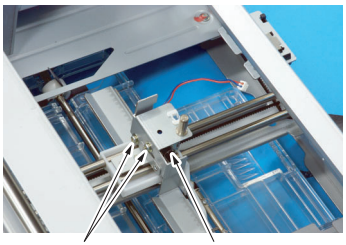
2. Lay down the saddle unit as shown in the illustration.



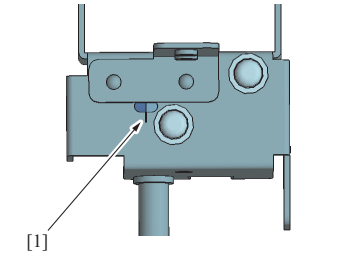
3. Remove the E-ring [1], and remove the drive lever [2].



4. Remove the harness from the cord clamp [1].
5. Remove the C-clip [2], and remove the drive lever [3].
6. Remove the tape [4], and disconnect the connector [5].



7. Remove two screws [1], and remove the leading edge grip solenoid [2].



8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

- **Secure the plate edge section of the leading edge grip solenoid by fitting the mark-off line [1].**

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. HOW TO USE THE ADJUSTMENT SECTION

- "Adjustment/Setting" contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this "Adjustment/Setting," the default settings are indicated by " ".

Advance checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The original glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be sure to unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the scanner cables or gears of the exposure unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the fusing unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The developing unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

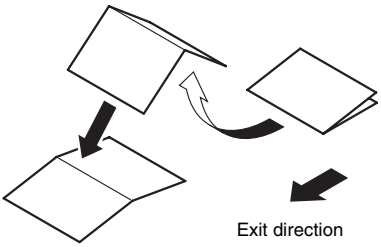
5. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

5.1 Mechanical adjustment of the paper exit section

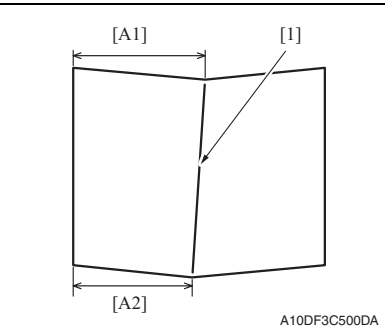
5.1.1 Half-fold skew adjustment

This adjustment must be made in the following case:
- **Fold line goes off the tolerance in the half-fold mode.**

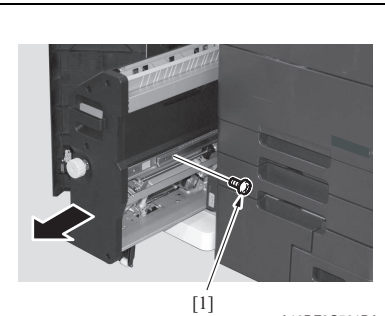
A. Procedure



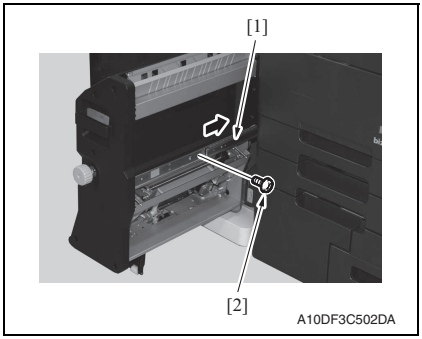
1. Make a copy in the half-fold mode.
2. Unfold the paper that exits the machine and lay the paper with the ridge facing up.



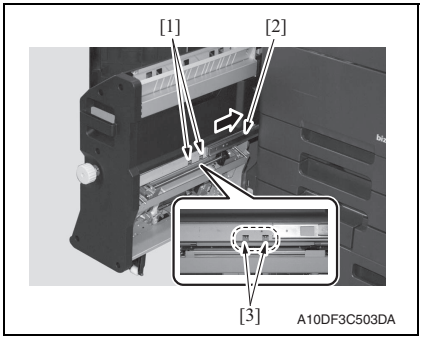
3. Confirm the skew of the fold line [1] of the output copy sample (Widths of A1 and A2)
   Standard value: A1-A2=0±1.0 mm
4. In case the figure exceeds the above mentioned standard value, follow the adjustment procedures below.
5. Open the front door of the finisher.
6. Pull the saddle unit.



7. Remove the screw [1], and pull the saddle unit out completely.

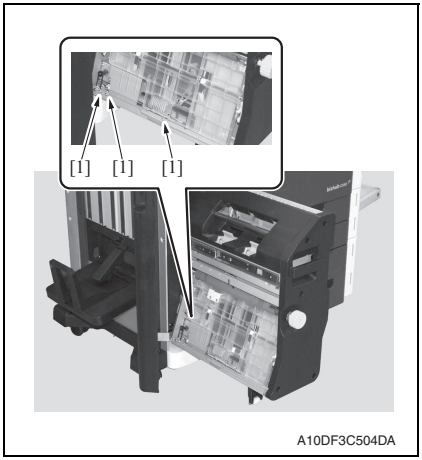


8. Slide down the movable part [1] of the right rail and remove the screw [2].

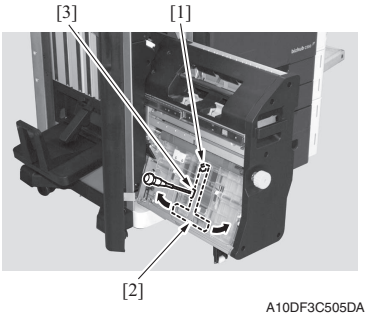


9. Push down the right rail [2] until the two notches [1] are visible as shown in the illustration below.

10. Loosen two screws [3].



11. Loosen three screws [1].

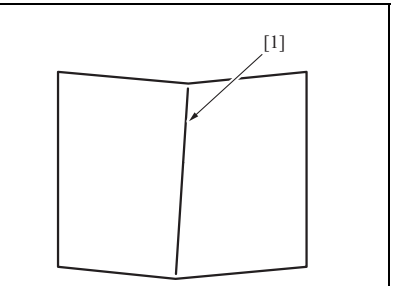


A10DF3C505DA

12. Incline the stopper [2] forward or backward according to the skew of the crease using the shoulder screw [1] as the supporting point.

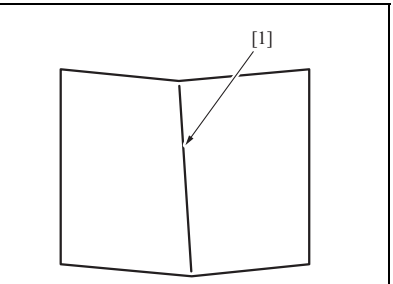
NOTE

- **Push the driver or equivalent into the cover hole [3] to incline the stopper [2].**



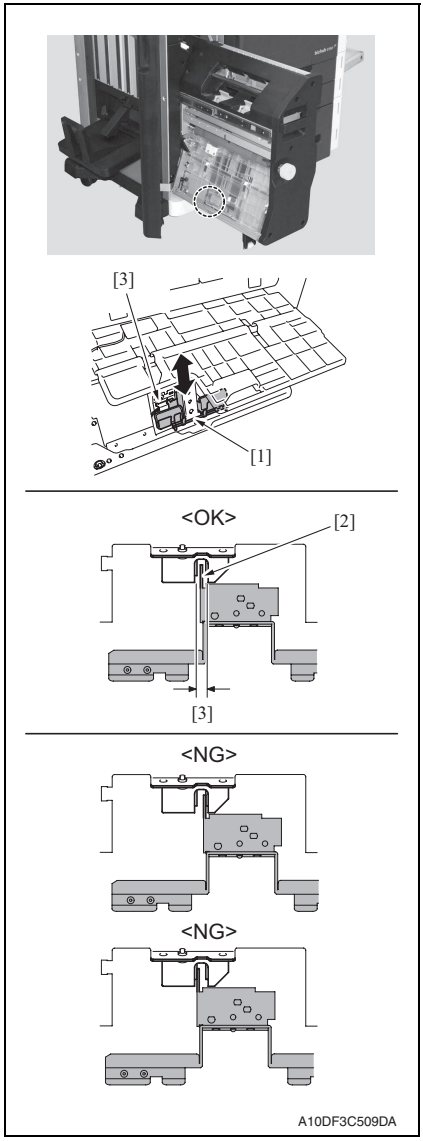
A10DF3C506DA

- In case the cease [1] skews as shown in the illustration:
  Incline the stopper backward.

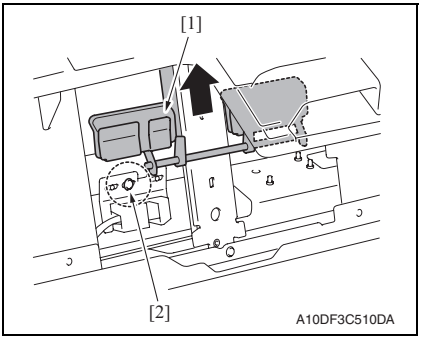


A10DF3C507DA

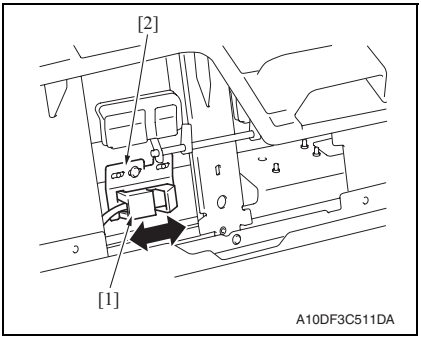
- In case the cease [1] skews as shown in the illustration:
  Incline the stopper forward.



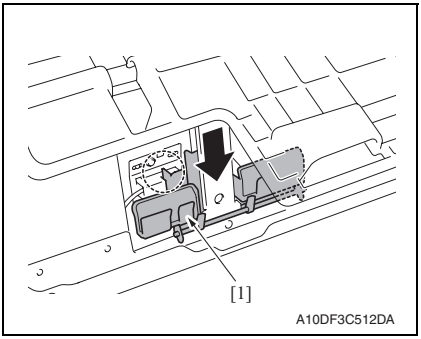
13. Move the stopper [1] up and down to confirm that the stopper's light blocking plate [2] does not touch the inner surfaces of the sensor slit [3].
14. In case of <NG>, take the following step.



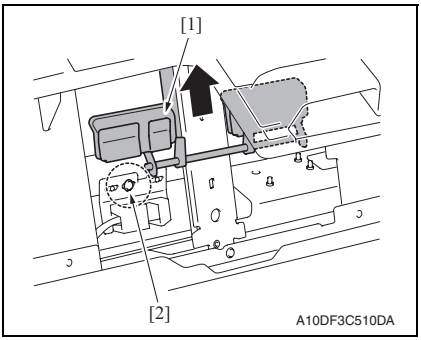
15. Raise the stopper [1] and loosen the screw [2] that holds the sensor mounting plate.



16. To make the light blocking plate pass the center of the sensor slit [1], move the sensor mounting plate [2] from side to side and adjust the mounting plate's position.



17. Lower the stopper [1] and confirm that the state is that of <OK>.



18. Raise the stopper [1] again and tighten the screw [2] that was loosened in step 15.
19. Make the copy sample again to confirm the cease skew.
20. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

JS-603

2009.07

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.
Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised,  is shown at the left margin of the revised section.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

- To indicate clearly a page that contains the revision, is shown near the page number of the corresponding page.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision
2009/07	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition

CONTENTS

JS-603

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS 1

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE 3
3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM 4
3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted 4
3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list 5
3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure 5
3.3.1 Separator 5
3.3.2 Tray3 exit roller retraction motor (M17) 6

Blank Page

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Type	Fixed to the finisher
Document alignment	Center

B. Functions

Modes	Sort, group

C. Paper

Size	Type		Capacity
A5S, B5S/B5, A4S/A4, B4, A3, A3 Wide 5-1/2 X 8-1/2S, 8-1/2 X 11S/8-1/2 X 11, 8-1/2 X 14, 11 X 17, 12-1/4 X 18 Max.: 311.15 mm X 457.2 mm 12.25 inch X 18 inch Min.: 139.7 mm X 182 mm 5.5 inch X 7.17 inch	Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m²) (16 to 24 lb)		100 sheets
	Special paper	Thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m²) (24.25 to 40 lb)	10 sheets
		Thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m²) (40.25 to 55.5 lb)	
		Thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m²) (55.75 to 68 lb)	
		Thick paper 4 (257 to 271 g/m²) (68.25 to 72 lb)	
		OHP film	
		Label	
		Envelope	

D. Machine specifications

Power requirements	DC 24 V ± 10 % (supplied from the main body)
	DC5 V ± 5 %
Dimensions	165 mm (W) X 389 mm (D) X 63 mm (H) 6.5 inch (W) X 15.31 inch (D) X 2.48 inch (H)
Weight	1.0 kg (2.2 lb)

E. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main body.

NOTE

- **These specifications are subject to change without notice.**

Blank Page

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE

- Periodically replaced parts are not employed.

3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

A. Paint-locked screws

NOTE

- **To prevent loose screws, a screw lock in blue or green series color is applied to the screws.**
- **The screw lock is applied to the screws that may get loose due to the vibrations and loads created by the use of machine or due to the vibrations created during transportation.**
- **If the screw lock coated screws are loosened or removed, be sure to apply a screw lock after the screws are tightened.**

B. Red-painted screws

NOTE

- **The screws which are difficult to be adjusted in the field are painted in red in order to prevent them from being removed by mistake.**
- **Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.**

C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE

- **Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.**

D. Removal of PWBs

⚠ CAUTION

- **When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.**
- **The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.**
- **Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.**

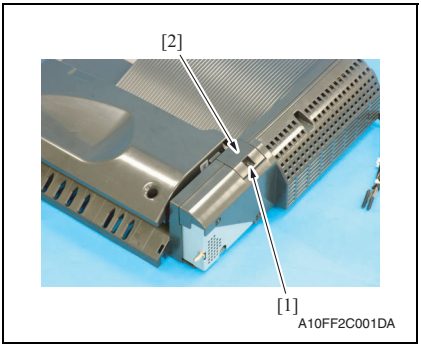
3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list

Section	Part name	Ref. page
Unit	Separator	P.5
Other	Tray3 exit roller retraction motor (M17)	P.6

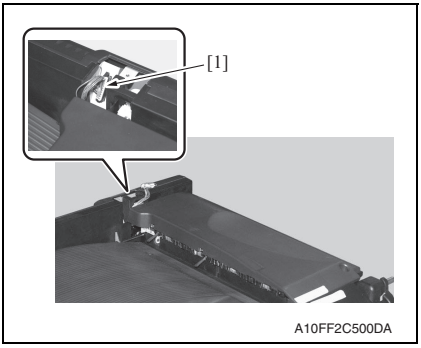
3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure

3.3.1 Separator

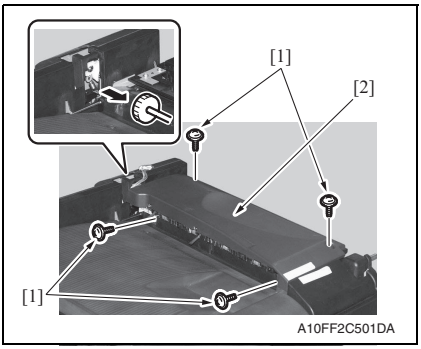
1. Remove the horizontal transport unit.
See P.15 of the FS-527 service manual.



2. Remove two screws [1], and remove the cover [2].



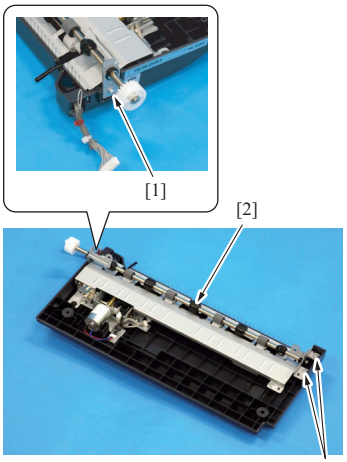
3. Disconnect the connector [1].



4. Remove four screws [1], and remove the separator [2].
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

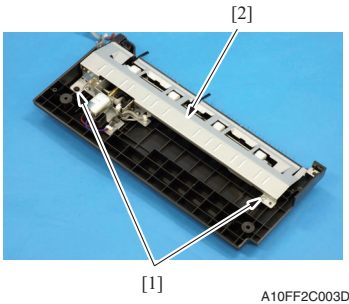
3.3.2 Tray3 exit roller retraction motor (M17)

1. Remove the separator.
See P.5



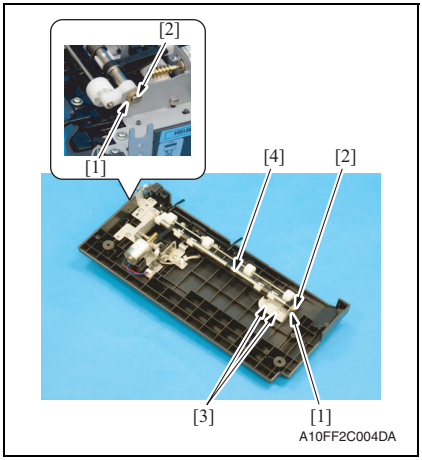
A10FF2C002DA

2. Remove three screws [1], and remove the exit roller assy [2].

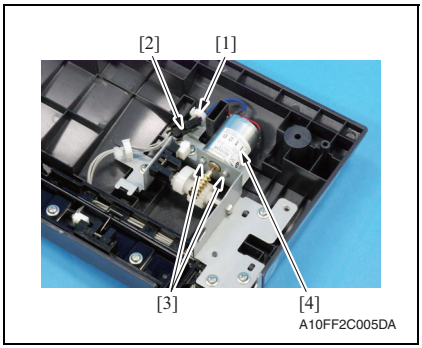


A10FF2C003DA

3. Remove two screws [1], and remove the plate [2].



4. Remove two E-rings [1] and two bushings [2].
5. Remove two screws [3], and remove the exit rolls assy [4].



6. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [1].
7. Disconnect the connector [2].
8. Remove two screws [3], and remove the tray3 exit roller retraction motor [4].

9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

Blank Page

KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

FS-529

2010.01

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 2.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.
Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised,  is shown at the left margin of the revised section.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

- To indicate clearly a page that contains the revision, is shown near the page number of the corresponding page.
  The number inside represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:
  The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision
2010/01	2.0		Error correction
2009/07	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition

CONTENTS

FS-529

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS 1

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE 3
2.1 Paper exit section 3
2.1.1 Cleaning procedure for each parts 3
3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM 4
3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted 4
3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list 5
3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure 6
3.3.1 Front left cover 6
3.3.2 Front right cover 6
3.3.3 Upper cover 7
3.3.4 Rear cover 8
3.3.5 Finisher 8
3.3.6 Conveyance roller unit 10
3.3.7 Stapler unit 10
3.3.8 Paper exit tray unit 12
3.3.9 FS control board (FSCB) 15
3.3.10 Pick up roller position motor (M1) 16
3.3.11 Tray up/down motor (M2) 17
3.3.12 Conveyance motor/1 (M5) 19
3.3.13 Conveyance motor/2 (M6) 20
3.3.14 Stapler movement motor (M7) 21
3.3.15 Fan motor (FM1) 22
3.3.16 Paddle solenoid (SD2) 24
3.3.17 Flapper solenoid (SD4) 25
3.3.18 Belt retract solenoid (SD5) 27
3.3.19 Harness guide 28

Blank Page

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Type	Multi staple finisher built into the main body
Installation	Installed in main body
Document alignment	Center

B. Functions

Modes	Sort, group, sort offset, group offset, sort staple

C. Paper

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Size</th><th colspan="2" rowspan="2">Type</th><th colspan="2">Capacity</th></tr>
<tr><th>Letter S, A4S, 8-1/2 X 11S or less</th><th>Legal, B4, 8-1/2 X 14 or greater</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="9">A6S, A5S/A5, B6S, B5S/B5, A4S/A4, B4, A3, A3 Wide
5-1/2 X 8-1/2S/5-1/2 X 8-1/2,
8-1/2 X 11S/8-1/2 X 11,
8-1/2 X 14, 11 X 17, 12-1/4 X 18
Max.: 311.15 mm X 1200 mm
12.25 inch X 47.24 inch
Min.: 90 mm X 139.7 mm
3.54 inch X 5.5 inch</td><td colspan="2">Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m²)
(16 to 24 lb)</td><td>300 sheets
(30 copies)</td><td>250 sheets
(30 copies)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">Special paper</td><td>Thick paper 1
(91 to 150 g/m²)
(24.25 to 40 lb)</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="7">10 sheets</td></tr>
<tr><td>Thick paper 2
(151 to 209 g/m²)
(40.25 to 55.5 lb)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Thick paper 3
(210 to 256 g/m²)
(55.75 to 68 lb)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Thick paper 4
(257 to 271 g/m²)
(68.25 to 72 lb)</td></tr>
<tr><td>OHP film</td></tr>
<tr><td>Label</td></tr>
<tr><td>Envelope</td></tr>
<tr><td>Long size paper</td><td>—</td></tr>
</table>

D. Offset function

Shift amount	30 mm
Types of paper to be used	Plain paper, Thick paper (91 to 209 g/m², 24.25 to 55.5 lb)
Size	B5, A4S/A4, B4, A3 8-1/2 X 11S/8-1/2 X 11, 8-1/2 X 14, 11 X 17

E. Stapling

No. of sheets to be stapled	Letter S, A4S, 8-1/2 X 11S or less	50 sheets
	Legal, B4, 8-1/2 X 14 or greater	30 sheets
	60 to 90 g/m² (16 to 24 lb): 48 sheets + 2 sheets (209 g/m² (55.5 lb))	
Stapling position	Back of the corner Front of the corner Center two points	

F. Machine specifications

Power requirements	DC 24 V ± 10 % (supplied from the main body)
	DC5.1 V ± 5 %
Max. power consumption	56 W or less
1 Dimensions	471 mm (W) X 564 mm (D) X 147 mm (H) 18.54 inch (W) X 22.20 inch (D) X 5.79 inch (H)
Weight	12.0 kg (26.46 lb)

G. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main body.

NOTE

- **These specifications are subject to change without notice.**

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURE

2.1 Paper exit section

NOTE

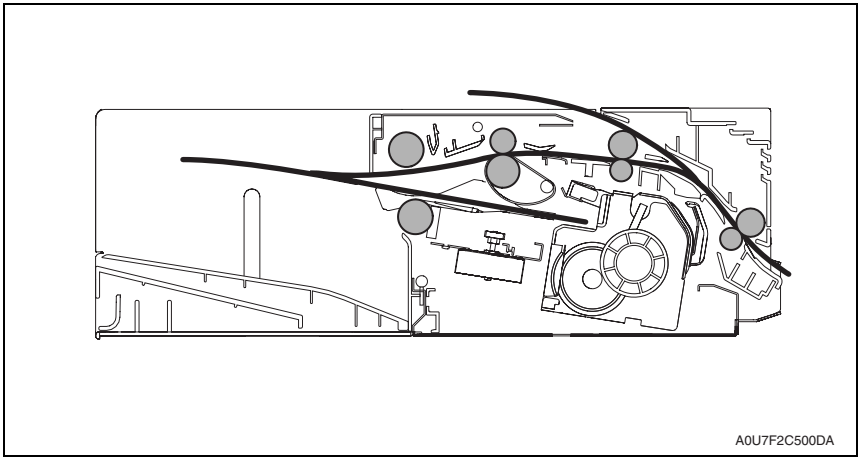
- **The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure of maintenance represents the isopropyl alcohol.**

2.1.1 Cleaning procedure for each parts

A. Periodically cleaning parts/cycle

- Each rollers/Each rolls: Every 300,000 counts

B. Cleaning point



3. OTHER MAINTENANCE ITEM

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

A. Paint-locked screws

NOTE

- **To prevent loose screws, a screw lock in blue or green series color is applied to the screws.**
- **The screw lock is applied to the screws that may get loose due to the vibrations and loads created by the use of machine or due to the vibrations created during transportation.**
- **If the screw lock coated screws are loosened or removed, be sure to apply a screw lock after the screws are tightened.**

B. Red-painted screws

NOTE

- **The screws which are difficult to be adjusted in the field are painted in red in order to prevent them from being removed by mistake.**
- **Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.**

C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE

- **Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.**

D. Removal of PWBs

⚠ CAUTION

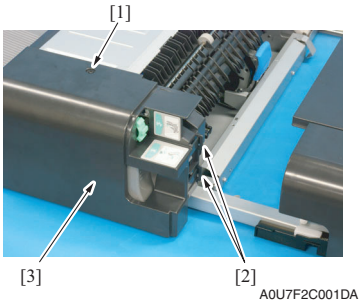
- **When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.**
- **The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.**
- **Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.**

3.2 Disassembly/reassembly parts list

Section	Part name	Ref. page
Exterior parts	Front left cover	P.6
	Front right cover	P.6
	Upper cover	P.7
	Rear cover	P.8
Units	Finisher	P.8
	Conveyance roller unit	P.10
	Stapler unit	P.10
	Paper exit tray unit	P.12
Board and etc.	FS control board (FSCB)	P.15
	Pick up roller position motor (M1)	P.16
	Tray up/down motor (M2)	P.17
	Conveyance motor/1 (M5)	P.19
	Conveyance motor/2 (M6)	P.20
	Stapler movement motor (M7)	P.21
	Fan motor (FM1)	P.22
	Paddle solenoid (SD2)	P.24
	Flapper solenoid (SD4)	P.25
	Belt retract solenoid (SD5)	P.27
Other	Harness guide	P.28

3.3 Disassembly/reassembly procedure

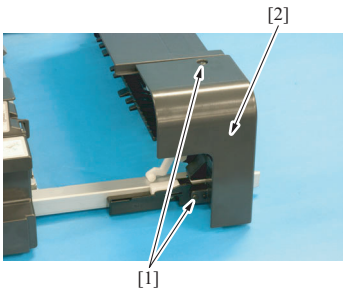
3.3.1 Front left cover



1. Remove the screw [1] and two tabs [2], and remove the front left cover [3].

2. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.2 Front right cover

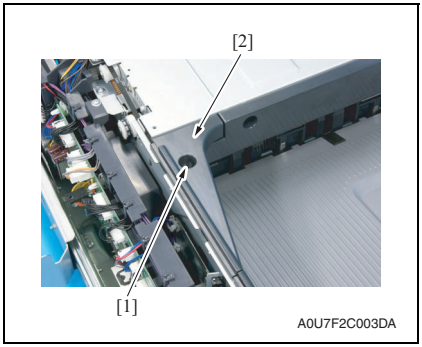


1. Remove two screws [1], and remove the front right cover [2].

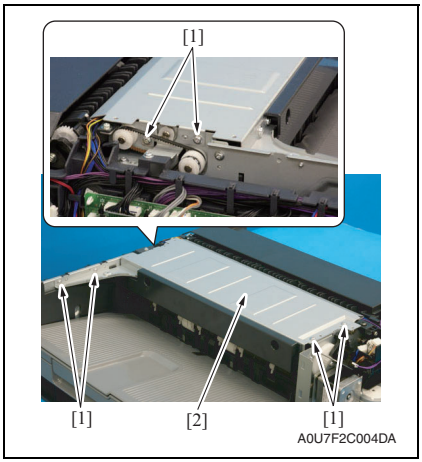
2. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.3 Upper cover

1. Remove the front left cover.
See P.6
2. Remove the rear cover.
See P.8



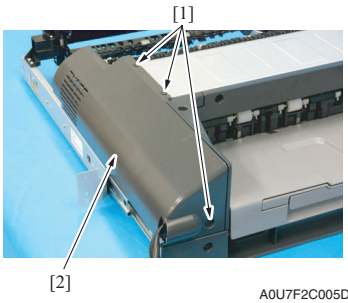
3. Remove the screw [1], and remove the cover [2].



4. Remove six screws [1], and remove the upper cover [2].

5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

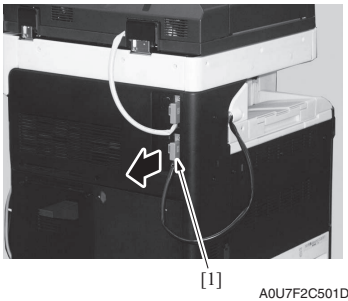
3.3.4 Rear cover



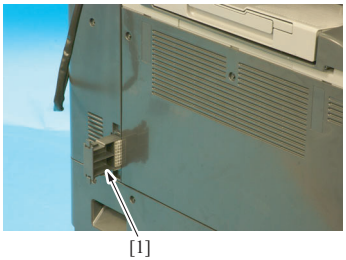
1. Remove three screws [1], and remove the rear cover [2].

2. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

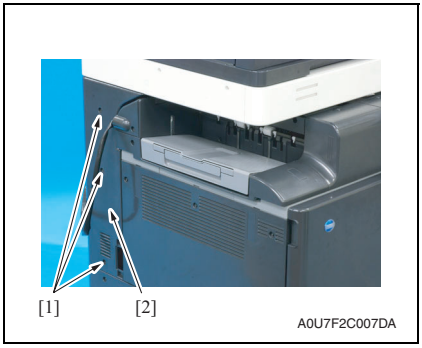
3.3.5 Finisher



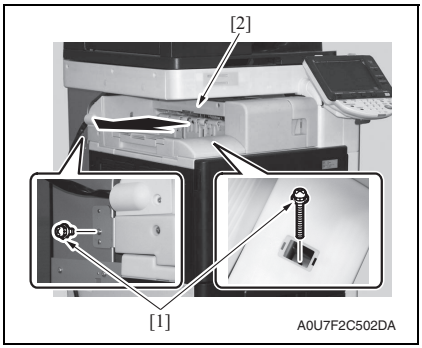
1. Remove the relay cord [1].



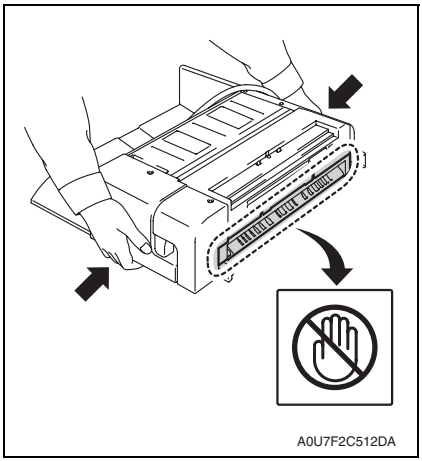
2. Remove the ozone filter [1].



3. Remove three screws [1], and remove the rear left cover [2] of the main body.



4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the finisher [2].



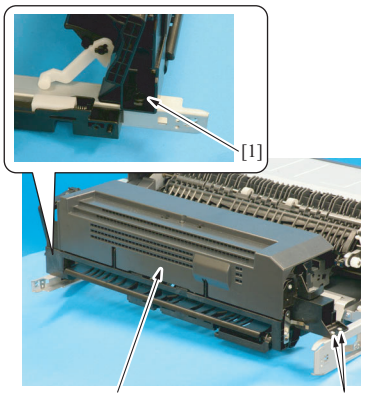
NOTE

- **When carrying the finisher, be sure to hold onto the specified positions as shown in the left illustlation.**

5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.6 Conveyance roller unit

1. Remove the front right cover.
See P.6

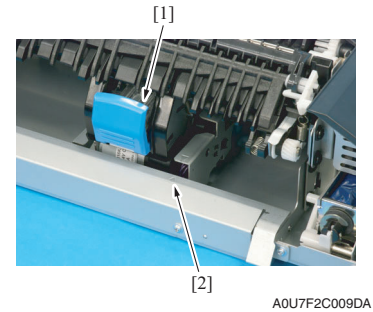


2. Remove three screws [1], and remove the conveyance roller unit [2].

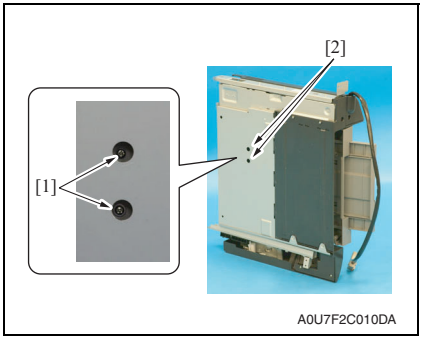
3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.7 Stapler unit

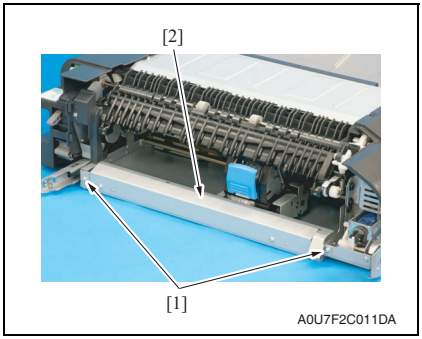
1. Remove the front right cover.
See P.6
2. Remove the conveyance roller unit.
See P.10



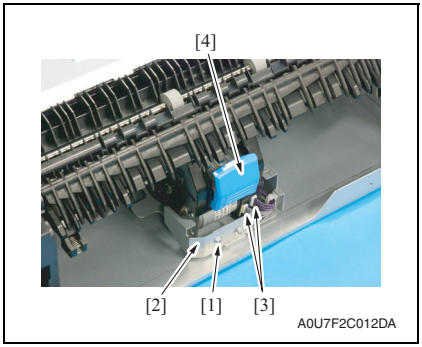
3. Move the stapler unit [1] to the marked position [2].



4. Put the finisher as shown in the illustration and remove two screws [2] from the screw access holes [1] on the bottom plate.



5. Remove two screws [1], and remove the plate [2].

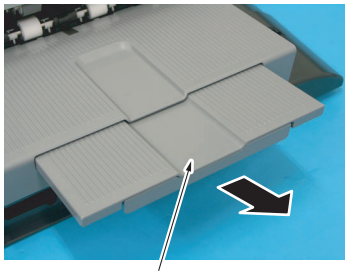


6. Remove the screw [1], and remove the stapler cover plate [2].
7. Disconnect two connectors [3].
8. Remove the stapler unit [4].

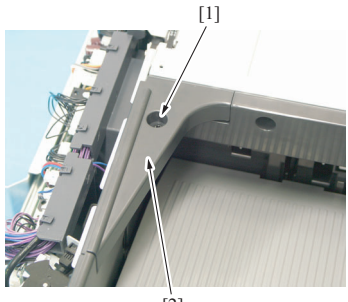
9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.8 Paper exit tray unit

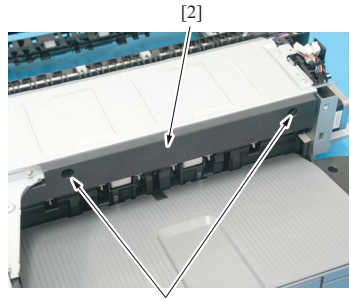
1. Remove the front left cover.
See P.6
2. Remove the rear cover.
See P.8



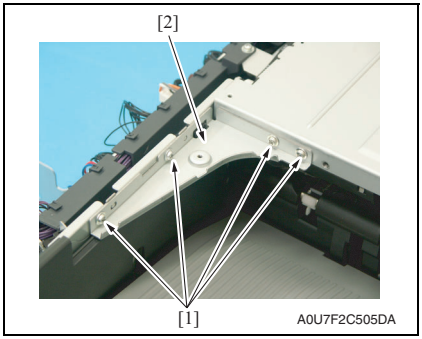
3. Remove the support tray [1].



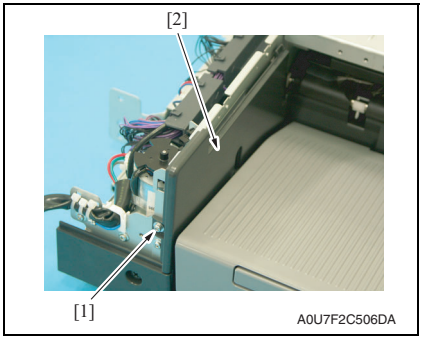
4. Remove the screw [1], and remove the cover [2].



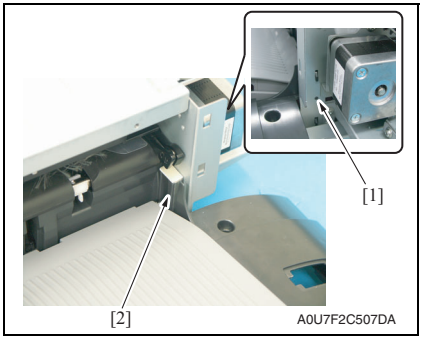
5. Remove two screws [1], and remove the exit roller cover [2].



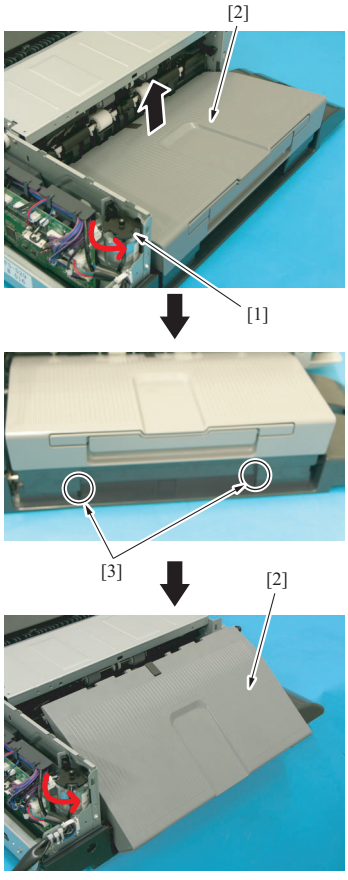
6. Remove four screws [1], and remove the plate [2].



7. Remove the screw [1], and remove the rear sub cover [2].

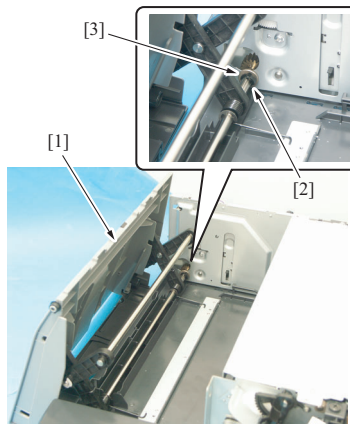


8. Press the dowel [1] and remove the cover rail [2].



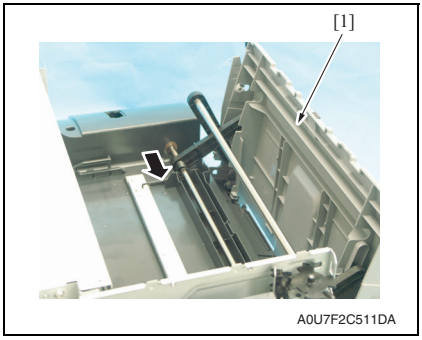
A0U7F2C508DA

9. Turn the motor [1] in the direction shown by the arrow and raise the exit tray [2].
10. Unhook two shutter tabs [3].
11. Turn the motor [1] further and raise the exit tray [2].



A0U7F2C510DA

12. Raise the exit tray [1] until the spring tension becomes weak as shown in the illustration.
13. Remove the clip [2] and bushing [3].

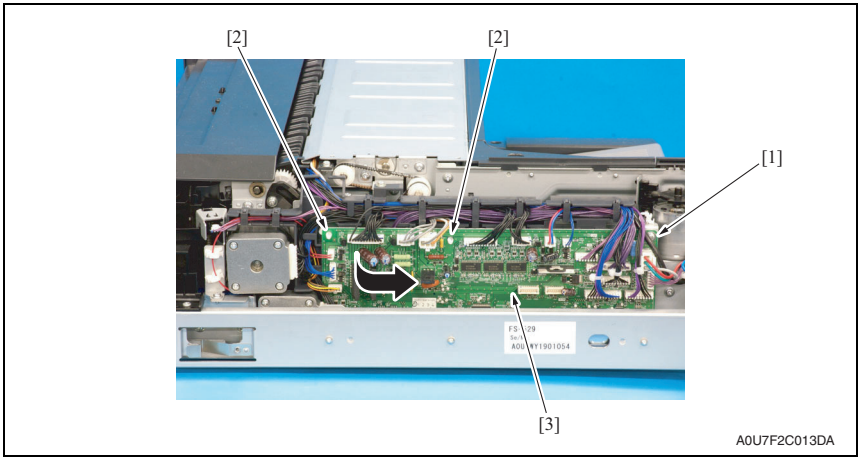


14. Remove the front shaft and remove the exit tray unit [1].

15. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.9 FS control board (FSCB)

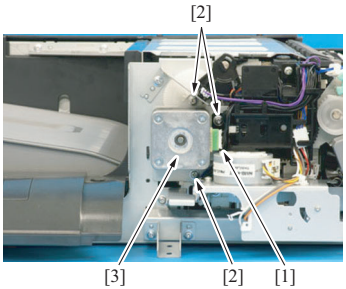
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.8
2. Remove all connectors from the FS control board.
3. Remove the screw [1] and two board supports [2], and remove the FS control board [3].



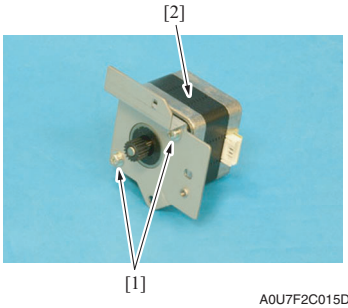
4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.10 Pick up roller position motor (M1)

1. Remove the front left cover.
See P.6



2. Disconnect the connector [1].
3. Remove three screws [2], and remove the pick up roller position motor assy [3].

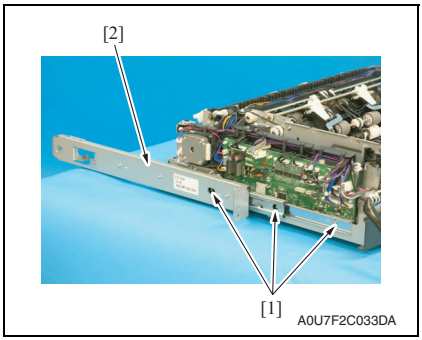


4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the pick up roller position motor [2].

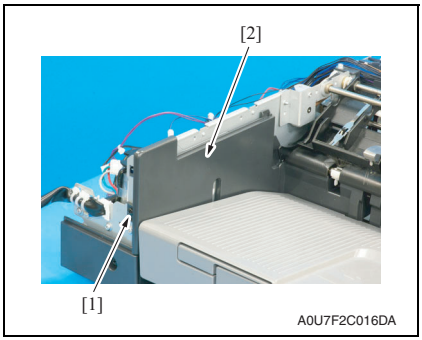
5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.11 Tray up/down motor (M2)

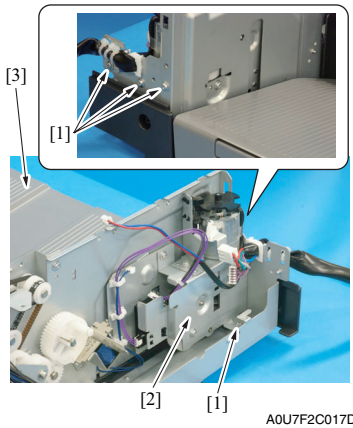
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.8
2. Remove the upper cover.
See P.7
3. Remove the FS control board.
See P.15
4. Remove the conveyance roller unit.
See P.10
5. Remove the harness guide.
See P.28



6. Remove three screws [1], and remove the rear rail [2].



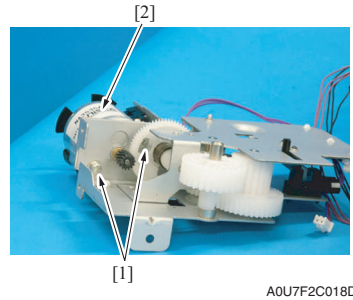
7. Remove the screw [1], and remove the rear sub cover [2].



8. Remove four screws [1], and remove the tray up/down motor assy [2].

NOTE

- **When removing the tray up/down motor assy [2], the exit tray [3] bounces. Be sure to press the exit tray [3] down when removing the tray up/down motor assy [2].**

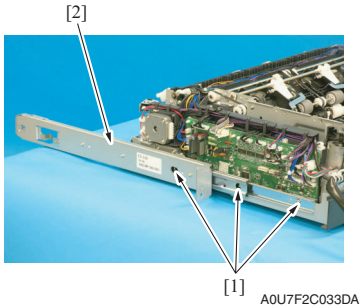


9. Remove two screws [1], and remove the tray up/down motor [2].

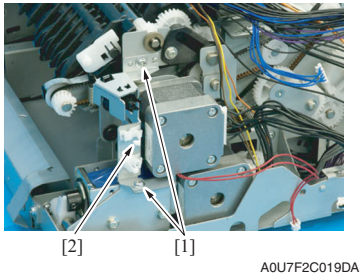
10. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.12 Conveyance motor/1 (M5)

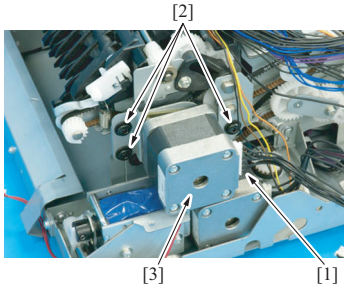
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.8
2. Remove the conveyance roller unit.
See P.10
3. Remove the FS control board.
See P.15
4. Remove the harness guide.
See P.28



5. Remove three screws [1], and remove the rear rail [2].



6. Remove two screws [1], and remove the sensor assy [2].

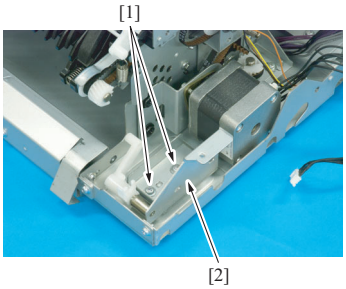


7. Disconnect the connector [1].
8. Remove three screws [2], and remove the conveyance motor/1 [3].

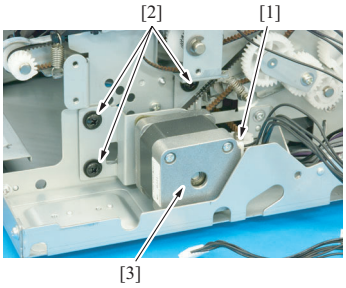
9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.13 Conveyance motor/2 (M6)

1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.8
2. Remove the conveyance roller unit.
See P.10
3. Remove the flapper solenoid.
See P.25
4. Remove the conveyance motor/1.
See P.19



5. Remove two screws [1] and the solenoid mounting plate [2].

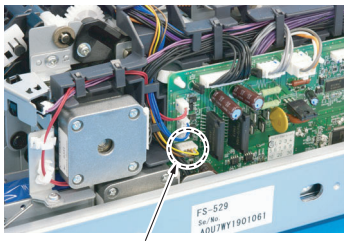


6. Disconnect the connector [1].
7. Remove three screws [2], and remove the conveyance motor/2 [3].

8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

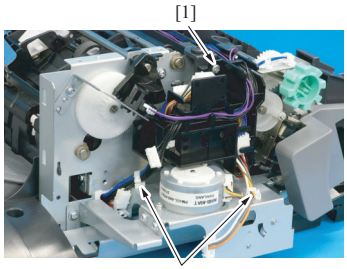
3.3.14 Stapler movement motor (M7)

1. Remove the front left cover.
See P.6
2. Remove the rear cover.
See P.8
3. Remove the upper cover.
See P.7
4. Remove the pick up roller position motor.
See P.16



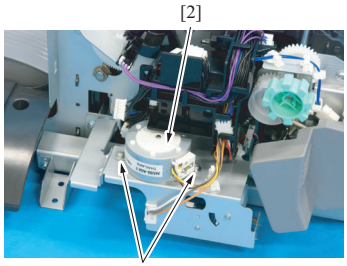
A0U7F2C023DA

5. Disconnect the connector (CN18) [1] of the FS control board.



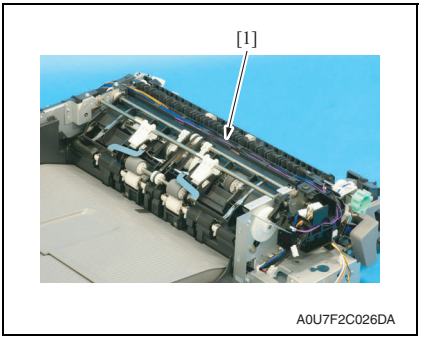
A0U7F2C024DA

6. Remove the screw [1].
7. Remove the harness from two wire saddles [2].



A0U7F2C025DA

8. Remove two screws [1], and remove the stapler movement motor [2].

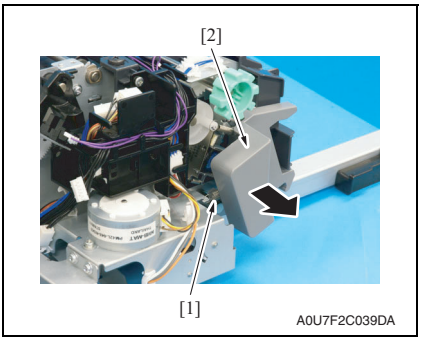


9. Remove the harness from the harness guide [1].

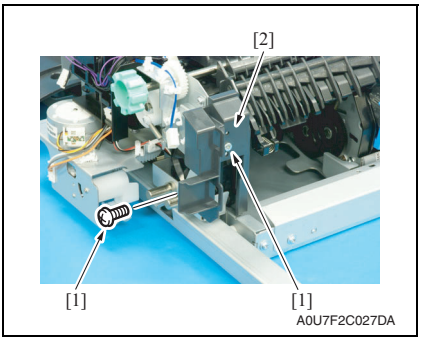
10. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.15 Fan motor (FM1)

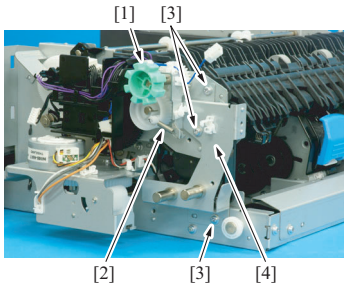
1. Remove the front left cover.
See P.6
2. Remove the conveyance roller unit.
See P.10
3. Remove the belt retract solenoid.
See P.27



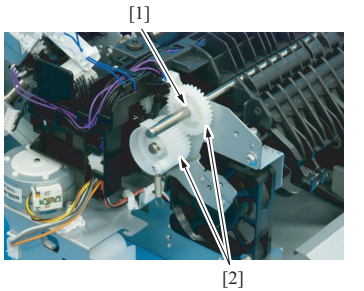
4. Remove the spring [1], and remove the lever [2].



5. Remove two screws [1], and remove the cover [2].



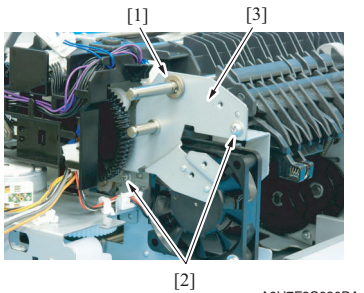
6. Remove the JAM processing dial [1].
7. Remove the spring [2].
8. Remove three screws [1], and remove the plate [4].



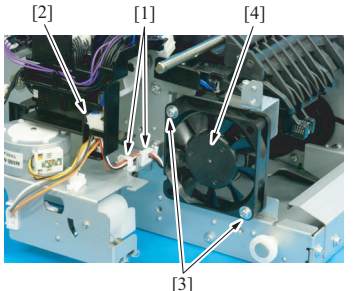
9. Remove the C-ring [1], and remove two gears [2].

NOTE

- **Be careful not to lose the pin.**



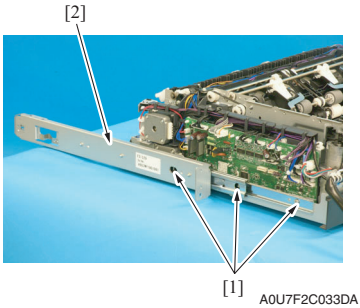
10. Remove the bushing [1].
11. Remove two screws [2], and remove the gear assy [3].



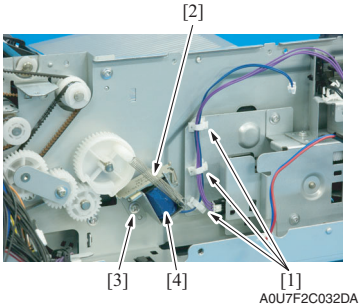
12. Remove the harness from two wire saddles [1].
13. Disconnect the connector [2].
14. Remove two screws [3], and remove the fan motor [4].
15. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.16 Paddle solenoid (SD2)

1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.8
2. Remove the upper cover.
See P.7
3. Remove the FS control board.
See P.15
4. Remove the conveyance roller unit.
See P.10
5. Remove the harness guide.
See P.28



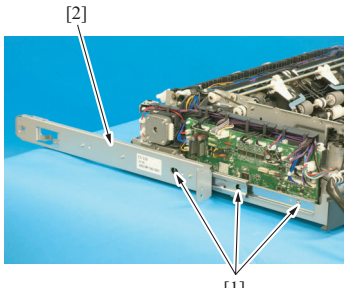
6. Remove three screws [1], and remove the rear rail [2].



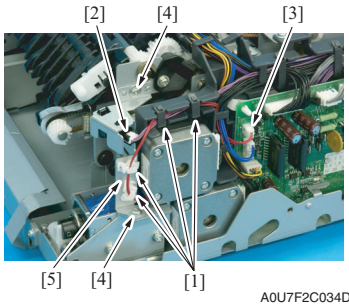
7. Remove the harness from three wire saddles [1].
8. Remove the spring [2] and the screw [3], and remove the paddle solenoid [4].
9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.17 Flapper solenoid (SD4)

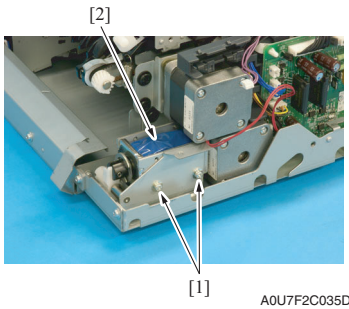
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.8
2. Remove the conveyance roller unit.
See P.10



3. Remove three screws [1], and remove the rear rail [2].



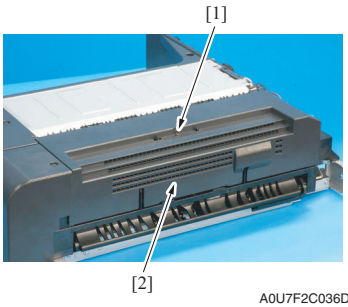
4. Remove the harness from four wire saddles [1].
5. Disconnect the connector [2].
6. Disconnect the connector (CN16) [3] of the FS control board.
7. Remove two screws [4], and remove the sensor assy [5].



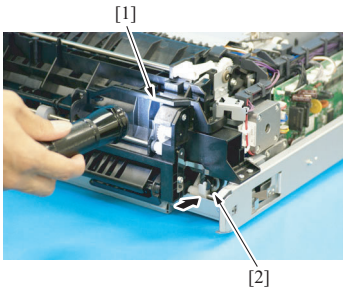
8. Remove two screws [1], and remove the flapper solenoid [2].
9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

A. Adjustment after installation

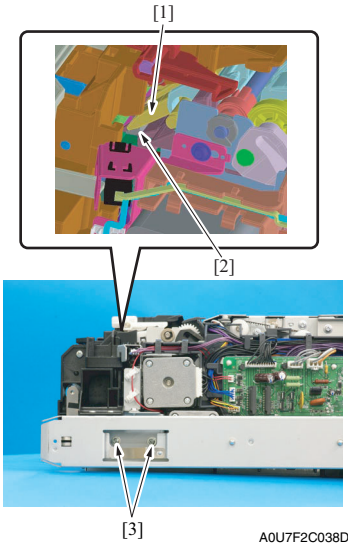
1. Remove the rear cover.
See P.8



2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the cover [2].



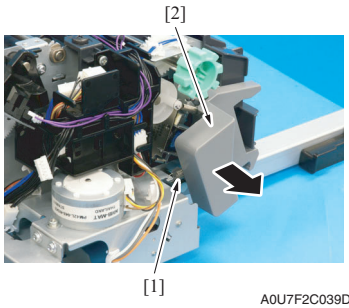
3. Illuminate the inside from the opening [1] shown in the illustration.
4. Remove the flapper solenoid [2].



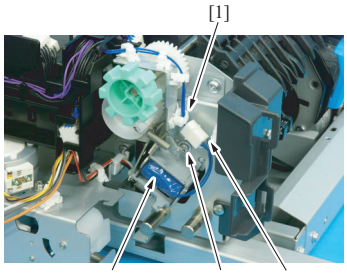
5. Make sure that the flapper [1] and the damper [2] are in contact with each other and then tighten two screws [3].

3.3.18 Belt retract solenoid (SD5)

1. Remove the front left cover.
See P.6



2. Remove the spring [1], and remove the lever [2].

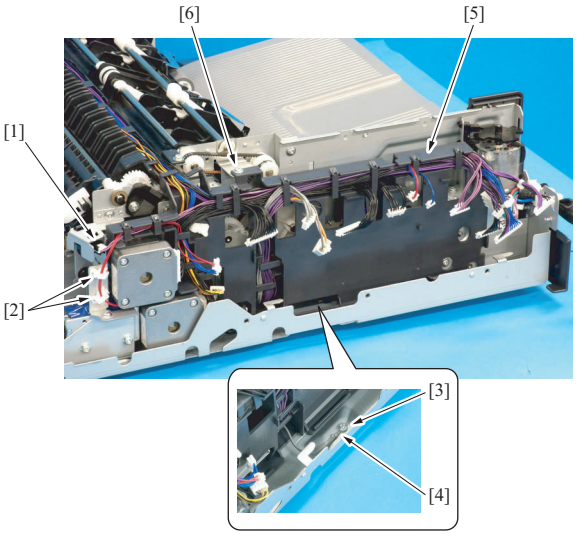


3. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [1].
4. Disconnect the connector [2].
5. Remove the screw [3], and remove the belt retract solenoid [4].

6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.19 Harness guide

1. Remove the rear cover.
   See P.8
2. Remove the FS control board.
   See P.15
3. Disconnect the connector [1].
4. Remove the harness from two wire saddles [2].
5. Remove the screw [3], and remove the ground terminal [4].
6. Remove all harness from the harness guide [5].
7. Remove the screw [6], and remove the harness guide [5].



8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

Blank Page



KONICA MINOLTA

© 2009 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to
avoid disclosure of confidential information.

Printed in Japan
DDA0ED-M-FE2.1